UM ROCHESTER: CHEM 2333 GENERAL CHEMISTRY II



LibreTexts™

UM Rochester: CHEM 2333 General Chemistry II

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide and accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

This text was compiled on 06/07/2025

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Tools for quantitative chemistry

- 1.1: Chemistry in Context
- 1.2: Measurements
- 1.3: Mathematical Treatment of Measurement Results
- 1.4: Chemical Formulas
- 1.5: Chemical Nomenclature
- 1.6: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept
- 1.7: Molarity
- 1.8.0: Solutions and Colloids
  - 1.8.1 Prelude to Solutions and Colloids
  - 1.8.2 The Dissolution Process
  - 1.8.3 Electrolytes
  - 1.8.4 Solubility
- 1.9.0 : Fundamental Equilibrium Concepts
  - 1.9.1 Prelude to Equilibrium
  - 1.9.2 Chemical Equilibria
  - 1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants
  - 1.9.4 Shifting Equilibria - Le Châtelier's Principle
  - 1.9.5. Equilibrium Calculations
  - 1.9.6 Fundamental Equilibrium Concepts (Exercises)

2: Acid-Base Equilibria

- 2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
- 2.2: pH and pOH
- 2.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
- 2.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions
- 2.5: Polyprotic Acids
- 2.6: Buffers
- 2.7: Acid-Base Titrations
- 2.8: Acid-Base Equilibria (Exercises)
- 2.9.0: Equilibria of Other Reaction Classes
  - 2.9.1 Precipitation and Dissolution
  - 2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases
  - 2.9.3 Coupled Equilibria
  - 2.9.4 Equilibria of Other Reaction Classes (Exercises)

3: Kinetics

- 3.1: Prelude to Kinetics
- 3.2: Chemical Reaction Rates
- 3.3: Factors Affecting Reaction Rates
- 3.4: Rate Laws
- 3.5: Integrated Rate Laws
- 3.6: Collision Theory
- 3.7: Reaction Mechanisms

- 3.8: Catalysis
- 3.9.a: Kinetics (Exercises)
- 3.9.0: Nuclear Chemistry
  - 3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
  - 3.9.2 Nuclear Equations
  - 3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
  - 3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
  - 3.9.5 Uses of Radioisotopes
  - 3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
  - 3.9.7 Nuclear Chemistry (Exercises)

4: Thermodynamics

- 4.1: Energy Basics
- 4.2: Calorimetry
- 4.3: Enthalpy
- 4.4: Thermochemistry (Exercises)
- 4.5: Spontaneity
- 4.6: Entropy
- 4.7: The Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics
- 4.8: Gibbs Energy
- 4.9: Thermodynamics (Exercises)

5: Electrochemistry

- 5.1: Balancing Oxidation-Reduction Reactions
- 5.2: Galvanic Cells
- 5.3: Standard Reduction Potentials
- 5.4: The Nernst Equation
- 5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells
- 5.6: Corrosion
- 5.7: Electrolysis
- 5.8: Electrochemistry (Exercises)

6: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding

- 6.1: Prelude to Covalent Bonding
- 6.2: Valence Bond Theory
- 6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
- 6.4: Multiple Bonds
- 6.5: Molecular Orbital Theory
- 6.6: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding (Exercises)

7: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry

- 7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
- 7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
- 7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
- 7.4: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry (Exercises)

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Tools for quantitative chemistry

Article directory

1.1: Chemistry in Context
1.2: Measurements
1.3: Mathematical Treatment of Measurement Results
1.4: Chemical Formulas
1.5: Chemical Nomenclature
1.6: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept
1.7: Molarity
1.8.0: Solutions and Colloids
1.8.1 Prelude to Solutions and Colloids
1.8.2 The Dissolution Process
1.8.3 Electrolytes
1.8.4 Solubility
1.9.0 : Fundamental Equilibrium Concepts
1.9.1 Prelude to Equilibrium
1.9.2 Chemical Equilibria
1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants
1.9.4 Shifting Equilibria - Le Châtelier’s Principle
1.9.5. Equilibrium Calculations
1.9.6 Fundamental Equilibrium Concepts (Exercises)

1: Tools for quantitative chemistry is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.1: Chemistry in Context

Learning Objectives

- Outline the historical development of chemistry
- Provide examples of the importance of chemistry in everyday life
- Describe the scientific method and informs the scientific process
- Differentiate among hypotheses, theories, and laws
- Provide examples illustrating macroscopic, microscopic, and symbolic domains

Throughout human history, people have tried to convert matter into more useful forms. Our Stone Age ancestors chipped pieces of flint into useful tools and carved wood into statues and toys. These endeavors involved changing the shape of a substance without changing the substance itself. But as our knowledge increased, humans began to change the composition of the substances as well—clay was converted into pottery, hides were cured to make garments, copper ores were transformed into copper tools and weapons, and grain was made into bread.

Humans began to practice chemistry when they learned to control fire and use it to cook, make pottery, and smelt metals. Subsequently, they began to separate and use specific components of matter. A variety of drugs such as aloe, myrrh, and opium were isolated from plants. Dyes, such as indigo and Tyrian purple, were extracted from plant and animal matter. Metals were combined to form alloys—for example, copper and tin were mixed together to make bronze—and more elaborate smelting techniques produced iron. Alkalis were extracted from ashes, and soaps were prepared by combining these alkalis with fats. Alcohol was produced by fermentation and purified by distillation.

Attempts to understand the behavior of matter extend back for more than 2500 years. As early as the sixth century BC, Greek philosophers discussed a system in which water was the basis of all things. You may have heard of the Greek postulate that matter consists of four elements: earth, air, fire, and water. Subsequently, an amalgamation of chemical technologies and philosophical speculations were spread from Egypt, China, and the eastern Mediterranean by alchemists, who endeavored to transform “base metals” such as lead into “noble metals” like gold, and to create elixirs to cure disease and extend life (Figure 1.1.1).



Figure 1.1.1: This portrayal shows an alchemist’s workshop circa 1580. Although alchemy made some useful contributions to how to manipulate matter, it was not scientific by modern standards. (credit: Chemical Heritage Foundation).

A sketch depicts 4 people stirring and handling chemicals. The chemicals are held in a variety of barrels and large cylinders. Several of the containers are being heated over burning embers. A large stove in the laboratory is filled with burning embers. There is also a large chest in the corner that is producing steam.

From alchemy came the historical progressions that led to modern chemistry: the isolation of drugs from natural sources, metallurgy, and the dye industry. Today, chemistry continues to deepen our understanding and improve our ability to harness and control the behavior of matter. This effort has been so successful that many people do not realize either the central position of chemistry among the sciences or the importance and universality of chemistry in daily life.

Chemistry: The Central Science

Chemistry is sometimes referred to as “the central science” due to its interconnectedness with a vast array of other STEM disciplines (STEM stands for areas of study in the science, technology, engineering, and math fields). Chemistry and the language of chemists play vital roles in biology, medicine, materials science, forensics, environmental science, and many other fields (Figure 1.1.2). The basic principles of physics are essential for understanding many aspects of chemistry, and there is extensive overlap between many subdisciplines within the two fields, such as chemical physics and nuclear chemistry. Mathematics, computer science, and information theory provide important tools that help us calculate, interpret, describe, and generally make sense of the chemical world. Biology and chemistry converge in biochemistry, which is crucial to understanding the many complex factors and processes that keep living organisms (such as us) alive. Chemical engineering, materials science, and nanotechnology combine chemical principles and empirical findings to produce useful substances, ranging from gasoline to fabrics to electronics. Agriculture, food science, veterinary science, and brewing and wine making help provide sustenance in the form of food and drink to the world’s population. Medicine, pharmacology, biotechnology, and botany identify and produce substances that help keep us healthy. Environmental science, geology, oceanography, and atmospheric science incorporate many chemical ideas to help us better understand and protect our physical world. Chemical ideas are used to help understand the universe in astronomy and cosmology.

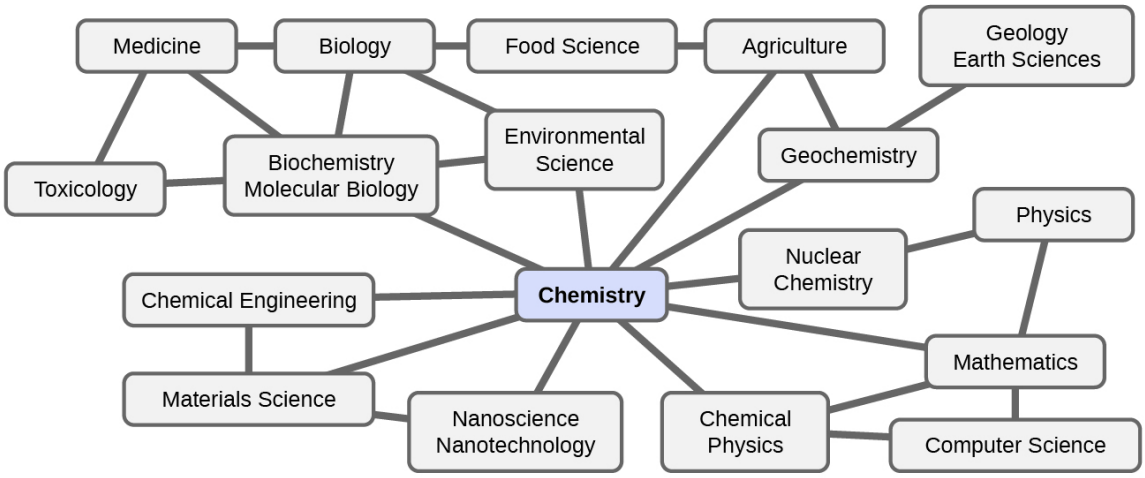


Figure 1.1.2: Knowledge of chemistry is central to understanding a wide range of scientific disciplines. This diagram shows just some of the interrelationships between chemistry and other fields.

A flowchart shows a box containing chemistry at its center. Chemistry is connected to geochemistry, nuclear chemistry, chemical physics, nanoscience and nanotechnology, materials science, chemical engineering, biochemistry and molecular biology, environmental science, agriculture, and mathematics. Each of these disciplines is further connected to other related fields including medicine, biology, food science, geology earth sciences, toxicology, physics, and computer science.

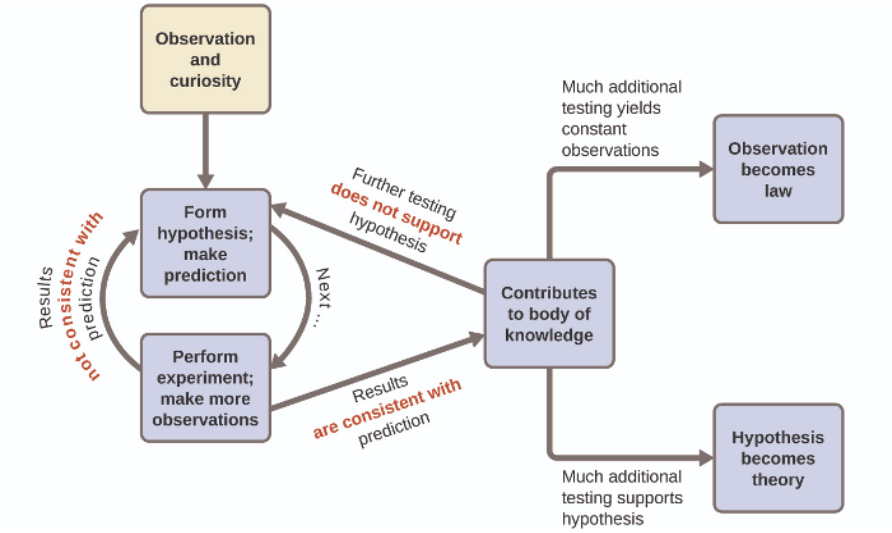
What are some changes in matter that are essential to daily life? Digesting and assimilating food, synthesizing polymers that are used to make clothing, containers, cookware, and credit cards, and refining crude oil into gasoline and other products are just a few examples. As you proceed through this course, you will discover many different examples of changes in the composition and structure of matter, how to classify these changes and how they occurred, their causes, the changes in energy that accompany them, and the principles and laws involved. As you learn about these things, you will be learning chemistry, the study of the composition, properties, and interactions of matter. The practice of chemistry is not limited to chemistry books or laboratories: It happens whenever someone is involved in changes in matter or in conditions that may lead to such changes.

The Scientific Method

Chemistry is a science based on observation and experimentation. Doing chemistry involves attempting to answer questions and explain observations in terms of the laws and theories of chemistry, using procedures that are accepted by the scientific community. There is no single route to answering a question or explaining an observation, but there is an aspect common to every approach: Each uses knowledge based on experiments that can be reproduced to verify the results. Some routes involve a hypothesis, a tentative explanation of observations that acts as a guide for gathering and checking information. We test a hypothesis by experimentation, calculation, and/or comparison with the experiments of others and then refine it as needed.

Some hypotheses are attempts to explain the behavior that is summarized in laws. The laws of science summarize a vast number of experimental observations, and describe or predict some facet of the natural world. If such a hypothesis turns out to be capable of

explaining a large body of experimental data, it can reach the status of a theory. Scientific theories are well-substantiated, comprehensive, testable explanations of particular aspects of nature. Theories are accepted because they provide satisfactory explanations, but they can be modified if new data become available. The path of discovery that leads from question and observation to law or hypothesis to theory, combined with experimental verification of the hypothesis and any necessary modification of the theory, is called the scientific method (Figure 1.1.3).



In this flowchart, the observation and curiosity box has an arrow pointing to a box labeled form hypothesis; make prediction. A curved arrow labeled next connects this box to a box labeled perform experiment; make more observations. Another arrow points back to the box that says form hypothesis; make prediction. This arrow is labeled results not consistent with prediction. Another arrow, labeled results are consistent with prediction points from the perform experiment box to a box labeled contributes to body of knowledge. However, an arrow also points from contributes to body of knowledge back to the form hypothesis; make prediction box. This arrow is labeled further testing does not support hypothesis. There are also two other arrows leading out from contributes to body of knowledge. One arrow is labeled much additional testing yields constant observations. This leads to the observation becomes law box. The other arrow is labeled much additional testing supports hypothesis. This arrow leads to the hypothesis becomes theory box.

Figure 1.1.3: The scientific method follows a process similar to the one shown in this diagram. All the key components are shown, in roughly the right order. Scientific progress is seldom neat and clean: It requires open inquiry and the reworking of questions and ideas in response to findings.

The Domains of Chemistry

Chemists study and describe the behavior of matter and energy in three different domains: macroscopic, microscopic, and symbolic. These domains provide different ways of considering and describing chemical behavior.

Macro is a Greek word that means “large.” The macroscopic domain is familiar to us: It is the realm of everyday things that are large enough to be sensed directly by human sight or touch. In daily life, this includes the food you eat and the breeze you feel on your face. The macroscopic domain includes everyday and laboratory chemistry, where we observe and measure physical and chemical properties, or changes such as density, solubility, and flammability.

The microscopic domain of chemistry is almost always visited in the imagination. *Micro* also comes from Greek and means “small.” Some aspects of the microscopic domains are visible through a microscope, such as a magnified image of graphite or bacteria. Viruses, for instance, are too small to be seen with the naked eye, but when we’re suffering from a cold, we’re reminded of how real they are.

However, most of the subjects in the microscopic domain of chemistry—such as atoms and molecules—are too small to be seen even with standard microscopes and often must be pictured in the mind. Other components of the microscopic domain include ions and electrons, protons and neutrons, and chemical bonds, each of which is far too small to see. This domain includes the individual metal atoms in a wire, the ions that compose a salt crystal, the changes in individual molecules that result in a color change, the conversion of nutrient molecules into tissue and energy, and the evolution of heat as bonds that hold atoms together are created.

The symbolic domain contains the specialized language used to represent components of the macroscopic and microscopic domains. Chemical symbols (such as those used in the periodic table), chemical formulas, and chemical equations are part of the symbolic domain, as are graphs and drawings. We can also consider calculations as part of the symbolic domain. These symbols

play an important role in chemistry because they help interpret the behavior of the macroscopic domain in terms of the components of the microscopic domain. One of the challenges for students learning chemistry is recognizing that the same symbols can represent different things in the macroscopic and microscopic domains, and one of the features that makes chemistry fascinating is the use of a domain that must be imagined to explain behavior in a domain that can be observed.

A helpful way to understand the three domains is via the essential and ubiquitous substance of water. That water is a liquid at moderate temperatures, will freeze to form a solid at lower temperatures, and boil to form a gas at higher temperatures (Figure 1.1.4) are macroscopic observations. But some properties of water fall into the microscopic domain—what we cannot observe with the naked eye. The description of water as comprised of two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom, and the explanation of freezing and boiling in terms of attractions between these molecules, is within the microscopic arena. The formula H_2O, which can describe water at either the macroscopic or microscopic levels, is an example of the symbolic domain. The abbreviations (*g*) for gas, (*s*) for solid, and (*l*) for liquid are also symbolic.

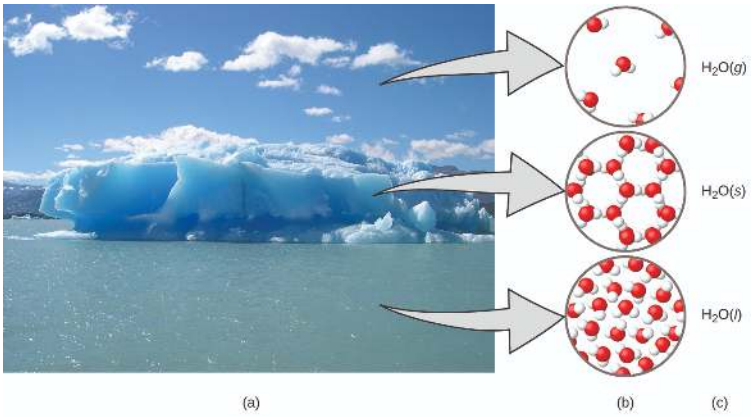


Figure 1.1.4: (a) Moisture in the air, icebergs, and the ocean represent water in the macroscopic domain. (b) At the molecular level (microscopic domain), gas molecules are far apart and disorganized, solid water molecules are close together and organized, and liquid molecules are close together and disorganized. (c) The formula H_2O symbolizes water, and (g), (s), and (l) symbolize its phases. Note that clouds are actually comprised of either very small liquid water droplets or solid water crystals; gaseous water in our atmosphere is not visible to the naked eye, although it may be sensed as humidity. (credit a: modification of work by "Gorkaazk"/Wikimedia Commons).

Figure A shows a photo of an iceberg floating in a sea has three arrows. Each arrow points to figure B, which contains three diagrams showing how the water molecules are organized in the air, ice, and sea. In the air, which contains the gaseous form of water, H subscript 2 O gas, the water molecules are disconnected and widely spaced. In the ice, which is the solid form of water, H subscript 2 O solid, the water molecules are bonded together into rings, with each ring containing six water molecules. Three of these rings are connected to each other. In the sea, which is the liquid form of water, H subscript 2 O liquid, the water molecules are very densely packed. The molecules are not bonded together.

Key Concepts and Summary

Chemistry deals with the composition, structure, and properties of matter, and the ways by which various forms of matter may be interconverted. Thus, it occupies a central place in the study and practice of science and technology. Chemists use the scientific method to perform experiments, pose hypotheses, and formulate laws and develop theories, so that they can better understand the behavior of the natural world. To do so, they operate in the macroscopic, microscopic, and symbolic domains. Chemists measure, analyze, purify, and synthesize a wide variety of substances that are important to our lives.

Glossary

chemistry
study of the composition, properties, and interactions of matter

hypothesis
tentative explanation of observations that acts as a guide for gathering and checking information

law
statement that summarizes a vast number of experimental observations, and describes or predicts some aspect of the natural world

macroscopic domain

realm of everyday things that are large enough to sense directly by human sight and touch

microscopic domain

realm of things that are much too small to be sensed directly

scientific method

path of discovery that leads from question and observation to law or hypothesis to theory, combined with experimental verification of the hypothesis and any necessary modification of the theory

symbolic domain

specialized language used to represent components of the macroscopic and microscopic domains, such as chemical symbols, chemical formulas, chemical equations, graphs, drawings, and calculations

theory

well-substantiated, comprehensive, testable explanation of a particular aspect of nature

---

This page titled 1.1: Chemistry in Context is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **1.1: Chemistry in Context** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.2: Measurements

Learning Objectives

- Explain the process of measurement and describe the three basic parts of a quantity.
- Describe the properties and units of length, mass, volume, density, temperature, and time.
- Recognize the common unit prefixes and use them to describe the magnitude of a measurement.
- Describe and calculate the density of a substance.
- Perform basic unit calculations and conversions in the metric and other unit systems.

Measurements provide the macroscopic information that is the basis of most of the hypotheses, theories, and laws that describe the behavior of matter and energy in both the macroscopic and microscopic domains of chemistry. Every measurement provides three kinds of information: the size or magnitude of the measurement (a number); a standard of comparison for the measurement (a unit); and an indication of the uncertainty of the measurement. While the number and unit are explicitly represented when a quantity is written, the uncertainty is an aspect of the measurement result that is more implicitly represented and will be discussed later.

The number in the measurement can be represented in different ways, including decimal form and scientific notation. For example, the maximum takeoff weight of a Boeing 777-200ER airliner is 298,000 kilograms, which can also be written as 2.98×10^5 kg. The mass of the average mosquito is about 0.0000025 kilograms, which can be written as 2.5×10^{-6} kg.

Units, such as liters, pounds, and centimeters, are standards of comparison for measurements. When we buy a 2-liter bottle of a soft drink, we expect that the volume of the drink was measured, so it is two times larger than the volume that everyone agrees to be 1 liter. The meat used to prepare a 0.25-pound hamburger is measured so it weighs one-fourth as much as 1 pound. Without units, a number can be meaningless, confusing, or possibly life threatening. Suppose a doctor prescribes phenobarbital to control a patient's seizures and states a dosage of "100" without specifying units. Not only will this be confusing to the medical professional giving the dose, but the consequences can be dire: 100 mg given three times per day can be effective as an anticonvulsant, but a single dose of 100 g is more than 10 times the lethal amount.

We usually report the results of scientific measurements in SI units, an updated version of the metric system, using the units listed in Table 1.2.1. Other units can be derived from these base units. The standards for these units are fixed by international agreement, and they are called the International System of Units or SI Units (from the French, *Le Système International d'Unités*). SI units have been used by the United States National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) since 1964.

Table 1.2.1: Base Units of the SI System

Property Measured	Name of Unit	Symbol of Unit
length	meter	m
mass	kilogram	kg
time	second	s
temperature	kelvin	K
electric current	ampere	A
amount of substance	mole	mol
luminous intensity	candela	cd

Sometimes we use units that are fractions or multiples of a base unit. Ice cream is sold in quarts (a familiar, non-SI base unit), pints (0.5 quart), or gallons (4 quarts). We also use fractions or multiples of units in the SI system, but these fractions or multiples are always powers of 10. Fractional or multiple SI units are named using a prefix and the name of the base unit. For example, a length of 1000 meters is also called a kilometer because the prefix *kilo* means "one thousand," which in scientific notation is 10^3 (1 kilometer = 1000 m = 10^3 m). The prefixes used and the powers to which 10 are raised are listed in Table 1.2.2.

NG, equals 4 times ten to the negative 9, or 0.000000004 g. The prefix micro has the greek letter mu as its symbol and a factor of 10 to the negative sixth power. Therefore, 1 microliter, or mu L, is equal to one times ten to the negative 6 or 0.000001 L. The

prefix milli has a lowercase M as its symbol and a factor of 10 to the negative third power. Therefore, 2 millimoles, or M mol, are equal to two times ten to the negative 3 or 0.002 mol. The prefix centi has a lowercase C as its symbol and a factor of 10 to the negative second power. Therefore, 7 centimeters, or C M, are equal to seven times ten to the negative 2 meters or 0.07 M O L. The prefix deci has a lowercase D as its symbol and a factor of 10 to the negative first power. Therefore, 1 deciliter, or lowercase D uppercase L, are equal to one times ten to the negative 1 meters or 0.1 L. The prefix kilo has a lowercase K as its symbol and a factor of 10 to the third power. Therefore, 1 kilometer, or K M, is equal to one times ten to the third meters or 1000 M. The prefix mega has an uppercase M as its symbol and a factor of 10 to the sixth power. Therefore, 3 megahertz, or M H Z, are equal to three times 10 to the sixth hertz, or 3000000 H Z. The prefix giga has an uppercase G as its symbol and a factor of 10 to the ninth power. Therefore, 8 gigayears, or G Y R, are equal to eight times 10 to the ninth years, or 800000000 G Y R. The prefix tera has an uppercase T as its symbol and a factor of 10 to the twelfth power. Therefore, 5 terawatts, or T W, are equal to five times 10 to the twelfth watts, or 5000000000000 W." data-quail-id="64" data-mt-width="1076">

Table 1.2.2: Common Unit Prefixes

Prefix	Symbol	Factor	Example
femto	f	10^{-15}	1 femtosecond (fs) = 1×10^{-15} s (0.000000000000001 s)
pico	p	10^{-12}	1 picometer (pm) = 1×10^{-12} m (0.000000000001 m)
nano	n	10^{-9}	4 nanograms (ng) = 4×10^{-9} g (0.000000004 g)
micro	µ	10^{-6}	1 microliter (µL) = 1×10^{-6} L (0.000001 L)
milli	m	10^{-3}	2 millimoles (mmol) = 2×10^{-3} mol (0.002 mol)
centi	c	10^{-2}	7 centimeters (cm) = 7×10^{-2} m (0.07 m)
deci	d	10^{-1}	1 deciliter (dL) = 1×10^{-1} L (0.1 L)
kilo	k	10^{3}	1 kilometer (km) = 1×10^{3} m (1000 m)
mega	M	10^{6}	3 megahertz (MHz) = 3×10^{6} Hz (3,000,000 Hz)
giga	G	10^{9}	8 gigayears (Gyr) = 8×10^{9} yr (8,000,000,000 Gyr)
tera	T	10^{12}	5 terawatts (TW) = 5×10^{12} W (5,000,000,000,000 W)

SI Base Units

The initial units of the metric system, which eventually evolved into the SI system, were established in France during the French Revolution. The original standards for the meter and the kilogram were adopted there in 1799 and eventually by other countries. This section introduces four of the SI base units commonly used in chemistry. Other SI units will be introduced in subsequent chapters.

Length

The standard unit of length in both the SI and original metric systems is the meter (m). A meter was originally specified as 1/10,000,000 of the distance from the North Pole to the equator. It is now defined as the distance light in a vacuum travels in 1/299,792,458 of a second. A meter is about 3 inches longer than a yard (Figure 1.2.1); one meter is about 39.37 inches or 1.094

yards. Longer distances are often reported in kilometers (1 km = 1000 m = 10^3 m), whereas shorter distances can be reported in centimeters (1 cm = 0.01 m = 10^{-2} m) or millimeters (1 mm = 0.001 m = 10^{-3} m).

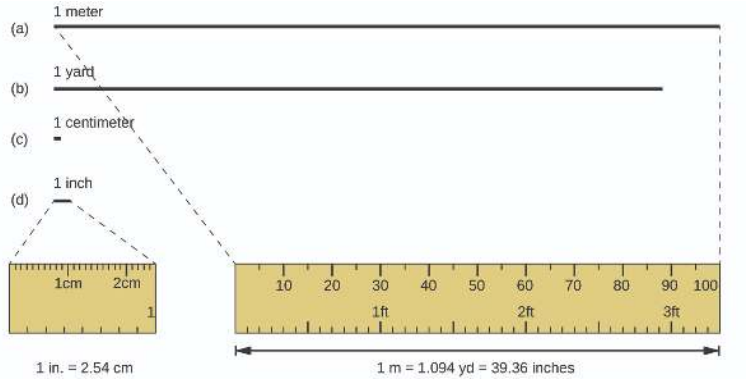


Figure 1.2.1: The relative lengths of 1 m, 1 yd, 1 cm, and 1 in. are shown (not actual size), as well as comparisons of 2.54 cm and 1 in., and of 1 m and 1.094 yd.

A ruler is shown with various lengths of black line shown above it to compare the relative lengths of 1 inch, meter, centimeter, and yard.

Mass

The standard unit of mass in the SI system is the kilogram (kg). A kilogram was originally defined as the mass of a liter of water (a cube of water with an edge length of exactly 0.1 meter). It is now defined by a certain cylinder of platinum-iridium alloy, which is kept in France (Figure 1.4.2). Any object with the same mass as this cylinder is said to have a mass of 1 kilogram. One kilogram is about 2.2 pounds. The gram (g) is exactly equal to 1/1000 of the mass of the kilogram (10^{-3} kg).



Figure 1.2.2: This replica prototype kilogram is housed at the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) in Maryland. (credit: National Institutes of Standards and Technology).

Temperature

Temperature is an intensive property. The SI unit of temperature is the kelvin (K). The IUPAC convention is to use kelvin (all lowercase) for the word, K (uppercase) for the unit symbol, and neither the word “degree” nor the degree symbol (°). The degree Celsius (°C) is also allowed in the SI system, with both the word “degree” and the degree symbol used for Celsius measurements. Celsius degrees are the same magnitude as those of kelvin, but the two scales place their zeros in different places. Water freezes at 273.15 K (0 °C) and boils at 373.15 K (100 °C) by definition, and normal human body temperature is approximately 310 K (37 °C). The conversion between these two units and the Fahrenheit scale will be discussed later in this chapter.

Time

The SI base unit of time is the second (s). Small and large time intervals can be expressed with the appropriate prefixes; for example, 3 microseconds = 0.000003 s = 3×10^{-6} and 5 megaseconds = 5,000,000 s = 5×10^6 s. Alternatively, hours, days, and years can be used.

Derived SI Units

We can derive many units from the seven SI base units. For example, we can use the base unit of length to define a unit of volume, and the base units of mass and length to define a unit of density.

Volume

Volume is the measure of the amount of space occupied by an object. The standard SI unit of volume is defined by the base unit of length (Figure 1.2.3). The standard volume is a cubic meter (m^3), a cube with an edge length of exactly one meter. To dispense a cubic meter of water, we could build a cubic box with edge lengths of exactly one meter. This box would hold a cubic meter of water or any other substance.

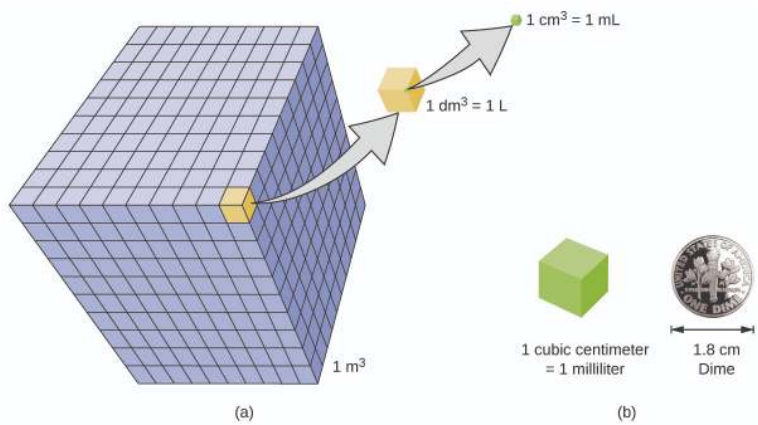


Figure 1.2.3: (a) The relative volumes are shown for cubes of 1 m^3, 1 dm^3 (1 L), and 1 cm^3 (1 mL) (not to scale). (b) The diameter of a dime is compared relative to the edge length of a 1-cm^3 (1-mL) cube.

A more commonly used unit of volume is derived from the decimeter (0.1 m, or 10 cm). A cube with edge lengths of exactly one decimeter contains a volume of one cubic decimeter (dm^3). A liter (L) is the more common name for the cubic decimeter. One liter is about 1.06 quarts. A cubic centimeter (cm^3) is the volume of a cube with an edge length of exactly one centimeter. The abbreviation **cc** (for **c**ubic **c**entimeter) is often used by health professionals. A cubic centimeter is also called a milliliter (mL) and is 1/1000 of a liter.

Density

We use the mass and volume of a substance to determine its density. Thus, the units of density are defined by the base units of mass and length.

The density of a substance is the ratio of the mass of a sample of the substance to its volume. The SI unit for density is the kilogram per cubic meter (kg/m^3). For many situations, however, this as an inconvenient unit, and we often use grams per cubic centimeter (g/cm^3) for the densities of solids and liquids, and grams per liter (g/L) for gases. Although there are exceptions, most liquids and solids have densities that range from about 0.7 g/cm^3 (the density of gasoline) to 19 g/cm^3 (the density of gold). The density of air is about 1.2 g/L. Table 1.2.3 shows the densities of some common substances.

Table 1.2.3: Densities of Common Substances

Solids	Liquids	Gases (at 25 °C and 1 atm)
ice (at 0 °C) 0.92 g/cm^3	water 1.0 g/cm^3	dry air 1.20 g/L
oak (wood) 0.60–0.90 g/cm^3	ethanol 0.79 g/cm^3	oxygen 1.31 g/L
iron 7.9 g/cm^3	acetone 0.79 g/cm^3	nitrogen 1.14 g/L
copper 9.0 g/cm^3	glycerin 1.26 g/cm^3	carbon dioxide 1.80 g/L
lead 11.3 g/cm^3	olive oil 0.92 g/cm^3	helium 0.16 g/L
silver 10.5 g/cm^3	gasoline 0.70–0.77 g/cm^3	neon 0.83 g/L
gold 19.3 g/cm^3	mercury 13.6 g/cm^3	radon 9.1 g/L

While there are many ways to determine the density of an object, perhaps the most straightforward method involves separately finding the mass and volume of the object, and then dividing the mass of the sample by its volume. In the following example, the mass is found directly by weighing, but the volume is found indirectly through length measurements.

$$\text{density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$$

Example 1.2.1

Calculation of Density Gold—in bricks, bars, and coins—has been a form of currency for centuries. In order to swindle people into paying for a brick of gold without actually investing in a brick of gold, people have considered filling the centers of hollow gold bricks with lead to fool buyers into thinking that the entire brick is gold. It does not work: Lead is a dense substance, but its density is not as great as that of gold, 19.3 g/cm^3. What is the density of lead if a cube of lead has an edge length of 2.00 cm and a mass of 90.7 g?

Solution

The density of a substance can be calculated by dividing its mass by its volume. The volume of a cube is calculated by cubing the edge length.

$$\text{volume of lead cube} = 2.00\ \text{cm} \times 2.00\ \text{cm} \times 2.00\ \text{cm} = 8.00\ \text{cm}^3$$

$$\text{density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}} = \frac{90.7\ \text{g}}{8.00\ \text{cm}^3} = \frac{11.3\ \text{g}}{1.00\ \text{cm}^3} = 11.3\ \text{g/cm}^3$$

(We will discuss the reason for rounding to the first decimal place in the next section.)

Exercise 1.2.1

a. To three decimal places, what is the volume of a cube (cm^3) with an edge length of 0.843 cm?
b. If the cube in part (a) is copper and has a mass of 5.34 g, what is the density of copper to two decimal places?

Answer a

0.599 cm^3;

Answer b

8.91 g/cm^3

Example 1.2.2: Using Displacement of Water to Determine Density

This PhET simulation illustrates another way to determine density, using displacement of water. Determine the density of the red and yellow blocks.

Solution

When you open the density simulation and select Same Mass, you can choose from several 5.00-kg colored blocks that you can drop into a tank containing 100.00 L water. The yellow block floats (it is less dense than water), and the water level rises to 105.00 L. While floating, the yellow block displaces 5.00 L water, an amount equal to the weight of the block. The red block sinks (it is more dense than water, which has density = 1.00 kg/L), and the water level rises to 101.25 L.

The red block therefore displaces 1.25 L water, an amount equal to the volume of the block. The density of the red block is:

$$\text{density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}} = \frac{5.00\ \text{kg}}{1.25\ \text{L}} = 4.00\ \text{kg/L}$$

Note that since the yellow block is not completely submerged, you cannot determine its density from this information. But if you hold the yellow block on the bottom of the tank, the water level rises to 110.00 L, which means that it now displaces 10.00 L water, and its density can be found:

$$\text{density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}} = \frac{5.00\ \text{kg}}{10.00\ \text{L}} = 0.500\ \text{kg/L}$$

? Exercise 1.2.1

Remove all of the blocks from the water and add the green block to the tank of water, placing it approximately in the middle of the tank. Determine the density of the green block.

Answer

2.00 kg/L

Summary

Measurements provide quantitative information that is critical in studying and practicing chemistry. Each measurement has an amount, a unit for comparison, and an uncertainty. Measurements can be represented in either decimal or scientific notation. Scientists primarily use the SI (International System) or metric systems. We use base SI units such as meters, seconds, and kilograms, as well as derived units, such as liters (for volume) and g/cm^3 (for density). In many cases, we find it convenient to use unit prefixes that yield fractional and multiple units, such as microseconds (10^{-6} seconds) and megahertz (10^6 hertz), respectively.

Key Equations

- $\text{density} = \dfrac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$

Glossary

Celsius (°C)
unit of temperature; water freezes at 0 °C and boils at 100 °C on this scale

cubic centimeter (cm^3 or cc)
volume of a cube with an edge length of exactly 1 cm

cubic meter (m^3)
SI unit of volume

density
ratio of mass to volume for a substance or object

kelvin (K)
SI unit of temperature; 273.15 K = 0 ºC

kilogram (kg)
standard SI unit of mass; 1 kg = approximately 2.2 pounds

length
measure of one dimension of an object

liter (L)
(also, cubic decimeter) unit of volume; 1 L = 1,000 cm^3

meter (m)
standard metric and SI unit of length; 1 m = approximately 1.094 yards

milliliter (mL)
1/1,000 of a liter; equal to 1 cm^3

second (s)
SI unit of time

SI units (International System of Units)

standards fixed by international agreement in the International System of Units (*Le Système International d'Unités*)

unit

standard of comparison for measurements

volume

amount of space occupied by an object

This page titled 1.2: Measurements is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **1.4: Measurements** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.



https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122462

1.3: Mathematical Treatment of Measurement Results

Learning Objectives

- Explain the dimensional analysis (factor label) approach to mathematical calculations involving quantities.
- Describe how to use dimensional analysis to carry out unit conversions for a given property and computations involving two or more properties.
- Convert between the three main temperature units: Fahrenheit, Celsius, and Kelvin.

It is often the case that a quantity of interest may not be easy (or even possible) to measure directly but instead must be calculated from other directly measured properties and appropriate mathematical relationships. For example, consider measuring the average speed of an athlete running sprints. This is typically accomplished by measuring the *time* required for the athlete to run from the starting line to the finish line, and the *distance* between these two lines, and then computing *speed* from the equation that relates these three properties:

$$\text{speed} = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}}$$

An Olympic-quality sprinter can run 100 m in approximately 10 s, corresponding to an average speed of

$$\frac{100\ \text{m}}{10\ \text{s}} = 10\ \text{m/s}$$

Note that this simple arithmetic involves dividing the numbers of each measured quantity to yield the number of the computed quantity (100/10 = 10) *and likewise* dividing the units of each measured quantity to yield the unit of the computed quantity (m/s = m/s). Now, consider using this same relation to predict the time required for a person running at this speed to travel a distance of 25 m. The same relation between the three properties is used, but in this case, the two quantities provided are a speed (10 m/s) and a distance (25 m). To yield the sought property, time, the equation must be rearranged appropriately:

$$\text{time} = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{speed}}$$

The time can then be computed as:

$$\frac{25\ \text{m}}{10\ \text{m/s}} = 2.5\ \text{s}$$

Again, arithmetic on the numbers (25/10 = 2.5) was accompanied by the same arithmetic on the units (m/m/s = s) to yield the number and unit of the result, 2.5 s. Note that, just as for numbers, when a unit is divided by an identical unit (in this case, m/m), the result is "1"—or, as commonly phrased, the units "cancel."

These calculations are examples of a versatile mathematical approach known as dimensional analysis (or the factor-label method). Dimensional analysis is based on this premise: *the units of quantities must be subjected to the same mathematical operations as their associated numbers*. This method can be applied to computations ranging from simple unit conversions to more complex, multi-step calculations involving several different quantities.

Conversion Factors and Dimensional Analysis

A ratio of two equivalent quantities expressed with different measurement units can be used as a unit conversion factor. For example, the lengths of 2.54 cm and 1 in. are equivalent (by definition), and so a unit conversion factor may be derived from the ratio,

$$\frac{2.54\ \text{cm}}{1\ \text{in.}}\ (2.54\ \text{cm} = 1\ \text{in.})\ \text{or}\ 2.54\ \frac{\text{cm}}{\text{in.}}$$

Several other commonly used conversion factors are given in Table 1.3.1.

Table 1.3.1: Common Conversion Factors

Length	Volume	Mass
1 m = 1.0936 yd	1 L = 1.0567 qt	1 kg = 2.2046 lb
1 in. = 2.54 cm (exact)	1 qt = 0.94635 L	1 lb = 453.59 g
1 km = 0.62137 mi	1 ft^3 = 28.317 L	1 (avoirdupois) oz = 28.349 g
1 mi = 1609.3 m	1 tbsp = 14.787 mL	1 (troy) oz = 31.103 g

When we multiply a quantity (such as distance given in inches) by an appropriate unit conversion factor, we convert the quantity to an equivalent value with different units (such as distance in centimeters). For example, a basketball player's vertical jump of 34 inches can be converted to centimeters by:

$$34\ \cancel{\text{in.}} \times \frac{2.54\ \text{cm}}{1\ \cancel{\text{in.}}} = 86\ \text{cm}$$

Since this simple arithmetic involves *quantities*, the premise of dimensional analysis requires that we multiply both *numbers and units*. The numbers of these two quantities are multiplied to yield the number of the product quantity, 86, whereas the units are multiplied to yield

$$\frac{\text{in.} \times \text{cm}}{\text{in.}}.$$

Just as for numbers, a ratio of identical units is also numerically equal to one,

$$\frac{\text{in.}}{\text{in.}} = 1$$

and the unit product thus simplifies to *cm*. (When identical units divide to yield a factor of 1, they are said to "cancel.") Using dimensional analysis, we can determine that a unit conversion factor has been set up correctly by checking to confirm that the original unit will cancel, and the result will contain the sought (converted) unit.

Example 1.3.1: Using a Unit Conversion Factor

The mass of a competition Frisbee is 125 g. Convert its mass to ounces using the unit conversion factor derived from the relationship 1 oz = 28.349 g (Table 1.3.1).

Solution

If we have the conversion factor, we can determine the mass in kilograms using an equation similar the one used for converting length from inches to centimeters.

$$x\ \text{oz} = 125\ \text{g} \times \text{unit conversion factor}$$

We write the unit conversion factor in its two forms:

$$\frac{1\ \text{oz}}{28.349\ \text{g}}\ \text{and}\ \frac{28.349\ \text{g}}{1\ \text{oz}}$$

The correct unit conversion factor is the ratio that cancels the units of grams and leaves ounces.

$$\begin{aligned} x \text{ oz} &= 125 \cancel{\text{ g}} \times \frac{1 \text{ oz}}{28.349 \cancel{\text{ g}}} \\ &= \left(\frac{125}{28.349}\right) \text{ oz} \\ &= 4.41 \text{ oz (three significant figures)} \end{aligned}$$

? Exercise 1.3.1

Convert a volume of 9.345 qt to liters.

Answer

8.844 L

Beyond simple unit conversions, the factor-label method can be used to solve more complex problems involving computations. Regardless of the details, the basic approach is the same—all the *factors* involved in the calculation must be appropriately oriented to insure that their *labels* (units) will appropriately cancel and/or combine to yield the desired unit in the result. This is why it is referred to as the factor-label method. As your study of chemistry continues, you will encounter many opportunities to apply this approach.

✓ Example 1.3.2: Computing Quantities from Measurement Results

What is the density of common antifreeze in units of g/mL? A 4.00-qt sample of the antifreeze weighs 9.26 lb.

Solution

Since $\text{density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$, we need to divide the mass in grams by the volume in milliliters. In general: the number of units of B = the number of units of A × unit conversion factor. The necessary conversion factors are given in Table 1.7.1: 1 lb = 453.59 g; 1 L = 1.0567 qt; 1 L = 1,000 mL. We can convert mass from pounds to grams in one step:

$$9.26 \cancel{\text{ lb}} \times \frac{453.59 \text{ g}}{1 \cancel{\text{ lb}}} = 4.20 \times 10^3 \text{ g}$$

We need to use two steps to convert volume from quarts to milliliters.

1. *Convert quarts to liters.*

$$4.00 \cancel{\text{ qt}} \times \frac{1 \text{ L}}{1.0567 \cancel{\text{ qt}}} = 3.78 \text{ L}$$

2. *Convert liters to milliliters.*

$$3.78 \cancel{\text{ L}} \times \frac{1000 \text{ mL}}{1 \cancel{\text{ L}}} = 3.78 \times 10^3 \text{ mL}$$

Then,

$$\text{density} = \frac{4.20 \times 10^3 \text{ g}}{3.78 \times 10^3 \text{ mL}} = 1.11 \text{ g/mL}$$

Alternatively, the calculation could be set up in a way that uses three unit conversion factors sequentially as follows:

$$\frac{9.26 \cancel{\text{ lb}}}{4.00 \cancel{\text{ qt}}} \times \frac{453.59 \text{ g}}{1 \cancel{\text{ lb}}} \times \frac{1.0567 \cancel{\text{ qt}}}{1 \cancel{\text{ L}}} \times \frac{1 \cancel{\text{ L}}}{1000 \text{ mL}} = 1.11 \text{ g/mL}$$

? Exercise 1.3.2

What is the volume in liters of 1.000 oz, given that 1 L = 1.0567 qt and 1 qt = 32 oz (exactly)?

Answer

2.956×10^{-2} L

✓ Example 1.3.3: Computing Quantities from Measurement Results

While being driven from Philadelphia to Atlanta, a distance of about 1250 km, a 2014 Lamborghini Aventador Roadster uses 213 L gasoline.

a. What (average) fuel economy, in miles per gallon, did the Roadster get during this trip?
b. If gasoline costs $3.80 per gallon, what was the fuel cost for this trip?

Solution

(a) We first convert distance from kilometers to miles:

$$1250 \text{ km} \times \frac{0.62137 \text{ mi}}{1 \text{ km}} = 777 \text{ mi}$$

and then convert volume from liters to gallons:

$$213 \cancel{\text{ L}} \times \frac{1.0567 \cancel{\text{ qt}}}{1 \cancel{\text{ L}}} \times \frac{1 \text{ gal}}{4 \cancel{\text{ qt}}} = 56.3 \text{ gal}$$

Then,

$$\text{(average) mileage} = \frac{777 \text{ mi}}{56.3 \text{ gal}} = 13.8 \text{ miles/gallon} = 13.8 \text{ mpg}$$

Alternatively, the calculation could be set up in a way that uses all the conversion factors sequentially, as follows:

$$\frac{1250 \cancel{\text{ km}}}{213 \cancel{\text{ L}}} \times \frac{0.62137 \text{ mi}}{1 \cancel{\text{ km}}} \times \frac{1 \cancel{\text{ L}}}{1.0567 \cancel{\text{ qt}}} \times \frac{4 \cancel{\text{ qt}}}{1 \text{ gal}} = 13.8 \text{ mpg}$$

(b) Using the previously calculated volume in gallons, we find:

$$56.3 \text{ gal} \times \frac{\$3.80}{1 \text{ gal}} = \$214$$

? Exercise 1.3.3

A Toyota Prius Hybrid uses 59.7 L gasoline to drive from San Francisco to Seattle, a distance of 1300 km (two significant digits).

a. What (average) fuel economy, in miles per gallon, did the Prius get during this trip?
b. If gasoline costs $3.90 per gallon, what was the fuel cost for this trip?

Answer a

51 mpg

Answer b

$62

Conversion of Temperature Units

We use the word temperature to refer to the hotness or coldness of a substance. One way we measure a change in temperature is to use the fact that most substances expand when their temperature increases and contract when their temperature decreases. The mercury or alcohol in a common glass thermometer changes its volume as the temperature changes. Because the volume of the liquid changes more than the volume of the glass, we can see the liquid expand when it gets warmer and contract when it gets cooler.

To mark a scale on a thermometer, we need a set of reference values: Two of the most commonly used are the freezing and boiling temperatures of water at a specified atmospheric pressure. On the Celsius scale, 0 °C is defined as the freezing temperature of water and 100 °C as the boiling temperature of water. The space between the two temperatures is divided into 100 equal intervals, which we call degrees. On the Fahrenheit scale, the freezing point of water is defined as 32 °F and the boiling temperature as 212 °F. The space between these two points on a Fahrenheit thermometer is divided into 180 equal parts (degrees).

Defining the Celsius and Fahrenheit temperature scales as described in the previous paragraph results in a slightly more complex relationship between temperature values on these two scales than for different units of measure for other properties. Most measurement units for a given property are directly proportional to one another (y = mx). Using familiar length units as one example:

$$\text{length in feet} = \left(\frac{1 \text{ ft}}{12 \text{ in.}}\right) \times \text{length in inches}$$

where

- y = length in feet,
- x = length in inches, and
- the proportionality constant, m, is the conversion factor.

The Celsius and Fahrenheit temperature scales, however, do not share a common zero point, and so the relationship between these two scales is a linear one rather than a proportional one ($y = mx + b$). Consequently, converting a temperature from one of these scales into the other requires more than simple multiplication by a conversion factor, m, it also must take into account differences in the scales' zero points (b).

The linear equation relating Celsius and Fahrenheit temperatures is easily derived from the two temperatures used to define each scale. Representing the Celsius temperature as x and the Fahrenheit temperature as y, the slope, m, is computed to be:

$$\begin{aligned} m &= \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} \\ &= \frac{212 \text{ °F} - 32 \text{ °F}}{100 \text{ °C} - 0 \text{ °C}} \\ &= \frac{180 \text{ °F}}{100 \text{ °C}} \\ &= \frac{9 \text{ °F}}{5 \text{ °C}} \end{aligned}$$

The y-intercept of the equation, b, is then calculated using either of the equivalent temperature pairs, (100 °C, 212 °F) or (0 °C, 32 °F), as:

$$\begin{aligned} b &= y - mx \\ &= 32 \text{ °F} - \frac{9 \text{ °F}}{5 \text{ °C}} \times 0 \text{ °C} \\ &= 32 \text{ °F} \end{aligned}$$

The equation relating the temperature scales is then:

$$T_{\text{°F}} = \left(\frac{9 \text{ °F}}{5 \text{ °C}} \times T_{\text{°C}}\right) + 32 \text{ °C}$$

An abbreviated form of this equation that omits the measurement units is:

$$T_{\text{°F}} = \frac{9}{5} \times T_{\text{°C}} + 32$$

Rearrangement of this equation yields the form useful for converting from Fahrenheit to Celsius:

$$T_{\text{°C}} = \frac{5}{9}(T_{\text{°F}} + 32)$$

As mentioned earlier in this chapter, the SI unit of temperature is the kelvin (K). Unlike the Celsius and Fahrenheit scales, the kelvin scale is an absolute temperature scale in which 0 (zero) K corresponds to the lowest temperature that can theoretically be achieved. The early 19th-century discovery of the relationship between a gas's volume and temperature suggested that the volume of a gas would be zero at −273.15 °C. In 1848, British physicist William Thompson, who later adopted the title of Lord Kelvin, proposed an absolute temperature scale based on this concept (further treatment of this topic is provided in this text's chapter on gases).

The freezing temperature of water on this scale is 273.15 K and its boiling temperature 373.15 K. Notice the numerical difference in these two reference temperatures is 100, the same as for the Celsius scale, and so the linear relation between these two temperature scales will exhibit a slope of $1 \frac{\text{K}}{\text{°C}}$. Following the same approach, the equations for converting between the kelvin and Celsius temperature scales are derived to be:

$$T_{\mathrm{K}} = T_{^\circ\mathrm{C}} + 273.15$$

$$T_{^\circ\mathrm{C}} = T_{\mathrm{K}} - 273.15$$

The 273.15 in these equations has been determined experimentally, so it is not exact. Figure 1.3.1 shows the relationship among the three temperature scales. Recall that we do not use the degree sign with temperatures on the kelvin scale.

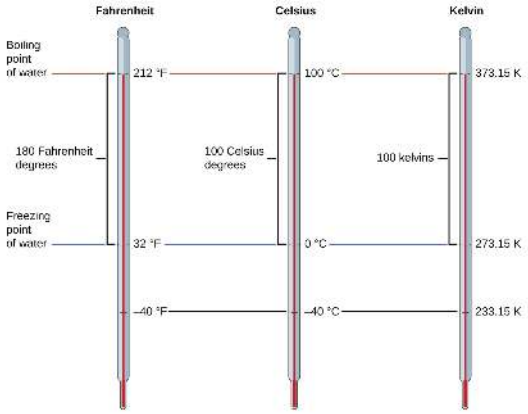


Figure 1.3.1: The Fahrenheit, Celsius, and kelvin temperature scales are compared.

Although the kelvin (absolute) temperature scale is the official SI temperature scale, Celsius is commonly used in many scientific contexts and is the scale of choice for nonscience contexts in almost all areas of the world. Very few countries (the U.S. and its territories, the Bahamas, Belize, Cayman Islands, and Palau) still use Fahrenheit for weather, medicine, and cooking.

Example 1.3.4: Conversion from Celsius

Normal body temperature has been commonly accepted as 37.0 °C (although it varies depending on time of day and method of measurement, as well as among individuals). What is this temperature on the kelvin scale and on the Fahrenheit scale?

Solution

$$\mathrm{K} = {}^\circ\mathrm{C} + 273.15 = 37.0 + 273.2 = 310.2\ \mathrm{K}$$

$${}^\circ\mathrm{F} = \frac{9}{5}\,{}^\circ\mathrm{C} + 32.0 = \left(\frac{9}{5} \times 37.0\right) + 32.0 = 66.6 + 32.0 = 98.6\ {}^\circ\mathrm{F}$$

Exercise 1.3.4

Convert 80.92 °C to K and °F.

Answer

354.07 K, 177.7 °F

Example 1.3.5: Conversion from Fahrenheit

Baking a ready-made pizza calls for an oven temperature of 450 °F. If you are in Europe, and your oven thermometer uses the Celsius scale, what is the setting? What is the kelvin temperature?

Solution

$${}^\circ\mathrm{C} = \frac{5}{9}({}^\circ\mathrm{F} - 32) = \frac{5}{9}(450 - 32) = \frac{5}{9} \times 418 = 232{}^\circ\mathrm{C} \rightarrow \text{set oven to } 230{}^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad \text{(two significant figures)}$$

$$\mathrm{K} = {}^\circ\mathrm{C} + 273.15 = 230 + 273 = 503\ \mathrm{K} \rightarrow 5.0 \times 10^2\ \mathrm{K} \quad \text{(two significant figures)}$$

Exercise 1.3.5

Convert 50 °F to °C and K.

Answer

10 °C, 280 K

Summary

Measurements are made using a variety of units. It is often useful or necessary to convert a measured quantity from one unit into another. These conversions are accomplished using unit conversion factors, which are derived by simple applications of a mathematical approach called the factor-label method or dimensional analysis. This strategy is also employed to calculate sought quantities using measured quantities and appropriate mathematical relations.

Key Equations

- $T_{^\circ\mathrm{C}} = \frac{5}{9} \times T_{^\circ\mathrm{F}} - 32$
- $T_{^\circ\mathrm{F}} = \frac{9}{5} \times T_{^\circ\mathrm{C}} + 32$
- $T_{\mathrm{K}} = {}^\circ\mathrm{C} + 273.15$
- $T_{^\circ\mathrm{C}} = \mathrm{K} - 273.15$

Glossary

dimensional analysis
(also, factor-label method) versatile mathematical approach that can be applied to computations ranging from simple unit conversions to more complex, multi-step calculations involving several different quantities

Fahrenheit
unit of temperature; water freezes at 32 °F and boils at 212 °F on this scale

unit conversion factor
ratio of equivalent quantities expressed with different units; used to convert from one unit to a different unit

---

This page titled 1.3: Mathematical Treatment of Measurement Results is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **1.6: Mathematical Treatment of Measurement Results** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122463

1.4: Chemical Formulas

Learning Objectives

- Symbolize the composition of molecules using molecular formulas and empirical formulas
- Represent the bonding arrangement of atoms within molecules using structural formulas

A molecular formula is a representation of a molecule that uses chemical symbols to indicate the types of atoms followed by subscripts to show the number of atoms of each type in the molecule. (A subscript is used only when more than one atom of a given type is present.) Molecular formulas are also used as abbreviations for the names of compounds.

The structural formula for a compound gives the same information as its molecular formula (the types and numbers of atoms in the molecule) but also shows how the atoms are connected in the molecule. The structural formula for methane contains symbols for one C atom and four H atoms, indicating the number of atoms in the molecule (Figure 1.4.1). The lines represent bonds that hold the atoms together. (A chemical bond is an attraction between atoms or ions that holds them together in a molecule or a crystal.) We will discuss chemical bonds and see how to predict the arrangement of atoms in a molecule later. For now, simply know that the lines are an indication of how the atoms are connected in a molecule. A ball-and-stick model shows the geometric arrangement of the atoms with atomic sizes not to scale, and a space-filling model shows the relative sizes of the atoms.



Figure 1.4.1: A methane molecule can be represented as (a) a molecular formula, (b) a structural formula, (c) a ball-and-stick model, and (d) a space-filling model. Carbon and hydrogen atoms are represented by black and white spheres, respectively.

Figure A shows C H subscript 4. Figure B shows a carbon atom that is bonded to four hydrogen atoms at right angles: one above, one to the left, one to the right, and one below. Figure C shows a 3-D, ball-and-stick model of the carbon atom bonded to four hydrogen atoms. Figure D shows a space-filling model of a carbon atom with hydrogen atoms partially embedded into the surface of the carbon atom.

Although many elements consist of discrete, individual atoms, some exist as molecules made up of two or more atoms of the element chemically bonded together. For example, most samples of the elements hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen are composed of molecules that contain two atoms each (called diatomic molecules) and thus have the molecular formulas H_2, O_2, and N_2, respectively. Other elements commonly found as diatomic molecules are fluorine (F_2), chlorine (Cl_2), bromine (Br_2), and iodine (I_2). The most common form of the element sulfur is composed of molecules that consist of eight atoms of sulfur; its molecular formula is S_8 (Figure 1.4.2).

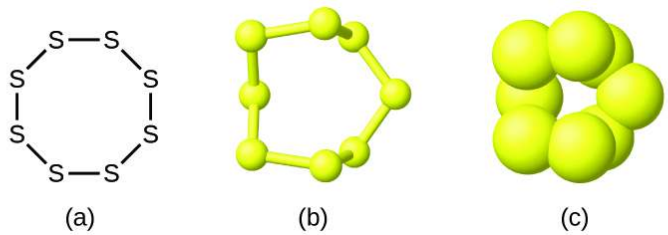


Figure 1.4.2: A molecule of sulfur is composed of eight sulfur atoms and is therefore written as S_8. It can be represented as (a) a structural formula, (b) a ball-and-stick model, and (c) a space-filling model. Sulfur atoms are represented by yellow spheres.

Figure A shows eight sulfur atoms, symbolized with the letter S, that are bonded to each other to form an octagon. Figure B shows a 3-D, ball-and-stick model of the arrangement of the sulfur atoms. The shape is clearly not octagonal as it is represented in the structural formula. Figure C is a space-filling model that shows each sulfur atom is partially embedded into the sulfur atom it bonds with.

It is important to note that a subscript following a symbol and a number in front of a symbol do not represent the same thing; for example, H_2 and 2H represent distinctly different species. H_2 is a molecular formula; it represents a diatomic molecule of hydrogen, consisting of two atoms of the element that are chemically bonded together. The expression 2H, on the other hand,

indicates two separate hydrogen atoms that are not combined as a unit. The expression $2H_2$ represents two molecules of diatomic hydrogen (Figure 1.4.3).

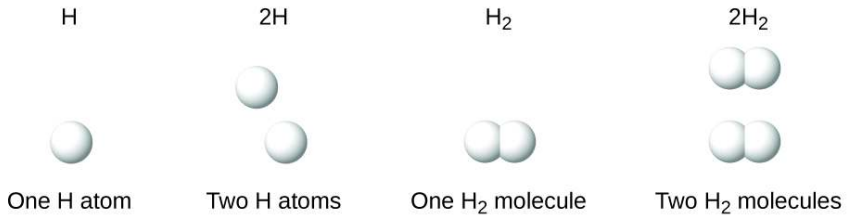


Figure 1.4.3: The symbols H, 2H, H_2, and $2H_2$ represent very different entities.

This figure shows four diagrams. The diagram for H shows a single, white sphere and is labeled one H atom. The diagram for 2 H shows two white spheres that are not bonded together. It is labeled 2 H atoms. The diagram for H subscript 2 shows two white spheres bonded together. It is labeled one H subscript 2 molecule. The diagram for 2 H subscript 2 shows two sets of bonded, white spheres. It is labeled 2 H subscript 2 molecules.

Compounds are formed when two or more elements chemically combine, resulting in the formation of bonds. For example, hydrogen and oxygen can react to form water, and sodium and chlorine can react to form table salt. We sometimes describe the composition of these compounds with an empirical formula, which indicates the types of atoms present and *the simplest whole-number ratio of the number of atoms (or ions) in the compound*. For example, titanium dioxide (used as pigment in white paint and in the thick, white, blocking type of sunscreen) has an empirical formula of TiO_2. This identifies the elements titanium (Ti) and oxygen (O) as the constituents of titanium dioxide, and indicates the presence of twice as many atoms of the element oxygen as atoms of the element titanium (Figure 1.4.4).

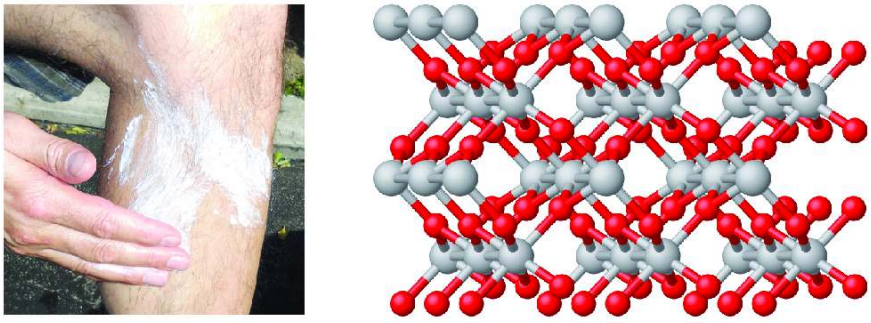


Figure 1.4.4: (a) The white compound titanium dioxide provides effective protection from the sun. (b) A crystal of titanium dioxide, TiO_2, contains titanium and oxygen in a ratio of 1 to 2. The titanium atoms are gray and the oxygen atoms are red. (credit a: modification of work by “osseous”/Flickr).

Figure A shows a photo of a person applying suntan lotion to his or her lower leg. Figure B shows a 3-D ball-and-stick model of the molecule titanium dioxide, which involves a complicated interlocking of many titanium and oxygen atoms. The titanium atoms in the molecule are shown as silver spheres and the oxygen atoms are shown as red spheres. There are twice as many oxygen atoms as titanium atoms in the molecule.

As discussed previously, we can describe a compound with a molecular formula, in which the subscripts indicate the *actual numbers of atoms* of each element in a molecule of the compound. In many cases, the molecular formula of a substance is derived from experimental determination of both its empirical formula and its molecular mass (the sum of atomic masses for all atoms composing the molecule). For example, it can be determined experimentally that benzene contains two elements, carbon (C) and hydrogen (H), and that for every carbon atom in benzene, there is one hydrogen atom. Thus, the empirical formula is CH. An experimental determination of the molecular mass reveals that a molecule of benzene contains six carbon atoms and six hydrogen atoms, so the molecular formula for benzene is C_6H_6 (Figure 1.4.5).

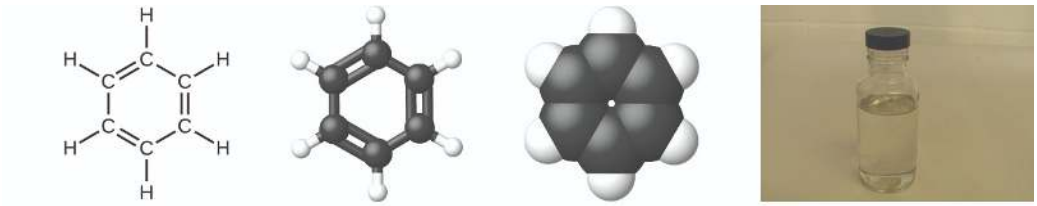


Figure 1.4.5: Benzene, C_6H_6, is produced during oil refining and has many industrial uses. A benzene molecule can be represented as (a) a structural formula, (b) a ball-and-stick model, and (c) a space-filling model. (d) Benzene is a clear liquid. (credit d: modification of work by Sahar Atwa).

Figure A shows that benzene is composed of six carbons shaped like a hexagon. Every other bond between the carbon atoms is a double bond. Each carbon also has a single bonded hydrogen atom. Figure B shows a 3-D, ball-and-stick drawing of benzene. The six carbon atoms are black spheres while the six hydrogen atoms are smaller, white spheres. Figure C is a space-filling model of benzene which shows that most of the interior space is occupied by the carbon atoms. The hydrogen atoms are embedded in the outside surface of the carbon atoms. Figure d shows a small vial filled with benzene which appears to be clear.

If we know a compound's formula, we can easily determine the empirical formula. (This is somewhat of an academic exercise; the reverse chronology is generally followed in actual practice.) For example, the molecular formula for acetic acid, the component that gives vinegar its sharp taste, is $C_2H_4O_2$. This formula indicates that a molecule of acetic acid (Figure 1.4.6) contains two carbon atoms, four hydrogen atoms, and two oxygen atoms. The ratio of atoms is 2:4:2. Dividing by the lowest common denominator (2) gives the simplest, whole-number ratio of atoms, 1:2:1, so the empirical formula is CH_2O. Note that a molecular formula is always a whole-number multiple of an empirical formula.

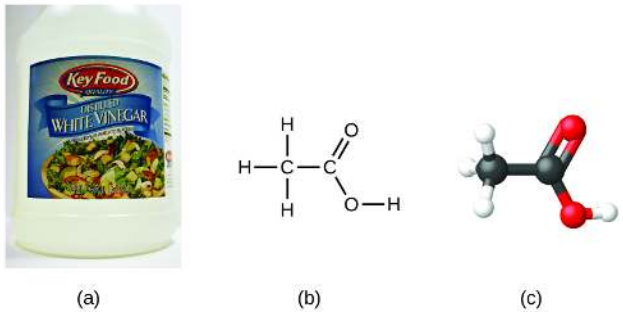


Figure 1.4.6: (a) Vinegar contains acetic acid, $C_2H_4O_2$, which has an empirical formula of CH_2O. It can be represented as (b) a structural formula and (c) as a ball-and-stick model. (credit a: modification of work by "HomeSpot HQ"/Flickr)

Figure A shows a jug of distilled, white vinegar. Figure B shows a structural formula for acetic acid which contains two carbon atoms connected by a single bond. The left carbon atom forms single bonds with three hydrogen atoms. The right carbon atom forms a double bond with an oxygen atom. The right carbon atom also forms a single bond with an oxygen atom. This oxygen forms a single bond with a hydrogen atom. Figure C shows a 3-D ball-and-stick model of acetic acid.

✔ Example 1.4.1: Empirical and Molecular Formulas

Molecules of glucose (blood sugar) contain 6 carbon atoms, 12 hydrogen atoms, and 6 oxygen atoms. What are the molecular and empirical formulas of glucose?

Solution

The molecular formula is $C_6H_{12}O_6$ because one molecule actually contains 6 C, 12 H, and 6 O atoms. The simplest whole-number ratio of C to H to O atoms in glucose is 1:2:1, so the empirical formula is CH_2O.

? Exercise 1.4.1

A molecule of metaldehyde (a pesticide used for snails and slugs) contains 8 carbon atoms, 16 hydrogen atoms, and 4 oxygen atoms. What are the molecular and empirical formulas of metaldehyde?

Answer

Molecular formula, $C_8H_{16}O_4$; empirical formula, C_2H_4O

It is important to be aware that it may be possible for the same atoms to be arranged in different ways: Compounds with the same molecular formula may have different atom-to-atom bonding and therefore different structures. For example, could there be another compound with the same formula as acetic acid, $C_2H_4O_2$? And if so, what would be the structure of its molecules?

If you predict that another compound with the formula $C_2H_4O_2$ could exist, then you demonstrated good chemical insight and are correct. Two C atoms, four H atoms, and two O atoms can also be arranged to form methyl formate, which is used in manufacturing, as an insecticide, and for quick-drying finishes. Methyl formate molecules have one of the oxygen atoms between the two carbon atoms, differing from the arrangement in acetic acid molecules. Acetic acid and methyl formate are examples of isomers—compounds with the same chemical formula but different molecular structures (Figure 1.4.7). Note that this small difference in the arrangement of the atoms has a major effect on their respective chemical properties. You would certainly not want to use a solution of methyl formate as a substitute for a solution of acetic acid (vinegar) when you make salad dressing.

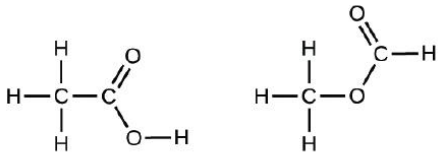


Figure 1.4.7: Molecules of (a) acetic acid and methyl formate (b) are structural isomers; they have the same formula ($C_2H_4O_2$) but different structures (and therefore different chemical properties).

Figure A shows a structural diagram of acetic acid, C subscript 2 H subscript 4 O subscript 2. Acetic acid contains two carbon atoms connected by a single bond. The left carbon atom forms single bonds with three hydrogen atoms. The carbon on the right forms a double bond with an oxygen atom. The right carbon atom also forms a single bond to an oxygen atom which forms a single bond with a hydrogen atom. Figure B shows a structural diagram of methyl formate, C subscript 2 H subscript 4 O subscript 2. This molecule contains a carbon atom which forms single bonds with three hydrogen atoms, and a single bond with an oxygen atom. The oxygen atom forms a single bond with another carbon atom which forms a double bond with another oxygen atom and a single bond with a hydrogen atom.

Many types of isomers exist (Figure 1.4.8). Acetic acid and methyl formate are structural isomers, compounds in which the molecules differ in how the atoms are connected to each other. There are also various types of spatial isomers, in which the relative orientations of the atoms in space can be different. For example, the compound carvone (found in caraway seeds, spearmint, and mandarin orange peels) consists of two isomers that are mirror images of each other. *S*-(+)-carvone smells like caraway, and *R*-(−)-carvone smells like spearmint.

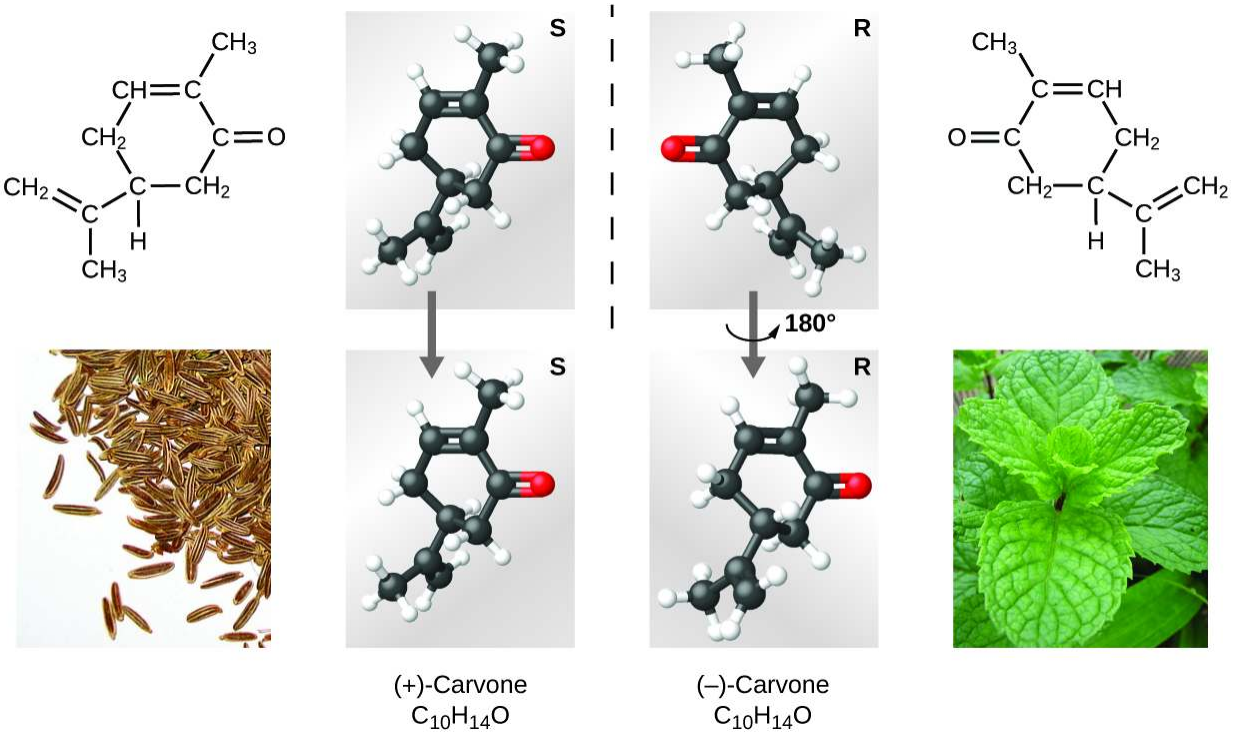


Figure 1.4.8: Molecules of carvone are spatial isomers; they only differ in the relative orientations of the atoms in space. (credit bottom left: modification of work by "Miansari66"/Wikimedia Commons; credit bottom right: modification of work by Forest & Kim Starr)

Summary

A molecular formula uses chemical symbols and subscripts to indicate the exact numbers of different atoms in a molecule or compound. An empirical formula gives the simplest, whole-number ratio of atoms in a compound. A structural formula indicates the bonding arrangement of the atoms in the molecule. Ball-and-stick and space-filling models show the geometric arrangement of atoms in a molecule. Isomers are compounds with the same molecular formula but different arrangements of atoms.

Glossary

empirical formula
formula showing the composition of a compound given as the simplest whole-number ratio of atoms

isomers
compounds with the same chemical formula but different structures

molecular formula
formula indicating the composition of a molecule of a compound and giving the actual number of atoms of each element in a molecule of the compound.

spatial isomers
compounds in which the relative orientations of the atoms in space differ

structural isomer
one of two substances that have the same molecular formula but different physical and chemical properties because their atoms are bonded differently

structural formula
shows the atoms in a molecule and how they are connected

This page titled 1.4: Chemical Formulas is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **2.5: Chemical Formulas** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.5: Chemical Nomenclature

Learning Objectives

- Derive names for common types of inorganic compounds using a systematic approach.
- Describe how to name binary covalent compounds including acids and oxyacids.

Nomenclature, a collection of rules for naming things, is important in science and in many other situations. This module describes an approach that is used to name simple ionic and molecular compounds, such as NaCl, $CaCO_3$, and N_2O_4. The simplest of these are binary compounds, those containing only two elements, but we will also consider how to name ionic compounds containing polyatomic ions, and one specific, very important class of compounds known as acids (subsequent chapters in this text will focus on these compounds in great detail). We will limit our attention here to inorganic compounds, compounds that are composed principally of elements other than carbon, and will follow the nomenclature guidelines proposed by IUPAC. The rules for organic compounds, in which carbon is the principle element, will be treated in a later chapter on organic chemistry.

Ionic Compounds

To name an inorganic compound, we need to consider the answers to several questions. First, is the compound ionic or molecular? If the compound is ionic, does the metal form ions of only one type (fixed charge) or more than one type (variable charge)? Are the ions monatomic or polyatomic? If the compound is molecular, does it contain hydrogen? If so, does it also contain oxygen? From the answers we derive, we place the compound in an appropriate category and then name it accordingly. We will begin with the nomenclature rules for ionic compounds.

Compounds Containing Only Monatomic Ions

The name of a binary compound containing monatomic ions consists of the name of the cation (the name of the metal) followed by the name of the anion (the name of the nonmetallic element with its ending replaced by the suffix *–ide*). Some examples are given in Table 1.5.2.

Table 1.5.1: Names of Some Ionic Compounds

NaCl, sodium chloride	Na_2O, sodium oxide
KBr, potassium bromide	CdS, cadmium sulfide
CaI_2, calcium iodide	Mg_3N_2, magnesium nitride
CsF, cesium fluoride	Ca_3P_2, calcium phosphide
LiCl, lithium chloride	Al_4C_3, aluminum carbide

Compounds Containing Polyatomic Ions

Compounds containing polyatomic ions are named similarly to those containing only monatomic ions, except there is no need to change to an *–ide* ending, since the suffix is already present in the name of the anion. Examples are shown in Table 1.5.2.

CL, ammonium chloride, C a S O subscript 4 calcium sulfate, and M g subscript 3 (P O subscript 4) subscript 2 magnesium phosphate." data-quail-id="54" data-mt-width="1246">

Table 1.5.2: Names of Some Polyatomic Ionic Compounds

$KC_2H_3O_2$, potassium acetate	$(NH_4)Cl$, ammonium chloride
$NaHCO_3$, sodium bicarbonate	$CaSO_4$, calcium sulfate
$Al_2(CO_3)_3$, aluminum carbonate	$Mg_3(PO_4)_2$, magnesium phosphate

Ionic Compounds in Your Cabinets

Every day you encounter and use a large number of ionic compounds. Some of these compounds, where they are found, and what they are used for are listed in Table 1.5.3. Look at the label or ingredients list on the various products that you use during the next few days, and see if you run into any of those in this table, or find other ionic compounds that you could now name or write as a formula.

Table 1.5.3: Everyday Ionic Compounds

Ionic Compound	Name	Use
NaCl	sodium chloride	ordinary table salt
KI	potassium iodide	added to “iodized” salt for thyroid health
NaF	sodium fluoride	ingredient in toothpaste
$NaHCO_3$	sodium bicarbonate	baking soda; used in cooking (and in antacids)
Na_2CO_3	sodium carbonate	washing soda; used in cleaning agents
NaOCl	sodium hypochlorite	active ingredient in household bleach
$CaCO_3$	calcium carbonate	ingredient in antacids
$Mg(OH)_2$	magnesium hydroxide	ingredient in antacids
$Al(OH)_3$	aluminum hydroxide	ingredient in antacids
NaOH	sodium hydroxide	lye; used as drain cleaner
K_3PO_4	potassium phosphate	food additive (many purposes)
$MgSO_4$	magnesium sulfate	added to purified water
Na_2HPO_4	sodium hydrogen phosphate	anti-caking agent; used in powdered products
Na_2SO_3	sodium sulfite	preservative

Compounds Containing a Metal Ion with a Variable Charge

Most of the transition metals can form two or more cations with different charges. Compounds of these metals with nonmetals are named with the same method as compounds in the first category, except the charge of the metal ion is specified by a Roman numeral in parentheses after the name of the metal. The charge of the metal ion is determined from the formula of the compound and the charge of the anion. For example, consider binary ionic compounds of iron and chlorine. Iron typically exhibits a charge of either 2+ or 3+, and the two corresponding compound formulas are $FeCl_2$ and $FeCl_3$. The simplest name, “iron chloride,” will, in this case, be ambiguous, as it does not distinguish between these two compounds. In cases like this, the charge of the metal ion is included as a Roman numeral in parentheses immediately following the metal name. These two compounds are then unambiguously named iron(II) chloride and iron(III) chloride, respectively. Other examples are provided in Table 1.5.4.

Table 1.5.4: Names of Some Transition Metal Ionic Compounds

Transition Metal Ionic Compound	Name
$FeCl_3$	iron(III) chloride
Hg_2O	mercury(I) oxide
HgO	mercury(II) oxide
$Cu_3(PO_4)_2$	copper(II) phosphate

Out-of-date nomenclature used the suffixes *–ic* and *–ous* to designate metals with higher and lower charges, respectively: Iron(III) chloride, $FeCl_3$, was previously called ferric chloride, and iron(II) chloride, $FeCl_2$, was known as ferrous chloride. Though this naming convention has been largely abandoned by the scientific community, it remains in use by some segments of industry. For example, you may see the words *stannous fluoride* on a tube of toothpaste. This represents the formula SnF_2, which is more properly named tin(II) fluoride. The other fluoride of tin is SnF_4, which was previously called stannic fluoride but is now named tin(IV) fluoride.

Example 1.5.1: Naming Ionic Compounds

Name the following ionic compounds, which contain a metal that can have more than one ionic charge:

a. Fe_2S_3
b. CuSe
c. GaN
d. $CrCl_3$
e. $Ti_2(SO_4)_3$

Solution

The anions in these compounds have a fixed negative charge (S^{2-}, Se^{2-} , N^{3-}, Cl^-, and SO_4^{2-}), and the compounds must be neutral. Because the total number of positive charges in each compound must equal the total number of negative charges, the positive ions must be Fe^{3+}, Cu^{2+}, Ga^{3+}, Cr^{3+}, and Ti^{3+}. These charges are used in the names of the metal ions:

a. iron(III) sulfide
b. copper(II) selenide
c. gallium(III) nitride
d. chromium(III) chloride
e. titanium(III) sulfate

Exercise 1.5.1

Write the formulas of the following ionic compounds:

a. chromium(III) phosphide
b. mercury(II) sulfide
c. manganese(II) phosphate
d. copper(I) oxide
e. chromium(VI) fluoride

Answer a

CrP

Answer b

HgS

Answer c

$Mn_3(PO_4)_2$

Answer d

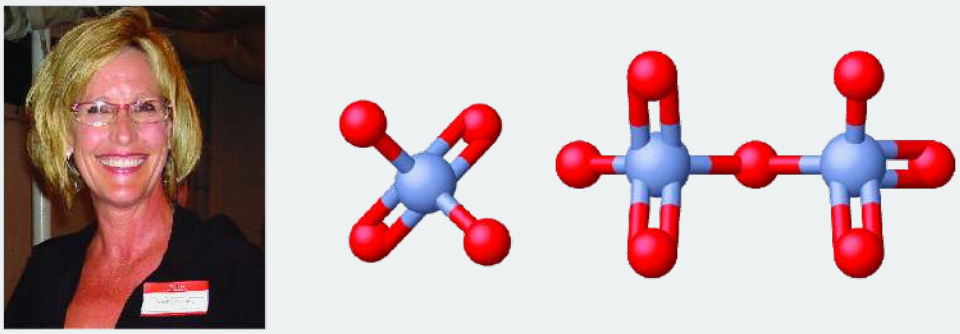
Cu_2O

Answer e

CrF_6

Erin Brokovich and Chromium Contamination

In the early 1990s, legal file clerk Erin Brockovich (Figure 1.5.2) discovered a high rate of serious illnesses in the small town of Hinckley, California. Her investigation eventually linked the illnesses to groundwater contaminated by Cr(VI) used by Pacific Gas & Electric (PG&E) to fight corrosion in a nearby natural gas pipeline. As dramatized in the film *Erin Brokovich* (for which Julia Roberts won an Oscar), Erin and lawyer Edward Masry sued PG&E for contaminating the water near Hinckley in 1993. The settlement they won in 1996—$333 million—was the largest amount ever awarded for a direct-action lawsuit in the US at that time.



(a) (b)

Figure **1.5.2**: (a) Erin Brockovich found that Cr(VI), used by PG&E, had contaminated the Hinckley, California, water supply. (b) The Cr(VI) ion is often present in water as the polyatomic ions chromate, CrO_4^{2-} (left), and dichromate, $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ (right).

Chromium compounds are widely used in industry, such as for chrome plating, in dye-making, as preservatives, and to prevent corrosion in cooling tower water, as occurred near Hinckley. In the environment, chromium exists primarily in either the Cr(III) or Cr(VI) forms. Cr(III), an ingredient of many vitamin and nutritional supplements, forms compounds that are not very soluble in water, and it has low toxicity. Cr(VI), on the other hand, is much more toxic and forms compounds that are reasonably soluble in water. Exposure to small amounts of Cr(VI) can lead to damage of the respiratory, gastrointestinal, and immune systems, as well as the kidneys, liver, blood, and skin.

Despite cleanup efforts, Cr(VI) groundwater contamination remains a problem in Hinckley and other locations across the globe. A 2010 study by the Environmental Working Group found that of 35 US cities tested, 31 had higher levels of Cr(VI) in their tap water than the public health goal of 0.02 parts per billion set by the California Environmental Protection Agency.

Molecular (Covalent) Compounds

The bonding characteristics of inorganic molecular compounds are different from ionic compounds, and they are named using a different system as well. The charges of cations and anions dictate their ratios in ionic compounds, so specifying the names of the ions provides sufficient information to determine chemical formulas. However, because covalent bonding allows for significant variation in the combination ratios of the atoms in a molecule, the names for molecular compounds must explicitly identify these ratios.

Compounds Composed of Two Elements

When two nonmetallic elements form a molecular compound, several combination ratios are often possible. For example, carbon and oxygen can form the compounds CO and CO_2. Since these are different substances with different properties, they cannot both have the same name (they cannot both be called carbon oxide). To deal with this situation, we use a naming method that is somewhat similar to that used for ionic compounds, but with added prefixes to specify the numbers of atoms of each element. The name of the more metallic element (the one farther to the left and/or bottom of the periodic table) is first, followed by the name of the more nonmetallic element (the one farther to the right and/or top) with its ending changed to the suffix *–ide*. The numbers of atoms of each element are designated by the Greek prefixes shown in Table 1.5.5.

Table 1.5.5: Nomenclature Prefixes

Number	Prefix	Number	Prefix

Number	Prefix		Number	Prefix
1 (sometimes omitted)	mono-		6	hexa-
2	di-		7	hepta-
3	tri-		8	octa-
4	tetra-		9	nona-
5	penta-		10	deca-

When only one atom of the first element is present, the prefix *mono-* is usually deleted from that part. Thus, CO is named carbon monoxide, and CO_2 is called carbon dioxide. When two vowels are adjacent, the *a* in the Greek prefix is usually dropped. Some other examples are shown in Table 1.5.6.

Table 1.5.6: Names of Some Molecular Compounds Composed of Two Elements

Compound	Name		Compound	Name
SO_2	sulfur dioxide		BCl_3	boron trichloride
SO_3	sulfur trioxide		SF_6	sulfur hexafluoride
NO_2	nitrogen dioxide		PF_5	phosphorus pentafluoride
N_2O_4	dinitrogen tetroxide		P_4O_{10}	tetraphosphorus decaoxide
N_2O_5	dinitrogen pentoxide		IF_7	iodine heptafluoride

There are a few common names that you will encounter as you continue your study of chemistry. For example, although NO is often called nitric oxide, its proper name is nitrogen monoxide. Similarly, N_2O is known as nitrous oxide even though our rules would specify the name dinitrogen monoxide. (And H_2O is usually called water, not dihydrogen monoxide.) You should commit to memory the common names of compounds as you encounter them.

Example 1.5.2: Naming Covalent Compounds

Name the following covalent compounds:

a. SF_6
b. N_2O_3
c. Cl_2O_7
d. P_4O_6

Solution

Because these compounds consist solely of nonmetals, we use prefixes to designate the number of atoms of each element:

a. sulfur hexafluoride
b. dinitrogen trioxide
c. dichlorine heptoxide
d. tetraphosphorus hexoxide

Exercise 1.5.2

Write the formulas for the following compounds:

a. phosphorus pentachloride
b. dinitrogen monoxide
c. iodine heptafluoride
d. carbon tetrachloride

Answer a

PCl_5

Answer b

N_2O

Answer c

IF_7

Answer d

CCl_4

Binary Acids

Some compounds containing hydrogen are members of an important class of substances known as acids. The chemistry of these compounds is explored in more detail in later chapters of this text, but for now, it will suffice to note that many acids release hydrogen ions, H^+, when dissolved in water. To denote this distinct chemical property, a mixture of water with an acid is given a name derived from the compound's name. If the compound is a binary acid (comprised of hydrogen and one other nonmetallic element):

1. The word "hydrogen" is changed to the prefix *hydro-*
2. The other nonmetallic element name is modified by adding the suffix *-ic*
3. The word "acid" is added as a second word

For example, when the gas HCl (hydrogen chloride) is dissolved in water, the solution is called *hydrochloric acid*. Several other examples of this nomenclature are shown in Table 1.5.7.

Table 1.5.7: Names of Some Simple Acids

Name of Gas	Name of Acid
HF(*g*), hydrogen fluoride	HF(*aq*), hydrofluoric acid
HCl(*g*), hydrogen chloride	HCl(*aq*), hydrochloric acid
HBr(*g*), hydrogen bromide	HBr(*aq*), hydrobromic acid
HI(*g*), hydrogen iodide	HI(*aq*), hydroiodic acid
H_2S(*g*), hydrogen sulfide	H_2S(*aq*), hydrosulfuric acid

Oxyacids

Many compounds containing three or more elements (such as organic compounds or coordination compounds) are subject to specialized nomenclature rules that you will learn later. However, we will briefly discuss the important compounds known as oxyacids, compounds that contain hydrogen, oxygen, and at least one other element, and are bonded in such a way as to impart acidic properties to the compound (you will learn the details of this in a later chapter). Typical oxyacids consist of hydrogen combined with a polyatomic, oxygen-containing ion. To name oxyacids:

1. Omit "hydrogen"
2. Start with the root name of the anion
3. Replace *–ate* with *–ic*, or *–ite* with *–ous*
4. Add "acid"

For example, consider H_2CO_3 (which you might be tempted to call "hydrogen carbonate"). To name this correctly, "hydrogen" is omitted; the *–ate* of carbonate is replace with *–ic*; and acid is added—so its name is carbonic acid. Other examples are given in Table 1.5.8. There are some exceptions to the general naming method (e.g., H_2SO_4 is called sulfuric acid, not sulfic acid, and H_2SO_3 is sulfurous, not sulfous, acid).

Table 1.5.8: Names of Common Oxyacids

Formula	Anion Name	Acid Name
$HC_2H_3O_2$	acetate	acetic acid
HNO_3	nitrate	nitric acid
HNO_2	nitrite	nitrous acid
$HClO_4$	perchlorate	perchloric acid
H_2CO_3	carbonate	carbonic acid
H_2SO_4	sulfate	sulfuric acid
H_2SO_3	sulfite	sulfurous acid
H_3PO_4	phosphate	phosphoric acid

Summary

Chemists use nomenclature rules to clearly name compounds. Ionic and molecular compounds are named using somewhat-different methods. Binary ionic compounds typically consist of a metal and a nonmetal. The name of the metal is written first, followed by the name of the nonmetal with its ending changed to *–ide*. For example, K_2O is called potassium oxide. If the metal can form ions with different charges, a Roman numeral in parentheses follows the name of the metal to specify its charge. Thus, $FeCl_2$ is iron(II) chloride and $FeCl_3$ is iron(III) chloride. Some compounds contain polyatomic ions; the names of common polyatomic ions should be memorized. Molecular compounds can form compounds with different ratios of their elements, so prefixes are used to specify the numbers of atoms of each element in a molecule of the compound. Examples include SF_6, sulfur hexafluoride, and N_2O_4, dinitrogen tetroxide. Acids are an important class of compounds containing hydrogen and having special nomenclature rules. Binary acids are named using the prefix *hydro-*, changing the *–ide* suffix to *–ic*, and adding "acid;" HCl is hydrochloric acid. Oxyacids are named by changing the ending of the anion (*-ate* to *–ic*, and *-ite* to *-ous*) and adding "acid;" H_2CO_3 is carbonic acid.

Glossary

binary acid

compound that contains hydrogen and one other element, bonded in a way that imparts acidic properties to the compound (ability to release H^+ ions when dissolved in water)

binary compound

compound containing two different elements.

oxyacid

compound that contains hydrogen, oxygen, and one other element, bonded in a way that imparts acidic properties to the compound (ability to release H^+ ions when dissolved in water)

nomenclature

system of rules for naming objects of interest

This page titled 1.5: Chemical Nomenclature is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **2.8: Chemical Nomenclature** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.6: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept

Learning Objectives

- Calculate formula masses for covalent and ionic compounds
- Define the amount unit mole and the related quantity Avogadro's number
- Explain the relation between mass, moles, and numbers of atoms or molecules, and perform calculations deriving these quantities from one another

We can argue that modern chemical science began when scientists started exploring the quantitative as well as the qualitative aspects of chemistry. For example, Dalton's atomic theory was an attempt to explain the results of measurements that allowed him to calculate the relative masses of elements combined in various compounds. Understanding the relationship between the masses of atoms and the chemical formulas of compounds allows us to quantitatively describe the composition of substances.

Formula Mass

In an earlier chapter, we described the development of the atomic mass unit, the concept of average atomic masses, and the use of chemical formulas to represent the elemental makeup of substances. These ideas can be extended to calculate the formula mass of a substance by summing the average atomic masses of all the atoms represented in the substance's formula.

Formula Mass for Covalent Substances

For covalent substances, the formula represents the numbers and types of atoms composing a single molecule of the substance; therefore, the formula mass may be correctly referred to as a molecular mass. Consider chloroform ($CHCl_3$), a covalent compound once used as a surgical anesthetic and now primarily used in the production of tetrafluoroethylene, the building block for the "anti-stick" polymer, Teflon. The molecular formula of chloroform indicates that a single molecule contains one carbon atom, one hydrogen atom, and three chlorine atoms. The average molecular mass of a chloroform molecule is therefore equal to the sum of the average atomic masses of these atoms. Figure 1.6.1 outlines the calculations used to derive the molecular mass of chloroform, which is 119.37 amu.

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
C	1	×	12.01	=	12.01
H	1	×	1.008	=	1.008
Cl	3	×	35.45	=	106.35
				Molecular mass	119.37

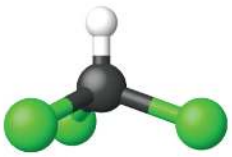


Figure 1.6.1: The average mass of a chloroform molecule, $CHCl_3$, is 119.37 amu, which is the sum of the average atomic masses of each of its constituent atoms. The model shows the molecular structure of chloroform.

A table and diagram are shown. The table is made up of six columns and five rows. The header row reads: "Element," "Quantity," a blank space, "Average atomic mass (a m u)," a blank space, and "Subtotal (a m u)." The first column contains the symbols "C," "H," "C l" and a blank, merged cell that runs the width of the first five columns. The second column contains the numbers "1," "1," and "3" as well as the merged cell. The third column contains the multiplication symbol in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The fourth column contains the numbers "12.01," "1.008," and "35.45" as well as the merged cell. The fifth column contains the symbol "=" in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The sixth column contains the values "12.01," "1.008," "106.35," and "119.37." There is a thick black line below the number 106.35. The merged cell under the first five columns reads "Molecular mass." To the left of the table is a diagram of a molecule. Three green spheres are attached to a slightly smaller black sphere, which is also attached to a smaller white sphere. The green spheres lie beneath and to the sides of the black sphere while the white sphere is located straight up from the black sphere.

Likewise, the molecular mass of an aspirin molecule, $C_9H_8O_4$, is the sum of the atomic masses of nine carbon atoms, eight hydrogen atoms, and four oxygen atoms, which amounts to 180.15 amu (Figure 1.6.2).

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
C	9	×	12.01	=	108.09
H	8	×	1.008	=	8.064
O	4	×	16.00	=	64.00
				Molecular mass	180.15

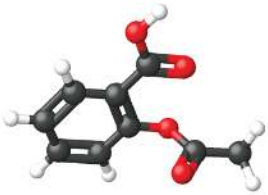


Figure 1.6.2: The average mass of an aspirin molecule is 180.15 amu. The model shows the molecular structure of aspirin, $C_9H_8O_4$.

A table and diagram are shown. The table is made up of six columns and five rows. The header row reads: “Element,” “Quantity,” a blank space, “Average atomic mass (a m u),” a blank space, and “Subtotal (a m u).” The first column contains the symbols “C,” “H,” “O,” and a merged cell. The merged cell runs the length of the first five columns. The second column contains the numbers “9,” “8,” and “4” as well as the merged, cell. The third column contains the multiplication symbol in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The fourth column contains the numbers “12.01,” “1.008,” and “16.00” as well as the merged cell. The fifth column contains the symbol “=” in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The sixth column contains the values: “108.09,” “8.064,” “64.00,” and “180.15.” There is a thick black line below the number 64.00. The merged cell under the first five columns reads “Molecular mass.” To the left of the table is a diagram of a molecule. Six black spheres are located in a six-sided ring and connected by alternating double and single black bonds. Attached to each of the four black spheres is one smaller white sphere. Attached to the farthest right black sphere is a red sphere, connected to two more black spheres, all in a row. Attached to the last black sphere of that row are two more white spheres. Attached to the first black sphere of that row is another red sphere. A black sphere, attached to two red spheres and a white sphere is attached to the black sphere on the top right of the six-sided ring.

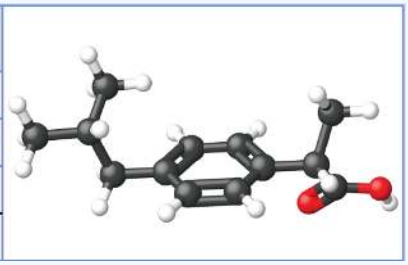
Example 1.6.1: Computing Molecular Mass for a Covalent Compound

Ibuprofen, $C_{13}H_{18}O_2$, is a covalent compound and the active ingredient in several popular nonprescription pain medications, such as Advil and Motrin. What is the molecular mass (amu) for this compound?

Solution

Molecules of this compound are comprised of 13 carbon atoms, 18 hydrogen atoms, and 2 oxygen atoms. Following the approach described above, the average molecular mass for this compound is therefore:

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
C	13	×	12.01	=	156.13
H	18	×	1.008	=	18.114
O	2	×	16.00	=	32.00
				Molecular mass	206.27



Exercise 1.6.1

Acetaminophen, $C_8H_9NO_2$, is a covalent compound and the active ingredient in several popular nonprescription pain medications, such as Tylenol. What is the molecular mass (amu) for this compound?

Answer

151.16 amu

Formula Mass for Ionic Compounds

Ionic compounds are composed of discrete cations and anions combined in ratios to yield electrically neutral bulk matter. The formula mass for an ionic compound is calculated in the same way as the formula mass for covalent compounds: by summing the average atomic masses of all the atoms in the compound’s formula. Keep in mind, however, that the formula for an ionic compound does not represent the composition of a discrete molecule, so it may not correctly be referred to as the “molecular mass.”

As an example, consider sodium chloride, NaCl, the chemical name for common table salt. Sodium chloride is an ionic compound composed of sodium cations, Na^+, and chloride anions, Cl^-, combined in a 1:1 ratio. The formula mass for this compound is computed as 58.44 amu (Figure 1.6.3).

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal
Na	1	×	22.99	=	22.99
Cl	1	×	35.45	=	35.45
				Formula mass	58.44

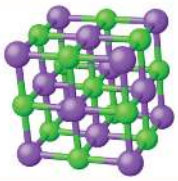


Figure 1.6.3: Table salt, NaCl, contains an array of sodium and chloride ions combined in a 1:1 ratio. Its formula mass is 58.44 amu.

A table and diagram are shown. The table is made up of six columns and four rows. The header row reads: “Element,” “Quantity,” a blank space, “Average atomic mass (a m u),” a blank space and “Subtotal (a m u).” The first column contains the symbols “N a”, “C l,” and a merged cell. The merged cell runs the length of the first five columns. The second column contains the numbers “1” and “1” as well as the merged cell. The third column contains the multiplication symbol in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The fourth column contains the numbers “22.99” and “35.45” as well as the merged cell. The fifth column contains the symbol “=” in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The sixth column contains the values “22.99,” “35.45,” and “58.44.” There is a thick black line below the number “35.45.” The merged cell under the first five columns reads “Formula mass.” To the left of the table is a diagram of a chemical structure. The diagram shows green and purple spheres placed in an alternating pattern, making up the corners of eight stacked cubes to form one larger cube. The green spheres are slightly smaller than the purple spheres.

Note that the average masses of neutral sodium and chlorine atoms were used in this computation, rather than the masses for sodium cations and chlorine anions. This approach is perfectly acceptable when computing the formula mass of an ionic compound. Even though a sodium cation has a slightly smaller mass than a sodium atom (since it is missing an electron), this difference will be offset by the fact that a chloride anion is slightly more massive than a chloride atom (due to the extra electron). Moreover, the mass of an electron is negligibly small with respect to the mass of a typical atom. Even when calculating the mass of an isolated ion, the missing or additional electrons can generally be ignored, since their contribution to the overall mass is negligible, reflected only in the nonsignificant digits that will be lost when the computed mass is properly rounded. The few exceptions to this guideline are very light ions derived from elements with precisely known atomic masses.

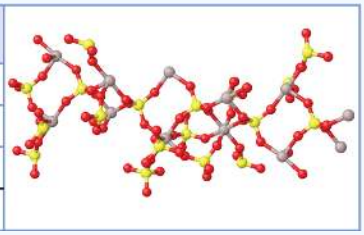
✔ Example 1.6.2: Computing Formula Mass for an Ionic Compound

Aluminum sulfate, $Al_2(SO_4)_3$, is an ionic compound that is used in the manufacture of paper and in various water purification processes. What is the formula mass (amu) of this compound?

Solution

The formula for this compound indicates it contains Al^{3+} and SO_4^{2-} ions combined in a 2:3 ratio. For purposes of computing a formula mass, it is helpful to rewrite the formula in the simpler format, $Al_2S_3O_{12}$. Following the approach outlined above, the formula mass for this compound is calculated as follows:

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
Al	2	×	26.98	=	53.96
S	3	×	32.06	=	96.18
O	12	×	16.00	=	192.00
				Molecular mass	342.14



? Exercise 1.6.2

Calcium phosphate, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, is an ionic compound and a common anti-caking agent added to food products. What is the formula mass (amu) of calcium phosphate?

Answer

310.18 amu

The Mole

The identity of a substance is defined not only by the types of atoms or ions it contains, but by the quantity of each type of atom or ion. For example, water, H_2O, and hydrogen peroxide, H_2O_2, are alike in that their respective molecules are composed of hydrogen and oxygen atoms. However, because a hydrogen peroxide molecule contains two oxygen atoms, as opposed to the water molecule, which has only one, the two substances exhibit very different properties. Today, we possess sophisticated instruments that allow the direct measurement of these defining microscopic traits; however, the same traits were originally derived from the measurement of macroscopic properties (the masses and volumes of bulk quantities of matter) using relatively simple tools (balances and volumetric glassware). This experimental approach required the introduction of a new unit for amount of substances, the *mole*, which remains indispensable in modern chemical science.

The mole is an amount unit similar to familiar units like pair, dozen, gross, etc. It provides a specific measure of *the number* of atoms or molecules in a bulk sample of matter. A mole is defined as the amount of substance containing the same number of discrete entities (such as atoms, molecules, and ions) as the number of atoms in a sample of pure ^{12}C weighing exactly 12 g. One Latin connotation for the word "mole" is "large mass" or "bulk," which is consistent with its use as the name for this unit. The mole provides a link between an easily measured macroscopic property, bulk mass, and an extremely important fundamental property, number of atoms, molecules, and so forth.

The number of entities composing a mole has been experimentally determined to be $6.02214179 \times 10^{23}$, a fundamental constant named **Avogadro's number** (N_A) or the Avogadro constant in honor of Italian scientist Amedeo Avogadro. This constant is properly reported with an explicit unit of "per mole," a conveniently rounded version being $6.022 \times 10^{23}/\text{mol}$.

Consistent with its definition as an amount unit, 1 mole of any element contains the same number of atoms as 1 mole of any other element. The masses of 1 mole of different elements, however, are different, since the masses of the individual atoms are drastically different. The molar mass of an element (or compound) is the mass in grams of 1 mole of that substance, a property expressed in units of grams per mole (g/mol) (Figure 1.6.4).

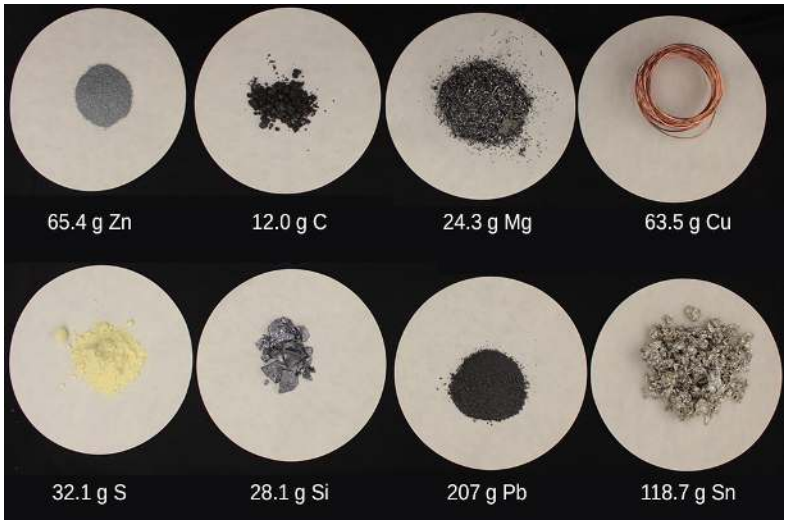


Figure 1.6.4: Each sample contains 6.022×10^{23} atoms —1.00 mol of atoms. From left to right (top row): 65.4 g zinc, 12.0 g carbon, 24.3 g magnesium, and 63.5 g copper. From left to right (bottom row): 32.1 g sulfur, 28.1 g silicon, 207 g lead, and 118.7 g tin. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott).

This figure contains eight different substances displayed on white circles. The amount of each substance is visibly different.

Because the definitions of both the mole and the atomic mass unit are based on the same reference substance, ^{12}C, the molar mass of any substance is numerically equivalent to its atomic or formula weight in amu. Per the amu definition, a single ^{12}C atom weighs 12 amu (its atomic mass is 12 amu). According to the definition of the mole, 12 g of ^{12}C contains 1 mole of ^{12}C atoms (its molar mass is 12 g/mol). This relationship holds for all elements, since their atomic masses are measured relative to that of the amu-reference substance, ^{12}C. Extending this principle, the molar mass of a compound in grams is likewise numerically equivalent to its formula mass in amu (Figure 1.6.5).

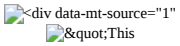


Figure 1.6.5: Each sample contains 6.022×10^{23} molecules or formula units—1.00 mol of the compound or element. Clock-wise from the upper left: 130.2 g of $C_8H_{17}OH$ (1-octanol, formula mass 130.2 amu), 454.4 g of HgI_2 (mercury(II) iodide, formula mass 454.4 amu), 32.0 g of CH_3OH (methanol, formula mass 32.0 amu) and 256.5 g of S_8 (sulfur, formula mass 256.5 amu). (credit: Sahar Atwa).

Table 1.6.1: Mass of one mole of elements

Element	Average Atomic Mass (amu)	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Atoms/Mole
C	12.01	12.01	6.022×10^{23}
H	1.008	1.008	6.022×10^{23}
O	16.00	16.00	6.022×10^{23}
Na	22.99	22.99	6.022×10^{23}
Cl	33.45	35.45	6.022×10^{23}

While atomic mass and molar mass are numerically equivalent, keep in mind that they are vastly different in terms of scale, as represented by the vast difference in the magnitudes of their respective units (amu versus g). To appreciate the enormity of the mole, consider a small drop of water after a rainfall. Although this represents just a tiny fraction of 1 mole of water (~18 g), it contains more water molecules than can be clearly imagined. If the molecules were distributed equally among the roughly seven billion people on earth, each person would receive more than 100 billion molecules.



Video 1.6.1: The mole is used in chemistry to represent 6.022×10^{23} of something, but it can be difficult to conceptualize such a large number. Watch this video and then complete the “Think” questions that follow. Explore more about the mole by reviewing the information under “Dig Deeper.”

The relationships between formula mass, the mole, and Avogadro’s number can be applied to compute various quantities that describe the composition of substances and compounds. For example, if we know the mass and chemical composition of a substance, we can determine the number of moles and calculate number of atoms or molecules in the sample. Likewise, if we know the number of moles of a substance, we can derive the number of atoms or molecules and calculate the substance’s mass.

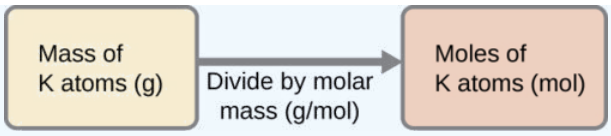
Example 1.6.3: Deriving Moles from Grams for an Element

According to nutritional guidelines from the US Department of Agriculture, the estimated average requirement for dietary potassium is 4.7 g. What is the estimated average requirement of potassium in moles?

Solution

The mass of K is provided, and the corresponding amount of K in moles is requested. Referring to the periodic table, the atomic mass of K is 39.10 amu, and so its molar mass is 39.10 g/mol. The given mass of K (4.7 g) is a bit more than one-tenth the molar mass (39.10 g), so a reasonable “ballpark” estimate of the number of moles would be slightly greater than 0.1 mol.

The molar amount of a substance may be calculated by dividing its mass (g) by its molar mass (g/mol):



The factor-label method supports this mathematical approach since the unit “g” cancels and the answer has units of “mol:”

$$4.7\ \cancel{\text{g}}\,\text{K}\left(\frac{\text{mol K}}{39.10\ \cancel{\text{g}}}\right) = 0.12\ \text{mol K}$$

The calculated magnitude (0.12 mol K) is consistent with our ballpark expectation, since it is a bit greater than 0.1 mol.

Exercise 1.6.3: Beryllium

Beryllium is a light metal used to fabricate transparent X-ray windows for medical imaging instruments. How many moles of Be are in a thin-foil window weighing 3.24 g?

Answer

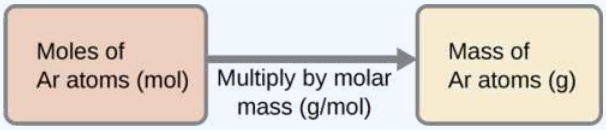
0.360 mol

Example 1.6.4: Deriving Grams from Moles for an Element

A liter of air contains 9.2×10^{-4} mol argon. What is the mass of Ar in a liter of air?

Solution

The molar amount of Ar is provided and must be used to derive the corresponding mass in grams. Since the amount of Ar is less than 1 mole, the mass will be less than the mass of 1 mole of Ar, approximately 40 g. The molar amount in question is approximately one-one thousandth (~10^{-3}) of a mole, and so the corresponding mass should be roughly one-one thousandth of the molar mass (~0.04 g):



In this case, logic dictates (and the factor-label method supports) multiplying the provided amount (mol) by the molar mass (g/mol):

$$9.2 \times 10^{-4}\ \cancel{\text{mol}}\ \text{Ar}\left(\frac{39.95\ \text{g}}{\cancel{\text{mol}}\ \text{Ar}}\right) = 0.037\ \text{g Ar}$$

The result is in agreement with our expectations, around 0.04 g Ar.

Exercise 1.6.4

What is the mass of 2.561 mol of gold?

Answer

504.4 g

Example 1.6.6: Deriving Number of Atoms from Mass for an Element

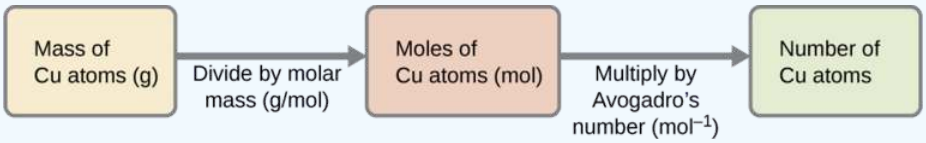
Copper is commonly used to fabricate electrical wire (Figure 1.6.6). How many copper atoms are in 5.00 g of copper wire?



Figure 1.6.6: Copper wire is composed of many, many atoms of Cu. (credit: Emilian Robert Vicol)

Solution

The number of Cu atoms in the wire may be conveniently derived from its mass by a two-step computation: first calculating the molar amount of Cu, and then using Avogadro's number (N_A) to convert this molar amount to number of Cu atoms:



Considering that the provided sample mass (5.00 g) is a little less than one-tenth the mass of 1 mole of Cu (~64 g), a reasonable estimate for the number of atoms in the sample would be on the order of one-tenth N_A, or approximately 10^{22} Cu atoms. Carrying out the two-step computation yields:

$$5.00\ \cancel{\text{g}}\ \text{Cu}\left(\frac{\cancel{\text{mol}}\ \text{Cu}}{63.55\ \cancel{\text{g}}}\right)\left(\frac{6.022\times10^{23}\ \text{atoms}}{\cancel{\text{mol}}}\right)=4.74\times10^{22}\ \text{atoms of copper}$$

The factor-label method yields the desired cancellation of units, and the computed result is on the order of 10^{22} as expected.

? Exercise 1.6.6

A prospector panning for gold in a river collects 15.00 g of pure gold. How many Au atoms are in this quantity of gold?

Answer

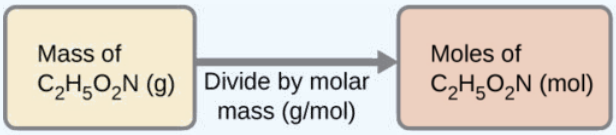
$4.586\times10^{22}\ Au$ atoms

✓ Example 1.6.7: Deriving Moles from Grams for a Compound

Our bodies synthesize protein from amino acids. One of these amino acids is glycine, which has the molecular formula $C_2H_5O_2N$. How many moles of glycine molecules are contained in 28.35 g of glycine?

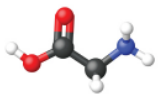
Solution

We can derive the number of moles of a compound from its mass following the same procedure we used for an element in Example 1.6.6:



The molar mass of glycine is required for this calculation, and it is computed in the same fashion as its molecular mass. One mole of glycine, $C_2H_5O_2N$, contains 2 moles of carbon, 5 moles of hydrogen, 2 moles of oxygen, and 1 mole of nitrogen:

Element	Quantity (mol element/ mol compound)		Molar mass (g/mol element)		Subtotal (g/mol compound)
C	2	×	12.01	=	24.02
H	5	×	1.008	=	5.040
O	2	×	16.00	=	32.00
N	1	×	14.007	=	14.007
Molecular mass (g/mol compound)					75.07



A table is shown that is made up of six columns and six rows. The header row reads: “Element,” “Quantity (mol element / mol compound,” a blank space, “Molar mass (g / mol element),” a blank space, and “Subtotal (a m u).” The first column contains the symbols “C,” “H,” “O,” “N,” and a merged cell. The merged cell runs the width of the first five columns. The second column contains the numbers “2,” “5,” “2,” and “1” as well as the merged cell. The third column contains the multiplication symbol in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The fourth column contains the numbers “12.01,” “1.008,” “16.00,” and “14.007” as well as the merged cell. The fifth column contains the symbol “=” in each cell except for the last, merged cell. The sixth column contains the values “24.02,” “5.040,” “32.00,” “14.007,” and “75.07.” There is a thick black line under the number 14.007. The merged cell under the first five columns reads “Molar mass (g / mol compound). There is a ball-and-stick drawing to the right of this table. It shows a black sphere that forms a double bond with a slightly smaller red sphere, a single bond with another red sphere, and a single bond with another black sphere. The red sphere that forms a single bond with the black sphere also forms a single bond with a smaller, white sphere. The second black sphere forms a single bond with a smaller, white sphere and a smaller blue sphere. The blue sphere forms a single bond with two smaller, white spheres each.

The provided mass of glycine (~28 g) is a bit more than one-third the molar mass (~75 g/mol), so we would expect the computed result to be a bit greater than one-third of a mole (~0.33 mol). Dividing the compound’s mass by its molar mass yields:

$$28.35\ \cancel{\text{g}}\ \text{glycine}\left(\frac{\text{mol glycine}}{75.07\ \cancel{\text{g}}}\right) = 0.378\ \text{mol glycine}$$

This result is consistent with our rough estimate.

Exercise 1.6.7

How many moles of sucrose, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$, are in a 25-g sample of sucrose?

Answer

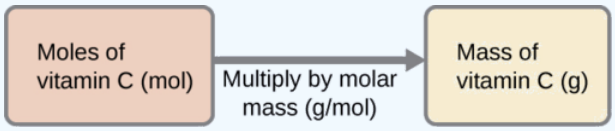
0.073 mol

Example 1.6.8: Deriving Grams from Moles for a Compound

Vitamin C is a covalent compound with the molecular formula $C_6H_8O_6$. The recommended daily dietary allowance of vitamin C for children aged 4–8 years is 1.42×10^{-4} mol. What is the mass of this allowance in grams?

Solution

As for elements, the mass of a compound can be derived from its molar amount as shown:



The molar mass for this compound is computed to be 176.124 g/mol. The given number of moles is a very small fraction of a mole (~10^{-4} or one-ten thousandth); therefore, we would expect the corresponding mass to be about one-ten thousandth of the molar mass (~0.02 g). Performing the calculation, we get:

$$1.42 \times 10^{-4}\ \cancel{\text{mol}}\ \text{vitamin C}\left(\frac{176.124\ \text{g}}{\cancel{\text{mol}}\ \text{vitamin C}}\right) = 0.0250\ \text{g vitamin C}$$

This is consistent with the anticipated result.

Exercise 1.6.8

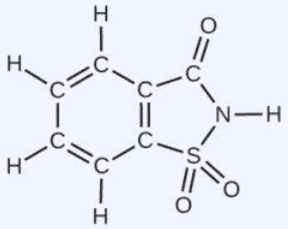
What is the mass of 0.443 mol of hydrazine, N_2H_4?

Answer

14.2 g

Example 1.6.9: Deriving the Number of Molecules from the Compound Mass

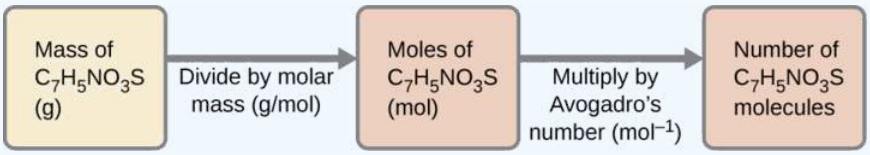
A packet of an artificial sweetener contains 40.0 mg of saccharin ($C_7H_5NO_3S$), which has the structural formula:



Given that saccharin has a molar mass of 183.18 g/mol, how many saccharin molecules are in a 40.0-mg (0.0400-g) sample of saccharin? How many carbon atoms are in the same sample?

Solution

The number of molecules in a given mass of compound is computed by first deriving the number of moles, as demonstrated in Example 1.6.8, and then multiplying by Avogadro's number:



Using the provided mass and molar mass for saccharin yields:

$$0.0400\ \cancel{\text{g}}\ C_7H_5NO_3S\left(\frac{\cancel{\text{mol}}\ C_7H_5NO_3S}{183.18\ \cancel{\text{g}}\ C_7H_5NO_3S}\right)\left(\frac{6.022\times10^{23}\ C_7H_5NO_3S\ \text{molecules}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol}}\ C_7H_5NO_3S}\right)$$
$$= 1.31\times10^{20}\ C_7H_5NO_3S\ \text{molecules}$$

The compound's formula shows that each molecule contains seven carbon atoms, and so the number of C atoms in the provided sample is:

$$1.31\times10^{20}\ C_7H_5NO_3S\ \text{molecules}\left(\frac{7\ \text{C atoms}}{1\ C_7H_5NO_3S\ \text{molecule}}\right) = 9.20\times10^{21}\ \text{C atoms}$$

Exercise 1.6.9

How many C_4H_{10} molecules are contained in 9.213 g of this compound? How many hydrogen atoms?

Answer

- 9.545×10^{22} molecules C_4H_{10}
- 9.545×10^{23} atoms H

Summary

The formula mass of a substance is the sum of the average atomic masses of each atom represented in the chemical formula and is expressed in atomic mass units. The formula mass of a covalent compound is also called the molecular mass. A convenient amount unit for expressing very large numbers of atoms or molecules is the mole. Experimental measurements have determined the number of entities composing 1 mole of substance to be 6.022×10^{23}, a quantity called Avogadro's number. The mass in grams of 1 mole of substance is its molar mass. Due to the use of the same reference substance in defining the atomic mass unit and the mole, the formula mass (amu) and molar mass (g/mol) for any substance are numerically equivalent (for example, one H_2O molecule weighs approximately18 amu and 1 mole of H_2O molecules weighs approximately 18 g).

Footnotes

1. 1 Omiatek, Donna M., Amanda J. Bressler, Ann-Sofie Cans, Anne M. Andrews, Michael L. Heien, and Andrew G. Ewing. "The Real Catecholamine Content of Secretory Vesicles in the CNS Revealed by Electrochemical Cytometry." *Scientific Report* 3 (2013): 1447, accessed January 14, 2015, doi:10.1038/srep01447.

Glossary

Avogadro's number (N_A)

experimentally determined value of the number of entities comprising 1 mole of substance, equal to 6.022×10^{23} mol^{-1}

formula mass

sum of the average masses for all atoms represented in a chemical formula; for covalent compounds, this is also the molecular mass

mole

amount of substance containing the same number of atoms, molecules, ions, or other entities as the number of atoms in exactly 12 grams of ^{12}C

molar mass

mass in grams of 1 mole of a substance

This page titled 1.6: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **3.1: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.7: Molarity

Learning Objectives

- Describe the fundamental properties of solutions
- Calculate solution concentrations using molarity
- Perform dilution calculations using the dilution equation

In preceding sections, we focused on the composition of substances: samples of matter that contain only one type of element or compound. However, mixtures—samples of matter containing two or more substances physically combined—are more commonly encountered in nature than are pure substances. Similar to a pure substance, the relative composition of a mixture plays an important role in determining its properties. The relative amount of oxygen in a planet's atmosphere determines its ability to sustain aerobic life. The relative amounts of iron, carbon, nickel, and other elements in steel (a mixture known as an "alloy") determine its physical strength and resistance to corrosion. The relative amount of the active ingredient in a medicine determines its effectiveness in achieving the desired pharmacological effect. The relative amount of sugar in a beverage determines its sweetness (Figure 1.7.1). In this section, we will describe one of the most common ways in which the relative compositions of mixtures may be quantified.



Figure 1.7.1: Sugar is one of many components in the complex mixture known as coffee. The amount of sugar in a given amount of coffee is an important determinant of the beverage's sweetness. (credit: Jane Whitney)

Solutions

We have previously defined solutions as homogeneous mixtures, meaning that the composition of the mixture (and therefore its properties) is uniform throughout its entire volume. Solutions occur frequently in nature and have also been implemented in many forms of manmade technology. We will explore a more thorough treatment of solution properties in the chapter on solutions and colloids, but here we will introduce some of the basic properties of solutions.

The relative amount of a given solution component is known as its concentration. Often, though not always, a solution contains one component with a concentration that is significantly greater than that of all other components. This component is called the solvent and may be viewed as the medium in which the other components are dispersed, or dissolved. Solutions in which water is the solvent are, of course, very common on our planet. A solution in which water is the solvent is called an aqueous solution.

A solute is a component of a solution that is typically present at a much lower concentration than the solvent. Solute concentrations are often described with qualitative terms such as dilute (of relatively low concentration) and concentrated (of relatively high concentration).

Concentrations may be quantitatively assessed using a wide variety of measurement units, each convenient for particular applications. Molarity (M) is a useful concentration unit for many applications in chemistry. Molarity is defined as the number of moles of solute in exactly 1 liter (1 L) of the solution:

$$M = \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{L solution}} \tag{1.7.1}$$

Example 1.7.1: Calculating Molar Concentrations

A 355-mL soft drink sample contains 0.133 mol of sucrose (table sugar). What is the molar concentration of sucrose in the beverage?

Solution

Since the molar amount of solute and the volume of solution are both given, the molarity can be calculated using the definition of molarity. Per this definition, the solution volume must be converted from mL to L:

$$\begin{aligned} M &= \frac{mol\ solute}{L\ solution} \\ &= \frac{0.133\ mol}{355\ mL \times \dfrac{1\ L}{1000\ mL}} \\ &= 0.375\ M \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 1.7.1

A teaspoon of table sugar contains about 0.01 mol sucrose. What is the molarity of sucrose if a teaspoon of sugar has been dissolved in a cup of tea with a volume of 200 mL?

Answer

0.05 M

Example 1.7.2: Deriving Moles and Volumes from Molar Concentrations

How much sugar (mol) is contained in a modest sip (~10 mL) of the soft drink from Example 1.7.1?

Solution

In this case, we can rearrange the definition of molarity to isolate the quantity sought, moles of sugar. We then substitute the value for molarity that we derived in Example 3.4.2, 0.375 *M*:

$$M = \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{L solution}} \tag{1.7.2}$$

$$\text{mol solute} = \text{M} \times \text{L solution}$$

$$\text{mol solute} = 0.375\ \frac{\text{mol sugar}}{\text{L}} \times \left(10\ \text{mL} \times \frac{1\ \text{L}}{1000\ \text{mL}}\right) \qquad = 0.004\ \text{mol sugar}$$

Exercise 1.7.2

What volume (mL) of the sweetened tea described in Example 1.7.1 contains the same amount of sugar (mol) as 10 mL of the soft drink in this example?

Answer

80 mL

Example 1.7.3: Calculating Molar Concentrations from the Mass of Solute

Distilled white vinegar (Figure 1.7.2) is a solution of acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H, in water. A 0.500-L vinegar solution contains 25.2 g of acetic acid. What is the concentration of the acetic acid solution in units of molarity?



Figure 1.7.3: Distilled white vinegar is a solution of acetic acid in water.
A label on a container is shown. The label has a picture of a salad with the words “Distilled White Vinegar,” and, “Reduced with water to 5% acidity,” written above it.

Solution

As in previous examples, the definition of molarity is the primary equation used to calculate the quantity sought. In this case, the mass of solute is provided instead of its molar amount, so we must use the solute’s molar mass to obtain the amount of solute in moles:

$$M = \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{L solution}} = \frac{25.2\ \text{g}\ \text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}}{60.052\ \text{g}\ \text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}}}{0.500\ \text{L solution}} = 0.839\ M \tag{1.7.3}$$

$$M = \frac{0.839\ \text{mol solute}}{1.00\ \text{L solution}}$$

Nov 29, 2019, 5:24 PM

$$M = \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{L solution}} = 0.839\ M \tag{1.7.4}$$

? Exercise 1.7.3

Calculate the molarity of 6.52 g of $CoCl_2$ (128.9 g/mol) dissolved in an aqueous solution with a total volume of 75.0 mL.

Answer

0.674 M

✓ Example 1.7.4: Determining the Mass of Solute in a Given Volume of Solution

How many grams of NaCl are contained in 0.250 L of a 5.30-*M* solution?

Solution

The volume and molarity of the solution are specified, so the amount (mol) of solute is easily computed as demonstrated in Example 1.7.3:

$$M = \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{L solution}} \tag{1.7.5}$$

$$\text{mol solute} = M \times \text{L solution} \tag{1.7.6}$$

$$\text{mol solute} = 5.30\ \frac{\text{mol NaCl}}{\text{L}} \times 0.250\ \text{L} = 1.325\ \text{mol NaCl} \tag{1.7.7}$$

Finally, this molar amount is used to derive the mass of NaCl:

$$1.325 \text{ mol NaCl} \times \frac{58.44 \text{ g NaCl}}{\text{mol NaCl}} = 77.4 \text{ g NaCl} \tag{1.7.8}$$

Exercise 1.7.4

How many grams of $CaCl_2$ (110.98 g/mol) are contained in 250.0 mL of a 0.200-M solution of calcium chloride?

Answer

5.55 g $CaCl_2$

When performing calculations stepwise, as in Example 1.7.3, it is important to refrain from rounding any intermediate calculation results, which can lead to rounding errors in the final result. In Example 1.7.4, the molar amount of NaCl computed in the first step, 1.325 mol, would be properly rounded to 1.32 mol if it were to be reported; however, although the last digit (5) is not significant, it must be retained as a guard digit in the intermediate calculation. If we had not retained this guard digit, the final calculation for the mass of NaCl would have been 77.1 g, a difference of 0.3 g.

In addition to retaining a guard digit for intermediate calculations, we can also avoid rounding errors by performing computations in a single step (Example 1.7.5). This eliminates intermediate steps so that only the final result is rounded.

Example 1.7.5: Determining the Volume of Solution

In Example 1.7.3, we found the typical concentration of vinegar to be 0.839 *M*. What volume of vinegar contains 75.6 g of acetic acid?

Solution

First, use the molar mass to calculate moles of acetic acid from the given mass:

$$\text{g solute} \times \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{g solute}} = \text{mol solute} \tag{1.7.9}$$

Then, use the molarity of the solution to calculate the volume of solution containing this molar amount of solute:

$$\text{mol solute} \times \frac{\text{L solution}}{\text{mol solute}} = \text{L solution} \tag{1.7.10}$$

Combining these two steps into one yields:

$$\text{g solute} \times \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{g solute}} \times \frac{\text{L solution}}{\text{mol solute}} = \text{L solution} \tag{1.7.11}$$

$$75.6 \text{ g } CH_3CO_2H \left(\frac{\text{mol } CH_3CO_2H}{60.05 \text{ g}}\right)\left(\frac{\text{L solution}}{0.839 \text{ mol } CH_3CO_2H}\right) = 1.50 \text{ L solution} \tag{1.7.12}$$

Exercise 1.7.5:

What volume of a 1.50-M KBr solution contains 66.0 g KBr?

Answer

0.370 L

Dilution of Solutions

Dilution is the process whereby the concentration of a solution is lessened by the addition of solvent. For example, we might say that a glass of iced tea becomes increasingly diluted as the ice melts. The water from the melting ice increases the volume of the

solvent (water) and the overall volume of the solution (iced tea), thereby reducing the relative concentrations of the solutes that give the beverage its taste (Figure 1.7.2).

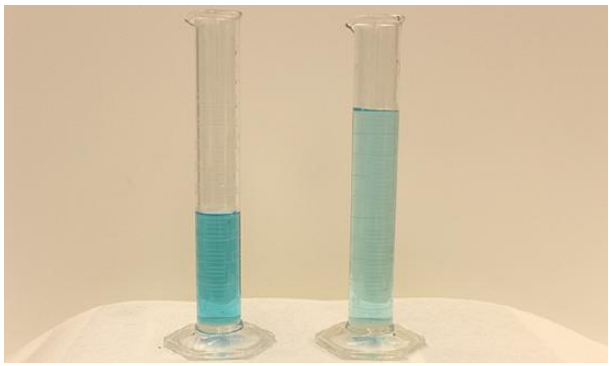


Figure 1.7.2: Both solutions contain the same mass of copper nitrate. The solution on the right is more dilute because the copper nitrate is dissolved in more solvent. (credit: Mark Ott).

This figure shows two graduated cylinders side-by-side. The first has about half as much blue liquid as the second. The blue liquid is darker in the first cylinder than in the second.

Dilution is also a common means of preparing solutions of a desired concentration. By adding solvent to a measured portion of a more concentrated *stock solution*, we can achieve a particular concentration. For example, commercial pesticides are typically sold as solutions in which the active ingredients are far more concentrated than is appropriate for their application. Before they can be used on crops, the pesticides must be diluted. This is also a very common practice for the preparation of a number of common laboratory reagents (Figure 1.7.3).



Figure 1.7.3: A solution of $KMnO_4$ is prepared by mixing water with 4.74 g of KMnO4 in a flask. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

This figure shows two photos. In the first, there is an empty glass container, 4.75 g of K M n O subscript 4 powder on a white circle, and a bottle of distilled water. In the second photo the powder and about half the water have been added to the glass container. The liquid in the glass container is almost black in color.

A simple mathematical relationship can be used to relate the volumes and concentrations of a solution before and after the dilution process. According to the definition of molarity, the molar amount of solute in a solution is equal to the product of the solution's molarity and its volume in liters:

$$n = ML$$

Expressions like these may be written for a solution before and after it is diluted:

$$n_1 = M_1 L_1$$

$$n_2 = M_2 L_2$$

where the subscripts "1" and "2" refer to the solution before and after the dilution, respectively. Since the dilution process *does not change the amount of solute in the solution*, $n_1 = n_2$. Thus, these two equations may be set equal to one another:

$$M_1 L_1 = M_2 L_2$$

This relation is commonly referred to as the dilution equation. Although we derived this equation using molarity as the unit of concentration and liters as the unit of volume, other units of concentration and volume may be used, so long as the units properly cancel per the factor-label method. Reflecting this versatility, the dilution equation is often written in the more general form:

$$C_1V_1 = C_2V_2$$

where C and V are concentration and volume, respectively.

Example 1.7.6: Determining the Concentration of a Diluted Solution

If 0.850 L of a 5.00-*M* solution of copper nitrate, $Cu(NO_3)_2$, is diluted to a volume of 1.80 L by the addition of water, what is the molarity of the diluted solution?

Solution

We are given the volume and concentration of a stock solution, V_1 and C_1, and the volume of the resultant diluted solution, V_2. We need to find the concentration of the diluted solution, C_2. We thus rearrange the dilution equation in order to isolate C_2:

$$C_1V_1 = C_2V_2$$

$$C_2 = \frac{C_1V_1}{V_2}$$

Since the stock solution is being diluted by more than two-fold (volume is increased from 0.85 L to 1.80 L), we would expect the diluted solution's concentration to be less than one-half 5 *M*. We will compare this ballpark estimate to the calculated result to check for any gross errors in computation (for example, such as an improper substitution of the given quantities). Substituting the given values for the terms on the right side of this equation yields:

$$C_2 = \frac{0.850\ \text{L} \times 5.00\ \frac{\text{mol}}{\text{L}}}{1.80\ \text{L}} = 2.36\ M$$

This result compares well to our ballpark estimate (it's a bit less than one-half the stock concentration, 5 *M*).

Exercise 1.7.6

What is the concentration of the solution that results from diluting 25.0 mL of a 2.04-M solution of CH3OH to 500.0 mL?

Answer

0.102 M CH_3OH

Example 1.7.7: Volume of a Diluted Solution

What volume of 0.12 *M* HBr can be prepared from 11 mL (0.011 L) of 0.45 *M* HBr?

Solution

We are given the volume and concentration of a stock solution, V_1 and C_1, and the concentration of the resultant diluted solution, C_2. We need to find the volume of the diluted solution, V_2. We thus rearrange the dilution equation in order to isolate V_2:

$$C_1V_1 = C_2V_2$$

$$V_2 = \frac{C_1V_1}{C_2}$$

Since the diluted concentration (0.12 *M*) is slightly more than one-fourth the original concentration (0.45 *M*), we would expect the volume of the diluted solution to be roughly four times the original volume, or around 44 mL. Substituting the given values and solving for the unknown volume yields:

$$V_2 = \frac{(0.45\ M)(0.011\ \text{L})}{(0.12\ M)}$$

$$V_2 = 0.041\ \text{L}$$

The volume of the 0.12-*M* solution is 0.041 L (41 mL). The result is reasonable and compares well with our rough estimate.

? Exercise 1.7.7

A laboratory experiment calls for 0.125 M HNO_3. What volume of 0.125 M HNO_3 can be prepared from 0.250 L of 1.88 M HNO_3?

Answer

3.76 L

✓ Example 1.7.8: Volume of a Concentrated Solution Needed for Dilution

What volume of 1.59 *M* KOH is required to prepare 5.00 L of 0.100 *M* KOH?

Solution

We are given the concentration of a stock solution, C_1, and the volume and concentration of the resultant diluted solution, V_2 and C_2. We need to find the volume of the stock solution, V_1. We thus rearrange the dilution equation in order to isolate V_1:

$$C_1V_1 = C_2V_2$$

$$V_1 = \frac{C_2V_2}{C_1}$$

Since the concentration of the diluted solution 0.100 *M* is roughly one-sixteenth that of the stock solution (1.59 *M*), we would expect the volume of the stock solution to be about one-sixteenth that of the diluted solution, or around 0.3 liters. Substituting the given values and solving for the unknown volume yields:

$$V_1 = \frac{(0.100\ M)(5.00\ \text{L})}{1.59\ M}$$

$$V_1 = 0.314\ \text{L}$$

Thus, we would need 0.314 L of the 1.59-*M* solution to prepare the desired solution. This result is consistent with our rough estimate.

? Exercise 1.7.8

What volume of a 0.575-M solution of glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$, can be prepared from 50.00 mL of a 3.00-M glucose solution?

Answer

0.261

Summary

Solutions are homogeneous mixtures. Many solutions contain one component, called the solvent, in which other components, called solutes, are dissolved. An aqueous solution is one for which the solvent is water. The concentration of a solution is a measure of the relative amount of solute in a given amount of solution. Concentrations may be measured using various units, with one very useful unit being molarity, defined as the number of moles of solute per liter of solution. The solute concentration of a solution may be decreased by adding solvent, a process referred to as dilution. The dilution equation is a simple relation between concentrations and volumes of a solution before and after dilution.

Key Equations

- $M = \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{L solution}}$
- $C_1V_1 = C_2V_2$

Glossary

aqueous solution
solution for which water is the solvent

concentrated
qualitative term for a solution containing solute at a relatively high concentration

concentration
quantitative measure of the relative amounts of solute and solvent present in a solution

dilute
qualitative term for a solution containing solute at a relatively low concentration

dilution
process of adding solvent to a solution in order to lower the concentration of solutes

dissolved
describes the process by which solute components are dispersed in a solvent

molarity (*M*)
unit of concentration, defined as the number of moles of solute dissolved in 1 liter of solution

solute
solution component present in a concentration less than that of the solvent

solvent
solution component present in a concentration that is higher relative to other components

---

This page titled 1.7: Molarity is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **3.3: Molarity** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1.8.0: Solutions and Colloids

A general chemistry Libretexts Textbook remixed and remastered from OpenStax's textbook:

General Chemistry

In this chapter, we will consider the nature of solutions, and examine factors that determine whether a solution will form and what properties it may have. In addition, we will discuss colloids—systems that resemble solutions but consist of dispersions of particles somewhat larger than ordinary molecules or ions.

1.8.1 Prelude to Solutions and Colloids
1.8.2 The Dissolution Process
1.8.3 Electrolytes
1.8.4 Solubility

Contributors

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 1.8.0: Solutions and Colloids is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

1.8.1 Prelude to Solutions and Colloids

Coral reefs are home to about 25% of all marine species. They are being threatened by climate change, oceanic acidification, and water pollution, all of which change the composition of the solution we know as seawater. Dissolved oxygen in seawater is critical for sea creatures, but as the oceans warm, oxygen becomes less soluble. As the concentration of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere increases, the concentration of carbon dioxide in the oceans increases, contributing to oceanic acidification. Coral reefs are particularly sensitive to the acidification of the ocean, since the exoskeletons of the coral polyps are soluble in acidic solutions. Humans contribute to the changing of seawater composition by allowing agricultural runoff and other forms of pollution to affect our oceans.



Figure 1: Coral reefs, such as this one at the Palmyra Atoll National Wildlife Refuge, are vital to the ecosystem of earth's oceans but are threatened by climate change and dissolved pollution. Marine life depends on the specific chemical composition of the complex mixture we know as seawater. (credit: modification of work by "USFWS – Pacific Region"/Wikimedia Commons)

Solutions are crucial to the processes that sustain life and to many other processes involving chemical reactions. In this chapter, we will consider the nature of solutions, and examine factors that determine whether a solution will form and what properties it may have. In addition, we will discuss colloids—systems that resemble solutions but consist of dispersions of particles somewhat larger than ordinary molecules or ions.

This page titled 1.8.1 Prelude to Solutions and Colloids is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **11.1: Prelude to Solutions and Colloids** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.8.2 The Dissolution Process

Learning Objectives

- Describe the basic properties of solutions and how they form.
- Predict whether a given mixture will yield a solution based on molecular properties of its components.
- Explain why some solutions either produce or absorb heat when they form.

An earlier chapter of this text introduced *solutions*, defined as homogeneous mixtures of two or more substances. Often, one component of a solution is present at a significantly greater concentration, in which case it is called the solvent. The other components of the solution present in relatively lesser concentrations are called solutes. Sugar is a covalent solid composed of sucrose molecules, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$. When this compound dissolves in water, its molecules become uniformly distributed among the molecules of water:

$$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}(s) \longrightarrow C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}(aq) \quad (1)$$

The subscript "aq" in the equation signifies that the sucrose molecules are solutes and are therefore *individually dispersed* throughout the *aqueous solution* (water is the solvent). Although sucrose molecules are heavier than water molecules, they remain dispersed throughout the solution; gravity does not cause them to "settle out" over time.

Potassium dichromate, $K_2Cr_2O_7$, is an ionic compound composed of colorless potassium ions, K^+, and orange dichromate ions, $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$. When a small amount of solid potassium dichromate is added to water, the compound dissolves and dissociates to yield potassium ions and dichromate ions uniformly distributed throughout the mixture (Figure 1), as indicated in this equation:

$$K_2Cr_2O_7(s) \longrightarrow 2\,K^+(aq) + Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) \quad (2)$$

As with the mixture of sugar and water, this mixture is also an aqueous solution. Its solutes, potassium and dichromate ions, remain individually dispersed among the solvent (water) molecules.



Figure 1: When potassium dichromate ($K_2Cr_2O_7$) is mixed with water, it forms a homogeneous orange solution. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott).

The first photo shows a small mound of an orange crystalline solid. There is a right-facing arrow. The second photo shows a translucent, colorless liquid in a clear container. There is a right-facing arrow. The third photo shows a translucent orange liquid in a clear, covered container.

Water is used so often as a solvent that the word solution has come to imply an aqueous solution to many people. However, almost any gas, liquid, or solid can act as a solvent. Many alloys are solid solutions of one metal dissolved in another; for example, US five-cent coins contain nickel dissolved in copper. Air is a gaseous solution, a homogeneous mixture of nitrogen, oxygen, and several other gases. Oxygen (a gas), alcohol (a liquid), and sugar (a solid) all dissolve in water (a liquid) to form liquid solutions. Table 1 gives examples of several different solutions and the phases of the solutes and solvents.

Table 1: Different Types of Solutions

Solution	Solute	Solvent
air	$O_2(g)$	$N_2(g)$
soft drinks	$CO_2(g)$	$H_2O(l)$
hydrogen in palladium	$H_2(g)$	Pd(s)
rubbing alcohol	$H_2O(l)$	$C_3H_8O(l)$ (2-propanol)
saltwater	NaCl(s)	$H_2O(l)$

Solution	Solute	Solvent
brass	Zn(*s*)	Cu(*s*)

Solutions exhibit these defining traits:

- They are homogeneous; that is, after a solution is mixed, it has the same composition at all points throughout (its composition is uniform).
- The physical state of a solution—solid, liquid, or gas—is typically the same as that of the solvent, as demonstrated by the examples in Table 1.
- The components of a solution are dispersed on a molecular scale; that is, they consist of a mixture of separated molecules, atoms, and/or ions.
- The dissolved solute in a solution will not settle out or separate from the solvent.
- The composition of a solution, or the concentrations of its components, can be varied continuously, within limits.

The Formation of Solutions

The formation of a solution is an example of a spontaneous process, a process that occurs under specified conditions without the requirement of energy from some external source. Sometimes we stir a mixture to speed up the dissolution process, but this is not necessary; a homogeneous solution would form if we waited long enough. The topic of spontaneity is critically important to the study of chemical thermodynamics and is treated more thoroughly in a later chapter of this text. For purposes of this chapter's discussion, it will suffice to consider two criteria that *favor*, but do not guarantee, the spontaneous formation of a solution:

1. a decrease in the internal energy of the system (an exothermic change, as discussed in the previous chapter on thermochemistry)
2. an increase in the disorder in the system (which indicates an increase in the *entropy* of the system, as you will learn about in the later chapter on thermodynamics)

In the process of dissolution, an internal energy change often, but not always, occurs as heat is absorbed or evolved. An increase in disorder always results when a solution forms.

When the strengths of the intermolecular forces of attraction between solute and solvent species in a solution are no different than those present in the separated components, the solution is formed with no accompanying energy change. Such a solution is called an ideal solution. A mixture of ideal gases (or gases such as helium and argon, which closely approach ideal behavior) is an example of an ideal solution, since the entities comprising these gases experience no significant intermolecular attractions.

When containers of helium and argon are connected, the gases spontaneously mix due to diffusion and form a solution (Figure 2). The formation of this solution clearly involves an increase in disorder, since the helium and argon atoms occupy a volume twice as large as that which each occupied before mixing.

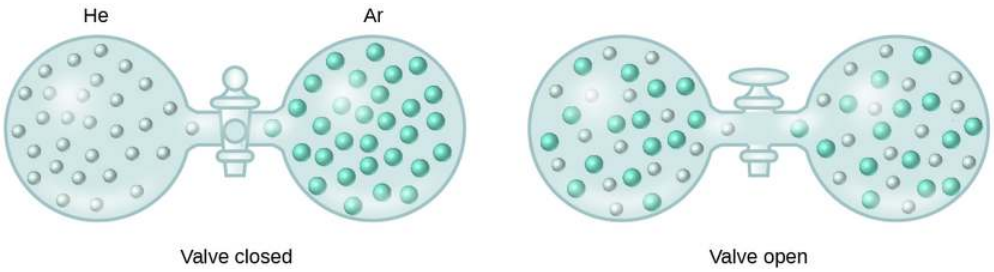


Figure 2: Samples of helium and argon spontaneously mix to give a solution in which the disorder of the atoms of the two gases is increased.

Two figures are shown. The first contains two spherical containers joined by a closed stopcock. The container to the left is labeled H e. It holds about thirty evenly dispersed, small, light blue spheres. The container on the right is labeled A r and contains about thirty slightly larger blue-green spheres. The second, similar figure has an open stopcock between the two spherical containers. The light blue and green spheres are evenly dispersed and present in both containers.

Ideal solutions may also form when structurally similar liquids are mixed. For example, mixtures of the alcohols methanol (CH_3OH) and ethanol (C_2H_5OH) form ideal solutions, as do mixtures of the hydrocarbons pentane, C_5H_{12}, and hexane, C_6H_{14}. Placing methanol and ethanol, or pentane and hexane, in the bulbs shown in Figure 2 will result in the same diffusion and subsequent mixing of these liquids as is observed for the He and Ar gases (although at a much slower rate), yielding solutions with no significant change in energy. Unlike a mixture of gases, however, the components of these liquid-liquid solutions do, indeed,

experience intermolecular attractive forces. But since the molecules of the two substances being mixed are structurally very similar, the intermolecular attractive forces between like and unlike molecules are essentially the same, and the dissolution process, therefore, does not entail any appreciable increase or decrease in energy. These examples illustrate how diffusion alone can provide the driving force required to cause the spontaneous formation of a solution. In some cases, however, the relative magnitudes of intermolecular forces of attraction between solute and solvent species may prevent dissolution.

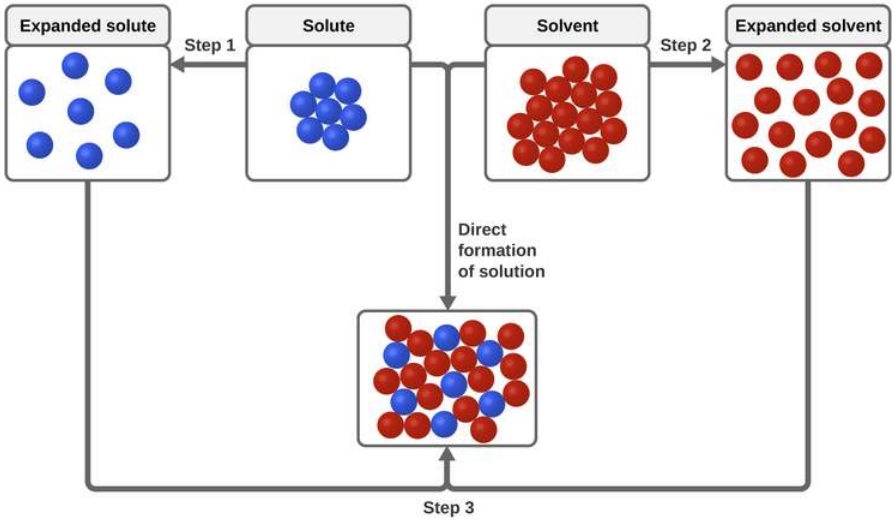


Figure 3: This schematic representation of dissolution shows a stepwise process involving the endothermic separation of solute and solvent species (Steps 1 and 2) and exothermic solvation (Step 3).

The top, central region of the figure shows solute particles as seven blue spheres and solvent particles as 16 red spheres in separate, labeled boxes. The particles in these boxes are touching. An arrow labeled “Step 1” points left of the solute box, and shows the blue spheres no longer touching in another box labeled “expanded solute.” An arrow labeled “Step 2” points right from the solvent box and shows the red spheres no longer touching in another box labeled “expanded solvent.” Arrows proceed from the bottom of the expanded solute and expanded solvent boxes and join at the bottom of the figure where a step 3 label is shown. The joined arrows point to a box just above in which the red and blue spheres are mixed together and touching. The solute and solvent boxes are joined by another arrow labeled “direct formation of solution” which points downward at the center of the figure. This arrow also points to the box containing mixed red and blue spheres near the bottom of the figure.

Three types of intermolecular attractive forces are relevant to the dissolution process: solute-solute, solvent-solvent, and solute-solvent. As illustrated in Figure 3, the formation of a solution may be viewed as a stepwise process in which energy is consumed to overcome solute-solute and solvent-solvent attractions (endothermic processes) and released when solute-solvent attractions are established (an exothermic process referred to as solvation). The relative magnitudes of the energy changes associated with these stepwise processes determine whether the dissolution process overall will release or absorb energy. In some cases, solutions do not form because the energy required to separate solute and solvent species is so much greater than the energy released by solvation.



Figure 4: A mixture of nonpolar cooking oil and polar water does not yield a solution. (credit: Gautam Dogra).

For example, cooking oils and water will not mix to any appreciable extent to yield solutions (Figure 4). Hydrogen bonding is the dominant intermolecular attractive force present in liquid water; the nonpolar hydrocarbon molecules of cooking oils are not capable of hydrogen bonding, instead being held together by dispersion forces. Forming an oil-water solution would require

overcoming the very strong hydrogen bonding in water, as well as the significantly strong dispersion forces between the relatively large oil molecules. And, since the polar water molecules and nonpolar oil molecules would not experience very strong intermolecular attraction, very little energy would be released by solvation.

On the other hand, a mixture of ethanol and water will mix in any proportions to yield a solution. In this case, both substances are capable of hydrogen bonding, and so the solvation process is sufficiently exothermic to compensate for the endothermic separations of solute and solvent molecules.



Figure 5: An instant cold pack gets cold when certain salts, such as ammonium nitrate, dissolve in water—an endothermic process.

This figure shows a single use instant cold pack with labels indicating an inner bag of water surrounded by white particulate ammonium nitrate.

As noted at the beginning of this module, spontaneous solution formation is favored, but not guaranteed, by exothermic dissolution processes. While many soluble compounds do, indeed, dissolve with the release of heat, some dissolve endothermically. Ammonium nitrate (NH_4NO_3) is one such example and is used to make instant cold packs for treating injuries like the one pictured in Figure 5. A thin-walled plastic bag of water is sealed inside a larger bag with solid NH_4NO_3. When the smaller bag is broken, a solution of NH_4NO_3 forms, absorbing heat from the surroundings (the injured area to which the pack is applied) and providing a cold compress that decreases swelling. Endothermic dissolutions such as this one require a greater energy input to separate the solute species than is recovered when the solutes are solvated, but they are spontaneous nonetheless due to the increase in disorder that accompanies formation of the solution.



Video* 1: Watch this brief video illustrating endothermic and exothermic dissolution processes.*

Summary

A solution forms when two or more substances combine physically to yield a mixture that is homogeneous at the molecular level. The solvent is the most concentrated component and determines the physical state of the solution. The solutes are the other components typically present at concentrations less than that of the solvent. Solutions may form endothermically or exothermically,

depending upon the relative magnitudes of solute and solvent intermolecular attractive forces. Ideal solutions form with no appreciable change in energy.

Footnotes

1. If bubbles of gas are observed within the liquid, the mixture is not homogeneous and, thus, not a solution.

Glossary

alloy
solid mixture of a metallic element and one or more additional elements

ideal solution
solution that forms with no accompanying energy change

solvation
exothermic process in which intermolecular attractive forces between the solute and solvent in a solution are established

spontaneous process
physical or chemical change that occurs without the addition of energy from an external source

---

This page titled 1.8.2 The Dissolution Process is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **11.2: The Dissolution Process** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.8.3 Electrolytes

Learning Objectives

- Define and give examples of electrolytes
- Distinguish between the physical and chemical changes that accompany dissolution of ionic and covalent electrolytes
- Relate electrolyte strength to solute-solvent attractive forces

When some substances are dissolved in water, they undergo either a physical or a chemical change that yields ions in solution. These substances constitute an important class of compounds called electrolytes. Substances that do not yield ions when dissolved are called nonelectrolytes. If the physical or chemical process that generates the ions is essentially 100% efficient (all of the dissolved compound yields ions), then the substance is known as a strong electrolyte. If only a relatively small fraction of the dissolved substance undergoes the ion-producing process, it is called a weak electrolyte.

Substances may be identified as strong, weak, or nonelectrolytes by measuring the electrical conductance of an aqueous solution containing the substance. To conduct electricity, a substance must contain freely mobile, charged species. Most familiar is the conduction of electricity through metallic wires, in which case the mobile, charged entities are electrons. Solutions may also conduct electricity if they contain dissolved ions, with conductivity increasing as ion concentration increases. Applying a voltage to electrodes immersed in a solution permits assessment of the relative concentration of dissolved ions, either quantitatively, by measuring the electrical current flow, or qualitatively, by observing the brightness of a light bulb included in the circuit (Figure 1).

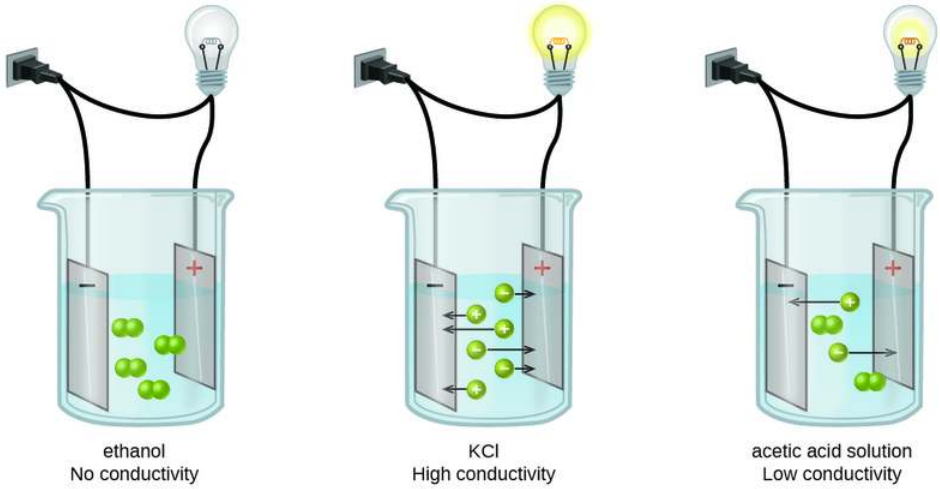


Figure 1: Solutions of nonelectrolytes such as ethanol do not contain dissolved ions and cannot conduct electricity. Solutions of electrolytes contain ions that permit the passage of electricity. The conductivity of an electrolyte solution is related to the strength of the electrolyte.

This diagram shows three separate beakers. Each has a wire plugged into a wall outlet. In each case, the wire leads from the wall to the beaker and is split resulting in two ends. One end leads to a light bulb and continues on to a rectangle labeled with a plus sign. The other end leads to a rectangle labeled with a minus sign. The rectangles are in a solution. In the first beaker, labeled “Ethanol No Conductivity,” four pairs of linked small green spheres suspended in the solution between the rectangles. In the second beaker, labeled “K C l Strong Conductivity,” six individual green spheres, three labeled plus and three labeled minus are suspended in the solution. Each of the six spheres has an arrow extending from it pointing to the rectangle labeled with the opposite sign. In the third beaker, labeled “Acetic acid solution Weak conductivity,” two pairs of joined green spheres and two individual spheres, one labeled plus and one labeled minus are shown suspended between the two rectangles. The plus labeled sphere has an arrow pointing to the rectangle labeled minus and the minus labeled sphere has an arrow pointing to the rectangle labeled plus.

Ionic Electrolytes

Water and other polar molecules are attracted to ions, as shown in Figure 2. The electrostatic attraction between an ion and a molecule with a dipole is called an ion-dipole attraction. These attractions play an important role in the dissolution of ionic compounds in water.

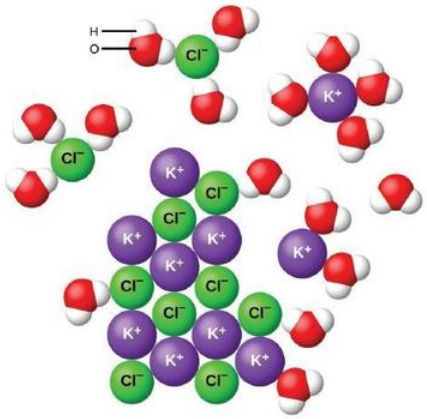


Figure 2: As potassium chloride (KCl) dissolves in water, the ions are hydrated. The polar water molecules are attracted by the charges on the K^+ and Cl^- ions. Water molecules in front of and behind the ions are not shown.

The diagram shows eight purple spheres labeled K superscript plus and eight green spheres labeled C l superscript minus mixed and touching near the center of the diagram. Outside of this cluster of spheres are seventeen clusters of three spheres, which include one red and two white spheres. A red sphere in one of these clusters is labeled O. A white sphere is labeled H. Two of the green C l superscript minus spheres are surrounded by three of the red and white clusters, with the red spheres closer to the green spheres than the white spheres. One of the K superscript plus purple spheres is surrounded by four of the red and white clusters. The white spheres of these clusters are closest to the purple spheres.

When ionic compounds dissolve in water, the ions in the solid separate and disperse uniformly throughout the solution because water molecules surround and solvate the ions, reducing the strong electrostatic forces between them. This process represents a physical change known as dissociation. Under most conditions, ionic compounds will dissociate nearly completely when dissolved, and so they are classified as strong electrolytes.

Let us consider what happens at the microscopic level when we add solid KCl to water. Ion-dipole forces attract the positive (hydrogen) end of the polar water molecules to the negative chloride ions at the surface of the solid, and they attract the negative (oxygen) ends to the positive potassium ions. The water molecules penetrate between individual K^+ and Cl^- ions and surround them, reducing the strong interionic forces that bind the ions together and letting them move off into solution as solvated ions, as Figure shows. The reduction of the electrostatic attraction permits the independent motion of each hydrated ion in a dilute solution, resulting in an increase in the disorder of the system as the ions change from their fixed and ordered positions in the crystal to mobile and much more disordered states in solution. This increased disorder is responsible for the dissolution of many ionic compounds, including KCl, which dissolve with absorption of heat.

In other cases, the electrostatic attractions between the ions in a crystal are so large, or the ion-dipole attractive forces between the ions and water molecules are so weak, that the increase in disorder cannot compensate for the energy required to separate the ions, and the crystal is insoluble. Such is the case for compounds such as calcium carbonate (limestone), calcium phosphate (the inorganic component of bone), and iron oxide (rust).

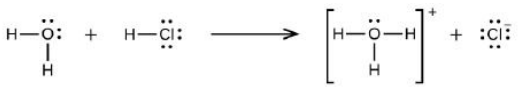
Covalent Electrolytes

Pure water is an extremely poor conductor of electricity because it is only very slightly ionized—only about two out of every 1 billion molecules ionize at 25 °C. Water ionizes when one molecule of water gives up a proton to another molecule of water, yielding hydronium and hydroxide ions.

$$\mathrm{H_2O(l)^+H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)} \tag{1}$$

In some cases, we find that solutions prepared from covalent compounds conduct electricity because the solute molecules react chemically with the solvent to produce ions. For example, pure hydrogen chloride is a gas consisting of covalent HCl molecules. This gas contains no ions. However, when we dissolve hydrogen chloride in water, we find that the solution is a very good conductor. The water molecules play an essential part in forming ions: Solutions of hydrogen chloride in many other solvents, such as benzene, do not conduct electricity and do not contain ions.

Hydrogen chloride is an *acid*, and so its molecules react with water, transferring H^+ ions to form hydronium ions (H_3O^+) and chloride ions (Cl^-):



A chemical equation is shown. To the left, two hydrogen atoms are linked, each with a single dash to a central oxygen atom to the left and below the oxygen symbol, which has two pairs of dots, above and to the right of the atom. A plus sign is shown to the right, then a hydrogen atom linked to the left side of chlorine atom by a single dash with three pairs of dots, above, to the right, and below the element symbol. An arrow points to the products which are three hydrogen atoms linked by single dashes to a central oxygen atom shown in brackets with superscript plus. The oxygen atom has a single pair of dots above the element symbol. This is followed by a plus and C l superscript minus. This symbol is surrounded by four pairs of dots, above and below and to the left and right of the element symbol.

This reaction is essentially 100% complete for HCl (i.e., it is a *strong acid* and, consequently, a strong electrolyte). Likewise, weak acids and bases that only react partially generate relatively low concentrations of ions when dissolved in water and are classified as weak electrolytes. The reader may wish to review the discussion of strong and weak acids provided in the earlier chapter of this text on reaction classes and stoichiometry.

Summary

Substances that dissolve in water to yield ions are called electrolytes. Electrolytes may be covalent compounds that chemically react with water to produce ions (for example, acids and bases), or they may be ionic compounds that dissociate to yield their constituent cations and anions, when dissolved. Dissolution of an ionic compound is facilitated by ion-dipole attractions between the ions of the compound and the polar water molecules. Soluble ionic substances and strong acids ionize completely and are strong electrolytes, while weak acids and bases ionize to only a small extent and are weak electrolytes. Nonelectrolytes are substances that do not produce ions when dissolved in water.

Glossary

dissociation
: physical process accompanying the dissolution of an ionic compound in which the compound's constituent ions are solvated and dispersed throughout the solution

electrolyte
: substance that produces ions when dissolved in water

ion-dipole attraction
: electrostatic attraction between an ion and a polar molecule

nonelectrolyte
: substance that does not produce ions when dissolved in water

strong electrolyte
: substance that dissociates or ionizes completely when dissolved in water

weak electrolyte
: substance that ionizes only partially when dissolved in water

---

This page titled 1.8.3 Electrolytes is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **11.3: Electrolytes** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.8.4 Solubility

Learning Objectives

- Describe the effects of temperature and pressure on solubility
- State Henry's law and use it in calculations involving the solubility of a gas in a liquid
- Explain the degrees of solubility possible for liquid-liquid solutions

Imagine adding a small amount of salt to a glass of water, stirring until all the salt has dissolved, and then adding a bit more. You can repeat this process until the salt concentration of the solution reaches its natural limit, a limit determined primarily by the relative strengths of the solute-solute, solute-solvent, and solvent-solvent attractive forces discussed in the previous two modules of this chapter. You can be certain that you have reached this limit because, no matter how long you stir the solution, undissolved salt remains. The concentration of salt in the solution at this point is known as its solubility.

The solubility of a solute in a particular solvent is the maximum concentration that may be achieved under given conditions when the dissolution process is at equilibrium. Referring to the example of salt in water:

$$\mathrm{NaCl}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Na}^+(aq) + \mathrm{Cl}^-(aq) \tag{1}$$

When a solute's concentration is equal to its solubility, the solution is said to be saturated with that solute. If the solute's concentration is less than its solubility, the solution is said to be unsaturated. A solution that contains a relatively low concentration of solute is called dilute, and one with a relatively high concentration is called concentrated.

If we add more salt to a saturated solution of salt, we see it fall to the bottom and no more seems to dissolve. In fact, the added salt does dissolve, as represented by the forward direction of the dissolution equation. Accompanying this process, dissolved salt will precipitate, as depicted by the reverse direction of the equation. The system is said to be at equilibrium when these two reciprocal processes are occurring at equal rates, and so the amount of undissolved and dissolved salt remains constant. Support for the simultaneous occurrence of the dissolution and precipitation processes is provided by noting that the number and sizes of the undissolved salt crystals will change over time, though their combined mass will remain the same.



Video 1: Watch this impressive video showing the precipitation of sodium acetate from a supersaturated solution.

Solutions may be prepared in which a solute concentration exceeds its solubility. Such solutions are said to be supersaturated, and they are interesting examples of nonequilibrium states. For example, the carbonated beverage in an open container that has not yet "gone flat" is supersaturated with carbon dioxide gas; given time, the CO_2 concentration will decrease until it reaches its equilibrium value.

Solutions of Gases in Liquids

In an earlier module of this chapter, the effect of intermolecular attractive forces on solution formation was discussed. The chemical structures of the solute and solvent dictate the types of forces possible and, consequently, are important factors in determining solubility. For example, under similar conditions, the water solubility of oxygen is approximately three times greater than that of helium, but 100 times less than the solubility of chloromethane, $CHCl_3$. Considering the role of the solvent's chemical

structure, note that the solubility of oxygen in the liquid hydrocarbon hexane, C_6H_{14}, is approximately 20 times greater than it is in water.

Other factors also affect the solubility of a given substance in a given solvent. Temperature is one such factor, with gas solubility typically decreasing as temperature increases (Figure 1). This is one of the major impacts resulting from the thermal pollution of natural bodies of water.

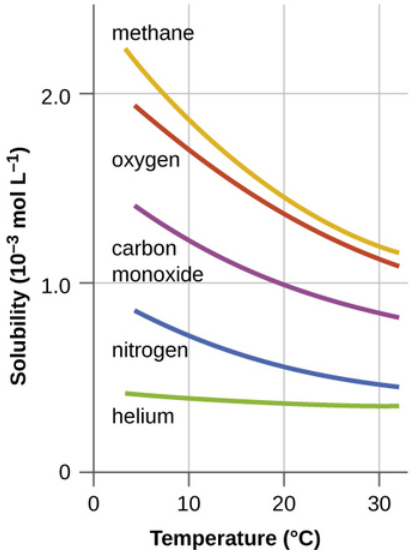


Figure 1: The solubilities of these gases in water decrease as the temperature increases. All solubilities were measured with a constant pressure of 101.3 kPa (1 atm) of gas above the solutions.

When the temperature of a river, lake, or stream is raised abnormally high, usually due to the discharge of hot water from some industrial process, the solubility of oxygen in the water is decreased. Decreased levels of dissolved oxygen may have serious consequences for the health of the water's ecosystems and, in severe cases, can result in large-scale fish kills (Figure 2).



(a) (b)

Figure 2: (a) The small bubbles of air in this glass of chilled water formed when the water warmed to room temperature and the solubility of its dissolved air decreased. (b) The decreased solubility of oxygen in natural waters subjected to thermal pollution can result in large-scale fish kills. (credit a: modification of work by Liz West; credit b: modification of work by U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service)

The solubility of a gaseous solute is also affected by the partial pressure of solute in the gas to which the solution is exposed. Gas solubility increases as the pressure of the gas increases. Carbonated beverages provide a nice illustration of this relationship. The carbonation process involves exposing the beverage to a relatively high pressure of carbon dioxide gas and then sealing the beverage container, thus saturating the beverage with CO_2 at this pressure. When the beverage container is opened, a familiar hiss is heard as the carbon dioxide gas pressure is released, and some of the dissolved carbon dioxide is typically seen leaving solution in the form of small bubbles (Figure 3). At this point, the beverage is supersaturated with carbon dioxide and, with time, the dissolved carbon dioxide concentration will decrease to its equilibrium value and the beverage will become "flat."

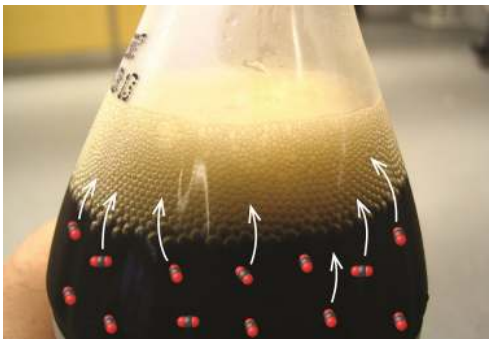


Figure 3: Opening the bottle of carbonated beverage reduces the pressure of the gaseous carbon dioxide above the beverage. The solubility of CO_2 is thus lowered, and some dissolved carbon dioxide may be seen leaving the solution as small gas bubbles. (credit: modification of work by Derrick Coetzee)

A dark brown liquid is shown in a clear, colorless container. A thick layer of beige bubbles appear at the surface of the liquid. In the liquid, thirteen small clusters of single black spheres with two red spheres attached to the left and right are shown. Red spheres represent oxygen atoms and black represent carbon atoms. Seven white arrows point upward in the container from these clusters to the bubble layer at the top of the liquid.

For many gaseous solutes, the relation between solubility, C_g, and partial pressure, P_g, is a proportional one:

$$C_\text{g} = kP_\text{g}$$

where k is a proportionality constant that depends on the identities of the gaseous solute and solvent, and on the solution temperature. This is a mathematical statement of Henry's law: The quantity of an ideal gas that dissolves in a definite volume of liquid is directly proportional to the pressure of the gas.

Example 1: Application of Henry's Law

At 20 °C, the concentration of dissolved oxygen in water exposed to gaseous oxygen at a partial pressure of 101.3 kPa (760 torr) is 1.38×10^{-3} mol L^{-1}. Use Henry's law to determine the solubility of oxygen when its partial pressure is 20.7 kPa (155 torr), the approximate pressure of oxygen in earth's atmosphere.

Solution

According to Henry's law, for an ideal solution the solubility, C_g, of a gas (1.38×10^{-3} mol L^{-1}, in this case) is directly proportional to the pressure, P_g, of the undissolved gas above the solution (101.3 kPa, or 760 torr, in this case). Because we know both C_g and P_g, we can rearrange this expression to solve for k.

$$\begin{aligned} C_\text{g} &= kP_\text{g} \\ k &= \frac{C_\text{g}}{P_\text{g}} \\ &= \frac{1.38 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}}{101.3\ \text{kPa}} \\ &= 1.36 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}\ \text{kPa}^{-1} \\ &\quad (1.82 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}\ \text{torr}^{-1}) \end{aligned}$$

Now we can use k to find the solubility at the lower pressure.

$$\begin{aligned} C_\text{g} &= kP_\text{g} \\ &1.36 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}\ \text{kPa}^{-1} \times 20.7\ \text{kPa} \\ &(\text{or } 1.82 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}\ \text{torr}^{-1} \times 155\ \text{torr}) \\ &= 2.82 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{mol L}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

Note that various units may be used to express the quantities involved in these sorts of computations. Any combination of units that yield to the constraints of dimensional analysis are acceptable.

Exercise 1

Exposing a 100.0 mL sample of water at 0 °C to an atmosphere containing a gaseous solute at 20.26 kPa (152 torr) resulted in the dissolution of 1.45×10^{-3} g of the solute. Use Henry's law to determine the solubility of this gaseous solute when its pressure is 101.3 kPa (760 torr).

Answer

7.25×10^{-3} g in 100.0 mL or 0.0725 g/L

Case Study: Decompression Sickness ("The Bends")

Decompression sickness (DCS), or "the bends," is an effect of the increased pressure of the air inhaled by scuba divers when swimming underwater at considerable depths. In addition to the pressure exerted by the atmosphere, divers are subjected to additional pressure due to the water above them, experiencing an increase of approximately 1 atm for each 10 m of depth. Therefore, the air inhaled by a diver while submerged contains gases at the corresponding higher ambient pressure, and the concentrations of the gases dissolved in the diver's blood are proportionally higher per Henry's law.

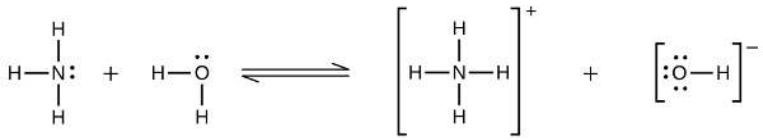


Figure 4: (a) US Navy divers undergo training in a recompression chamber. (b) Divers receive hyperbaric oxygen therapy.

Two photos are shown. The first shows two people seated in a steel chamber on benches that run length of the chamber on each side. The chamber has a couple of small circular windows and an open hatch-type door. One of the two people is giving a thumbs up gesture. The second image provides a view through a small, circular window. Inside the two people can be seen with masks over their mouths and noses. The people appear to be reading.

As the diver ascends to the surface of the water, the ambient pressure decreases and the dissolved gases becomes less soluble. If the ascent is too rapid, the gases escaping from the diver's blood may form bubbles that can cause a variety of symptoms ranging from rashes and joint pain to paralysis and death. To avoid DCS, divers must ascend from depths at relatively slow speeds (10 or 20 m/min) or otherwise make several decompression stops, pausing for several minutes at given depths during the ascent. When these preventive measures are unsuccessful, divers with DCS are often provided hyperbaric oxygen therapy in pressurized vessels called decompression (or recompression) chambers (Figure 4).

Deviations from Henry's law are observed when a chemical reaction takes place between the gaseous solute and the solvent. Thus, for example, the solubility of ammonia in water does not increase as rapidly with increasing pressure as predicted by the law because ammonia, being a base, reacts to some extent with water to form ammonium ions and hydroxide ions.



Gases can form **supersaturated solutions**. If a solution of a gas in a liquid is prepared either at low temperature or under pressure (or both), then as the solution warms or as the gas pressure is reduced, the solution may become supersaturated. In 1986, more than 1700 people in Cameroon were killed when a cloud of gas, almost certainly carbon dioxide, bubbled from Lake Nyos (Figure 5), a deep lake in a volcanic crater. The water at the bottom of Lake Nyos is saturated with carbon dioxide by volcanic activity beneath the lake. It is believed that the lake underwent a turnover due to gradual heating from below the lake, and the warmer, less-dense

water saturated with carbon dioxide reached the surface. Consequently, tremendous quantities of dissolved CO_2 were released, and the colorless gas, which is denser than air, flowed down the valley below the lake and suffocated humans and animals living in the valley.



(a) (b)

Figure 5: (a) It is believed that the 1986 disaster that killed more than 1700 people near Lake Nyos in Cameroon resulted when a large volume of carbon dioxide gas was released from the lake. (b) A CO_2 vent has since been installed to help outgas the lake in a slow, controlled fashion and prevent a similar catastrophe from happening in the future. (credit a: modification of work by Jack Lockwood; credit b: modification of work by Bill Evans)

Two photos are shown. The first is an aerial view of a lake surrounded by green hills. The second shows a large body of water with a fountain sending liquid up into the air several yards or meters above the surface of the water.

Solutions of Liquids in Liquids

We know that some liquids mix with each other in all proportions; in other words, they have infinite mutual solubility and are said to be miscible. Ethanol, sulfuric acid, and ethylene glycol (popular for use as antifreeze, pictured in Figure 6) are examples of liquids that are completely miscible with water. Two-cycle motor oil is miscible with gasoline.



Figure 6: Water and antifreeze are miscible; mixtures of the two are homogeneous in all proportions. (credit: “dno1967”/Wikimedia commons)

Liquids that mix with water in all proportions are usually polar substances or substances that form hydrogen bonds. For such liquids, the dipole-dipole attractions (or hydrogen bonding) of the solute molecules with the solvent molecules are at least as strong as those between molecules in the pure solute or in the pure solvent. Hence, the two kinds of molecules mix easily. Likewise, nonpolar liquids are miscible with each other because there is no appreciable difference in the strengths of solute-solute, solvent-solvent, and solute-solvent intermolecular attractions. The solubility of polar molecules in polar solvents and of nonpolar molecules in nonpolar solvents is, again, an illustration of the chemical axiom “like dissolves like.”

Two liquids that do not mix to an appreciable extent are called immiscible. Layers are formed when we pour immiscible liquids into the same container. Gasoline, oil (Figure 7), benzene, carbon tetrachloride, some paints, and many other nonpolar liquids are immiscible with water. The attraction between the molecules of such nonpolar liquids and polar water molecules is ineffectively weak. The only strong attractions in such a mixture are between the water molecules, so they effectively squeeze out the molecules of the nonpolar liquid. The distinction between immiscibility and miscibility is really one of degrees, so that miscible liquids are of infinite mutual solubility, while liquids said to be immiscible are of very low (though not zero) mutual solubility.



Figure 7: Water and oil are immiscible. Mixtures of these two substances will form two separate layers with the less dense oil floating on top of the water. (credit: “Yortw”/Flickr)

This is a photo of a clear, colorless martini glass containing a golden colored liquid layer resting on top of a clear, colorless liquid.

Two liquids, such as bromine and water, that are of moderate mutual solubility are said to be partially miscible. Two partially miscible liquids usually form two layers when mixed. In the case of the bromine and water mixture, the upper layer is water, saturated with bromine, and the lower layer is bromine saturated with water. Since bromine is nonpolar, and, thus, not very soluble in water, the water layer is only slightly discolored by the bright orange bromine dissolved in it. Since the solubility of water in bromine is very low, there is no noticeable effect on the dark color of the bromine layer (Figure 8).



Figure 8: Bromine (the deep orange liquid on the left) and water (the clear liquid in the middle) are partially miscible. The top layer in the mixture on the right is a saturated solution of bromine in water; the bottom layer is a saturated solution of water in bromine. (credit: Paul Flowers)

This figure shows three test tubes. The first test tube holds a dark orange-brown substance. The second test tube holds a clear substance. The amount of substance in both test tubes is the same. The third test tube holds a dark orange-brown substance on the bottom with a lighter orange substance on top. The amount of substance in the third test tube is almost double of the first two.

Solutions of Solids in Liquids

The dependence of solubility on temperature for a number of inorganic solids in water is shown by the solubility curves in Figure 9. Reviewing these data indicate a general trend of increasing solubility with temperature, although there are exceptions, as illustrated by the ionic compound cerium sulfate.

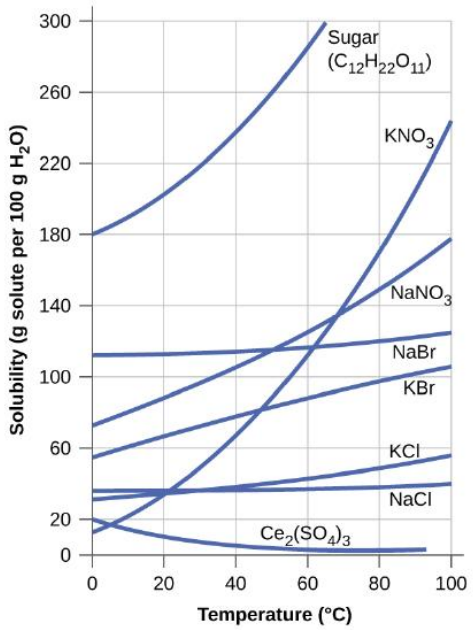


Figure 9: This graph shows how the solubility of several solids changes with temperature.

This shows a graph of the solubility of sugar C subscript 12 H subscript 22 O subscript 11, K N O subscript 3, N a N O subscript 3, N a B r, K B r, N a subscript 2 S O subscript 4, K C l, and C e subscript 2 left parenthesis S O subscript 4 right parenthesis subscript 3 in g solute per 100 g H subscript 2 O at temperatures ranging from 0 degrees Celsius to 100 degrees Celsius. At 0 degrees Celsius, solubilities are approximately 180 for sugar C subscript 12 H subscript 22 O subscript 11, 115 for K N O subscript 3, 75 for N a N O subscript 3, 115 for N a B r, 55 for K B r, 7 for N a subscript 2 S O subscript 4, 25 for K C l, and 20 for C e subscript 2 left parenthesis S O subscript 4 right parenthesis subscript 3. At 0 degrees Celsius, solubilities are approximately 180 for sugar C subscript 12 H subscript 22 O subscript 11, 115 for K N O subscript 3, 75 for N a N O subscript 3, 115 for N a B r, 55 for K B r, 7 for N a subscript 2 S O subscript 4, 25 for K C l, and 20 for C e subscript 2 left parenthesis S O subscript 4 right parenthesis subscript 3. At 100 degrees Celsius, sugar C subscript 12 H subscript 22 O subscript 11 has exceeded the upper limit of solubility indicated on the graph, 240 for K N O subscript 3, 178 for N a N O subscript 3, 123 for N a B r, 105 for K B r, 52 for N a subscript 2 S O subscript 4, 58 for K C l, and the graph for C e subscript 2 left parenthesis S O subscript 4 right parenthesis subscript 3 stops at about 92 degrees Celsius where the solubility is nearly zero. The graph for N a subscript 2 S O subscript 4 is shown in red. All others substances are shown in blue. The solubility of this substance increases until about 30 degrees Celsius and declines beyond that point with increasing temperature.

The temperature dependence of solubility can be exploited to prepare supersaturated solutions of certain compounds. A solution may be saturated with the compound at an elevated temperature (where the solute is more soluble) and subsequently cooled to a lower temperature without precipitating the solute. The resultant solution contains solute at a concentration greater than its equilibrium solubility at the lower temperature (i.e., it is supersaturated) and is relatively stable. Precipitation of the excess solute can be initiated by adding a seed crystal (see the video in the Link to Learning earlier in this module) or by mechanically agitating the solution. Some hand warmers, such as the one pictured in Figure 10, take advantage of this behavior.



Figure 10: This hand warmer produces heat when the sodium acetate in a supersaturated solution precipitates. Precipitation of the solute is initiated by a mechanical shockwave generated when the flexible metal disk within the solution is “clicked.” (credit: modification of work by “Velela”/Wikimedia Commons)

Three photos of hand warmers are shown side by side with an arrow pointing from the first photo to the second, and another arrow pointing from the second photo to the third. The first packet contains a clear colorless liquid and a small metal disc can be seen. In the second packet, the disc can’t be seen and a dispersion of white liquid is beginning. In the third packet, all of the liquid is white.



Video 2: This video shows the crystallization process occurring in a hand warmer.

Summary

The extent to which one substance will dissolve in another is determined by several factors, including the types and relative strengths of intermolecular attractive forces that may exist between the substances' atoms, ions, or molecules. This tendency to dissolve is quantified as substance's solubility, its maximum concentration in a solution at equilibrium under specified conditions. A saturated solution contains solute at a concentration equal to its solubility. A supersaturated solution is one in which a solute's concentration exceeds its solubility—a nonequilibrium (unstable) condition that will result in solute precipitation when the solution is appropriately perturbed. Miscible liquids are soluble in all proportions, and immiscible liquids exhibit very low mutual solubility. Solubilities for gaseous solutes decrease with increasing temperature, while those for most, but not all, solid solutes increase with temperature. The concentration of a gaseous solute in a solution is proportional to the partial pressure of the gas to which the solution is exposed, a relation known as Henry's law.

Key Equations

- $C_{\mathrm{g}} = kP_{\mathrm{g}}$

Glossary

Henry's law
: law stating the proportional relationship between the concentration of dissolved gas in a solution and the partial pressure of the gas in contact with the solution

immiscible
: of negligible mutual solubility; typically refers to liquid substances

miscible
: mutually soluble in all proportions; typically refers to liquid substances

partially miscible
: of moderate mutual solubility; typically refers to liquid substances

saturated
: of concentration equal to solubility; containing the maximum concentration of solute possible for a given temperature and pressure

solubility
: extent to which a solute may be dissolved in water, or any solvent

supersaturated
: of concentration that exceeds solubility; a nonequilibrium state

unsaturated

of concentration less than solubility

This page titled 1.8.4 Solubility is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **11.4: Solubility** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1.9.0 : Fundamental Equilibrium Concepts

A general chemistry Libretexts Textbook remixed and remastered from OpenStax's textbook:

General Chemistry

In this chapter, you will learn how to predict the position of the balance and the yield of a product of a reaction under specific conditions, how to change a reaction's conditions to increase or reduce yield, and how to evaluate an equilibrium system's reaction to disturbances.

1.9.1 Prelude to Equilibrium
1.9.2 Chemical Equilibria
1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants
1.9.4 Shifting Equilibria - Le Châtelier’s Principle
1.9.5. Equilibrium Calculations
1.9.6 Fundamental Equilibrium Concepts (Exercises)

Contributors

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 1.9.0 : Fundamental Equilibrium Concepts is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

1.9.1 Prelude to Equilibrium

Imagine a beach populated with sunbathers and swimmers. As those basking in the sun get too hot and want to cool off, they head into the surf to swim. As the swimmers tire, they head to the beach to rest. If these two rates of transfer (sunbathers entering the water, swimmers leaving the water) are equal, the number of sunbathers and swimmers would be constant, or at equilibrium, although the identities of the people are constantly changing from sunbather to swimmer and back. An analogous situation occurs in chemical reactions. Reactions can occur in both directions simultaneously (reactants to products and products to reactants) and eventually reach a state of balance.

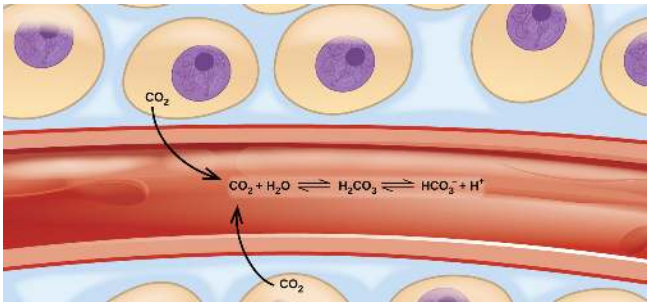


Figure 1: Movement of carbon dioxide through tissues and blood cells involves several equilibrium reactions.

An image depicts three tan squares, lying side-by-side along the upper left corner. Two of the same squares also lie side-by-side in the lower right corner. Each square has a black dot in the center. One of the squares is labeled, “C O subscript 2,” and has a double-headed arrow pointing from it to a red tube-like structure that runs between the squares across the image from the upper right to the lower left. This arrow is labeled, “C O subscript 2 dissolved in plasma.” The red tube has two round red shapes in it, and the upper one is labeled, “C O subscript 2 carried in red blood cells.” The gaps between the squares and the red tube are colored light blue. One of the squares along the top of the image is labeled, “C O subscript 2,” and is connected by a double-headed arrow to an equation in the red tube that is labeled, “C O subscript 2, a plus sign, H subscript 2 O, right-facing arrow, H subscript 2 C O subscript 3, right-facing arrow, H C O subscript 3 superscript negative sign, plus sign, H superscript positive sign.” The compound “H C O subscript 3 superscript negative sign” is then connected by a double-headed arrow to the space in the red tube and is labeled, “H C O subscript 3 superscript negative sign dissolved in plasma as carbonic acid.”

These balanced two-way reactions occur all around and even in us. For example, they occur in our blood, where the reaction between carbon dioxide and water forms carbonic acid (HCO_3^-) (Figure 1). Human physiology is adapted to the amount of ionized products produced by this reaction (HCO_3^- and H^+). In this chapter, you will learn how to predict the position of the balance and the yield of a product of a reaction under specific conditions, how to change a reaction's conditions to increase or reduce yield, and how to evaluate an equilibrium system's reaction to disturbances.

This page titled 1.9.1 Prelude to Equilibrium is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **13.1: Prelude to Equilibrium** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.9.2 Chemical Equilibria

Learning Objectives

- Describe the nature of equilibrium systems
- Explain the dynamic nature of a chemical equilibrium

A chemical reaction is usually written in a way that suggests it proceeds in one direction, the direction in which we read, but all chemical reactions are reversible, and both the forward and reverse reaction occur to one degree or another depending on conditions. In a chemical equilibrium, the forward and reverse reactions occur at equal rates, and the concentrations of products and reactants remain constant. If we run a reaction in a closed system so that the products cannot escape, we often find the reaction does not give a 100% yield of products. Instead, some reactants remain after the concentrations stop changing. At this point, when there is no further change in concentrations of reactants and products, we say the reaction is at equilibrium. A mixture of reactants and products is found at equilibrium.

For example, when we place a sample of dinitrogen tetroxide (N_2O_4, a colorless gas) in a glass tube, it forms nitrogen dioxide (NO_2, a brown gas) by the reaction

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \tag{1}$$

The color becomes darker as $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ is converted to $\mathrm{NO_2}$. When the system reaches equilibrium, both $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ and $\mathrm{NO_2}$ are present (Figure 1).

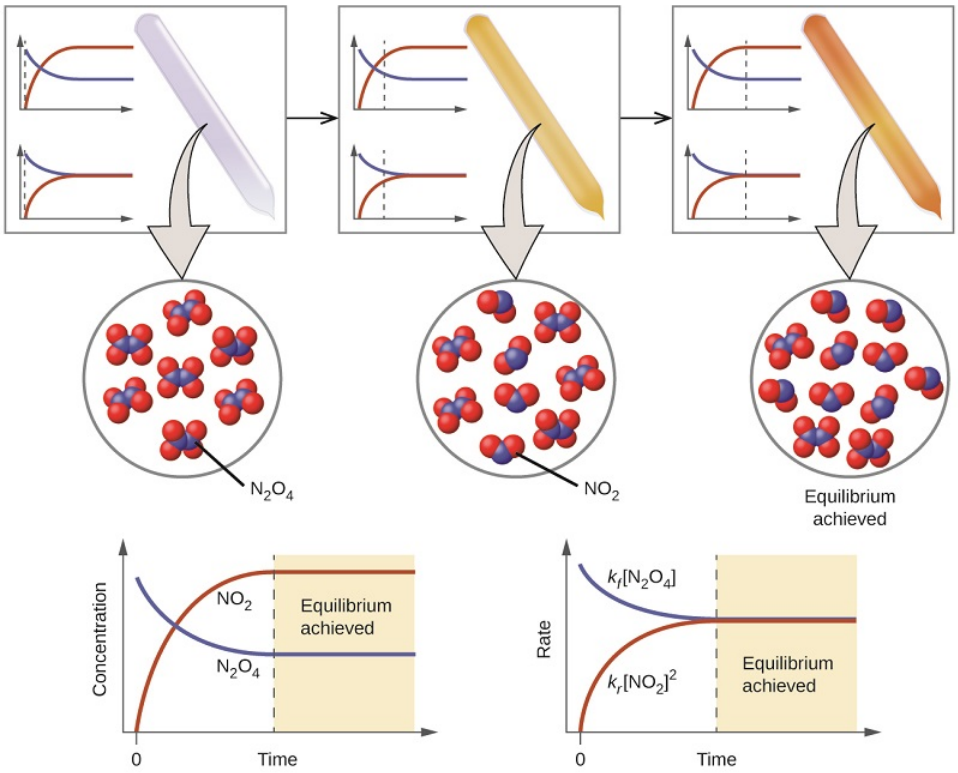


Figure 1: A mixture of NO_2 and N_2O_4 moves toward equilibrium. Colorless N_2O_4 reacts to form brown NO_2. As the reaction proceeds toward equilibrium, the color of the mixture darkens due to the increasing concentration of NO_2.

A three-part diagram is shown. At the top of the diagram, three beakers are shown, and each one contains a sealed tube. The tube in the left beaker is full of a colorless gas which is connected to a zoom-in view of the particles in the tube by a downward-facing arrow. This particle view shows seven particles, each composed of two connected blue spheres. Each blue sphere is connected to two red spheres. The tube in the middle beaker is full of a light brown gas which is connected to a zoom-in view of the particles in the tube by a downward-facing arrow. This particle view shows nine particles, five of which are composed of two connected blue spheres. Each blue sphere is connected to two red spheres. The remaining four are composed of two red spheres connected to a blue sphere. The tube in the right beaker is full of a brown gas which is connected to a zoom-in view of the particles in the tube by a downward-facing arrow. This particle view shows eleven particles, three of which are composed of two connected blue spheres. Each blue sphere is connected to two red spheres. The remaining eight are composed of two red spheres connected to a blue sphere. At the bottom of the image are two graphs. The left graph has a y-axis labeled, “Concentration,” and an x-axis labeled, “Time.” A red line labeled, “N O subscript 2,” begins in the bottom left corner of the graph at a point labeled, “0,” and rises near the highest point on the y-axis before it levels off and becomes horizontal. A blue line labeled, “N subscript 2 O subscript 4,” begins near the highest point on the y-axis and drops below the midpoint of the y-axis before leveling off. The right graph has a y-axis labeled, “Rate,” and an x-axis labeled, “Time.” A red line labeled, “k subscript f, [N subscript 2 O subscript 4],” begins in the bottom left corner of the graph at a point labeled, “0,” and rises near the middle of the y-axis before it levels off and becomes horizontal. A blue line labeled, “k subscript f, [N O subscript 2] superscript 2,” begins near the highest point on the y-axis and drops to the same point on the y-axis as the red line before leveling off. The point where both lines become horizontal is labeled, “Equilibrium achieved.”

The formation of NO_2 from N_2O_4 is a reversible reaction, which is identified by the equilibrium arrow ($\rightleftharpoons$). All reactions are reversible, but many reactions, for all practical purposes, proceed in one direction until the reactants are exhausted and will reverse only under certain conditions. Such reactions are often depicted with a one-way arrow from reactants to products. Many other reactions, such as the formation of NO_2 from N_2O_4, are reversible under more easily obtainable conditions and, therefore, are named as such. In a reversible reaction, the reactants can combine to form products and the products can react to form the reactants. Thus, not only can N_2O_4 decompose to form NO_2, but the NO_2 produced can react to form N_2O_4. As soon as the forward reaction produces any NO_2, the reverse reaction begins and NO_2 starts to react to form N_2O_4. At equilibrium, the concentrations of N_2O_4 and NO_2 no longer change because the rate of formation of NO_2 is exactly equal to the rate of consumption of NO_2, and the rate of formation of N_2O_4 is exactly equal to the rate of consumption of N_2O_4. *Chemical equilibrium is a dynamic process*: As with the swimmers and the sunbathers, the numbers of each remain constant, yet there is a flux back and forth between them (Figure 2).



Figure 2: These jugglers provide an illustration of dynamic equilibrium. Each throws clubs to the other at the same rate at which he receives clubs from that person. Because clubs are thrown continuously in both directions, the number of clubs moving in each direction is constant, and the number of clubs each juggler has at a given time remains (roughly) constant.

In a chemical equilibrium, the forward and reverse reactions do not stop, rather they continue to occur at the same rate, leading to constant concentrations of the reactants and the products. Plots showing how the reaction rates and concentrations change with respect to time are shown in Figure 1.

We can detect a state of equilibrium because the concentrations of reactants and products do not appear to change. However, it is important that we verify that the absence of change is due to equilibrium and not to a reaction rate that is so slow that changes in concentration are difficult to detect.

We use a double arrow when writing an equation for a reversible reaction. Such a reaction may or may not be at equilibrium. For example, Figure 1 shows the reaction:

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \tag{2}$$

When we wish to speak about one particular component of a reversible reaction, we use a single arrow. For example, in the equilibrium shown in Figure 1, the rate of the forward reaction

$$\mathrm{2\,NO_2(g) \rightarrow N_2O_4(g)} \tag{3}$$

is equal to the rate of the backward reaction

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4(g) \rightarrow 2\,NO_2(g)} \tag{4}$$

Equilibrium and Soft Drinks

The connection between chemistry and carbonated soft drinks goes back to 1767, when Joseph Priestley (1733–1804; mostly known today for his role in the discovery and identification of oxygen) discovered a method of infusing water with carbon dioxide to make carbonated water. In 1772, Priestly published a paper entitled “Impregnating Water with Fixed Air.” The paper describes dripping oil of vitriol (today we call this sulfuric acid, but what a great way to describe sulfuric acid: “oil of vitriol” literally means “liquid nastiness”) onto chalk (calcium carbonate). The resulting CO_2 falls into the container of water beneath the vessel in which the initial reaction takes place; agitation helps the gaseous CO_2 mix into the liquid water.

$$\mathrm{H_2SO_4(l) + CaCO_3(s) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(l) + CaSO_4(aq)}$$

Carbon dioxide is slightly soluble in water. There is an equilibrium reaction that occurs as the carbon dioxide reacts with the water to form carbonic acid (H_2CO_3). Since carbonic acid is a weak acid, it can dissociate into protons (H^+) and hydrogen carbonate ions (HCO_3^-).

$$\mathrm{CO_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons HCO_3^-(aq) + H^+(aq)}$$

Today, $\mathrm{CO_2}$ can be pressurized into soft drinks, establishing the equilibrium shown above. Once you open the beverage container, however, a cascade of equilibrium shifts occurs. First, the $\mathrm{CO_2}$ gas in the air space on top of the bottle escapes, causing the equilibrium between gas-phase $\mathrm{CO_2}$ and dissolved or aqueous $\mathrm{CO_2}$ to shift, lowering the concentration of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ in the soft drink. Less $\mathrm{CO_2}$ dissolved in the liquid leads to carbonic acid decomposing to dissolved $\mathrm{CO_2}$ and $\mathrm{H_2O}$. The lowered carbonic acid concentration causes a shift of the final equilibrium. As long as the soft drink is in an open container, the $\mathrm{CO_2}$

bubbles up out of the beverage, releasing the gas into the air (Figure 3). With the lid off the bottle, the CO_2 reactions are no longer at equilibrium and will continue until no more of the reactants remain. This results in a soft drink with a much lowered CO_2 concentration, often referred to as “flat.”



Figure 3: When a soft drink is opened, several equilibrium shifts occur. (credit: modification of work by “D Coetzee”/Flickr)
A bottle of soda sitting on the ground is shown with a large amount of fizz-filled liquid spewing out of the top.

Sublimation of Bromine

Let us consider the evaporation of bromine as a second example of a system at equilibrium.

$$\mathrm{Br_2(l) \rightleftharpoons Br_2(g)}$$

An equilibrium can be established for a physical change—like this liquid to gas transition—as well as for a chemical reaction. Figure 4 shows a sample of liquid bromine at equilibrium with bromine vapor in a closed container. When we pour liquid bromine into an empty bottle in which there is no bromine vapor, some liquid evaporates, the amount of liquid decreases, and the amount of vapor increases. If we cap the bottle so no vapor escapes, the amount of liquid and vapor will eventually stop changing and an equilibrium between the liquid and the vapor will be established. If the bottle were not capped, the bromine vapor would escape and no equilibrium would be reached.



Figure 4: An equilibrium is pictured between liquid bromine, $Br_2(l)$, the dark liquid, and bromine vapor, $Br_2(g)$, the orange gas. Because the container is sealed, bromine vapor cannot escape and equilibrium is maintained. (credit: Bromine [images-of-elements.com]).
A glass container is shown that is filled with an orange-brown gas and a small amount of dark orange liquid.

Summary

A reaction is at equilibrium when the amounts of reactants or products no longer change. Chemical equilibrium is a dynamic process, meaning the rate of formation of products by the forward reaction is equal to the rate at which the products re-form reactants by the reverse reaction.

Glossary

equilibrium

in chemical reactions, the state in which the conversion of reactants into products and the conversion of products back into reactants occur simultaneously at the same rate; state of balance

reversible reaction

chemical reaction that can proceed in both the forward and reverse directions under given conditions

---

This page titled 1.9.2 Chemical Equilibria is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **13.2: Chemical Equilibria** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants

Learning Objectives

- Derive reaction quotients from chemical equations representing homogeneous and heterogeneous reactions
- Calculate values of reaction quotients and equilibrium constants, using concentrations and pressures
- Relate the magnitude of an equilibrium constant to properties of the chemical system

Now that we have a symbol ($\rightleftharpoons$) to designate reversible reactions, we will need a way to express mathematically how the amounts of reactants and products affect the equilibrium of the system. A general equation for a reversible reaction may be written as follows:

$$m\mathrm{A} + n\mathrm{B} + \rightleftharpoons x\mathrm{C} + y\mathrm{D} \tag{1}$$

We can write the reaction quotient (Q) for this equation. When evaluated using concentrations, it is called Q_c. We use brackets to indicate molar concentrations of reactants and products.

$$Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{C}]^x[\mathrm{D}]^y}{[\mathrm{A}]^m[\mathrm{B}]^n} \tag{2}$$

The reaction quotient is equal to the molar concentrations of the products of the chemical equation (multiplied together) over the reactants (also multiplied together), with each concentration raised to the power of the coefficient of that substance in the balanced chemical equation. For example, the reaction quotient for the reversible reaction

$$2\,\mathrm{NO}_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2O}_{4(g)} \tag{3}$$

is given by this expression:

$$Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{N_2O_4}]}{[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2} \tag{4}$$

Example 1: Writing Reaction Quotient Expressions

Write the expression for the reaction quotient for each of the following reactions:

a. $3\,\mathrm{O}_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{O}_{3(g)}$
b. $\mathrm{N}_{2(g)} + 3\,\mathrm{H}_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NH}_{3(g)}$
c. $4\,\mathrm{NH}_{3(g)} + 7\,\mathrm{O}_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 4\,\mathrm{NO}_{2(g)} + 6\,\mathrm{H_2O}_{(g)}$

Solution

a. $Q_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{O_3}]^2}{[\mathrm{O_2}]^3}$
b. $Q_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{NH_3}]^2}{[\mathrm{N_2}][\mathrm{H_2}]^3}$
c. $Q_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{NO_2}]^4[\mathrm{H_2O}]^6}{[\mathrm{NH_3}]^4[\mathrm{O_2}]^7}$

Exercise 1

Write the expression for the reaction quotient for each of the following reactions:

a. $2\,\mathrm{SO}_2(g) + \mathrm{O}_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO}_3(g)$
b. $\mathrm{C_4H_8}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{C_2H_4}(g)$
c. $2\,\mathrm{C_4H_{10}}(g) + 13\,\mathrm{O}_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 8\,\mathrm{CO}_2(g) + 10\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g)$

Answer a

$$Q_c = \frac{[SO_3]^2}{[SO_2]^2[O_2]}$$

Answer b

$$Q_c = \frac{[C_2H_4]^2}{[C_4H_8]}$$

Answer c

$$Q_c = \frac{[CO_2]^8[H_2O]^{10}}{[C_4H_{10}]^2[O_2]^{13}}$$

The numeric value of Q_c for a given reaction varies; it depends on the concentrations of products and reactants present at the time when Q_c is determined. When pure reactants are mixed, Q_c is initially zero because there are no products present at that point. As the reaction proceeds, the value of Q_c increases as the concentrations of the products increase and the concentrations of the reactants simultaneously decrease (Figure 1). When the reaction reaches equilibrium, the value of the reaction quotient no longer changes because the concentrations no longer change.

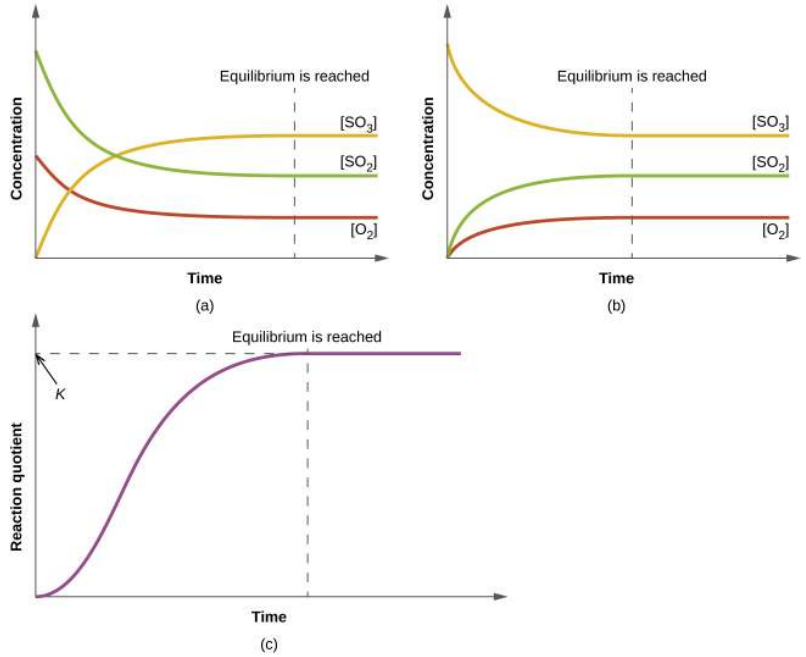


Figure 1: (a) The change in the concentrations of reactants and products is depicted as the $2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_3(g)$ reaction approaches equilibrium. (b) The change in concentrations of reactants and products is depicted as the reaction $2\,SO_3(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g)$ approaches equilibrium. (c) The graph shows the change in the value of the reaction quotient as the reaction approaches equilibrium.

Three graphs are shown and labeled, “a,” “b,” and “c.” All three graphs have a vertical dotted line running through the middle labeled, “Equilibrium is reached.” The y-axis on graph a is labeled, “Concentration,” and the x-axis is labeled, “Time.” Three curves are plotted on graph a. The first is labeled, “[S O subscript 2];” this line starts high on the y-axis, ends midway down the y-axis, has a steep initial slope and a more gradual slope as it approaches the far right on the x-axis. The second curve on this graph is labeled, “[O subscript 2];” this line mimics the first except that it starts and ends about fifty percent lower on the y-axis. The third curve is the inverse of the first in shape and is labeled, “[S O subscript 3].” The y-axis on graph b is labeled, “Concentration,” and the x-axis is labeled, “Time.” Three curves are plotted on graph b. The first is labeled, “[S O subscript 2];” this line starts low on the y-axis, ends midway up the y-axis, has a steep initial slope and a more gradual slope as it approaches the far right on the x-axis. The second curve on this graph is labeled, “[O subscript 2];” this line mimics the first except that it ends about fifty percent lower on the y-axis. The third curve is the inverse of the first in shape and is labeled, “[S O subscript 3].” The y-axis on graph c is labeled, “Reaction Quotient,” and the x-axis is labeled, “Time.” A single curve is plotted on graph c. This curve begins at the bottom of the y-axis and rises steeply up near the top of the y-axis, then levels off into a horizontal line. The top point of this line is labeled, “k.”

When a mixture of reactants and products of a reaction reaches equilibrium at a given temperature, its reaction quotient always has the same value. This value is called the equilibrium constant (K) of the reaction at that temperature. As for the reaction quotient,

when evaluated in terms of concentrations, it is noted as K_c.

That a reaction quotient always assumes the same value at equilibrium can be expressed as:

$$Q_c \text{ at equilibrium} = K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{C}]^x[\mathrm{D}]^y\ldots}{[\mathrm{A}]^m[\mathrm{B}]^n\ldots} \tag{5}$$

This equation is a mathematical statement of the law of mass action: When a reaction has attained equilibrium at a given temperature, the reaction quotient for the reaction always has the same value.

Example 2: Evaluating a Reaction Quotient

Gaseous nitrogen dioxide forms dinitrogen tetroxide according to this equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{NO}_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2O}_{4(g)}$$

When 0.10 mol NO_2 is added to a 1.0-L flask at 25 °C, the concentration changes so that at equilibrium, [NO_2] = 0.016 M and [N_2O_4] = 0.042 M.

a. What is the value of the reaction quotient before any reaction occurs?
b. What is the value of the equilibrium constant for the reaction?

Solution

a. Before any product is formed, $[\mathrm{NO_2}] = \frac{0.10\text{ mol}}{1.0\text{ L}} = 0.10\ M$, and [$N_2O_4$] = 0 *M*. Thus,

$$Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{N_2O_4}]}{[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2} = \frac{0}{0.10^2} = 0$$

b. At equilibrium, the value of the equilibrium constant is equal to the value of the reaction quotient. At equilibrium,

$$K_c = Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{N_2O_4}]}{[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2} = \frac{0.042}{0.016^2} = 1.6 \times 10^2.$$

The equilibrium constant is 1.6×10^2.

Note that dimensional analysis would suggest the unit for this K_c value should be M^{-1}. However, it is common practice to omit units for K_c values computed as described here, since it is the magnitude of an equilibrium constant that relays useful information. As will be discussed later in this module, the rigorous approach to computing equilibrium constants uses dimensionless quantities derived from activities instead of molar concentrations, and so K_c values are truly unitless.

Exercise 2

For the reaction

$$2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g)$$

the concentrations at equilibrium are [SO_2] = 0.90 *M*, [O_2] = 0.35 *M*, and [SO_3] = 1.1 *M*. What is the value of the equilibrium constant, K_c?

Answer

K_c = 4.3

The magnitude of an equilibrium constant is a measure of the yield of a reaction when it reaches equilibrium. A large value for K_c indicates that equilibrium is attained only after the reactants have been largely converted into products. A small value of K_c—much less than 1—indicates that equilibrium is attained when only a small proportion of the reactants have been converted into products.

Once a value of K_c is known for a reaction, it can be used to predict directional shifts when compared to the value of Q_c. A system that is not at equilibrium will proceed in the direction that establishes equilibrium. The data in Figure 2 illustrate this. When heated

to a consistent temperature, 800 °C, different starting mixtures of CO, H_2O, CO_2, and H_2 react to reach compositions adhering to the same equilibrium (the value of Q_c changes until it equals the value of K_c). This value is 0.640, the equilibrium constant for the reaction under these conditions.

$$CO(g) + H_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons CO_2(g) + H_2(g) \quad K_c = 0.640 \quad T = 800^\circ C \tag{6}$$

It is important to recognize that an equilibrium can be established starting either from reactants or from products, or from a mixture of both. For example, equilibrium was established from Mixture 2 in Figure 2 when the products of the reaction were heated in a closed container. In fact, one technique used to determine whether a reaction is truly at equilibrium is to approach equilibrium starting with reactants in one experiment and starting with products in another. If the same value of the reaction quotient is observed when the concentrations stop changing in both experiments, then we may be certain that the system has reached equilibrium.

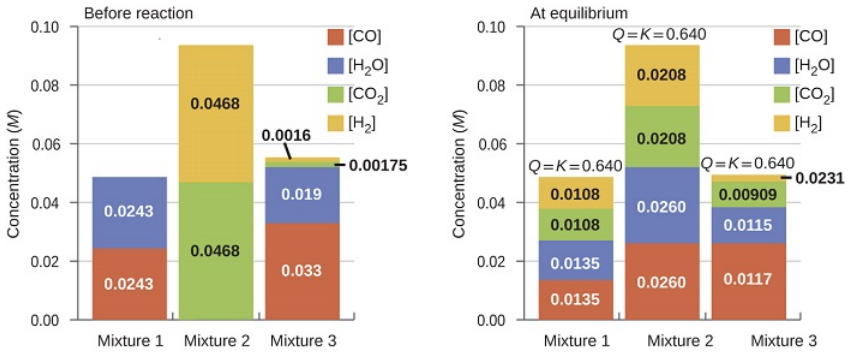


Figure 2: Concentrations of three mixtures are shown before and after reaching equilibrium at 800 °C for the so-called water gas shift reaction (Equation 6).

Two sets of bar graphs are shown. The left is labeled, “Before reaction,” and the right is labeled, “At equilibrium.” Both graphs have y-axes labeled, “Concentration (M),” and three bars on the x-axes labeled, “Mixture 1,” “Mixture 2,” and “Mixture 3.” The y-axis has a scale beginning at 0.00 and ending at 0.10, with measurement increments of 0.02. The bars on the graphs are color coded and a key is provided with a legend. Red is labeled, “C O;” blue is labeled, “H subscript 2 O;” green is labeled, “C O subscript 2,” and yellow is labeled, “H subscript 2.” The graph on the left shows the red bar for mixture one just above 0.02 and the blue bar near 0.05. For mixture two, the green bar is near 0.05, and the yellow bar is near 0.09. For mixture 3, the red bar is near 0.01, the blue bar is slightly above that with green and yellow topping it off at 0.02. On the right graph, the bar for mixture one shows the red bar slightly above 0.01, the blue bar stacked on it rising slightly above 0.02, the green rising near 0.04, and the yellow bar reaching near 0.05. A label above this bar reads, “Q equals 0.640.” The bar for mixture two shows the red bar slightly above 0.02, the blue bar stacked on it rising near 0.05, the green rising near 0.07, and the yellow bar reaching near 0.10. A label above this bar reads “Q equals 0.640.” The bar for mixture three shows the red bar near 0.01, the blue bar stacked on it rising slightly above 0.01, the green rising near 0.02, and the yellow bar reaching 0.02. A label above this bar reads “Q equals 0.640”.

Example 3: Predicting the Direction of Reaction

Given here are the starting concentrations of reactants and products for three experiments involving this reaction:

$$CO(g) + H_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons CO_2(g) + H_2(g)$$

with $K_c = 0.64$. Determine in which direction the reaction proceeds as it goes to equilibrium in each of the three experiments shown.

Reactant/Products for Three Experiments

Reactants/Products	Experiment 1	Experiment 2	Experiment 3
$[CO]_i$	0.0203 M	0.011 M	0.0094 M
$[H_2O]_i$	0.0203 M	0.0011 M	0.0025 M
$[CO_2]_i$	0.0040 M	0.037 M	0.0015 M
$[H_2]_i$	0.0040 M	0.046 M	0.0076 M

Solution

Experiment 1:

$$Q_c = \frac{[CO_2][H_2]}{[CO][H_2O]} = \frac{(0.0040)(0.0040)}{(0.0203)(0.0203)} = 0.039.$$

$Q_c < K_c$ (0.039 < 0.64)

The reaction will shift to the right.

Experiment 2:

$$Q_c = \frac{[CO_2][H_2]}{[CO][H_2O]} = \frac{(0.037)(0.046)}{(0.011)(0.0011)} = 1.4 \times 10^2$$

$Q_c > K_c$ (140 > 0.64)

The reaction will shift to the left.

Experiment 3:

$$Q_c = \frac{[CO_2][H_2]}{[CO][H_2O]} = \frac{(0.0015)(0.0076)}{(0.0094)(0.0025)} = 0.48$$

$Q_c < K_c$ (0.48 < 0.64)

The reaction will shift to the right.

? Exercise 3

Calculate the reaction quotient and determine the direction in which each of the following reactions will proceed to reach equilibrium.

(a) A 1.00-L flask containing 0.0500 mol of NO(g), 0.0155 mol of Cl_2(g), and 0.500 mol of NOCl:

$$2\,NO(g) + Cl_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NOCl(g) \quad K_c = 4.6 \times 10^4$$

(b) A 5.0-L flask containing 17 g of NH_3, 14 g of N_2, and 12 g of H_2:

$$N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g) \quad K_c = 0.060$$

(c) A 2.00-L flask containing 230 g of SO_3(g):

$$2\,SO_3(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \quad K_c = 0.230$$

Answer a

Q_c = 6.45 × 10^3, shifts right.

Answer b

Q_c = 0.12, shifts left.

Answer c

Q_c = 0, shifts right

In Example 2, it was mentioned that the common practice is to omit units when evaluating reaction quotients and equilibrium constants. It should be pointed out that using concentrations in these computations is a convenient but simplified approach that sometimes leads to results that seemingly conflict with the law of mass action. For example, equilibria involving aqueous ions often exhibit equilibrium constants that vary quite significantly (are *not* constant) at high solution concentrations. This may be avoided by computing K_c values using the *activities* of the reactants and products in the equilibrium system instead of their concentrations. The activity of a substance is a measure of its effective concentration under specified conditions. While a detailed discussion of this important quantity is beyond the scope of an introductory text, it is necessary to be aware of a few important aspects:

- Activities are dimensionless (**unitless**) quantities and are in essence “adjusted” concentrations.
- For relatively dilute solutions, a solute's activity and its molar concentration are roughly equal.

- Activities for pure condensed phases (solids and liquids) are equal to 1.
- Activities for solvents in dilute solutions are equal to 1.

As a consequence of this last two aspects, Q_c and K_c expressions do not contain terms for solids or liquids or solvents in dilute solutions (being numerically equal to 1, these terms have no effect on the expression's value). Several examples of equilibria yielding such expressions will be encountered in this section.

Homogeneous Equilibria

A homogeneous equilibrium is one in which all of the reactants and products are present in a single solution (by definition, a homogeneous mixture). In this chapter, we will concentrate on the two most common types of homogeneous equilibria: those occurring in liquid-phase solutions and those involving exclusively gaseous species. Reactions between solutes in liquid solutions belong to one type of homogeneous equilibria. The chemical species involved can be molecules, ions, or a mixture of both. Several examples are provided here:

Example 1

$$\mathrm{C_2H_2}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Br_2}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{C_2H_2Br_4}(aq) \tag{7}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{C_2H_2Br_4}]}{[\mathrm{C_2H_2}][\mathrm{Br_2}]^2} \tag{8}$$

Example 2

$$\mathrm{I_2}(aq) + \mathrm{I^-}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{I_3^-}(aq) \tag{9}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{I_3^-}]}{[\mathrm{I_2}][\mathrm{I^-}]} \tag{10}$$

Example 3

$$\mathrm{Hg_2^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{NO_3^-}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{Hg^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{HNO_2}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \tag{11}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{Hg^{2+}}]^2[\mathrm{HNO_2}]}{[\mathrm{Hg_2^{2+}}][\mathrm{NO_3^-}][\mathrm{H_3O^+}]^3} \tag{12}$$

Example 4

$$\mathrm{HF}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{F^-}(aq) \tag{13}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{F^-}]}{[\mathrm{HF}]} \tag{14}$$

Example 5

$$\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \tag{15}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{NH_4^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}]}{[\mathrm{NH_3}]} \tag{16}$$

In each of these examples, the equilibrium system is an aqueous solution, as denoted by the *aq* annotations on the solute formulas. Since $H_2O(l)$ is the solvent for these solutions, it is assigned an activity of 1, and thus **does not** appear explicitly as a term in the K_c expression, as discussed earlier, even though it may also appear as a reactant or product in the chemical equation.

Reactions in which all reactants and products are gases represent a second class of homogeneous equilibria. We use molar concentrations in the following examples, but we will see shortly that partial pressures of the gases may be used as well:

Example 1

$$\mathrm{C_2H_6}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{C_2H_4}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \tag{17}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{C_2H_4}][\mathrm{H_2}]}{[\mathrm{C_2H_6}]} \tag{18}$$

Example 2

$$3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{O_3}(g) \tag{19}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{O_3}]^2}{[\mathrm{O_2}]^3} \tag{20}$$

Example 3

$$\mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \tag{21}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{NH_3}]^2}{[\mathrm{N_2}][\mathrm{H_2}]^3} \tag{22}$$

Example 4

$$\mathrm{C_3H_8}(g) + 5\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) \tag{23}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{CO_2}]^3[\mathrm{H_2O}]^4}{[\mathrm{C_3H_8}][\mathrm{O_2}]^5} \tag{24}$$

Note that the concentration of $\mathrm{H_2O}_{(g)}$ has been included in the last example because water is not the solvent in this gas-phase reaction and its concentration (and activity) changes.

Whenever gases are involved in a reaction, the partial pressure of each gas can be used instead of its concentration in the equation for the reaction quotient because the partial pressure of a gas is directly proportional to its concentration at constant temperature. This relationship can be derived from the ideal gas equation, where *M* is the molar concentration of gas, $\frac{n}{V}$.

$$PV = nRT \tag{25}$$

$$P = \left(\frac{n}{V}\right)RT \tag{26}$$

$$= MRT \tag{27}$$

Thus, at constant temperature, the pressure of a gas is **directly proportional** to its concentration. Using the partial pressures of the gases, we can write the reaction quotient for the system

$$\mathrm{C_2H_6}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{C_2H_4}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \tag{28}$$

by following the same guidelines for deriving concentration-based expressions:

$$Q_P = \frac{P_{\mathrm{C_2H_4}} P_{\mathrm{H_2}}}{P_{\mathrm{C_2H_6}}} \tag{29}$$

In this equation we use Q_P to indicate a reaction quotient written with partial pressures: $P_{C_2H_6}$ is the partial pressure of C_2H_6; P_{H_2}, the partial pressure of H_2; and $P_{C_2H_6}$, the partial pressure of C_2H_4. At equilibrium:

$$K_P = Q_P = \frac{P_{C_2H_4} P_{H_2}}{P_{C_2H_6}} \tag{30}$$

The subscript P in the symbol K_P designates an equilibrium constant derived using partial pressures instead of concentrations. The equilibrium constant, K_P, is still a constant, but its numeric value may differ from the equilibrium constant found for the same reaction by using concentrations.

Conversion between a value for K_c, an equilibrium constant expressed in terms of concentrations, and a value for K_P, an equilibrium constant expressed in terms of pressures, is straightforward (a K or Q without a subscript could be either concentration or pressure).

The equation relating K_c and K_P is derived as follows. For the gas-phase reaction:

$$m\mathrm{A} + n\mathrm{B} \rightleftharpoons x\mathrm{C} + y\mathrm{D} \tag{31}$$

with

$$K_P = \frac{(P_C)^x (P_D)^y}{(P_A)^m (P_B)^n} \tag{32}$$

$$= \frac{([\mathrm{C}] \times RT)^x ([\mathrm{D}] \times RT)^y}{([\mathrm{A}] \times RT)^m ([\mathrm{B}] \times RT)^n} \tag{33}$$

$$= \frac{[\mathrm{C}]^x [\mathrm{D}]^y}{[\mathrm{A}]^m [\mathrm{B}]^n} \times \frac{(RT)^{x+y}}{(RT)^{m+n}} \tag{34}$$

$$= K_c (RT)^{(x+y)-(m+n)} \tag{35}$$

$$= K_c (RT)^{\Delta n} \tag{36}$$

The relationship between K_c and K_P is

$$K_P = K_c (RT)^{\Delta n} \tag{37}$$

In this equation, Δn is the difference between the sum of the coefficients of the *gaseous* products and the sum of the coefficients of the *gaseous* reactants in the reaction (the change in moles of gas between the reactants and the products). For the gas-phase reaction $m\mathrm{A} + n\mathrm{B} \rightleftharpoons x\mathrm{C} + y\mathrm{D}$, we have

$$\Delta n = (x + y) - (m + n) \tag{38}$$

Example 4: Calculation of K_P

Write the equations for the conversion of K_c to K_P for each of the following reactions:

a. $\mathrm{C_2H_6}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{C_2H_4}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$
b. $\mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$
c. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g)$
d. K_c is equal to 0.28 for the following reaction at 900 °C:

$$\mathrm{CS_2}(g) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CH_4}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2S}(g)$$

What is K_P at this temperature?

Solution

(a) $\Delta n = (2) - (1) = 1$

$$K_P = K_c\,(RT)^{\Delta n} = K_c\,(RT)^1 = K_c\,(RT)$$

(b) $\Delta n = (2) - (2) = 0$

$$K_P = K_c\,(RT)^{\Delta n} = K_c\,(RT)^0 = K_c$$

(c) $\Delta n = (2) - (1 + 3) = -2$

$$K_P = K_c\,(RT)^{\Delta n} = K_c\,(RT)^{-2} = \frac{K_c}{(RT)^2}$$

d) $K_P = K_c\,(\mathrm{RT})^{\Delta n} = (0.28)[(0.0821)(1173)]^{-2} = 3.0 \times 10^{-5}$

? Exercise 4

Write the equations for the conversion of K_c to K_P for each of the following reactions, which occur in the gas phase:

a. $2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g)$
b. $\mathrm{N_2O_4}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO_2}(g)$
c. $\mathrm{C_3H_8}(g) + 5\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g)$
d. At 227 °C, the following reaction has K_c = 0.0952:

$$\mathrm{CH_3OH}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CO}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$$

What would be the value of K_P at this temperature?

Answer a

$K_P = K_c\,(RT)^{-1}$

Answer b

$K_P = K_c\,(RT)$

Answer c

$K_P = K_c\,(RT)$;

Answer d

160 or 1.6×10^2

Heterogeneous Equilibria

A heterogeneous equilibrium is a system in which reactants and products are found in two or more phases. The phases may be any combination of solid, liquid, or gas phases, and solutions. When dealing with these equilibria, remember that solids and pure liquids do not appear in equilibrium constant expressions (the activities of pure solids, pure liquids, and solvents are 1).

Some heterogeneous equilibria involve chemical changes:

Example 1

$$\mathrm{PbCl_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Pb^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) \tag{39}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = [\mathrm{Pb^{2+}}][\mathrm{Cl^-}]^2 \tag{40}$$

Example 1

$$\mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \tag{41}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{1}{[\mathrm{CO_2}]} \tag{42}$$

Example 1

$$\mathrm{C}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{S}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CS_2}(g) \tag{43}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{CS_2}]}{[\mathrm{S}]^2} \tag{44}$$

Other heterogeneous equilibria involve phase changes, for example, the evaporation of liquid bromine, as shown in the following equation:

$$\mathrm{Br_2}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Br_2}(g) \tag{45}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = [\mathrm{Br_2}] \tag{46}$$

We can write equations for reaction quotients of heterogeneous equilibria that involve gases, using **partial pressures** instead of concentrations. Two examples are:

$$\mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \tag{47}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_P = \frac{1}{P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}} \tag{48}$$

$$\mathrm{C}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{S}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CS_2}(g) \tag{49}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_P = \frac{P_{\mathrm{CS_2}}}{(P_{\mathrm{S}})^2} \tag{50}$$

Summary

For any reaction that is at equilibrium, the reaction quotient *Q* is equal to the equilibrium constant *K* for the reaction. If a reactant or product is a pure solid, a pure liquid, or the solvent in a dilute solution, the concentration of this component does not appear in the expression for the equilibrium constant. At equilibrium, the values of the concentrations of the reactants and products are constant. Their particular values may vary depending on conditions, but the value of the reaction quotient will always equal *K* (K_c when using concentrations or K_P when using partial pressures).

A homogeneous equilibrium is an equilibrium in which all components are in the same phase. A heterogeneous equilibrium is an equilibrium in which components are in two or more phases. We can decide whether a reaction is at equilibrium by comparing the reaction quotient with the equilibrium constant for the reaction.

Key Equations

- $Q = \dfrac{[\mathrm{C}]^x[\mathrm{D}]^y}{[\mathrm{A}]^m[\mathrm{B}]^n}$ where $m\mathrm{A} + n\mathrm{B} \rightleftharpoons x\mathrm{C} + y\mathrm{D}$
- $Q_P = \dfrac{(P_C)^x(P_D)^y}{(P_A)^m(P_B)^n}$ where $m\mathrm{A} + n\mathrm{B} \rightleftharpoons x\mathrm{C} + y\mathrm{D}$
- $P = MRT$
- $K_P = K_c\,(RT)^{\Delta n}$

Glossary

equilibrium constant (*K*)
value of the reaction quotient for a system at equilibrium

heterogeneous equilibria
equilibria between reactants and products in different phases

homogeneous equilibria
equilibria within a single phase

K_c
: equilibrium constant for reactions based on concentrations of reactants and products

K_P
: equilibrium constant for gas-phase reactions based on partial pressures of reactants and products

law of mass action
: when a reversible reaction has attained equilibrium at a given temperature, the reaction quotient remains constant

reaction quotient (*Q*)
: ratio of the product of molar concentrations (or pressures) of the products to that of the reactants, each concentration (or pressure) being raised to the power equal to the coefficient in the equation

---

This page titled 1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **13.3: Equilibrium Constants** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.9.4 Shifting Equilibria - Le Châtelier's Principle

Learning Objectives

- Describe the ways in which an equilibrium system can be stressed
- Predict the response of a stressed equilibrium using Le Chatelier's principle

As we saw in the previous section, reactions proceed in both directions (reactants go to products and products go to reactants). We can tell a reaction is at equilibrium if the reaction quotient (Q) is equal to the equilibrium constant (K). We next address what happens when a system at equilibrium is disturbed so that Q is no longer equal to K. If a system at equilibrium is subjected to a perturbance or stress (such as a change in concentration) the position of equilibrium changes. Since this stress affects the concentrations of the reactants and the products, the value of Q will no longer equal the value of K. To re-establish equilibrium, the system will either shift toward the products (if $Q < K$) or the reactants (if $Q > K$) until Q returns to the same value as K.

This process is described by Le Chatelier's principle: When a chemical system at equilibrium is disturbed, it returns to equilibrium by counteracting the disturbance. As described in the previous paragraph, the disturbance causes a change in Q; the reaction will shift to re-establish $Q = K$.

Predicting the Direction of a Reversible Reaction

Le Chatelier's principle can be used to predict changes in equilibrium concentrations when a system that is at equilibrium is subjected to a stress. However, if we have a mixture of reactants and products that have not yet reached equilibrium, the changes necessary to reach equilibrium may not be so obvious. In such a case, we can compare the values of *Q* and *K* for the system to predict the changes.

A chemical system at equilibrium can be **temporarily** shifted out of equilibrium by adding or removing one or more of the reactants or products. The concentrations of both reactants and products then undergo additional changes to return the system to equilibrium.

The stress on the system in Figure 1 is the reduction of the equilibrium concentration of SCN^- (lowering the concentration of one of the reactants would cause *Q* to be larger than *K*). As a consequence, Le Chatelier's principle leads us to predict that the concentration of $Fe(SCN)^{2+}$ should decrease, increasing the concentration of SCN^- part way back to its original concentration, and increasing the concentration of Fe^{3+} above its initial equilibrium concentration.



Figure 1: (a) The test tube contains 0.1 M Fe^{3+}. (b) Thiocyanate ion has been added to solution in (a), forming the red $Fe(SCN)^{2+}$ ion. $Fe^{3+}(aq) + SCN^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons Fe(SCN)^{2+}(aq)$. *(c) Silver nitrate has been added to the solution in (b), precipitating some of the SCN− as the white solid AgSCN.* $Ag^+(aq) + SCN^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons AgSCN(s)$ *The decrease in the SCN− concentration shifts the first equilibrium in the solution to the left, decreasing the concentration (and lightening color) of the Fe(SCN)*$^{2+}$*. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott).*

Three capped test tubes held vertically in clamps are shown in pictures labeled, "a," "b," and "c." The test tube in picture a is half filled with a clear, orange liquid. The test tube in picture b is half filled with a dark, burgundy liquid. The test tube in picture c is half filled with a slightly cloudy, orange liquid.

The effect of a change in concentration on a system at equilibrium is illustrated further by the equilibrium of this chemical reaction:

$$H_{2(g)} + I_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,HI_{(g)} \tag{1}$$

$$K_c = 50.0 \text{ at } 400^\circ C \tag{2}$$

The numeric values for this example have been determined experimentally. A mixture of gases at 400 °C with $[\mathrm{H_2}] = [\mathrm{I_2}] = 0.221\ M$ and $[\mathrm{HI}] = 1.563\ M$ is at equilibrium; for this mixture, $Q_c = K_c = 50.0$. If $\mathrm{H_2}$ is introduced into the system so quickly that its concentration doubles before it begins to react (new $[\mathrm{H_2}] = 0.442\ M$), the reaction will shift so that a new equilibrium is reached, at which

- $[\mathrm{H_2}] = 0.374\ M$,
- $[\mathrm{I_2}] = 0.153\ M$, and
- $[\mathrm{HI}] = 1.692\ M$.

This gives:

$$Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{HI}]^2}{[\mathrm{H_2}][\mathrm{I_2}]} = \frac{(1.692)^2}{(0.374)(0.153)} = 50.0 = K_c \tag{3}$$

We have stressed this system by introducing additional $\mathrm{H_2}$. The stress is relieved when the reaction shifts to the right, using up some (but not all) of the excess $\mathrm{H_2}$, reducing the amount of uncombined $\mathrm{I_2}$, and forming additional HI.

Effect of Change in Pressure on Equilibrium

Sometimes we can change the position of equilibrium by changing the pressure of a system. However, changes in pressure have a measurable effect only in systems in which gases are involved, and then only when the chemical reaction produces a change in the total number of gas molecules in the system. An easy way to recognize such a system is to look for different numbers of moles of gas on the reactant and product sides of the equilibrium. While evaluating pressure (as well as related factors like volume), it is important to remember that equilibrium constants are defined with regard to concentration (for K_c) or partial pressure (for K_P). Some changes to total pressure, like adding an inert gas that is not part of the equilibrium, will change the total pressure but not the partial pressures of the gases in the equilibrium constant expression. Thus, addition of a gas not involved in the equilibrium will not perturb the equilibrium.

As we increase the pressure of a gaseous system at equilibrium, either by decreasing the volume of the system or by adding more of one of the components of the equilibrium mixture, we introduce a stress by increasing the partial pressures of one or more of the components. In accordance with Le Chatelier's principle, a shift in the equilibrium that reduces the total number of molecules per unit of volume will be favored because this relieves the stress. The reverse reaction would be favored by a decrease in pressure.

Consider what happens when we increase the pressure on a system in which NO, $\mathrm{O_2}$, and $\mathrm{NO_2}$ are at equilibrium:

$$2\,\mathrm{NO(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO_2(g)} \tag{4}$$

The formation of additional amounts of $\mathrm{NO_2}$ decreases the total number of molecules in the system because each time two molecules of $\mathrm{NO_2}$ form, a total of three molecules of NO and $\mathrm{O_2}$ are consumed. This reduces the total pressure exerted by the system and reduces, but does not completely relieve, the stress of the increased pressure. On the other hand, a decrease in the pressure on the system favors decomposition of $\mathrm{NO_2}$ into NO and $\mathrm{O_2}$, which tends to restore the pressure.

Now consider this reaction:

$$\mathrm{N_2(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO(g)} \tag{5}$$

Because there is no change in the total number of molecules in the system during reaction, a change in pressure does not favor either formation or decomposition of gaseous nitrogen monoxide.

Effect of Change in Temperature on Equilibrium

Changing concentration or pressure perturbs an equilibrium because the reaction quotient is shifted away from the equilibrium value. Changing the temperature of a system at equilibrium has a different effect: A change in temperature actually changes the value of the equilibrium constant. However, we can qualitatively predict the effect of the temperature change by treating it as a stress on the system and applying Le Chatelier's principle.

When hydrogen reacts with gaseous iodine, heat is evolved.

$$\mathrm{H_2(g)} + \mathrm{I_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{HI(g)} \quad \Delta H = -9.4\ \mathrm{kJ\ (exothermic)} \tag{6}$$

Because this reaction is exothermic, we can write it with heat as a product.

$$\mathrm{H_2(g) + I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HI(g) + heat} \tag{7}$$

Increasing the temperature of the reaction increases the internal energy of the system. Thus, increasing the temperature has the effect of increasing the amount of one of the products of this reaction. The reaction shifts to the left to relieve the stress, and there is an increase in the concentration of $\mathrm{H_2}$ and $\mathrm{I_2}$ and a reduction in the concentration of HI. Lowering the temperature of this system reduces the amount of energy present, favors the production of heat, and favors the formation of hydrogen iodide.

When we change the temperature of a system at equilibrium, the equilibrium constant for the reaction changes. Lowering the temperature in the HI system increases the equilibrium constant: At the new equilibrium the concentration of HI has increased and the concentrations of $\mathrm{H_2}$ and $\mathrm{I_2}$ decreased. Raising the temperature decreases the value of the equilibrium constant, from 67.5 at 357 °C to 50.0 at 400 °C.

Temperature affects the equilibrium between $\mathrm{NO_2}$ and $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ in this reaction

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \quad \Delta H = 57.20\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{8}$$

The positive ΔH value tells us that the reaction is endothermic and could be written

$$\mathrm{heat + N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \tag{9}$$

At higher temperatures, the gas mixture has a deep brown color, indicative of a significant amount of brown $\mathrm{NO_2}$ molecules. If, however, we put a stress on the system by cooling the mixture (withdrawing energy), the equilibrium shifts to the left to supply some of the energy lost by cooling. The concentration of colorless $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ increases, and the concentration of brown $\mathrm{NO_2}$ decreases, causing the brown color to fade.

Catalysts Do Not Affect Equilibrium

As we learned during our study of kinetics, a catalyst can speed up the rate of a reaction. Though this increase in reaction rate may cause a system to reach equilibrium more quickly (by speeding up the forward and reverse reactions), a catalyst has no effect on the value of an equilibrium constant nor on equilibrium concentrations.

The interplay of changes in concentration or pressure, temperature, and the lack of an influence of a catalyst on a chemical equilibrium is illustrated in the industrial synthesis of ammonia from nitrogen and hydrogen according to the equation

$$\mathrm{N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)} \tag{10}$$

A large quantity of ammonia is manufactured by this reaction. Each year, ammonia is among the top 10 chemicals, by mass, manufactured in the world. About 2 billion pounds are manufactured in the United States each year. Ammonia plays a vital role in our global economy. It is used in the production of fertilizers and is, itself, an important fertilizer for the growth of corn, cotton, and other crops. Large quantities of ammonia are converted to nitric acid, which plays an important role in the production of fertilizers, explosives, plastics, dyes, and fibers, and is also used in the steel industry.

Fritz Haber

Haber was born in Breslau, Prussia (presently Wroclaw, Poland) in December 1868. He went on to study chemistry and, while at the University of Karlsruhe, he developed what would later be known as the Haber process: the catalytic formation of ammonia from hydrogen and atmospheric nitrogen under high temperatures and pressures.



The work of Nobel Prize recipient Fritz Haber revolutionized agricultural practices in the early 20th century. His work also affected wartime strategies, adding chemical weapons to the artillery.

For this work, Haber was awarded the 1918 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for synthesis of ammonia from its elements. The Haber process was a boon to agriculture, as it allowed the production of fertilizers to no longer be dependent on mined feed stocks

such as sodium nitrate.

$$N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)$$

Currently, the annual production of synthetic nitrogen fertilizers exceeds 100 million tons and synthetic fertilizer production has increased the number of humans that arable land can support from 1.9 persons per hectare in 1908 to 4.3 in 2008. The availability of nitrogen is a strong limiting factor to the growth of plants. Despite accounting for 78% of air, diatomic nitrogen (N_2) is nutritionally unavailable due the tremendous stability of the nitrogen-nitrogen triple bond. For plants to use atmospheric nitrogen, the nitrogen must be converted to a more bioavailable form (this conversion is called nitrogen fixation).

In addition to his work in ammonia production, Haber is also remembered by history as one of the fathers of chemical warfare. During World War I, he played a major role in the development of poisonous gases used for trench warfare. Regarding his role in these developments, Haber said, “During peace time a scientist belongs to the World, but during war time he belongs to his country.”[1] Haber defended the use of gas warfare against accusations that it was inhumane, saying that death was death, by whatever means it was inflicted. He stands as an example of the ethical dilemmas that face scientists in times of war and the double-edged nature of the sword of science.

Like Haber, the products made from ammonia can be multifaceted. In addition to their value for agriculture, nitrogen compounds can also be used to achieve destructive ends. Ammonium nitrate has also been used in explosives, including improvised explosive devices. Ammonium nitrate was one of the components of the bomb used in the attack on the Alfred P. Murrah Federal Building in downtown Oklahoma City on April 19, 1995.

It has long been known that nitrogen and hydrogen react to form ammonia. However, it became possible to manufacture ammonia in useful quantities by the reaction of nitrogen and hydrogen only in the early 20th century after the factors that influence its equilibrium were understood.

To be practical, an industrial process must give a large yield of product relatively quickly. One way to increase the yield of ammonia is to increase the pressure on the system in which N_2, H_2, and NH_3 are at equilibrium or are coming to equilibrium.

$$N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g) \tag{11}$$

The formation of additional amounts of ammonia reduces the total pressure exerted by the system and somewhat reduces the stress of the increased pressure.

Although increasing the pressure of a mixture of N_2, H_2, and NH_3 will increase the yield of ammonia, at low temperatures, the rate of formation of ammonia is slow. At room temperature, for example, the reaction is so slow that if we prepared a mixture of N_2 and H_2, no detectable amount of ammonia would form during our lifetime. The formation of ammonia from hydrogen and nitrogen is an exothermic process:

$$N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,NH_3(g) \quad \Delta H = -92.2\ \text{kJ} \tag{12}$$

Thus, increasing the temperature to increase the rate lowers the yield. If we lower the temperature to shift the equilibrium to favor the formation of more ammonia, equilibrium is reached more slowly because of the large decrease of reaction rate with decreasing temperature.

Part of the rate of formation lost by operating at lower temperatures can be recovered by using a catalyst. The net effect of the catalyst on the reaction is to cause equilibrium to be reached more rapidly. In the commercial production of ammonia, conditions of about 500 °C, 150–900 atm, and the presence of a catalyst are used to give the best compromise among rate, yield, and the cost of the equipment necessary to produce and contain high-pressure gases at high temperatures (Figure 2).

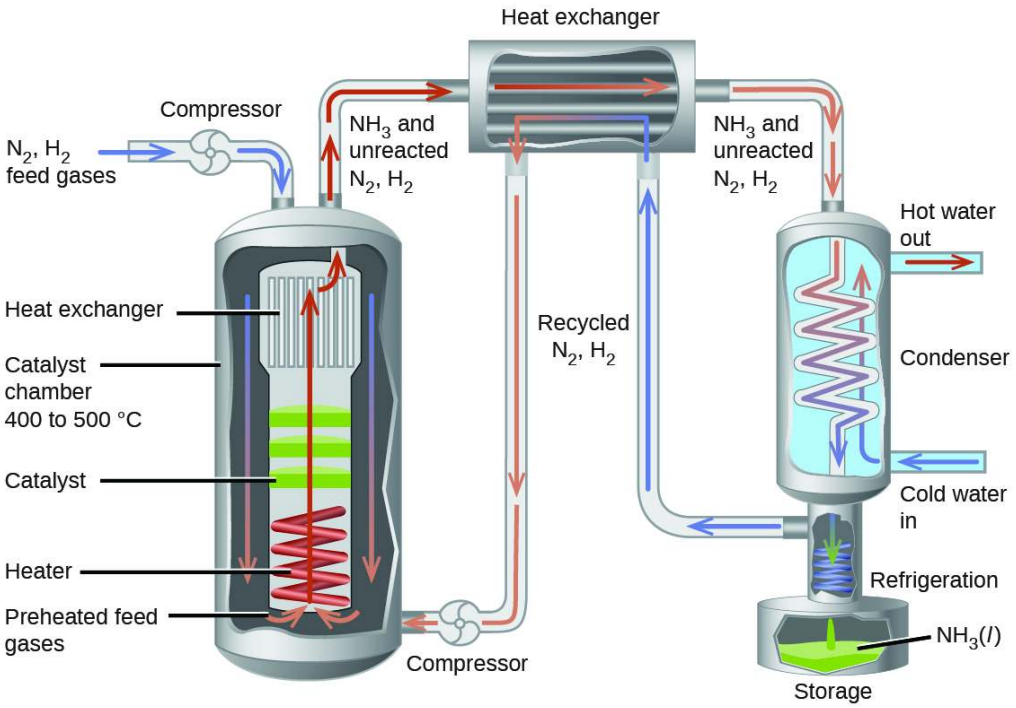


Figure 2: Commercial production of ammonia requires heavy equipment to handle the high temperatures and pressures required. This schematic outlines the design of an ammonia plant.

Summary

Systems at equilibrium can be disturbed by changes to temperature, concentration, and, in some cases, volume and pressure; volume and pressure changes will disturb equilibrium if the number of moles of gas is different on the reactant and product sides of the reaction. The system's response to these disturbances is described by Le Chatelier's principle: The system will respond in a way that counteracts the disturbance. Not all changes to the system result in a disturbance of the equilibrium. Adding a catalyst affects the rates of the reactions but does not alter the equilibrium, and changing pressure or volume will not significantly disturb systems with no gases or with equal numbers of moles of gas on the reactant and product side.

Table 1: Effects of Disturbances of Equilibrium and K

Disturbance	Observed Change as Equilibrium is Restored	Direction of Shift	Effect on K
reactant added	added reactant is partially consumed	toward products	none
product added	added product is partially consumed	toward reactants	none
decrease in volume/increase in gas pressure	pressure decreases	toward side with fewer moles of gas	none
increase in volume/decrease in gas pressure	pressure increases	toward side with more moles of gas	none
temperature increase	heat is absorbed	toward products for endothermic, toward reactants for exothermic	changes
temperature decrease	heat is given off	toward reactants for endothermic, toward products for exothermic	changes

Footnotes

1. Herrlich, P. “The Responsibility of the Scientist: What Can History Teach Us About How Scientists Should Handle Research That Has the Potential to Create Harm?” *EMBO Reports* 14 (2013): 759–764.

Glossary

Le Chatelier's principle

when a chemical system at equilibrium is disturbed, it returns to equilibrium by counteracting the disturbance

position of equilibrium

concentrations or partial pressures of components of a reaction at equilibrium (commonly used to describe conditions before a disturbance)

stress

change to a reaction's conditions that may cause a shift in the equilibrium

---

This page titled 1.9.4 Shifting Equilibria - Le Châtelier’s Principle is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **13.4: Shifting Equilibria - Le Chatelier’s Principle** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.9.5. Equilibrium Calculations

Learning Objectives

- Write equations representing changes in concentration and pressure for chemical species in equilibrium systems
- Use algebra to perform various types of equilibrium calculations

We know that at equilibrium, the value of the reaction quotient of any reaction is equal to its equilibrium constant. Thus, we can use the mathematical expression for *Q* to determine a number of quantities associated with a reaction at equilibrium or approaching equilibrium. While we have learned to identify in which direction a reaction will shift to reach equilibrium, we want to extend that understanding to quantitative calculations. We do so by evaluating the ways that the concentrations of products and reactants change as a reaction approaches equilibrium, keeping in mind the stoichiometric ratios of the reaction. This algebraic approach to equilibrium calculations will be explored in this section.

Changes in concentrations or pressures of reactants and products occur as a reaction system approaches equilibrium. In this section we will see that we can relate these changes to each other using the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation describing the system. We use the decomposition of ammonia as an example.

On heating, ammonia reversibly decomposes into nitrogen and hydrogen according to this equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$$

If a sample of ammonia decomposes in a closed system and the concentration of N_2 increases by 0.11 *M*, the change in the N_2 concentration, $\Delta[N_2]$, the final concentration minus the initial concentration, is 0.11 *M*. The change is positive because the concentration of N_2 increases.

The change in the H_2 concentration, $\Delta[H_2]$, is also positive—the concentration of H_2 increases as ammonia decomposes. The chemical equation tells us that the change in the concentration of H_2 is three times the change in the concentration of N_2 because for each mole of N_2 produced, 3 moles of H_2 are produced.

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta[\mathrm{H_2}] &= 3 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] \\ &= 3 \times (0.11\ M) \\ &= 0.33\ M\end{aligned}$$

The change in concentration of NH_3, $\Delta[NH_3]$, is twice that of $\Delta[N_2]$; the equation indicates that 2 moles of NH_3 must decompose for each mole of N_2 formed. However, the change in the NH_3 concentration is negative because the concentration of ammonia *decreases* as it decomposes.

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta[\mathrm{NH_3}] &= -2 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] \\ &= -2 \times (0.11\ M) \\ &= -0.22\ M\end{aligned}$$

We can relate these relationships directly to the coefficients in the equation

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) & \rightleftharpoons & \mathrm{N_2}(g) & + & 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \qquad (1) \\ \Delta[\mathrm{NH_3}] = -2 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] & & \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] = 0.11\ M & & \Delta[\mathrm{H_2}] = 3 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] \qquad (2) \end{array}$$

Note that all the changes on one side of the arrows are of the same sign and that all the changes on the other side of the arrows are of the opposite sign.

If we did not know the magnitude of the change in the concentration of N_2, we could represent it by the symbol *x*.

$$\Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] = x$$

The changes in the other concentrations would then be represented as:

$$\Delta[\mathrm{H_2}] = 3 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] = 3x$$
$$\Delta[\mathrm{NH_3}] = -2 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] = -2x$$

The coefficients in the Δ terms are identical to those in the balanced equation for the reaction.

$$2\,NH_3(g) \rightleftharpoons N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \tag{3}$$
$$-2x \qquad x \qquad 3x \tag{4}$$

The simplest way for us to find the coefficients for the concentration changes in any reaction is to use the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation. The sign of the coefficient is positive when the concentration increases; it is negative when the concentration decreases.

Example 1: Determining Relative Changes in Concentration

Complete the changes in concentrations for each of the following reactions.

(a)

$$C_2H_2(g) + 2\,Br_2(g) \rightleftharpoons C_2H_2Br_4(g) \tag{5}$$
$$x \qquad \_\_\_\_ \qquad \_\_\_\_ \tag{6}$$

(b)

$$I_2(aq) + I^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons I_3^-(aq) \tag{7}$$
$$\_\_\_\_ \qquad \_\_\_\_ \qquad x \tag{8}$$

(c)

$$C_3H_8(g) + 5\,O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,CO_2(g) + 4\,H_2O(g) \tag{9}$$
$$x \qquad \_\_\_\_ \qquad \_\_\_\_ \qquad \_\_\_\_ \tag{10}$$

Solution

(a)

$$C_2H_2(g) + 2\,Br_2(g) \rightleftharpoons C_2H_2Br_4(g) \tag{11}$$
$$x \qquad 2x \qquad -x \tag{12}$$

(b)

$$I_2(aq) + I^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons I_3^-(aq) \tag{13}$$
$$-x \qquad -x \qquad x \tag{14}$$

(c)

$$C_3H_8(g) + 5\,O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,CO_2(g) + 4\,H_2O(g) \tag{15}$$
$$x \qquad 5x \qquad -3x \qquad -4x \tag{16}$$

Exercise 1

Complete the changes in concentrations for each of the following reactions:

(a)

$$2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_3(g) \tag{17}$$
$$\_\_\_\_ \qquad x \qquad \_\_\_\_ \tag{18}$$

(b)

$$C_4H_8(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,C_2H_4(g) \tag{19}$$
$$\_\_\_\_ \qquad -2x \tag{20}$$

(c)

$$4\,NH_3(g) + 7\,H_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons 4\,NO_2(g) + 6\,H_2O(g) \tag{21}$$
$$\_\_\_\_ \qquad \_\_\_\_ \qquad \_\_\_\_ \qquad \_\_\_\_ \tag{22}$$

Answer a

$2x$, x, $-2x$

Answer b

x, $-2x$

Answer c

$4x$, $7x$, $-4x$, $-6x$ or $-4x$, $-7x$, $4x$, $6x$

Calculations Involving Equilibrium Concentrations

Because the value of the reaction quotient of any reaction at equilibrium is equal to its equilibrium constant, we can use the mathematical expression for Q_c (i.e., *the law of mass action*) to determine a number of quantities associated with a reaction at equilibrium. It may help if we keep in mind that $Q_c = K_c$ (at equilibrium) in all of these situations and that there are only three basic types of calculations:

1. **Calculation of an equilibrium constant**. If concentrations of reactants and products at equilibrium are known, the value of the equilibrium constant for the reaction can be calculated.
2. **Calculation of missing equilibrium concentrations**. If the value of the equilibrium constant and all of the equilibrium concentrations, except one, are known, the remaining concentration can be calculated.
3. **Calculation of equilibrium concentrations from initial concentrations**. If the value of the equilibrium constant and a set of concentrations of reactants and products that are not at equilibrium are known, the concentrations at equilibrium can be calculated.

A similar list could be generated using Q_P, K_P, and partial pressure. We will look at solving each of these cases in sequence.

Calculation of an Equilibrium Constant

Since the law of mass action is the only equation we have to describe the relationship between K_c and the concentrations of reactants and products, any problem that requires us to solve for K_c must provide enough information to determine the reactant and product concentrations at equilibrium. Armed with the concentrations, we can solve the equation for K_c, as it will be the only unknown.

Example 1 showed us how to determine the equilibrium constant of a reaction if we know the concentrations of reactants and products at equilibrium. The following example shows how to use the stoichiometry of the reaction and a combination of initial concentrations and equilibrium concentrations to determine an equilibrium constant. This technique, commonly called an ICE table —for **I**nitial, **C**hange, and **E**quilibrium–will be helpful in solving many equilibrium problems. A chart is generated beginning with the equilibrium reaction in question. Underneath the reaction the initial concentrations of the reactants and products are listed—these conditions are usually provided in the problem and we consider no shift toward equilibrium to have happened. The next row of data is the change that occurs as the system shifts toward equilibrium—do not forget to consider the reaction stoichiometry as described in a previous section of this chapter. The last row contains the concentrations once equilibrium has been reached.

Example 2: Calculation of an Equilibrium Constant

Iodine molecules react reversibly with iodide ions to produce triiodide ions.

$$\mathrm{I_2}(aq) + \mathrm{I^-}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{I_3^-}(aq)$$

If a solution with the concentrations of $\mathrm{I_2}$ and $\mathrm{I^-}$ both equal to 1.000×10^{-3} M before reaction gives an equilibrium concentration of $\mathrm{I_2}$ of 6.61×10^{-4} M, what is the equilibrium constant for the reaction?

Solution

We will begin this problem by calculating the changes in concentration as the system goes to equilibrium. Then we determine the equilibrium concentrations and, finally, the equilibrium constant. First, we set up a table with the initial concentrations, the changes in concentrations, and the equilibrium concentrations using $-x$ as the change in concentration of $\mathrm{I_2}$.

	$\mathrm{I_2}$	+	$\mathrm{I^-}$	$\rightleftharpoons$	$\mathrm{I_3^-}$
Initial concentration (M)	1.000×10^{-3}		1.000×10^{-3}		0
Change (M)	$-x$		$-x$		$+x$
Equilibrium concentration (M)	$1.000 \times 10^{-3} - x$		$1.000 \times 10^{-3} - x$		x

Since the equilibrium concentration of $\mathrm{I_2}$ is given, we can solve for x. At equilibrium the concentration of $\mathrm{I_2}$ is 6.61×10^{-4} M so that

$$1.000 \times 10^{-3} - x = 6.61 \times 10^{-4}$$

$$x = 1.000 \times 10^{-3} - 6.61 \times 10^{-4}$$
$$= 3.39 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

Now we can fill in the table with the concentrations at equilibrium.

	I_2 + I^- $\rightleftharpoons$ I_3^-		
Initial concentration (*M*)	1.000×10^{-3}	1.000×10^{-3}	0
Change (*M*)	$-x = -3.39 \times 10^{-4}$	$-x$	$+x$
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	6.61×10^{-4}	6.61×10^{-4}	3.39×10^{-4}

We now calculate the value of the equilibrium constant.

$$K_c = Q_c = \frac{[I_3^-]}{[I_2][I^-]}$$
$$= \frac{3.39 \times 10^{-4}\ M}{(6.61 \times 10^{-4}\ M)(6.61 \times 10^{-4}\ M)} = 776$$

? Exercise 2

Ethanol and acetic acid react and form water and ethyl acetate, the solvent responsible for the odor of some nail polish removers.

$$C_2H_5OH + CH_3CO_2H \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2C_2H_5 + H_2O$$

When 1 mol each of C_2H_5OH and CH_3CO_2H are allowed to react in 1 L of the solvent dioxane, equilibrium is established when $\frac{1}{3}$ mol of each of the reactants remains. Calculate the equilibrium constant for the reaction. (Note: Water is not a solvent in this reaction.)

Answer

$K_c = 4$

Calculation of a Missing Equilibrium Concentration

If we know the equilibrium constant for a reaction and know the concentrations at equilibrium of all reactants and products except one, we can calculate the missing concentration.

✔ Example 3: Calculation of a Missing Equilibrium Concentration

Nitrogen oxides are air pollutants produced by the reaction of nitrogen and oxygen at high temperatures. At 2000 °C, the value of the equilibrium constant for the reaction, $N_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO(g)$, is 4.1×10^{-4}. Find the concentration of NO(g) in an equilibrium mixture with air at 1 atm pressure at this temperature. In air, $[N_2]$ = 0.036 mol/L and $[O_2]$ 0.0089 mol/L.

Solution

We are given all of the equilibrium concentrations except that of NO. Thus, we can solve for the missing equilibrium concentration by rearranging the equation for the equilibrium constant.

$$K_c = Q_c = \frac{[NO]^2}{[N_2][O_2]}$$
$$[NO]^2 = K_c[N_2][O_2]$$
$$[NO] = \sqrt{K_c[N_2][O_2]}$$

$$= \sqrt{(4.1 \times 10^{-4})(0.036)(0.0089)}$$

$$= \sqrt{1.31 \times 10^{-7}}$$

$$= 3.6 \times 10^{-4}$$

Thus [NO] is 3.6×10^{-4} mol/L at equilibrium under these conditions.

We can check our answer by substituting all equilibrium concentrations into the expression for the reaction quotient to see whether it is equal to the equilibrium constant.

$$Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{NO}]^2}{[\mathrm{N_2}][\mathrm{O_2}]}$$

$$= \frac{(3.6 \times 10^{-4})^2}{(0.036)(0.0089)}$$

$$= 4.0 \times 10^{-4} = K_c$$

The answer checks; our calculated value gives the equilibrium constant within the error associated with the significant figures in the problem.

Exercise 3

The equilibrium constant for the reaction of nitrogen and hydrogen to produce ammonia at a certain temperature is 6.00×10^{-2}. Calculate the equilibrium concentration of ammonia if the equilibrium concentrations of nitrogen and hydrogen are 4.26 *M* and 2.09 *M*, respectively.

Answer

1.53 mol/L

Calculation of Changes in Concentration

If we know the equilibrium constant for a reaction and a set of concentrations of reactants and products that are *not at equilibrium*, we can calculate the changes in concentrations as the system comes to equilibrium, as well as the new concentrations at equilibrium. The typical procedure can be summarized in four steps.

1. Determine the direction the reaction proceeds to come to equilibrium.
   - Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction.
   - If the direction in which the reaction must proceed to reach equilibrium is not obvious, calculate Q_c from the initial concentrations and compare to K_c to determine the direction of change.
2. Determine the relative changes needed to reach equilibrium, then write the equilibrium concentrations in terms of these changes.
   - Define the changes in the initial concentrations that are needed for the reaction to reach equilibrium. Generally, we represent the smallest change with the symbol *x* and express the other changes in terms of the smallest change.
   - Define missing equilibrium concentrations in terms of the initial concentrations and the changes in concentration determined in (a).
3. Solve for the change and the equilibrium concentrations.
   - Substitute the equilibrium concentrations into the expression for the equilibrium constant, solve for *x*, and check any assumptions used to find *x*.
   - Calculate the equilibrium concentrations.
4. Check the arithmetic.
   - Check the calculated equilibrium concentrations by substituting them into the equilibrium expression and determining whether they give the equilibrium constant.

Sometimes a particular step may differ from problem to problem—it may be more complex in some problems and less complex in others. However, every calculation of equilibrium concentrations from a set of initial concentrations will involve these steps.

In solving equilibrium problems that involve changes in concentration, sometimes it is convenient to set up an ICE table, as described in the previous section.

Example 4: Calculation of Concentration as a Reaction Equilibrates

Under certain conditions, the equilibrium constant for the decomposition of $PCl_5(g)$ into $PCl_3(g)$ and $Cl_2(g)$ is 0.0211. What are the equilibrium concentrations of PCl_5, PCl_3, and Cl_2 if the initial concentration of PCl_5 was 1.00 *M*?

Solution

Use the stepwise process described earlier.

1. The balanced equation for the decomposition of PCl_5 is

$$\mathrm{PCl_5}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{PCl_3}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g)$$

Because we have no products initially, $Q_c = 0$ and the reaction will proceed to the right.

- Let us represent the increase in concentration of PCl_3 by the symbol *x*. The other changes may be written in terms of *x* by considering the coefficients in the chemical equation.

$$\mathrm{PCl_5}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{PCl_3}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \tag{23}$$
$$-x \qquad\quad x \qquad\quad x \tag{24}$$

- The changes in concentration and the expressions for the equilibrium concentrations are:

	$PCl_5 \rightleftharpoons PCl_3 + Cl_2$		
Initial concentration (*M*)	1.00	0	0
Change (*M*)	$-x$	$+x$	$+x$
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	$1.00 - x$	$0 + x = x$	$0 + x = x$

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following in the first column: Initial concentration (M), Change (M), Equilibrium concentration (M). The second column has the header, “P C l subscript 5 equilibrium arrow P C l subscript 3 plus C l subscript 2.” Under the second column is a subgroup of three rows and three columns. The first column has the following: 1.00, negative x, 1.00 minus x. The second column has the following: 0, positive x, 0 plus x equals x. The third column has the following: 0, positive x, 0 plus x equals x.

- Substituting the equilibrium concentrations into the equilibrium constant equation gives

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{PCl_3}][\mathrm{Cl_2}]}{[\mathrm{PCl_5}]} = 0.0211$$
$$= \frac{(x)(x)}{(1.00 - x)}$$

This equation contains only one variable, *x*, the change in concentration. We can write the equation as a quadratic equation and solve for *x* using the quadratic formula.

$$0.0211 = \frac{(x)(x)}{(1.00 - x)}$$
$$0.0211(1.00 - x) = x^2$$
$$x^2 + 0.0211x - 0.0211 = 0$$

An equation of the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ can be rearranged to solve for *x*:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

In this case, a = 1, b = 0.0211, and c = −0.0211. Substituting the appropriate values for a, b, and c yields:

$$x = \frac{-0.0211 \pm \sqrt{(0.0211)^2 - 4(1)(-0.0211)}}{2(1)}$$
$$= \frac{-0.0211 \pm \sqrt{(4.45 \times 10^{-4}) + (8.44 \times 10^{-2})}}{2}$$
$$= \frac{-0.0211 \pm 0.291}{2}$$

Hence

$$x = \frac{-0.0211 + 0.291}{2} = 0.135$$

or

$$x = \frac{-0.0211 - 0.291}{2} = -0.156$$

Quadratic equations often have two different solutions, one that is physically possible and one that is physically impossible (an extraneous root). In this case, the second solution (−0.156) is physically impossible because we know the change must be a positive number (otherwise we would end up with negative values for concentrations of the products). Thus, x = 0.135 M.

The equilibrium concentrations are

$[PCl_5] = 1.00 - 0.135 = 0.87\ M$
$[PCl_3] = x = 0.135\ M$
$[Cl_2] = x = 0.135\ M$

- Substitution into the expression for K_c (to check the calculation) gives

$$K_c = \frac{[PCl_3][Cl_2]}{[PCl_5]} = \frac{(0.135)(0.135)}{0.87} = 0.021$$

The equilibrium constant calculated from the equilibrium concentrations is equal to the value of K_c given in the problem (when rounded to the proper number of significant figures). Thus, the calculated equilibrium concentrations check.

Exercise 4A

Acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H, reacts with ethanol, C_2H_5OH, to form water and ethyl acetate, $CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$.

$$CH_3CO_2H + C_2H_5OH \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2C_2H_5 + H_2O$$

The equilibrium constant for this reaction with dioxane as a solvent is 4.0. What are the equilibrium concentrations when a mixture that is 0.15 M in CH_3CO_2H, 0.15 M in C_2H_5OH, 0.40 M in $CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$, and 0.40 M in H_2O are mixed in enough dioxane to make 1.0 L of solution?

Answer

$[CH_3CO_2H]$ = 0.36 M, $[C_2H_5OH]$ = 0.36 M, $[CH_3CO_2C_2H_5]$ = 0.17 M, $[H_2O]$ = 0.17 M

Exercise 4B

A 1.00-L flask is filled with 1.00 moles of H_2 and 2.00 moles of I_2. The value of the equilibrium constant for the reaction of hydrogen and iodine reacting to form hydrogen iodide is 50.5 under the given conditions. What are the equilibrium concentrations of H_2, I_2, and HI in moles/L?

$$H_2(g) + I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HI(g)$$

Answer

$[H_2]$ = 0.06 M, $[I_2]$ = 1.06 M, [HI] = 1.88 M

Sometimes it is possible to use chemical insight to find solutions to equilibrium problems without actually solving a quadratic (or more complicated) equation. First, however, it is useful to verify that equilibrium can be obtained starting from two extremes: all (or mostly) reactants and all (or mostly) products.

Consider the ionization of 0.150 M HA, a weak acid.

$$\mathrm{HA}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H^+}(aq) + \mathrm{A^-}(aq) \qquad K_c = 6.80 \times 10^{-4}$$

The most obvious way to determine the equilibrium concentrations would be to start with only reactants. This could be called the "all reactant" starting point. Using *x* for the amount of acid ionized at equilibrium, this is the ICE table and solution.

	HA(*aq*) ⇌	H^+(*aq*)	+ A^-(*aq*)
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.150	0	0
Change (*M*)	−*x*	*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	0.150 − *x*	*x*	*x*

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following: Initial pressure (M), Change (M), Equilibrium (M). The second column has the header, "H A (a q) equilibrium arrow H superscript plus sign (a q) plus A subscript negative sign (a q)." Under the second column is a subgroup of three columns and three rows. The first column has the following: 0.150, negative x, 0.150 minus x. The second column has the following: 0, x, x. The third column has the following: 0, x, x.

Setting up and solving the quadratic equation gives

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{H^+}][\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{(0.150 - x)} = 6.80 \times 10^{-4}$$

$$x^2 + 6.80 \times 10^{-4} x - 1.02 \times 10^{-4} = 0$$

$$x = -6.80 \times 10^{-4} \pm \sqrt{(6.80 \times 10^{-4})^2 - (4)(1)(-1.02 \times 10^{-4})}\ (2)(1)$$

$$x = 0.00977\ M \text{ or } -0.0104\ M$$

Using the positive (physical) root, the equilibrium concentrations are

$$[\mathrm{HA}] = 0.150 - x = 0.140\ M$$
$$[\mathrm{H^+}] = [\mathrm{A^-}] = x = 0.00977\ M$$

A less obvious way to solve the problem would be to assume all the HA ionizes first, then the system comes to equilibrium. This could be called the "all product" starting point. Assuming all of the HA ionizes gives

$$[\mathrm{HA}] = 0.150 - 0.150 = 0\ M$$
$$[\mathrm{H^+}] = 0 + 0.150 = 0.150\ M$$
$$[\mathrm{A^-}] = 0 + 0.150 = 0.150\ M$$

Using these as initial concentrations and "*y*" to represent the concentration of HA at equilibrium, this is the ICE table for this starting point.

	$HA(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + A^-(aq)$		
Initial concentration (*M*)	0	0.150	0.150
Change (*M*)	$+y$	$-y$	$-y$
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	y	$0.150 - y$	$0.150 - y$

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following: Initial pressure (M), Change (M), Equilibrium (M). The second column has the header, “H A (a q) equilibrium arrow H superscript plus sign (a q) plus A subscript negative sign (a q).” Under the second column is a subgroup of three columns and three rows. The first column has the following: 0, positive y, y. The second column has the following: 0.150, negative y, 0.150 minus y. The third column has the following: 0.150, negative y, and 0.150 minus y.

Setting up and solving the quadratic equation gives

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{H^+}][\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]} = \frac{(0.150 - y)(0.150 - y)}{(y)} = 6.80 \times 10^{-4}$$

$$6.80 \times 10^{-4} y = 0.0225 - 0.300y + y^2$$

Retain a few extra significant figures to minimize rounding problems.

$$y^2 - 0.30068y + 0.022500 = 0$$

$$y = \frac{0.30068 \pm \sqrt{(0.30068)^2 - (4)(1)(0.022500)}}{(2)(1)}$$

$$y = \frac{0.30068 \pm 0.020210}{2}$$

Rounding each solution to three significant figures gives

$$y = 0.160\ M \text{ or } y = 0.140\ M$$

Using the physically significant root (0.140 M) gives the equilibrium concentrations as

$$[\mathrm{HA}] = y = 0.140\ M$$

$$[\mathrm{H^+}] = 0.150 - y = 0.010\ M$$

$$[\mathrm{A^-}] = 0.150 - y = 0.010\ M$$

Thus, the two approaches give the same results (to three *decimal places*), and show that *both* starting points lead to the same equilibrium conditions. The “all reactant” starting point resulted in a relatively small change (x) because the system was close to equilibrium, while the “all product” starting point had a relatively large change (y) that was nearly the size of the initial concentrations. It can be said that a system that starts “close” to equilibrium will require only a ”small” change in conditions (x) to reach equilibrium.

Recall that a small K_c means that very little of the reactants form products and a large K_c means that most of the reactants form products. If the system can be arranged so it starts “close” to equilibrium, then if the change (x) is small compared to any initial concentrations, it can be neglected. Small is usually defined as resulting in an error of less than 5%. The following two examples demonstrate this.

Example 5: Approximate Solution Starting Close to Equilibrium

What are the concentrations at equilibrium of a 0.15 *M* solution of HCN?

$$\mathrm{HCN}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CN^-}(aq) \quad K_c = 4.9 \times 10^{-10}$$

Solution

Using “x” to represent the concentration of each product at equilibrium gives this ICE table.

	$HCN(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + CN^-(aq)$		
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.15	0	0
Change (*M*)	$-x$	x	x
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	$0.15 - x$	x	x

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following: Initial pressure (M), Change (M), Equilibrium (M). The second column has the header, “H C N (a q) equilibrium arrow H superscript plus sign (a q) plus C N subscript negative sign (a q).” Under the second column is a subgroup of three columns and three rows. The first column has the following: 0.15, negative x, 0.15 minus x. The second column has the following: 0, x, x. The third column has the following: 0, x, x.

The exact solution may be obtained using the quadratic formula with

$$K_c = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.15 - x}$$

solving

$$x^2 + 4.9 \times 10^{-10} - 7.35 \times 10^{-11} = 0$$

$$x = 8.56 \times 10^{-6}\ M\ (3\ \text{sig. figs.}) = 8.6 \times 10^{-6}\ M\ (2\ \text{sig. figs.})$$

Thus $[H^+] = [CN^-] = x = 8.6 \times 10^{-6}\ M$ and $[HCN] = 0.15 - x = 0.15\ M$.

In this case, chemical intuition can provide a simpler solution. From the equilibrium constant and the initial conditions, x must be small compared to 0.15 *M*. More formally, if $x \ll 0.15$, then $0.15 - x \approx 0.15$. If this assumption is true, then it simplifies obtaining x

$$K_c = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.15 - x} \approx \frac{x^2}{0.15}$$

$$4.9 \times 10^{-10} = \frac{x^2}{0.15}$$

$$x^2 = (0.15)(4.9 \times 10^{-10}) = 7.4 \times 10^{-11}$$

$$x = \sqrt{7.4 \times 10^{-11}} = 8.6 \times 10^{-6}\ M$$

In this example, solving the exact (quadratic) equation and using approximations gave the same result to two significant figures. While most of the time the approximation is a bit different from the exact solution, as long as the error is less than 5%, the approximate solution is considered valid. In this problem, the 5% applies to IF $(0.15 - x) \approx 0.15\ M$, so if

$$\frac{x}{0.15} \times 100\% = \frac{8.6 \times 10^{-6}}{0.15} \times 100\% = 0.006\%$$

is less than 5%, as it is in this case, the assumption is valid. The approximate solution is thus a valid solution.

? Exercise 5

What are the equilibrium concentrations in a 0.25 *M* NH_3 solution?

$$NH_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \qquad K_c = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

Assume that x is much less than 0.25 M and calculate the error in your assumption.

Answer

$[OH^-] = [NH_4^+] = 0.0021\ M$; $[NH_3] = 0.25\ M$, error = 0.84%

The second example requires that the original information be processed a bit, but it still can be solved using a small *x* approximation.

Example 6: Approximate Solution After Shifting Starting Concentration

Copper(II) ions form a complex ion in the presence of ammonia

$$Cu^{2+}(aq) + 4\,NH_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons Cu(NH_3)_4^{2+}(aq) \quad K_c = 5.0 \times 10^{13} = \frac{[Cu(NH_3)_4^{2+}]}{[Cu^{2+}(aq)][NH_3]^4}$$

If 0.010 mol Cu^{2+} is added to 1.00 L of a solution that is 1.00 *M* NH_3 what are the concentrations when the system comes to equilibrium?

Solution The initial concentration of copper(II) is 0.010 *M*. The equilibrium constant is very large so it would be better to start with as much product as possible because "all products" is much closer to equilibrium than "all reactants." Note that Cu^{2+} is the limiting reactant; if all 0.010 *M* of it reacts to form product the concentrations would be

$$[Cu^{2+}] = 0.010 - 0.010 = 0\ M$$

$$[Cu(NH_3)_4^{2+}] = 0.010\ M$$

$$[NH_3] = 1.00 - 4 \times 0.010 = 0.96\ M$$

Using these "shifted" values as initial concentrations with *x* as the free copper(II) ion concentration at equilibrium gives this ICE table.

	$Cu^{2+}(aq)$ +	$4NH_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons$	$Cu(NH_3)_4^{2+}(aq)$
Initial concentration (*M*)	0	0.96	0.010
Change (*M*)	+*x*	+4*x*	−*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	*x*	0.96 + 4*x*	0.010 − *x*

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following: Initial pressure (M), Change (M), Equilibrium (M). The second column has the header, "C u superscript 2 positive sign (a q) plus 4 N H subscript 3 (a q) equilibrium arrow C u (N H subscript 3) subscript 4 superscript 2 positive sign (a q)." Under the second column is a subgroup of three columns and three rows. The first column has the following: 0, positive x, x. The second column has the following: 0.96, positive 4 x, 0.96 plus 4 x. The third column has the following: 0.010, negative x, 0.010 minus x.

Since we are starting close to equilibrium, *x* should be small so that

$$0.96 + 4x \approx 0.96\ M$$

$$0.010 - x \approx 0.010\ M$$

$$K_c = \frac{(0.010 - x)}{x(0.96 - 4x)^4} \approx \frac{(0.010)}{x(0.96)^4} = 5.0 \times 10^{13}$$

$$x = \frac{(0.010)}{K_c(0.96)^4} = 2.4 \times 10^{-16}\ M$$

Select the smallest concentration for the 5% rule.

$$\frac{2.4 \times 10^{-16}}{0.010} \times 100\% = 2 \times 10^{-12}\%$$

This is much less than 5%, so the assumptions are valid. The concentrations at equilibrium are

$$[Cu^{2+}] = x = 2.4 \times 10^{-16}\ M$$
$$[NH_3] = 0.96 - 4x = 0.96\ M$$

$$[\mathrm{Cu(NH_3)_4^{2+}}] = 0.010 - x = 0.010\ M$$

By starting with the maximum amount of product, this system was near equilibrium and the change (x) was very small. With only a small change required to get to equilibrium, the equation for x was greatly simplified and gave a valid result well within the 5% error maximum.

? Exercise 6

What are the equilibrium concentrations when 0.25 mol Ni^{2+} is added to 1.00 L of 2.00 M NH_3 solution?

$$\mathrm{Ni^{2+}}(aq) + 6\,\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ni(NH_3)_6^{2+}}(aq)$$

with $K_c = 5.5 \times 10^8$.

With such a large equilibrium constant, first form as much product as possible, then assume that only a small amount (x) of the product shifts left. Calculate the error in your assumption.

Answer

$[\mathrm{Ni(NH_3)_6^{2+}}] = 0.25\ M$, [$NH_3$] = 0.50 M, [Ni^{2+}] = 2.9 × 10^{-8} M, error = 1.2 × 10^{-5}%

Summary

The ratios of the rate of change in concentrations of a reaction are equal to the ratios of the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation. The sign of the coefficient of X is positive when the concentration increases and negative when it decreases. We learned to approach three basic types of equilibrium problems. When given the concentrations of the reactants and products at equilibrium, we can solve for the equilibrium constant; when given the equilibrium constant and some of the concentrations involved, we can solve for the missing concentrations; and when given the equilibrium constant and the initial concentrations, we can solve for the concentrations at equilibrium.

This page titled 1.9.5. Equilibrium Calculations is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **13.5: Equilibrium Calculations** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.9.6 Fundamental Equilibrium Concepts (Exercises)

Template:HideTOC

13.1: Chemical Equilibria Exercises

Q13.1.1

What does it mean to describe a reaction as “reversible”?

S13.1.1

The reaction can proceed in both the forward and reverse directions.

Q13.1.2

When writing an equation, how is a reversible reaction distinguished from a nonreversible reaction?

Q13.1.3

If a reaction is reversible, when can it be said to have reached equilibrium?

S13.1.3

When a system has reached equilibrium, no further changes in the reactant and product concentrations occur; the reactions continue to occur, but at equivalent rates.

Q13.1.4

Is a system at equilibrium if the rate constants of the forward and reverse reactions are equal?

Q13.1.5

If the concentrations of products and reactants are equal, is the system at equilibrium?

S13.1.5

The concept of equilibrium does not imply equal concentrations, though it is possible.

13.2: Equilibrium Constant Exercises

Q13.2.1

Explain why there may be an infinite number of values for the reaction quotient of a reaction at a given temperature but there can be only one value for the equilibrium constant at that temperature.

Q13.2.2

Explain why an equilibrium between $Br_2(l)$ and $Br_2(g)$ would not be established if the container were not a closed vessel shown below:



S13.2.2

Equilibrium cannot be established between the liquid and the gas phase if the top is removed from the bottle because the system is not closed; one of the components of the equilibrium, the Br_2 vapor, would escape from the bottle until all liquid disappeared. Thus, more liquid would evaporate than can condense back from the gas phase to the liquid phase.

Q13.2.3

If you observe the following reaction at equilibrium, is it possible to tell whether the reaction started with pure NO_2 or with pure N_2O_4?

\[\ce{2NO2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \ce{N2O4}(g)\]

Q13.2.4

Among the solubility rules previously discussed is the statement: All chlorides are soluble except Hg_2Cl_2, AgCl, $PbCl_2$, and CuCl.

Q13.2.5

1. (a) Write the expression for the equilibrium constant for the reaction represented by the equation $\mathrm{AgCl}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag}^+(aq) + \mathrm{Cl}^-(aq)$. Is K_c > 1, < 1, or ≈ 1? Explain your answer.
2. (b) Write the expression for the equilibrium constant for the reaction represented by the equation $\mathrm{Pb}^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Cl}^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{PbCl}_2(s)$. Is K_c > 1, < 1, or ≈ 1? Explain your answer.

S13.2.5

(a) $K_c = [\mathrm{Ag}^+][\mathrm{Cl}^-] < 1$. AgCl is insoluble; thus, the concentrations of ions are much less than 1 *M*; (b) $K_c = \dfrac{1}{[\mathrm{Pb}^{2+}][\mathrm{Cl}^-]^2} > 1$ because $PbCl_2$ is insoluble and formation of the solid will reduce the concentration of ions to a low level (<1 *M*).

Q13.2.6

Among the solubility rules previously discussed is the statement: Carbonates, phosphates, borates, and arsenates—except those of the ammonium ion and the alkali metals—are insoluble.

a. Write the expression for the equilibrium constant for the reaction represented by the equation $\mathrm{CaCO}_3(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca}^{2+}(aq) + \mathrm{CO}_3^-(aq)$. Is K_c > 1, < 1, or ≈ 1? Explain your answer.
b. Write the expression for the equilibrium constant for the reaction represented by the equation $3\,\mathrm{Ba}^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{PO}_4^{3-}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ba}_3(\mathrm{PO}_4)_2(s)$. Is K_c > 1, < 1, or ≈ 1? Explain your answer.

Q13.2.7

Benzene is one of the compounds used as octane enhancers in unleaded gasoline. It is manufactured by the catalytic conversion of acetylene to benzene: $3\,\mathrm{C}_2\mathrm{H}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{C}_6\mathrm{H}_6(g)$. Which value of K_c would make this reaction most useful commercially? K_c ≈ 0.01, K_c ≈ 1, or K_c ≈ 10. Explain your answer.

S13.2.7

Since $K_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{C}_6\mathrm{H}_6]}{[\mathrm{C}_2\mathrm{H}_2]^3}$, a value of K_c ≈ 10 means that C_6H_6 predominates over C_2H_2. In such a case, the reaction would be commercially feasible if the rate to equilibrium is suitable.

Q13.2.8

Show that the complete chemical equation, the total ionic equation, and the net ionic equation for the reaction represented by the equation $\mathrm{KI}(aq) + \mathrm{I}_2(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{KI}_3(aq)$ give the same expression for the reaction quotient. KI_3 is composed of the ions K^+ and I_3^-.

Q13.2.9

For a titration to be effective, the reaction must be rapid and the yield of the reaction must essentially be 100%. Is K_c > 1, < 1, or ≈ 1 for a titration reaction?

S13.2.9

K_c > 1

Q13.2.10

For a precipitation reaction to be useful in a gravimetric analysis, the product of the reaction must be insoluble. Is K_c > 1, < 1, or ≈ 1 for a useful precipitation reaction?

Q13.2.11

Write the mathematical expression for the reaction quotient, Q_c, for each of the following reactions:

a. $\mathrm{CH_4}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CH_3Cl}(g) + \mathrm{HCl}(g)$
b. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO}(g)$
c. $2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g)$
d. $\mathrm{BaSO_3}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{BaO}(s) + \mathrm{SO_2}(g)$
e. $\mathrm{P_4}(g) + 5\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{P_4O_{10}}(s)$
f. $\mathrm{Br_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{Br}(g)$
g. $\mathrm{CH_4}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$
h. $\mathrm{CuSO_4 \cdot 5\,H_2O}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CuSO_4}(s) + 5\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g)$

S13.2.11

(a) $Q_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{CH_3Cl}][\mathrm{HCl}]}{[\mathrm{CH_4}][\mathrm{Cl_2}]}$; (b) $Q_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{NO}]^2}{[\mathrm{N_2}][\mathrm{O_2}]}$; (c) $Q_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{SO_3}]^2}{[\mathrm{SO_2}]^2[\mathrm{O_2}]}$; (d) $Q_c = [\mathrm{SO_2}]$; (e) $Q_c = \dfrac{1}{[\mathrm{P_4}][\mathrm{O_2}]^5}$; (f) $Q_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{Br}]^2}{[\mathrm{Br_2}]}$; (g) $Q_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{CO_2}]}{[\mathrm{CH_4}][\mathrm{O_2}]^2}$; (h) $Q_c = [\mathrm{H_2O}]^5$

Q13.2.12

Write the mathematical expression for the reaction quotient, Q_c, for each of the following reactions:

a. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g)$
b. $4\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) + 5\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 4\,\mathrm{NO}(g) + 6\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g)$
c. $\mathrm{N_2O_4}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO_2}(g)$
d. $\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g)$
e. $\mathrm{NH_4Cl}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{NH_3}(g) + \mathrm{HCl}(g)$
f. $2\,\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{PbO}(s) + 4\,\mathrm{NO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g)$
g. $2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$
h. $\mathrm{S_8}(g) \rightleftharpoons 8\,\mathrm{S}(g)$

S13.2.12

The initial concentrations or pressures of reactants and products are given for each of the following systems. Calculate the reaction quotient and determine the direction in which each system will proceed to reach equilibrium.

a. $2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$ $K_c = 17$; [$\mathrm{NH_3}$] = 0.20 *M*, [$\mathrm{N_2}$] = 1.00 *M*, [$\mathrm{H_2}$] = 1.00 *M*
b. $2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$ $K_P = 6.8 \times 10^4$; initial pressures: $\mathrm{NH_3}$ = 3.0 atm, $\mathrm{N_2}$ = 2.0 atm, $\mathrm{H_2}$ = 1.0 atm
c. $2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g)$ $K_c = 0.230$; [$\mathrm{SO_3}$] = 0.00 *M*, [$\mathrm{SO_2}$] = 1.00 *M*, [$\mathrm{O_2}$] = 1.00 *M*
d. $2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g)$ $K_P = 16.5$; initial pressures: $\mathrm{SO_3}$ = 1.00 atm, $\mathrm{SO_2}$ = 1.00 atm, $\mathrm{O_2}$ = 1.00 atm
e. $2\,\mathrm{NO}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NOCl}(g)$ $K_c = 4.6 \times 10^4$; [NO] = 1.00 *M*, [$\mathrm{Cl_2}$] = 1.00 *M*, [NOCl] = 0 *M*
f. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO}(g)$ $K_P = 0.050$; initial pressures: NO = 10.0 atm, $\mathrm{N_2}$ = $\mathrm{O_2}$ = 5 atm

S13.2.13

(a) Q_c 25 proceeds left; (b) Q_P 0.22 proceeds right; (c) Q_c undefined proceeds left; (d) Q_P 1.00 proceeds right; (e) Q_P 0 proceeds right; (f) Q_c 4 proceeds left

Q13.2.14

The initial concentrations or pressures of reactants and products are given for each of the following systems. Calculate the reaction quotient and determine the direction in which each system will proceed to reach equilibrium.

a. $2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$ $K_c = 17$; [$\mathrm{NH_3}$] = 0.50 *M*, [$\mathrm{N_2}$] = 0.15 *M*, [$\mathrm{H_2}$] = 0.12 *M*
b. $2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$ $K_P = 6.8 \times 10^4$; initial pressures: $\mathrm{NH_3}$ = 2.00 atm, $\mathrm{N_2}$ = 10.00 atm, $\mathrm{H_2}$ = 10.00 atm
c. $2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g)$ $K_c = 0.230$; [$\mathrm{SO_3}$] = 2.00 *M*, [$\mathrm{SO_2}$] = 2.00 *M*, [$\mathrm{O_2}$] = 2.00 *M*
d. $2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g)$ $K_P = 6.5\ \mathrm{atm}$; initial pressures: $\mathrm{SO_2}$ = 1.00 atm, $\mathrm{O_2}$ = 1.130 atm, $\mathrm{SO_3}$ = 0 atm
e. $2\,\mathrm{NO}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NOCl}(g)$ $K_P = 2.5 \times 10^3$; initial pressures: NO = 1.00 atm, $\mathrm{Cl_2}$ = 1.00 atm, NOCl = 0 atm

f. $N_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO(g)$ $K_c = 0.050$; [N_2] = 0.100 *M*, [O_2] = 0.200 *M*, [NO] = 1.00 *M*

Q13.2.15

The following reaction has $K_P = 4.50 \times 10^{-5}$ at 720 K.

\[\ce{N2}(g)+\ce{3H2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \ce{2NH3}(g)\]

If a reaction vessel is filled with each gas to the partial pressures listed, in which direction will it shift to reach equilibrium? $P(NH_3)$ = 93 atm, $P(N_2)$ = 48 atm, and $P(H_2)$ = 52

S13.2.15

The system will shift toward the reactants to reach equilibrium.

Q13.2.16

Determine if the following system is at equilibrium. If not, in which direction will the system need to shift to reach equilibrium?

\(\ce{SO2Cl2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \ce{SO2}(g)+\ce{Cl2}(g)\)

[SO_2Cl_2] = 0.12 *M*, [Cl_2] = 0.16 *M* and [SO_2] = 0.050 *M*. K_c for the reaction is 0.078.

Q13.2.17

Which of the systems described in Exercise give homogeneous equilibria? Which give heterogeneous equilibria?

S13.2.17

(a) homogenous; (b) homogenous; (c) homogenous; (d) heterogeneous; (e) heterogeneous; (f) homogenous; (g) heterogeneous; (h) heterogeneous

Q13.2.18

Which of the systems described in Exercise give homogeneous equilibria? Which give heterogeneous equilibria?

Q13.2.19

For which of the reactions in Exercise does K_c (calculated using concentrations) equal K_P (calculated using pressures)?

S13.2.19

This situation occurs in (a) and (b).

Q13.2.19

For which of the reactions in Exercise does K_c (calculated using concentrations) equal K_P (calculated using pressures)?

Q13.2.20

Convert the values of K_c to values of K_P or the values of K_P to values of K_c.

a. $N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)$ $K_c = 0.50$ at 400 °C
b. $H_2 + I_2 \rightleftharpoons 2\,HI$ $K_c = 50.2$ at 448 °C
c. $Na_2SO_4 \cdot 10\,H_2O(s) \rightleftharpoons Na_2SO_4(s) + 10\,H_2O(g)$ $K_P = 4.08 \times 10^{-25}$ at 25 °C
d. $H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_2O(g)$ $K_P = 0.122$ at 50 °C

S13.2.20

(a) $K_P = 1.6 \times 10^{-4}$; (b) $K_P = 50.2$; (c) $K_c = 5.31 \times 10^{-39}$; (d) $K_c = 4.60 \times 10^{-3}$

Q13.2.21

Convert the values of K_c to values of K_P or the values of K_P to values of K_c.

a. $Cl_2(g) + Br_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,BrCl(g)$ $K_c = 4.7 \times 10^{-2}$ at 25 °C
b. $2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_3(g)$ $K_P = 48.2$ at 500 °C
c. $CaCl_2 \cdot 6\,H_2O(s) \rightleftharpoons CaCl_2(s) + 6\,H_2O(g)$ $K_P = 5.09 \times 10^{-44}$ at 25 °C
d. $H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_2O(g)$ $K_P = 0.196$ at 60 °C

Q13.2.22

What is the value of the equilibrium constant expression for the change $\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2O}(g)$ at 30 °C?

S13.2.22

$$K_P = P_{\mathrm{H_2O}} = 0.042. \tag{1}$$

Q13.2.23

Write the expression of the reaction quotient for the ionization of HOCN in water.

Q13.2.24

Write the reaction quotient expression for the ionization of NH_3 in water.

S13.2.24

$$Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{NH_4^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}]}{[\mathrm{HN_3}]} \tag{2}$$

Q13.2.25

What is the approximate value of the equilibrium constant K_P for the change $\mathrm{C_2H_5OC_2H_5}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{C_2H_5OC_2H_5}(g)$ at 25 °C. (Vapor pressure was described in the previous chapter on liquids and solids; refer back to this chapter to find the relevant information needed to solve this problem.)

13.3: Shifting Equilbria Exercises

Q13.3.1

The following equation represents a reversible decomposition:

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$$

Under what conditions will decomposition in a closed container proceed to completion so that no $CaCO_3$ remains?

S13.3.1

The amount of $CaCO_3$ must be so small that $P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$ is less than K_P when the $CaCO_3$ has completely decomposed. In other words, the starting amount of $CaCO_3$ cannot completely generate the full $P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}$ required for equilibrium.

Q13.3.2

Explain how to recognize the conditions under which changes in pressure would affect systems at equilibrium.

Q13.3.3

What property of a reaction can we use to predict the effect of a change in temperature on the value of an equilibrium constant?

S13.3.3

The change in enthalpy may be used. If the reaction is exothermic, the heat produced can be thought of as a product. If the reaction is endothermic the heat added can be thought of as a reactant. Additional heat would shift an exothermic reaction back to the reactants but would shift an endothermic reaction to the products. Cooling an exothermic reaction causes the reaction to shift toward the product side; cooling an endothermic reaction would cause it to shift to the reactants' side.

Q13.3.4

What would happen to the color of the solution in part (b) of Figure if a small amount of NaOH were added and Fe(OH)3 precipitated? Explain your answer.

Q13.3.5

The following reaction occurs when a burner on a gas stove is lit:

\(\ce{CH4}(g)+\ce{2O2}(g)\rightleftharpoons\ce{CO2}(g)+\ce{2H2O}(g)\)

Is an equilibrium among CH_4, O_2, CO_2, and H_2O established under these conditions? Explain your answer.

S13.3.5

No, it is not at equilibrium. Because the system is not confined, products continuously escape from the region of the flame; reactants are also added continuously from the burner and surrounding atmosphere.

Q13.3.6

A necessary step in the manufacture of sulfuric acid is the formation of sulfur trioxide, SO3, from sulfur dioxide, SO2, and oxygen, O2, shown here. At high temperatures, the rate of formation of $SO_3$is higher, but the equilibrium amount (concentration or partial pressure) of SO3 is lower than it would be at lower temperatures.

$$2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g) \tag{3}$$

a. (a) Does the equilibrium constant for the reaction increase, decrease, or remain about the same as the temperature increases?
b. (b) Is the reaction endothermic or exothermic?

Q13.3.7a

Suggest four ways in which the concentration of hydrazine, N_2H_4, could be increased in an equilibrium described by the following equation:

\[\ce{N2}(g)+\ce{2H2}(g)\rightleftharpoons\ce{N2H4}(g) \hspace{20px} ΔH=\ce{95\:kJ}\]

S13.3.7a

Add N_2; add H_2; decrease the container volume; heat the mixture.

Q13.3.7b

Suggest four ways in which the concentration of PH_3 could be increased in an equilibrium described by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{P_4}(g) + 6\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 4\,\mathrm{PH_3}(g) \quad \Delta H = 110.5\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4}$$

Q13.3.8

How will an increase in temperature affect each of the following equilibria? How will a decrease in the volume of the reaction vessel affect each?

a. $2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \quad \Delta H = 92\ \mathrm{kJ}$
b. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO}(g) \quad \Delta H = 181\ \mathrm{kJ}$
c. $2\,\mathrm{O_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \quad \Delta H = -285\ \mathrm{kJ}$
d. $\mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \quad \Delta H = -176\ \mathrm{kJ}$

S13.3.8

(a) Δ*T* increase = shift right, Δ*P* increase = shift left; (b) Δ*T* increase = shift right, Δ*P* increase = no effect; (c) Δ*T* increase = shift left, Δ*P* increase = shift left; (d) Δ*T* increase = shift left, Δ*P* increase = shift right.

Q13.3.9

How will an increase in temperature affect each of the following equilibria? How will a decrease in the volume of the reaction vessel affect each?

a. $2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \quad \Delta H = 484\ \mathrm{kJ}$
b. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \quad \Delta H = -92.2\ \mathrm{kJ}$
c. $2\,\mathrm{Br}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Br_2}(g) \quad \Delta H = -224\ \mathrm{kJ}$
d. $\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{I_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{HI}(g) \quad \Delta H = 53\ \mathrm{kJ}$

Q13.3.10

Water gas is a 1:1 mixture of carbon monoxide and hydrogen gas and is called water gas because it is formed from steam and hot carbon in the following reaction:

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(g) + \mathrm{C}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{CO}(g). \tag{5}$$

Methanol, a liquid fuel that could possibly replace gasoline, can be prepared from water gas and hydrogen at high temperature and pressure in the presence of a suitable catalyst.

a. Write the expression for the equilibrium constant (K_c) for the reversible reaction

$$2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{CO}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CH_3OH}(g) \quad \Delta H = -90.2\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{6}$$

b. What will happen to the concentrations of $\mathrm{H_2}$, CO, and $\mathrm{CH_3OH}$ at equilibrium if more $\mathrm{H_2}$ is added?
c. What will happen to the concentrations of $\mathrm{HH_2}$, CO, and $\mathrm{CH_3OH}$ at equilibrium if CO is removed?
d. What will happen to the concentrations of $\mathrm{H_2}$, CO, and $\mathrm{CH_3OH}$ at equilibrium if CH_3OH is added?
e. What will happen to the concentrations of $\mathrm{HH_2}$, CO, and $\mathrm{CH_3OH}$ at equilibrium if the temperature of the system is increased?
f. What will happen to the concentrations of $\mathrm{H_2}$, CO, and $\mathrm{CH_3OH}$ at equilibrium if more catalyst is added?

S13.3.10

a. $K_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{CH_3OH}]}{[\mathrm{H_2}]^2[\mathrm{CO}]}$;
b. [H_2] increases, [CO] decreases, [CH_3OH] increases;
c. [H_2] increases, [CO] decreases, [CH_3OH] decreases;
d. [H_2] increases, [CO] increases, [CH_3OH] increases;
e. [H_2] increases, [CO] increases, [CH_3OH] decreases;
f. no changes.

Q13.3.11

Nitrogen and oxygen react at high temperatures.

a. Write the expression for the equilibrium constant (Kc) for the reversible reaction

$$\mathrm{N_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO}(g) \quad \Delta H = 181\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{7}$$

b. What will happen to the concentrations of N_2, O_2, and NO at equilibrium if more O_2 is added?
c. What will happen to the concentrations of N_2, O_2, and NO at equilibrium if N_2 is removed?
d. What will happen to the concentrations of N_2, O_2, and NO at equilibrium if NO is added?
e. What will happen to the concentrations of N_2, O_2, and NO at equilibrium if the pressure on the system is increased by reducing the volume of the reaction vessel?
f. What will happen to the concentrations of N_2, O_2, and NO at equilibrium if the temperature of the system is increased?
g. What will happen to the concentrations of N_2, O_2, and NO at equilibrium if a catalyst is added?

Q13.3.12

Water gas, a mixture of H_2 and CO, is an important industrial fuel produced by the reaction of steam with red hot coke, essentially pure carbon.

a. Write the expression for the equilibrium constant for the reversible reaction

$$\mathrm{C}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \quad \Delta H = 131.30\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{8}$$

b. What will happen to the concentration of each reactant and product at equilibrium if more C is added?
c. What will happen to the concentration of each reactant and product at equilibrium if H_2O is removed?
d. What will happen to the concentration of each reactant and product at equilibrium if CO is added?
e. What will happen to the concentration of each reactant and product at equilibrium if the temperature of the system is increased?

S13.3.12

(a) $K_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{CO}][\mathrm{H_2}]}{[\mathrm{H_2O}]}$; (b) [$H_2O$] no change, [CO] no change, [H_2] no change; (c) [H_2O] decreases, [CO] decreases, [H_2] decreases; (d) [H_2O] increases, [CO] increases, [H_2] decreases; (f) [H_2O] decreases, [CO] increases, [H_2] increases. In (b), (c), (d), and (e), the mass of carbon will change, but its concentration (activity) will not change.

Q13.3.13

Pure iron metal can be produced by the reduction of iron(III) oxide with hydrogen gas.

a. Write the expression for the equilibrium constant (K_c) for the reversible reaction

$$\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{Fe}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) \quad \Delta H = 98.7\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{9}$$

b. What will happen to the concentration of each reactant and product at equilibrium if more Fe is added?
c. What will happen to the concentration of each reactant and product at equilibrium if H_2O is removed?
d. What will happen to the concentration of each reactant and product at equilibrium if H_2 is added?
e. What will happen to the concentration of each reactant and product at equilibrium if the pressure on the system is increased by reducing the volume of the reaction vessel?
f. What will happen to the concentration of each reactant and product at equilibrium if the temperature of the system is increased?

Q13.3.14

Ammonia is a weak base that reacts with water according to this equation:

\[\ce{NH3}(aq)+\ce{H2O}(l)\rightleftharpoons\ce{NH4+}(aq)+\ce{OH-}(aq)\]

Will any of the following increase the percent of ammonia that is converted to the ammonium ion in water and why?

a. Addition of NaOH
b. Addition of HCl
c. Addition of NH_4Cl

S13.3.14

Only (b)

Q13.3.15

Acetic acid is a weak acid that reacts with water according to this equation:

\[\ce{CH3CO2H}(aq)+\ce{H2O}(aq)\rightleftharpoons\ce{H3O+}(aq)+\ce{CH3CO2-}(aq)\]

Will any of the following increase the percent of acetic acid that reacts and produces $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}$ ion?

a. Addition of HCl
b. Addition of NaOH
c. Addition of $NaCH_3CO_2$

Q13.3.16

Suggest two ways in which the equilibrium concentration of Ag+ can be reduced in a solution of Na^+, Cl^-, Ag^+, and NO_3^-, in contact with solid AgCl.

\(\ce{Na+}(aq)+\ce{Cl-}(aq)+\ce{Ag+}(aq)+\ce{NO3-}(aq)\rightleftharpoons\ce{AgCl}(s)+\ce{Na+}(aq)+\ce{NO3-}(aq)\)

$$\Delta H = -65.9\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

S13.3.16

Add NaCl or some other salt that produces Cl^- to the solution. Cooling the solution forces the equilibrium to the right, precipitating more AgCl(s).

Q13.3.17

How can the pressure of water vapor be increased in the following equilibrium?

\[\ce{H2O}(l)\rightleftharpoons\ce{H2O}(g) \hspace{20px} ΔH=\ce{41\:kJ}\]

Q13.3.18

Additional solid silver sulfate, a slightly soluble solid, is added to a solution of silver ion and sulfate ion at equilibrium with solid silver sulfate.

\[\ce{2Ag+}(aq)+\ce{SO4^2-}(aq)\rightleftharpoons\ce{Ag2SO4}(s)\]

Which of the following will occur?

a. Ag^+ or SO_4^{2-} concentrations will not change.
b. The added silver sulfate will dissolve.

c. Additional silver sulfate will form and precipitate from solution as Ag^+ ions and SO_4^{2-} ions combine.
d. The Ag^+ ion concentration will increase and the SO_4^{2-} ion concentration will decrease.

S13.3.18

(a)

Q13.3.19

The amino acid alanine has two isomers, α-alanine and β-alanine. When equal masses of these two compounds are dissolved in equal amounts of a solvent, the solution of α-alanine freezes at the lowest temperature. Which form, α-alanine or β-alanine, has the larger equilibrium constant for ionization $(HX \rightleftharpoons H^+ + X^-)$?

13.4: Equilibrium Calculations Exercises

Q13.4.1

A reaction is represented by this equation: $A(aq) + 2\,B(aq) \rightleftharpoons 2\,C(aq) \quad K_c = 1 \times 10^3$

a. Write the mathematical expression for the equilibrium constant.
b. Using concentrations ≤1 *M*, make up two sets of concentrations that describe a mixture of A, B, and C at equilibrium.

S13.4.1

$K_c = \dfrac{[C]^2}{[A][B]^2}$. [A] = 0.1 *M*, [B] = 0.1 *M*, [C] = 1 *M*; and [A] = 0.01, [B] = 0.250, [C] = 0.791.

Q13.4.2

A reaction is represented by this equation: $2\,W(aq) \rightleftharpoons X(aq) + 2\,Y(aq) \quad K_c = 5 \times 10^{-4}$

a. Write the mathematical expression for the equilibrium constant.
b. Using concentrations of ≤1 *M*, make up two sets of concentrations that describe a mixture of W, X, and Y at equilibrium.

Q13.4.3

What is the value of the equilibrium constant at 500 °C for the formation of NH_3 according to the following equation?

$$N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g) \tag{10}$$

An equilibrium mixture of $NH_3(g)$, $H_2(g)$, and $N_2(g)$ at 500 °C was found to contain 1.35 *M* H_2, 1.15 *M* N_2, and 4.12 × 10^{-1} *M* NH_3.

S13.4.3

K_c = 6.00 × 10^{-2}

Q13.4.4

Hydrogen is prepared commercially by the reaction of methane and water vapor at elevated temperatures.

$$CH_4(g) + H_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,H_2(g) + CO(g) \tag{11}$$

What is the equilibrium constant for the reaction if a mixture at equilibrium contains gases with the following concentrations: CH_4, 0.126 *M*; H_2O, 0.242 *M*; CO, 0.126 *M*; H_2 1.15 *M*, at a temperature of 760 °C?

A 0.72-mol sample of PCl_5 is put into a 1.00-L vessel and heated. At equilibrium, the vessel contains 0.40 mol of $PCl_3(g)$ and 0.40 mol of $Cl_2(g)$. Calculate the value of the equilibrium constant for the decomposition of PCl_5 to PCl_3 and Cl_2 at this temperature.

S13.4.4

K_c = 0.50

Q13.4.5

At 1 atm and 25 °C, NO_2 with an initial concentration of 1.00 *M* is 3.3 × 10^{-3}% decomposed into NO and O_2. Calculate the value of the equilibrium constant for the reaction.

$$2\,NO_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO(g) + O_2(g) \tag{12}$$

Q13.4.6

Calculate the value of the equilibrium constant K_P for the reaction $2\,NO(g) + Cl_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NOCl(g)$ from these equilibrium pressures: NO, 0.050 atm; Cl_2, 0.30 atm; NOCl, 1.2 atm.

S13.4.6

The equilibrium equation is $K_P = 1.9 \times 10^3$

Q13.4.7

When heated, iodine vapor dissociates according to this equation:

$$I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,I(g) \tag{13}$$

At 1274 K, a sample exhibits a partial pressure of I_2 of 0.1122 atm and a partial pressure due to I atoms of 0.1378 atm. Determine the value of the equilibrium constant, K_P, for the decomposition at 1274 K.

Q13.4.8

A sample of ammonium chloride was heated in a closed container.

$$NH_4Cl(s) \rightleftharpoons NH_3(g) + HCl(g) \tag{14}$$

At equilibrium, the pressure of $NH_3(g)$ was found to be 1.75 atm. What is the value of the equilibrium constant K_P for the decomposition at this temperature?

S13.4.8

$K_P = 3.06$

Q13.4.9

At a temperature of 60 °C, the vapor pressure of water is 0.196 atm. What is the value of the equilibrium constant K_P for the transformation at 60 °C?

$$H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_2O(g) \tag{15}$$

Q13.4.10

Complete the changes in concentrations (or pressure, if requested) for each of the following reactions.

(a)

$$2\,SO_3(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \tag{16}$$
$$\underline{\quad\quad} \qquad \underline{\quad\quad} \qquad +x \tag{17}$$
$$\underline{\quad\quad} \qquad \underline{\quad\quad} \qquad 0.125\ M \tag{18}$$

(b)

$$4\,NH_3(g) + 3\,O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,N_2(g) + 6\,H_2O(g) \tag{19}$$
$$\underline{\quad\quad} \quad 3x \quad \underline{\quad\quad} \quad \underline{\quad\quad} \tag{20}$$
$$\underline{\quad\quad} \quad 0.24\ M \quad \underline{\quad\quad} \quad \underline{\quad\quad} \tag{21}$$

(c) Change in pressure:

$$2\,CH_4(g) \rightleftharpoons C_2H_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \tag{22}$$
$$\underline{\quad\quad} \qquad x \qquad \underline{\quad\quad} \tag{23}$$
$$\underline{\quad\quad} \qquad 25\ \text{torr} \qquad \underline{\quad\quad} \tag{24}$$

(d) Change in pressure:

$$CH_4(g) + H_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons CO(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \tag{25}$$
$$\underline{\quad\quad} \quad x \quad \underline{\quad\quad} \quad \underline{\quad\quad} \tag{26}$$
$$\underline{\quad\quad} \quad 5\ \text{atm} \quad \underline{\quad\quad} \quad \underline{\quad\quad} \tag{27}$$

(e)

$$\ce{NH4Cl(s) <=> NH3(g) + HCl(g)} \tag{28}$$
$$x \quad \_\_\_\_ \tag{29}$$
$$1.03 \times 10^{-4}\ M \quad \_\_\_\_ \tag{30}$$

(f) change in pressure:

$$\ce{Ni(s) + 4 CO(g) <=> Ni(CO)4(g)} \tag{31}$$
$$4x \quad \_\_\_\_ \tag{32}$$
$$0.40\ \text{atm} \quad \_\_\_\_ \tag{33}$$

S13.4.10

a. $-2x$, $2x$, $-0.250\ M$, $0.250\ M$;
b. $4x$, $-2x$, $-6x$, $0.32\ M$, $-0.16\ M$, $-0.48\ M$;
c. $-2x$, $3x$, −50 torr, 75 torr;
d. x, $-x$, $-3x$, 5 atm, −5 atm, −15 atm;
e. x, $1.03 \times 10^{-4}\ M$; (f) x, 0.1 atm.

Q13.4.11

Complete the changes in concentrations (or pressure, if requested) for each of the following reactions.

(a)

$$\ce{2 H2(g) + O2(g) <=> 2 H2O(g)} \tag{34}$$
$$\_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad +2x \tag{35}$$
$$\_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad 1.50\ M \tag{36}$$

(b)

$$\ce{CS2(g) + 4 H2(g) <=> CH4(g) + 2 H2S(g)} \tag{37}$$
$$x \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \tag{38}$$
$$0.020\ M \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \tag{39}$$

(c) Change in pressure:

$$\ce{H2(g) + Cl2(g) <=> 2 HCl(g)} \tag{40}$$
$$x \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \tag{41}$$
$$1.50\ \text{atm} \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \tag{42}$$

(d) Change in pressure:

$$\ce{2 NH3(g) + 2 O2(g) <=> N2O(g) + 3 H2O(g)} \tag{43}$$
$$\_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad x \tag{44}$$
$$\_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad \_\_\_\_ \quad 60.6\ \text{torr} \tag{45}$$

(e)

$$\ce{NH4HS(s) <=> NH3(g) + H2S(g)} \tag{46}$$
$$x \quad \_\_\_\_ \tag{47}$$
$$9.8 \times 10^{-6}\ M \quad \_\_\_\_ \tag{48}$$

(f) Change in pressure:

$$\ce{Fe(s) + 5 CO(g) <=> Fe(CO)4(g)} \tag{49}$$
$$\_\_\_\_ \quad x \tag{50}$$
$$\_\_\_\_ \quad 0.012\ \text{atm} \tag{51}$$

Q13.4.12

Why are there no changes specified for Ni in Exercise, part (f)? What property of Ni does change?

S13.4.12

Activities of pure crystalline solids equal 1 and are constant; however, the mass of Ni does change.

Q13.4.13

Why are there no changes specified for NH_4HS in Exercise, part (e)? What property of NH_4HS does change?

Q13.4.14

Analysis of the gases in a sealed reaction vessel containing NH_3, N_2, and H_2 at equilibrium at 400 °C established the concentration of N_2 to be 1.2 *M* and the concentration of H_2 to be 0.24 *M*.

$$\mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \quad K_c = 0.50 \text{ at } 400\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \tag{52}$$

Calculate the equilibrium molar concentration of NH_3.

S13.4.14

$[NH_3] = 9.1 \times 10^{-2}\ M$

Q13.4.16

Calculate the number of moles of HI that are at equilibrium with 1.25 mol of H_2 and 1.25 mol of I_2 in a 5.00−L flask at 448 °C.

$$\mathrm{H_2} + \mathrm{I_2} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{HI} \quad K_c = 50.2 \text{ at } 448\ ^\circ\mathrm{C}$$

Q13.4.17

What is the pressure of BrCl in an equilibrium mixture of Cl_2, Br_2, and BrCl if the pressure of Cl_2 in the mixture is 0.115 atm and the pressure of Br_2 in the mixture is 0.450 atm?

$$\mathrm{Cl_2}(g) + \mathrm{Br_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{BrCl}(g) \quad K_P = 4.7 \times 10^{-2} \tag{53}$$

S13.4.17

$P_{BrCl} = 4.9 \times 10^{-2}$ atm

Q13.4.18

What is the pressure of CO_2 in a mixture at equilibrium that contains 0.50 atm H_2, 2.0 atm of H_2O, and 1.0 atm of CO at 990 °C?

$$\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2O}(g) + \mathrm{CO}(g) \quad K_P = 1.6 \text{ at } 990\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \tag{54}$$

Q13.4.12

Cobalt metal can be prepared by reducing cobalt(II) oxide with carbon monoxide.

$$\mathrm{CoO}(s) + \mathrm{CO}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Co}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \quad K_c = 4.90 \times 10^2 \text{ at } 550\ ^\circ\mathrm{C}$$

What concentration of CO remains in an equilibrium mixture with $[CO_2] = 0.100\ M$?

S13.4.12

$[CO] = 2.0 \times 10^{-4}\ M$

Q13.4.13

Carbon reacts with water vapor at elevated temperatures.

$$\mathrm{C}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \quad K_c = 0.2 \text{ at } 1000\ ^\circ\mathrm{C}$$

What is the concentration of CO in an equilibrium mixture with $[H_2O] = 0.500\ M$ at 1000 °C?

Q13.4.14

Sodium sulfate 10−hydrate, $\mathrm{Na_2SO_4 \cdot 10\,H_2O}$, dehydrates according to the equation

$$\mathrm{Na_2SO_4 \cdot 10\,H_2O}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Na_2SO_4}(s) + 10\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) \tag{55}$$

with $K_p = 4.08 \times 10^{-25}$ at 25°C. What is the pressure of water vapor at equilibrium with a mixture of $\mathrm{Na_2SO_4 \cdot 10\,H_2O}$ and $NaSO_4$?

S13.4.14

$P_{H_2O} = 3.64 \times 10^{-3}$ atm

Q13.4.15

Calcium chloride 6−hydrate, $CaCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$, dehydrates according to the equation

$$CaCl_2 \cdot 6\,H_2O(s) \rightleftharpoons CaCl_2(s) + 6\,H_2O(g) \quad K_P = 5.09 \times 10^{-44} \text{ at } 25\ ^\circ C$$

What is the pressure of water vapor at equilibrium with a mixture of $CaCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$ and $CaCl_2$?

Q13.4.16

A student solved the following problem and found the equilibrium concentrations to be $[SO_2]$ = 0.590 *M*, $[O_2]$ = 0.0450 *M*, and $[SO_3]$ = 0.260 *M*. How could this student check the work without reworking the problem? The problem was: For the following reaction at 600 °C:

$$2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_3(g) \quad K_c = 4.32$$

What are the equilibrium concentrations of all species in a mixture that was prepared with $[SO_3]$ = 0.500 *M*, $[SO_2]$ = 0 *M*, and $[O_2]$ = 0.350 *M*?

S13.4.16

Calculate *Q* based on the calculated concentrations and see if it is equal to K_c. Because *Q* does equal 4.32, the system must be at equilibrium.

Q13.4.16

A student solved the following problem and found $[N_2O_4]$ = 0.16 *M* at equilibrium. How could this student recognize that the answer was wrong without reworking the problem? The problem was: What is the equilibrium concentration of N_2O_4 in a mixture formed from a sample of NO_2 with a concentration of 0.10 *M*?

$$2\,NO_2(g) \rightleftharpoons N_2O_4(g) \quad K_c = 160 \tag{56}$$

Assume that the change in concentration of N_2O_4 is small enough to be neglected in the following problem.

(a) Calculate the equilibrium concentration of both species in 1.00 L of a solution prepared from 0.129 mol of N_2O_4 with chloroform as the solvent.

$$N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g) \quad K_c = 1.07 \times 10^{-5} \text{ in chloroform}$$

(b) Show that the change is small enough to be neglected.

S13.4.16

(a)

- $[NO_2] = 1.17 \times 10^{-3}\ M$
- $[N_2O_4]$ = 0.128 *M*

(b) Percent error $= \dfrac{5.87 \times 10^{-4}}{0.129} \times 100\% = 0.455\%$. The change in concentration of N_2O_4 is far less than the 5% maximum allowed.

Q13.4.17

Assume that the change in concentration of $COCl_2$ is small enough to be neglected in the following problem.

a. Calculate the equilibrium concentration of all species in an equilibrium mixture that results from the decomposition of $COCl_2$ with an initial concentration of 0.3166 *M*.

$$COCl_2(g) \rightleftharpoons CO(g) + Cl_2(g) \quad K_c = 2.2 \times 10^{-10} \tag{57}$$

b. Show that the change is small enough to be neglected.

Q13.4.18

Assume that the change in pressure of H_2S is small enough to be neglected in the following problem.

(a) Calculate the equilibrium pressures of all species in an equilibrium mixture that results from the decomposition of H_2S with an initial pressure of 0.824 atm.

$2\,H_2S(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,H_2(g) + S_2(g) \quad K_P = 2.2 \times 10^{-6}$

(b) Show that the change is small enough to be neglected.

S13.4.18

(a)

- $[H_2S]$ = 0.810 atm
- $[H_2]$ = 0.014 atm
- $S_2]$ = 0.0072 atm

(b) The 2*x* is dropped from the equilibrium calculation because 0.014 is negligible when subtracted from 0.824. The percent error associated with ignoring 2*x* is $\frac{0.014}{0.824} \times 100\% = 1.7\%$, which is less than allowed by the "5% test." The error is, indeed, negligible.

Q13.4.19

What are all concentrations after a mixture that contains $[H_2O]$ = 1.00 *M* and $[Cl_2O]$ = 1.00 *M* comes to equilibrium at 25 °C?

$$H_2O(g) + Cl_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HOCl(g) \quad K_c = 0.0900 \tag{58}$$

Q13.4.20

What are the concentrations of PCl_5, PCl_3, and Cl_2 in an equilibrium mixture produced by the decomposition of a sample of pure PCl_5 with $[PCl_5]$ = 2.00 *M*?

$$PCl_5(g) \rightleftharpoons PCl_3(g) + Cl_2(g) \quad K_c = 0.0211 \tag{59}$$

S13.4.20

$[PCl_3]$ = 1.80 *M*; $[PC_3]$ = 0.195 *M*; $[PCl_3]$ = 0.195 *M*.

Q13.4.21

Calculate the pressures of all species at equilibrium in a mixture of NOCl, NO, and Cl_2 produced when a sample of NOCl with a pressure of 10.0 atm comes to equilibrium according to this reaction:

$$2\,NOCl(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO(g) + Cl_2(g) \quad K_P = 4.0 \times 10^{-4} \tag{60}$$

Q13.4.22

Calculate the equilibrium concentrations of NO, O_2, and NO_2 in a mixture at 250 °C that results from the reaction of 0.20 *M* NO and 0.10 *M* O_2. (Hint: *K* is large; assume the reaction goes to completion then comes back to equilibrium.)

$$2\,NO(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g) \quad K_c = 2.3 \times 10^5 \text{ at } 250\ ^\circ C \tag{61}$$

S13.4.22

- $[NO_2]$ = 0.19 *M*
- $[NO]$ = 0.0070 *M*
- $[O_2]$ = 0.0035 *M*

Q13.4.23

Calculate the equilibrium concentrations that result when 0.25 *M* O_2 and 1.0 *M* HCl react and come to equilibrium.

$$4\,HCl(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,Cl_2(g) + 2\,H_2O(g) \quad K_c = 3.1 \times 10^{13} \tag{62}$$

Q13.4.24

One of the important reactions in the formation of smog is represented by the equation

$$\mathrm{O_3}(g) + \mathrm{NO}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{NO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \quad K_P = 6.0 \times 10^{34} \tag{63}$$

What is the pressure of O_3 remaining after a mixture of O_3 with a pressure of 1.2×10^{-8} atm and NO with a pressure of 1.2×10^{-8} atm comes to equilibrium? (Hint: K_P is large; assume the reaction goes to completion then comes back to equilibrium.)

S13.4.24

$P_{\mathrm{O_3}} = 4.9 \times 10^{-26}$ atm

Q13.4.24

Calculate the pressures of NO, Cl_2, and NOCl in an equilibrium mixture produced by the reaction of a starting mixture with 4.0 atm NO and 2.0 atm Cl_2. (Hint: K_P is small; assume the reverse reaction goes to completion then comes back to equilibrium.)

$$2\,\mathrm{NO}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NOCl}(g) \quad K_P = 2.5 \times 10^3$$

Q13.4.25

Calculate the number of grams of HI that are at equilibrium with 1.25 mol of H_2 and 63.5 g of iodine at 448 °C.

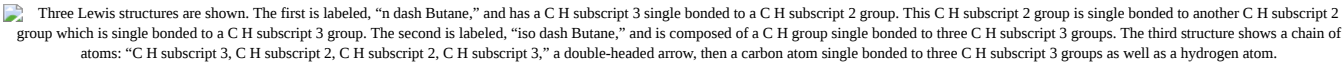
$$\mathrm{H_2} + \mathrm{I_2} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{HI} \quad K_c = 50.2 \text{ at } 448\ ^\circ\mathrm{C}$$

S13.4.25

507 g

Q13.4.26

Butane exists as two isomers, *n*−butane and isobutane.


Three Lewis structures are shown. The first is labeled, “n dash Butane,” and has a C H subscript 3 single bonded to a C H subscript 2 group. This C H subscript 2 group is single bonded to another C H subscript 2 group which is single bonded to a C H subscript 3 group. The second is labeled, “iso dash Butane,” and is composed of a C H group single bonded to three C H subscript 3 groups. The third structure shows a chain of atoms: “C H subscript 3, C H subscript 2, C H subscript 2, C H subscript 3,” a double-headed arrow, then a carbon atom single bonded to three C H subscript 3 groups as well as a hydrogen atom.

K_P = 2.5 at 25 °C

What is the pressure of isobutane in a container of the two isomers at equilibrium with a total pressure of 1.22 atm?

Q13.4.27

What is the minimum mass of $CaCO_3$ required to establish equilibrium at a certain temperature in a 6.50-L container if the equilibrium constant (K_c) is 0.050 for the decomposition reaction of $CaCO_3$ at that temperature?

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$$

S13.4.27

330 g

Q13.4.28

The equilibrium constant (K_c) for this reaction is 1.60 at 990 °C:

$$\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2O}(g) + \mathrm{CO}(g) \tag{64}$$

Calculate the number of moles of each component in the final equilibrium mixture obtained from adding 1.00 mol of H_2, 2.00 mol of CO_2, 0.750 mol of H_2O, and 1.00 mol of CO to a 5.00-L container at 990 °C.

Q13.4.29

At 25 °C and at 1 atm, the partial pressures in an equilibrium mixture of N_2O_4 and NO_2 are $P_{\mathrm{N_2O_4}} = 0.70$ atm and $P_{\mathrm{NO_2}} = 0.30$ atm.

a. Predict how the pressures of NO_2 and N_2O_4 will change if the total pressure increases to 9.0 atm. Will they increase, decrease, or remain the same?
b. Calculate the partial pressures of NO_2 and N_2O_4 when they are at equilibrium at 9.0 atm and 25 °C.

S13.4.29

(a) Both gases must increase in pressure.

(b) $P_{N_2O_4} = 8.0 \text{ atm}$ and $P_{NO_2} = 1.0 \text{ atm}$

Q13.4.30

In a 3.0-L vessel, the following equilibrium partial pressures are measured: N_2, 190 torr; H_2, 317 torr; NH_3, 1.00 × 10^3 torr.

$$N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g) \tag{65}$$

a. How will the partial pressures of H_2, N_2, and NH_3 change if H_2 is removed from the system? Will they increase, decrease, or remain the same?
b. Hydrogen is removed from the vessel until the partial pressure of nitrogen, at equilibrium, is 250 torr. Calculate the partial pressures of the other substances under the new conditions.

Q13.4.31

The equilibrium constant (K_c) for this reaction is 5.0 at a given temperature.

\[\ce{CO}(g)+\ce{H2O}(g) <=> \ce{CO2}(g)+\ce{H2}(g)\)]

a. On analysis, an equilibrium mixture of the substances present at the given temperature was found to contain 0.20 mol of CO, 0.30 mol of water vapor, and 0.90 mol of H_2 in a liter. How many moles of CO_2 were there in the equilibrium mixture?
b. Maintaining the same temperature, additional H_2 was added to the system, and some water vapor was removed by drying. A new equilibrium mixture was thereby established containing 0.40 mol of CO, 0.30 mol of water vapor, and 1.2 mol of H_2 in a liter. How many moles of CO_2 were in the new equilibrium mixture? Compare this with the quantity in part (a), and discuss whether the second value is reasonable. Explain how it is possible for the water vapor concentration to be the same in the two equilibrium solutions even though some vapor was removed before the second equilibrium was established.

S13.4.31

(a) 0.33 mol.

(b) $[CO]^2 = 0.50\ M$ Added H_2 forms some water to compensate for the removal of water vapor and as a result of a shift to the left after H_2 is added.

Q13.4.32a

Antimony pentachloride decomposes according to this equation:

$$SbCl_5(g) \rightleftharpoons SbCl_3(g) + Cl_2(g)$$

An equilibrium mixture in a 5.00-L flask at 448 °C contains 3.85 g of $SbCl_5$, 9.14 g of $SbCl_3$, and 2.84 g of Cl_2. How many grams of each will be found if the mixture is transferred into a 2.00-L flask at the same temperature?

Q13.4.32b

Consider the reaction between H_2 and O_2 at 1000 K

\[\ce{2H2}(g)+\ce{O2}(g)⇌\ce{2H2O}(g) \hspace{20px} K_P=\dfrac{(P_{\ce{H2O}})^2}{(P_{\ce{O2}})
(P_{\ce{H2}})^3}=1.33×10^{20}\]

If 0.500 atm of H_2 and 0.500 atm of O_2 are allowed to come to equilibrium at this temperature, what are the partial pressures of the components?

S13.4.32b

$P_{H_2} = 8.64 \times 10^{-11} \text{ atm}$

\(P_{\ce{O2}}=0.250\:\ce{atm}\)

\(P_{\ce{H2O}}=0.500\:\ce{atm}\)

Q13.4.33

An equilibrium is established according to the following equation

$$\mathrm{Hg_2^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{NO_3} - (aq) + 3\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{Hg^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{HNO_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \quad K_c = 4.6 \tag{66}$$

What will happen in a solution that is 0.20 *M* each in $\mathrm{Hg_2^{2+}}$, $\mathrm{NO_3}-$, $\mathrm{H^+}$, $\mathrm{Hg^{2+}}$, and $\mathrm{HNO_2}$?

a. $\mathrm{Hg_2^{2+}}$ will be oxidized and $\mathrm{NO_3}-$ reduced.
b. $\mathrm{Hg_2^{2+}}$ will be reduced and $\mathrm{NO_3}-$ oxidized.
c. $\mathrm{Hg^{2+}}$ will be oxidized and $\mathrm{HNO_2}$ reduced.
d. $\mathrm{Hg^{2+}}$ will be reduced and $\mathrm{HNO_2}$ oxidized.
e. There will be no change because all reactants and products have an activity of 1.

Q13.4.34

Consider the equilibrium

$$4\,\mathrm{NO_2}(g) + 6\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) \rightleftharpoons 4\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) + 7\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \tag{67}$$

a. What is the expression for the equilibrium constant (K_c) of the reaction?
b. How must the concentration of $\mathrm{NH_3}$ change to reach equilibrium if the reaction quotient is less than the equilibrium constant?
c. If the reaction were at equilibrium, how would a decrease in pressure (from an increase in the volume of the reaction vessel) affect the pressure of $\mathrm{NO_2}$?
d. If the change in the pressure of $\mathrm{NO_2}$ is 28 torr as a mixture of the four gases reaches equilibrium, how much will the pressure of $\mathrm{O_2}$ change?

S13.4.34

(a) $K_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{NH_3}]^4[\mathrm{O_2}]^7}{[\mathrm{NO_2}]^4[\mathrm{H_2O}]^6}$. (b) [$\mathrm{NH_3}$] must increase for Q_c to reach K_c. (c) That decrease in pressure would decrease [$\mathrm{NO_2}$]. (d) $P_{\mathrm{O_2}} = 49$ torr

Q13.4.35

The binding of oxygen by hemoglobin (Hb), giving oxyhemoglobin ($\mathrm{HbO_2}$), is partially regulated by the concentration of $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$ and dissolved $\mathrm{CO_2}$ in the blood. Although the equilibrium is complicated, it can be summarized as

$$\mathrm{HbO_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CO_2} - \mathrm{Hb} - \mathrm{H^+} + \mathrm{O_2}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

1. (a) Write the equilibrium constant expression for this reaction.
2. (b) Explain why the production of lactic acid and $\mathrm{CO_2}$ in a muscle during exertion stimulates release of $\mathrm{O_2}$ from the oxyhemoglobin in the blood passing through the muscle.

Q13.4.36

The hydrolysis of the sugar sucrose to the sugars glucose and fructose follows a first-order rate equation for the disappearance of sucrose.

$$\mathrm{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6}(aq) + \mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6}(aq)$$

Rate = k[$\mathrm{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}}$]

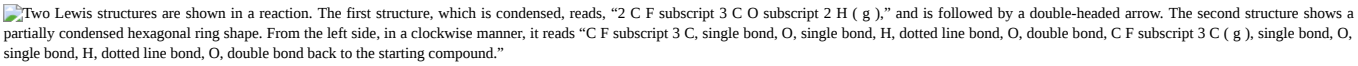
In neutral solution, $k = 2.1 \times 10^{-11}$/s at 27 °C. (As indicated by the rate constant, this is a very slow reaction. In the human body, the rate of this reaction is sped up by a type of catalyst called an enzyme.) (Note: That is not a mistake in the equation—the products of the reaction, glucose and fructose, have the same molecular formulas, $\mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6}$, but differ in the arrangement of the atoms in their molecules). The equilibrium constant for the reaction is 1.36×10^5 at 27 °C. What are the concentrations of glucose, fructose, and sucrose after a 0.150 *M* aqueous solution of sucrose has reached equilibrium? Remember that the activity of a solvent (the effective concentration) is 1.

S13.4.36

[fructose] = 0.15 *M*

Q13.4.37

The density of trifluoroacetic acid vapor was determined at 118.1 °C and 468.5 torr, and found to be 2.784 g/L. Calculate K_c for the association of the acid.



Liquid N_2O_3 is dark blue at low temperatures, but the color fades and becomes greenish at higher temperatures as the compound decomposes to NO and NO_2. At 25 °C, a value of K_P = 1.91 has been established for this decomposition. If 0.236 moles of N_2O_3 are placed in a 1.52-L vessel at 25 °C, calculate the equilibrium partial pressures of $N_2O_3(g)$, $NO_2(g)$, and NO(g).

S13.4.37

$P_{N_2O_3} = 1.90 \text{ atm}$ and $P_{NO} = P_{NO_2} = 1.90 \text{ atm}$

Q13.4.38

A 1.00-L vessel at 400 °C contains the following equilibrium concentrations: N_2, 1.00 M; H_2, 0.50 M; and NH_3, 0.25 M. How many moles of hydrogen must be removed from the vessel to increase the concentration of nitrogen to 1.1 M?

Q13.4.39

A 0.010 M solution of the weak acid HA has an osmotic pressure (see chapter on solutions and colloids) of 0.293 atm at 25 °C. A 0.010 M solution of the weak acid HB has an osmotic pressure of 0.345 atm under the same conditions.

(a) Which acid has the larger equilibrium constant for ionization

$$\text{HA } [\text{HA}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \text{A}^-(aq) + \text{H}^+(aq)] \text{ or HB } [\text{HB}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \text{H}^+(aq) + \text{B}^-(aq)] \text{ ?}$$

(b) What are the equilibrium constants for the ionization of these acids?

(Hint: Remember that each solution contains three dissolved species: the weak acid (HA or HB), the conjugate base (A^- or B^-), and the hydrogen ion (H^+). Remember that osmotic pressure (like all colligative properties) is related to the total number of solute particles. Specifically for osmotic pressure, those concentrations are described by molarities.)

S13.4.39

(a) HB ionizes to a greater degree and has the larger K_c.

(b) K_c(HA) = 5×10^{-4}

K_c(HB) = 3×10^{-3}

This page titled 1.9.6 Fundamental Equilibrium Concepts (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Acid-Base Equilibria

A general chemistry Libretexts Textbook remixed and remastered from OpenStax's textbook:

General Chemistry

This chapter will illustrate the chemistry of acid-base reactions and equilibria, and provide you with tools for quantifying the concentrations of acids and bases in solutions.

Article directory

2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
2.2: pH and pOH
2.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
2.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions
2.5: Polyprotic Acids
2.6: Buffers
2.7: Acid-Base Titrations
2.8: Acid-Base Equilibria (Exercises)
2.9.0: Equilibria of Other Reaction Classes
- 2.9.1 Precipitation and Dissolution
- 2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases
- 2.9.3 Coupled Equilibria
- 2.9.4 Equilibria of Other Reaction Classes (Exercises)

Contributors

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 2: Acid-Base Equilibria is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Identify acids, bases, and conjugate acid-base pairs according to the Brønsted-Lowry definition
- Write equations for acid and base ionization reactions
- Use the ion-product constant for water to calculate hydronium and hydroxide ion concentrations
- Describe the acid-base behavior of amphiprotic substances

Acids and bases have been known for a long time. When Robert Boyle characterized them in 1680, he noted that acids dissolve many substances, change the color of certain natural dyes (for example, they change litmus from blue to red), and lose these characteristic properties after coming into contact with alkalis (bases). In the eighteenth century, it was recognized that acids have a sour taste, react with limestone to liberate a gaseous substance (now known to be CO_2), and interact with alkalis to form neutral substances. In 1815, Humphry Davy contributed greatly to the development of the modern acid-base concept by demonstrating that hydrogen is the essential constituent of acids. Around that same time, Joseph Louis Gay-Lussac concluded that acids are substances that can neutralize bases and that these two classes of substances can be defined only in terms of each other. The significance of hydrogen was reemphasized in 1884 when Svante Arrhenius defined an acid as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydrogen cations (now recognized to be hydronium ions) and a base as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydroxide anions.

In an earlier chapter on chemical reactions, we defined acids and bases as Arrhenius did: We identified an acid as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydronium ions (H_3O^+) and a base as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydroxide ions (OH^-). This definition is not wrong; it is simply limited.

Later, we extended the definition of an acid or a base using the more general definition proposed in 1923 by the Danish chemist Johannes Brønsted and the English chemist Thomas Lowry. Their definition centers on the proton, H^+. A proton is what remains when a normal hydrogen atom, ${}^1_1H$, loses an electron. A compound that donates a proton to another compound is called a Brønsted-Lowry acid, and a compound that accepts a proton is called a Brønsted-Lowry base. An acid-base reaction is the transfer of a proton from a proton donor (acid) to a proton acceptor (base). In a subsequent chapter of this text we will introduce the most general model of acid-base behavior introduced by the American chemist G. N. Lewis.

Acids may be compounds such as HCl or H_2SO_4, organic acids like acetic acid (CH_3COOH) or ascorbic acid (vitamin C), or H_2O. Anions (such as HSO_4^-, $H_2PO_4^-$, HS^-, and HCO_3^-) and cations (such as H_3O^+, NH_4^+, and $[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$) may also act as acids. Bases fall into the same three categories. Bases may be neutral molecules (such as H_2O, NH_3, and CH_3NH_2), anions (such as OH^-, HS^-, HCO_3^-, CO_3^{2-}, F^-, and PO_4^{3-}), or cations (such as $[Al(H_2O)_5OH]^{2+}$). The most familiar bases are ionic compounds such as $NaOH$ and $Ca(OH)_2$, which contain the hydroxide ion, OH^-. The hydroxide ion in these compounds accepts a proton from acids to form water:

$$H^+ + OH^- \rightarrow H_2O \tag{2.1.1}$$

We call the product that remains after an acid donates a proton the conjugate base of the acid. This species is a base because it can accept a proton (to re-form the acid):

$$\text{acid} \rightleftharpoons \text{proton} + \text{conjugate base} \tag{2.1.2}$$

$$HF \rightleftharpoons H^+ + F^- \tag{2.1.3}$$

$$H_2SO_4 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HSO_4^- \tag{2.1.4}$$

$$H_2O \rightleftharpoons H^+ + OH^- \tag{2.1.5}$$

$$HSO_4^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + SO_4^{2-} \tag{2.1.6}$$

$$NH_4^+ \rightleftharpoons H^+ + NH_3 \tag{2.1.7}$$

We call the product that results when a base accepts a proton the base's conjugate acid. This species is an acid because it can give up a proton (and thus re-form the base):

$$\text{base} + \text{proton} \rightleftharpoons \text{conjugate acid} \tag{2.1.8}$$

$$OH^- + H^+ \rightleftharpoons H_2O \tag{2.1.9}$$

$$H_2O + H^+ \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ \tag{2.1.10}$$

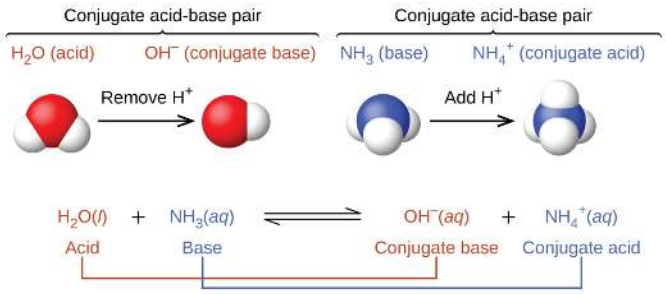
$$NH_3 + H^+ \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+ \tag{2.1.11}$$

$$S^{2-} + H^+ \rightleftharpoons HS^- \tag{2.1.12}$$

$$CO_3^{2-} + H^+ \rightleftharpoons HCO_3^- \tag{2.1.13}$$

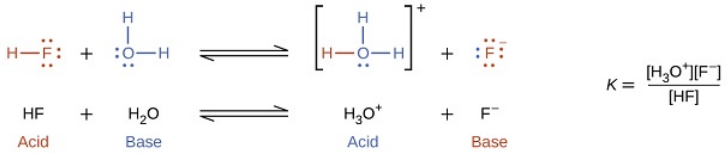
$$F^- + H^+ \rightleftharpoons HF \tag{2.1.14}$$

In these two sets of equations, the behaviors of acids as proton donors and bases as proton acceptors are represented in isolation. In reality, all acid-base reactions involve the transfer of protons between acids and bases. For example, consider the acid-base reaction that takes place when ammonia is dissolved in water. A water molecule (functioning as an acid) transfers a proton to an ammonia molecule (functioning as a base), yielding the conjugate base of water, OH^-, and the conjugate acid of ammonia, NH_4^+:



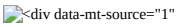
This figure has three parts in two rows. In the first row, two diagrams of acid-base pairs are shown. On the left, a space filling model of H subscript 2 O is shown with a red O atom at the center and two smaller white H atoms attached in a bent shape. Above this model is the label “H subscript 2 O (acid)” in purple. An arrow points right, which is labeled “Remove H superscript plus.” To the right is another space filling model with a single red O atom to which a single smaller white H atom is attached. The label in purple above this model reads, “O H superscript negative (conjugate base).” Above both of these red and white models is an upward pointing bracket that is labeled “Conjugate acid-base pair.” To the right is a space filling model with a central blue N atom to which three smaller white H atoms are attached in a triangular pyramid arrangement. A label in green above reads “N H subscript 3 (base).” An arrow labeled “Add H superscript plus” points right. To the right of the arrow is another space filling model with a blue central N atom and four smaller white H atoms in a tetrahedral arrangement. The green label above reads “N H subscript 3 superscript plus (conjugate acid).” Above both of these blue and white models is an upward pointing bracket that is labeled “Conjugate acid-base pair.” The second row of the figure shows the chemical reaction, H subscript 2 O (l) is shown in purple, and is labeled below in purple as “acid,” plus N H subscript 3 (a q) in green, labeled below in green as “base,” followed by a double sided arrow arrow and O H superscript negative (a q) in purple, labeled in purple as “conjugate base,” plus N H subscript 4 superscript plus (a q)” in green, which is labeled in green as “conjugate acid.” The acid on the left side of the equation is connected to the conjugate base on the right with a purple line. Similarly, the base on the left is connected to the conjugate acid on the right side.

The reaction between a Brønsted-Lowry acid and water is called acid ionization. For example, when hydrogen fluoride dissolves in water and ionizes, protons are transferred from hydrogen fluoride molecules to water molecules, yielding hydronium ions and fluoride ions:

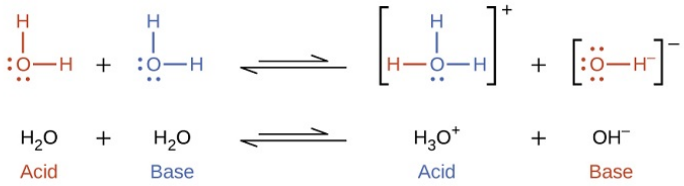


This figure has two rows. In both rows, a chemical reaction is shown. In the first, structural formulas are provided. In this model, in purple, an H atom is connected to an F atom with a single bond. The F atom has pairs of electron dots at the top, right, and bottom. This is followed by a plus sign, which is followed in green by an O atom which has H atoms singly bonded above and to the right. The O atom has pairs of electron dots on its left and lower sides. A double arrow follows. To the right, in brackets is a structure with a central O atom in green, with green H atoms singly bonded above and to the right. A pair of green electron dots is on the lower side of the O atom. To the left of the green O atom, a purple H atom is singly bonded. This is followed by a plus sign and an F atom in purple with pairs of electron dots above, right, below, and to the left. This atom also has a superscript negative sign. The reaction is written in symbolic form below. H F is labeled in purple below as “Acid subscript 1.” This is followed by plus H subscript 2 O, which is labeled in green below as “Base subscript 2.” A double sided arrow follows. To the right is H subscript 3 O superscript plus, which is labeled in green as below in as “Acid subscript 2.” This is followed by plus and F surrounded by 4 pairs of dots and superscript negative. The label below in purple reads, “Base subscript 1.” To the right of the reactions is the formula, K subscript a equals left bracket H subscript 3 O superscript plus right bracket left bracket F superscript negative right bracket all over left bracket H F right bracket.

When we add a base to water, a base ionization reaction occurs in which protons are transferred from water molecules to base molecules. For example, adding pyridine to water yields hydroxide ions and pyridinium ions:



Notice that both these ionization reactions are represented as equilibrium processes. The relative extent to which these acid and base ionization reactions proceed is an important topic treated in a later section of this chapter. In the preceding paragraphs we saw that water can function as either an acid or a base, depending on the nature of the solute dissolved in it. In fact, in pure water or in any aqueous solution, water acts both as an acid and a base. A very small fraction of water molecules donate protons to other water molecules to form hydronium ions and hydroxide ions:



This figure has two rows. In both rows, a chemical reaction is shown. In the first, structural formulas are provided. In this model, in purple, O atom which has H atoms singly bonded above and to the right. The O atom has pairs of electron dots on its left and lower sides. This is followed by a plus sign, which is followed in green by an O atom which has H atoms singly bonded above and to the right. The O atom has pairs of electron dots on its left and lower sides. A double arrow follows. To the right, in brackets is a structure with a central O atom in green, with green H atoms singly bonded above and to the right. A pair of green electron dots is on the lower side of the O atom. To the left of the green O atom, a purple H atom is singly bonded. Outside the brackets to the right is a superscript plus. This is followed by a plus sign and an O atom in purple with pairs of electron dots above, left, and below. An H atom is singly bonded to the right. This atom has a superscript negative sign. The reaction is written in symbolic form below. H subscript 2 O is labeled in purple below as “Acid subscript 1.” This is followed by plus H subscript 2 O, which is labeled in green below as “Base subscript 2.” A double sided arrow follows. To the right is H subscript 3 O superscript plus, which is labeled in green as below in as “Acid subscript 2.” This is followed by plus and O with pairs of dots above, below, and to the left with a singly bonded H on the right with a superscript negative. The label below in purple reads, “ Base subscript 1.”

This type of reaction, in which a substance ionizes when one molecule of the substance reacts with another molecule of the same substance, is referred to as **autoionization**. Pure water undergoes autoionization to a very slight extent. Only about two out of every 10^9 molecules in a sample of pure water are ionized at 25 °C. The equilibrium constant for the ionization of water is called the ion-product constant for water (K_w):

$$\mathrm{H_2O_{(\mathit{l})} + H_2O_{(\mathit{l})} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+_{(\mathit{aq})} + OH^-_{(\mathit{aq})} \quad K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-]} \tag{2.1.15}$$

The slight ionization of pure water is reflected in the small value of the equilibrium constant; at 25 °C, Kw has a value of 1.0×10^{-14}. The process is endothermic, and so the extent of ionization and the resulting concentrations of hydronium ion and hydroxide ion increase with temperature. For example, at 100 °C, the value for K_w is approximately 5.1×10^{-13}, roughly 50-times larger than the value at 25 °C.

Example 2.1.1: Ion Concentrations in Pure Water

What are the hydronium ion concentration and the hydroxide ion concentration in pure water at 25 °C?

Solution

The autoionization of water yields the same number of hydronium and hydroxide ions. Therefore, in pure water, $[H_3O^+] = [OH^-]$. At 25 °C:

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-] = [H_3O^+]^2 = [OH^-]^2 = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

So:

$$[H_3O^+] = [OH^-] = \sqrt{1.0 \times 10^{-14}} = 1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$$

The hydronium ion concentration and the hydroxide ion concentration are the same, and we find that both equal $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$.

Exercise 2.1.1

The ion product of water at 80 °C is 2.4×10^{-13}. What are the concentrations of hydronium and hydroxide ions in pure water at 80 °C?

Answer

$[H_3O^+] = [OH^-] = 4.9 \times 10^{-7}\ M$

It is important to realize that the autoionization equilibrium for water is established in all aqueous solutions. Adding an acid or base to water will not change the position of the equilibrium. Example 14.12 demonstrates the quantitative aspects of this relation between hydronium and hydroxide ion concentrations.

Example 2.1.2: The Inverse Proportionality of $[H_3O^+]$ and $[OH^-]$

The Inverse Proportionality of $[H_3O^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ A solution of carbon dioxide in water has a hydronium ion concentration of $2.0 \times 10^{-6}\ M$. What is the concentration of hydroxide ion at 25 °C?

Solution

We know the value of the ion-product constant for water at 25 °C:

$$2\,H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+_{(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)}$$

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

Thus, we can calculate the missing equilibrium concentration.

Rearrangement of the K_w expression yields that $[OH^-]$ is directly proportional to the inverse of $[H_3O^+]$:

$$[OH^-] = \frac{K_w}{[H_3O^+]} = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{2.0 \times 10^{-6}} = 5.0 \times 10^{-9}$$

The hydroxide ion concentration in water is reduced to $5.0 \times 10^{-9}\ M$ as the hydrogen ion concentration increases to $2.0 \times 10^{-6}\ M$. This is expected from Le Chatelier's principle; the autoionization reaction shifts to the left to reduce the stress of the increased hydronium ion concentration and the $[OH^-]$ is reduced relative to that in pure water.

A check of these concentrations confirms that our arithmetic is correct:

$$\begin{aligned} K_w &= [H_3O^+][OH^-] \\ &= (2.0 \times 10^{-6})(5.0 \times 10^{-9}) \\ &= 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 2.1.2

What is the hydronium ion concentration in an aqueous solution with a hydroxide ion concentration of 0.001 M at 25 °C?

Answer

$$[H_3O^+] = 1 \times 10^{-11} M$$

Amphiprotic Species

Like water, many molecules and ions may either gain or lose a proton under the appropriate conditions. Such species are said to be amphiprotic. Another term used to describe such species is amphoteric, which is a more general term for a species that may act either as an acid or a base by any definition (not just the Brønsted-Lowry one). Consider for example the bicarbonate ion, which may either donate or accept a proton as shown here:

$$HCO^-_{3(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons CO^{2-}_{3(aq)} + H_3O^+_{(aq)} \tag{2.1.16}$$

$$HCO^-_{3(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_{3(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{2.1.17}$$

Example 2.1.3: The Acid-Base Behavior of an Amphoteric Substance

Write separate equations representing the reaction of HSO_3^-

a. as an acid with OH^-
b. as a base with HI

Solution

a. $HSO_3^-(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons SO_3^{2-}(aq) + H_2O_{(l)}$
b. $HSO_3^-(aq) + HI(aq) \rightleftharpoons H_2SO_3(aq) + I^-(aq)$

Exercise 2.1.3

Write separate equations representing the reaction of $H_2PO_4^-$

a. as a base with HBr
b. as an acid with OH^-

Answer a

$$H_2PO_4^-(aq) + HBr(aq) \rightleftharpoons H_3PO_4(aq) + Br^-(aq)$$

Answer b

$$H_2PO_4^-(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O_{(l)}$$

Summary

A compound that can donate a proton (a hydrogen ion) to another compound is called a Brønsted-Lowry acid. The compound that accepts the proton is called a Brønsted-Lowry base. The species remaining after a Brønsted-Lowry acid has lost a proton is the conjugate base of the acid. The species formed when a Brønsted-Lowry base gains a proton is the conjugate acid of the base. Thus, an acid-base reaction occurs when a proton is transferred from an acid to a base, with formation of the conjugate base of the reactant acid and formation of the conjugate acid of the reactant base. Amphiprotic species can act as both proton donors and proton acceptors. Water is the most important amphiprotic species. It can form both the hydronium ion, H_3O^+, and the hydroxide ion, OH^- when it undergoes autoionization:

$$2\,H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

The ion product of water, K_w is the equilibrium constant for the autoionization reaction:

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \text{ at } 25^\circ C$$

Key Equations

- $$K_{\text{w}} = [\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{OH}^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \text{ (at 25 °C)}$$

Glossary

acid ionization
reaction involving the transfer of a proton from an acid to water, yielding hydronium ions and the conjugate base of the acid

amphiprotic
species that may either gain or lose a proton in a reaction

amphoteric
species that can act as either an acid or a base

autoionization
reaction between identical species yielding ionic products; for water, this reaction involves transfer of protons to yield hydronium and hydroxide ions

base ionization
reaction involving the transfer of a proton from water to a base, yielding hydroxide ions and the conjugate acid of the base

Brønsted-Lowry acid
proton donor

Brønsted-Lowry base
proton acceptor

conjugate acid
substance formed when a base gains a proton

conjugate base
substance formed when an acid loses a proton

ion-product constant for water (K_{w})
equilibrium constant for the autoionization of water

This page titled 2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.2: pH and pOH

Learning Objectives

- Explain the characterization of aqueous solutions as acidic, basic, or neutral
- Express hydronium and hydroxide ion concentrations on the pH and pOH scales
- Perform calculations relating pH and pOH

As discussed earlier, hydronium and hydroxide ions are present both in pure water and in all aqueous solutions, and their concentrations are inversely proportional as determined by the ion product of water (K_w). The concentrations of these ions in a solution are often critical determinants of the solution's properties and the chemical behaviors of its other solutes, and specific vocabulary has been developed to describe these concentrations in relative terms. A solution is neutral if it contains equal concentrations of hydronium and hydroxide ions; acidic if it contains a greater concentration of hydronium ions than hydroxide ions; and basic if it contains a lesser concentration of hydronium ions than hydroxide ions.

A common means of expressing quantities, the values of which may span many orders of magnitude, is to use a logarithmic scale. One such scale that is very popular for chemical concentrations and equilibrium constants is based on the p-function, defined as shown where "X" is the quantity of interest and "log" is the base-10 logarithm:

$$\mathrm{pX} = -\log \mathrm{X} \tag{2.2.1}$$

The pH of a solution is therefore defined as shown here, where $[H_3O^+]$ is the molar concentration of hydronium ion in the solution:

$$\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] \tag{2.2.2}$$

Rearranging this equation to isolate the hydronium ion molarity yields the equivalent expression:

$$[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 10^{-\mathrm{pH}} \tag{2.2.3}$$

Likewise, the hydroxide ion molarity may be expressed as a p-function, or pOH:

$$\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}] \tag{2.2.4}$$

or

$$[\mathrm{OH^-}] = 10^{-\mathrm{pOH}} \tag{2.2.5}$$

Finally, the relation between these two ion concentration expressed as p-functions is easily derived from the K_w expression:

$$K_\mathrm{w} = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}] \tag{2.2.6}$$

$$-\log K_\mathrm{w} = -\log([\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}]) = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] + -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}] \tag{2.2.7}$$

$$\mathrm{p}K_\mathrm{w} = \mathrm{pH} + \mathrm{pOH} \tag{2.2.8}$$

At 25 °C, the value of K_w is 1.0×10^{-14}, and so:

$$14.00 = \mathrm{pH} + \mathrm{pOH} \tag{2.2.9}$$

The hydronium ion molarity in pure water (or any neutral solution) is $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ at 25 °C. The pH and pOH of a neutral solution at this temperature are therefore:

$$\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = -\log(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 7.00 \tag{2.2.10}$$

$$\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}] = -\log(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 7.00 \tag{2.2.11}$$

And so, at this temperature, acidic solutions are those with hydronium ion molarities greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ and hydroxide ion molarities less than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ (corresponding to pH values less than 7.00 and pOH values greater than 7.00). Basic solutions are those with hydronium ion molarities less than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ and hydroxide ion molarities greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ (corresponding to pH values greater than 7.00 and pOH values less than 7.00).

When $pH = 7$ Solutions are not Neutral

Since the autoionization constant K_w is temperature dependent, these correlations between pH values and the acidic/neutral/basic adjectives will be different at temperatures other than 25 °C. For example, the hydronium molarity of pure water at 80 °C is 4.9 × 10^{-7} *M*, which corresponds to pH and pOH values of:

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] \\ &= -\log(4.9 \times 10^{-7}) \\ &= 6.31 \\ pOH &= -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}] \\ &= -\log(4.9 \times 10^{-7}) \\ &= 6.31 \end{aligned}$$

At this temperature, then, neutral solutions exhibit pH = pOH = 6.31, acidic solutions exhibit pH less than 6.31 and pOH greater than 6.31, whereas basic solutions exhibit pH greater than 6.31 and pOH less than 6.31. This distinction can be important when studying certain processes that occur at nonstandard temperatures, such as enzyme reactions in warm-blooded organisms. Unless otherwise noted, references to pH values are presumed to be those at standard temperature (25 °C) (Table 2.2.1).

Table 2.2.1: Summary of Relations for Acidic, Basic and Neutral Solutions

Classification	Relative Ion Concentrations	pH at 25 °C
acidic	$[H_3O^+] > [OH^-]$	pH < 7
neutral	$[H_3O^+] = [OH^-]$	pH = 7
basic	$[H_3O^+] < [OH^-]$	pH > 7

Figure 2.2.1 shows the relationships between $[H_3O^+]$, $[OH^-]$, pH, and pOH, and gives values for these properties at standard temperatures for some common substances.

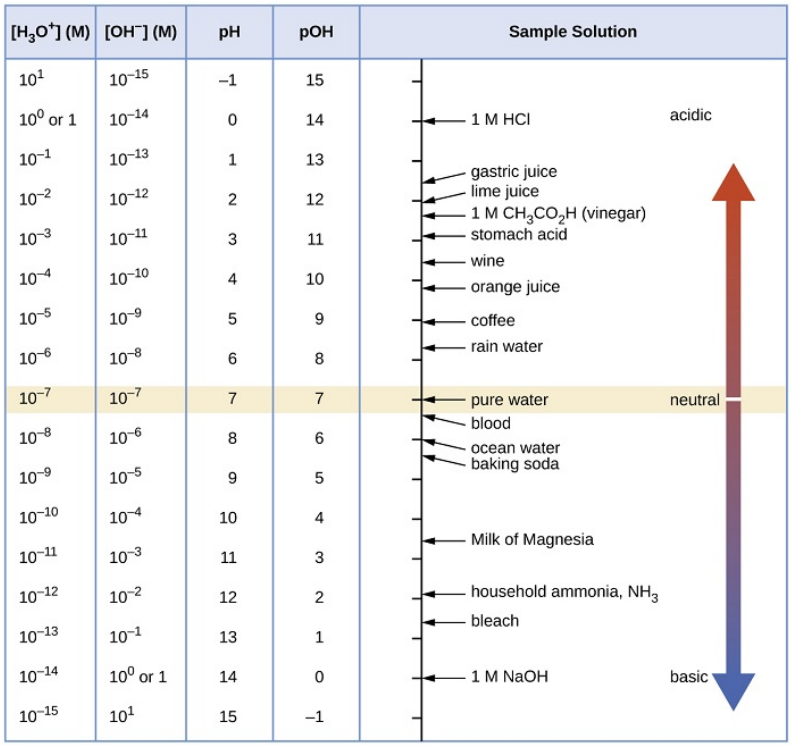


Figure 2.2.1: The pH and pOH scales represent concentrations of $[H_3O^+]$ and OH^-, respectively. The pH and pOH values of some common substances at standard temperature (25 °C) are shown in this chart.

A table is provided with 5 columns. The first column is labeled “left bracket H subscript 3 O superscript plus right bracket (M).” Powers of ten are listed in the column beginning at 10 superscript 1, including 10 superscript 0 or 1, 10 superscript negative 1, decreasing by single powers of 10 to 10 superscript negative 15. The second column is labeled “left bracket O H superscript negative right bracket (M).” Powers of ten are listed in the column beginning at 10 superscript negative 15, increasing by single powers of 10 to including 10 superscript 0 or 1, and 10 superscript 1. The third column is labeled “p H.” Values listed in this column are integers beginning at negative 1, increasing by ones up to 14. The fourth column is labeled “p O H.” Values in this column are integers beginning at 15, decreasing by ones up to negative 1. The fifth column is labeled “Sample Solution.” A vertical line at the left of the column has tick marks corresponding to each p H level in the table. Substances are listed next to this line segment with line segments connecting them to the line to show approximate p H and p O H values. 1 M H C l is listed at a p H of 0. Gastric juices are listed at a p H of about 1.5. Lime juice is listed at a p H of about 2, followed by 1 M C H subscript 3 C O subscript 2 H, followed by stomach acid at a p H value of nearly 3. Wine is listed around 3.5. Coffee is listed just past 5. Pure water is listed at a p H of 7. Pure blood is just beyond 7. Milk of Magnesia is listed just past a p H of 10.5. Household ammonia is listed just before a pH of 12. 1 M N a O H is listed at a p H of 0. To the right of this labeled arrow is an arrow that points up and down through the height of the column. A beige strip passes through the table and to this double headed arrow at p H 7. To the left of the double headed arrow in this beige strip is the label “neutral.” A narrow beige strip runs through the arrow. Just above and below this region, the arrow is purple. It gradually turns to a bright red as it extends upward. At the top of the arrow, near the head of the arrow is the label “acidic.” Similarly, the lower region changes color from purple to blue moving to the bottom of the column. The head at this end of the arrow is labeled “basic.”

✔ Example 2.2.1: Calculation of pH from $[H_3O^+]$

What is the pH of stomach acid, a solution of HCl with a hydronium ion concentration of $1.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$?

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= -\log[H_3O^+] \\ &= -\log(1.2 \times 10^{-3}) \\ &= -(-2.92) \\ &= 2.92 \end{aligned}$$

? Exercise 2.2.1

Water exposed to air contains carbonic acid, H_2CO_3, due to the reaction between carbon dioxide and water:

$$CO_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3(aq)$$

Air-saturated water has a hydronium ion concentration caused by the dissolved CO_2 of $2.0 \times 10^{-6}\ M$, about 20-times larger than that of pure water. Calculate the pH of the solution at 25 °C.

Answer

5.70

✓ Example 2.2.2: Calculation of Hydronium Ion Concentration from pH

Calculate the hydronium ion concentration of blood, the pH of which is 7.3 (slightly alkaline).

Solution

$$pH = -\log[H_3O^+] = 7.3$$

$$\log[H_3O^+] = -7.3$$

$$[H_3O^+] = 10^{-7.3}$$

or

$$[H_3O^+] = \text{antilog of} -7.3$$

$$[H_3O^+] = 5 \times 10^{-8}\ M$$

(On a calculator take the antilog, or the "inverse" log, of −7.3, or calculate $10^{-7.3}$.)

? Exercise 2.2.2

Calculate the hydronium ion concentration of a solution with a pH of −1.07.

Answer

12 M

Environmental Science

Normal rainwater has a pH between 5 and 6 due to the presence of dissolved CO_2 which forms carbonic acid:

$$H_2O(l) + CO_2(g) \longrightarrow H_2CO_3(aq) \tag{2.2.12}$$

$$H_2CO_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq) \tag{2.2.13}$$

Acid rain is rainwater that has a pH of less than 5, due to a variety of nonmetal oxides, including CO_2, SO_2, SO_3, NO, and NO_2 being dissolved in the water and reacting with it to form not only carbonic acid, but sulfuric acid and nitric acid. The formation and subsequent ionization of sulfuric acid are shown here:

$$H_2O(l) + SO_3(g) \longrightarrow H_2SO_4(aq) \tag{2.2.14}$$

$$H_2SO_4(aq) \longrightarrow H^+(aq) + HSO_4^-(aq) \tag{2.2.15}$$

Carbon dioxide is naturally present in the atmosphere because we and most other organisms produce it as a waste product of metabolism. Carbon dioxide is also formed when fires release carbon stored in vegetation or when we burn wood or fossil fuels. Sulfur trioxide in the atmosphere is naturally produced by volcanic activity, but it also stems from burning fossil fuels, which have traces of sulfur, and from the process of "roasting" ores of metal sulfides in metal-refining processes. Oxides of nitrogen are

formed in internal combustion engines where the high temperatures make it possible for the nitrogen and oxygen in air to chemically combine.

Acid rain is a particular problem in industrial areas where the products of combustion and smelting are released into the air without being stripped of sulfur and nitrogen oxides. In North America and Europe until the 1980s, it was responsible for the destruction of forests and freshwater lakes, when the acidity of the rain actually killed trees, damaged soil, and made lakes uninhabitable for all but the most acid-tolerant species. Acid rain also corrodes statuary and building facades that are made of marble and limestone (Figure 2.2.2). Regulations limiting the amount of sulfur and nitrogen oxides that can be released into the atmosphere by industry and automobiles have reduced the severity of acid damage to both natural and manmade environments in North America and Europe. It is now a growing problem in industrial areas of China and India.



Figure 2.2.2: (a) Acid rain makes trees more susceptible to drought and insect infestation, and depletes nutrients in the soil. (b) It also is corrodes statues that are carved from marble or limestone. (credit a: modification of work by Chris M Morris; credit b: modification of work by "Eden, Janine and Jim"/Flickr)

Two photos are shown. Photograph a on the left shows the upper portion of trees against a bright blue sky. The tops of several trees at the center of the photograph have bare branches and appear to be dead. Image b shows a statue of a man that appears to from the revolutionary war era in either marble or limestone.

Example 2.2.3: Calculation of pOH

What are the pOH and the pH of a 0.0125-M solution of potassium hydroxide, KOH?

Solution

Potassium hydroxide is a highly soluble ionic compound and completely dissociates when dissolved in dilute solution, yielding $[OH^-]$ = 0.0125 M:

$$\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH}^-] = -\log 0.0125$$

$$= -(-1.903) = 1.903$$

The pH can be found from the pOH:

$$\mathrm{pH} + \mathrm{pOH} = 14.00$$

$$\mathrm{pH} = 14.00 - \mathrm{pOH} = 14.00 - 1.903 = 12.10$$

Exercise 2.2.3

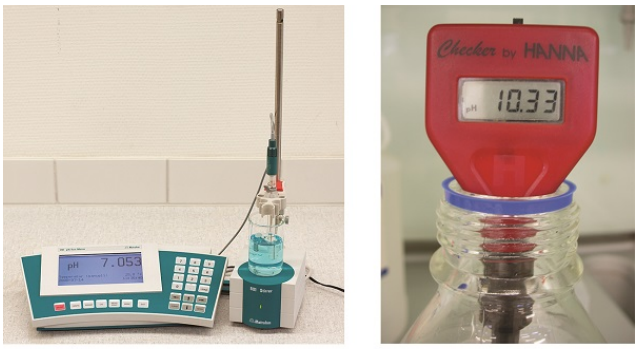
The hydronium ion concentration of vinegar is approximately $4 \times 10^{-3}\ M$. What are the corresponding values of pOH and pH?

Answer

pOH = 11.6,

pH = 14.00 - pOH = 2.4

The acidity of a solution is typically assessed experimentally by measurement of its pH. The pOH of a solution is not usually measured, as it is easily calculated from an experimentally determined pH value. The pH of a solution can be directly measured using a pH meter (Figure 2.2.3).



(a) (b)

Figure 2.2.3: (a) A research-grade pH meter used in a laboratory can have a resolution of 0.001 pH units, an accuracy of ± 0.002 pH units, and may cost in excess of $1000. (b) A portable pH meter has lower resolution (0.01 pH units), lower accuracy (± 0.2 pH units), and a far lower price tag. (credit b: modification of work by Jacopo Werther)

This figure contains two images. The first, image a, is of an analytical digital p H meter on a laboratory counter. The second, image b, is of a portable hand held digital p H meter.

The pH of a solution may also be visually estimated using colored indicators (Figure 2.2.3).



(a) (b)

Figure 2.2.4: (a) A universal indicator assumes a different color in solutions of different pH values. Thus, it can be added to a solution to determine the pH of the solution. The eight vials each contain a universal indicator and 0.1-M solutions of progressively weaker acids: HCl (pH = l), CH_3CO_2H (pH = 3), and NH_4Cl (pH = 5), deionized water, a neutral substance (pH = 7); and 0.1-M solutions of the progressively stronger bases: KCl (pH = 7), aniline, $C_6H_5NH_2$ (pH = 9), NH_3 (pH = 11), and NaOH (pH = 13). (b) pH paper contains a mixture of indicators that give different colors in solutions of differing pH values. (credit: modification of work by Sahar Atwa).

This figure contains two images. The first shows a variety of colors of solutions in labeled beakers. A red solution in a beaker is labeled “0.10 M H C l.” An orange solution is labeled “0.10 M C H subscript 3 C O O H.” A yellow-orange solution is labeled “0.1 M N H subscript 4 C l.” A yellow solution is labeled “deionized water.” A second solution beaker is labeled “0.10 M K C l.” A green solution is labeled “0.10 M aniline.” A blue solution is labeled “0.10 M N H subscript 4 C l (a q).” A final beaker containing a dark blue solution is labeled “0.10 M N a O H.” Image b shows pHydrion paper that is used for measuring pH in the range of p H from 1 to 12. The color scale for identifying p H based on color is shown along with several of the test strips used to evaluate p H.

Summary

The concentration of hydronium ion in a solution of an acid in water is greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ at 25 °C. The concentration of hydroxide ion in a solution of a base in water is greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ at 25 °C. The concentration of H_3O^+ in a solution can be expressed as the pH of the solution; $\mathrm{pH} = -\log \mathrm{H_3O^+}$. The concentration of OH^- can be expressed as the pOH of the solution: $\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}]$. In pure water, pH = 7.00 and pOH = 7.00

Key Equations

- $\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$
- $\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}]$
- $[H_3O^+] = 10^{-\mathrm{pH}}$
- $[OH^-] = 10^{-\mathrm{pOH}}$
- pH + pOH = pK_w = 14.00 at 25 °C

Glossary

acidic

describes a solution in which $[H_3O^+] > [OH^-]$

basic

describes a solution in which $[H_3O^+] < [OH^-]$

neutral

describes a solution in which $[H_3O^+] = [OH^-]$

pH

logarithmic measure of the concentration of hydronium ions in a solution

pOH

logarithmic measure of the concentration of hydroxide ions in a solution

---

This page titled 2.2: pH and pOH is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.2: pH and pOH** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Assess the relative strengths of acids and bases according to their ionization constants
- Rationalize trends in acid–base strength in relation to molecular structure
- Carry out equilibrium calculations for weak acid–base systems

We can rank the strengths of acids by the extent to which they ionize in aqueous solution. The reaction of an acid with water is given by the general expression:

$$\mathrm{HA}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{A^-}(aq)$$

Water is the base that reacts with the acid HA, $\mathrm{A^-}$ is the conjugate base of the acid HA, and the hydronium ion is the conjugate acid of water. A strong acid yields 100% (or very nearly so) of $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$ and $\mathrm{A^-}$ when the acid ionizes in water; Figure 2.3.1 lists several strong acids. A weak acid gives small amounts of $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$ and $\mathrm{A^-}$.

Figure 2.3.1: Some of the common strong acids and bases are listed here.

Six Strong Acids		Six Strong Bases	
$\mathrm{HClO_4}$	perchloric acid	LiOH	lithium hydroxide
HCl	hydrochloric acid	NaOH	sodium hydroxide
HBr	hydrobromic acid	KOH	potassium hydroxide
HI	hydroiodic acid	$\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}$	calcium hydroxide
$\mathrm{HNO_3}$	nitric acid	$\mathrm{Sr(OH)_2}$	strontium hydroxide
$\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$	sulfuric acid	$\mathrm{Ba(OH)_2}$	barium hydroxide

The relative strengths of acids may be determined by measuring their equilibrium constants in aqueous solutions. In solutions of the same concentration, stronger acids ionize to a greater extent, and so yield higher concentrations of hydronium ions than do weaker acids. The equilibrium constant for an acid is called the acid-ionization constant, K_a. For the reaction of an acid HA:

$$\mathrm{HA}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{A^-}(aq)$$

we write the equation for the ionization constant as:

$$K_\mathrm{a} = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]}$$

where the concentrations are those at equilibrium. As noted in the section on equilibrium constants, although water is a reactant in the reaction, it is the solvent as well, so its activity has a value of 1, which does not change the value of K_a.

Note

It is a common error to claim that the molar concentration of the solvent is in some way involved in the equilibrium law. This error is a result of a misunderstanding of solution thermodynamics. For example, it is often claimed that $K_a = K_{eq}[H_2O]$ for aqueous solutions. This equation is incorrect because it is an erroneous interpretation of the correct equation $K_a = K_{eq}(a_{H_2O})$. Because $a_{H_2O} = 1$ for a dilute solution, $K_a = K_{eq}(1)$, or $K_a = K_{eq}$.

The larger the of an acid, the larger the concentration of and relative to the concentration of the nonionized acid, . Thus a stronger acid has a larger ionization constant than does a weaker acid. The ionization constants increase as the strengths of the acids increase.

The following data on acid-ionization constants indicate the order of acid strength: $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H} < \mathrm{HNO_2} < \mathrm{HSO_4^-}$

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}(aq) \qquad K_\mathrm{a} = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

$$\mathrm{HNO_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NO_2^-}(aq) \qquad K_\mathrm{a} = 4.6 \times 10^{-4}$$

$$\mathrm{HSO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}(aq) \qquad K_\mathrm{a} = 1.2 \times 10^{-2}$$

Another measure of the strength of an acid is its *percent ionization*. The percent ionization of a weak acid is the ratio of the concentration of the ionized acid to the initial acid concentration, times 100:

$$\%\ \text{ionization} = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]_\mathrm{eq}}{[\mathrm{HA}]_0} \times 100\% \tag{2.3.1}$$

Because the ratio includes the initial concentration, the percent ionization for a solution of a given weak acid varies depending on the original concentration of the acid, and actually decreases with increasing acid concentration.

Example 2.3.1: Calculation of Percent Ionization from pH

Calculate the percent ionization of a 0.125-*M* solution of nitrous acid (a weak acid), with a pH of 2.09.

Solution

The percent ionization for an acid is:

$$\frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]_\mathrm{eq}}{[\mathrm{HNO_2}]_0} \times 100$$

The chemical equation for the dissociation of the nitrous acid is:

$$\mathrm{HNO_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{NO_2^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq).$$

Since $10^{-pH} = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$, we find that $10^{-2.09} = 8.1 \times 10^{-3}\ M$, so that percent ionization (Equation 2.3.1) is:

$$\frac{8.1 \times 10^{-3}}{0.125} \times 100 = 6.5\%$$

Remember, the logarithm 2.09 indicates a hydronium ion concentration with only two significant figures.

Exercise 2.3.1

Calculate the percent ionization of a 0.10 *M* solution of acetic acid with a pH of 2.89.

Answer

1.3% ionized

We can rank the strengths of bases by their tendency to form hydroxide ions in aqueous solution. The reaction of a Brønsted-Lowry base with water is given by:

$$\mathrm{B}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{HB^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

Water is the acid that reacts with the base, $\mathrm{HB^+}$ is the conjugate acid of the base B, and the hydroxide ion is the conjugate base of water. A strong base yields 100% (or very nearly so) of $\mathrm{OH^-}$ and $\mathrm{HB^+}$ when it reacts with water; Figure $2.3.1$ lists several strong bases. A weak base yields a small proportion of hydroxide ions. Soluble ionic hydroxides such as NaOH are considered strong bases because they dissociate completely when dissolved in water.

As we did with acids, we can measure the relative strengths of bases by measuring their base-ionization constant (K_b) in aqueous solutions. In solutions of the same concentration, stronger bases ionize to a greater extent, and so yield higher hydroxide ion concentrations than do weaker bases. A stronger base has a larger ionization constant than does a weaker base. For the reaction of a base, B:

$$\mathrm{B}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{HB^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq),$$

we write the equation for the ionization constant as:

$$K_\text{b} = \frac{[\text{HB}^+][\text{OH}^-]}{[\text{B}]}$$

where the concentrations are those at equilibrium. Again, we do not see water in the equation because water is the solvent and has an activity of 1. The chemical reactions and ionization constants of the three bases shown are:

$$\text{NO}_2^-(aq) + \text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \text{HNO}_2(aq) + \text{OH}^-(aq) \qquad K_\text{b} = 2.17 \times 10^{-11}$$

$$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2^-(aq) + \text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}(aq) + \text{OH}^-(aq) \qquad K_\text{b} = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

$$\text{NH}_3(aq) + \text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \text{NH}_4^+(aq) + \text{OH}^-(aq) \qquad K_\text{b} = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

A table of ionization constants of weak bases appears in Table E2. As with acids, percent ionization can be measured for basic solutions, but will vary depending on the base ionization constant and the initial concentration of the solution.

Consider the ionization reactions for a conjugate acid-base pair, $\text{HA} - \text{A}^-$:

$$\text{HA}(aq) + \text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_3\text{O}^+(aq) + \text{A}^-(aq)$$

with $K_\text{a} = \dfrac{[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{A}^-]}{[\text{HA}]}$.

$$\text{A}^-(aq) + \text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \text{OH}^-(aq) + \text{HA}(aq)$$

with $K_\text{b} = \dfrac{[\text{HA}][\text{OH}]}{[\text{A}^-]}$.

Adding these two chemical equations yields the equation for the autoionization for water:

$$\cancel{\text{HA}(aq)} + \text{H}_2\text{O}(l) + \cancel{\text{A}^-(aq)} + \text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_3\text{O}^+(aq) + \cancel{\text{A}^-(aq)} + \text{OH}^-(aq) + \cancel{\text{HA}(aq)}$$

$$2\,\text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_3\text{O}^+(aq) + \text{OH}^-(aq)$$

As shown in the previous chapter on equilibrium, the K expression for a chemical equation derived from adding two or more other equations is the mathematical product of the other equations' K expressions. Multiplying the mass-action expressions together and cancelling common terms, we see that:

$$K_\text{a} \times K_\text{b} = \frac{[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{A}^-]}{[\text{HA}]} \times \frac{[\text{HA}][\text{OH}^-]}{[\text{A}^-]} = [\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{OH}^-] = K_\text{w}$$

For example, the acid ionization constant of acetic acid (CH_3COOH) is 1.8×10^{-5}, and the base ionization constant of its conjugate base, acetate ion (CH_3COO^-), is 5.6×10^{-10}. The product of these two constants is indeed equal to K_w:

$$K_\text{a} \times K_\text{b} = (1.8 \times 10^{-5}) \times (5.6 \times 10^{-10}) = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} = K_\text{w}$$

The extent to which an acid, HA, donates protons to water molecules depends on the strength of the conjugate base, A^-, of the acid. If A^- is a strong base, any protons that are donated to water molecules are recaptured by A^-. Thus there is relatively little A^- and H_3O^+ in solution, and the acid, HA, is weak. If A^- is a weak base, water binds the protons more strongly, and the solution contains primarily A^- and H_3O^+—the acid is strong. Strong acids form very weak conjugate bases, and weak acids form stronger conjugate bases (Figure 2.3.2).

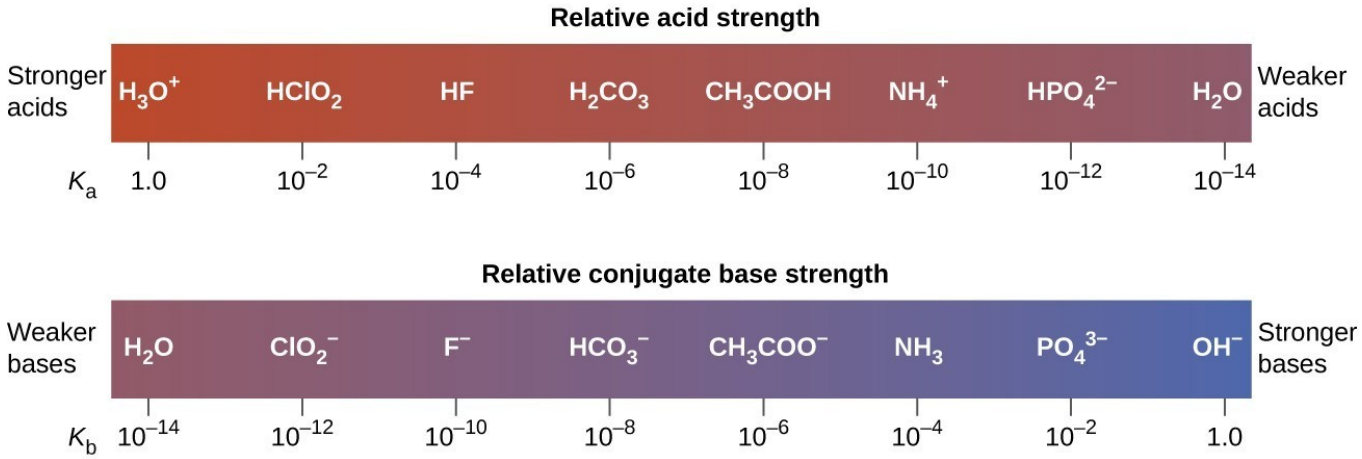


Figure 2.3.2: This diagram shows the relative strengths of conjugate acid-base pairs, as indicated by their ionization constants in aqueous solution.

Figure 2.3.3 lists a series of acids and bases in order of the decreasing strengths of the acids and the corresponding increasing strengths of the bases. The acid and base in a given row are conjugate to each other.

The first six acids in Figure 2.3.3 are the most common strong acids. These acids are completely dissociated in aqueous solution. The conjugate bases of these acids are weaker bases than water. When one of these acids dissolves in water, their protons are completely transferred to water, the stronger base.

Those acids that lie between the hydronium ion and water in Figure 2.3.3 form conjugate bases that can compete with water for possession of a proton. Both hydronium ions and nonionized acid molecules are present in equilibrium in a solution of one of these acids. Compounds that are weaker acids than water (those found below water in the column of acids) in Figure 2.3.3 exhibit no observable acidic behavior when dissolved in water. Their conjugate bases are stronger than the hydroxide ion, and if any conjugate base were formed, it would react with water to re-form the acid.

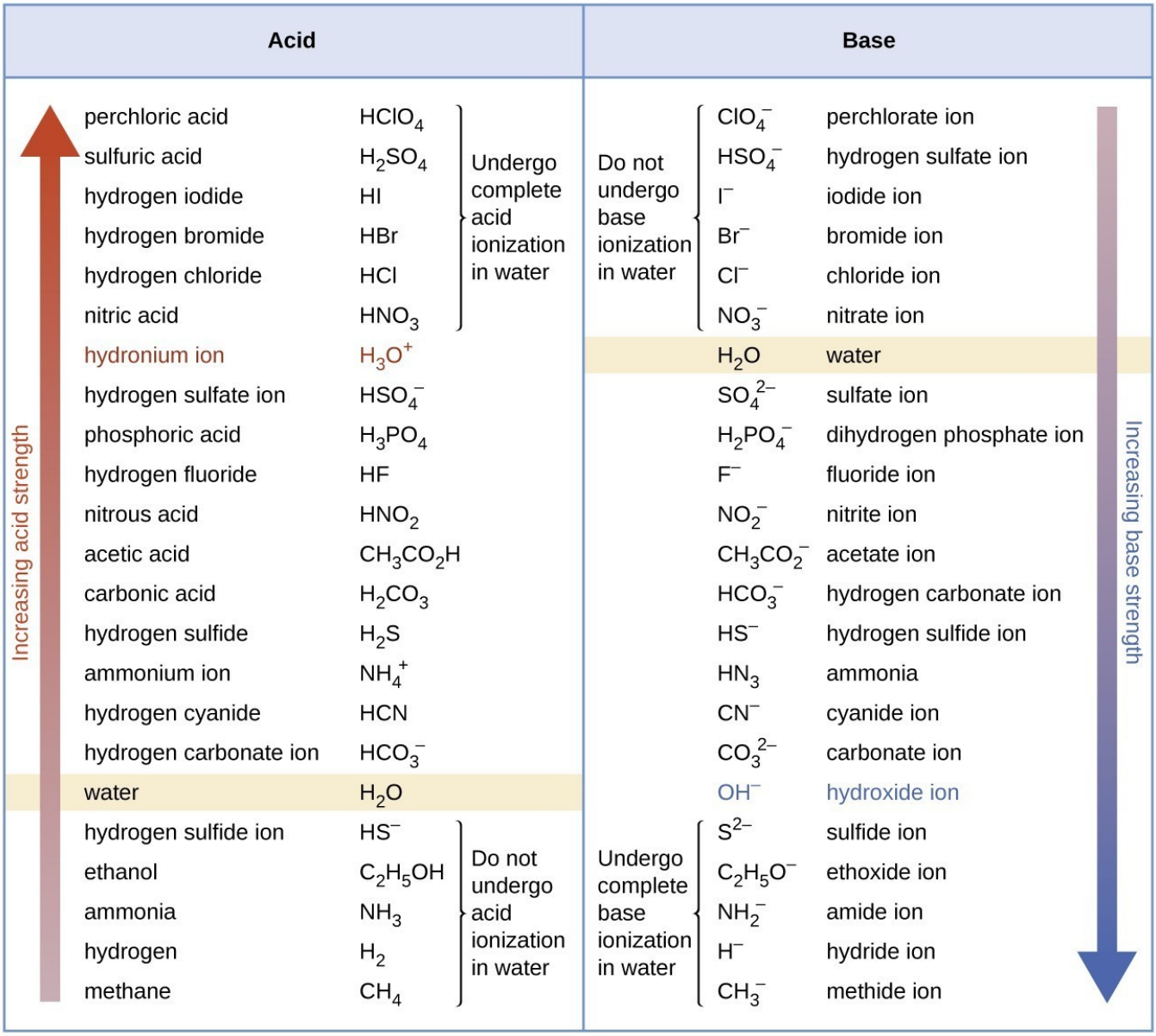


Figure 2.3.3: The chart shows the relative strengths of conjugate acid-base pairs.

The extent to which a base forms hydroxide ion in aqueous solution depends on the strength of the base relative to that of the hydroxide ion, as shown in the last column in Figure 2.3.3. A strong base, such as one of those lying below hydroxide ion, accepts protons from water to yield 100% of the conjugate acid and hydroxide ion. Those bases lying between water and hydroxide ion accept protons from water, but a mixture of the hydroxide ion and the base results. Bases that are weaker than water (those that lie above water in the column of bases) show no observable basic behavior in aqueous solution.

Example 2.3.2: The Product $K_a \times K_b = K_w$

Use the K_b for the nitrite ion, NO_2^-, to calculate the K_a for its conjugate acid.

Solution

K_b for NO_2^- is given in this section as 2.17×10^{-11}. The conjugate acid of NO_2^- is HNO_2; K_a for HNO_2 can be calculated using the relationship:

$$K_a \times K_b = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} = K_w$$

Solving for K_a, we get:

$$K_a = \frac{K_w}{K_b}$$
$$= \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{2.17 \times 10^{-11}}$$
$$= 4.6 \times 10^{-4}$$

This answer can be verified by finding the K_a for HNO_2 in Table E1

? Exercise 2.3.2

We can determine the relative acid strengths of NH_4^+ and HCN by comparing their ionization constants. The ionization constant of HCN is given in Table E1 as 4.9×10^{-10}. The ionization constant of NH_4^+ is not listed, but the ionization constant of its conjugate base, NH_3, is listed as 1.8×10^{-5}. Determine the ionization constant of NH_4^+, and decide which is the stronger acid, HCN or NH_4^+.

Answer

NH_4^+ is the slightly stronger acid (K_a for NH_4^+ = 5.6×10^{-10}).

The Ionization of Weak Acids and Weak Bases

Many acids and bases are weak; that is, they do not ionize fully in aqueous solution. A solution of a weak acid in water is a mixture of the nonionized acid, hydronium ion, and the conjugate base of the acid, with the nonionized acid present in the greatest concentration. Thus, a weak acid increases the hydronium ion concentration in an aqueous solution (but not as much as the same amount of a strong acid).

Acetic acid (CH_3CO_2H) is a weak acid. When we add acetic acid to water, it ionizes to a small extent according to the equation:

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq)$$

giving an equilibrium mixture with most of the acid present in the nonionized (molecular) form. This equilibrium, like other equilibria, is dynamic; acetic acid molecules donate hydrogen ions to water molecules and form hydronium ions and acetate ions at the same rate that hydronium ions donate hydrogen ions to acetate ions to reform acetic acid molecules and water molecules. We can tell by measuring the pH of an aqueous solution of known concentration that only a fraction of the weak acid is ionized at any moment (Figure 2.3.4). The remaining weak acid is present in the nonionized form.

For acetic acid, at equilibrium:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][CH_3CO_2^-]}{[CH_3CO_2H]} = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$



Figure 2.3.4: pH paper indicates that a 0.l-M solution of HCl (beaker on left) has a pH of 1. The acid is fully ionized and $[H_3O^+]$ = 0.1 M. A 0.1-M solution of CH_3CO_2H (beaker on right) has a pH of 3 ($[H_3O^+]$ = 0.001 M) because the weak acid CH_3CO_2H is only partially ionized. In this solution, $[H_3O^+] < [CH_3CO_2H]$. (credit: modification of work by Sahar Atwa)

This image shows two bottles containing clear colorless solutions. Each bottle contains a single p H indicator strip. The strip in the bottle on the left is red, and a similar red strip is placed on a filter paper circle in front of the bottle on surface on which the bottles are resting. Similarly, the second bottle on the right contains and orange strip and an orange strip is placed in front of it on a filter paper circle. Between the two bottles is a pack of p Hydrion papers with a p H color scale on its cover.

Table 2.3.1: Ionization Constants of Some Weak Acids

Ionization Reaction	K_a at 25 °C
$HSO_4^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + SO_4^{2-}$	1.2×10^{-2}
$HF + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + F^-$	3.5×10^{-4}
$HNO_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + NO_2^-$	4.6×10^{-4}
$HNCO + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + NCO^-$	2×10^{-4}
$HCO_2H + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + HCO_2^-$	1.8×10^{-4}
$CH_3CO_2H + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + CH_3CO_2^-$	1.8×10^{-5}
$HClO + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + ClO^-$	2.9×10^{-8}
$HBrO + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + BrO^-$	2.8×10^{-9}
$HCN + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + CN^-$	4.9×10^{-10}

Table 2.3.1 gives the ionization constants for several weak acids; additional ionization constants can be found in Table E1.

At equilibrium, a solution of a weak base in water is a mixture of the nonionized base, the conjugate acid of the weak base, and hydroxide ion with the nonionized base present in the greatest concentration. Thus, a weak base increases the hydroxide ion concentration in an aqueous solution (but not as much as the same amount of a strong base).

For example, a solution of the weak base trimethylamine, $(CH_3)_3N$, in water reacts according to the equation:

$$(CH_3)_3N(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

This gives an equilibrium mixture with most of the base present as the nonionized amine. This equilibrium is analogous to that described for weak acids.

We can confirm by measuring the pH of an aqueous solution of a weak base of known concentration that only a fraction of the base reacts with water (Figure 14.4.5). The remaining weak base is present as the unreacted form. The equilibrium constant for the ionization of a weak base, K_b, is called the **ionization constant** of the weak base, and is equal to the reaction quotient when the reaction is at equilibrium. For trimethylamine, at equilibrium:

$$K_b = \frac{[(CH_3)_3NH^+][OH^-]}{[(CH_3)_3N]}$$



Figure 2.3.5: pH paper indicates that a 0.1-M solution of NH_3 (left) is weakly basic. The solution has a pOH of 3 ($[OH^-]$ = 0.001 M) because the weak base NH_3 only partially reacts with water. A 0.1-M solution of NaOH (right) has a pOH of 1 because NaOH is a strong base (credit: modification of work by Sahar Atwa).

The ionization constants of several weak bases are given in Table 2.3.2 and Table E2.

Table 2.3.2: Ionization Constants of Some Weak Bases

Ionization Reaction	K_b at 25 °C
$(CH_3)_2NH + H_2O \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_2NH_2^+ + OH^-$	5.9×10^{-4}
$CH_3NH_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons CH_3NH_3^+ + OH^-$	4.4×10^{-4}
$(CH_3)_3N + H_2O \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+ + OH^-$	6.3×10^{-5}
$NH_3 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+ + OH^-$	1.8×10^{-5}
$C_6H_5NH_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons C_6N_5NH_3^+ + OH^-$	4.3×10^{-10}

Example 2.3.3: Determination of K_a from Equilibrium Concentrations

Acetic acid is the principal ingredient in vinegar; that's why it tastes sour. At equilibrium, a solution contains $[CH_3CO_2H]$ = 0.0787 *M* and $[H_3O^+] = [CH_3CO_2^-] = 0.00118$ *M*. What is the value of K_a for acetic acid?



Vinegar is a solution of acetic acid, a weak acid. (credit: modification of work by “HomeSpot HQ”/Flickr)

Solution

We are asked to calculate an equilibrium constant from equilibrium concentrations. At equilibrium, the value of the equilibrium constant is equal to the reaction quotient for the reaction:

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq)$$

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][CH_3CO_2^-]}{[CH_3CO_2H]} = \frac{(0.00118)(0.00118)}{0.0787} = 1.77 \times 10^{-5}$$

Exercise 2.3.3

What is the equilibrium constant for the ionization of the HSO_4^- ion, the weak acid used in some household cleansers:

$$HSO_4^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq)$$

In one mixture of $NaHSO_4$ and Na_2SO_4 at equilibrium, $[H_3O^+]$ = 0.027 *M*; $[HSO_4^-] = 0.29\ M$; and $[SO_4^{2-}] = 0.13\ M$.

Answer

K_a for $HSO_4^- = 1.2 \times \times 10^{-2}$

Example 2.3.4: Determination of K_b from Equilibrium Concentrations

Caffeine, $C_8H_{10}N_4O_2$ is a weak base. What is the value of K_b for caffeine if a solution at equilibrium has $[C_8H_{10}N_4O_2]$ = 0.050 *M*, $[C_8H_{10}N_4O_2H^+]$ = 5.0 × 10^{-3} *M*, and $[OH^-]$ = 2.5 × 10^{-3} *M*?

Solution

At equilibrium, the value of the equilibrium constant is equal to the reaction quotient for the reaction:

$$C_8H_{10}N_4O_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons C_8H_{10}N_4O_2H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

so

$$K_b = \frac{[C_8H_{10}N_4O_2H^+][OH^-]}{[C_8H_{10}N_4O_2]} = \frac{(5.0 \times 10^{-3})(2.5 \times 10^{-3})}{0.050} = 2.5 \times 10^{-4}$$

Exercise 2.3.4

What is the equilibrium constant for the ionization of the HPO_4^{2-} ion, a weak base:

$$HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_2PO_4^-(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

In a solution containing a mixture of NaH_2PO_4 and Na_2HPO_4 at equilibrium with:

- $[OH^-] = 1.3 \times 10^{-6} M$
- $[H_2PO_4^-]$=0 · 042 M and
- $[HPO_4^{2-}]$=0 · 341 M.

Answer

K_b for $HPO_4^{2-} = 1.6 \times 10^{-7}$

Example 2.3.5: Determination of K_a or K_b from pH

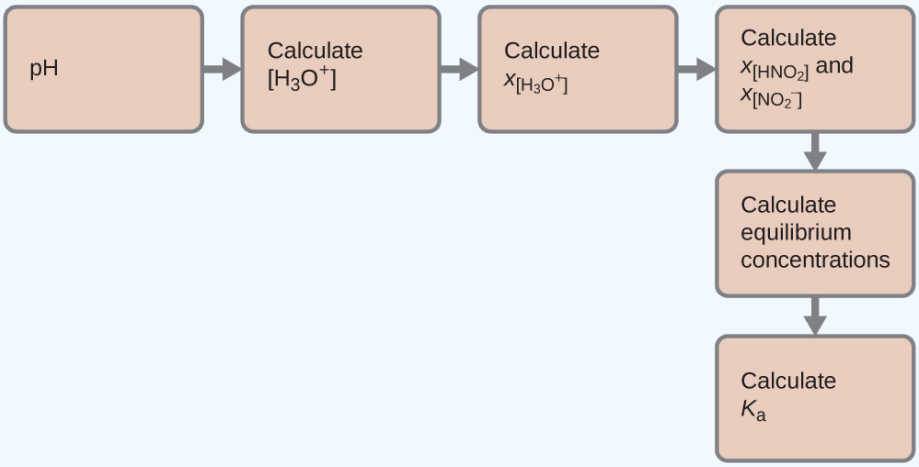
The pH of a 0.0516-*M* solution of nitrous acid, HNO_2, is 2.34. What is its K_a?

$$HNO_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + NO_2^-(aq)$$

Solution

We determine an equilibrium constant starting with the initial concentrations of HNO_2, H_3O^+, and NO_2^- as well as one of the final concentrations, the concentration of hydronium ion at equilibrium. (Remember that pH is simply another way to express the concentration of hydronium ion.)

We can solve this problem with the following steps in which *x* is a change in concentration of a species in the reaction:



We can summarize the various concentrations and changes as shown here. Because water is the solvent, it has a fixed activity equal to 1. Any small amount of water produced or used up during the reaction will not change water's role as the solvent, so the value of its activity remains equal to 1 throughout the reaction.

	HNO_2 + H_2O ⇌ H_3O^+ + NO_2^-			
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.0516		~0	0
Change (*M*)	−*x*	+	*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	$[HNO_2]_i + (-x) =$ 0.0516 + (−*x*)		$[H_3O]^+ + x[NO_2]^-$ + *x* ~0 + *x*	0.0046

To get the various values in the ICE (Initial, Change, Equilibrium) table, we first calculate $[H_3O^+]$, the equilibrium concentration of H_3O^+, from the pH:

$$[H_3O^+] = 10^{-2.34} = 0.0046\ M$$

The change in concentration of H_3O^+, $x_{[H_3O^+]}$, is the difference between the equilibrium concentration of H_3O^+, which we determined from the pH, and the initial concentration, $[H_3O^+]_i$. The initial concentration of H_3O^+ is its concentration in pure water, which is so much less than the final concentration that we approximate it as zero (~0).

The change in concentration of NO_2^- is equal to the change in concentration of $[H_3O^+]$. For each 1 mol of H_3O^+ that forms, 1 mol of NO_2^- forms. The equilibrium concentration of HNO_2 is equal to its initial concentration plus the change in its concentration.

Now we can fill in the ICE table with the concentrations at equilibrium, as shown here:

	HNO_2 + H_2O ⇌ H_3O^+ + NO_2^-			
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.0516		~0	0
Change (*M*)	−*x*	+	*x* = 0.0046	*x* = 0.0046
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	0.0470		0.0046	0.0046

Finally, we calculate the value of the equilibrium constant using the data in the table:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][NO_2^-]}{[HNO_2]} = \frac{(0.0046)(0.0046)}{(0.0470)} = 4.5 \times 10^{-4}$$

Exercise 2.3.5

The pH of a solution of household ammonia, a 0.950-*M* solution of NH_3, is 11.612. What is K_b for NH_3.

Answer

$K_b = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$

Example 2.3.6: Equilibrium Concentrations in a Solution of a Weak Acid

Formic acid, HCO_2H, is the irritant that causes the body's reaction to ant stings.



The pain of an ant's sting is caused by formic acid. (credit: John Tann)

What is the concentration of hydronium ion and the pH in a 0.534-*M* solution of formic acid?

$$HCO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + HCO_2^-(aq) \quad K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-4}$$

Solution

1. Determine x and equilibrium concentrations. The equilibrium expression is:

$$HCO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + HCO_2^-(aq)$$

Because water is the solvent, it has a fixed activity equal to 1. Any small amount of water produced or used up during the reaction will not change water's role as the solvent, so the value of its activity remains equal to 1 throughout the reaction so we do not need to consider it when setting up the ICE table.

The table shows initial concentrations (concentrations before the acid ionizes), changes in concentration, and equilibrium concentrations follows (the data given in the problem appear in color):

	HCO_2H +	H_2O ⇌	H_3O^+
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.534	~0	0
Change (*M*)	−*x*	*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	0.534 + (−*x*)	0 + *x* = *x*	0 + *x* = *x*

2. Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations. At equilibrium:

$$K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-4} = \frac{[H_3O^+][HCO_2^-]}{[HCO_2H]}$$

$$= \frac{(x)(x)}{0.534 - x} = 1.8 \times 10^{-4}$$

Now solve for x. Because the initial concentration of acid is reasonably large and K_a is very small, we assume that $x << 0.534$, which *permits* us to simplify the denominator term as $(0.534 - x) = 0.534$. This gives:

$$K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-4} = \frac{x^2}{0.534}$$

Solve for x as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 &= 0.534 \times (1.8 \times 10^{-4}) \\ &= 9.6 \times 10^{-5} \\ x &= \sqrt{9.6 \times 10^{-5}} \\ &= 9.8 \times 10^{-3} \end{aligned}$$

To check the assumption that x is small compared to 0.534, we calculate:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x}{0.534} &= \frac{9.8 \times 10^{-3}}{0.534} \\ &= 1.8 \times 10^{-2}\ (1.8\%\ \text{of}\ 0.534) \end{aligned}$$

x is less than 5% of the initial concentration; the assumption is valid.

We find the equilibrium concentration of hydronium ion in this formic acid solution from its initial concentration and the change in that concentration as indicated in the last line of the table:

$$\begin{aligned} [H_3O^+] &= 0 + x = 0 + 9.8 \times 10^{-3}\ M. \\ &= 9.8 \times 10^{-3}\ M \end{aligned}$$

The pH of the solution can be found by taking the negative log of the $[H_3O^+]$, so:

$$pH = -\log(9.8 \times 10^{-3}) = 2.01$$

? Exercise 2.3.6: acetic acid

Only a small fraction of a weak acid ionizes in aqueous solution. What is the percent ionization of acetic acid in a 0.100-*M* solution of acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H?

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq) \quad K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

Hint

Determine $[CH_3CO_2^-]$ at equilibrium.) Recall that the percent ionization is the fraction of acetic acid that is ionized × 100, or $\frac{[CH_3CO_2^-]}{[CH_3CO_2H]_{\text{initial}}} \times 100$.

Answer

percent ionization = 1.3%

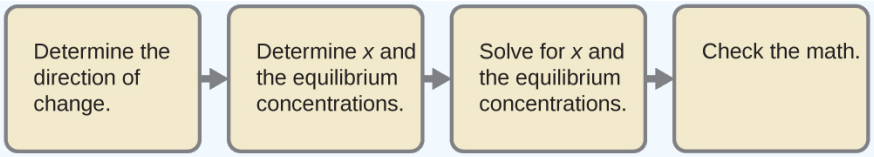
The following example shows that the concentration of products produced by the ionization of a weak base can be determined by the same series of steps used with a weak acid.

✓ Example 2.3.7: Equilibrium Concentrations in a Solution of a Weak Base

Find the concentration of hydroxide ion in a 0.25-*M* solution of trimethylamine, a weak base:

$$(CH_3)_3N(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \quad K_b = 6.3 \times 10^{-5}$$

Solution This problem requires that we calculate an equilibrium concentration by determining concentration changes as the ionization of a base goes to equilibrium. The solution is approached in the same way as that for the ionization of formic acid in Example 2.3.6. The reactants and products will be different and the numbers will be different, but the logic will be the same:



1. Determine x and equilibrium concentrations. The table shows the changes and concentrations:

	$(CH_3)_3N + H_2O \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+ + OH^-$			
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.25		0	~0
Change (*M*)	$-x$		x	x
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	$0.25 + (-x)$		$0 + x$	$\sim 0 + x$

2. Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations. At equilibrium:

$$K_b = \frac{[(CH_3)_3NH^+][OH^-]}{[(CH_3)_3N]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.25 - x =} 6.3 \times 10^{-5}$$

If we assume that *x* is small relative to 0.25, then we can replace (0.25 − *x*) in the preceding equation with 0.25. Solving the simplified equation gives:

$$x = 4.0 \times 10^{-3}$$

This change is less than 5% of the initial concentration (0.25), so the assumption is justified.

Recall that, for this computation, x is equal to the equilibrium concentration of *hydroxide ion* in the solution (see earlier tabulation):

$$([OH^-] = 0 + x = x = 4.0 \times 10^{-3}\ M$$
$$= 4.0 \times 10^{-3}\ M$$

Then calculate pOH as follows:

$$pOH = -\log(4.3 \times 10^{-3}) = 2.40$$

Using the relation introduced in the previous section of this chapter:

$$pH + pOH = pK_w = 14.00$$

permits the computation of pH:

$$pH = 14.00 - pOH = 14.00 - 2.37 = 11.60$$

Check the work. A check of our arithmetic shows that $K_b = 6.3 \times 10^{-5}$.

? Exercise 2.3.7

a. Show that the calculation in Step 2 of this example gives an *x* of 4.3×10^{-3} and the calculation in Step 3 shows $K_b = 6.3 \times 10^{-5}$.

b. Find the concentration of hydroxide ion in a 0.0325-*M* solution of ammonia, a weak base with a K_b of 1.76×10^{-5}.

Calculate the percent ionization of ammonia, the fraction ionized × 100, or $\frac{[NH_4^+]}{[NH_3]} \times 100\%$

Answer a

$7.56 \times 10^{-4}\ M$, 2.33%

Answer b

2.33%

Some weak acids and weak bases ionize to such an extent that the simplifying assumption that *x* is small relative to the initial concentration of the acid or base is inappropriate. As we solve for the equilibrium concentrations in such cases, we will see that we cannot neglect the change in the initial concentration of the acid or base, and we must solve the equilibrium equations by using the quadratic equation.

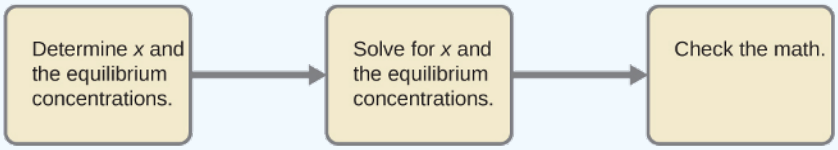
Example 2.3.8: Equilibrium Concentrations in a Solution of a Weak Acid

Sodium bisulfate, $NaHSO_4$, is used in some household cleansers because it contains the HSO_4^- ion, a weak acid. What is the pH of a 0.50-*M* solution of HSO_4^-?

$$HSO_4^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \quad K_a = 1.2 \times 10^{-2}$$

Solution

We need to determine the equilibrium concentration of the hydronium ion that results from the ionization of HSO_4^- so that we can use $[H_3O^+]$ to determine the pH. As in the previous examples, we can approach the solution by the following steps:



1. Determine x and equilibrium concentrations. This table shows the changes and concentrations:

	HSO_4^- + H_2O ⇌ H_3O^+ + SO_4^{2-}			
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.50		~0	0
Change (*M*)	−*x*		*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	0.50 + (−*x*) = 0.50 − *x*)		0 + *x* = *x*	0 + *x* = *x*

2. Solve for x and the concentrations.

As we begin solving for x, we will find this is more complicated than in previous examples. As we discuss these complications we should not lose track of the fact that it is still the purpose of this step to determine the value of x.

At equilibrium:

$$K_a = 1.2 \times 10^{-2} = \frac{[H_3O^+][SO_4^{2-}]}{[HSO_4^-]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.50 - x}$$

If we assume that *x* is small and approximate (0.50 − *x*) as 0.50, we find:

$$x = 7.7 \times 10^{-2}$$

When we check the assumption, we confirm:

$$\frac{x}{[HSO_4^-]_i} \overset{?}{\leq} 0.05$$

which for this system is

$$\frac{x}{0.50} = \frac{7.7 \times 10^{-2}}{0.50} = 0.15(15\%)$$

The value of x is not less than 5% of 0.50, so the assumption is not valid. We need the quadratic formula to find x.

The equation:

$$K_a = 1.2 \times 10^{-2} = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.50 - x}$$

gives

$$6.0 \times 10^{-3} - 1.2 \times 10^{-2} x = x^{2+}$$

or

$$x^{2+} + 1.2 \times 10^{-2} x - 6.0 \times 10^{-3} = 0$$

This equation can be solved using the quadratic formula. For an equation of the form

$$ax^{2+} + bx + c = 0,$$

x is given by the quadratic equation:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^{2+} - 4ac}}{2a}$$

In this problem, $a = 1$, $b = 1.2 \times 10^{-3}$, and $c = -6.0 \times 10^{-3}$.

Solving for x gives a negative root (which cannot be correct since concentration cannot be negative) and a positive root:

$$x = 7.2 \times 10^{-2}$$

Now determine the hydronium ion concentration and the pH:

$$\begin{aligned} [H_3O^+] &= 0 + x = 0 + 7.2 \times 10^{-2}\ M \\ &= 7.2 \times 10^{-2}\ M \end{aligned}$$

The pH of this solution is:

$$\text{pH} = -\log[H_3O^+] = -\log 7.2 \times 10^{-2} = 1.14$$

Exercise 2.3.8

a. Show that the quadratic formula gives $x = 7.2 \times 10^{-2}$.
b. Calculate the pH in a 0.010-*M* solution of caffeine, a weak base:

$$C_8H_{10}N_4O_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons C_8H_{10}N_4O_2H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \quad K_b = 2.5 \times 10^{-4}$$

Hint

It will be necessary to convert $[OH^-]$ to $[H_3O^+]$ or pOH to pH toward the end of the calculation.

Answer

pH 11.16

The Relative Strengths of Strong Acids and Bases

Strong acids, such as HCl, HBr, and HI, all exhibit the same strength in water. The water molecule is such a strong base compared to the conjugate bases Cl^-, Br^-, and I^- that ionization of these strong acids is essentially complete in aqueous solutions. In solvents less basic than water, we find HCl, HBr, and HI differ markedly in their tendency to give up a proton to the solvent. For example, when dissolved in ethanol (a weaker base than water), the extent of ionization increases in the order $HCl < HBr < HI$, and so HI is demonstrated to be the strongest of these acids. The inability to discern differences in strength among strong acids dissolved in water is known as the leveling effect of water.

Water also exerts a leveling effect on the strengths of strong bases. For example, the oxide ion, O^{2-}, and the amide ion, NH_2^-, are such strong bases that they react completely with water:

$$O^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow OH^-(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

$$NH_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow NH_3(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

Thus, O^{2-} and NH_2^- appear to have the same base strength in water; they both give a 100% yield of hydroxide ion.

In the absence of any leveling effect, the acid strength of binary compounds of hydrogen with nonmetals (A) increases as the H-A bond strength decreases down a group in the periodic table. For group 17, the order of increasing acidity is $HF < HCl < HBr < HI$. Likewise, for group 16, the order of increasing acid strength is $H_2O < H_2S < H_2Se < H_2Te$. Across a row in the periodic table, the acid strength of binary hydrogen compounds increases with increasing electronegativity of the nonmetal atom because the polarity of the H-A bond increases. Thus, the order of increasing acidity (for removal of one proton) across the second row is $CH_4 < NH_3 < H_2O < HF$; across the third row, it is $SiH_4 < PH_3 < H_2S < HCl$ (see Figure 2.3.6).

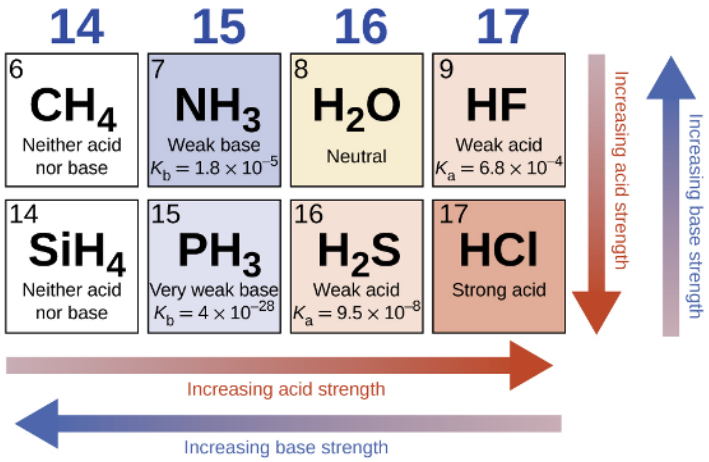
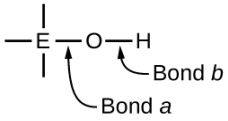


Figure 2.3.6: As you move from left to right and down the periodic table, the acid strength increases. As you move from right to left and up, the base strength increases.

This diagram has two rows and four columns. Red arrows point left across the bottom of the figure and down at the right side and are labeled “Increasing acid strength.” Blue arrows point left across the bottom and up at the right side of the figure and are labeled “Increasing base strength.” The first column is labeled 14 at the top and two white squares are beneath it. The first has the number 6 in the upper left corner and the formula C H subscript 4 in the center along with designation Neither acid nor base. The second square contains the number 14 in the upper left corner, the formula C H subscript 4 at the center and the designation Neither acid nor base. The second column is labeled 15 at the top and two blue squares are beneath it. The first has the number 7 in the upper left corner and the formula N H subscript 3 in the center along with the designation Weak base and K subscript b equals 1.8 times 10 superscript negative 5. The second square contains the number 15 in the upper left corner, the formula P H subscript 3 at the center and the designation Very weak base and K subscript b equals 4 times 10 superscript negative 28. The third column is labeled 16 at the top and two squares are beneath it. The first is shaded tan and has the number 8 in the upper left corner and the formula H subscript 2 O in the center along with the designation neutral. The second square is shaded pink, contains the number 16 in the upper left corner, the formula H subscript 2 S at the center and the designation Weak acid and K subscript a equals 9.5 times 10 superscript negative 8. The fourth column is labeled 17 at the top and two squares are beneath it. The first is shaded pink, has the number 9 in the upper left corner and the formula H F in the center along with the designation Weak acid and K subscript a equals 6.8 times 10 superscript negative 4. The second square is shaded a deeper pink, contains the number 17 in the upper left corner, the formula H C l at the center, and the designation Strong acid.

Compounds containing oxygen and one or more hydroxyl (OH) groups can be acidic, basic, or amphoteric, depending on the position in the periodic table of the central atom E, the atom bonded to the hydroxyl group. Such compounds have the general formula $O_nE(OH)_m$, and include sulfuric acid, $O_2S(OH)_2$, sulfurous acid, $OS(OH)_2$, nitric acid, O_2NOH, perchloric acid, O_3ClOH, aluminum hydroxide, $Al(OH)_3$, calcium hydroxide, $Ca(OH)_2$, and potassium hydroxide, KOH:



A diagram is shown that includes a central atom designated with the letter E. Single bonds extend above, below, left, and right of the E. An O atom is bonded to the right of the E, and an arrow points to the bond labeling it, “Bond a.” An H atom is single bonded to the right of the O atom. An arrow pointing to this bond connects it to the label, “Bond b.”

If the central atom, E, has a low electronegativity, its attraction for electrons is low. Little tendency exists for the central atom to form a strong covalent bond with the oxygen atom, and bond *a* between the element and oxygen is more readily broken than bond *b* between oxygen and hydrogen. Hence bond *a* is ionic, hydroxide ions are released to the solution, and the material behaves as a base—this is the case with $Ca(OH)_2$ and KOH. Lower electronegativity is characteristic of the more metallic elements; hence, the metallic elements form ionic hydroxides that are by definition basic compounds.

If, on the other hand, the atom E has a relatively high electronegativity, it strongly attracts the electrons it shares with the oxygen atom, making bond *a* relatively strongly covalent. The oxygen-hydrogen bond, bond *b*, is thereby weakened because electrons are displaced toward E. Bond *b* is polar and readily releases hydrogen ions to the solution, so the material behaves as an acid. High electronegativities are characteristic of the more nonmetallic elements. Thus, nonmetallic elements form covalent compounds containing acidic −OH groups that are called oxyacids.

Increasing the oxidation number of the central atom E also increases the acidity of an oxyacid because this increases the attraction of E for the electrons it shares with oxygen and thereby weakens the O-H bond. Sulfuric acid, H_2SO_4, or $O_2S(OH)_2$ (with a sulfur oxidation number of +6), is more acidic than sulfurous acid, H_2SO_3, or $OS(OH)_2$ (with a sulfur oxidation number of +4). Likewise nitric acid, HNO_3, or O_2NOH (N oxidation number = +5), is more acidic than nitrous acid, HNO_2, or ONOH (N oxidation number = +3). In each of these pairs, the oxidation number of the central atom is larger for the stronger acid (Figure 2.3.7).

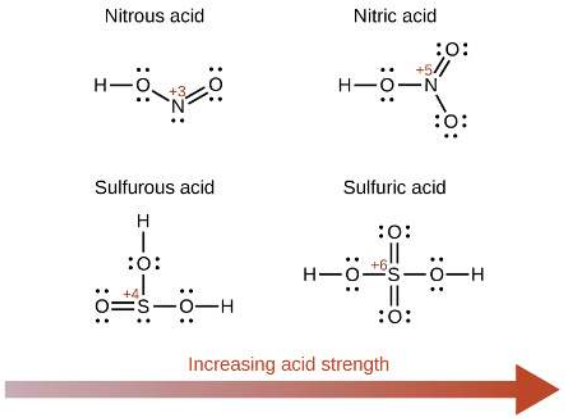


Figure 2.3.7: As the oxidation number of the central atom E increases, the acidity also increases.

A diagram is shown that includes four structural formulas for acids. A red, right pointing arrow is placed beneath the structures which is labeled “Increasing acid strength.” At the top left, the structure of Nitrous acid is provided. It includes an H atom to which an O atom with two unshared electron pairs is connected with a single bond to the right. A single bond extends to the right and slightly below to a N atom with one unshared electron pair. A double bond extends up and to the right from this N atom to an O atom which has two unshared electron pairs. To the upper right is a structure for Nitric acid. This structure differs from the previous structure in that the N atom is directly to the right of the first O atom and a second O atom with three unshared electron pairs is connected with a single bond below and to the right of the N atom which has no unshared electron pairs. At the lower left, an O atom with two unshared electron pairs is double bonded to its right to an S atom with a single unshared electron pair. An O atom with two unshared electron pairs is bonded above and an H atom is single bonded to this O atom. To the right of the S atom is a single bond to another O atom with two unshared electron pairs to which an H atom is single bonded. This structure is labeled “Sulfurous acid.” A similar structure which is labeled “Sulfuric acid” is placed in the lower right region of the figure. This structure differs in that an H atom is single bonded to the left of the first O atom, leaving it with two unshared electron pairs and a fourth O atom with two unshared electron pairs is double bonded beneath the S atom, leaving it with no unshared electron pairs.

Hydroxy compounds of elements with intermediate electronegativities and relatively high oxidation numbers (for example, elements near the diagonal line separating the metals from the nonmetals in the periodic table) are usually amphoteric. This means that the hydroxy compounds act as acids when they react with strong bases and as bases when they react with strong acids. The amphoterism of aluminum hydroxide, which commonly exists as the hydrate $Al(H_2O)_3(OH)_3$, is reflected in its solubility in both strong acids and strong bases. In strong bases, the relatively insoluble hydrated aluminum hydroxide, $Al(H_2O)_3(OH)_3$, is converted into the soluble ion, $[Al(H_2O)_2(OH)_4]^-$, by reaction with hydroxide ion:

$$[Al(H_2O)_3(OH)_3](aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons H_2O(l) + [Al(H_2O)_2(OH)_4]^-(aq)$$

In this reaction, a proton is transferred from one of the aluminum-bound H_2O molecules to a hydroxide ion in solution. The $Al(H_2O)_3(OH)_3$ compound thus acts as an acid under these conditions. On the other hand, when dissolved in strong acids, it is converted to the soluble ion $[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ by reaction with hydronium ion:

$$3\,H_3O^+(aq) + Al(H_2O)_3(OH)_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}(aq) + 3\,H_2O(l)$$

In this case, protons are transferred from hydronium ions in solution to $Al(H_2O)_3(OH)_3$, and the compound functions as a base.

Summary

The strengths of Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases in aqueous solutions can be determined by their acid or base ionization constants. Stronger acids form weaker conjugate bases, and weaker acids form stronger conjugate bases. Thus strong acids are completely ionized in aqueous solution because their conjugate bases are weaker bases than water. Weak acids are only partially ionized because their conjugate bases are strong enough to compete successfully with water for possession of protons. Strong bases react with water to quantitatively form hydroxide ions. Weak bases give only small amounts of hydroxide ion. The strengths of the binary acids increase from left to right across a period of the periodic table ($CH_4 < NH_3 < H_2O < HF$), and they increase down a group ($HF < HCl < HBr < HI$). The strengths of oxyacids that contain the same central element increase as the oxidation number of the element increases ($H_2SO_3 < H_2SO_4$). The strengths of oxyacids also increase as the electronegativity of the central element increases [$H_2SeO_4 < H_2SO_4$].

Key Equations

- $K_\mathrm{a} = \dfrac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]}$
- $K_\mathrm{b} = \dfrac{[\mathrm{HB^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}]}{[\mathrm{B}]}$
- $K_a \times K_b = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} = K_w \,(\text{at room temperature})$
- $\text{Percent ionization} = \dfrac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]_\mathrm{eq}}{[\mathrm{HA}]_0} \times 100$

Glossary

acid ionization constant (K_a)
equilibrium constant for the ionization of a weak acid

base ionization constant (K_b)
equilibrium constant for the ionization of a weak base

leveling effect of water
any acid stronger than H_3O^+, or any base stronger than OH^- will react with water to form H_3O^+, or OH^-, respectively; water acts as a base to make all strong acids appear equally strong, and it acts as an acid to make all strong bases appear equally strong

oxyacid
compound containing a nonmetal and one or more hydroxyl groups

percent ionization
ratio of the concentration of the ionized acid to the initial acid concentration, times 100

This page titled 2.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions

Learning Objectives

- Predict whether a salt solution will be acidic, basic, or neutral
- Calculate the concentrations of the various species in a salt solution
- Describe the process that causes solutions of certain metal ions to be acidic

As we have seen in the section on chemical reactions, when an acid and base are mixed, they undergo a neutralization reaction. The word “neutralization” seems to imply that a stoichiometrically equivalent solution of an acid and a base would be neutral. This is sometimes true, but the salts that are formed in these reactions may have acidic or basic properties of their own, as we shall now see.

Acid-Base Neutralization

A solution is neutral when it contains equal concentrations of hydronium and hydroxide ions. When we mix solutions of an acid and a base, an acid-base neutralization reaction occurs. However, even if we mix stoichiometrically equivalent quantities, we may find that the resulting solution is not neutral. It could contain either an excess of hydronium ions or an excess of hydroxide ions because the nature of the salt formed determines whether the solution is acidic, neutral, or basic. The following four situations illustrate how solutions with various pH values can arise following a neutralization reaction using stoichiometrically equivalent quantities:

1. A strong acid and a strong base, such as HCl(*aq*) and NaOH(*aq*) will react to form a neutral solution since the conjugate partners produced are of negligible strength:

$$\mathrm{HCl}(aq) + \mathrm{NaOH}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{NaCl}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

2. A strong acid and a weak base yield a weakly acidic solution, not because of the strong acid involved, but because of the conjugate acid of the weak base.
3. A weak acid and a strong base yield a weakly basic solution. A solution of a weak acid reacts with a solution of a strong base to form the conjugate base of the weak acid and the conjugate acid of the strong base. The conjugate acid of the strong base is a weaker acid than water and has no effect on the acidity of the resulting solution. However, the conjugate base of the weak acid is a weak base and ionizes slightly in water. This increases the amount of hydroxide ion in the solution produced in the reaction and renders it slightly basic.
4. A weak acid plus a weak base can yield either an acidic, basic, or neutral solution. This is the most complex of the four types of reactions. When the conjugate acid and the conjugate base are of unequal strengths, the solution can be either acidic or basic, depending on the relative strengths of the two conjugates. Occasionally the weak acid and the weak base will have the *same* strength, so their respective conjugate base and acid will have the same strength, and the solution will be neutral. To predict whether a particular combination will be acidic, basic or neutral, tabulated *K* values of the conjugates must be compared.

Stomach Antacids

Our stomachs contain a solution of roughly 0.03 *M* HCl, which helps us digest the food we eat. The burning sensation associated with heartburn is a result of the acid of the stomach leaking through the muscular valve at the top of the stomach into the lower reaches of the esophagus. The lining of the esophagus is not protected from the corrosive effects of stomach acid the way the lining of the stomach is, and the results can be very painful. When we have heartburn, it feels better if we reduce the excess acid in the esophagus by taking an antacid. As you may have guessed, antacids are bases. One of the most common antacids is calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$. The reaction,

$$CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightleftharpoons CaCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$$

not only neutralizes stomach acid, it also produces $CO_2(g)$, which may result in a satisfying belch.

Milk of Magnesia is a suspension of the sparingly soluble base magnesium hydroxide, $Mg(OH)_2$. It works according to the reaction:

$$Mg(OH)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2OH^-(aq)$$

The hydroxide ions generated in this equilibrium then go on to react with the hydronium ions from the stomach acid, so that :

$$H_3O^+ + OH^- \rightleftharpoons 2H_2O(l)$$

This reaction does not produce carbon dioxide, but magnesium-containing antacids can have a laxative effect. Several antacids have aluminum hydroxide, $Al(OH)_3$, as an active ingredient. The aluminum hydroxide tends to cause constipation, and some antacids use aluminum hydroxide in concert with magnesium hydroxide to balance the side effects of the two substances.

Culinary Aspects of Chemistry

Cooking is essentially synthetic chemistry that happens to be safe to eat. There are a number of examples of acid-base chemistry in the culinary world. One example is the use of baking soda, or sodium bicarbonate in baking. $NaHCO_3$ is a base. When it reacts with an acid such as lemon juice, buttermilk, or sour cream in a batter, bubbles of carbon dioxide gas are formed from decomposition of the resulting carbonic acid, and the batter "rises." Baking powder is a combination of sodium bicarbonate, and one or more acid salts that react when the two chemicals come in contact with water in the batter.

Many people like to put lemon juice or vinegar, both of which are acids, on cooked fish (Figure 2.4.1). It turns out that fish have volatile amines (bases) in their systems, which are neutralized by the acids to yield involatile ammonium salts. This reduces the odor of the fish, and also adds a "sour" taste that we seem to enjoy.

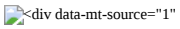


Figure 2.4.1: A neutralization reaction takes place between citric acid in lemons or acetic acid in vinegar, and the bases in the flesh of fish.

Pickling is a method used to preserve vegetables using a naturally produced acidic environment. The vegetable, such as a cucumber, is placed in a sealed jar submerged in a brine solution. The brine solution favors the growth of beneficial bacteria and suppresses the growth of harmful bacteria. The beneficial bacteria feed on starches in the cucumber and produce lactic acid as a waste product in a process called fermentation. The lactic acid eventually increases the acidity of the brine to a level that kills any harmful bacteria, which require a basic environment. Without the harmful bacteria consuming the cucumbers they are able to last much longer than if they were unprotected. A byproduct of the pickling process changes the flavor of the vegetables with the acid making them taste sour.

Salts of Weak Bases and Strong Acids

When we neutralize a weak base with a strong acid, the product is a salt containing the conjugate acid of the weak base. This conjugate acid is a weak acid. For example, ammonium chloride, NH_4Cl, is a salt formed by the reaction of the weak base ammonia with the strong acid HCl:

$$\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) + \mathrm{HCl}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_4Cl}(aq)$$

A solution of this salt contains ammonium ions and chloride ions. The chloride ion has no effect on the acidity of the solution since HCl is a strong acid. Chloride is a very weak base and will not accept a proton to a measurable extent. However, the ammonium ion, the conjugate acid of ammonia, reacts with water and increases the hydronium ion concentration:

$$\mathrm{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NH_3}(aq)$$

The equilibrium equation for this reaction is simply the ionization constant. K_a, for the acid $\mathrm{NH_4^+}$:

$$\frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{NH_3}]}{[\mathrm{NH_4^+}]} = K_a$$

We will not find a value of K_a for the ammonium ion in Table E1. However, it is not difficult to determine K_a for $\mathrm{NH_4^+}$ from the value of the ionization constant of water, K_w, and K_b, the ionization constant of its conjugate base, NH_3, using the following relationship:

$$K_w = K_a \times K_b$$

This relation holds for any base and its conjugate acid or for any acid and its conjugate base.

Example 2.4.1: pH of a Solution of a Salt of a Weak Base and a Strong Acid

Aniline is an amine that is used to manufacture dyes. It is isolated as aniline hydrochloride, $[C_6H_5NH_3^+]Cl$, a salt prepared by the reaction of the weak base aniline and hydrochloric acid. What is the pH of a 0.233 *M* solution of aniline hydrochloride?

$$C_6H_5NH_3^+(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + C_6H_5NH_2(aq)$$

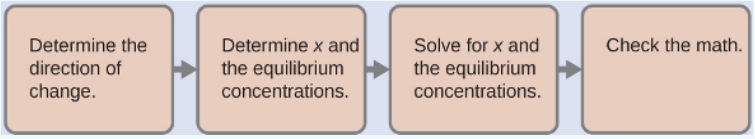
Solution

The new step in this example is to determine K_a for the $C_6H_5NH_3^+$ ion. The $C_6H_5NH_3^+$ ion is the conjugate acid of a weak base. The value of K_a for this acid is not listed in Table E1, but we can determine it from the value of K_b for aniline, $C_6H_5NH_2$, which is given as 4.6×10^{-10} :

$$K_a(\text{for } C_6H_5NH_3^+) \times K_b(\text{for } C_6H_5NH_2) = K_w = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

$$K_a(\text{for } C_6H_5NH_3^+) = \frac{K_w}{K_b(\text{for } C_6H_5NH_2)} = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{4.6 \times 10^{-10}} = 2.3 \times 10^{-5}$$

Now we have the ionization constant and the initial concentration of the weak acid, the information necessary to determine the equilibrium concentration of H_3O^+, and the pH:



Four tan rectangles are shown that are connected with right pointing arrows. The first is labeled “Determine the direction of change.” The second is labeled “Determine x and the equilibrium concentrations.” The third is labeled “Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations.” The fourth is labeled “Check the math.”

With these steps we find $[H_3O^+] = 2.3 \times 10^{-3}$ *M* and pH = 2.64

Exercise 2.4.1

a. Do the calculations and show that the hydronium ion concentration for a 0.233-*M* solution of $C_6H_5NH_3^+$ is 2.3×10^{-3} and the pH is 2.64.

b. What is the hydronium ion concentration in a 0.100-*M* solution of ammonium nitrate, NH_4NO_3, a salt composed of the ions NH_4^+ and NO_3^-. Use the data in Table E1 to determine K_b for the ammonium ion. Which is the stronger acid $C_6H_5NH_3^+$ or NH_4^+?

Answer a

$K_a(\text{for } NH_4^+) = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$, $[H_3O^+]$ = 7.5 × 10−6 M

Answer b

$C_6H_5NH_3^+$ is the stronger acid (a) (b) .

Salts of Weak Acids and Strong Bases

When we neutralize a weak acid with a strong base, we get a salt that contains the conjugate base of the weak acid. This conjugate base is usually a weak base. For example, sodium acetate, $NaCH_3CO_2$, is a salt formed by the reaction of the weak acid acetic acid with the strong base sodium hydroxide:

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + NaOH(aq) \longrightarrow NaCH_3CO_2(aq) + H_2O(aq)$$

A solution of this salt contains sodium ions and acetate ions. The sodium ion has no effect on the acidity of the solution. However, the acetate ion, the conjugate base of acetic acid, reacts with water and increases the concentration of hydroxide ion:

$$CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2H(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

The equilibrium equation for this reaction is the ionization constant, K_b, for the base $CH_3CO_2^-$. The value of K_b can be calculated from the value of the ionization constant of water, K_w, and K_a, the ionization constant of the conjugate acid of the anion using the equation:

$$_w = K_a \times K_b$$

For the acetate ion and its conjugate acid we have:

$$K_b(\text{for } CH_3CO_2^-) = \frac{K_w}{K_a(\text{for } CH_3CO_2H)} = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{1.8 \times 10^{-5}} = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

Some handbooks do not report values of K_b. They only report ionization constants for acids. If we want to determine a K_b value using one of these handbooks, we must look up the value of K_a for the conjugate acid and convert it to a K_b value.

Example 2.4.2: Equilibrium of a Salt of a Weak Acid and a Strong Base

Determine the acetic acid concentration in a solution with $[CH_3CO_2^-] = 0.050\ M$ and [OH$^-$] = 2.5 × 10^{-6} M at equilibrium. The reaction is:

$$CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2H(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

Solution

We are given two of three equilibrium concentrations and asked to find the missing concentration. If we can find the equilibrium constant for the reaction, the process is straightforward.

The acetate ion behaves as a base in this reaction; hydroxide ions are a product. We determine K_b as follows:

$$K_b(\text{for } CH_3CO_2^-) = \frac{K_w}{K_a(\text{for } CH_3CO_2H)} = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{1.8 \times 10^{-5}} = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

Now find the missing concentration:

$$K_b = \frac{[CH_3CO_2H][OH^-]}{[CH_3CO_2^-]} = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

$$= \frac{[CH_3CO_2H](2.5 \times 10^{-6})}{(0.050)} = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

Solving this equation we get [CH_3CO_2H] = 1.1 × 10^{-5} M.

? Exercise 2.4.2

What is the pH of a 0.083-M solution of CN$^-$? Use 4.9 × 10^{-10} as K_a for HCN. Hint: We will probably need to convert pOH to pH or find [H_3O^+] using [OH$^-$] in the final stages of this problem.

Answer

11.16

Equilibrium in a Solution of a Salt of a Weak Acid and a Weak Base

In a solution of a salt formed by the reaction of a weak acid and a weak base, to predict the pH, we must know both the K_a of the weak acid and the K_b of the weak base. If $K_a > K_b$, the solution is acidic, and if $K_b > K_a$, the solution is basic.

Example 2.4.3: Determining the Acidic or Basic Nature of Salts

Determine whether aqueous solutions of the following salts are acidic, basic, or neutral:

a. KBr
b. $NaHCO_3$

c. NH_4Cl
d. Na_2HPO_4
e. NH_4F

Solution

Consider each of the ions separately in terms of its effect on the pH of the solution, as shown here:

a. The K^+ cation and the Br^- anion are both spectators, since they are the cation of a strong base (KOH) and the anion of a strong acid (HBr), respectively. The solution is neutral.
b. The Na^+ cation is a spectator, and will not affect the pH of the solution; the HCO_3^- anion is amphiprotic.The K_a of HCO_3^- is 4.7×10^{-11}, so the K_b of its conjugate base is $\frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{4.7 \times 10^{-11}} = 2.1 \times 10^{-4}$. Since $K_b >> K_a$, the solution is basic.
c. The NH_4^+ ion is acidic and the Cl^- ion is a spectator. The solution will be acidic.
d. The Na^+ ion is a spectator and will not affect the pH of the solution, while the HPO_4^{2-} ion is amphiprotic. The K_a of HPO_4^{2-} is 4.2×10^{-13} and its K_b is $\frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{4.2 \times 10^{-13}} = 2.4 \times 10^{-2}$. Because $K_b >> K_a$, the solution is basic.
e. The NH_4^+ ion is listed as being acidic, and the F^- ion is listed as a base, so we must directly compare the K_a and the K_b of the two ions. K_a of NH_4^+ is 5.6×10^{-10}, which seems very small, yet the K_b of F^- is 1.4×10^{-11}, so the solution is acidic, since $K_a > K_b$.

? Exercise 2.4.3

Determine whether aqueous solutions of the following salts are acidic, basic, or neutral:

a. K_2CO_3
b. $CaCl_2$
c. KH_2PO_4
d. $(NH_4)_2CO_3$
e. $AlBr_3$

Answer a

basic

Answer b

neutral

Answer c

acidic

Answer d

basic

Answer e

acidic

The Ionization of Hydrated Metal Ions

If we measure the pH of the solutions of a variety of metal ions we will find that these ions act as weak acids when in solution. The aluminum ion is an example. When aluminum nitrate dissolves in water, the aluminum ion reacts with water to give a hydrated aluminum ion, $Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}$, dissolved in bulk water. What this means is that the aluminum ion has the strongest interactions with the six closest water molecules (the so-called first solvation shell), even though it does interact with the other water molecules surrounding this $Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}$ cluster as well:

$$Al(NO_3)_3(s) + 6\,H_2O(l) \longrightarrow Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}(aq) + 3\,NO_3^-(aq)$$

We frequently see the formula of this ion simply as "$Al^{3+}(aq)$", without explicitly noting the six water molecules that are the closest ones to the aluminum ion and just describing the ion as being solvated in water (hydrated). This is similar to the simplification of the formula of the hydronium ion, H_3O^+ to H^+. However, in this case, the hydrated aluminum ion is a weak acid (Figure 2.4.2) and donates a proton to a water molecule. Thus, the hydration becomes important and we may use formulas that show the extent of hydration:

$$Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}(aq) \quad K_a = 1.4 \times 10^{-5}$$

As with other polyprotic acids, the hydrated aluminum ion ionizes in stages, as shown by:

$$Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}(aq)$$

$$Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Al(H_2O)_4(OH)_2^+(aq)$$

$$Al(H_2O)_4(OH)_2^+(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Al(H_2O)_3(OH)_3(aq)$$

Note that some of these aluminum species are exhibiting amphiprotic behavior, since they are acting as acids when they appear on the left side of the equilibrium expressions and as bases when they appear on the right side.

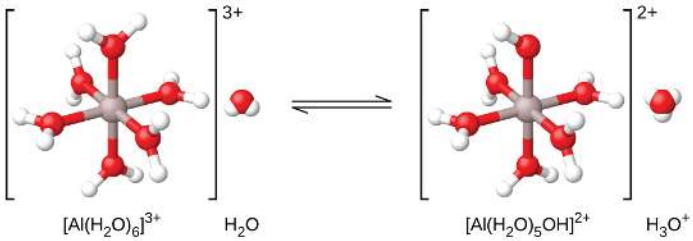


Figure 2.4.2: When an aluminum ion reacts with water, the hydrated aluminum ion becomes a weak acid.

A reaction is shown using ball and stick models. On the left, inside brackets with a superscript of 3 plus outside to the right is structure labeled "[A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 6] superscript 3 plus." Inside the brackets is s central grey atom to which 6 red atoms are bonded in an arrangement that distributes them evenly about the central grey atom. Each red atom has two smaller white atoms attached in a forked or bent arrangement. Outside the brackets to the right is a space-filling model that includes a red central sphere with two smaller white spheres attached in a bent arrangement. Beneath this structure is the label "H subscript 2 O." A double sided arrow follows. Another set of brackets follows to the right of the arrows which have a superscript of two plus outside to the right. The structure inside the brackets is similar to that on the left, except a white atom is removed from the structure. The label below is also changed to "[A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 5 O H] superscript 2 plus." To the right of this structure and outside the brackets is a space filling model with a central red sphere to which 3 smaller white spheres are attached. This structure is labeled "H subscript 3 O superscript plus."

However, the ionization of a cation carrying more than one charge is usually not extensive beyond the first stage. Additional examples of the first stage in the ionization of hydrated metal ions are:

$$Fe(H_2O)_6^{3+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Fe(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}(aq) \quad K_a = 2.74$$

$$Cu(H_2O)_6^{2+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Cu(H_2O)_5(OH)^{+}(aq) \quad K_a = 6.3$$

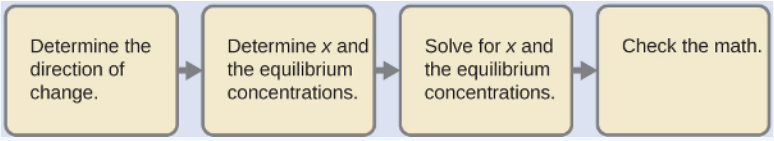
$$Zn(H_2O)_4^{2+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Zn(H_2O)_3(OH)^{+}(aq) \quad K_a = 9.6$$

Example 2.4.4: Hydrolysis of $[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$

Calculate the pH of a 0.10-*M* solution of aluminum chloride, which dissolves completely to give the hydrated aluminum ion $[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ in solution.

Solution

In spite of the unusual appearance of the acid, this is a typical acid ionization problem.



A reaction is shown using ball and stick models. On the left, inside brackets with a superscript of 3 plus outside to the right is structure labeled “[A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 6] superscript 3 plus.” Inside the brackets is s central grey atom to which 6 red atoms are bonded in an arrangement that distributes them evenly about the central grey atom. Each red atom has two smaller white atoms attached in a forked or bent arrangement. Outside the brackets to the right is a space-filling model that includes a red central sphere with two smaller white spheres attached in a bent arrangement. Beneath this structure is the label “H subscript 2 O.” A double sided arrow follows. Another set of brackets follows to the right of the arrows which have a superscript of two plus outside to the right. The structure inside the brackets is similar to that on the left, except a white atom is removed from the structure. The label below is also changed to “[A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 5 O H] superscript 2 plus.” To the right of this structure and outside the brackets is a space filling model with a central red sphere to which 3 smaller white spheres are attached. This structure is labeled “H subscript 3 O superscript plus.”

1. *Determine the direction of change*. The equation for the reaction and K_a are:

$$\mathrm{Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}}(aq) \quad K_a = 1.4 \times 10^{-5}$$

The reaction shifts to the right to reach equilibrium.

2. *Determine x and equilibrium concentrations.* Use the table

:

	$\mathrm{Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}} + \mathrm{H_2O} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+} + \mathrm{Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}}$		
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.10	~0	0
Change (*M*)	$-x$	x	x
Equilibrium constant (*M*)	$0.10 - x$	x	x

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following in the first column: Initial concentration (M), Change (M), Equilibrium concentration (M). The second column has the header of “A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 6 superscript 3 positive sign plus H subscript 2 O equilibrium arrow H subscript 3 O superscript positive sign plus A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 5 (O H) superscript 2 positive sign.” Under the second column is a subgroup of four columns and three rows. The first column has the following: 0.10 (which appears in red), negative x, 0.10 minus x. The second column is blank. The third column has the following: approximately 0, x, x. The fourth column has the following: 0, x, x.

Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations. Substituting the expressions for the equilibrium concentrations into the equation for the ionization constant yields:

1.
$$K_a = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}}]}{[\mathrm{Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}}]}$$
$$= \frac{(x)(x)}{0.10 - x} = 1.4 \times 10^{-5}$$

Solving this equation gives:

$$x = 1.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$$

From this we find:

$$[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 0 + x = 1.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$$
$$\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 2.92 (\text{an acidic solution})$$

Check the work. The arithmetic checks; when 1.2×10^{-3} *M* is substituted for *x*, the result = K_a.

Exercise 2.4.4

What is $[Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}]$ in a 0.15-*M* solution of $Al(NO_3)_3$ that contains enough of the strong acid HNO_3 to bring $[H_3O^+]$ to 0.10 *M*?

Answer

$2.1 \times 10^{-5}\ M$

The constants for the different stages of ionization are not known for many metal ions, so we cannot calculate the extent of their ionization. However, practically all hydrated metal ions other than those of the alkali metals ionize to give acidic solutions. Ionization increases as the charge of the metal ion increases or as the size of the metal ion decreases.

Summary

The characteristic properties of aqueous solutions of Brønsted-Lowry acids are due to the presence of hydronium ions; those of aqueous solutions of Brønsted-Lowry bases are due to the presence of hydroxide ions. The neutralization that occurs when aqueous solutions of acids and bases are combined results from the reaction of the hydronium and hydroxide ions to form water. Some salts formed in neutralization reactions may make the product solutions slightly acidic or slightly basic. Solutions that contain salts or hydrated metal ions have a pH that is determined by the extent of the hydrolysis of the ions in the solution. The pH of the solutions may be calculated using familiar equilibrium techniques, or it may be qualitatively determined to be acidic, basic, or neutral depending on the relative K_a and K_b of the ions involved.

This page titled 2.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.5: Polyprotic Acids

Learning Objectives

- Extend previously introduced equilibrium concepts to acids and bases that may donate or accept more than one proton

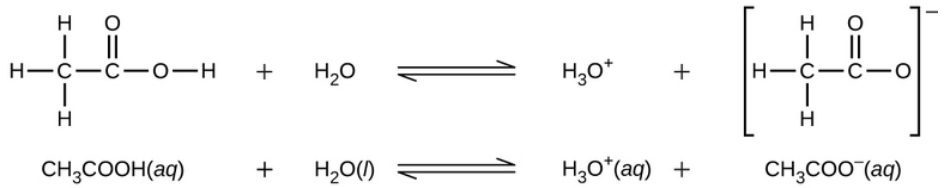
We can classify acids by the number of protons per molecule that they can give up in a reaction. Acids such as HCl, HNO_3, and HCN that contain one ionizable hydrogen atom in each molecule are called monoprotic acids. Their reactions with water are:

$$HCl(aq) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

$$HNO_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + NO_3^-(aq)$$

$$HCN(aq) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + CN^-(aq)$$

Even though it contains four hydrogen atoms, acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H, is also monoprotic because only the hydrogen atom from the carboxyl group ($-COOH$) reacts with bases:



This image contains two equilibrium reactions. The first shows a C atom bonded to three H atoms and another C atom. The second C atom is double bonded to an O atom and also forms a single bond to another O atom. The second O atom is bonded to an H atom. There is a plus sign and then the molecular formula H subscript 2 O. An equilibrium arrow follows the H subscript 2 O. To the right of the arrow is H subscript 3 O superscript positive sign. There is a plus sign. The final structure shows a C atom bonded the three H atoms and another C atom. This second C atom is double bonded to an O atom and single bonded to another O atom. The entire structure is in brackets and a superscript negative sign appears outside the brackets. The second reaction shows C H subscript 3 C O O H (a q) plus H subscript 2 O (l) equilibrium arrow H subscript 3 O (a q) plus C H subscript 3 C O O superscript negative sign (a q).

Similarly, monoprotic bases are bases that will accept a single proton.

Diprotic Acids

Diprotic acids contain two ionizable hydrogen atoms per molecule; ionization of such acids occurs in two steps. The first ionization always takes place to a greater extent than the second ionization. For example, sulfuric acid, a strong acid, ionizes as follows:

- **The first ionization is**

$$H_2SO_4(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + HSO_4^-(aq)$$

with $K_{a1} > 10^2$; $complete\ dissociation$.

- **The second ionization is**

$$HSO_4^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq)$$

with $K_{a2} = 1.2 \times 10^{-2}$.

This stepwise ionization process occurs for all polyprotic acids. When we make a solution of a weak diprotic acid, we get a solution that contains a mixture of acids. Carbonic acid, H_2CO_3, is an example of a weak diprotic acid. The first ionization of carbonic acid yields hydronium ions and bicarbonate ions in small amounts.

- **First Ionization**

$$H_2CO_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq)$$

with

$$K_{\mathrm{H_2CO_3}} = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]}{[\mathrm{H_2CO_3}]} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$$

The bicarbonate ion can also act as an acid. It ionizes and forms hydronium ions and carbonate ions in even smaller quantities.

- **Second Ionization**

$$\mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq)$$

with

$$K_{\mathrm{HCO_3^-}} = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}]}{[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11}$$

$K_{\mathrm{H_2CO_3}}$ is larger than $K_{\mathrm{HCO_3^-}}$ by a factor of 10^4, so H_2CO_3 is the dominant producer of hydronium ion in the solution. This means that little of the $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ formed by the ionization of H_2CO_3 ionizes to give hydronium ions (and carbonate ions), and the concentrations of H_3O^+ and $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ are practically equal in a pure aqueous solution of H_2CO_3.

If the first ionization constant of a weak diprotic acid is larger than the second by a factor of at least 20, it is appropriate to treat the first ionization separately and calculate concentrations resulting from it before calculating concentrations of species resulting from subsequent ionization. This can simplify our work considerably because we can determine the concentration of H_3O^+ and the conjugate base from the first ionization, then determine the concentration of the conjugate base of the second ionization in a solution with concentrations determined by the first ionization.

Example 2.5.1: Ionization of a Diprotic Acid

When we buy soda water (carbonated water), we are buying a solution of carbon dioxide in water. The solution is acidic because CO_2 reacts with water to form carbonic acid, H_2CO_3. What are $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$, $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]$, and $[\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}]$ in a saturated solution of CO_2 with an initial $[H_2CO_3]$ = 0.033 *M*?

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a1}} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7} \qquad \text{(equilibrium step 1)}$$

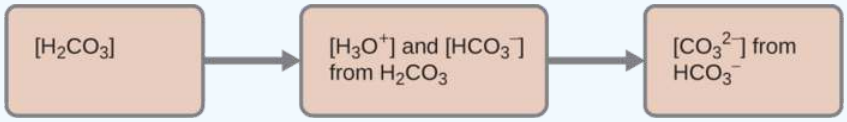
$$\mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a2}} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11} \qquad \text{(equilibrium step 2)}$$

Solution

As indicated by the ionization constants, H_2CO_3 is a much stronger acid than $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$, so $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ is the dominant producer of hydronium ion in solution. Thus there are two parts in the solution of this problem:

1. Using the customary four steps, we determine the concentration of H_3O^+ and $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ produced by ionization of H_2CO_3.
2. Then we determine the concentration of $\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}$ in a solution with the concentration of H_3O^+ and $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ determined in (1).

To summarize:



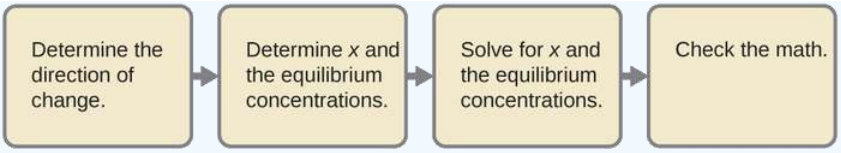
Four tan rectangles are shown that are connected with right pointing arrows. The first is labeled “left bracket H subscript 2 C O subscript 3 right bracket.” The second is labeled “left bracket H subscript 3 O superscript plus right bracket and left bracket H C O subscript 3 superscript negative right bracket from H subscript 2 C O subscript 3.” The third is labeled “left bracket C O subscript 3 superscript 2 negative right bracket from H C O subscript 3 superscript negative.”

1. First Ionization: Determine the concentrations of $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$ *and* $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$.

Since equilibrium step 1 is has a much bigger $K_{a1} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$ than $K_{a2} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11}$ for equilibrium step 2, we can safely ignore the second ionization step and focus only on the first step (but address it in next part of problem).

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a1}} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$$

As for the ionization of any other weak acid:



Four tan rectangles are shown that are connected with right pointing arrows. The first is labeled “Determine the direction of change.” The second is labeled “Determine x and the equilibrium concentrations.” The third is labeled “Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations.” The fourth is labeled “Check the math.”

An abbreviated table of changes and concentrations shows:

Abbreviated table of changes and concentrations

ICE Table	$H_2CO_3(aq)$	$H_2O(l)$	$H_3O^+(aq)$	$HCO_3^-(aq)$
Initial (M)	$0.033\ M$	-	0	0
Change (M)	$-x$	-	$+x$	$+x$
Equilibrium (M)	$0.033\ M - x$	-	x	x

Substituting the equilibrium concentrations into the equilibrium constant gives us:

$$K_{H_2CO_3} = \frac{[H_3O^+][HCO_3^-]}{[H_2CO_3]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.033 - x} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$$

Solving the preceding equation making our standard assumptions gives:

$$x = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}$$

Thus:

$$[H_2CO_3] = 0.033\ M$$

$$[H_3O^+] = [HCO_3^-] = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

2. Second Ionization: Determine the concentration of CO_3^{2-} in a solution at equilibrium.

Since the equilibrium step 1 is has a much bigger K_a than equilibrium step 2, we can the equilibrium conditions calculated from first part of example as the initial conditions for an ICER Table for the equilibrium step 2:

$$HCO_3^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq)$$

ICER Table for the equilibrium step 2:

ICE Table	$HCO_3^-(aq)$	$H_2O(l)$	$H_3O^+(aq)$	$CO_3^{2-}(aq)$
Initial (M)	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$	-	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$	0
Change (M)	$-y$	-	$+y$	$+y$
Equilibrium (M)	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M - y$	-	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M + y$	y

$$K_{HCO_3^-} = \frac{[H_3O^+][CO_3^{2-}]}{[HCO_3^-]}$$

$$= \frac{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M + y)(y)}{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M - y)}$$

To avoid solving a quadratic equation, we can assume $y \ll 1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$ so

$$K_{HCO_3^-} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11} \approx \frac{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M)(y)}{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M)}$$

Rearranging to solve for y

$$y \approx \frac{(4.7 \times 10^{-11})(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M)}{1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M}$$

$$[\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}] = y \approx 4.7 \times 10^{-11}$$

To summarize:

In part 1 of this example, we found that the $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ in a 0.033-M solution ionizes slightly and at equilibrium $[\mathrm{H_2CO_3}] = 0.033\ M$, $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}$, and $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}] = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$. In part 2, we determined that $[\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}] = 5.6 \times 10^{-11}\ M$.

? Exercise 2.5.2: Hydrogen Sulfide

The concentration of H_2S in a saturated aqueous solution at room temperature is approximately 0.1 M. Calculate $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$, $[\mathrm{HS^-}]$, and $[\mathrm{S^{2-}}]$ in the solution:

$$\mathrm{H_2S}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HS^-}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a1}} = 8.9 \times 10^{-8}$$

$$\mathrm{HS^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{S^{2-}}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a2}} = 1.0 \times 10^{-19}$$

Answer

$[\mathrm{H_2S}] = 0.1M$, $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = [HS^-] = 0.0001\ M$, $[S^{2-}] = 1 \times 10^{-19}\ M$

We note that the concentration of the sulfide ion is the same as K_{a2}. This is due to the fact that each subsequent dissociation occurs to a lesser degree (as acid gets weaker).

Triprotic Acids

A triprotic acid is an acid that has three dissociable protons that undergo stepwise ionization: Phosphoric acid is a typical example:

- **The first ionization is**

$$\mathrm{H_3PO_4}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2PO_4^-}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a1}} = 7.5 \times 10^{-3}$.

- **The second ionization is**

$$\mathrm{H_2PO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HPO_4^{2-}}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a2}} = 6.2 \times 10^{-8}$.

- **The third ionization is**

$$\mathrm{HPO_4^{2-}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a3}} = 4.2 \times 10^{-13}$.

As with the diprotic acids, the differences in the ionization constants of these reactions tell us that in each successive step the degree of ionization is significantly weaker. This is a general characteristic of polyprotic acids and successive ionization constants often differ by a factor of about 10^5 to 10^6. This set of three dissociation reactions may appear to make calculations of equilibrium concentrations in a solution of H_3PO_4 complicated. However, because the successive ionization constants differ by a factor of 10^5 to 10^6, the calculations can be broken down into a series of parts similar to those for diprotic acids.

Polyprotic bases can accept more than one hydrogen ion in solution. The carbonate ion is an example of a diprotic base, since it can accept up to two protons. Solutions of alkali metal carbonates are quite alkaline, due to the reactions:

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

and

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

Summary

An acid that contains more than one ionizable proton is a polyprotic acid. The protons of these acids ionize in steps. The differences in the acid ionization constants for the successive ionizations of the protons in a polyprotic acid usually vary by roughly five orders of magnitude. As long as the difference between the successive values of K_a of the acid is greater than about a factor of 20, it is appropriate to break down the calculations of the concentrations of the ions in solution into a series of steps.

Glossary

diprotic acid
: acid containing two ionizable hydrogen atoms per molecule. A diprotic acid ionizes in two steps

diprotic base
: base capable of accepting two protons. The protons are accepted in two steps

monoprotic acid
: acid containing one ionizable hydrogen atom per molecule

stepwise ionization
: process in which an acid is ionized by losing protons sequentially

triprotic acid
: acid that contains three ionizable hydrogen atoms per molecule; ionization of triprotic acids occurs in three steps

---

This page titled 2.5: Polyprotic Acids is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.5: Polyprotic Acids** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.6: Buffers

Learning Objectives

- Describe the composition and function of acid–base buffers
- Calculate the pH of a buffer before and after the addition of added acid or base

A mixture of a weak acid and its conjugate base (or a mixture of a weak base and its conjugate acid) is called a buffer solution, or a buffer. Buffer solutions resist a change in pH when small amounts of a strong acid or a strong base are added (Figure 2.6.1). A solution of acetic acid (CH_3COOH and sodium acetate CH_3COONa) is an example of a buffer that consists of a weak acid and its salt. An example of a buffer that consists of a weak base and its salt is a solution of ammonia ($NH_3(aq)$) and ammonium chloride ($NH_4Cl(aq)$).



Figure 2.6.1: (a) The unbuffered solution on the left and the buffered solution on the right have the same pH (pH 8); they are basic, showing the yellow color of the indicator methyl orange at this pH. (b) After the addition of 1 mL of a 0.01-M HCl solution, the buffered solution has not detectably changed its pH but the unbuffered solution has become acidic, as indicated by the change in color of the methyl orange, which turns red at a pH of about 4. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

How Buffers Work

A mixture of acetic acid and sodium acetate is acidic because the K_a of acetic acid is greater than the K_b of its conjugate base acetate. It is a buffer because it contains both the weak acid and its salt. Hence, it acts to keep the hydronium ion concentration (and the pH) almost constant by the addition of either a small amount of a strong acid or a strong base. If we add a base such as sodium hydroxide, the hydroxide ions react with the few hydronium ions present. Then more of the acetic acid reacts with water, restoring the hydronium ion concentration almost to its original value:

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq)$$

The pH changes very little. If we add an acid such as hydrochloric acid, most of the hydronium ions from the hydrochloric acid combine with acetate ions, forming acetic acid molecules:

$$H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq) \longrightarrow CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

Thus, there is very little increase in the concentration of the hydronium ion, and the pH remains practically unchanged (Figure 2.6.2).

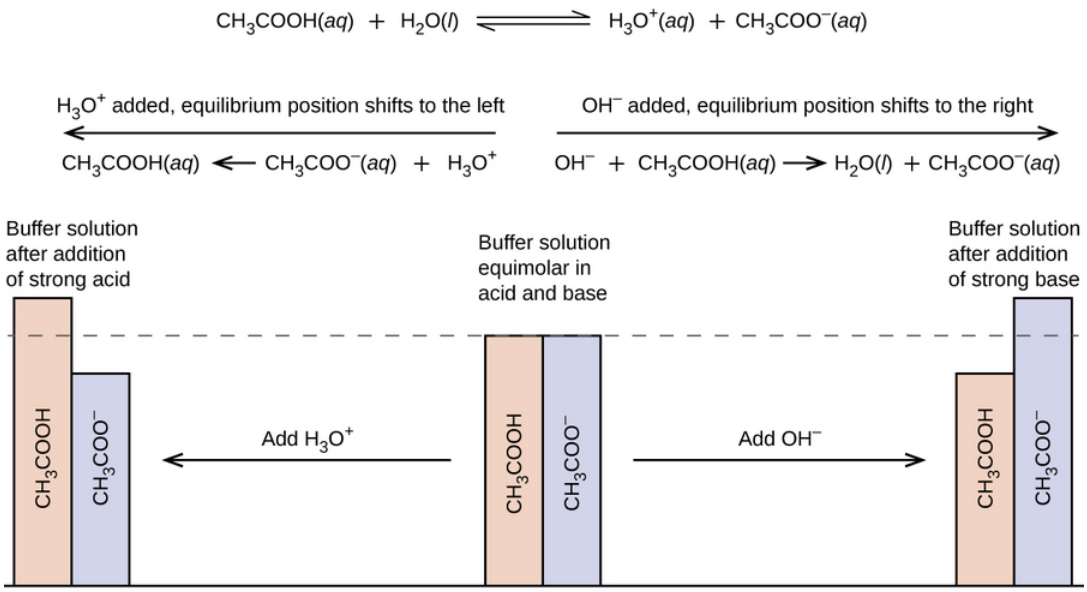


Figure 2.6.2: This diagram shows the buffer action of these reactions.

A mixture of ammonia and ammonium chloride is basic because the K_b for ammonia is greater than the K_a for the ammonium ion. It is a buffer because it also contains the salt of the weak base. If we add a base (hydroxide ions), ammonium ions in the buffer react with the hydroxide ions to form ammonia and water and reduce the hydroxide ion concentration almost to its original value:

$$\mathrm{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

If we add an acid (hydronium ions), ammonia molecules in the buffer mixture react with the hydronium ions to form ammonium ions and reduce the hydronium ion concentration almost to its original value:

$$\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NH_3}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

The three parts of the following example illustrate the change in pH that accompanies the addition of base to a buffered solution of a weak acid and to an unbuffered solution of a strong acid.

Example 2.6.1: pH Changes in Buffered and Unbuffered Solutions

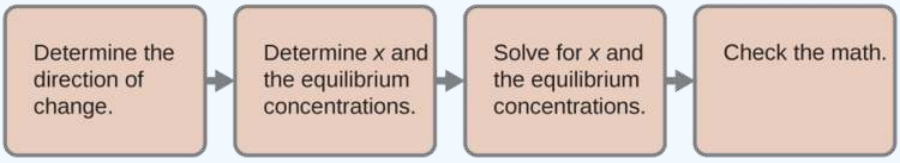
Acetate buffers are used in biochemical studies of enzymes and other chemical components of cells to prevent pH changes that might change the biochemical activity of these compounds.

a. Calculate the pH of an acetate buffer that is a mixture with 0.10 *M* acetic acid and 0.10 *M* sodium acetate.
b. Calculate the pH after 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH is added to 100 mL of this buffer, giving a solution with a volume of 101 mL.

Solution

a. Calculate the pH of an acetate buffer that is a mixture with 0.10 *M* acetic acid and 0.10 *M* sodium acetate.

To determine the pH of the buffer solution we use a typical equilibrium calculation (as illustrated in earlier Examples):



1. *Determine the direction of change.* The equilibrium in a mixture of H_3O^+, $CH_3CO_2^-$, and CH_3CO_2H is:

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}(aq)$$

The equilibrium constant for CH_3CO_2H is not given, so we look it up in Table E1: $K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$. With $[CH_3CO_2H] = [CH_3CO_2^-] = 0.10$ *M* and $[H_3O^+] = \sim 0$ *M*, the reaction shifts to the right to form H_3O^+.

2. *Determine* x *and equilibrium concentrations*. A table of changes and concentrations follows:

	$[CH_3CO_2H] + [H_2O] \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + [CH_3CO_2^-]$		
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.10	~0	0.10
Change (*M*)	$-x$	x	x
Equilibrium constant (*M*)	$0.10 - x$	x	$0.10 + x$

- *Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations.* We find:

$$x = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M$$

- and

$$[H_3O^+] = 0 + x = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M$$

Thus:

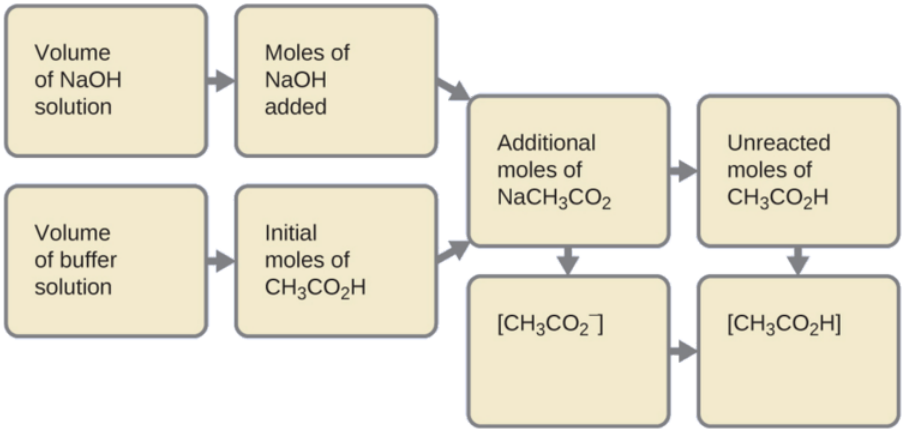
$$pH = -\log[H_3O^+] = -\log(1.8 \times 10^{-5})$$

$$= 4.74$$

4. *Check the work*. If we calculate all calculated equilibrium concentrations, we find that the equilibrium value of the reaction coefficient, $Q = K_a$.

(b) Calculate the pH after 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH is added to 100 mL of this buffer, giving a solution with a volume of 101 mL.

First, we calculate the concentrations of an intermediate mixture resulting from the complete reaction between the acid in the buffer and the added base. Then we determine the concentrations of the mixture at the new equilibrium:



1. *Determine the moles of NaOH.* One milliliter (0.0010 L) of 0.10 *M* NaOH contains:

$$0.0010\ \cancel{L} \times \left(\frac{0.10\ \text{mol NaOH}}{1\ \cancel{L}}\right) = 1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{mol NaOH}$$

2. *Determine the moles of CH_2CO_2H.* Before reaction, 0.100 L of the buffer solution contains:

$$0.100\ \cancel{L} \times \left(\frac{0.100\ \text{mol } CH_3CO_2H}{1\ \cancel{L}}\right) = 1.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{mol } CH_3CO_2H$$

3. *Solve for the amount of $NaCH_3CO_2$ produced.* The 1.0×10^{-4} mol of NaOH neutralizes 1.0×10^{-4} mol of CH_3CO_2H, leaving:

$$(1.0 \times 10^{-2}) - (0.01 \times 10^{-2}) = 0.99 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{mol } CH_3CO_2H$$

and producing 1.0×10^{-4} mol of $NaCH_3CO_2$. This makes a total of:

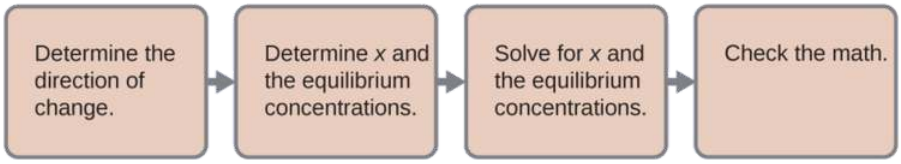
[\mathrm{(1.0×10^{−2})+(0.01×10^{−2})=1.01×10^{−2}\:mol\:NaCH_3CO_2} \nonumber \]

4. *Find the molarity of the products.* After reaction, CH_3CO_2H and $NaCH_3CO_2$ are contained in 101 mL of the intermediate solution, so:

$$[CH_3CO_2H] = \frac{9.9 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mol}}{0.101 \text{ L}} = 0.098\ M$$

$$[NaCH_3CO_2] = \frac{1.01 \times 10^{-2} \text{ mol}}{0.101 \text{ L}} = 0.100\ M$$

Now we calculate the pH after the intermediate solution, which is 0.098 *M* in CH_3CO_2H and 0.100 *M* in $NaCH_3CO_2$, comes to equilibrium. The calculation is very similar to that in part (a) of this example:



This series of calculations gives a pH = 4.75. Thus the addition of the base barely changes the pH of the solution.

(c) For comparison, calculate the pH after 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH is added to 100 mL of a solution of an unbuffered solution with a pH of 4.74 (a 1.8×10^{-5}-*M* solution of HCl). The volume of the final solution is 101 mL.

Solution

This 1.8×10^{-5}-*M* solution of HCl has the same hydronium ion concentration as the 0.10-*M* solution of acetic acid-sodium acetate buffer described in part (a) of this example. The solution contains:

$$0.100 \text{ L} \times \left(\frac{1.8 \times 10^{-5} \text{ mol HCl}}{1 \text{ L}} \right) = 1.8 \times 10^{-6} \text{ mol HCl}$$

As shown in part (b), 1 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH contains 1.0×10^{-4} mol of NaOH. When the NaOH and HCl solutions are mixed, the HCl is the limiting reagent in the reaction. All of the HCl reacts, and the amount of NaOH that remains is:

$$(1.0 \times 10^{-4}) - (1.8 \times 10^{-6}) = 9.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M$$

The concentration of NaOH is:

$$\frac{9.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M \text{ NaOH}}{0.101 \text{ L}} = 9.7 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

The pOH of this solution is:

$$\text{pOH} = -\log[\text{OH}^-] = -\log(9.7 \times 10^{-4}) = 3.01$$

The pH is:

$$\text{pH} = 14.00 - \text{pOH} = 10.99$$

The pH changes from 4.74 to 10.99 in this unbuffered solution. This compares to the change of 4.74 to 4.75 that occurred when the same amount of NaOH was added to the buffered solution described in part (b).

? Exercise 2.6.1

Show that adding 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* HCl changes the pH of 100 mL of a 1.8×10^{-5} *M* HCl solution from 4.74 to 3.00.

Answer

Initial pH of 1.8×10^{-5} *M* HCl; pH = −log[H_3O^+] = −log[1.8×10^{-5}] = 4.74

Moles of H_3O^+ added by addition of 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* HCl: 0.10 moles/L × 0.0010 L = 1.0×10^{-4} moles; final pH after addition of 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* HCl:

$$\text{pH} = -\log[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = -\log\left(\frac{\text{total moles H}_3\text{O}^+}{\text{total volume}}\right) = -\log\left(\frac{1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{mol} + 1.8 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol}}{101\ \text{mL}\left(\frac{1\ \text{L}}{1000\ \text{mL}}\right)}\right) = 3.00$$

Buffer Capacity

Buffer solutions do not have an unlimited capacity to keep the pH relatively constant (Figure 2.6.3). If we add so much base to a buffer that the weak acid is exhausted, no more buffering action toward the base is possible. On the other hand, if we add an excess of acid, the weak base would be exhausted, and no more buffering action toward any additional acid would be possible. In fact, we do not even need to exhaust all of the acid or base in a buffer to overwhelm it; its buffering action will diminish rapidly as a given component nears depletion.



Figure 2.6.3: The indicator color (methyl orange) shows that a small amount of acid added to a buffered solution of pH 8 (beaker on the left) has little affect on the buffered system (middle beaker). However, a large amount of acid exhausts the buffering capacity of the solution and the pH changes dramatically (beaker on the right). (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

The buffer capacity is the amount of acid or base that can be added to a given volume of a buffer solution before the pH changes significantly, usually by one unit. Buffer capacity depends on the amounts of the weak acid and its conjugate base that are in a buffer mixture. For example, 1 L of a solution that is 1.0 *M* in acetic acid and 1.0 *M* in sodium acetate has a greater buffer capacity than 1 L of a solution that is 0.10 *M* in acetic acid and 0.10 *M* in sodium acetate even though both solutions have the same pH. The first solution has more buffer capacity because it contains more acetic acid and acetate ion.

Selection of Suitable Buffer Mixtures

There are two useful rules of thumb for selecting buffer mixtures:

1. A good buffer mixture should have about equal concentrations of both of its components. A buffer solution has generally lost its usefulness when one component of the buffer pair is less than about 10% of the other. Figure 2.6.4 shows an acetic acid-acetate ion buffer as base is added. The initial pH is 4.74. A change of 1 pH unit occurs when the acetic acid concentration is reduced to 11% of the acetate ion concentration.

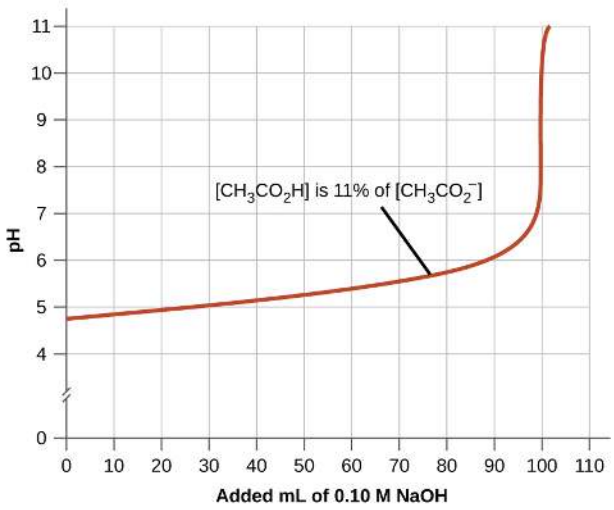


Figure 2.6.4: The graph, an illustration of buffering action, shows change of pH as an increasing amount of a 0.10-M NaOH solution is added to 100 mL of a buffer solution in which, initially, $[CH_3CO_2H] = 0.10\ M$ and $[CH_3CO_2^-] = 0.10\ M$.

2. Weak acids and their salts are better as buffers for pHs less than 7; weak bases and their salts are better as buffers for pHs greater than 7.

Blood is an important example of a buffered solution, with the principal acid and ion responsible for the buffering action being carbonic acid, H_2CO_3, and the bicarbonate ion, HCO_3^-. When an excess of hydrogen ion enters the blood stream, it is removed primarily by the reaction:

$$H_3O^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq) \longrightarrow H_2CO_3(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

When an excess of the hydroxide ion is present, it is removed by the reaction:

$$OH^-(aq) + H_2CO_3(aq) \longrightarrow HCO_3^-(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

The pH of human blood thus remains very near 7.35, that is, slightly basic. Variations are usually less than 0.1 of a pH unit. A change of 0.4 of a pH unit is likely to be fatal.

The Henderson-Hasselbalch Approximation

The ionization-constant expression for a solution of a weak acid can be written as:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][A^-]}{[HA]}$$

Rearranging to solve for $[H_3O^+]$, we get:

$$[H_3O^+] = K_a \times \frac{[HA]}{[A^-]}$$

Taking the negative logarithm of both sides of this equation, we arrive at:

$$-\log[H_3O^+] = -\log K_a - \log\frac{[HA]}{[A^-]}$$

which can be written as

$$pH = pK_a + \log\frac{[A^-]}{[HA]}$$

where pK_a is the negative of the common logarithm of the ionization constant of the weak acid ($pK_a = -\log K_a$). This equation relates the pH, the ionization constant of a weak acid, and the concentrations of the weak acid and its salt in a buffered solution.

Scientists often use this expression, called the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation, to calculate the pH of buffer solutions. It is important to note that the "*x* is small" assumption must be valid to use this equation.

Lawrence Joseph Henderson and Karl Albert Hasselbalch

Lawrence Joseph Henderson (1878–1942) was an American physician, biochemist and physiologist, to name only a few of his many pursuits. He obtained a medical degree from Harvard and then spent 2 years studying in Strasbourg, then a part of Germany, before returning to take a lecturer position at Harvard. He eventually became a professor at Harvard and worked there his entire life. He discovered that the acid-base balance in human blood is regulated by a buffer system formed by the dissolved carbon dioxide in blood. He wrote an equation in 1908 to describe the carbonic acid-carbonate buffer system in blood. Henderson was broadly knowledgeable; in addition to his important research on the physiology of blood, he also wrote on the adaptations of organisms and their fit with their environments, on sociology and on university education. He also founded the Fatigue Laboratory, at the Harvard Business School, which examined human physiology with specific focus on work in industry, exercise, and nutrition.

In 1916, Karl Albert Hasselbalch (1874–1962), a Danish physician and chemist, shared authorship in a paper with Christian Bohr in 1904 that described the Bohr effect, which showed that the ability of hemoglobin in the blood to bind with oxygen was inversely related to the acidity of the blood and the concentration of carbon dioxide. The pH scale was introduced in 1909 by another Dane, Sørensen, and in 1912, Hasselbalch published measurements of the pH of blood. In 1916, Hasselbalch expressed Henderson's equation in logarithmic terms, consistent with the logarithmic scale of pH, and thus the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation was born.

Medicine: The Buffer System in Blood

The normal pH of human blood is about 7.4. The carbonate buffer system in the blood uses the following equilibrium reaction:

$$\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq)$$

The concentration of carbonic acid, $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ is approximately 0.0012 *M*, and the concentration of the hydrogen carbonate ion, $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$, is around 0.024 *M*. Using the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation and the pK_a of carbonic acid at body temperature, we can calculate the pH of blood:

$$\mathrm{pH} = \mathrm{p}K_a + \log\frac{[\mathrm{base}]}{[\mathrm{acid}]} = 6.1 + \log\frac{0.024}{0.0012} = 7.4$$

The fact that the $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ concentration is significantly lower than that of the $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ ion may seem unusual, but this imbalance is due to the fact that most of the by-products of our metabolism that enter our bloodstream are acidic. Therefore, there must be a larger proportion of base than acid, so that the capacity of the buffer will not be exceeded.

Lactic acid is produced in our muscles when we exercise. As the lactic acid enters the bloodstream, it is neutralized by the $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ ion, producing $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$. An enzyme then accelerates the breakdown of the excess carbonic acid to carbon dioxide and water, which can be eliminated by breathing. In fact, in addition to the regulating effects of the carbonate buffering system on the pH of blood, the body uses breathing to regulate blood pH. If the pH of the blood decreases too far, an increase in breathing removes $\mathrm{CO_2}$ from the blood through the lungs driving the equilibrium reaction such that $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ is lowered. If the blood is too alkaline, a lower breath rate increases $\mathrm{CO_2}$ concentration in the blood, driving the equilibrium reaction the other way, increasing $[\mathrm{H^+}]$ and restoring an appropriate pH.

Summary

A solution containing a mixture of an acid and its conjugate base, or of a base and its conjugate acid, is called a buffer solution. Unlike in the case of an acid, base, or salt solution, the hydronium ion concentration of a buffer solution does not change greatly when a small amount of acid or base is added to the buffer solution. The base (or acid) in the buffer reacts with the added acid (or base).

Key Equations

- $pK_a = -\log K_a$
- $pK_b = -\log K_b$
- $\mathrm{pH} = pK_a + \log \frac{[A^-]}{[HA]}$

Glossary

buffer capacity

amount of an acid or base that can be added to a volume of a buffer solution before its pH changes significantly (usually by one pH unit)

buffer

mixture of a weak acid or a weak base and the salt of its conjugate; the pH of a buffer resists change when small amounts of acid or base are added

Henderson-Hasselbalch equation

equation used to calculate the pH of buffer solutions

This page titled 2.6: Buffers is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.6: Buffers** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.7: Acid-Base Titrations

Learning Objectives

- Interpret titration curves for strong and weak acid-base systems
- Compute sample pH at important stages of a titration
- Explain the function of acid-base indicators

As seen in the chapter on the stoichiometry of chemical reactions, titrations can be used to quantitatively analyze solutions for their acid or base concentrations. In this section, we will explore the changes in the concentrations of the acidic and basic species present in a solution during the process of a titration.

Titration Curves

Previously, when we studied acid-base reactions in solution, we focused only on the point at which the acid and base were stoichiometrically equivalent. No consideration was given to the pH of the solution before, during, or after the neutralization.

Example 2.7.1: Calculating pH for Titration Solutions: Strong Acid/Strong Base

A titration is carried out for 25.00 mL of 0.100 *M* HCl (strong acid) with 0.100 *M* of a strong base NaOH the titration curve is shown in Figure 2.7.1. Calculate the pH at these volumes of added base solution:

a. 0.00 mL
b. 12.50 mL
c. 25.00 mL
d. 37.50 mL

Solution

Since HCl is a strong acid, we can assume that all of it dissociates. The initial concentration of H_3O^+ is $[H_3O^+]_0 = 0.100\ M$. When the base solution is added, it also dissociates completely, providing OH^- ions. The H_3O^+ and OH^- ions neutralize each other, so only those of the two that were in excess remain, and their concentration determines the pH. Thus, the solution is initially acidic (pH < 7), but eventually all the hydronium ions present from the original acid are neutralized, and the solution becomes neutral. As more base is added, the solution turns basic.

The total initial amount of the hydronium ions is:

$$\mathrm{n}(H^+)_0 = [H_3O^+]_0 \times 0.02500\ \mathrm{L} = 0.002500\ \mathrm{mol}$$

Once X mL of the 0.100-*M* base solution is added, the number of moles of the OH^- ions introduced is:

$$\mathrm{n}(OH^-)_0 = 0.100\ M \times \mathrm{X\ mL} \times \left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{L}}{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}\right)$$

The total volume becomes:

$$V = (25.00\ \mathrm{mL} + \mathrm{X\ mL})\left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{L}}{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}\right)$$

The number of moles of H_3O^+ becomes:

$$\mathrm{n}(H^+) = \mathrm{n}(H^+)_0 - \mathrm{n}(OH^-)_0 = 0.002500\ \mathrm{mol} - 0.100\ M \times \mathrm{X\ mL} \times \left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{L}}{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}\right)$$

The concentration of H_3O^+ is:

$$[H_3O^+] = \frac{\mathrm{n}(H^+)}{\mathrm{V}} = \frac{0.002500\ \mathrm{mol} - 0.100\ M \times \mathrm{X\ mL} \times \left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{L}}{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}\right)}{(25.00\ \mathrm{mL} + \mathrm{X\ mL})\left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{L}}{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}\right)}$$

$$= \frac{0.002500 \text{ mol} \times \left(\frac{1000 \text{ mL}}{1 \text{ L}}\right) - 0.100\ M \times \text{X mL}}{25.00 \text{ mL} + \text{X mL}}$$

with the definition of pH:

$$\text{pH} = -\log([\text{H}_3\text{O}^+]) \tag{2.7.1}$$

The preceding calculations work if $\text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0 - \text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0 > 0$ and so $\text{n}(\text{H}^+) > 0$. When $\text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0 = \text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0$, the H_3O^+ ions from the acid and the OH^- ions from the base mutually neutralize. At this point, the only hydronium ions left are those from the autoionization of water, and there are no OH^- particles to neutralize them. Therefore, in this case:

$$[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = [\text{OH}^-],\ [\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = K_\text{w} = 1.0 \times 10^{-14};\ [\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = 1.0 \times 10^{-7}$$

$$\text{pH} = -\log(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 7.00$$

Finally, when $\text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0 > \text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0$, there are not enough H_3O^+ ions to neutralize all the OH^- ions, and instead of $\text{n}(\text{H}^+) = \text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0 - \text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0$, we calculate: $\text{n}(\text{OH}^-) = \text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0 - \text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0$

In this case:

$$[\text{OH}^-] = \frac{\text{n}(\text{OH}^-)}{V} = \frac{0.100\ M \times \text{X mL} \times \left(\frac{1\text{ L}}{1000\text{ mL}}\right) - 0.002500 \text{ mol}}{(25.00 \text{ mL} + \text{X mL})\left(\frac{1\text{ L}}{1000\text{ mL}}\right)}$$

$$= \frac{0.100\ M \times \text{X mL} - 0.002500 \text{ mol} \times \left(\frac{1000\text{ mL}}{1\text{ L}}\right)}{25.00 \text{ mL} + \text{X mL}}$$

then using the definition of pOH and its relationship to pH in room temperature aqueous solutios (Equation 2.7.1):

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= 14 - pOH \\ &= 14 + \log([OH^-]) \end{aligned}$$

Let us now consider the four specific cases presented in this problem:

(a) X = 0 mL

$$[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = \frac{\text{n}(\text{H}^+)}{V} = \frac{0.002500 \text{ mol} \times \left(\frac{1000 \text{ mL}}{1 \text{ L}}\right)}{25.00 \text{ mL}} = 0.1\ M$$

then using the definition of pH (Equation 2.7.1):

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= -\log(0.100) \\ &= 1.000 \end{aligned}$$

(b) X = 12.50 mL

$$[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = \frac{\text{n}(\text{H}^+)}{V} = \frac{0.002500 \text{ mol} \times \left(\frac{1000 \text{ mL}}{1 \text{ L}}\right) - 0.100\ M \times 12.50 \text{ mL}}{25.00 \text{ mL} + 12.50 \text{ mL}} = 0.0333\ M$$

then using the definition of pH (Equation 2.7.1):

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= -\log(0.0333) \\ &= 1.477 \end{aligned}$$

(c) X = 25.00 mL

Since the volumes and concentrations of the acid and base solutions are the same:

$$\text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0 = \text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0$$

and

$$pH = 7.000$$

as described earlier.

(d) X = 37.50 mL

In this case:

$$\mathrm{n(OH^-)_0 > n(H^+)_0}$$

$$[\mathrm{OH^-}] = \frac{\mathrm{n(OH^-)}}{V} = \frac{0.100\ M \times 35.70\ \mathrm{mL} - 0.002500\ \mathrm{mol} \times \left(\frac{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}{1\ \mathrm{L}}\right)}{25.00\ \mathrm{mL} + 37.50\ \mathrm{mL}} = 0.0200\ M$$

then using the definition of pH (Equation 2.7.1):

$$\begin{aligned}[pH = 14 - pOH \\ &= 14 + \log([OH^-]) \\ &= 14 + \log(0.0200) \\ &= 12.30\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 2.7.1

Calculate the pH for the strong acid/strong base titration between 50.0 mL of 0.100 *M* $HNO_3(aq)$ and 0.200 *M* NaOH (titrant) at the listed volumes of added base:

a. 0.00 mL,
b. 15.0 mL,
c. 25.0 mL, and
d. 40.0 mL.

Answer a

0.00: 1.000

Answer b

15.0: 1.5111

Answer c

25.0: 7e. Do not delete this text first.

Answer d

40.0: 12.523

In Example 2.7.1, we calculated pH at four points during a titration. Table 2.7.1 shows a detailed sequence of changes in the pH of a strong acid and a weak acid in a titration with NaOH.

Table 2.7.1: pH Values in the Titrations of a Strong Acid with a Strong Base and of a Weak Acid with a Strong Base

Volume of 0.100 M NaOH Added (mL)	Moles of NaOH Added	pH Values 0.100 M HCl[1]	pH Values 0.100 M CH_3CO_2H[2]
0.0	0.0	1.00	2.87
5.0	0.00050	1.18	4.14
10.0	0.00100	1.37	4.57
15.0	0.00150	1.60	4.92
20.0	0.00200	1.95	5.35

Volume of 0.100 M NaOH Added (mL)	Moles of NaOH Added	pH Values 0.100 M HCl[1]	pH Values 0.100 M CH_3CO_2H[2]
22.0	0.00220	2.20	5.61
24.0	0.00240	2.69	6.13
24.5	0.00245	3.00	6.44
24.9	0.00249	3.70	7.14
25.0	0.00250	7.00	8.72
25.1	0.00251	10.30	10.30
25.5	0.00255	11.00	11.00
26.0	0.00260	11.29	11.29
28.0	0.00280	11.75	11.75
30.0	0.00300	11.96	11.96
35.0	0.00350	12.22	12.22
40.0	0.00400	12.36	12.36
45.0	0.00450	12.46	12.46
50.0	0.00500	12.52	12.52

1. Titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 *M* HCl (0.00250 mol of HCl) with 0.100 *M* NaOH.
2. Titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 *M* CH_3CO_2H (0.00250 mol of CH_3CO_2H) with 0.100 *M* NaOH.

The simplest acid-base reactions are those of a strong acid with a strong base. Table 2.7.1 shows data for the titration of a 25.0-mL sample of 0.100 *M* hydrochloric acid with 0.100 *M* sodium hydroxide. The values of the pH measured after successive additions of small amounts of NaOH are listed in the first column of this table, and are graphed in Figure 2.7.1, in a form that is called a titration curve. The pH increases slowly at first, increases rapidly in the middle portion of the curve, and then increases slowly again. The point of inflection (located at the midpoint of the vertical part of the curve) is the equivalence point for the titration. It indicates when equivalent quantities of acid and base are present. For the titration of a strong acid with a strong base, the equivalence point occurs at a pH of 7.00 and the points on the titration curve can be calculated using solution stoichiometry (Table 2.7.1 and Figure 2.7.1).

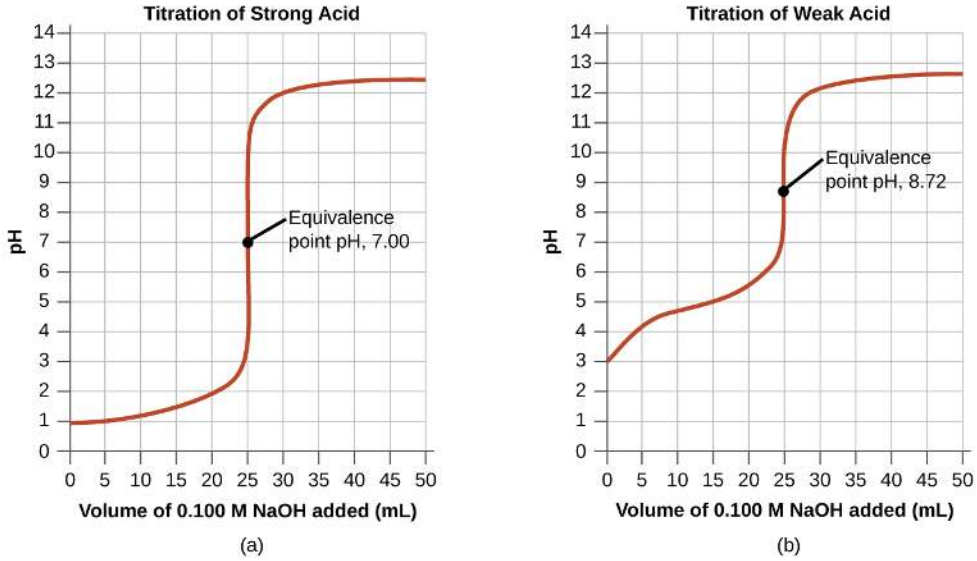


Figure 2.7.1: (a) The titration curve for the titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 M HCl (strong acid) with 0.100 M NaOH (strong base) has an equivalence point of 7.00 pH. (b) The titration curve for the titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 M CH_3CO_2H (weak acid) with 0.100 M NaOH (strong base) has an equivalence point of 8.72 pH.

Two graphs are shown. The first graph on the left is titled “Titration of Weak Acid.” The horizontal axis is labeled “Volume of 0.100 M N a O H added (m L).” Markings and vertical gridlines are provided every 5 units from 0 to 50. The vertical axis is labeled “p H” and is marked every 1 unis beginning at 0 extending to 14. A red curve is drawn on the graph which increases steadily from the point (0, 3) up to about (20, 5.5) after which the graph has a vertical section from (25, 7) up to (25, 11). The graph then levels off to a value of about 12.5 from about 40 m L up to 50 m L. The midpoint of the vertical segment of the curve is labeled “Equivalence point p H, 8.72.” The second graph on the right is titled “Titration of Strong Acid.” The horizontal axis is labeled “Volume of 0.100 M N a O H added (m L).” Markings and vertical gridlines are provided every 5 units from 0 to 50. The vertical axis is labeled “p H” and is marked every 1 units beginning at 0 extending to 14. A red curve is drawn on the graph which increases gradually from the point (0, 1) up to about (22.5, 2.2) after which the graph has a vertical section from (25, 4) up to nearly (25, 11). The graph then levels off to a value of about 12.4 from about 40 m L up to 50 m L. The midpoint of the vertical segment of the curve is labeled “Equivalence point p H, 7.00.”

The titration of a weak acid with a strong base (or of a weak base with a strong acid) is somewhat more complicated than that just discussed, but it follows the same general principles. Let us consider the titration of 25.0 mL of 0.100 *M* acetic acid (a weak acid) with 0.100 *M* sodium hydroxide and compare the titration curve with that of the strong acid. Table 2.7.1 gives the pH values during the titration, Figure 2.7.1*b* shows the titration curve.

Although the initial volume and molarity of the acids are the same, there are important differences between the two titration curves. The titration curve for the weak acid begins at a higher value (less acidic) and maintains higher pH values up to the equivalence point. This is because acetic acid is a weak acid, which is only partially ionized. The pH at the equivalence point is also higher (8.72 rather than 7.00) due to the hydrolysis of acetate, a weak base that raises the pH:

$$CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2H(l) + OH^-(aq)$$

After the equivalence point, the two curves are identical because the pH is dependent on the excess of hydroxide ion in both cases.

Example 2.7.2: Titration of a Weak Acid with a Strong Base

The titration curve shown in Figure 2.7.1*b* is for the titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 *M* CH_3CO_2H with 0.100 *M* NaOH. The reaction can be represented as:

$$CH_3CO_2H + OH^- \longrightarrow CH_3CO_2^- + H_2O$$

a. What is the initial pH before any amount of the NaOH solution has been added? $K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$ for CH_3CO_2H.
b. Find the pH after 25.00 mL of the NaOH solution have been added.
c. Find the pH after 12.50 mL of the NaOH solution has been added.
d. Find the pH after 37.50 mL of the NaOH solution has been added.

Solution

(a) Assuming that the dissociated amount is small compared to 0.100 *M*, we find that:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][CH_3CO_2^-]}{[CH_3CO_2H]} \approx \frac{[H_3O^+]^2}{[CH_3CO_2H]_0}$$

and

$$[H_3O^+] = \sqrt{K_a \times [CH_3CO_2H]} = \sqrt{1.8 \times 10^{-5} \times 0.100} = 1.3 \times 10^{-3}$$

$$pH = -\log(1.3 \times 10^{-3}) = 2.87$$

(b) After 25.00 mL of NaOH are added, the number of moles of NaOH and CH_3CO_2H are equal because the amounts of the solutions and their concentrations are the same. All of the CH_3CO_2H has been converted to $CH_3CO_2^-$. The concentration of the $CH_3CO_2^-$ ion is:

$$\frac{0.00250 \text{ mol}}{0.0500 \text{ L}} = 0.0500 \text{ M} CH_3CO_2^-$$

The equilibrium that must be focused on now is the basicity equilibrium for $CH_3CO_2^-$:

$$CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2H(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

so we must determine K_b for the base by using the ion product constant for water:

$$K_b = \frac{[CH_3CO_2H][OH^-]}{[CH_3CO_2^-]}$$

$$K_a = \frac{[CH_3CO_2^-][H^+]}{[CH_3CO_2H]}, \text{ so } \frac{[CH_3CO_2H]}{[CH_3CO_2^-]} = \frac{[H^+]}{K_a}.$$

Since $K_w = [H^+][OH^-]$:

$$K_b = \frac{[H^+][OH^-]}{K_a} \tag{2.7.2}$$

$$= \frac{K_w}{K_a} \tag{2.7.3}$$

$$= \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{1.8 \times 10^{-5}} \tag{2.7.4}$$

$$= 5.6 \times 10^{-10} \tag{2.7.5}$$

Let us denote the concentration of each of the products of this reaction, CH_3CO_2H and OH^-, as *x*. Using the assumption that *x* is small compared to 0.0500 *M*, $K_b = \frac{x^2}{0.0500\ M}$, and then:

$$x = [OH^-] = 5.3 \times 10^{-6}$$

$$pOH = -\log(5.3 \times 10^{-6}) = 5.28$$

$$pH = 14.00 - 5.28 = 8.72$$

Note that the pH at the equivalence point of this titration is significantly greater than 7.

(c) In (a), 25.00 mL of the NaOH solution was added, and so practically all the CH_3CO_2H was converted into $CH_3CO_2^-$. In this case, only 12.50 mL of the base solution has been introduced, and so only half of all the CH_3CO_2H is converted into $CH_3CO_2^-$. The total initial number of moles of CH_3CO_2H is 0.02500L × 0.100 $\underline{M}$ = 0.00250 mol, and so after adding the NaOH, the numbers of moles of CH_3CO_2H and $CH_3CO_2^-$ are both approximately equal to $\frac{0.00250 \text{ mol}}{2} = 0.00125$ mol, and their concentrations are the same.

Since the amount of the added base is smaller than the original amount of the acid, the equivalence point has not been reached, the solution remains a buffer, and we can use the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation:

$$\text{pH} = \text{p}K_\text{a} + \log\frac{[\text{Base}]}{[\text{Acid}]} = -\log(K_\text{a}) + \log\frac{[\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2^-]}{[\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}]} = -\log(1.8\times10^{-5}) + \log(1)$$

(as the concentrations of CH_3CO_2^- and $\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ are the same)

Thus:

$$\text{pH} = -\log(1.8\times10^{-5}) = 4.74$$

(the pH = the pK_a at the halfway point in a titration of a weak acid)

(d) After 37.50 mL of NaOH is added, the amount of NaOH is 0.03750 L × 0.100 *M* = 0.003750 mol NaOH. Since this is past the equivalence point, the excess hydroxide ions will make the solution basic, and we can again use stoichiometric calculations to determine the pH:

$$[\text{OH}^-] = \frac{(0.003750\text{ mol} - 0.00250\text{ mol})}{0.06250\text{ L}} = 2.00\times10^{-2}\ M$$

So:

$$\text{pOH} = -\log(2.00\times10^{-2}) = 1.70,\ \text{and pH} = 14.00 - 1.70 = 12.30$$

Note that this result is the same as for the strong acid-strong base titration example provided, since the amount of the strong base added moves the solution past the equivalence point.

? Exercise 2.7.2

Calculate the pH for the weak acid/strong base titration between 50.0 mL of 0.100 *M* HCOOH(*aq*) (formic acid) and 0.200 *M* NaOH (titrant) at the listed volumes of added base:

a. 0.00 mL,
b. 15.0 mL,
c. 25.0 mL, and
d. 30.0 mL.

Answer a

0.00 mL: 2.37

Answer b

15.0 mL: 3.92

Answer c

25.00 mL: 8.29

Answer d

30.0 mL: 12.097

Acid-Base Indicators

Certain organic substances change color in dilute solution when the hydronium ion concentration reaches a particular value. For example, phenolphthalein is a colorless substance in any aqueous solution with a hydronium ion concentration greater than 5.0 × 10^{-9} *M* (pH < 8.3). In more basic solutions where the hydronium ion concentration is less than 5.0 × 10^{-9} *M* (pH > 8.3), it is red or pink. Substances such as phenolphthalein, which can be used to determine the pH of a solution, are called acid-base indicators. Acid-base indicators are either weak organic acids or weak organic bases.

The equilibrium in a solution of the acid-base indicator methyl orange, a weak acid, can be represented by an equation in which we use HIn as a simple representation for the complex methyl orange molecule:

$$\underbrace{\text{HIn(aq)}}_{\text{red}} + \text{H}_2\text{O(l)} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_3\text{O}^+\text{(aq)} + \underbrace{\text{In}^-\text{(aq)}}_{\text{yellow}}$$

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][In^-]}{[HIn]} = 4.0 \times 10^{-4}$$

The anion of methyl orange, In^-, is yellow, and the nonionized form, HIn, is red. When we add acid to a solution of methyl orange, the increased hydronium ion concentration shifts the equilibrium toward the nonionized red form, in accordance with Le Chatelier's principle. If we add base, we shift the equilibrium towards the yellow form. This behavior is completely analogous to the action of buffers.

An indicator's color is the visible result of the ratio of the concentrations of the two species In^- and HIn. If most of the indicator (typically about 60−90% or more) is present as In^-, then we see the color of the In^- ion, which would be yellow for methyl orange. If most is present as HIn, then we see the color of the HIn molecule: red for methyl orange. For methyl orange, we can rearrange the equation for K_a and write:

$$\frac{[In^-]}{[HIn]} = \frac{[\text{substance with yellow color}]}{[\text{substance with red color}]} = \frac{K_a}{[H_3O^+]} \tag{2.7.6}$$

Equation 2.7.6 shows us how the ratio of $\frac{[In^-]}{[HIn]}$ varies with the concentration of hydronium ion. The above expression describing the indicator equilibrium can be rearranged:

$$\frac{[H_3O^+]}{K_a} = \frac{[HIn]}{[In^-]} \tag{2.7.7}$$

$$\log\left(\frac{[H_3O^+]}{K_a}\right) = \log\left(\frac{[HIn]}{[In^-]}\right) \tag{2.7.8}$$

$$\log([H_3O^+]) - \log(K_a) = -\log\left(\frac{[In^-]}{[HIn]}\right) \tag{2.7.9}$$

$$-pH + pK_a = -\log\left(\frac{[In^-]}{[HIn]}\right) \tag{2.7.10}$$

$$pH = pK_a + \log\left(\frac{[In^-]}{[HIn]}\right) \tag{2.7.11}$$

or in general terms

$$pH = pK_a + \log\left(\frac{[base]}{[acid]}\right) \tag{2.7.12}$$

Equation 2.7.12 is the same as the *Henderson-Hasselbalch equation*, which can be used to describe the equilibrium of indicators.

When $[H_3O^+]$ has the same numerical value as K_a, the ratio of $[In^-]$ to [HIn] is equal to 1, meaning that 50% of the indicator is present in the red form (HIn) and 50% is in the yellow ionic form (In^-), and the solution appears orange in color. When the hydronium ion concentration increases to 8×10^{-4} *M* (a pH of 3.1), the solution turns red. No change in color is visible for any further increase in the hydronium ion concentration (decrease in pH). At a hydronium ion concentration of 4×10^{-5} *M* (a pH of 4.4), most of the indicator is in the yellow ionic form, and a further decrease in the hydronium ion concentration (increase in pH) does not produce a visible color change. The pH range between 3.1 (red) and 4.4 (yellow) is the color-change interval of methyl orange; the pronounced color change takes place between these pH values.

There are many different acid-base indicators that cover a wide range of pH values and can be used to determine the approximate pH of an unknown solution by a process of elimination. Universal indicators and pH paper contain a mixture of indicators and exhibit different colors at different pHs. Figure 2.7.2 presents several indicators, their colors, and their color-change intervals.

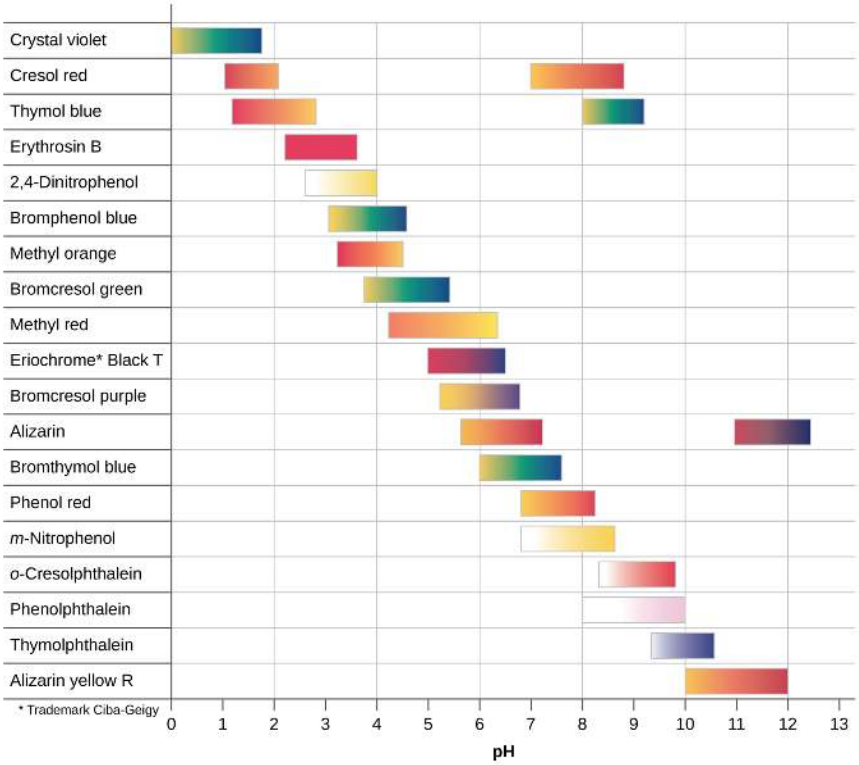


Figure 2.7.2: This chart illustrates the ranges of color change for several acid-base indicators.

Titration curves help us pick an indicator that will provide a sharp color change at the equivalence point. The best selection would be an indicator that has a color change interval that brackets the pH at the equivalence point of the titration.

The color change intervals of three indicators are shown in Figure 2.7.3. The equivalence points of both the titration of the strong acid and of the weak acid are located in the color-change interval of phenolphthalein. We can use it for titrations of either strong acid with strong base or weak acid with strong base.

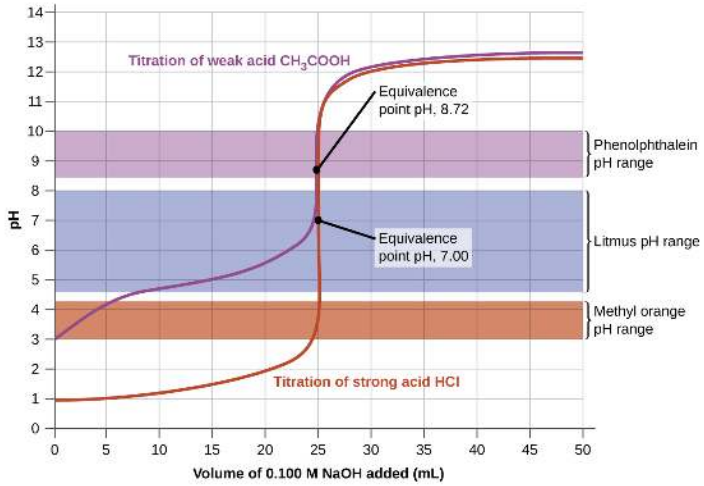


Figure 2.7.3: The graph shows a titration curve for the titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 M CH_3CO_2H (weak acid) with 0.100 M NaOH (strong base) and the titration curve for the titration of HCl (strong acid) with NaOH (strong base). The pH ranges for the color change of phenolphthalein, litmus, and methyl orange are indicated by the shaded areas.

A graph is shown which is titled “Titration of Weak Acid.” The horizontal axis is labeled “Volume of 0.100 M N a O H added (m L)” and begins at 0 with markings every 5 units up to 50. The vertical axis is labeled “p H” and begins at 0 and increases by single units up to 14. A red curve is drawn on the graph. The curve begins at (0, 3) and passes through the points (5, 4.1), (10, 4.7), (15, 5), (20, 5.5), and (22.5, 6), after which it rapidly increases, forming a vertical section centered at the point (25, 8.7). The rapid increase of the curve then levels off and the curve passes through the points (30, 12), (35, 12.4), (40, 12.5), (45, 12.6), and (50, 12.6). A brown rectangle extends horizontally across the graph covering the p H of 3 to 4.2 range. To the right, this rectangle is labeled “Methyl orange p H range.” A blue rectangle extends horizontally across the graph covering the p H of 4.6 to 8 range. To the right, this rectangle is labeled “Litmus p H range.” A purple rectangle extends horizontally across the graph covering the p H of 8.4 to 10 range. To the right, this rectangle is labeled “Phenolphthalein p H range.” The midpoint of the vertical segment of the curve is labeled “Equivalence point p H, 8.72.”

Litmus is a suitable indicator for the HCl titration because its color change brackets the equivalence point. However, we should not use litmus for the CH_3CO_2H titration because the pH is within the color-change interval of litmus when only about 12 mL of NaOH has been added, and it does not leave the range until 25 mL has been added. The color change would be very gradual, taking place during the addition of 13 mL of NaOH, making litmus useless as an indicator of the equivalence point.

We could use methyl orange for the HCl titration, but it would not give very accurate results: (1) It completes its color change slightly before the equivalence point is reached (but very close to it, so this is not too serious); (2) it changes color, as Figure 2.7.2 demonstrates, during the addition of nearly 0.5 mL of NaOH, which is not so sharp a color change as that of litmus or phenolphthalein; and (3) it goes from yellow to orange to red, making detection of a precise endpoint much more challenging than the colorless to pink change of phenolphthalein. Figure 2.7.2 shows us that methyl orange would be completely useless as an indicator for the CH_3CO_2H titration. Its color change begins after about 1 mL of NaOH has been added and ends when about 8 mL has been added. The color change is completed long before the equivalence point (which occurs when 25.0 mL of NaOH has been added) is reached and hence provides no indication of the equivalence point.

We base our choice of indicator on a calculated pH, the pH at the equivalence point. At the equivalence point, equimolar amounts of acid and base have been mixed, and the calculation becomes that of the pH of a solution of the salt resulting from the titration.

Summary

A titration curve is a graph that relates the change in pH of an acidic or basic solution to the volume of added titrant. The characteristics of the titration curve are dependent on the specific solutions being titrated. The pH of the solution at the equivalence point may be greater than, equal to, or less than 7.00. The choice of an indicator for a given titration depends on the expected pH at the equivalence point of the titration, and the range of the color change of the indicator.

Glossary

acid-base indicator

organic acid or base whose color changes depending on the pH of the solution it is in

color-change interval

range in pH over which the color change of an indicator takes place

titration curve

plot of the pH of a solution of acid or base versus the volume of base or acid added during a titration

---

This page titled 2.7: Acid-Base Titrations is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.7: Acid-Base Titrations** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.8: Acid-Base Equilibria (Exercises)

14.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases

Q14.1.1

Write equations that show NH_3 as both a conjugate acid and a conjugate base.

S14.1.1

One example for NH_3 as a conjugate acid: $NH_2^- + H^+ \longrightarrow NH_3$; as a conjugate base: $NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \longrightarrow NH_3(aq) + H_2O(l)$

Q14.1.2

Write equations that show $H_2PO_4^-$ acting both as an acid and as a base.

Q14.1.3

Show by suitable net ionic equations that each of the following species can act as a Brønsted-Lowry acid:

a. H_3O^+
b. HCl
c. NH_3
d. CH_3CO_2H
e. NH_4^+
f. HSO_4^-

S14.1.3

a. $H_3O^+(aq) \longrightarrow H^+(aq) + H_2O_{(l)}$;
b. $HCl(l) \longrightarrow H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$;
c. $NH_3(aq) \longrightarrow H^+(aq) + NH_2^-(aq)$;
d. $CH_3CO_2H(aq) \longrightarrow H^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq)$;
e. $NH_4^+(aq) \longrightarrow H^+(aq) + NH_3(aq)$;
f. $HSO_4^-(aq) \longrightarrow H^+(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq)$

Q14.1.4

Show by suitable net ionic equations that each of the following species can act as a Brønsted-Lowry acid:

a. HNO_3
b. PH_4^+
c. H_2S
d. CH_3CH_2COOH
e. $H_2PO_4^-$
f. HS^-

Q14.1.5

Show by suitable net ionic equations that each of the following species can act as a Brønsted-Lowry base:

a. H_2O
b. OH^-
c. NH_3
d. CN^-
e. S^{2-}
f. $H_2PO_4^-$

S14.1.5

a. $H_2O_{(l)} + H^+(aq) \longrightarrow H_3O^+(aq)$
b. $OH^-(aq) + H^+(aq) \longrightarrow H_2O_{(l)}$

c. $NH_3(aq) + H^+(aq) \longrightarrow NH_4^+(aq)$;
d. $CN^-(aq) + H^+(aq) \longrightarrow HCN(aq)$
e. $S^{2-}(aq) + H^+(aq) \longrightarrow HS^-(aq)$
f. $H_2PO_4^-(aq) + H^+(aq) \longrightarrow H_3PO_4(aq)$

Q14.1.6

Show by suitable net ionic equations that each of the following species can act as a Brønsted-Lowry base:

a. HS^-
b. PO_4^{3-}
c. NH_2^-
d. C_2H_5OH
e. O^{2-}
f. $H_2PO_4^-$

Q14.1.7

What is the conjugate acid of each of the following? What is the conjugate base of each?

a. OH^-
b. H_2O
c. HCO_3^-
d. NH_3
e. HSO_4^-
f. H_2O_2
g. HS^-
h. $H_5N_2^+$

S14.1.7

H_2O, O^{2-}; H_3O^+, OH^- ; H_2CO_3, CO_3^{2-}; NH_4^+, NH_2^- ; H_2SO_4, SO_4^{2-}; $H_3O_2^+$, HO_2^-; H_2S; S^{2-}; $H_6N_2^{2+}$, H_4N_2

Q14.1.8

What is the conjugate acid of each of the following? What is the conjugate base of each?

a. H_2S
b. $H_2PO_4^-$
c. PH_3
d. HS^-
e. HSO_3^-
f. $H_3O_2^+$
g. H_4N_2
h. CH_3OH

Q14.1.9

Identify and label the Brønsted-Lowry acid, its conjugate base, the Brønsted-Lowry base, and its conjugate acid in each of the following equations:

a. $HNO_3 + H_2O \longrightarrow H_3O^+ + NO_3^-$
b. $CN^- + H_2O \longrightarrow HCN + OH^-$
c. $H_2SO_4 + Cl^- \longrightarrow HCl + HSO_4^-$
d. $HSO_4^- + OH^- \longrightarrow SO_4^{2-} + H_2O$
e. $O^{2-} + H_2O \longrightarrow 2\ OH^-$
f. $[Cu(H_2O)_3(OH)]^+ + [Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+} \longrightarrow [Cu(H_2O)_4]^{2+} + [Al(H_2O)_5(OH)]^{2+}$
g. $H_2S + NH_2^- \longrightarrow HS^- + NH_3$

S14.1.9

The labels are Brønsted-Lowry acid = BA; its conjugate base = CB; Brønsted-Lowry base = BB; its conjugate acid = CA. HNO_3(BA), H_2O(BB), H_3O^+(CA), NO_3^-(CB); CN^-(BB), H_2O(BA), HCN(CA), OH^- (CB); H_2SO_4(BA), Cl^-(BB), HCl(CA), HSO_4^-(CB); HSO_4^-(BA), OH^-(BB), SO_4^{2-}(CB), H_2O(CA); O^{2-}(BB), H2O(BA) OH^- (CB and CA); $[Cu(H_2O)_3(OH)]^+$(BB), $[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$(BA), $[Cu(H_2O)_4]^{2+}$(CA), $[Al(H_2O)_5(OH)]^{2+}$(CB); H_2S(BA), NH_2^-(BB), HS^-(CB), NH_3(CA)

Q14.1.10

Identify and label the Brønsted-Lowry acid, its conjugate base, the Brønsted-Lowry base, and its conjugate acid in each of the following equations:

a. $NO_2^- + H_2O \longrightarrow HNO_2 + OH^-$
b. $HBr + H_2O \longrightarrow H_3O^+ + Br^-$
c. $HS^- + H_2O \longrightarrow H_2S + OH^-$
d. $H_2PO_4^- + OH^- \longrightarrow HPO_4^{2-} + H_2O$
e. $H_2PO_4^- + HCl \longrightarrow H_3PO_4 + Cl^-$
f. $[Fe(H_2O)_5(OH)]^{2+} + [Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+} \longrightarrow [Fe(H_2O)_6]^{3+} + [Al(H_2O)_5(OH)]^{2+}$
g. $CH_3OH + H^- \longrightarrow CH_3O^- + H_2$

Q14.1.11

What are amphiprotic species? Illustrate with suitable equations.

S14.1.11

Amphiprotic species may either gain or lose a proton in a chemical reaction, thus acting as a base or an acid. An example is H_2O.

- As an acid: $H_2O(aq) + NH_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$.
- As a base: $H_2O(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$

Q14.1.12

State which of the following species are amphiprotic and write chemical equations illustrating the amphiprotic character of these species:

a. H_2O
b. $H_2PO_4^-$
c. S^{2-}
d. CO_3^{2-}
e. HSO_4^-

Q14.1.13

State which of the following species are amphiprotic and write chemical equations illustrating the amphiprotic character of these species.

a. NH_3
b. HPO_4^-
c. Br^-
d. NH_4^+
e. ASO_4^{3-}

S14.113

amphiprotic: $NH_3 + H_3O^+ \longrightarrow NH_4OH + H_2O$, $NH_3 + OCH_3^- \longrightarrow NH_2^- + CH_3OH$; $HPO_4^{2-} + OH^- \longrightarrow PO_4^{3-} + H_2O$, $HPO_4^{2-} + HClO_4 \longrightarrow H_2PO_4^- + ClO_4^-$; not amphiprotic: Br^-; NH_4^+; AsO_4^{3-}

Q14.1.14

Is the self ionization of water endothermic or exothermic? The ionization constant for water (K_w) is 2.9×10^{-14} at 40 °C and 9.6×10^{-14} at 60 °C.

14.2: pH and pOH

Q14.2.1

Explain why a sample of pure water at 40 °C is neutral even though $[H_3O^+] = 1.7 \times 10^{-7}$ *M*. K_w is 2.9×10^{-14} at 40 °C.

S14.2.1

In a neutral solution $[H_3O^+] = [OH^-]$. At 40 °C,

$[H_3O^+] = [OH^-] = (2.910^{-14})^{1/2} = 1.7 \times 10^{-7}$.

Q14.2.2

The ionization constant for water (K_w) is 2.9×10^{-14} at 40 °C. Calculate $[H_3O^+]$, $[OH^-]$, pH, and pOH for pure water at 40 °C.

Q14.2.3

The ionization constant for water (K_w) is 9.614×10^{-14} at 60 °C. Calculate $[H_3O^+]$, $[OH^-]$, pH, and pOH for pure water at 60 °C.

S14.2.3

$x = 3.101 \times 10^{-7}$ M $= [H_3O^+] = [OH^-]$

pH = -log $3.101 \times 10^{-7} = -(-6.5085) = 6.5085$

pOH = pH = 6.5085

Q14.2.4

Calculate the pH and the pOH of each of the following solutions at 25 °C for which the substances ionize completely:

a. 0.200 *M* HCl
b. 0.0143 *M* NaOH
c. 3.0 *M* HNO_3
d. 0.0031 *M* $Ca(OH)_2$

Q14.2.5

Calculate the pH and the pOH of each of the following solutions at 25 °C for which the substances ionize completely:

a. 0.000259 *M* $HClO_4$
b. 0.21 *M* NaOH
c. 0.000071 *M* $Ba(OH)_2$
d. 2.5 *M* KOH

S14.2.5

pH = 3.587; pOH = 10.413; pH = 0.68; pOH = 13.32; pOH = 3.85; pH = 10.15; pH = −0.40; pOH = 14.4

Q14.2.6

What are the pH and pOH of a solution of 2.0 M HCl, which ionizes completely?

Q14.2.6

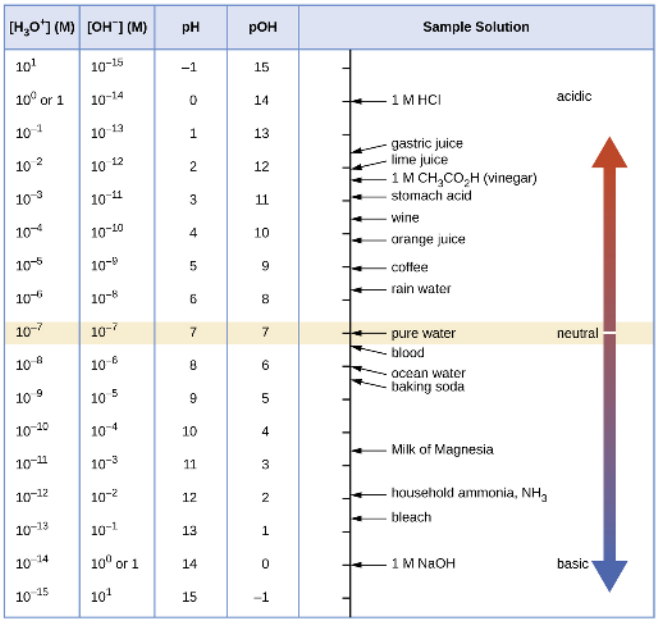
What are the hydronium and hydroxide ion concentrations in a solution whose pH is 6.52?

S14.2.6

$[H_3O^+] = 3.0 \times 10^{-7}$ *M*; $[OH^-] = 3.3 \times 10^{-8}$ *M*

Q14.2.7

Calculate the hydrogen ion concentration and the hydroxide ion concentration in wine from its pH. See below Figure for useful information.



Q14.2.8

Calculate the hydronium ion concentration and the hydroxide ion concentration in lime juice from its pH. See Figure for useful information.

S14.2.9

$[H_3O^+] = 1 \times 10^{-2}\ M$; $[OH^-] = 1 \times 10^{-12}\ M$

Q14.2.9

The hydronium ion concentration in a sample of rainwater is found to be $1.7 \times 10^{-6}\ M$ at 25 °C. What is the concentration of hydroxide ions in the rainwater?

Q14.2.10

The hydroxide ion concentration in household ammonia is $3.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$ at 25 °C. What is the concentration of hydronium ions in the solution?

S14.2.10

$[OH^-] = 3.1 \times 10^{-12}\ M$

14.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases

Q14.3.1

Explain why the neutralization reaction of a strong acid and a weak base gives a weakly acidic solution.

Q14.3.2

Explain why the neutralization reaction of a weak acid and a strong base gives a weakly basic solution.

The salt ionizes in solution, but the anion slightly reacts with water to form the weak acid. This reaction also forms OH^-, which causes the solution to be basic.

Q14.3.3

Use this list of important industrial compounds (and Figure) to answer the following questions regarding: CaO, $Ca(OH)_2$, CH_3CO_2H, CO_2, HCl, H_2CO_3, HF, HNO_2, HNO_3, H_3PO_4, H_2SO_4, NH_3, NaOH, Na_2CO_3.

a. Identify the strong Brønsted-Lowry acids and strong Brønsted-Lowry bases.
b. List those compounds in that can behave as Brønsted-Lowry acids with strengths lying between those of H_3O^+ and H_2O.

c. List those compounds in that can behave as Brønsted-Lowry bases with strengths lying between those of H_2O and OH^-.

Q14.3.4

The odor of vinegar is due to the presence of acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H, a weak acid. List, in order of descending concentration, all of the ionic and molecular species present in a 1-*M* aqueous solution of this acid.

S14.3.4

$[H_2O] > [CH_3CO_2H] > [H_3O^+] \approx [CH_3CO_2^-] > [OH^-]$

Q14.3.5

Household ammonia is a solution of the weak base NH_3 in water. List, in order of descending concentration, all of the ionic and molecular species present in a 1-*M* aqueous solution of this base.

Q14.3.4

Explain why the ionization constant, K_a, for H_2SO_4 is larger than the ionization constant for H_2SO_3.

S14.3.4

The oxidation state of the sulfur in H_2SO_4 is greater than the oxidation state of the sulfur in H_2SO_3.

Q14.3.7

Explain why the ionization constant, K_a, for HI is larger than the ionization constant for HF.

Q14.3.8

Gastric juice, the digestive fluid produced in the stomach, contains hydrochloric acid, HCl. Milk of Magnesia, a suspension of solid $Mg(OH)_2$ in an aqueous medium, is sometimes used to neutralize excess stomach acid. Write a complete balanced equation for the neutralization reaction, and identify the conjugate acid-base pairs.

S14.3.8

$$\underset{\text{BB}}{\text{Mg(OH)}_2}(s) + \underset{\text{BA}}{\text{HCl}}(aq) \longrightarrow \underset{\text{CB}}{\text{Mg}^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\underset{\text{CA}}{\text{Cl}^-}(aq) + 2\,\text{H}_2\text{O}(l)$$

Q14.3.9

Nitric acid reacts with insoluble copper(II) oxide to form soluble copper(II) nitrate, $Cu(NO_3)_2$, a compound that has been used to prevent the growth of algae in swimming pools. Write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction of an aqueous solution of HNO_3 with CuO.

Q14.3.10

What is the ionization constant at 25 °C for the weak acid $CH_3NH_3^+$, the conjugate acid of the weak base CH_3NH_2, $K_b = 4.4 \times 10^{-4}$.

S14.3.10

$K_a = 2.3 \times 10^{-11}$

Q14.3.11

What is the ionization constant at 25 °C for the weak acid $(CH_3)_2NH_2^+$, the conjugate acid of the weak base $(CH_3)_2NH$, $K_b = 7.4 \times 10^{-4}$?

Q14.3.12

Which base, CH_3NH_2 or $(CH_3)_2NH$, is the strongest base? Which conjugate acid, $(CH_3)_2NH_2^+$ or $(CH_3)_2NH$, is the strongest acid?

S14.3.12

The strongest base or strongest acid is the one with the larger K_b or K_a, respectively. In these two examples, they are $(CH_3)_2NH$ and $CH_3NH_3^+$.

Q14.3.3

Which is the stronger acid, NH_4^+ or HBrO?

Q14.3.14

Which is the stronger base, $(CH_3)_3N$ or $H_2BO_3^-$?

S14.3.14

triethylamine.

Q14.3.15

Predict which acid in each of the following pairs is the stronger and explain your reasoning for each.

a. H_2O or HF
b. $B(OH)_3$ or $Al(OH)_3$
c. HSO_3^- or HSO_4^-
d. NH_3 or H_2S
e. H_2O or H_2Te

Q14.3.16

Predict which compound in each of the following pairs of compounds is more acidic and explain your reasoning for each.

a. HSO_4^- or $HSeO_4^-$
b. NH_3 or H_2O
c. PH_3 or HI
d. NH_3 or PH_3
e. H_2S or HBr

S14.3.16

a. HSO_4^-; higher electronegativity of the central ion. H_2O;
b. NH_3 is a base and water is neutral, or decide on the basis of K_a values. HI;
c. PH_3 is weaker than HCl; HCl is weaker than HI. Thus, PH_3 is weaker than HI.
d. PH_3; in binary compounds of hydrogen with nonmetals, the acidity increases for the element lower in a group.
e. HBr; in a period, the acidity increases from left to right; in a group, it increases from top to bottom. Br is to the left and below S, so HBr is the stronger acid.

Q14.3.17

Rank the compounds in each of the following groups in order of increasing acidity or basicity, as indicated, and explain the order you assign.

a. acidity: HCl, HBr, HI
b. basicity: H_2O, OH^-, H^-, Cl^-
c. basicity: $Mg(OH)_2$, $Si(OH)_4$, $ClO_3(OH)$ (Hint: Formula could also be written as $HClO_4$).
d. acidity: HF, H_2O, NH_3, CH_4

Q14.3.18

Rank the compounds in each of the following groups in order of increasing acidity or basicity, as indicated, and explain the order you assign.

a. acidity: $NaHSO_3$, $NaHSeO_3$, $NaHSO_4$
b. basicity: BrO_2^-, ClO_2^-, IO_2^-
c. acidity: HOCl, HOBr, HOI
d. acidity: HOCl, HOClO, $HOClO_2$, $HOClO_3$
e. basicity: NH_2^-, HS^-, HTe^-, PH_2^-
f. basicity: BrO^-, BrO_2^-, BrO_3^-, BrO_4^-

S14.3.18

a. $NaHSeO_3 < NaHSO_3 < NaHSO_4$; in polyoxy acids, the more electronegative central element—S, in this case—forms the stronger acid. The larger number of oxygen atoms on the central atom (giving it a higher oxidation state) also creates a greater release of hydrogen atoms, resulting in a stronger acid. As a salt, the acidity increases in the same manner.
b. $ClO_2^- < BrO_2^- < IO_2^-$; the basicity of the anions in a series of acids will be the opposite of the acidity in their oxyacids. The acidity increases as the electronegativity of the central atom increases. Cl is more electronegative than Br, and I is the least electronegative of the three.
c. HOI < HOBr < HOCl; in a series of the same form of oxyacids, the acidity increases as the electronegativity of the central atom increases. Cl is more electronegative than Br, and I is the least electronegative of the three.
d. $HOCl < HOClO < HOClO_2 < HOClO_3$; in a series of oxyacids of the same central element, the acidity increases as the number of oxygen atoms increases (or as the oxidation state of the central atom increases).
e. $HTe^- < HS^- << PH_2^- < NH_2^-$; PH_2^- and NH_2^- are anions of weak bases, so they act as strong bases toward H^+. HTe^- and HS^- are anions of weak acids, so they have less basic character. In a periodic group, the more electronegative element has the more basic anion.
f. $BrO_4^- < BrO_3^- < BrO_2^- < BrO^-$; with a larger number of oxygen atoms (that is, as the oxidation state of the central ion increases), the corresponding acid becomes more acidic and the anion consequently less basic.

Q14.3.19

Both HF and HCN ionize in water to a limited extent. Which of the conjugate bases, F^- or CN^-, is the stronger base? See Table.

Q14.3.20

The active ingredient formed by aspirin in the body is salicylic acid, $C_6H_4OH(CO_2H)$. The carboxyl group ($-CO_2H$) acts as a weak acid. The phenol group (an OH group bonded to an aromatic ring) also acts as an acid but a much weaker acid. List, in order of descending concentration, all of the ionic and molecular species present in a 0.001-*M* aqueous solution of $C_6H_4OH(CO_2H)$.

$$[H_2O] > [C_6H_4OH(CO_2H)] > [H^+]_0 > [C_6H_4OH(CO_2)^-] \gg [C_6H_4O(CO_2H)^-] > [OH^-]$$

What do we represent when we write:

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq)? \tag{2.8.1}$$

Q14.3.21

Explain why equilibrium calculations are not necessary to determine ionic concentrations in solutions of certain strong electrolytes such as NaOH and HCl. Under what conditions are equilibrium calculations necessary as part of the determination of the concentrations of all ions of some other strong electrolytes in solution?

S14.3.21

Strong electrolytes are 100% ionized, and, as long as the component ions are neither weak acids nor weak bases, the ionic species present result from the dissociation of the strong electrolyte. Equilibrium calculations are necessary when one (or more) of the ions is a weak acid or a weak base.

Q14.3.22

Are the concentrations of hydronium ion and hydroxide ion in a solution of an acid or a base in water directly proportional or inversely proportional? Explain your answer.

Q14.3.23

What two common assumptions can simplify calculation of equilibrium concentrations in a solution of a weak acid?

S14.3.23

1. Assume that the change in initial concentration of the acid as the equilibrium is established can be neglected, so this concentration can be assumed constant and equal to the initial value of the total acid concentration.
2. Assume we can neglect the contribution of water to the equilibrium concentration of H_3O^+.

Q14.3.24

What two common assumptions can simplify calculation of equilibrium concentrations in a solution of a weak base?

Q14.3.25

Which of the following will increase the percent of NH_3 that is converted to the ammonium ion in water (Hint: Use LeChâtelier's principle.)?

a. addition of NaOH
b. addition of HCl
c. addition of NH_4Cl

S14.3.25

The addition of HCl

Q14.3.26

Which of the following will increase the percent of HF that is converted to the fluoride ion in water?

a. addition of NaOH
b. addition of HCl
c. addition of NaF

Q14.3.27

What is the effect on the concentrations of NO_2^-, HNO_2, and OH^- when the following are added to a solution of KNO_2 in water:

a. HCl
b. HNO_2
c. NaOH
d. NaCl
e. KNO

The equation for the equilibrium is:

$$NO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons HNO_2(aq) + OH^-(aq) \tag{2.8.2}$$

S14.3.27

a. Adding HCl will add H_3O^+ ions, which will then react with the OH^- ions, lowering their concentration. The equilibrium will shift to the right, increasing the concentration of HNO_2, and decreasing the concentration of NO_2^- ions.
b. Adding HNO_2 increases the concentration of HNO_2 and shifts the equilibrium to the left, increasing the concentration of NO_2^- ions and decreasing the concentration of OH^- ions.
c. Adding NaOH adds OH^- ions, which shifts the equilibrium to the left, increasing the concentration of NO_2^- ions and decreasing the concentrations of HNO_2.
d. Adding NaCl has no effect on the concentrations of the ions.
e. Adding KNO_2 adds NO_2^- ions and shifts the equilibrium to the right, increasing the HNO_2 and OH^- ion concentrations.

Q14.3.28

What is the effect on the concentration of hydrofluoric acid, hydronium ion, and fluoride ion when the following are added to separate solutions of hydrofluoric acid?

a. HCl
b. KF
c. NaCl
d. KOH
e. HF

The equation for the equilibrium is:

$$HF(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + F^-(aq) \tag{2.8.3}$$

Q14.3.29

Why is the hydronium ion concentration in a solution that is 0.10 *M* in HCl and 0.10 *M* in HCOOH determined by the concentration of HCl?

S14.3.29

This is a case in which the solution contains a mixture of acids of different ionization strengths. In solution, the HCO_2H exists primarily as HCO_2H molecules because the ionization of the weak acid is suppressed by the strong acid. Therefore, the HCO_2H contributes a negligible amount of hydronium ions to the solution. The stronger acid, HCl, is the dominant producer of hydronium ions because it is completely ionized. In such a solution, the stronger acid determines the concentration of hydronium ions, and the ionization of the weaker acid is fixed by the $[H_3O^+]$ produced by the stronger acid.

Q14.3.30

From the equilibrium concentrations given, calculate K_a for each of the weak acids and K_b for each of the weak bases.

CH_3CO_2H: $[H_3O^+] = 1.34 \times 10^{-3}$ *M*;

$[CH_3CO_2^-] = 1.34 \times 10^{-3}$ *M*;

$[CH_3CO_2H] = 9.866 \times 10^{-2}$ *M*;

ClO^-: $[OH^-] = 4.0 \times 10^{-4}$ *M*;

$[HClO] = 2.38 \times 10^{-5}$ *M*;

$[ClO^-] = 0.273$ *M*;

HCO_2H: $[HCO_2H] = 0.524$ *M*;

$[H_3O^+] = 9.8 \times 10^{-3}$ *M*; $[HCO_2^-] = 9.8 \times 10^{-3}$ *M*;

$C_6H_5NH_3^+$: $[C_6H_5NH_3^+] = 0.233$ *M*;

$[C_6H_5NH_2] = 2.3 \times 10^{-3}$ *M*;

$[H_3O^+] = 2.3 \times 10^{-3}$ *M*

From the equilibrium concentrations given, calculate K_a for each of the weak acids and K_b for each of the weak bases.

NH_3: $[OH^-] = 3.1 \times 10^{-3}$ *M*;

$[NH_4^+] = 3.1 \times 10^{-3}$ *M*;

$[NH_3] = 0.533$ *M*;

HNO_2: $[H_3O^+] = 0.011$ *M*;

$[NO_2^-] = 0.0438$ *M*;

$[HNO_2] = 1.07$ *M*;

$(CH_3)_3N$: $[(CH_3)_3N] = 0.25$ *M*;

$[(CH_3)_3NH^+] = 4.3 \times 10^{-3}$ *M*;

$[OH^-] = 4.3 \times 10^{-3}$ *M*;

NH_4^+ : $[NH_4^+] = 0.100$ *M*;

$[NH_3] = 7.5 \times 10^{-6}$ *M*;

$[H_3O^+] = 7.5 \times 10^{-6}$ *M*

a. $K_b = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$;
b. $K_a = 4.5 \times 10^{-4}$;
c. $K_b = 7.4 \times 10^{-5}$;
d. $K_a = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$

Q14.3.31

Determine K_b for the nitrite ion, NO_2^-. In a 0.10-*M* solution this base is 0.0015% ionized.

Q14.3.32

Determine K_a for hydrogen sulfate ion, HSO_4^-. In a 0.10-*M* solution the acid is 29% ionized.

S14.3.32

$K_a = 1.2 \times 10^{-2}$

Q14.3.33

Calculate the ionization constant for each of the following acids or bases from the ionization constant of its conjugate base or conjugate acid:

a. F^-
b. NH_4^+
c. AsO_4^{3-}
d. $(CH_3)_2NH_2^+$
e. NO_2^-
f. $HC_2O_4^-$ (as a base)

Q14.3.52

Calculate the ionization constant for each of the following acids or bases from the ionization constant of its conjugate base or conjugate acid:

1. HTe^- (as a base)
2. $(CH_3)_3NH^+$
3. $HAsO_4^{3-}$ (as a base)
4. HO_2^- (as a base)
5. $C_6H_5NH_3^+$
6. HSO_3^- (as a base)

S14.3.52

a. $K_b = 4.3 \times 10^{-12}$;
b. $K_a = 1.4 \times 10^{-10}$;
c. $K_b = 1 \times 10^{-7}$;
d. $K_b = 4.2 \times 10^{-3}$;
e. $K_b = 4.2 \times 10^{-3}$;
f. $K_b = 8.3 \times 10^{-13}$

Q14.3.53

For which of the following solutions must we consider the ionization of water when calculating the pH or pOH?

a. 3×10^{-8} *M* HNO_3
b. 0.10 g HCl in 1.0 L of solution
c. 0.00080 g NaOH in 0.50 L of solution
d. 1×10^{-7} *M* $Ca(OH)_2$
e. 0.0245 *M* KNO_3

Q14.3.54

Even though both NH_3 and $C_6H_5NH_2$ are weak bases, NH_3 is a much stronger acid than $C_6H_5NH_2$. Which of the following is correct at equilibrium for a solution that is initially 0.10 *M* in NH_3 and 0.10 *M* in $C_6H_5NH_2$?

a. $[OH^-] = [NH_4^+]$
b. $[NH_4^+] = [C_6H_5NH_3^+]$
c. $[OH^-] = [C_6H_5NH_3^+]$

d. $[NH_3] = [C_6H_5NH_2]$
e. both a and b are correct

is the correct statement.

Q14.3.55

Calculate the equilibrium concentration of the nonionized acids and all ions in a solution that is 0.25 *M* in HCO_2H and 0.10 *M* in HClO.

Q14.3.56

Calculate the equilibrium concentration of the nonionized acids and all ions in a solution that is 0.134 *M* in HNO_2 and 0.120 *M* in HBrO.

S14.3.56

$[H_3O^+] = 7.5 \times 10^{-3}\ M$

$[HNO_2] = 0.126$ $[OH^-] = 1.3 \times 10^{-12}\ M$ $[BrO^-] = 3.2 \times 10^{-8}\ M$ $[HBrO] = 0.120\ M$

Q14.3.57

Calculate the equilibrium concentration of the nonionized bases and all ions in a solution that is 0.25 *M* in CH_3NH_2 and 0.10 *M* in C_5H_5N ($K_b = 1.7 \times 10^{-9}$).

Q14.3.58

Calculate the equilibrium concentration of the nonionized bases and all ions in a solution that is 0.115 *M* in NH_3 and 0.100 *M* in $C_6H_5NH_2$.

S14.3.58

$[OH^-] = [NO_4^+] = 0.0014\ M$

$[NH_3] = 0.144\ M$ $[H_3O^+] = 6.9 \times 10^{-12}\ M$ $[C_6H_5NH_3^+] = 3.9 \times 10^{-8}\ M$ $[C_6H_5NH_2] = 0.100\ M$

Q14.3.59

Using the K_a values in Appendix H, place $Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}$ in the correct location in Figure.

Q14.3.60

Calculate the concentration of all solute species in each of the following solutions of acids or bases. Assume that the ionization of water can be neglected, and show that the change in the initial concentrations can be neglected. Ionization constants can be found in Appendix H and Appendix I.

a. 0.0092 *M* HClO, a weak acid
b. 0.0784 *M* $C_6H_5NH_2$, a weak base
c. 0.0810 *M* HCN, a weak acid
d. 0.11 *M* $(CH_3)_3N$, a weak base
e. 0.120 *M* $Fe(H_2O)_6^{2+}$ a weak acid, $K_a = 1.6 \times 10^{-7}$

S14.3.60

$$\frac{[H_3O^+][ClO^-]}{[HClO]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{(0.0092 - x)} \approx \frac{(x)(x)}{0.0092} = 3.5 \times 10^{-8}$$

Solving for *x* gives $1.79 \times 10^{-5}\ M$. This value is less than 5% of 0.0092, so the assumption that it can be neglected is valid. Thus, the concentrations of solute species at equilibrium are:

$[H_3O^+] = [ClO] = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M$ $[HClO] = 0.00092\ M$ $[OH^-] = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}\ M$;

$$\frac{[C_6H_5NH_3^+][OH^-]}{[C_6H_5NH_2]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{(0.0784 - x)} \approx \frac{(x)(x)}{0.0784} = 4.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

Solving for *x* gives $6.01 \times 10^{-6}\ M$.

This value is less than 5% of 0.0784, so the assumption that it can be neglected is valid. Thus, the concentrations of solute species at equilibrium are: $[CH_3CO_2^-]$ = $[OH^-]$ = 6.0 × 10^{-6} *M* $[C_6H_5NH_2]$ = 0.00784 $[H_3O^+]$ = 1.7× 10^{-9} *M*; $\frac{[H_3O^+][CN^-]}{[HCN]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{(0.0810-x)} \approx \frac{(x)(x)}{0.0810} = 4 \times 10^{-10}$ Solving for *x* gives 5.69 × 10^{-6} *M*. This value is less than 5% of 0.0810, so the assumption that it can be neglected is valid. Thus, the concentrations of solute species at equilibrium are: $[H_3O^+]$ = $[CN^-]$ = 5.7 × 10^{-6} *M* [HCN] = 0.0810 *M* $[OH^-]$ = 1.8 × 10^{-9} *M*; $\frac{[(CH_3)_3NH^+][OH^-]}{[(CH_3)_3N]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{(0.11-x)} \approx \frac{(x)(x)}{0.11} = 7.4 \times 10^{-5}$ Solving for *x* gives 2.85 × 10^{-3} *M*. This value is less than 5% of 0.11, so the assumption that it can be neglected is valid. Thus, the concentrations of solute species at equilibrium are: $[(CH_3)_3NH^+]$ = $[OH^-]$ = 2.9 × 10^{-3} *M* $[(CH_3)_3N]$ = 0.11 *M* $[H_3O^+]$ = 3.5 × 10^{-12} *M*; $\frac{[Fe(H_2O)_5(OH)^+][H_3O^+]}{[Fe(H_2O)_6^{2+}]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{(0.120-x)} \approx \frac{(x)(x)}{0.120} = 1.6 \times 10^{-7}$ Solving for *x* gives 1.39 × 10^{-4} *M*. This value is less than 5% of 0.120, so the assumption that it can be neglected is valid. Thus, the concentrations of solute species at equilibrium are: $[Fe(H_2O)_5(OH)^+]$ = $[H_3O^+]$ = 1.4 × 10^{-4} *M* $[Fe(H_2O)_6^{2+}]$ = 0.120 *M* $[OH^-]$ = 7.2 × 10^{-11} *M*

Q14.3.61

Propionic acid, $C_2H_5CO_2H$ (K_a = 1.34 × 10^{-5}), is used in the manufacture of calcium propionate, a food preservative. What is the hydronium ion concentration in a 0.698-*M* solution of $C_2H_5CO_2H$?

Q14.3.62

White vinegar is a 5.0% by mass solution of acetic acid in water. If the density of white vinegar is 1.007 g/cm^3, what is the pH?

S14.3.62

pH = 2.41

Q14.3.63

The ionization constant of lactic acid, $CH_3CH(OH)CO_2H$, an acid found in the blood after strenuous exercise, is 1.36 × 10^{-4}. If 20.0 g of lactic acid is used to make a solution with a volume of 1.00 L, what is the concentration of hydronium ion in the solution?

Q14.3.64

Nicotine, $C_{10}H_{14}N_2$, is a base that will accept two protons (K_1 = 7 × 10^{-7}, K_2 = 1.4 × 10^{-11}). What is the concentration of each species present in a 0.050-*M* solution of nicotine?

S14.3.64

$[C_{10}H_{14}N_2]$ = 0.049 *M*

$[C_{10}H_{14}N_2H^+]$ = 1.9 × 10^{-4} *M* $[C_{10}H_{14}N_2H_2^{2+}]$ = 1.4 × 10^{-11} *M* $[OH^-]$ = 1.9 × 10^{-4} *M* $[H_3O^+]$ = 5.3 × 10^{-11} *M*

Q14.3.65

The pH of a 0.20-*M* solution of HF is 1.92. Determine K_a for HF from these data.

Q14.3.66

The pH of a 0.15-*M* solution of HSO_4^- is 1.43. Determine K_a for HSO_4^- from these data.

S14.3.66

$K_a = 1.2 \times 10^{-2}$

Q14.3.67

The pH of a 0.10-*M* solution of caffeine is 11.16. Determine K_b for caffeine from these data:

$C_8H_{10}N_4O_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons C_8H_{10}N_4O_2H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$

Q14.3.68

The pH of a solution of household ammonia, a 0.950 M solution of NH_3, is 11.612. Determine K_b for NH_3 from these data.

S14.3.68

$K_b = 1.77 \times 10^{-5}$

14.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions

Q14.4.1

Determine whether aqueous solutions of the following salts are acidic, basic, or neutral:

a. $Al(NO_3)_3$
b. RbI
c. $KHCO_2$
d. CH_3NH_3Br

Q14.4.2

Determine whether aqueous solutions of the following salts are acidic, basic, or neutral:

a. $FeCl_3$
b. K_2CO_3
c. NH_4Br
d. $KClO_4$

S14.4.2

acidic; basic; acidic; neutral

Q14.4.3

Novocaine, $C_{13}H_{21}O_2N_2Cl$, is the salt of the base procaine and hydrochloric acid. The ionization constant for procaine is 7×10^{-6}. Is a solution of novocaine acidic or basic? What are $[H_3O^+]$, $[OH^-]$, and pH of a 2.0% solution by mass of novocaine, assuming that the density of the solution is 1.0 g/mL.

14.5: Polyprotic Acids

Q15.5.1

Which of the following concentrations would be practically equal in a calculation of the equilibrium concentrations in a 0.134-*M* solution of H_2CO_3, a diprotic acid:

- $[H_3O^+]$,
- $[OH^-]$
- $[H_2CO_3]$
- $[HCO_3^-]$
- $[CO_3^{2-}]$

No calculations are needed to answer this question.

S15.5.1

$[H_3O^+]$ and $[HCO_3^-]$ are equal, H_3O^+ and HCO_3^- are practically equal

Q15.5.2

Calculate the concentration of each species present in a 0.050-*M* solution of H_2S.

Q15.5.3

Calculate the concentration of each species present in a 0.010-*M* solution of phthalic acid, $C_6H_4(CO_2H)_2$.

S15.5.3

$C_6H_4(CO_2H)_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + C_6H_4(CO_2H)(CO_2)^-(aq) \quad K_a = 1.1 \times 10^{-3}$

$C_6H_4(CO_2H)(CO_2)(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + C_6H_4(CO_2)_2^{2-}(aq) \quad K_a = 3.9 \times 10^{-6}$

$[C_6H_4(CO_2H)_2]$ 7.2 × 10^{-3} *M*, $[C_6H_4(CO_2H)(CO_2)^-]$ = $[H_3O^+]$ 2.8 × 10^{-3} *M*, $[C_6H_4(CO_2)_2^{2-}]$3.9 × 10^{-6} *M*, $[OH^-]$ 3.6 × 10^{-12} *M*

Q15.5.4

Salicylic acid, $HOC_6H_4CO_2H$, and its derivatives have been used as pain relievers for a long time. Salicylic acid occurs in small amounts in the leaves, bark, and roots of some vegetation (most notably historically in the bark of the willow tree). Extracts of these plants have been used as medications for centuries. The acid was first isolated in the laboratory in 1838.

1. Both functional groups of salicylic acid ionize in water, with K_a = 1.0 × 10^{-3} for the—CO_2H group and 4.2 × 10^{-13} for the −OH group. What is the pH of a saturated solution of the acid (solubility = 1.8 g/L).
2. Aspirin was discovered as a result of efforts to produce a derivative of salicylic acid that would not be irritating to the stomach lining. Aspirin is acetylsalicylic acid, $CH_3CO_2C_6H_4CO_2H$. The $-CO_2H$ functional group is still present, but its acidity is reduced, K_a = 3.0 × 10^{-4}. What is the pH of a solution of aspirin with the same concentration as a saturated solution of salicylic acid (See Part a).
3. Under some conditions, aspirin reacts with water and forms a solution of salicylic acid and acetic acid:

$$CH_3CO_2C_6H_4CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow HOC_6H_4CO_2H(aq) + CH_3CO_2H(aq) \tag{2.8.4}$$

i. Which of the acids salicylic acid or acetic acid produces more hydronium ions in solution such a solution?
ii. What are the concentrations of molecules and ions in a solution produced by the hydrolysis of 0.50 g of aspirin dissolved in enough water to give 75 mL of solution?

Q15.5.5

The ion HTe^- is an amphiprotic species; it can act as either an acid or a base.

a. What is K_a for the acid reaction of HTe^- with H_2O?
b. What is K_b for the reaction in which HTe^- functions as a base in water?
c. Demonstrate whether or not the second ionization of H_2Te can be neglected in the calculation of $[HTe^-]$ in a 0.10 M solution of H_2Te.

S15.5.5

a. $K_{a2} = 1 \times 10^{-5}$;
b. $K_b = 4.3 \times 10^{-12}$;
c. $\frac{[Te^{2-}][H_3O^+]}{[HTe^-]} = \frac{(x)(0.0141+x)}{(0.0141-x)} \approx \frac{(x)(0.0141)}{0.0141} = 1 \times 10^{-5}$. Solving for *x* gives 1 × 10^{-5} *M*. Therefore, compared with 0.014 *M*, this value is negligible (0.071%).

14.6: Buffers

Q14.6.1

Explain why a buffer can be prepared from a mixture of NH_4Cl and NaOH but not from NH_3 and NaOH.

Q14.6.2

Explain why the pH does not change significantly when a small amount of an acid or a base is added to a solution that contains equal amounts of the acid H_3PO_4 and a salt of its conjugate base NaH_2PO_4.

S14.6.2

Excess H_3O^+ is removed primarily by the reaction:

$H_3O^+(aq) + H_2PO_4^-(aq) \longrightarrow H_3PO_4(aq) + H_2O(l)$ Excess base is removed by the reaction: $OH^-(aq) + H_3PO_4(aq) \longrightarrow H_2PO_4^-(aq) + H_2O(l)$

Q14.6.3

Explain why the pH does not change significantly when a small amount of an acid or a base is added to a solution that contains equal amounts of the base NH_3 and a salt of its conjugate acid NH_4Cl.

Q14.6.4

What is [H_3O^+] in a solution of 0.25 *M* CH_3CO_2H and 0.030 *M* $NaCH_3CO_2$?

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq) \quad K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

S14.6.4

[H_3O^+] = 1.5 × 10^{-4} *M*

Q14.6.5

What is [H_3O^+] in a solution of 0.075 *M* HNO_2 and 0.030 *M* $NaNO_2$?

S14.6.6

$$HNO_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + NO_2^-(aq) \quad K_a = 4.5 \times 10^{-5}$$

Q14.6.6

What is [OH^-] in a solution of 0.125 *M* CH_3NH_2 and 0.130 *M* CH_3NH_3Cl?

S14.6.6

$$CH_3NH_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3NH_3^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \quad K_b = 4.4 \times 10^{-4}$$

[OH^-] = 4.2 × 10^{-4} *M*

Q14.6.7

What is [OH^-] in a solution of 1.25 *M* NH_3 and 0.78 *M* NH_4NO_3?

S14.6.7

$$NH_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \quad K_b = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

Q14.6.8

What concentration of NH_4NO_3 is required to make [OH^-] = 1.0 × 10^{-5} in a 0.200-*M* solution of NH_3?

S14.6.8

[NH_4NO_3] = 0.36 *M*

Q14.6.9A

What concentration of NaF is required to make [H_3O^+] = 2.3 × 10^{-4} in a 0.300-*M* solution of HF?

Q14.6.9B

What is the effect on the concentration of acetic acid, hydronium ion, and acetate ion when the following are added to an acidic buffer solution of equal concentrations of acetic acid and sodium acetate:

a. HCl
b. KCH_3CO_2
c. NaCl
d. KOH
e. CH_3CO_2H

S14.6.10

a. The added HCl will increase the concentration of H_3O^+ slightly, which will react with $CH_3CO_2^-$ and produce CH_3CO_2H in the process. Thus, $[CH_3CO_2^-]$ decreases and [CH_3CO_2H] increases.
b. The added KCH_3CO_2 will increase the concentration of $[CH_3CO_2^-]$ which will react with H_3O^+ and produce CH_3CO_2 H in the process. Thus, [H_3O^+] decreases slightly and [CH_3CO_2H] increases.
c. The added NaCl will have no effect on the concentration of the ions.
d. The added KOH will produce OH^- ions, which will react with the H_3O^+, thus reducing [H_3O^+]. Some additional CH_3CO_2H will dissociate, producing $[CH_3CO_2^-]$ ions in the process. Thus, [CH_3CO_2H] decreases slightly and $[CH_3CO_2^-]$ increases.
e. The added CH_3CO_2H will increase its concentration, causing more of it to dissociate and producing more $[CH_3CO_2^-]$ and H_3O^+ in the process. Thus, [H_3O^+] increases slightly and $[CH_3CO_2^-]$ increases.

Q14.6.11

What is the effect on the concentration of ammonia, hydroxide ion, and ammonium ion when the following are added to a basic buffer solution of equal concentrations of ammonia and ammonium nitrate:

a. KI
b. NH_3
c. HI
d. NaOH
e. NH_4Cl

What will be the pH of a buffer solution prepared from 0.20 mol NH_3, 0.40 mol NH_4NO_3, and just enough water to give 1.00 L of solution?

pH = 8.95

Calculate the pH of a buffer solution prepared from 0.155 mol of phosphoric acid, 0.250 mole of KH_2PO_4, and enough water to make 0.500 L of solution.

How much solid $NaCH_3CO_2 \cdot 3H_2O$ must be added to 0.300 L of a 0.50-*M* acetic acid solution to give a buffer with a pH of 5.00? (Hint: Assume a negligible change in volume as the solid is added.)

37 g (0.27 mol)

What mass of NH_4Cl must be added to 0.750 L of a 0.100-*M* solution of NH_3 to give a buffer solution with a pH of 9.26? (Hint: Assume a negligible change in volume as the solid is added.)

Q14.6.1

A buffer solution is prepared from equal volumes of 0.200 *M* acetic acid and 0.600 *M* sodium acetate. Use 1.80×10^{-5} as K_a for acetic acid.

1. What is the pH of the solution?
2. Is the solution acidic or basic?

Q14.6.1

What is the pH of a solution that results when 3.00 mL of 0.034 *M* HCl is added to 0.200 L of the original buffer?

a. pH = 5.222;
b. The solution is acidic. (c) pH = 5.221

Q14.6.1

A 5.36–g sample of NH_4Cl was added to 25.0 mL of 1.00 *M* NaOH and the resulting solution diluted to 0.100 L.

a. What is the pH of this buffer solution?
b. Is the solution acidic or basic?
c. What is the pH of a solution that results when 3.00 mL of 0.034 *M* HCl is added to the solution?

Which acid in [link] is most appropriate for preparation of a buffer solution with a pH of 3.1? Explain your choice.

To prepare the best buffer for a weak acid HA and its salt, the ratio $\frac{[H_3O^+]}{K_a}$ should be as close to 1 as possible for effective buffer action. The $[H_3O^+]$ concentration in a buffer of pH 3.1 is $[H_3O^+] = 10^{-3.1} = 7.94 \times 10^{-4}\ M$

We can now solve for K_a of the best acid as follows:

$$\frac{[H_3O^+]}{K_a} = 1$$

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+]}{1} = 7.94 \times 10^{-4}$$

In [link], the acid with the closest K_a to 7.94×10^{-4} is HF, with a K_a of 7.2×10^{-4}.

Which acid in [link] is most appropriate for preparation of a buffer solution with a pH of 3.7? Explain your choice.

Which base in [link] is most appropriate for preparation of a buffer solution with a pH of 10.65? Explain your choice.

For buffers with pHs > 7, you should use a weak base and its salt. The most effective buffer will have a ratio $\frac{[OH^-]}{K_b}$ that is as close to 1 as possible. The pOH of the buffer is 14.00 − 10.65 = 3.35. Therefore, $[OH^-]$ is $[OH^-] = 10^{-pOH} = 10^{-3.35} = 4.467 \times 10^{-4}$ *M*.

We can now solve for K_b of the best base as follows: $\frac{[OH^-]}{K_b} = 1$ $K_b = [OH^-] = 4.47 \times 10^{-4}$ In [link], the base with the closest K_b to 4.47×10^{-4} is CH_3NH_2, with a $K_b = 4.4 \times 10^{-4}$.

Which base in [link] is most appropriate for preparation of a buffer solution with a pH of 9.20? Explain your choice.

Q14.6.4

Saccharin, $C_7H_4NSO_3H$, is a weak acid ($K_a = 2.1 \times 10^{-2}$). If 0.250 L of diet cola with a buffered pH of 5.48 was prepared from 2.00×10^{-3} g of sodium saccharide, $Na(C_7H_4NSO_3)$, what are the final concentrations of saccharine and sodium saccharide in the solution?

S14.6.4

The molar mass of sodium saccharide is 205.169 g/mol. Using the abbreviations HA for saccharin and NaA for sodium saccharide the number of moles of NaA in the solution is:

9.75×10^{-6} mol. This ionizes initially to form saccharin ions, A^-, with: $[A^-] = 3.9 \times 10^{-5}$ *M*

Q14.6.5

What is the pH of 1.000 L of a solution of 100.0 g of glutamic acid ($C_5H_9NO_4$, a diprotic acid; $K_1 = 8.5 \times 10^{-5}$, $K_2 = 3.39 \times 10^{-10}$) to which has been added 20.0 g of NaOH during the preparation of monosodium glutamate, the flavoring agent? What is the pH when exactly 1 mol of NaOH per mole of acid has been added?

14.7: Acid-Base Titrations

Q14.7.1

Explain how to choose the appropriate acid-base indicator for the titration of a weak base with a strong acid.

S14.7.1

At the equivalence point in the titration of a weak base with a strong acid, the resulting solution is slightly acidic due to the presence of the conjugate acid. Thus, pick an indicator that changes color in the acidic range and brackets the pH at the equivalence point. Methyl orange is a good example.

Q14.7.2

Explain why an acid-base indicator changes color over a range of pH values rather than at a specific pH.

Q14.7.3

Why can we ignore the contribution of water to the concentrations of H_3O^+ in the solutions of following acids:

- 0.0092 *M* HClO, a weak acid
- 0.0810 *M* HCN, a weak acid
- 0.120 *M* $Fe(H_2O)_6^{2+}$ a weak acid, $K_a = 1.6 \times 10^{-7}$

but not the contribution of water to the concentration of OH^-?

S14.7.3

In an acid solution, the only source of OH^- ions is water. We use K_w to calculate the concentration. If the contribution from water was neglected, the concentration of OH^- would be zero.

Q14.7.4

We can ignore the contribution of water to the concentration of OH^- in a solution of the following bases:

0.0784 *M* $C_6H_5NH_2$, a weak base

0.11 *M* $(CH_3)_3N$, a weak base

but not the contribution of water to the concentration of H_3O^+?

Q14.7.5

Draw a curve for a series of solutions of HF. Plot $[H_3O^+]_{total}$ on the vertical axis and the total concentration of HF (the sum of the concentrations of both the ionized and nonionized HF molecules) on the horizontal axis. Let the total concentration of HF vary from 1×10^{-10} *M* to 1×10^{-2} *M*.



A graph is shown that is titled “Plot of [H subscript 3 O superscript +] Against [H F].” The horizontal axis is labeled “[H F], M.” The axis begins at 10 superscript negative 10 and includes markings every 10 superscript 2 units up to 1.0. The vertical axis is labeled “[H subscript 3 O superscript plus], M” and begins at 10 superscript negative 10 and increases by 10 superscript 2 up to 1.0. A black curve starts at the left side of the graph at (10 superscript negative 10, 10 superscript negative 7). The line extends horizontally to a horizontal axis value of 10 superscript negative 8. After this, the line gradually increases at a steady rate to a value just over 10 superscript negative 3 at a horizontal axis value of 10 superscript negative 2.

Q14.7.6

Draw a curve similar to that shown in Figure for a series of solutions of NH_3. Plot $[OH^-]$ on the vertical axis and the total concentration of NH_3 (both ionized and nonionized NH_3 molecules) on the horizontal axis. Let the total concentration of NH_3 vary from 1×10^{-10} *M* to 1×10^{-2} *M*.

Q14.7.7

Calculate the pH at the following points in a titration of 40 mL (0.040 L) of 0.100 *M* barbituric acid ($K_a = 9.8 \times 10^{-5}$) with 0.100 *M* KOH.

1. no KOH added
2. 20 mL of KOH solution added
3. 39 mL of KOH solution added
4. 40 mL of KOH solution added
5. 41 mL of KOH solution added

S14.7.7

1. pH = 2.50;
2. pH = 4.01;
3. pH = 5.60;
4. pH = 8.35;
5. pH = 11.08

Q14.7.8

The indicator dinitrophenol is an acid with a K_a of 1.1×10^{-4}. In a 1.0×10^{-4}-*M* solution, it is colorless in acid and yellow in base. Calculate the pH range over which it goes from 10% ionized (colorless) to 90% ionized (yellow).

This page titled 2.8: Acid-Base Equilibria (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2.9.0: Equilibria of Other Reaction Classes

A general chemistry Libretexts Textbook remixed and remastered from OpenStax's textbook:

General Chemistry

We previously learned about aqueous solutions and their importance, as well as about solubility rules. While this gives us a picture of solubility, that picture is not complete if we look at the rules alone. Solubility equilibrium, which we will explore in this chapter, is a more complex topic that allows us to determine the extent to which a slightly soluble ionic solid will dissolve, and the conditions under which precipitation.

2.9.1 Precipitation and Dissolution

2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases

2.9.3 Coupled Equilibria

2.9.4 Equilibria of Other Reaction Classes (Exercises)

Contributors

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 2.9.0: Equilibria of Other Reaction Classes is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

2.9.1 Precipitation and Dissolution

Learning Objectives

- Write chemical equations and equilibrium expressions representing solubility equilibria
- Carry out equilibrium computations involving solubility, equilibrium expressions, and solute concentrations

The preservation of medical laboratory blood samples, mining of sea water for magnesium, formulation of over-the-counter medicines such as Milk of Magnesia and antacids, and treating the presence of hard water in your home's water supply are just a few of the many tasks that involve controlling the equilibrium between a slightly soluble ionic solid and an aqueous solution of its ions.

In some cases, we want to prevent dissolution from occurring. Tooth decay, for example, occurs when the calcium hydroxylapatite, which has the formula $Ca_5(PO_4)_3(OH)$, in our teeth dissolves. The dissolution process is aided when bacteria in our mouths feast on the sugars in our diets to produce lactic acid, which reacts with the hydroxide ions in the calcium hydroxylapatite. Preventing the dissolution prevents the decay. On the other hand, sometimes we want a substance to dissolve. We want the calcium carbonate in a chewable antacid to dissolve because the CO_3^{2-} ions produced in this process help soothe an upset stomach.

In this section, we will find out how we can control the dissolution of a slightly soluble ionic solid by the application of Le Chatelier's principle. We will also learn how to use the equilibrium constant of the reaction to determine the concentration of ions present in a solution.

The Solubility Product Constant

Silver chloride is what's known as a sparingly soluble ionic solid (Figure 1). Recall from the solubility rules in an earlier chapter that halides of Ag^+ are not normally soluble. However, when we add an excess of solid AgCl to water, it dissolves to a small extent and produces a mixture consisting of a very dilute solution of Ag^+ and Cl^- ions in equilibrium with undissolved silver chloride:

$$\mathrm{AgCl}(s) \underset{\text{precipitation}}{\overset{\text{dissolution}}{\rightleftharpoons}} \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

This equilibrium, like other equilibria, is dynamic; some of the solid AgCl continues to dissolve, but at the same time, Ag^+ and Cl^- ions in the solution combine to produce an equal amount of the solid. At equilibrium, the opposing processes have equal rates.

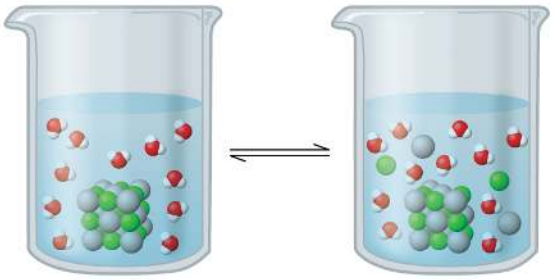


Figure 1: Silver chloride is a sparingly soluble ionic solid. When it is added to water, it dissolves slightly and produces a mixture consisting of a very dilute solution of Ag^+ and Cl^- ions in equilibrium with undissolved silver chloride.

The equilibrium constant for the equilibrium between a slightly soluble ionic solid and a solution of its ions is called the solubility product (K_{sp}) of the solid. Recall from the chapter on solutions and colloids that we use an ion's concentration as an approximation of its activity in a dilute solution. For silver chloride, at equilibrium:

$$\mathrm{AgCl}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

with

$$K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq)][\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)]$$

When looking at dissolution reactions such as this, the solid is listed as a reactant, whereas the ions are listed as products. The solubility product constant, as with every equilibrium constant expression, is written as the product of the concentrations of each of the ions, raised to the power of their stoichiometric coefficients. Here, the solubility product constant is equal to Ag^+ and Cl^- when

a solution of silver chloride is in equilibrium with undissolved AgCl. There is no denominator representing the reactants in this equilibrium expression since the reactant is a pure solid; therefore [AgCl] does not appear in the expression for K_{sp}.

Table 1: Common Solubility Products by Decreasing Equilibrium Constants

Substance	K_{sp} at 25 °C
CuCl	1.2×10^{-6}
CuBr	6.27×10^{-9}
AgI	1.5×10^{-16}
PbS	7×10^{-29}
$Al(OH)_3$	2×10^{-32}
$Fe(OH)_3$	4×10^{-38}

Some common solubility products are listed in Table 1 according to their K_{sp} values, whereas a more extensive compilation of products appears in Table E3. Each of these equilibrium constants is much smaller than 1 because the compounds listed are only slightly soluble. A small K_{sp} represents a system in which the equilibrium lies to the left, so that relatively few hydrated ions would be present in a saturated solution.

Example 1: Writing Equations and Solubility Products

Write the ionic equation for the dissolution and the solubility product expression for each of the following slightly soluble ionic compounds:

a. AgI, silver iodide, a solid with antiseptic properties
b. $CaCO_3$, calcium carbonate, the active ingredient in many over-the-counter chewable antacids
c. $Mg(OH)_2$, magnesium hydroxide, the active ingredient in Milk of Magnesia
d. $Mg(NH_4)PO_4$, magnesium ammonium phosphate, an essentially insoluble substance used in tests for magnesium
e. $Ca_5(PO_4)_3OH$, the mineral apatite, a source of phosphate for fertilizers

(Hint: When determining how to break (d) and (e) up into ions, refer to the list of polyatomic ions in the section on chemical nomenclature.)

Solution

a. $\mathrm{AgI}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{I^-}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ag^+}][\mathrm{I^-}]$
b. $\mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}][\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}]$
c. $\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mg^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Mg^{2+}}][\mathrm{OH^-}]^2$
d. $\mathrm{Mg(NH_4)PO_4}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mg^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Mg^{2+}}][\mathrm{NH_4^+}][\mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}]$
e. $\mathrm{Ca_5(PO_4)_3OH}(s) \rightleftharpoons 5\,\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}]^5[\mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}]^3[\mathrm{OH^-}]$

Exercise 1

Write the ionic equation for the dissolution and the solubility product for each of the following slightly soluble compounds:

a. $BaSO_4$
b. Ag_2SO_4
c. $Al(OH)_3$
d. Pb(OH)Cl

Answer a

$$\mathrm{BaSO_4}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ba^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ba^{2+}}][\mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}]$$

Answer b

$$\mathrm{Ag_2SO_4}(s) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ag^+}]^2[\mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}]$$

Answer c

$$\mathrm{Al(OH)_3}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Al^{2+}}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \qquad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Al^{3+}}][\mathrm{OH^-}]^3$$

Answer d

$$\mathrm{Pb(OH)Cl}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Pb^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) \qquad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Pb^{2+}}][\mathrm{OH^-}][\mathrm{Cl^-}]$$

Now we will extend the discussion of K_{sp} and show how the solubility product constant is determined from the solubility of its ions, as well as how K_{sp} can be used to determine the molar solubility of a substance.

K_{sp} and Solubility

Recall that the definition of *solubility* is the maximum possible concentration of a solute in a solution at a given temperature and pressure. We can determine the solubility product of a slightly soluble solid from that measure of its solubility at a given temperature and pressure, provided that the only significant reaction that occurs when the solid dissolves is its dissociation into solvated ions, that is, the only equilibrium involved is:

$$\mathrm{M}_p\mathrm{X}_q(s) \rightleftharpoons p\mathrm{M^{m+}}(aq) + q\mathrm{X^{n-}}(aq)$$

In this case, we calculate the solubility product by taking the solid's solubility expressed in units of moles per liter (mol/L), known as its molar solubility.

Example 2: Calculation of K_{sp} from Equilibrium Concentrations

We began the chapter with an informal discussion of how the mineral fluorite is formed. Fluorite, CaF_2, is a slightly soluble solid that dissolves according to the equation:

$$\mathrm{CaF_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{F^-}(aq)$$

The concentration of Ca^{2+} in a saturated solution of CaF_2 is 2.1×10^{-4} *M*; therefore, that of F^- is 4.2×10^{-4} *M*, that is, twice the concentration of Ca^{2+}. What is the solubility product of fluorite?

Solution

First, write out the K_{sp} expression, then substitute in concentrations and solve for K_{sp}:

$$\mathrm{CaF_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{F^-}(aq)$$

A saturated solution is a solution at equilibrium with the solid. Thus:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{sp} &= [\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}][\mathrm{F^-}]^2 \\ &= (2.1 \times 10^{-4})(4.2 \times 10^{-4})^2 \\ &= 3.7 \times 10^{-11} \end{aligned}$$

As with other equilibrium constants, we do not include units with K_{sp}.

Exercise 2

In a saturated solution that is in contact with solid $Mg(OH)_2$, the concentration of Mg^{2+} is 3.7×10^{-5} *M*. What is the solubility product for $Mg(OH)_2$?

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mg^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

Answer

2.0×10^{-13}

Example 3: Determination of Molar Solubility from K_{sp}

The K_{sp} of copper(I) bromide, CuBr, is 6.3×10^{-9}. Calculate the molar solubility of copper bromide.

Solution

The solubility product constant of copper(I) bromide is 6.3×10^{-9}.

The reaction is:

$$\mathrm{CuBr}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Cu}^{+}(aq) + \mathrm{Br}^{-}(aq)$$

First, write out the solubility product equilibrium constant expression:

$$K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Cu}^{+}][\mathrm{Br}^{-}]$$

Create an ICE table (as introduced in the chapter on fundamental equilibrium concepts), leaving the CuBr column empty as it is a solid and does not contribute to the K_{sp}:

	CuBr ⇌	Cu^+	+ Br^-
Initial concentration (*M*)		0	0
Change (*M*)		*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)		0 + *x* = *x*	0 + *x* = *x*

At equilibrium:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{sp} &= [\mathrm{Cu}^{+}][\mathrm{Br}^{-}] \\ 6.3 \times 10^{-9} &= (x)(x) = x^2 \\ x &= \sqrt{(6.3 \times 10^{-9})} = 7.9 \times 10^{-5} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the molar solubility of CuBr is 7.9×10^{-5} *M*.

Exercise 3

The K_{sp} of AgI is 1.5×10^{-16}. Calculate the molar solubility of silver iodide.

Answer

1.2×10^{-8} *M*

Example 4: Determination of Molar Solubility from K_{sp}, Part II

Determination of Molar Solubility from K_{sp}, Part II The K_{sp} of calcium hydroxide, $Ca(OH)_2$, is 8.0×10^{-6}. Calculate the molar solubility of calcium hydroxide.

Solution

The solubility product constant of calcium hydroxide is 1.3×10^{-6}.

The reaction is:

$$\mathrm{Ca(OH)}_2(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca}^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH}^{-}(aq)$$

First, write out the solubility product equilibrium constant expression:

$$K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ca}^{2+}][\mathrm{OH}^{-}]^2$$

Create an ICE table, leaving the $Ca(OH)_2$ column empty as it is a solid and does not contribute to the K_{sp}:

	$Ca(OH)_2 \rightleftharpoons$	Ca^{2+}	+ $2OH^-$
Initial concentration (*M*)		0	0
Change (*M*)		*x*	2*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)		0 + *x* = *x*	0 + 2*x* = 2*x*

At equilibrium:

$$K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}][OH^-]^2$$
$$1.3 \times 10^{-6} = (x)(2x)^2 = (x)(4x^2) = 4x^3$$
$$x = \sqrt[3]{\frac{1.3 \times 10^{-6}}{4}} = 6.9 \times 10^{-3}$$

Therefore, the molar solubility of $Ca(OH)_2$ is 6.9×10^{-3} *M*.

Exercise 4

The K_{sp} of PbI_2 is 1.4×10^{-8}. Calculate the molar solubility of lead(II) iodide.

Answer

1.5×10^{-3} *M*

Note that solubility is not always given as a molar value. When the solubility of a compound is given in some unit other than moles per liter, we must convert the solubility into moles per liter (i.e., molarity) in order to use it in the solubility product constant expression. Example 5 shows how to perform those unit conversions before determining the solubility product equilibrium.

Example 5: Determination of K_{sp} from Gram Solubility

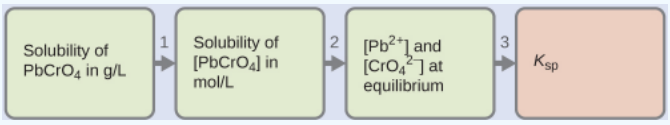
Many of the pigments used by artists in oil-based paints (Figure 2) are sparingly soluble in water. For example, the solubility of the artist's pigment chrome yellow, $PbCrO_4$, is 4.6×10^{-6} g/L. Determine the solubility product equilibrium constant for $PbCrO_4$.



Figure 2: Oil paints contain pigments that are very slightly soluble in water. In addition to chrome yellow ($PbCrO_4$), examples include Prussian blue ($Fe_7(CN)_{18}$), the reddish-orange color vermilion (HgS), and green color veridian (Cr_2O_3). (credit: Sonny Abesamis)

Solution

We are given the solubility of $PbCrO_4$ in grams per liter. If we convert this solubility into moles per liter, we can find the equilibrium concentrations of Pb^{2+} and CrO_4^{2-}, then K_{sp}:



https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122490

1. *Use the molar mass of PbCrO₄* $\left(\frac{323.2\text{ g}}{1\text{ mol}}\right)$ *to convert the solubility of PbCrO₄ in grams per liter into moles per liter:*

$$[\text{PbCrO}_4] = \frac{4.6 \times 10^{-6}\text{ g PbCrO}_4}{1\text{ L}} \times \frac{1\text{ mol PbCrO}_4}{323.2\text{ g PbCrO}_4}$$

$$= \frac{1.4 \times 10^{-8}\text{ mol PbCrO}_4}{1\text{ L}}$$

$$= 1.4 \times 10^{-8}\ M$$

- *The chemical equation for the dissolution indicates that 1 mol of PbCrO₄ gives 1 mol of* $Pb^{2+}(aq)$ *and 1 mol of* $\text{CrO}_4^{2-}(aq)$: $\text{PbCrO}_4(s) \rightleftharpoons \text{Pb}^{2+}(aq) + \text{CrO}_4^{2-}(aq)$

  Thus, both $[\text{Pb}^{2+}]$ and $[\text{CrO}_4^{2-}]$ are equal to the molar solubility of PbCrO_4:

  $[\text{Pb}^{2+}] = [\text{CrO}_4^{2-}] = 1.4 \times 10^{-8}\ M$
- *Solve.* $K_{sp} = [\text{Pb}^{2+}]\,[\text{CrO}_4^{2-}] = (1.4 \times 10^{-8})(1.4 \times 10^{-8}) = 2.0 \times 10^{-16}$

Exercise 5

The solubility of TlCl [thallium(I) chloride], an intermediate formed when thallium is being isolated from ores, is 3.46 grams per liter at 20 °C. What is its solubility product?

Answer

2.08×10^{-4}

Example 6: Calculating the Solubility of Hg_2Cl_2

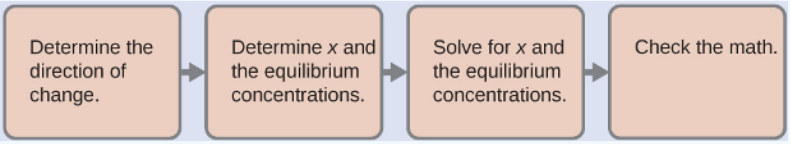
Calomel, Hg_2Cl_2, is a compound composed of the diatomic ion of mercury(I), Hg_2^{2+}, and chloride ions, Cl^-. Although most mercury compounds are now known to be poisonous, eighteenth-century physicians used calomel as a medication. Their patients rarely suffered any mercury poisoning from the treatments because calomel is quite insoluble:

$$\text{Hg}_2\text{Cl}_2(s) \rightleftharpoons \text{Hg}_2^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\text{Cl}^-(aq) \quad K_{sp} = 1.1 \times 10^{-18}$$

Calculate the molar solubility of Hg_2Cl_2.

Solution

The molar solubility of Hg_2Cl_2 is equal to the concentration of Hg_2^{2+} ions because for each 1 mol of Hg_2Cl_2 that dissolves, 1 mol of Hg_2^{2+} forms:



1. *Determine the direction of change.* Before any Hg_2Cl_2 dissolves, Q is zero, and the reaction will shift to the right to reach equilibrium.
2. *Determine* x *and equilibrium concentrations.* Concentrations and changes are given in the following ICE table:

	$Hg_2Cl_2 \rightleftharpoons$	Hg_2^{2+} +	$2Cl^-$
Initial concentration (*M*)		0	0
Change (*M*)		*x*	2*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)		0 + *x* = *x*	0 + 2*x* = 2*x*

Note that the change in the concentration of Cl^- ($2x$) is twice as large as the change in the concentration of Hg_2^{2+} (x) because 2 mol of Cl^- forms for each 1 mol of Hg_2^{2+} that forms. Hg_2Cl_2 is a pure solid, so it does not appear in the calculation.

3. *Solve for* x *and the equilibrium concentrations.* We substitute the equilibrium concentrations into the expression for K_{sp} and calculate the value of x:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{sp} &= [Hg_2^{2+}][Cl^-]^2 \\ 1.1 \times 10^{-18} &= (x)(2x)^2 \\ 4x^3 &= 1.1 \times 10^{-18} \\ x &= \sqrt[3]{\left(\frac{1.1 \times 10^{-18}}{4}\right)} = 6.5 \times 10^{-7}\ M \end{aligned}$$

So the concentrations are

$$\begin{aligned} [Hg_2^{2+}] &= 6.5 \times 10^{-7}\ M = 6.5 \times 10^{-7}\ M \\ [Cl^-] &= 2x = 2(6.5 \times 10^{-7}) = 1.3 \times 10^{-6}\ M \end{aligned}$$

The molar solubility of Hg_2Cl_2 is equal to $[Hg_2^{2+}]$, or 6.5×10^{-7} M.

Check the work.

At equilibrium, $Q = K_{sp}$:

$$Q = [Hg_2^{2+}][Cl^-]^2 = (6.5 \times 10^{-7})(1.3 \times 10^{-6})^2 = 1.1 \times 10^{-18}$$

The calculations check.

Exercise 6

Determine the molar solubility of MgF_2 from its solubility product: $K_{sp} = 6.4 \times 10^{-9}$.

Answer

1.2×10^{-3} M

Tabulated K_{sp} values can also be compared to reaction quotients calculated from experimental data to tell whether a solid will precipitate in a reaction under specific conditions: Q equals K_{sp} at equilibrium; if Q is less than K_{sp}, the solid will dissolve until Q equals K_{sp}; if Q is greater than K_{sp}, precipitation will occur at a given temperature until Q equals K_{sp}.

Using Barium Sulfate for Medical Imaging

Various types of medical imaging techniques are used to aid diagnoses of illnesses in a noninvasive manner. One such technique utilizes the ingestion of a barium compound before taking an X-ray image. A suspension of barium sulfate, a chalky powder, is ingested by the patient. Since the K_{sp} of barium sulfate is 1.1×10^{-10}, very little of it dissolves as it coats the lining of the patient's intestinal tract. Barium-coated areas of the digestive tract then appear on an X-ray as white, allowing for greater visual detail than a traditional X-ray (Figure 3).



Figure 3: The suspension of barium sulfate coats the intestinal tract, which allows for greater visual detail than a traditional X-ray. (credit modification of work by “glitzy queen00”/Wikimedia Commons).

Further diagnostic testing can be done using barium sulfate and fluoroscopy. In fluoroscopy, a continuous X-ray is passed through the body so the doctor can monitor, on a TV or computer screen, the barium sulfate’s movement as it passes through the digestive tract. Medical imaging using barium sulfate can be used to diagnose acid reflux disease, Crohn’s disease, and ulcers in addition to other conditions.

Predicting Precipitation

The equation that describes the equilibrium between solid calcium carbonate and its solvated ions is:

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq)$$

We can establish this equilibrium either by adding solid calcium carbonate to water or by mixing a solution that contains calcium ions with a solution that contains carbonate ions. If we add calcium carbonate to water, the solid will dissolve until the concentrations are such that the value of the reaction quotient ($Q = [\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}][\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}]$) is equal to the solubility product (K_{sp} = 4.8 × 10^{-9}). If we mix a solution of calcium nitrate, which contains $\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}$ ions, with a solution of sodium carbonate, which contains $\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}$ ions, the slightly soluble ionic solid $\mathrm{CaCO_3}$ will precipitate, provided that the concentrations of $\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}$ and $\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}$ ions are such that Q is greater than K_{sp} for the mixture. The reaction shifts to the left and the concentrations of the ions are reduced by formation of the solid until the value of Q equals K_{sp}. A saturated solution in equilibrium with the undissolved solid will result. If the concentrations are such that Q is less than K_{sp}, then the solution is not saturated and no precipitate will form.

We can compare numerical values of Q with K_{sp} to predict whether precipitation will occur, as Example 7 shows. (Note: Since all forms of equilibrium constants are temperature dependent, we will assume a room temperature environment going forward in this chapter unless a different temperature value is explicitly specified.)

Example 7: Precipitation of $Mg(OH)_2$

The first step in the preparation of magnesium metal is the precipitation of $Mg(OH)_2$ from sea water by the addition of lime, $Ca(OH)_2$, a readily available inexpensive source of OH^- ion:

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mg^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = 8.9 \times 10^{-12}$$

The concentration of $Mg^{2+}(aq)$ in sea water is 0.0537 *M*. Will $Mg(OH)_2$ precipitate when enough $Ca(OH)_2$ is added to give a $[OH^-]$ of 0.0010 *M*?

Solution

This problem asks whether the reaction:

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mg^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

shifts to the left and forms solid $Mg(OH)_2$ when $[Mg^{2+}] = 0.0537\ M$ and $[OH^-] = 0.0010\ M$. The reaction shifts to the left if Q is greater than K_{sp}. Calculation of the reaction quotient under these conditions is shown here:

$$Q = [Mg^{2+}][OH^-]^2 = (0.0537)(0.0010)^2 = 5.4 \times 10^{-8}$$

Because Q is greater than K_{sp} ($Q = 5.4 \times 10^{-8}$ is larger than $K_{sp} = 8.9 \times 10^{-12}$), we can expect the reaction to shift to the left and form solid magnesium hydroxide. $Mg(OH)_2(s)$ forms until the concentrations of magnesium ion and hydroxide ion are reduced sufficiently so that the value of Q is equal to K_{sp}.

Exercise 7

Use the solubility products in Table E3 to determine whether $CaHPO_4$ will precipitate from a solution with $[Ca^{2+}] = 0.0001\ M$ and $[HPO_4^{2-}] = 0.001\ M$.

Answer

No precipitation of $CaHPO_4$; $Q = 1 \times 10^{-7}$, which is less than K_{sp}

Example 8: Precipitation of AgCl upon Mixing Solutions

Does silver chloride precipitate when equal volumes of a 2.0×10^{-4}-M solution of $AgNO_3$ and a 2.0×10^{-4}-M solution of NaCl are mixed?

(Note: The solution also contains Na^+ and NO_3^- ions, but when referring to solubility rules, one can see that sodium nitrate is very soluble and cannot form a precipitate.)

Solution

The equation for the equilibrium between solid silver chloride, silver ion, and chloride ion is:

$$AgCl(s) \rightleftharpoons Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

The solubility product is 1.8×10^{-10} (Table E3).

AgCl will precipitate if the reaction quotient calculated from the concentrations in the mixture of $AgNO_3$ and NaCl is greater than K_{sp}. The volume doubles when we mix equal volumes of $AgNO_3$ and NaCl solutions, so each concentration is reduced to half its initial value. Consequently, immediately upon mixing, $[Ag^+]$ and $[Cl^-]$ are both equal to:

$$\frac{1}{2}(2.0 \times 10^{-4})\ M = 1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

The reaction quotient, Q, is *momentarily* greater than K_{sp} for AgCl, so a supersaturated solution is formed:

$$Q = [Ag^+][Cl^-] = (1.0 \times 10^{-4})(1.0 \times 10^{-4}) = 1.0 \times 10^{-8} > K_{sp}$$

Since supersaturated solutions are unstable, AgCl will precipitate from the mixture until the solution returns to equilibrium, with Q equal to K_{sp}.

Exercise 8

Will $KClO_4$ precipitate when 20 mL of a 0.050-M solution of K^+ is added to 80 mL of a 0.50-M solution of ClO_4^-? (Remember to calculate the new concentration of each ion after mixing the solutions before plugging into the reaction quotient expression.)

Answer

No, $Q = 4.0 \times 10^{-3}$, which is less than $K_{sp} = 1.07 \times 10^{-2}$

In the previous two examples, we have seen that $Mg(OH)_2$ or AgCl precipitate when Q is greater than K_{sp}. In general, when a solution of a soluble salt of the M^{m+} ion is mixed with a solution of a soluble salt of the X^{n-} ion, the solid, M_pX_q precipitates if the value of Q for the mixture of M^{m+} and X^{n-} is greater than K_{sp} for M_pX_q. Thus, if we know the concentration of one of the ions of a

slightly soluble ionic solid and the value for the solubility product of the solid, then we can calculate the concentration that the other ion must exceed for precipitation to begin. To simplify the calculation, we will assume that precipitation begins when the reaction quotient becomes equal to the solubility product constant.

Example 9: Precipitation of Calcium Oxalate

Blood will not clot if calcium ions are removed from its plasma. Some blood collection tubes contain salts of the oxalate ion, $C_2O_4^{2-}$, for this purpose (Figure 4). At sufficiently high concentrations, the calcium and oxalate ions form solid, $CaC_2O_4 \cdot H_2O$ (which also contains water bound in the solid). The concentration of Ca^{2+} in a sample of blood serum is 2.2×10^{-3} *M*. What concentration of $C_2O_4^{2-}$ ion must be established before $CaC_2O_4 \cdot H_2O$ begins to precipitate?



Figure 4: Anticoagulants can be added to blood that will combine with the Ca^{2+} ions in blood serum and prevent the blood from clotting. (credit: modification of work by Neeta Lind)

Solution

The equilibrium expression is:

$$CaC_2O_4(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+}(aq) + C_2O_4^{2-}(aq)$$

For this reaction (Table E3):

$$K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}][C_2O_4^{2-}] = 1.96 \times 10^{-8}$$

CaC_2O_4 does not appear in this expression because it is a solid. Water does not appear because it is the solvent.

Solid CaC_2O_4 does not begin to form until Q equals K_{sp}. Because we know K_{sp} and $[Ca^{2+}]$, we can solve for the concentration of $C_2O_4^{2-}$ that is necessary to produce the first trace of solid:

$$Q = K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}][C_2O_4^{2-}] = 1.96 \times 10^{-8}$$

$$(2.2 \times 10^{-3})[C_2O_4^{2-}] = 1.96 \times 10^{-8}$$

$$[C_2O_4^{2-}] = \frac{1.96 \times 10^{-8}}{2.2 \times 10^{-3}} = 8.9 \times 10^{-6}$$

A concentration of $[C_2O_4^{2-}] = 8.9 \times 10^{-6}$ *M* is necessary to initiate the precipitation of CaC_2O_4 under these conditions.

Exercise 9

If a solution contains 0.0020 mol of CrO_4^{2-} per liter, what concentration of Ag^+ ion must be reached by adding solid $AgNO_3$ before Ag_2CrO_4 begins to precipitate? Neglect any increase in volume upon adding the solid silver nitrate.

Answer

4.5×10^{-9} *M*

It is sometimes useful to know the concentration of an ion that remains in solution after precipitation. We can use the solubility product for this calculation too: If we know the value of K_{sp} and the concentration of one ion in solution, we can calculate the

concentration of the second ion remaining in solution. The calculation is of the same type as that in Example 8—calculation of the concentration of a species in an equilibrium mixture from the concentrations of the other species and the equilibrium constant. However, the concentrations are different; we are calculating concentrations after precipitation is complete, rather than at the start of precipitation.

Example 10: Concentrations Following Precipitation

Clothing washed in water that has a manganese [$Mn^{2+}(aq)$] concentration exceeding 0.1 mg/L (1.8×10^{-6} *M*) may be stained by the manganese upon oxidation, but the amount of Mn^{2+} in the water can be reduced by adding a base. If a person doing laundry wishes to add a buffer to keep the pH high enough to precipitate the manganese as the hydroxide, $Mn(OH)_2$, what pH is required to keep [Mn^{2+}] equal to 1.8×10^{-6} *M*?

Solution

The dissolution of $Mn(OH)_2$ is described by the equation:

$$Mn(OH)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Mn^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq) \quad K_{sp} = 2 \times 10^{-13}$$

We need to calculate the concentration of OH^- when the concentration of Mn^{2+} is 1.8×10^{-6} *M*. From that, we calculate the pH. At equilibrium:

$$K_{sp} = [Mn^{2+}][OH^-]^2$$

or

$$(1.8 \times 10^{-6})[OH^-]^2 = 2 \times 10^{-13}$$

so

$$[OH^-] = 3.3 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

Now we calculate the pH from the pOH:

$$pOH = -\log[OH^-] = -\log(3.3 \times 10^{-4}) = 3.48$$

$$pH = 14.00 - pOH = 14.00 - 3.48 = 10.52$$

If the person doing laundry adds a base, such as the sodium silicate (Na_4SiO_4) in some detergents, to the wash water until the pH is raised to 10.52, the manganese ion will be reduced to a concentration of 1.8×10^{-6} *M*; at that concentration or less, the ion will not stain clothing.

Exercise 10

The first step in the preparation of magnesium metal is the precipitation of $Mg(OH)_2$ from sea water by the addition of $Ca(OH)_2$. The concentration of $Mg^{2+}(aq)$ in sea water is 5.37×10^{-2} *M*. Calculate the pH at which [Mg^{2+}] is diminished to 1.0×10^{-5} *M* by the addition of $Ca(OH)_2$.

Answer

10.97

Due to their light sensitivity, mixtures of silver halides are used in fiber optics for medical lasers, in photochromic eyeglass lenses (glass lenses that automatically darken when exposed to sunlight), and—before the advent of digital photography—in photographic film. Even though AgCl ($K_{sp} = 1.6 \times 10^{-10}$), AgBr ($K_{sp} = 5.0 \times 10^{-13}$), and AgI ($K_{sp} = 1.5 \times 10^{-16}$) are each quite insoluble, we cannot prepare a homogeneous solid mixture of them by adding Ag^+ to a solution of Cl^-, Br^-, and I^-; essentially all of the AgI will precipitate before any of the other solid halides form because of its smaller value for K_{sp}. However, we can prepare a homogeneous mixture of the solids by slowly adding a solution of Cl^-, Br^-, and I^- to a solution of Ag^+.

When two anions form slightly soluble compounds with the same cation, or when two cations form slightly soluble compounds with the same anion, the less soluble compound (usually, the compound with the smaller K_{sp}) generally precipitates first when we add a precipitating agent to a solution containing both anions (or both cations). When the K_{sp} values of the two compounds differ

by two orders of magnitude or more (e.g., 10^{-2} vs. 10^{-4}), almost all of the less soluble compound precipitates before any of the more soluble one does. This is an example of selective precipitation, where a reagent is added to a solution of dissolved ions causing one of the ions to precipitate out before the rest.

The Role of Precipitation in Wastewater Treatment

Solubility equilibria are useful tools in the treatment of wastewater carried out in facilities that may treat the municipal water in your city or town (Figure 5). Specifically, selective precipitation is used to remove contaminants from wastewater before it is released back into natural bodies of water. For example, phosphate ions (PO_4^{2-}) are often present in the water discharged from manufacturing facilities. An abundance of phosphate causes excess algae to grow, which impacts the amount of oxygen available for marine life as well as making water unsuitable for human consumption.



Figure 5: Wastewater treatment facilities, such as this one, remove contaminants from wastewater before the water is released back into the natural environment. (credit: "eutrophication&hypoxia"/Wikimedia Commons)

One common way to remove phosphates from water is by the addition of calcium hydroxide, known as lime, $Ca(OH)_2$. The lime is converted into calcium carbonate, a strong base, in the water. As the water is made more basic, the calcium ions react with phosphate ions to produce hydroxylapatite, $Ca_5(PO4)_3(OH)$, which then precipitates out of the solution:

$$5\,Ca^{2+} + 3\,PO_4^{3-} + OH^- \rightleftharpoons Ca_{10}(PO_4)_6 \cdot (OH)_2(s)$$

The precipitate is then removed by filtration and the water is brought back to a neutral pH by the addition of CO_2 in a recarbonation process. Other chemicals can also be used for the removal of phosphates by precipitation, including iron(III) chloride and aluminum sulfate.

Selective precipitation can also be used in qualitative analysis. In this method, reagents are added to an unknown chemical mixture in order to induce precipitation. Certain reagents cause specific ions to precipitate out; therefore, the addition of the reagent can be used to determine whether the ion is present in the solution.

Example 11: Precipitation of Silver Halides

A solution contains 0.0010 mol of KI and 0.10 mol of KCl per liter. $AgNO_3$ is gradually added to this solution. Which forms first, solid AgI or solid AgCl?

Solution

The two equilibria involved are:

$$AgCl(s) \rightleftharpoons Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \qquad K_{sp} = 1.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

$$AgI(s) \rightleftharpoons Ag^+(aq) + I^-(aq) \qquad K_{sp} = 1.5 \times 10^{-16}$$

If the solution contained about *equal* concentrations of Cl^- and I^-, then the silver salt with the smallest K_{sp} (AgI) would precipitate first. The concentrations are not equal, however, so we should find the $[Ag^+]$ at which AgCl begins to precipitate and the $[Ag^+]$ at which AgI begins to precipitate. The salt that forms at the lower $[Ag^+]$ precipitates first.

For AgI: AgI precipitates when Q equals K_{sp} for AgI (1.5×10^{-16}). When $[I^-] = 0.0010\ M$:

$$Q = [Ag^+][I^-] = [Ag^+](0.0010) = 1.5 \times 10^{-16}$$

$$[Ag^+] = \frac{1.5 \times 10^{-16}}{0.0010} = 1.5 \times 10^{-13}$$

AgI begins to precipitate when $[Ag^+]$ is 1.5×10^{-13} *M*.

For AgCl: AgCl precipitates when *Q* equals K_{sp} for AgCl (1.6×10^{-10}). When $[Cl^-] = 0.10$ *M*:

$$Q_{sp} = [Ag^+][Cl^-] = [Ag^+](0.10) = 1.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

$$[Ag^+] = \frac{1.6 \times 10^{-10}}{0.10} = 1.6 \times 10^{-9}\ M$$

AgCl begins to precipitate when $[Ag^+]$ is 1.6×10^{-9} *M*.

AgI begins to precipitate at a lower $[Ag^+]$ than AgCl, so AgI begins to precipitate first.

? Exercise 11

If silver nitrate solution is added to a solution which is 0.050 *M* in both Cl^- and Br^- ions, at what $[Ag^+]$ would precipitation begin, and what would be the formula of the precipitate?

Answer

$[Ag^+] = 1.0 \times 10^{-11}$ *M*; AgBr precipitates first

Common Ion Effect

As we saw when we discussed buffer solutions, the hydronium ion concentration of an aqueous solution of acetic acid decreases when the strong electrolyte sodium acetate, $NaCH_3CO_2$, is added. We can explain this effect using Le Chatelier's principle. The addition of acetate ions causes the equilibrium to shift to the left, decreasing the concentration of H_3O^+ to compensate for the increased acetate ion concentration. This increases the concentration of CH_3CO_2H:

\[\ce{CH3CO2H + H2O \rightleftharpoons H3O+ + CH3CO2-}\)]

Because sodium acetate and acetic acid have the acetate ion in common, the influence on the equilibrium is called **the common ion effect.** The common ion effect can also have a direct effect on solubility equilibria. Suppose we are looking at the reaction where silver iodide is dissolved:

$$AgI(s) \rightleftharpoons Ag^+(aq) + I^-(aq)$$

If we were to add potassium iodide (KI) to this solution, we would be adding a substance that shares a common ion with silver iodide. Le Chatelier's principle tells us that when a change is made to a system at equilibrium, the reaction will shift to counteract that change. In this example, there would be an excess of iodide ions, so the reaction would shift toward the left, causing more silver iodide to precipitate out of solution.

✓ Example 12: Common Ion Effect

Calculate the molar solubility of cadmium sulfide (CdS) in a 0.010-*M* solution of cadmium bromide ($CdBr_2$). The K_{sp} of CdS is 1.0×10^{-28}.

Solution

The first thing you should notice is that the cadmium sulfide is dissolved in a solution that contains cadmium ions. We need to use an ICE table to set up this problem and include the $CdBr_2$ concentration as a contributor of cadmium ions:

$$CdS(s) \rightleftharpoons Cd^{2+}(aq) + S^{2-}(aq)$$

	CdS ⇌	Cd^{2+}	+ S^{2-}
Initial concentration (*M*)		0.010	0
Change (*M*)		*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)		0.010 + *x*	0 + *x* = *x*

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following in the first column: Initial concentration (M), Change (M), and Equilibrium concentration (M). The second column has the header, “C d S equilibrium arrow C d to the second power plus S to the second power superscript negative sign.” Under the second column is a subgroup of three rows and three columns. The first column is blank. The second column has the following: 0.010, x, 0.010 plus x. The third column has the following: 0, x, 0 plus x equals x.

$$K_{sp} = [Cd^{2+}][S^{2-}] = 1.0 \times 10^{-28}$$

$$(0.010 + x)(x) = 1.0 \times 10^{-28}\ \ x^2 + 0.010x - 1.0 \times 10^{-28} = 0$$

We can solve this equation using the quadratic formula, but we can also make an assumption to make this calculation much simpler. Since the K_{sp} value is so small compared with the cadmium concentration, we can assume that the change between the initial concentration and the equilibrium concentration is negligible, so that 0.010 + *x* ~ 0.010. Going back to our K_{sp} expression, we would now get:

$$K_{sp} = [Cd^{2+}][S^{2-}] = 1.0 \times 10^{-28}$$
$$(0.010)(x) = 1.0 \times 10^{-28}$$
$$x = 1.0 \times 10^{-26}$$

Therefore, the molar solubility of CdS in this solution is 1.0×10^{-26} *M*.

? Exercise 12

Calculate the molar solubility of aluminum hydroxide, $Al(OH)_3$, in a 0.015-*M* solution of aluminum nitrate, $Al(NO_3)_3$. The K_{sp} of $Al(OH)_3$ is 2×10^{-32}.

Answer

4×10^{-11}

Summary

The equilibrium constant for an equilibrium involving the precipitation or dissolution of a slightly soluble ionic solid is called the solubility product, K_{sp}, of the solid. When we have a heterogeneous equilibrium involving the slightly soluble solid M_pX_q and its ions M^{m+} and X^{n-}:

$$M_pX_q(s) \rightleftharpoons pM^{m+}(aq) + qX^{n-}(aq)$$

We write the solubility product expression as:

$$K_{sp} = [M^{m+}]^p[X^{n-}]^q$$

The solubility product of a slightly soluble electrolyte can be calculated from its solubility; conversely, its solubility can be calculated from its K_{sp}, provided the only significant reaction that occurs when the solid dissolves is the formation of its ions. A slightly soluble electrolyte begins to precipitate when the magnitude of the reaction quotient for the dissolution reaction exceeds the magnitude of the solubility product. Precipitation continues until the reaction quotient equals the solubility product. A reagent can be added to a solution of ions to allow one ion to selectively precipitate out of solution. The common ion effect can also play a role in precipitation reactions. In the presence of an ion in common with one of the ions in the solution, Le Chatelier’s principle applies and more precipitate comes out of solution so that the molar solubility is reduced.

Glossary

common ion effect

effect on equilibrium when a substance with an ion in common with the dissolved species is added to the solution; causes a decrease in the solubility of an ionic species, or a decrease in the ionization of a weak acid or base

molar solubility

solubility of a compound expressed in units of moles per liter (mol/L)

selective precipitation

process in which ions are separated using differences in their solubility with a given precipitating reagent

solubility product (K_{sp})

equilibrium constant for the dissolution of a slightly soluble electrolyte

---

This page titled 2.9.1 Precipitation and Dissolution is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **15.1: Precipitation and Dissolution** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

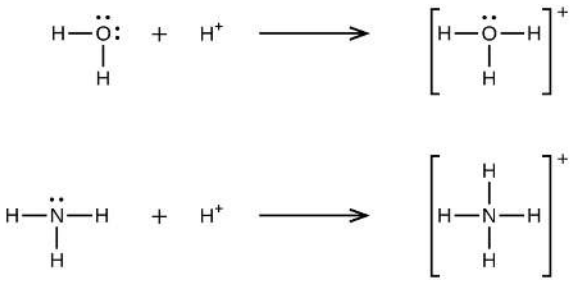
2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Explain the Lewis model of acid-base chemistry
- Write equations for the formation of adducts and complex ions
- Perform equilibrium calculations involving formation constants

In 1923, G. N. Lewis proposed a generalized definition of acid-base behavior in which acids and bases are identified by their ability to accept or to donate a pair of electrons and form a coordinate covalent bond.

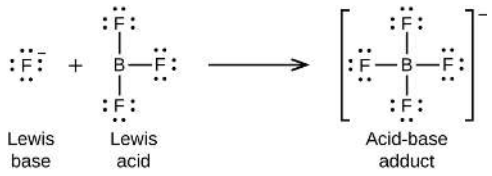
A coordinate covalent bond (or dative bond) occurs when one of the atoms in the bond provides both bonding electrons. For example, a coordinate covalent bond occurs when a water molecule combines with a hydrogen ion to form a hydronium ion. A coordinate covalent bond also results when an ammonia molecule combines with a hydrogen ion to form an ammonium ion. Both of these equations are shown here.



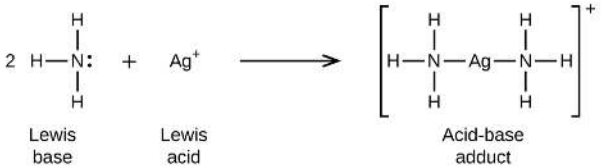
- A Lewis acid is any species (molecule or ion) that can *accept* a pair of electrons, and a Lewis base is any species (molecule or ion) that can *donate* a pair of electrons.

A Lewis acid-base reaction occurs when a base donates a pair of electrons to an acid. A **Lewis acid-base adduct**, a compound that contains a coordinate covalent bond between the Lewis acid and the Lewis base, is formed. The following equations illustrate the general application of the Lewis concept.

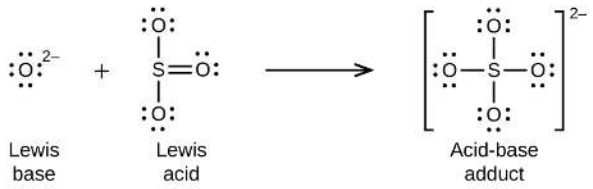
The boron atom in boron trifluoride, BF_3, has only six electrons in its valence shell. Being short of the preferred octet, BF_3 is a very good Lewis acid and reacts with many Lewis bases; a fluoride ion is the Lewis base in this reaction, donating one of its lone pairs:



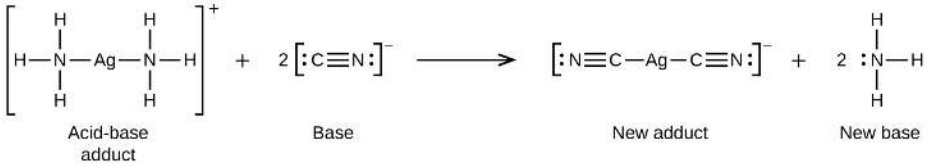
In the following reaction, each of two ammonia molecules, Lewis bases, donates a pair of electrons to a silver ion, the Lewis acid:

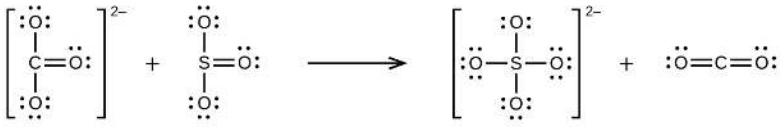


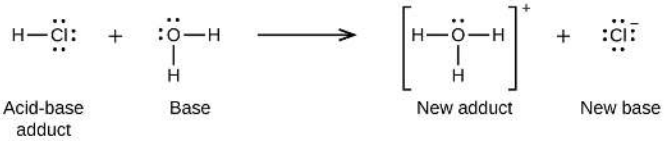
Nonmetal oxides act as Lewis acids and react with oxide ions, Lewis bases, to form oxyanions:



Many Lewis acid-base reactions are displacement reactions in which one Lewis base displaces another Lewis base from an acid-base adduct, or in which one Lewis acid displaces another Lewis acid:

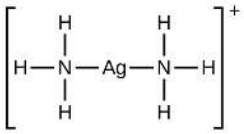






The last displacement reaction shows how the reaction of a Brønsted-Lowry acid with a base fits into the Lewis concept. A Brønsted-Lowry acid such as HCl is an acid-base adduct according to the Lewis concept, and proton transfer occurs because a more stable acid-base adduct is formed. Thus, although the definitions of acids and bases in the two theories are quite different, the theories overlap considerably.

Many slightly soluble ionic solids dissolve when the concentration of the metal ion in solution is decreased through the formation of complex (polyatomic) ions in a Lewis acid-base reaction. For example, silver chloride dissolves in a solution of ammonia because the silver ion reacts with ammonia to form the complex ion $\mathrm{Ag(NH_3)_2^+}$. The Lewis structure of the $\mathrm{Ag(NH_3)_2^+}$ ion is:



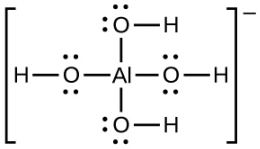
The equations for the dissolution of AgCl in a solution of NH_3 are:

$$\mathrm{AgCl}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ag(NH_3)_2^+}(aq)$$

$$\text{Net: } \mathrm{AgCl}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ag(NH_3)_2^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

Aluminum hydroxide dissolves in a solution of sodium hydroxide or another strong base because of the formation of the complex ion $\mathrm{Al(OH)_4^-}$. The Lewis structure of the $\mathrm{Al(OH)_4^-}$ ion is:



https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122491

The equations for the dissolution are:

$$\mathrm{Al(OH)_3}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Al^{3+}}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{Al^{3+}}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Al(OH)_4^-}(aq)$$

$$\text{Net: } \mathrm{Al(OH)_3}(s) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Al(OH)_4^-}(aq)$$

Mercury(II) sulfide dissolves in a solution of sodium sulfide because HgS reacts with the S^{2-} ion:

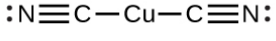
$$\mathrm{HgS}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hg^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{S^{2-}}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{Hg^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{S^{2-}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{HgS_2^{2-}}(aq)$$

$$\text{Net: } \mathrm{HgS}(s) + \mathrm{S^{2-}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{HgS_2^{2-}}(aq)$$

A complex ion consists of a central atom, typically a transition metal cation, surrounded by ions, or molecules called ligands. These ligands can be neutral molecules like H_2O or NH_3, or ions such as $CN^–$ or $OH^–$. Often, the ligands act as Lewis bases, donating a pair of electrons to the central atom. The ligands aggregate themselves around the central atom, creating a new ion with a charge equal to the sum of the charges and, most often, a transitional metal ion. This more complex arrangement is why the resulting ion is called a *complex ion*. The complex ion formed in these reactions cannot be predicted; it must be determined experimentally. The types of bonds formed in complex ions are called coordinate covalent bonds, as electrons from the ligands are being shared with the central atom. Because of this, complex ions are sometimes referred to as coordination complexes. This will be studied further in upcoming chapters.

The equilibrium constant for the reaction of the components of a complex ion to form the complex ion in solution is called a formation constant (K_f) (sometimes called a stability constant). For example, the complex ion $\mathrm{Cu(CN)_2^-}$ is shown here:



It forms by the reaction:

$$\mathrm{Cu^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{CN^-}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Cu(CN)_2^-}(aq)$$

At equilibrium:

$$K_\mathrm{f} = Q = \frac{[\mathrm{Cu(CN)_2^-}]}{[\mathrm{Cu^+}][\mathrm{CN^-}]^2}$$

The inverse of the formation constant is the dissociation constant (K_d), the equilibrium constant for the *decomposition* of a complex ion into its components in solution. We will work with dissociation constants further in the exercises for this section. Table E4 and Table 1 are tables of formation constants. In general, the larger the formation constant, the more stable the complex; however, as in the case of K_{sp} values, the stoichiometry of the compound must be considered.

Table 1: Common Complex Ions by Decreasing Formation Constants

Substance	K_f at 25 °C
$\mathrm{[Cd(CN)_4]^{2-}}$	3×10^{18}
$\mathrm{Ag(NH_3)_2^+}$	1.7×10^7
$\mathrm{[AlF_6]^{3-}}$	7×10^{19}

As an example of dissolution by complex ion formation, let us consider what happens when we add aqueous ammonia to a mixture of silver chloride and water. Silver chloride dissolves slightly in water, giving a small concentration of Ag^+ ($[Ag^+] = 1.3 \times 10^{-5}\ M$):

$$\mathrm{AgCl}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

However, if NH_3 is present in the water, the complex ion, $\mathrm{Ag(NH_3)_2^+}$, can form according to the equation:

$$\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag(NH_3)_2^+}(aq)$$

with

$$K_f = \frac{[Ag(NH_3)_2^+]}{[Ag^+][NH_3]^2} = 1.7 \times 10^7$$

The large size of this formation constant indicates that most of the free silver ions produced by the dissolution of AgCl combine with NH_3 to form $Ag(NH_3)_2^+$. As a consequence, the concentration of silver ions, $[Ag^+]$, is reduced, and the reaction quotient for the dissolution of silver chloride, $[Ag^+][Cl^-]$, falls below the solubility product of AgCl:

$$Q = [Ag^+][Cl^-] < K_{sp}$$

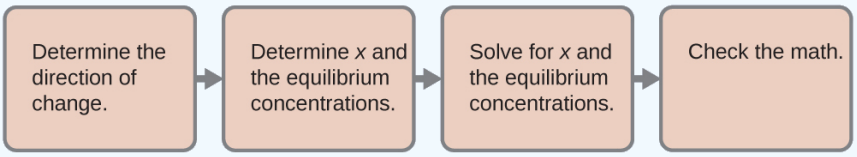
More silver chloride then dissolves. If the concentration of ammonia is great enough, all of the silver chloride dissolves.

Example 1: Dissociation of a Complex Ion

Calculate the concentration of the silver ion in a solution that initially is 0.10 *M* with respect to $Ag(NH_3)_2^+$.

Solution

We use the familiar path to solve this problem:



1. *Determine the direction of change.* The complex ion $Ag(NH_3)_2^+$ is in equilibrium with its components, as represented by the equation:

$$Ag^+(aq) + 2\,NH_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons Ag(NH_3)_2^+(aq)$$

We write the equilibrium as a formation reaction because Table E4 lists formation constants for complex ions. Before equilibrium, the reaction quotient is larger than the equilibrium constant (K_f = 1.7 \times 10^7\), and $Q = \frac{0.10}{0 \times 0} = \infty$ (it is infinitely large), so the reaction shifts to the left to reach equilibrium.

This page titled 2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **15.2: Lewis Acids and Bases** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.9.3 Coupled Equilibria

Learning Objectives

- Describe examples of systems involving two (or more) simultaneous chemical equilibria
- Calculate reactant and product concentrations for multiple equilibrium systems
- Compare dissolution and weak electrolyte formation

There are times when one equilibrium reaction does not adequately describe the system being studied. Sometimes we have more than one type of equilibrium occurring at once (for example, an acid-base reaction and a precipitation reaction).

The ocean is a unique example of a system with multiple equilibria, or multiple states of solubility equilibria working simultaneously. Carbon dioxide in the air dissolves in sea water, forming carbonic acid (H_2CO_3). The carbonic acid then ionizes to form hydrogen ions and bicarbonate ions (HCO_3^-), which can further ionize into more hydrogen ions and carbonate ions (CO_3^{2-}):

$$CO_2(g) \rightleftharpoons CO_2(aq)$$

$$CO_2(aq) + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3(aq)$$

$$H_2CO_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq)$$

$$HCO_3^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq)$$

The excess H^+ ions make seawater more acidic. Increased ocean acidification can then have negative impacts on reef-building coral, as they cannot absorb the calcium carbonate they need to grow and maintain their skeletons (Figure 1). This in turn disrupts the local biosystem that depends upon the health of the reefs for its survival. If enough local reefs are similarly affected, the disruptions to sea life can be felt globally. The world's oceans are presently in the midst of a period of intense acidification, believed to have begun in the mid-nineteenth century, and which is now accelerating at a rate faster than any change to oceanic pH in the last 20 million years.



Figure 1: Healthy coral reefs (a) support a dense and diverse array of sea life across the ocean food chain. But when coral are unable to adequately build and maintain their calcium carbonite skeletons because of excess ocean acidification, the unhealthy reef (b) is only capable of hosting a small fraction of the species as before, and the local food chain starts to collapse. (credit a: modification of work by NOAA Photo Library; credit b: modification of work by "prilfish"/Flickr).

> *Learn more about ocean acidification and how it affects other marine creatures.*

Slightly soluble solids derived from weak acids generally dissolve in strong acids, unless their solubility products are extremely small. For example, we can dissolve $CuCO_3$, FeS, and $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ in HCl because their basic anions react to form weak acids (H_2CO_3, H_2S, and $H_2PO_4^-$). The resulting decrease in the concentration of the anion results in a shift of the equilibrium concentrations to the right in accordance with Le Chatelier's principle.



Figure 2: Crystal of the mineral hydroxylapatite, $Ca_5(PO_4)_3OH$, is shown here. Pure apatite is white, but like many other minerals, this sample is colored because of the presence of impurities.

Of particular relevance to us is the dissolution of hydroxylapatite, $Ca_5(PO_4)_3OH$, in acid. Apatites are a class of calcium phosphate minerals (Figure 2); a biological form of hydroxylapatite is found as the principal mineral in the enamel of our teeth. A mixture of hydroxylapatite and water (or saliva) contains an equilibrium mixture of solid $Ca_5(PO_4)_3OH$ and dissolved Ca^{2+}, PO_4^{3-}, and OH^- ions:

$$\mathrm{Ca_5(PO_4)_3OH}(s) \longrightarrow 5\,\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

When exposed to acid, phosphate ions react with hydronium ions to form hydrogen phosphate ions and ultimately, phosphoric acid:

$$\mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_3O^+} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2PO_4^{2-}} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

$$\mathrm{PO_4^{2-}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_3O^+} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2PO_4^-} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

$$\mathrm{H_2PO_4^-} + \mathrm{H_3O^+} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3PO_4} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

Hydroxide ion reacts to form water:

$$\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_3O^+} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}$$

These reactions decrease the phosphate and hydroxide ion concentrations, and additional hydroxylapatite dissolves in an acidic solution in accord with Le Chatelier's principle. Our teeth develop cavities when acid waste produced by bacteria growing on them causes the hydroxylapatite of the enamel to dissolve. Fluoride toothpastes contain sodium fluoride, NaF, or stannous fluoride [more properly named tin(II) fluoride], SnF_2. They function by replacing the OH^- ion in hydroxylapatite with F^- ion, producing fluorapatite, $Ca_5(PO_4)_3F$:

$$\mathrm{NaF} + \mathrm{Ca_5(PO_4)_3OH} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca_5(PO_4)_3F} + \mathrm{Na^+} + \mathrm{OH^-}$$

The resulting $Ca_5(PO_4)_3F$ is slightly less soluble than $Ca_5(PO_4)_3OH$, and F^- is a weaker base than OH^-. Both of these factors make the fluorapatite more resistant to attack by acids than hydroxylapatite. See the Chemistry in Everyday Life feature on the role of fluoride in preventing tooth decay for more information.

Role of Fluoride in Preventing Tooth Decay

As we saw previously, fluoride ions help protect our teeth by reacting with hydroxylapatite to form fluorapatite, $Ca_5(PO_4)_3F$. Since it lacks a hydroxide ion, fluorapatite is more resistant to attacks by acids in our mouths and is thus less soluble, protecting our teeth. Scientists discovered that naturally fluorinated water could be beneficial to your teeth, and so it became common practice to add fluoride to drinking water. Toothpastes and mouthwashes also contain amounts of fluoride (Figure 3).



Figure 3: Fluoride, found in many toothpastes, helps prevent tooth decay (credit: Kerry Ceszyk).

Unfortunately, excess fluoride can negate its advantages. Natural sources of drinking water in various parts of the world have varying concentrations of fluoride, and places where that concentration is high are prone to certain health risks when there is no other source of drinking water. The most serious side effect of excess fluoride is the bone disease, skeletal fluorosis. When

excess fluoride is in the body, it can cause the joints to stiffen and the bones to thicken. It can severely impact mobility and can negatively affect the thyroid gland. Skeletal fluorosis is a condition that over 2.7 million people suffer from across the world. So while fluoride can protect our teeth from decay, the US Environmental Protection Agency sets a maximum level of 4 ppm (4 mg/L) of fluoride in drinking water in the US. Fluoride levels in water are not regulated in all countries, so fluorosis is a problem in areas with high levels of fluoride in the groundwater.

When acid rain attacks limestone or marble, which are calcium carbonates, a reaction occurs that is similar to the acid attack on hydroxylapatite. The hydronium ion from the acid rain combines with the carbonate ion from calcium carbonates and forms the hydrogen carbonate ion, a weak acid:

$$\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

Calcium hydrogen carbonate, $\mathrm{Ca(HCO_3)_2}$, is soluble, so limestone and marble objects slowly dissolve in acid rain.

If calcium carbonate is added to a concentrated acid, hydronium ion reacts with the carbonate ion according to the equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

(Acid rain is usually not sufficiently acidic to cause this reaction; however, laboratory acids are.) The solution may become saturated with the weak electrolyte carbonic acid, which is unstable, and carbon dioxide gas can be evolved:

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

These reactions decrease the carbonate ion concentration, and additional calcium carbonate dissolves. If enough acid is present, the concentration of carbonate ion is reduced to such a low level that the reaction quotient for the dissolution of calcium carbonate remains less than the solubility product of calcium carbonate, even after all of the calcium carbonate has dissolved.

Example 1: Prevention of Precipitation of $Mg(OH)_2$

Calculate the concentration of ammonium ion that is required to prevent the precipitation of $Mg(OH)_2$ in a solution with $[Mg^{2+}] = 0.10\ M$ and $[NH_3] = 0.10\ M$.

Solution

Two equilibria are involved in this system:

- Reaction (1): $\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mg^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq); \quad K_{sp} = 8.9 \times 10^{-12}$
- Reaction (2): $\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$

To prevent the formation of solid $Mg(OH)_2$, we must adjust the concentration of OH^- so that the reaction quotient for Equation (1), $Q = [Mg^{2+}][OH^-]^2$, is less than K_{sp} for $Mg(OH)_2$. (To simplify the calculation, we determine the concentration of OH^- when $Q = K_{sp}$.) $[OH^-]$ can be reduced by the addition of NH_4^+, which shifts Reaction (2) to the left and reduces $[OH^-]$.

1. *We determine the $[OH^-]$ at which $Q = K_{sp}$ when $[Mg^{2+}] = 0.10\ M$*:

$$Q = [\mathrm{Mg^{2+}}][\mathrm{OH^-}]^2 = (0.10)[\mathrm{OH^-}]^2 = 8.9 \times 10^{-12}$$

$$[\mathrm{OH^-}] = 9.4 \times 10^{-6}\ M$$

Solid $Mg(OH)_2$ will not form in this solution when $[OH^-]$ is less than $9.4 \times 10^{-6}\ M$.

- *We calculate the $[NH_4^+]$ needed to decrease $[OH^-]$ to $9.4 \times 10^{-6}\ M$ when $[NH_3] = 0.10$.*

$$K_b = \frac{[\mathrm{NH_4^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}]}{[\mathrm{NH_3}]} = \frac{[\mathrm{NH_4^+}](9.4 \times 10^{-6})}{0.10} = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

$$[\mathrm{NH_4^+}] = 0.19\ M$$

When $[NH_4^+]$ equals 0.19 *M*, $[OH^-]$ will be $9.4 \times 10^{-6}\ M$. Any $[NH_4^+]$ greater than 0.19 *M* will reduce $[OH^-]$ below $9.4 \times 10^{-6}\ M$ and prevent the formation of $Mg(OH)_2$.

Exercise 1

Consider the two equilibria:

$$\mathrm{ZnS}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Zn^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{S^{2-}}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{sp}} = 1 \times 10^{-27}$$

$$2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \mathrm{H_2S}(aq) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{S^{2-}}(aq) \quad K = 1.0 \times 10^{-26}$$

and calculate the concentration of hydronium ion required to prevent the precipitation of ZnS in a solution that is 0.050 *M* in Zn^{2+} and saturated with H_2S (0.10 *M* H_2S).

Answer

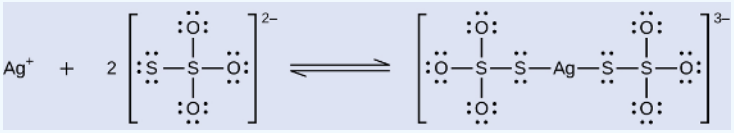
$$[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] > 0.2\ M$$

([S^{2-}] is less than 2 × 10^{-26} *M* and precipitation of ZnS does not occur.)

Therefore, precise calculations of the solubility of solids from the solubility product are limited to cases in which the only significant reaction occurring when the solid dissolves is the formation of its ions.

Example 2: Multiple Equilibria

Unexposed silver halides are removed from photographic film when they react with sodium thiosulfate ($Na_2S_2O_3$, called hypo) to form the complex ion $\mathrm{Ag(S_2O_3)_2^{3-}}$ (K_f = 4.7 × 10^{13}). The reaction with silver bromide is:



What mass of $Na_2S_2O_3$ is required to prepare 1.00 L of a solution that will dissolve 1.00 g of AgBr by the formation of $\mathrm{Ag(S_2O_3)_2^{3-}}$?

Solution

Two equilibria are involved when AgBr dissolves in a solution containing the $\mathrm{S_2O_3^{2-}}$ ion:

- Reaction (1): $\mathrm{AgBr}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Br^-}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{sp}} = 5.0 \times 10^{-13}$
- Reaction (2): $\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{S_2O_3^{2-}}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag(S_2O_3)_2^{3-}}(aq) \quad K_f = 4.7 \times 10^{13}$

In order for 1.00 g of AgBr to dissolve, the [Ag^+] in the solution that results must be low enough for *Q* for Reaction (1) to be smaller than K_{sp} for this reaction. We reduce [Ag^+] by adding $\mathrm{S_2O_3^{2-}}$ and thus cause Reaction (2) to shift to the right. We need the following steps to determine what mass of $Na_2S_2O_3$ is needed to provide the necessary $\mathrm{S_2O_3^{2-}}$.

1. *We calculate the [Br^-] produced by the complete dissolution of 1.00 g of AgBr (5.33 × 10^{-3} mol AgBr) in 1.00 L of solution:*

$$[\mathrm{Br^-}] = 5.33 \times 10^{-3}\ M$$

- *We use [Br^-] and K_{sp} to determine the maximum possible concentration of Ag^+ that can be present without causing reprecipitation of AgBr:*

$$[\mathrm{Ag^+}] = 9.4 \times 10^{-11}\ M$$

- *We determine the [$S_2O_3^{2-}$] required to make [Ag^+] = 9.4 × 10^{-11} M after the remaining Ag^+ ion has reacted with $S_2O_3^{2-}$ according to the equation:*

$$\mathrm{Ag^+} + 2\,\mathrm{S_2O_3^{2-}} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag(S_2O_3)_2^{3-}} \quad K_f = 4.7 \times 10^{13}$$

Because 5.33 × 10^{-3} mol of AgBr dissolves:

\[(5.33×10^{−3})−(9.4×10^{−11})=5.33×10^{−3}\ce{\:mol\:Ag(S2O3)2^3-}\ \nonumber]

Thus, at equilibrium: $[\mathrm{Ag(S_2O_3)_2^{3-}}]$ = 5.33 × 10^{-3} *M*, [Ag^+] = 9.4× 10^{-11} *M*, and *Q* = K_f = 4.7 × 10^{13}:

$$K_f = \frac{[Ag(S_2O_3)_2^{3-}]}{[Ag^+][S_2O_3^{2-}]^2} = 4.7 \times 10^{13}$$

$$[S_2O_3^{2-}] = 1.1 \times 10^{-3}\ M$$

When $[S_2O_3^{2-}]$ is 1.1×10^{-3} *M*, $[Ag^+]$ is 9.4×10^{-11} *M* and all AgBr remains dissolved.

- *We determine the total number of moles of $S_2O_3^{2-}$ that must be added to the solution.* This equals the amount that reacts with Ag^+ to form $Ag(S_2O_3)_2^{3-}$ plus the amount of free $S_2O_3^{2-}$ in solution at equilibrium. To form 5.33×10^{-3} mol of $Ag(S_2O_3)_2^{3-}$ requires $2 \times (5.33 \times 10^{-3})$ mol of $S_2O_3^{2-}$. In addition, 1.1×10^{-3} mol of unreacted $S_2O_3^{2-}$ is present (Step 3). Thus, the total amount of $S_2O_3^{2-}$ that must be added is:

$$2 \times (5.33 \times 10^{-3}\text{mol } S_2O_3^{2-}) + 1.1 \times 10^{-3}\text{ mol } S_2O_3^{2-} = 1.18 \times 10^{-2}\text{ mol } S_2O_3^{2-}$$

- *We determine the mass of $Na_2S_2O_3$ required to give 1.18×10^{-2} mol $S_2O_3^{2-}$ using the molar mass of $Na_2S_2O_3$:*

$$1.18 \times 10^{-2}\text{ mol } S_2O_3^{2-} \times \frac{158.1\text{ g } Na_2S_2O_3}{1\text{ mol } Na_2S_2O_3} = 1.9\text{ g } Na_2S_2O_3$$

Thus, 1.00 L of a solution prepared from 1.9 g $Na_2S_2O_3$ dissolves 1.0 g of AgBr.

? Exercise 2

AgCl(*s*), silver chloride, is well known to have a very low solubility: $Ag(s) \rightleftharpoons Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$, K_{sp} = 1.6×10^{-10}. Adding ammonia significantly increases the solubility of AgCl because a complex ion is formed: $Ag^+(aq) + 2\,NH_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons Ag(NH_3)_2^+(aq)$, K_f = 1.7×10^7. What mass of NH_3 is required to prepare 1.00 L of solution that will dissolve 2.00 g of AgCl by formation of $Ag(NH_3)_2^+$?

Answer

1.00 L of a solution prepared with 4.81 g NH_3 dissolves 2.0 g of AgCl.

Dissolution versus Weak Electrolyte Formation

We can determine how to shift the concentration of ions in the equilibrium between a slightly soluble solid and a solution of its ions by applying Le Chatelier's principle. For example, one way to control the concentration of manganese(II) ion, Mn^{2+}, in a solution is to adjust the pH of the solution and, consequently, to manipulate the equilibrium between the slightly soluble solid manganese(II) hydroxide, manganese(II) ion, and hydroxide ion:

$$Mn(OH)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Mn^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [Mn^{2+}][OH^-]^2$$

This could be important to a laundry because clothing washed in water that has a manganese concentration exceeding 0.1 mg per liter may be stained by the manganese. We can reduce the concentration of manganese by increasing the concentration of hydroxide ion. We could add, for example, a small amount of NaOH or some other base such as the silicates found in many laundry detergents. As the concentration of OH^- ion increases, the equilibrium responds by shifting to the left and reducing the concentration of Mn^{2+} ion while increasing the amount of solid $Mn(OH)_2$ in the equilibrium mixture, as predicted by Le Chatelier's principle.

✔ Example 3: Solubility Equilibrium of a Slightly Soluble Solid

What is the effect on the amount of solid $Mg(OH)_2$ that dissolves and the concentrations of Mg^{2+} and OH^- when each of the following are added to a mixture of solid $Mg(OH)_2$ in water at equilibrium?

a. $MgCl_2$
b. KOH
c. an acid
d. $NaNO_3$
e. $Mg(OH)_2$

Solution

The equilibrium among solid $Mg(OH)_2$ and a solution of Mg^{2+} and OH^- is:

$$Mg(OH)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq)$$

(a) The reaction shifts to the left to relieve the stress produced by the additional Mg^{2+} ion, in accordance with Le Chatelier's principle. In quantitative terms, the added Mg^{2+} causes the reaction quotient to be larger than the solubility product ($Q > K_{sp}$), and $Mg(OH)_2$ forms until the reaction quotient again equals K_{sp}. At the new equilibrium, $[OH^-]$ is less and $[Mg^{2+}]$ is greater than in the solution of $Mg(OH)_2$ in pure water. More solid $Mg(OH)_2$ is present.

(b) The reaction shifts to the left to relieve the stress of the additional OH^- ion. $Mg(OH)_2$ forms until the reaction quotient again equals K_{sp}. At the new equilibrium, $[OH^-]$ is greater and $[Mg^{2+}]$ is less than in the solution of $Mg(OH)_2$ in pure water. More solid $Mg(OH)_2$ is present.

(c) The concentration of OH^- is reduced as the OH^- reacts with the acid. The reaction shifts to the right to relieve the stress of less OH^- ion. In quantitative terms, the decrease in the OH^- concentration causes the reaction quotient to be smaller than the solubility product ($Q < K_{sp}$), and additional $Mg(OH)_2$ dissolves until the reaction quotient again equals K_{sp}. At the new equilibrium, $[OH^-]$ is less and $[Mg^{2+}]$ is greater than in the solution of $Mg(OH)_2$ in pure water. More $Mg(OH)_2$ is dissolved.

(d) $NaNO_3$ contains none of the species involved in the equilibrium, so we should expect that it has no appreciable effect on the concentrations of Mg^{2+} and OH^-. (As we have seen previously, dissolved salts change the activities of the ions of an electrolyte. However, the salt effect is generally small, and we shall neglect the slight errors that may result from it.)

(e) The addition of solid $Mg(OH)_2$ has no effect on the solubility of $Mg(OH)_2$ or on the concentration of Mg^{2+} and OH^-. The concentration of $Mg(OH)_2$ does not appear in the equation for the reaction quotient:

$$Q = [Mg^{2+}][OH^-]^2$$

Thus, changing the amount of solid magnesium hydroxide in the mixture has no effect on the value of Q, and no shift is required to restore Q to the value of the equilibrium constant.

? Exercise 3

What is the effect on the amount of solid $NiCO_3$ that dissolves and the concentrations of Ni^{2+} and CO_3^{2-} when each of the following are added to a mixture of the slightly soluble solid $NiCO_3$ and water at equilibrium?

a. $Ni(NO_3)_2$
b. $KClO_4$
c. $NiCO_3$
d. K_2CO_3
e. HNO_3 (reacts with carbonate giving HCO_3^- or H_2O and CO_2)

Answer

(a) mass of $NiCO_3(s)$ increases, $[Ni^{2+}]$ increases, $[CO_3^{2-}]$ decreases; (b) no appreciable effect; (c) no effect except to increase the amount of solid $NiCO_3$; (d) mass of $NiCO_3(s)$ increases, $[Ni^{2+}]$ decreases, $[CO_3^{2-}]$ increases; (e) mass of $NiCO_3(s)$ decreases, $[Ni^{2+}]$ increases, $[CO_3^{2-}]$ decreases

Summary

Several systems we encounter consist of multiple equilibria, systems where two or more equilibria processes are occurring simultaneously. Some common examples include acid rain, fluoridation, and dissolution of carbon dioxide in sea water. When looking at these systems, we need to consider each equilibrium separately and then combine the individual equilibrium constants into one solubility product or reaction quotient expression using the tools from the first equilibrium chapter. Le Chatelier's principle also must be considered, as each reaction in a multiple equilibria system will shift toward reactants or products based on what is added to the initial reaction and how it affects each subsequent equilibrium reaction.

Glossary

multiple equilibrium

system characterized by more than one state of balance between a slightly soluble ionic solid and an aqueous solution of ions working simultaneously

---

This page titled 2.9.3 Coupled Equilibria is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **15.3: Coupled Equilibria** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.9.4 Equilibria of Other Reaction Classes (Exercises)

15.1: Precipitation and Dissolution

Q15.1.1

Complete the changes in concentrations for each of the following reactions:

$$\ce{AgI(s) -> Ag^+(aq) + I^-(aq)} \tag{1}$$
$$x \qquad \_\_\_\_\_ \tag{2}$$
$$\ce{CaCO3(s) -> Ca^2+(aq) + CO3^2-(aq)} \tag{3}$$
$$\_\_\_\_\_ \qquad x \tag{4}$$
$$\ce{Mg(OH)2(s) -> Mg^2+(aq) + 2 OH^-(aq)} \tag{5}$$
$$x \qquad \_\_\_\_\_ \tag{6}$$
$$\ce{Mg3(PO4)2(s) -> 3 Mg^2+(aq) + 2 PO4^3-(aq)} \tag{7}$$
$$x\_\_\_\_\_ \tag{8}$$
$$\ce{Ca5(PO4)3OH(s) -> 5 Ca^2+(aq) + 3 PO4^3-(aq) + OH^-(aq)} \tag{9}$$
$$\_\_\_\_\_ \qquad \_\_\_\_\_ \qquad x \tag{10}$$

S15.1.1

$$\ce{AgI(s) -> Ag^+(aq) + I^-(aq)} \tag{11}$$
$$x \qquad \underline{x} \tag{12}$$
$$\ce{CaCO3(s) -> Ca^2+(aq) + CO3^2-(aq)} \tag{13}$$
$$\underline{x} \qquad x \tag{14}$$
$$\ce{Mg(OH)2(s) -> Mg^2+(aq) + 2 OH^-(aq)} \tag{15}$$
$$x \qquad \underline{2x} \tag{16}$$
$$\ce{Mg3(PO4)2(s) -> 3 Mg^2+(aq) + 2 PO4^3-(aq)} \tag{17}$$
$$\underline{3x} \qquad 2x \tag{18}$$
$$\ce{Ca5(PO4)3OH(s) -> 5 Ca^2+(aq) + 3 PO4^3-(aq) + OH^-(aq)} \tag{19}$$
$$\underline{5x} \qquad \underline{3x} \qquad x \tag{20}$$

Q15.1.2

Complete the changes in concentrations for each of the following reactions:

$$\ce{BaSO4(s) -> Ba^2+(aq) + SO4^2-(aq)} \tag{21}$$
$$x \qquad \_\_\_\_\_ \tag{22}$$
$$\ce{Ag2SO4(s) -> 2 Ag^+(aq) + SO4^2-(aq)} \tag{23}$$
$$\_\_\_\_\_ \qquad x \tag{24}$$
$$\ce{Al(OH)3(s) -> Al^3+(aq) + 3 OH^-(aq)} \tag{25}$$
$$x \qquad \_\_\_\_\_ \tag{26}$$
$$\ce{Pb(OH)Cl(s) -> Pb^2+(aq) + OH^-(aq) + Cl^-(aq)} \tag{27}$$
$$\_\_\_\_\_ \qquad x \qquad \_\_\_\_\_ \tag{28}$$
$$\ce{Ca3(AsO4)2(s) -> 3 Ca^2+(aq) + 2 AsO4^3-(aq)} \tag{29}$$
$$3x \qquad \_\_\_\_\_ \tag{30}$$

Q15.1.3

How do the concentrations of $\ce{Ag^+}$ and $\ce{CrO4^2-}$ in a saturated solution above 1.0 g of solid $\ce{Ag2CrO4}$ change when 100 g of solid $\ce{Ag2CrO4}$ is added to the system? Explain.

S15.1.3

There is no change. A solid has an activity of 1 whether there is a little or a lot.

Q15.1.4

How do the concentrations of Pb^{2+} and S^{2-} change when K_2S is added to a saturated solution of PbS?

Q15.1.5

What additional information do we need to answer the following question: How is the equilibrium of solid silver bromide with a saturated solution of its ions affected when the temperature is raised?

S15.1.5

The solubility of silver bromide at the new temperature must be known. Normally the solubility increases and some of the solid silver bromide will dissolve.

Q15.1.6

Which of the following slightly soluble compounds has a solubility greater than that calculated from its solubility product because of hydrolysis of the anion present: $CoSO_3$, CuI, $PbCO_3$, $PbCl_2$, Tl_2S, $KClO_4$?

Q15.1.7

Which of the following slightly soluble compounds has a solubility greater than that calculated from its solubility product because of hydrolysis of the anion present: AgCl, $BaSO_4$, CaF_2, Hg_2I_2, $MnCO_3$, ZnS, PbS?

S15.1.7

CaF_2, $MnCO_3$, and ZnS

Q15.1.8

Write the ionic equation for dissolution and the solubility product (K_{sp}) expression for each of the following slightly soluble ionic compounds:

a. $PbCl_2$
b. Ag_2S
c. $Sr_3(PO_4)_2$
d. $SrSO_4$

Q15.1.9

Write the ionic equation for the dissolution and the K_{sp} expression for each of the following slightly soluble ionic compounds:

a. LaF_3
b. $CaCO_3$
c. Ag_2SO_4
d. $Pb(OH)_2$

Q15.1.10

a. $\mathrm{LaF_3}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{La^{3+}}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{F^-}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{La^{3+}}][\mathrm{F^-}]^3$;
b. $\mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}][\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}]$;
c. $\mathrm{Ag_2SO_4}(s) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ag^+}]^2[\mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}]$;
d. $\mathrm{Pb(OH)_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Pb^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Pb^{2+}}][\mathrm{OH^-}]^2$

Q15.1.11

The *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics* gives solubilities of the following compounds in grams per 100 mL of water. Because these compounds are only slightly soluble, assume that the volume does not change on dissolution and calculate the solubility product for each.

a. $BaSiF_6$, 0.026 g/100 mL (contains SiF_6^{2-} ions)
b. $Ce(IO_3)_4$, 1.5×10^{-2} g/100 mL

c. $Gd_2(SO_4)_3$, 3.98 g/100 mL
d. $(NH_4)_2PtBr_6$, 0.59 g/100 mL (contains $PtBr_6^{2-}$ ions)

Q15.1.12

The *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics* gives solubilities of the following compounds in grams per 100 mL of water. Because these compounds are only slightly soluble, assume that the volume does not change on dissolution and calculate the solubility product for each.

a. $BaSeO_4$, 0.0118 g/100 mL
b. $Ba(BrO_3)_2 \cdot H_2O$, 0.30 g/100 mL
c. $NH_4MgAsO_4 \cdot 6H_2O$, 0.038 g/100 mL
d. $La_2(MoO_4)_3$, 0.00179 g/100 mL

S15.1.12

(a)1.77×10^{-7}; 1.6×10^{-6}; 2.2×10^{-9}; 7.91×10^{-22}

Q15.1.13

Use solubility products and predict which of the following salts is the most soluble, in terms of moles per liter, in pure water: CaF_2, Hg_2Cl_2, PbI_2, or $Sn(OH)_2$.

Q15.1.14

Assuming that no equilibria other than dissolution are involved, calculate the molar solubility of each of the following from its solubility product:

a. $KHC_4H_4O_6$
b. PbI_2
c. $Ag_4[Fe(CN)_6]$, a salt containing the $Fe(CN)_4^-$ ion
d. Hg_2I_2

S15.1.15

2×10^{-2} *M*; 1.3×10^{-3} *M*; 2.27×10^{-9} *M*; 2.2×10^{-10} *M*

Q15.1.16

Assuming that no equilibria other than dissolution are involved, calculate the molar solubility of each of the following from its solubility product:

a. Ag_2SO_4
b. $PbBr_2$
c. AgI
d. $CaC_2O_4 \cdot H_2O$

Q15.1.X

Assuming that no equilibria other than dissolution are involved, calculate the concentration of all solute species in each of the following solutions of salts in contact with a solution containing a common ion. Show that changes in the initial concentrations of the common ions can be neglected.

a. AgCl(*s*) in 0.025 *M* NaCl
b. $CaF_2(s)$ in 0.00133 *M* KF
c. $Ag_2SO_4(s)$ in 0.500 L of a solution containing 19.50 g of K_2SO_4
d. $Zn(OH)_2(s)$ in a solution buffered at a pH of 11.45

S15.1.X

7.2×10^{-9} *M* = $[Ag^+]$, $[Cl^-]$ = 0.025 *M*

Check: $\frac{7.2 \times 10^{-9}\ M}{0.025\ M} \times 100\% = 2.9 \times 10^{-5}\%$, an insignificant change;

$2.2 \times 10^{-5}\ M = [Ca^{2+}]$, $[F^-] = 0.0013\ M$

Check: $\frac{2.25 \times 10^{-5}\ M}{0.00133\ M} \times 100\% = 1.69\%$. This value is less than 5% and can be ignored.

$0.2238\ M = [SO_4^{2-}]$; $[Ag^+] = 2.30 \times 10^{-9}\ M$

Check: $\frac{1.15 \times 10^{-9}}{0.2238} \times 100\% = 5.14 \times 10^{-7}$; the condition is satisfied.

$[OH^-] = 2.8 \times 10^{-3}\ M$; $5.7 \times 10^{-12}\ M = [Zn^{2+}]$

Check: $\frac{5.7 \times 10^{-12}}{2.8 \times 10^{-3}} \times 100\% = 2.0 \times 10^{-7}\%$; x is less than 5% of $[OH^-]$ and is, therefore, negligible.

Q15.1.X

Assuming that no equilibria other than dissolution are involved, calculate the concentration of all solute species in each of the following solutions of salts in contact with a solution containing a common ion. Show that changes in the initial concentrations of the common ions can be neglected.

a. TlCl(*s*) in 1.250 *M* HCl
b. PbI_2(*s*) in 0.0355 *M* CaI_2
c. Ag_2CrO_4(*s*) in 0.225 L of a solution containing 0.856 g of K_2CrO_4
d. $Cd(OH)_2$(*s*) in a solution buffered at a pH of 10.995

Assuming that no equilibria other than dissolution are involved, calculate the concentration of all solute species in each of the following solutions of salts in contact with a solution containing a common ion. Show that it is not appropriate to neglect the changes in the initial concentrations of the common ions.

a. TlCl(*s*) in 0.025 *M* $TlNO_3$
b. BaF_2(*s*) in 0.0313 *M* KF
c. MgC_2O_4 in 2.250 L of a solution containing 8.156 g of $Mg(NO_3)_2$
d. $Ca(OH)_2$(*s*) in an unbuffered solution initially with a pH of 12.700

S15.1.X

- $[Cl^-] = 7.6 \times 10^{-3}\ M$

Check: $\frac{7.6 \times 10^{-3}}{0.025} \times 100\% = 30\%$

This value is too large to drop *x*. Therefore solve by using the quadratic equation:

- $[Ti^+] = 3.1 \times 10^{-2}\ M$
- $[Cl^-] = 6.1 \times 10^{-3}$
- $[Ba^{2+}] = 1.7 \times 10^{-3}\ M$

Check: $\frac{1.7 \times 10^{-3}}{0.0313} \times 100\% = 5.5\%$

This value is too large to drop x, and the entire equation must be solved.

- $[Ba^{2+}] = 1.6 \times 10^{-3}\ M$
- $[F^-] = 0.0329\ M$;
- $Mg(NO_3)_2 = 0.02444\ M$

$[C_2O_4^{2-}] = 3.5 \times 10^{-3}$

Check: $\frac{3.5 \times 10^{-3}}{0.02444} \times 100\% = 14\%$

This value is greater than 5%, so the quadratic equation must be used:

- $[C_2O_4^{2-}] = 3.5 \times 10^{-3}\ M$
- $[Mg^{2+}] = 0.0275\ M$
- $[OH^-] = 0.0501\ M$

- $[Ca^{2+}] = 3.15 \times 10^{-3}$

Check: $\frac{3.15 \times 10^{-3}}{0.050} \times 100\% = 6.28\%$

This value is greater than 5%, so a more exact method, such as successive approximations, must be used.

- $[Ca^{2+}] = 2.8 \times 10^{-3}\ M$
- $[OH^-] = 0.053 \times 10^{-2}\ M$

Q15.1.X

Explain why the changes in concentrations of the common ions in Exercise can be neglected.

Q15.1.X

Explain why the changes in concentrations of the common ions in Exercise cannot be neglected.

S15.1.X

The changes in concentration are greater than 5% and thus exceed the maximum value for disregarding the change.

Q15.1.X

Calculate the solubility of aluminum hydroxide, $Al(OH)_3$, in a solution buffered at pH 11.00.

Q15.1.X

Refer to Appendix J for solubility products for calcium salts. Determine which of the calcium salts listed is most soluble in moles per liter and which is most soluble in grams per liter.

S15.1.X

$CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$ is the most soluble Ca salt in mol/L, and it is also the most soluble Ca salt in g/L.

Q15.1.X

Most barium compounds are very poisonous; however, barium sulfate is often administered internally as an aid in the X-ray examination of the lower intestinal tract. This use of $BaSO_4$ is possible because of its low solubility. Calculate the molar solubility of $BaSO_4$ and the mass of barium present in 1.00 L of water saturated with $BaSO_4$.

Q15.1.X

Public Health Service standards for drinking water set a maximum of 250 mg/L ($2.60 \times 10^{-3}\ M$) of SO_4^{2-} because of its cathartic action (it is a laxative). Does natural water that is saturated with $CaSO_4$ ("gyp" water) as a result or passing through soil containing gypsum, $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$, meet these standards? What is SO_4^{2-} in such water?

S15.1.X

$4.9 \times 10^{-3}\ M = [SO_4^{2-}] = [Ca^{2+}]$; Since this concentration is higher than $2.60 \times 10^{-3}\ M$, "gyp" water does not meet the standards.

Q15.1.X

Perform the following calculations:

a. Calculate $[Ag^+]$ in a saturated aqueous solution of AgBr.
b. What will $[Ag^+]$ be when enough KBr has been added to make $[Br^-] = 0.050\ M$?
c. What will $[Br^-]$ be when enough $AgNO_3$ has been added to make $[Ag^+] = 0.020\ M$?

The solubility product of $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$ is 2.4×10^{-5}. What mass of this salt will dissolve in 1.0 L of $0.010\ M\ SO_4^{2-}$?

S15.1.X

Mass ($CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$) = 0.34 g/L

Q15.1.X

Assuming that no equilibria other than dissolution are involved, calculate the concentrations of ions in a saturated solution of each of the following (see Table E3 for solubility products).

a. TlCl
b. BaF_2
c. Ag_2CrO_4
d. $CaC_2O_4•H_2O$
e. the mineral anglesite, $PbSO_4$

Q15.1.X

Assuming that no equilibria other than dissolution are involved, calculate the concentrations of ions in a saturated solution of each of the following (see Table E3 for solubility products).

a. AgI
b. Ag_2SO_4
c. $Mn(OH)_2$
d. $Sr(OH)_2•8H_2O$
e. the mineral brucite, $Mg(OH)_2$

S15.1.X

$[Ag^+] = [I^-] = 1.2 \times 10^{-8}\ M$; $[Ag^+] = 2.86 \times 10^{-2}\ M$, $[SO_4^{2-}] = 1.43 \times 10^{-2}\ M$; $[Mn^{2+}] = 2.2 \times 10^{-5}\ M$, $[OH^-] = 4.5 \times 10^{-5}\ M$; $[Sr^{2+}] = 4.3 \times 10^{-2}\ M$, $[OH^-] = 8.6 \times 10^{-2}\ M$; $[Mg^{2+}] = 1.6 \times 10^{-4}\ M$, $[OH^-] = 3.1 \times 10^{-4}\ M$.

Q15.1.X

The following concentrations are found in mixtures of ions in equilibrium with slightly soluble solids. From the concentrations given, calculate K_{sp} for each of the slightly soluble solids indicated:

a. AgBr: $[Ag^+] = 5.7 \times 10^{-7}\ M$, $[Br^-] = 5.7 \times 10^{-7}\ M$
b. $CaCO_3$: $[Ca^{2+}] = 5.3 \times 10^{-3}\ M$, $[CO_3^{2-}] = 9.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$
c. PbF_2: $[Pb^{2+}] = 2.1 \times 10^{-3}\ M$, $[F^-] = 4.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$
d. Ag_2CrO_4: $[Ag^+] = 5.3 \times 10^{-5}\ M$, $3.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$
e. InF_3: $[In^{3+}] = 2.3 \times 10^{-3}\ M$, $[F^-] = 7.0 \times 10^{-3}\ M$

Q15.1.X

The following concentrations are found in mixtures of ions in equilibrium with slightly soluble solids. From the concentrations given, calculate K_{sp} for each of the slightly soluble solids indicated:

a. TlCl: $[Tl^+] = 1.21 \times 10^{-2}\ M$, $[Cl^-] = 1.2 \times 10^{-2}\ M$
b. $Ce(IO_3)_4$: $[Ce^{4+}] = 1.8 \times 10^{-4}\ M$, $[IO_3^-] = 2.6 \times 10^{-13}\ M$
c. $Gd_2(SO_4)_3$: $[Gd^{3+}] = 0.132\ M$, $[SO_4^{2-}] = 0.198\ M$
d. Ag_2SO_4: $[Ag^+] = 2.40 \times 10^{-2}\ M$, $[SO_4^{2-}] = 2.05 \times 10^{-2}\ M$
e. $BaSO_4$: $[Ba^{2+}] = 0.500\ M$, $[SO_4^{2-}] = 2.16 \times 10^{-10}\ M$

S15.1.X

2.0×10^{-4}; 5.1×10^{-17}; 1.35×10^{-4}; 1.18×10^{-5}; 1.08×10^{-10}

Q15.1.X

Which of the following compounds precipitates from a solution that has the concentrations indicated? (See Table E3 for K_{sp} values.)

a. $KClO_4$: $[K^+] = 0.01\ M$, $[ClO_4^-] = 0.01\ M$
b. K_2PtCl_6: $[K^+] = 0.01\ M$, $[PtCl_6^{2-}] = 0.01\ M$
c. PbI_2: $[Pb^{2+}] = 0.003\ M$, $[I^-] = 1.3 \times 10^{-3}\ M$
d. Ag_2S: $[Ag^+] = 1 \times 10^{-10}\ M$, $[S^{2-}] = 1 \times 10^{-13}\ M$

Q15.1.X

Which of the following compounds precipitates from a solution that has the concentrations indicated? (See Table E3 for K_{sp} values.)

a. $CaCO_3$: $[Ca^{2+}] = 0.003\ M$, $[CO_3^{2-}] = 0.003\ M$
b. $Co(OH)_2$: $[Co^{2+}] = 0.01\ M$, $[OH^-] = 1 \times 10^{-7}\ M$
c. $CaHPO_4$: $[Ca^{2+}] = 0.01\ M$, $[HPO_4^{2-}] = 2 \times 10^{-6}\ M$
d. $Pb_3(PO_4)_2$: $[Pb^{2+}] = 0.01\ M$, $[PO_4^{3-}] = 1 \times 10^{-13}\ M$

S15.1.X

a. $CaCO_3$ does precipitate.
b. The compound does not precipitate.
c. The compound does not precipitate.
d. The compound precipitates.

Q15.1.X

Calculate the concentration of Tl^+ when TlCl just begins to precipitate from a solution that is 0.0250 *M* in Cl^-.

Q15.1.X

Calculate the concentration of sulfate ion when $BaSO_4$ just begins to precipitate from a solution that is 0.0758 *M* in Ba^{2+}.

S15.1.X

$1.42 \times 10^{-9}\ M$

Q15.1.X

Calculate the concentration of Sr^{2+} when SrF_2 starts to precipitate from a solution that is 0.0025 *M* in F^-.

Q15.1.X

Calculate the concentration of PO_4^{3-} when Ag_3PO_4 starts to precipitate from a solution that is 0.0125 *M* in Ag^+.

S15.1.X

$9.2 \times 10^{-13}\ M$

Q15.1.X

Calculate the concentration of F^- required to begin precipitation of CaF_2 in a solution that is 0.010 *M* in Ca^{2+}.

Q15.1.X

Calculate the concentration of Ag^+ required to begin precipitation of Ag_2CO_3 in a solution that is $2.50 \times 10^{-6}\ M$ in CO_3^{2-}.

S15.1.X

$[Ag^+] = 1.8 \times 10^{-3}\ M$

Q15.1.X

What $[Ag^+]$ is required to reduce $[CO_3^{2-}]$ to $8.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$ by precipitation of Ag_2CO_3?

Q15.1.X

What $[F^-]$ is required to reduce $[Ca^{2+}]$ to $1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ M$ by precipitation of CaF_2?

S15.1.X

6.2×10^{-4}

Q15.1.X

A volume of 0.800 L of a 2×10^{-4}-*M* $Ba(NO_3)_2$ solution is added to 0.200 L of $5 \times 10^{-4}\ M$ Li_2SO_4. Does $BaSO_4$ precipitate? Explain your answer.

Q15.1.X

Perform these calculations for nickel(II) carbonate.

a. With what volume of water must a precipitate containing $NiCO_3$ be washed to dissolve 0.100 g of this compound? Assume that the wash water becomes saturated with $NiCO_3$ ($K_{sp} = 1.36 \times 10^{-7}$).
b. If the $NiCO_3$ were a contaminant in a sample of $CoCO_3$ ($K_{sp} = 1.0 \times 10^{-12}$), what mass of $CoCO_3$ would have been lost? Keep in mind that both $NiCO_3$ and $CoCO_3$ dissolve in the same solution.

S15.1.X

2.28 L; 7.3×10^{-7} g

Q15.1.X

Iron concentrations greater than 5.4×10^{-6} *M* in water used for laundry purposes can cause staining. What $[OH^-]$ is required to reduce $[Fe^{2+}]$ to this level by precipitation of $Fe(OH)_2$?

Q15.1.X

A solution is 0.010 *M* in both Cu^{2+} and Cd^{2+}. What percentage of Cd^{2+} remains in the solution when 99.9% of the Cu^{2+} has been precipitated as CuS by adding sulfide?

S15.1.X

100% of it is dissolved

Q15.1.X

A solution is 0.15 *M* in both Pb^{2+} and Ag^+. If Cl^- is added to this solution, what is $[Ag^+]$ when $PbCl_2$ begins to precipitate?

Q15.1.X

What reagent might be used to separate the ions in each of the following mixtures, which are 0.1 *M* with respect to each ion? In some cases it may be necessary to control the pH. (Hint: Consider the K_{sp} values given in Appendix J.)

a. Hg_2^{2+} and Cu^{2+}
b. SO_4^{2-} and Cl^-
c. Hg^{2+} and Co^{2+}
d. Zn^{2+} and Sr^{2+}
e. Ba^{2+} and Mg^{2+}
f. CO_3^{2-} and OH^-

S15.1.X

a. Hg_2^{2+} and Cu^{2+}: Add SO_4^{2-}.
b. SO_4^{2-} and Cl^-: Add Ba^{2+}.
c. Hg^{2+} and Co^{2+}: Add S^{2-}.
d. Zn^{2+} an Sr^{2+}: Add OH^- until $[OH^-] = 0.050$ *M*.
e. Ba^{2+} and Mg^{2+}: Add SO_4^{2-}.
f. CO_3^{2-} and OH^-: Add Ba^{2+}.

Q15.1.X

A solution contains 1.0×10^{-5} mol of KBr and 0.10 mol of KCl per liter. $AgNO_3$ is gradually added to this solution. Which forms first, solid AgBr or solid AgCl?

Q15.1.X

A solution contains 1.0×10^{-2} mol of KI and 0.10 mol of KCl per liter. $AgNO_3$ is gradually added to this solution. Which forms first, solid AgI or solid AgCl?

S15.1.X

AgI will precipitate first.

Q15.1.X

The calcium ions in human blood serum are necessary for coagulation. Potassium oxalate, $K_2C_2O_4$, is used as an anticoagulant when a blood sample is drawn for laboratory tests because it removes the calcium as a precipitate of $CaC_2O_4 \cdot H_2O$. It is necessary to remove all but 1.0% of the Ca^{2+} in serum in order to prevent coagulation. If normal blood serum with a buffered pH of 7.40 contains 9.5 mg of Ca^{2+} per 100 mL of serum, what mass of $K_2C_2O_4$ is required to prevent the coagulation of a 10 mL blood sample that is 55% serum by volume? (All volumes are accurate to two significant figures. Note that the volume of serum in a 10-mL blood sample is 5.5 mL. Assume that the K_{sp} value for CaC_2O_4 in serum is the same as in water.)

Q15.1.X

About 50% of urinary calculi (kidney stones) consist of calcium phosphate, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. The normal mid range calcium content excreted in the urine is 0.10 g of Ca^{2+} per day. The normal mid range amount of urine passed may be taken as 1.4 L per day. What is the maximum concentration of phosphate ion that urine can contain before a calculus begins to form?

S15.1.X

$4 \times 10^{-9}\ M$

Q15.1.X

The pH of normal urine is 6.30, and the total phosphate concentration ($[PO_4^{3-}]$ + $[HPO_4^{2-}]$ + $[H_2PO_4^-]$ + $[H_3PO_4]$) is 0.020 *M*. What is the minimum concentration of Ca^{2+} necessary to induce kidney stone formation? (See Exercise for additional information.)

Q15.1.X

Magnesium metal (a component of alloys used in aircraft and a reducing agent used in the production of uranium, titanium, and other active metals) is isolated from sea water by the following sequence of reactions:

$$\mathrm{Mg^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}(s) + \mathrm{Ca^{2+}}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{HCl}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{MgCl_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

$$\mathrm{MgCl_2}(l) \xrightarrow{\text{electrolysis}} \mathrm{Mg}(s) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g)$$

Sea water has a density of 1.026 g/cm^3 and contains 1272 parts per million of magnesium as $Mg^{2+}(aq)$ by mass. What mass, in kilograms, of $Ca(OH)_2$ is required to precipitate 99.9% of the magnesium in 1.00×10^3 L of sea water?

S15.1.X

3.99 kg

Q15.1.X

Hydrogen sulfide is bubbled into a solution that is 0.10 *M* in both Pb^{2+} and Fe^{2+} and 0.30 *M* in HCl. After the solution has come to equilibrium it is saturated with H_2S ($[H_2S]$ = 0.10 *M*). What concentrations of Pb^{2+} and Fe^{2+} remain in the solution? For a saturated solution of H_2S we can use the equilibrium:

$$\mathrm{H_2S}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{S^{2-}}(aq) \quad K = 1.0 \times 10^{-26}$$

(Hint: The $[H_3O^+]$ changes as metal sulfides precipitate.)

Q15.1.X

Perform the following calculations involving concentrations of iodate ions:

a. The iodate ion concentration of a saturated solution of $La(IO_3)_3$ was found to be 3.1×10^{-3} mol/L. Find the K_{sp}.
b. Find the concentration of iodate ions in a saturated solution of $Cu(IO_3)_2$ ($K_{sp} = 7.4 \times 10^{-8}$).

S15.1.X

3.1×10^{-11}; $[Cu^{2+}] = 2.6 \times 10^{-3}$; $[IO_3^-] = 5.3 \times 10^{-3}$

Q15.1.X

Calculate the molar solubility of AgBr in 0.035 *M* NaBr ($K_{sp} = 5 \times 10^{-13}$).

Q15.1.X

How many grams of $Pb(OH)_2$ will dissolve in 500 mL of a 0.050-*M* $PbCl_2$ solution (K_{sp} = 1.2 × 10^{-15})?

S15.1.X

1.8 × 10^{-5} g $Pb(OH)_2$

Q15.1.X

Use the simulation from the earlier Link to Learning to complete the following exercise:. Using 0.01 g CaF_2, give the K_{sp} values found in a 0.2-*M* solution of each of the salts. Discuss why the values change as you change soluble salts.

Q15.1.X

How many grams of Milk of Magnesia, $Mg(OH)_2$ (*s*) (58.3 g/mol), would be soluble in 200 mL of water. K_{sp} = 7.1 × 10^{-12}. Include the ionic reaction and the expression for K_{sp} in your answer. (K_w = 1 × 10^{-14} = $[H_3O^+][OH^-]$)

S15.1.X

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mg^{2+}} + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-} \tag{31}$$

$$K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Mg^{2+}}][\mathrm{OH^-}]^2 \tag{32}$$

\[1.14 × 10^{-3} g $Mg(OH)_2$\]

Q15.1.X

Two hypothetical salts, LM_2 and LQ, have the same molar solubility in H_2O. If K_{sp} for LM_2 is 3.20 × 10^{-5}, what is the K_{sp} value for LQ?

Q15.1.X

Which of the following carbonates will form first? Which of the following will form last? Explain.

a. $MgCO_3$ $K_{sp} = 3.5 \times 10^{-8}$
b. $CaCO_3$ $K_{sp} = 4.2 \times 10^{-7}$
c. $SrCO_3$ $K_{sp} = 3.9 \times 10^{-9}$
d. $BaCO_3$ $K_{sp} = 4.4 \times 10^{-5}$
e. $MnCO_3$ $K_{sp} = 5.1 \times 10^{-9}$

S15.1.X

$SrCO_3$ will form first, since it has the smallest K_{sp} value it is the least soluble. $BaCO_3$ will be the last to precipitate, it has the largest K_{sp} value.

Q15.1.X

How many grams of $Zn(CN)_2$(s) (117.44 g/mol) would be soluble in 100 mL of H_2O? Include the balanced reaction and the expression for K_{sp} in your answer. The K_{sp} value for $Zn(CN)_2$(s) is 3.0 × 10^{-16}.

15.2: Lewis Acids and Bases

Q15.2.X

Under what circumstances, if any, does a sample of solid AgCl completely dissolve in pure water?

S15.2.X

when the amount of solid is so small that a saturated solution is not produced

Q15.2.X

Explain why the addition of NH_3 or HNO_3 to a saturated solution of Ag_2CO_3 in contact with solid Ag_2CO_3 increases the solubility of the solid.

Q15.2.X

Calculate the cadmium ion concentration, [Cd^{2+}], in a solution prepared by mixing 0.100 L of 0.0100 *M* $Cd(NO_3)_2$ with 1.150 L of 0.100 $NH_3(aq)$.

S15.2.X

2.35×10^{-4} *M*

Q15.2.X

Explain why addition of NH_3 or HNO_3 to a saturated solution of $Cu(OH)_2$ in contact with solid $Cu(OH)_2$ increases the solubility of the solid.

S15.2.X

Sometimes equilibria for complex ions are described in terms of dissociation constants, K_d. For the complex ion AlF_6^{3-} the dissociation reaction is:

$$AlF_6^{3-} \rightleftharpoons Al^{3+} + 6\,F^- \)and\(K_d = \frac{[Al^{3+}][F^-]^6}{[AlF_6^{3-}]} = 2 \times 10^{-24} \tag{33}$$

Q15.2.X

Calculate the value of the formation constant, K_f, for AlF_6^{3-}.

S15.2.X

5×10^{23}

Q15.2.X

Using the value of the formation constant for the complex ion $Co(NH_3)_6^{2+}$, calculate the dissociation constant.

Q15.2.X

Using the dissociation constant, $K_d = 7.8 \times 10^{-18}$, calculate the equilibrium concentrations of Cd^{2+} and CN^- in a 0.250-*M* solution of $Cd(CN)_4^{2-}$.

S15.2.X

This table has two main columns and three rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following in the first column: Initial concentration (M) and Equilibrium (M). The second column has the header, "[C d (C N) subscript 4 to the second power superscript negative sign] [C N superscript negative sign] [C d to the second power superscript positive sign]." Under the second column is a subgroup of two rows and three columns. The first column contains the following: 0.250 and 0.250 minus x. The second column contains the following: 0 and 4 x. The third column contains the following: 0 and x.

[Cd^{2+}] = 9.5×10^{-5} *M*; [CN^-] = 3.8×10^{-4} *M*

Q15.2.X

Using the dissociation constant, $K_d = 3.4 \times 10^{-15}$, calculate the equilibrium concentrations of Zn^{2+} and OH^- in a 0.0465-*M* solution of $Zn(OH)_4^{2-}$.

Q15.2.X

Using the dissociation constant, $K_d = 2.2 \times 10^{-34}$, calculate the equilibrium concentrations of Co^{3+} and NH_3 in a 0.500-*M* solution of $Co(NH_3)_6^{3+}$.

S15.2.X

[Co^{3+}] = 3.0×10^{-6} *M*; [NH_3] = 1.8×10^{-5} *M*

Q15.2.X

Using the dissociation constant, $K_d = 1 \times 10^{-44}$, calculate the equilibrium concentrations of Fe^{3+} and CN^- in a 0.333 M solution of $Fe(CN)_6^{3-}$.

Q15.2.X

Calculate the mass of potassium cyanide ion that must be added to 100 mL of solution to dissolve 2.0×10^{-2} mol of silver cyanide, AgCN.

S15.2.X

1.3 g

Q15.2.X

Calculate the minimum concentration of ammonia needed in 1.0 L of solution to dissolve 3.0×10^{-3} mol of silver bromide.

Q15.2.X

A roll of 35-mm black and white photographic film contains about 0.27 g of unexposed AgBr before developing. What mass of $Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$ (sodium thiosulfate pentahydrate or hypo) in 1.0 L of developer is required to dissolve the AgBr as $Ag(S_2O_3)_2^{3-}$ ($K_f = 4.7 \times 10^{13}$)?

S15.2.X

0.80 g

Q15.2.X

We have seen an introductory definition of an acid: An acid is a compound that reacts with water and increases the amount of hydronium ion present. In the chapter on acids and bases, we saw two more definitions of acids: a compound that donates a proton (a hydrogen ion, H^+) to another compound is called a Brønsted-Lowry acid, and a Lewis acid is any species that can accept a pair of electrons. Explain why the introductory definition is a macroscopic definition, while the Brønsted-Lowry definition and the Lewis definition are microscopic definitions.

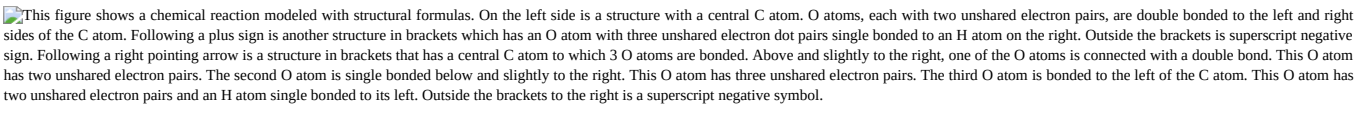
Q15.2.X

Write the Lewis structures of the reactants and product of each of the following equations, and identify the Lewis acid and the Lewis base in each:

a. $CO_2 + OH^- \longrightarrow HCO_3^-$
b. $B(OH)_3 + OH^- \longrightarrow B(OH)_4^-$
c. $I^- + I_2 \longrightarrow I_3^-$
d. $AlCl_3 + Cl^- \longrightarrow AlCl_4^-$ (use Al-Cl single bonds)
e. $O^{2-} + SO_3 \longrightarrow SO_4^{2-}$

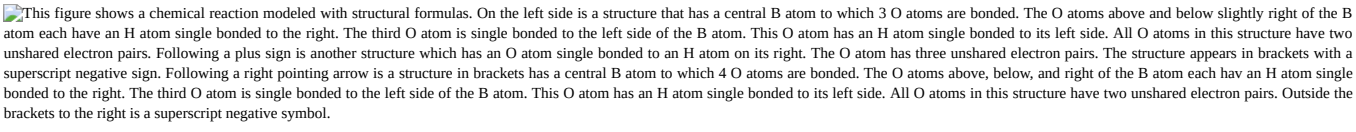
S15.2.X

(a)


This figure shows a chemical reaction modeled with structural formulas. On the left side is a structure with a central C atom. O atoms, each with two unshared electron pairs, are double bonded to the left and right sides of the C atom. Following a plus sign is another structure in brackets which has an O atom with three unshared electron dot pairs single bonded to an H atom on the right. Outside the brackets is superscript negative sign. Following a right pointing arrow is a structure in brackets that has a central C atom to which 3 O atoms are bonded. Above and slightly to the right, one of the O atoms is connected with a double bond. This O atom has two unshared electron pairs. The second O atom is single bonded below and slightly to the right. This O atom has three unshared electron pairs. The third O atom is bonded to the left of the C atom. This O atom has two unshared electron pairs and an H atom single bonded to its left. Outside the brackets to the right is a superscript negative symbol.

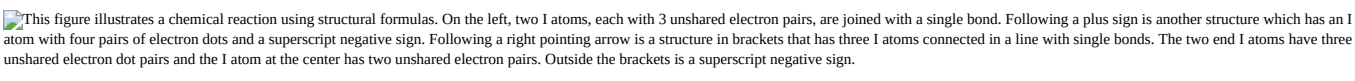
;

(b)


This figure shows a chemical reaction modeled with structural formulas. On the left side is a structure that has a central B atom to which 3 O atoms are bonded. The O atoms above and below slightly right of the B atom each have an H atom single bonded to the right. The third O atom is single bonded to the left side of the B atom. This O atom has an H atom single bonded to its left side. All O atoms in this structure have two unshared electron pairs. Following a plus sign is another structure which has an O atom single bonded to an H atom on its right. The O atom has three unshared electron pairs. The structure appears in brackets with a superscript negative sign. Following a right pointing arrow is a structure in brackets has a central B atom to which 4 O atoms are bonded. The O atoms above, below, and right of the B atom each hav an H atom single bonded to the right. The third O atom is single bonded to the left side of the B atom. This O atom has an H atom single bonded to its left side. All O atoms in this structure have two unshared electron pairs. Outside the brackets to the right is a superscript negative symbol.

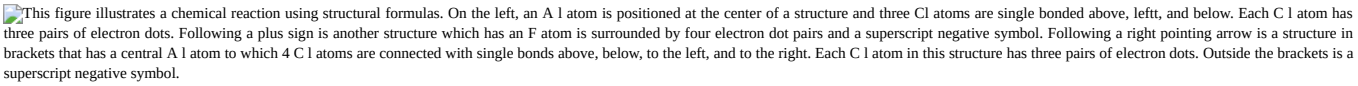
;

(c)


This figure illustrates a chemical reaction using structural formulas. On the left, two I atoms, each with 3 unshared electron pairs, are joined with a single bond. Following a plus sign is another structure which has an I atom with four pairs of electron dots and a superscript negative sign. Following a right pointing arrow is a structure in brackets that has three I atoms connected in a line with single bonds. The two end I atoms have three unshared electron dot pairs and the I atom at the center has two unshared electron pairs. Outside the brackets is a superscript negative sign.

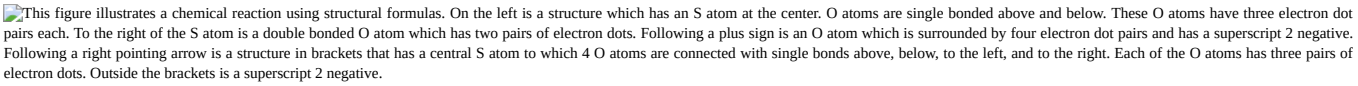
;

(d)



;

(e)



Q15.2.X

Write the Lewis structures of the reactants and product of each of the following equations, and identify the Lewis acid and the Lewis base in each:

a. $\mathrm{CS_2 + SH^- \longrightarrow HCS_3^-}$
b. $\mathrm{BF_3 + F^- \longrightarrow BF_4^-}$
c. $\mathrm{I^- + SnI_2 \longrightarrow SnI_3^-}$
d. $\mathrm{Al(OH)_3 + OH^- \longrightarrow Al(OH)_4^-}$
e. $\mathrm{F^- + SO_3 \longrightarrow SFO_3^-}$

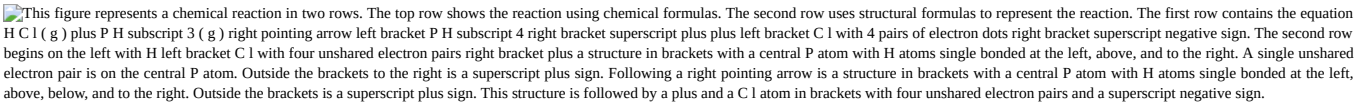
Q15.2.X

Using Lewis structures, write balanced equations for the following reactions:

a. $\mathrm{HCl}(g) + \mathrm{PH_3}(g) \longrightarrow$
b. $\mathrm{H_3O^+ + CH_3^- \longrightarrow}$
c. $\mathrm{CaO + SO_3 \longrightarrow}$
d. $\mathrm{NH_4^+ + C_2H_5O^- \longrightarrow}$

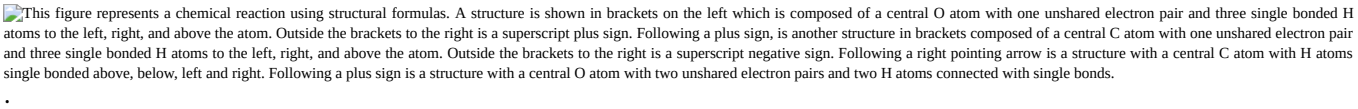
S15.2.X

(a)



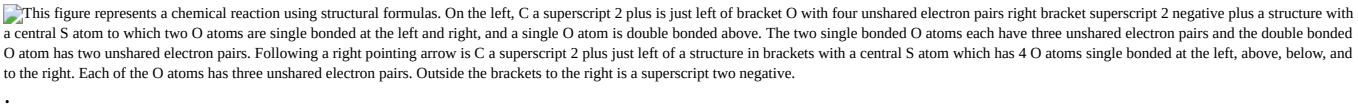
;

$$\mathrm{H_3O^+ + CH_3^- \longrightarrow CH_4 + H_2O}$$



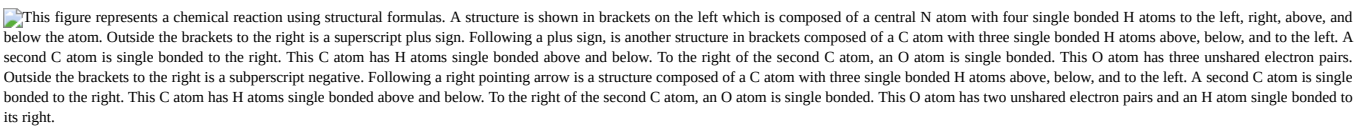
;

$$\mathrm{CaO + SO_3 \longrightarrow CaSO_4}$$



;

$$\mathrm{NH_4^+ + C_2H_5O^- \longrightarrow C_2H_5OH + NH_3}$$



Q15.2.X

Calculate $[\mathrm{HgCl_4^{2-}}]$ in a solution prepared by adding 0.0200 mol of NaCl to 0.250 L of a 0.100-*M* $\mathrm{HgCl_2}$ solution.

Q15.2.X

In a titration of cyanide ion, 28.72 mL of 0.0100 *M* $AgNO_3$ is added before precipitation begins. [The reaction of Ag^+ with CN^- goes to completion, producing the $Ag(CN)_2^-$ complex.] Precipitation of solid AgCN takes place when excess Ag^+ is added to the solution, above the amount needed to complete the formation of $Ag(CN)_2^-$. How many grams of NaCN were in the original sample?

S15.2.X

0.0281 g

Q15.2.X

What are the concentrations of Ag^+, CN^-, and $Ag(CN)_2^-$ in a saturated solution of AgCN?

Q15.2.X

In dilute aqueous solution HF acts as a weak acid. However, pure liquid HF (boiling point = 19.5 °C) is a strong acid. In liquid HF, HNO_3 acts like a base and accepts protons. The acidity of liquid HF can be increased by adding one of several inorganic fluorides that are Lewis acids and accept F^- ion (for example, BF_3 or SbF_5). Write balanced chemical equations for the reaction of pure HNO_3 with pure HF and of pure HF with BF_3.

S15.2.X

$HNO_3(l) + HF(l) \longrightarrow H_2NO_3^+ + F^-$; $HF(l) + BF_3(g) \longrightarrow H^+ + BF_4$

Q15.2.X

The simplest amino acid is glycine, $H_2NCH_2CO_2H$. The common feature of amino acids is that they contain the functional groups: an amine group, $–NH_2$, and a carboxylic acid group, $–CO_2H$. An amino acid can function as either an acid or a base. For glycine, the acid strength of the carboxyl group is about the same as that of acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H, and the base strength of the amino group is slightly greater than that of ammonia, NH_3.

Q15.2.X

Write the Lewis structures of the ions that form when glycine is dissolved in 1 *M* HCl and in 1 *M* KOH.

Q15.2.X

Write the Lewis structure of glycine when this amino acid is dissolved in water. (Hint: Consider the relative base strengths of the $–NH_2$ and $-CO_2^-$ groups.)

Q15.2.X

Boric acid, H_3BO_3, is not a Brønsted-Lowry acid but a Lewis acid.

a. Write an equation for its reaction with water.
b. Predict the shape of the anion thus formed.
c. What is the hybridization on the boron consistent with the shape you have predicted?

S15.2.X

$H_3BO_3 + H_2O \longrightarrow H_4BO_4^- + H^+$; The electronic and molecular shapes are the same—both tetrahedral. The tetrahedral structure is consistent with sp^3 hybridization.

15.3: Multiple Equilibria

Q15.3.1

A saturated solution of a slightly soluble electrolyte in contact with some of the solid electrolyte is said to be a system in equilibrium. Explain. Why is such a system called a heterogeneous equilibrium?

Q15.3.2

Calculate the equilibrium concentration of Ni^{2+} in a 1.0-*M* solution $[Ni(NH_3)_6](NO_3)_2$.

S15.3.2

0.014 *M*

Q15.3.3

Calculate the equilibrium concentration of Zn^{2+} in a 0.30-*M* solution of $Zn(CN)_4^{2-}$.

Q15.3.4

Calculate the equilibrium concentration of Cu^{2+} in a solution initially with 0.050 *M* Cu^{2+} and 1.00 *M* NH_3.

S15.3.2

1.0×10^{-13} *M*

Q15.3.5

Calculate the equilibrium concentration of Zn^{2+} in a solution initially with 0.150 *M* Zn^{2+} and 2.50 *M* CN^-.

Q15.3.6

Calculate the Fe^{3+} equilibrium concentration when 0.0888 mole of $K_3[Fe(CN)_6]$ is added to a solution with 0.0.00010 *M* CN^-.

S15.3.2

9×10^{-22} *M*

Q15.3.7

Calculate the Co^{2+} equilibrium concentration when 0.100 mole of $[Co(NH_3)_6](NO_3)_2$ is added to a solution with 0.025 *M* NH_3. Assume the volume is 1.00 L.

Q15.3.8

The equilibrium constant for the reaction $Hg^{2+}(aq) + 2\,Cl^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons HgCl_2(aq)$ is 1.6×10^{13}. Is $HgCl_2$ a strong electrolyte or a weak electrolyte? What are the concentrations of Hg^{2+} and Cl^- in a 0.015-*M* solution of $HgCl_2$?

S15.3.2

6.2×10^{-6} *M* = $[Hg^{2+}]$; 1.2×10^{-5} *M* = $[Cl^-]$; The substance is a weak electrolyte because very little of the initial 0.015 *M* $HgCl_2$ dissolved.

Q15.3.9

Calculate the molar solubility of $Sn(OH)_2$ in a buffer solution containing equal concentrations of NH_3 and NH_4^+.

Q15.3.X

Calculate the molar solubility of $Al(OH)_3$ in a buffer solution with 0.100 *M* NH_3 and 0.400 *M* NH_4^+.

S15.3.2

$[OH^-] = 4.5 \times 10^{-5}$; $[Al^{3+}] = 2.1 \times 10^{-20}$ (molar solubility)

Q15.3.10 Edit section

What is the molar solubility of CaF_2 in a 0.100-*M* solution of HF? K_a for HF = 7.2×10^{-4}.

Q15.3.X

What is the molar solubility of $BaSO_4$ in a 0.250-*M* solution of $NaHSO_4$? K_a for HSO_4^- = 1.2×10^{-2}.

S15.3.2

- $[SO_4^{2-}] = 0.049\ M$
- $[Ba^{2+}] = 2.2 \times 10^{-9}$ (molar solubility)

Q15.3.X

What is the molar solubility of $Tl(OH)_3$ in a 0.10-*M* solution of NH_3?

Q15.3.X

What is the molar solubility of $Pb(OH)_2$ in a 0.138-*M* solution of CH_3NH_2?

S15.3.2

- $[OH^-] = 7.6 \times 10^{-3}\ M$
- $[Pb^{2+}] = 4.8 \times 10^{-12}$ (molar solubility)

Q15.3.X

A solution of 0.075 *M* $CoBr_2$ is saturated with H_2S ($[H_2S] = 0.10\ M$). What is the minimum pH at which CoS begins to precipitate?

$$\mathrm{CoS}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Co}^{2+}(aq) + \mathrm{S}^{2-}(aq) \quad K_{\text{sp}} = 4.5 \times 10^{-27}$$

$$\mathrm{H_2S}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{H_3O}^{+}(aq) + \mathrm{S}^{2-}(aq) \quad K = 1.0 \times 10^{-26}$$

A 0.125-*M* solution of $Mn(NO_3)_2$ is saturated with H_2S ($[H_2S] = 0.10\ M$). At what pH does MnS begin to precipitate?

$$\mathrm{MnS}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mn}^{2+}(aq) + \mathrm{S}^{2-}(aq) \quad K_{\text{sp}} = 4.3 \times 10^{-22}$$

$$\mathrm{H_2S}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{H_3O}^{+}(aq) + \mathrm{S}^{2-}(aq) \quad K = 1.0 \times 10^{-26}$$

S15.3.2

3.27

Q15.3.X

Calculate the molar solubility of BaF_2 in a buffer solution containing 0.20 *M* HF and 0.20 *M* NaF.

Q15.3.X

Calculate the molar solubility of $CdCO_3$ in a buffer solution containing 0.115 *M* Na_2CO_3 and 0.120 *M* $NaHCO_3$

S15.3.2

- $[CO_3^{2-}] = 0.115\ M$
- $[Cd^{2+}] = 3 \times 10^{-12}\ M$

Q15.3.X

To a 0.10-*M* solution of $Pb(NO_3)_2$ is added enough HF(*g*) to make [HF] = 0.10 *M*.

a. Does PbF_2 precipitate from this solution? Show the calculations that support your conclusion.
b. What is the minimum pH at which PbF_2 precipitates?

Calculate the concentration of Cd^{2+} resulting from the dissolution of $CdCO_3$ in a solution that is 0.010 *M* in H_2CO_3.

S15.3.2

$1 \times 10^{-5}\ M$

Q15.3.X

Both AgCl and AgI dissolve in NH_3.

a. What mass of AgI dissolves in 1.0 L of 1.0 *M* NH_3?
b. What mass of AgCl dissolves in 1.0 L of 1.0 *M* NH_3?

Calculate the volume of 1.50 *M* CH_3CO_2H required to dissolve a precipitate composed of 350 mg each of $CaCO_3$, $SrCO_3$, and $BaCO_3$.

S15.3.2

0.0102 L (10.2 mL)

Q15.3.X

Even though $Ca(OH)_2$ is an inexpensive base, its limited solubility restricts its use. What is the pH of a saturated solution of $Ca(OH)_2$?

Q15.3.X

What mass of NaCN must be added to 1 L of 0.010 *M* $Mg(NO_3)_2$ in order to produce the first trace of $Mg(OH)_2$?

S15.3.2

5×10^{-3} g

Q15.3.X

Magnesium hydroxide and magnesium citrate function as mild laxatives when they reach the small intestine. Why do magnesium hydroxide and magnesium citrate, two very different substances, have the same effect in your small intestine. (Hint: The contents of the small intestine are basic.)

Q15.3.X

The following question is taken from a Chemistry Advanced Placement Examination and is used with the permission of the Educational Testing Service.

Solve the following problem:

$$MgF_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2\,F^-(aq)$$

In a saturated solution of MgF_2 at 18 °C, the concentration of Mg^{2+} is 1.21×10^{-3} *M*. The equilibrium is represented by the preceding equation.

a. Write the expression for the solubility-product constant, K_{sp}, and calculate its value at 18 °C.
b. Calculate the equilibrium concentration of Mg^{2+} in 1.000 L of saturated MgF_2 solution at 18 °C to which 0.100 mol of solid KF has been added. The KF dissolves completely. Assume the volume change is negligible.
c. Predict whether a precipitate of MgF_2 will form when 100.0 mL of a 3.00×10^{-3}-*M* solution of $Mg(NO_3)_2$ is mixed with 200.0 mL of a 2.00×10^{-3}-*M* solution of NaF at 18 °C. Show the calculations to support your prediction.
d. At 27 °C the concentration of Mg^{2+} in a saturated solution of MgF_2 is 1.17×10^{-3} *M*. Is the dissolving of MgF_2 in water an endothermic or an exothermic process? Give an explanation to support your conclusion.

S15.3.2

$K_{sp} = [Mg^{2+}][F^-]^2 = (1.21 \times 10^{-3})(2 \times 1.21 \times 10^{-3})^2 = 7.09 \times 10^{-9}$; 7.09×10^{-7} *M*

Determine the concentration of Mg^{2+} and F^- that will be present in the final volume. Compare the value of the ion product $[Mg^{2+}][F^-]^2$ with K_{sp}. If this value is larger than K_{sp}, precipitation will occur. 0.1000 L × 3.00×10^{-3} *M* $Mg(NO_3)_2$ = 0.3000 L × *M* $Mg(NO_3)_2$ *M* $Mg(NO_3)_2$ = 1.00×10^{-3} *M* 0.2000 L × 2.00×10^{-3} *M* NaF = 0.3000 L × *M* NaF *M* NaF = 1.33×10^{-3} *M* ion product = $(1.00 \times 10^{-3})(1.33 \times 10^{-3})^2 = 1.77 \times 10^{-9}$ This value is smaller than K_{sp}, so no precipitation will occur. MgF_2 is less soluble at 27 °C than at 18 °C. Because added heat acts like an added reagent, when it appears on the product side, the Le Chatelier's principle states that the equilibrium will shift to the reactants' side to counter the stress. Consequently, less reagent will dissolve. This situation is found in our case. Therefore, the reaction is exothermic.

Q15.3.X

Which of the following compounds, when dissolved in a 0.01-*M* solution of $HClO_4$, has a solubility greater than in pure water: CuCl, $CaCO_3$, MnS, $PbBr_2$, CaF_2? Explain your answer.

Q15.3.X

Which of the following compounds, when dissolved in a 0.01-*M* solution of $HClO_4$, has a solubility greater than in pure water: AgBr, BaF_2, $Ca_3(PO_4)_3$, ZnS, PbI_2? Explain your answer.

BaF_2, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, ZnS; each is a salt of a weak acid, and the $[H_3O^+]$ from perchloric acid reduces the equilibrium concentration of the anion, thereby increasing the concentration of the cations

Q15.3.X

What is the effect on the amount of solid $Mg(OH)_2$ that dissolves and the concentrations of Mg^{2+} and OH^- when each of the following are added to a mixture of solid $Mg(OH)_2$ and water at equilibrium?

a. $MgCl_2$
b. KOH
c. $HClO_4$
d. $NaNO_3$
e. $Mg(OH)_2$

Q15.3.X

What is the effect on the amount of $CaHPO_4$ that dissolves and the concentrations of Ca^{2+} and HPO_4^- when each of the following are added to a mixture of solid $CaHPO_4$ and water at equilibrium?

a. $CaCl_2$
b. HCl
c. $KClO_4$
d. NaOH
e. $CaHPO_4$

S15.3.X

Effect on amount of solid $CaHPO_4$, $[Ca^{2+}]$, $[OH^-]$: increase, increase, decrease; decrease, increase, decrease; no effect, no effect, no effect; decrease, increase, decrease; increase, no effect, no effect

Q15.3.X

Identify all chemical species present in an aqueous solution of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ and list these species in decreasing order of their concentrations. (Hint: Remember that the PO_4^{3-} ion is a weak base.)

Q15.3.X

A volume of 50 mL of 1.8 *M* NH_3 is mixed with an equal volume of a solution containing 0.95 g of $MgCl_2$. What mass of NH_4Cl must be added to the resulting solution to prevent the precipitation of $Mg(OH)_2$?

S15.3.X

7.1 g

This page titled 2.9.4 Equilibria of Other Reaction Classes (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Kinetics

A general chemistry Libretexts Textbook remixed and remastered from OpenStax's textbook:

General Chemistry

Chemical kinetics is the study of rates of chemical processes and includes investigations of how different experimental conditions can influence the speed of a chemical reaction and yield information about the reaction's mechanism and transition states, as well as the construction of mathematical models that can describe the characteristics of a chemical reaction.

Article directory

3.1: Prelude to Kinetics
3.2: Chemical Reaction Rates
3.3: Factors Affecting Reaction Rates
3.4: Rate Laws
3.5: Integrated Rate Laws
3.6: Collision Theory
3.7: Reaction Mechanisms
3.8: Catalysis
3.9.a: Kinetics (Exercises)
3.9.0: Nuclear Chemistry
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
3.9.2 Nuclear Equations
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
3.9.5 Uses of Radioisotopes
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
3.9.7 Nuclear Chemistry (Exercises)

Contributors

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 3: Kinetics is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

3.1: Prelude to Kinetics

The lizard in the photograph is not simply enjoying the sunshine or working on its tan. The heat from the sun's rays is critical to the lizard's survival. A warm lizard can move faster than a cold one because the chemical reactions that allow its muscles to move occur more rapidly at higher temperatures. In the absence of warmth, the lizard is an easy meal for predators.



Figure 3.1.1: *An agama lizard basks in the sun. As its body warms, the chemical reactions of its metabolism speed up.*

From baking a cake to determining the useful lifespan of a bridge, rates of chemical reactions play important roles in our understanding of processes that involve chemical changes. When planning to run a chemical reaction, we should ask at least two questions. The first is: "Will the reaction produce the desired products in useful quantities?" The second question is: "How rapidly will the reaction occur?" A reaction that takes 50 years to produce a product is about as useful as one that never gives a product at all. A third question is often asked when investigating reactions in greater detail: "What specific molecular-level processes take place as the reaction occurs?" Knowing the answer to this question is of practical importance when the yield or rate of a reaction needs to be controlled.

The study of chemical kinetics concerns the second and third questions—that is, the rate at which a reaction yields products and the molecular-scale means by which a reaction occurs. In this chapter, we will examine the factors that influence the rates of chemical reactions, the mechanisms by which reactions proceed, and the quantitative techniques used to determine and describe the rate at which reactions occur.

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 3.1: Prelude to Kinetics is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **12.1: Prelude to Kinetics** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.2: Chemical Reaction Rates

Learning Objectives

- Define chemical reaction rate
- Derive rate expressions from the balanced equation for a given chemical reaction
- Calculate reaction rates from experimental data

A *rate* is a measure of how some property varies with time. Speed is a familiar rate that expresses the distance traveled by an object in a given amount of time. Wage is a rate that represents the amount of money earned by a person working for a given amount of time. Likewise, the rate of a chemical reaction is a measure of how much reactant is consumed, or how much product is produced, by the reaction in a given amount of time.

The rate of reaction is the change in the amount of a reactant or product per unit time. Reaction rates are therefore determined by measuring the time dependence of some property that can be related to reactant or product amounts. Rates of reactions that consume or produce gaseous substances, for example, are conveniently determined by measuring changes in volume or pressure. For reactions involving one or more colored substances, rates may be monitored via measurements of light absorption. For reactions involving aqueous electrolytes, rates may be measured via changes in a solution's conductivity.

For reactants and products in solution, their relative amounts (concentrations) are conveniently used for purposes of expressing reaction rates. If we measure the concentration of hydrogen peroxide, H_2O_2, in an aqueous solution, we find that it changes slowly over time as the H_2O_2 decomposes, according to the equation:

$$2\,H_2O_2(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O(l) + O_2(g)$$

The rate at which the hydrogen peroxide decomposes can be expressed in terms of the rate of change of its concentration, as shown here:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{rate of decomposition of } H_2O_2 &= -\frac{\text{change in concentration of reactant}}{\text{time interval}} \\ &= -\frac{[H_2O_2]_{t_2} - [H_2O_2]_{t_1}}{t_2 - t_1} \\ &= -\frac{\Delta[H_2O_2]}{\Delta t}\end{aligned}$$

This mathematical representation of the change in species concentration over time is the rate expression for the reaction. The brackets indicate molar concentrations, and the symbol delta (Δ) indicates "change in." Thus, $[H_2O_2]_{t_1}$ represents the molar concentration of hydrogen peroxide at some time t_1; likewise, $[H_2O_2]_{t_2}$ represents the molar concentration of hydrogen peroxide at a later time t_2; and $\Delta[H_2O_2]$ represents the change in molar concentration of hydrogen peroxide during the time interval Δt (that is, $t_2 - t_1$). Since the reactant concentration decreases as the reaction proceeds, $\Delta[H_2O_2]$ is a negative quantity; we place a negative sign in front of the expression because reaction rates are, by convention, positive quantities. Figure 3.2.1 provides an example of data collected during the decomposition of H_2O_2.

Time (h)	$[H_2O_2]$ (mol L^{-1})	$\Delta[H_2O_2]$ (mol L^{-1})	Δt (h)	Rate of Decomposition, (mol/L/h)
0.00	1.000			
		−0.500	6.00	−0.0833
6.00	0.500			
		−0.250	6.00	−0.0417
12.00	0.250			
		−0.125	6.00	−0.0208
18.00	0.125			
		−0.062	6.00	−0.0103
24.00	0.0625			

Figure 3.2.1: The rate of decomposition of H_2O_2 in an aqueous solution decreases as the concentration of H_2O_2 decreases.

To obtain the tabulated results for this decomposition, the concentration of hydrogen peroxide was measured every 6 hours over the course of a day at a constant temperature of 40 °C. Reaction rates were computed for each time interval by dividing the change in concentration by the corresponding time increment, as shown here for the first 6-hour period:

$$\frac{-\Delta[H_2O_2]}{\Delta t} = \frac{-(0.500\ \text{mol/L} - 1.000\ \text{mol/L})}{(6.00\ \text{h} - 0.00\ \text{h})} = 0.0833\ \text{mol L}^{-1}\ \text{h}^{-1}$$

Notice that the reaction rates vary with time, decreasing as the reaction proceeds. Results for the last 6-hour period yield a reaction rate of:

$$\frac{-\Delta[H_2O_2]}{\Delta t} = \frac{-(0.0625\ \text{mol/L} - 0.125\ \text{mol/L})}{(24.00\ \text{h} - 18.00\ \text{h})} = 0.0104\ \text{mol L}^{-1}\ \text{h}^{-1}$$

This behavior indicates the reaction continually slows with time. Using the concentrations at the beginning and end of a time period over which the reaction rate is changing results in the calculation of an average rate for the reaction over this time interval. At any specific time, the rate at which a reaction is proceeding is known as its instantaneous rate. The instantaneous rate of a reaction at "time zero," when the reaction commences, is its initial rate. Consider the analogy of a car slowing down as it approaches a stop sign. The vehicle's initial rate—analogous to the beginning of a chemical reaction—would be the speedometer reading at the moment the driver begins pressing the brakes (t_0). A few moments later, the instantaneous rate at a specific moment—call it t_1—would be somewhat slower, as indicated by the speedometer reading at that point in time. As time passes, the instantaneous rate will continue to fall until it reaches zero, when the car (or reaction) stops. Unlike instantaneous speed, the car's average speed is not indicated by the speedometer; but it can be calculated as the ratio of the distance traveled to the time required to bring the vehicle to a complete stop (Δt). Like the decelerating car, the average rate of a chemical reaction will fall somewhere between its initial and final rates.

The instantaneous rate of a reaction may be determined one of two ways. If experimental conditions permit the measurement of concentration changes over very short time intervals, then average rates computed as described earlier provide reasonably good approximations of instantaneous rates. Alternatively, a graphical procedure may be used that, in effect, yields the results that would be obtained if short time interval measurements were possible. If we plot the concentration of hydrogen peroxide against time, the instantaneous rate of decomposition of H_2O_2 at any time t is given by the slope of a straight line that is tangent to the curve at that time (Figure 3.2.2). We can use calculus to evaluating the slopes of such tangent lines, but the procedure for doing so is beyond the scope of this chapter.

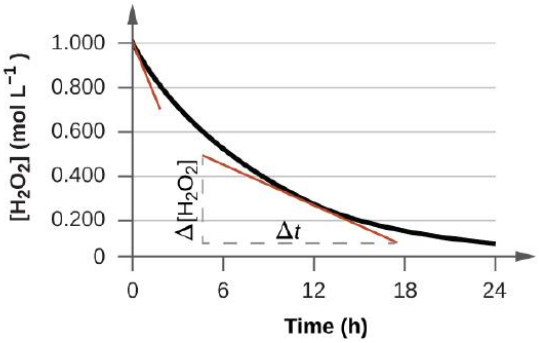


Figure 3.2.1: This graph shows a plot of concentration versus time for a 1.000 M solution of H_2O_2. The rate at any instant is equal to the opposite of the slope of a line tangential to this curve at that time. Tangents are shown at t = 0 h ("initial rate") and at t = 10 h ("instantaneous rate" at that particular time).

Reaction Rates in Analysis: Test Strips for Urinalysis

Physicians often use disposable test strips to measure the amounts of various substances in a patient's urine (Figure 3.2.2). These test strips contain various chemical reagents, embedded in small pads at various locations along the strip, which undergo changes in color upon exposure to sufficient concentrations of specific substances. The usage instructions for test strips often stress that proper read time is critical for optimal results. This emphasis on read time suggests that kinetic aspects of the chemical reactions occurring on the test strip are important considerations.

The test for urinary glucose relies on a two-step process represented by the chemical equations shown here:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + O_2 \xrightarrow[\text{catalyst}]{} C_6H_{10}O_6 + H_2O_2 \tag{3.2.1}$$

$$2\,H_2O_2 + 2\,I^- \xrightarrow[\text{catalyst}]{} I_2 + 2\,H_2O + O_2 \tag{3.2.2}$$

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122496

Equation 3.2.1 depicts the oxidation of glucose in the urine to yield glucolactone and hydrogen peroxide. The hydrogen peroxide produced subsequently oxidizes colorless iodide ion to yield brown iodine (Equation 3.2.2), which may be visually detected. Some strips include an additional substance that reacts with iodine to produce a more distinct color change.

The two test reactions shown above are inherently very slow, but their rates are increased by special enzymes embedded in the test strip pad. This is an example of *catalysis*, a topic discussed later in this chapter. A typical glucose test strip for use with urine requires approximately 30 seconds for completion of the color-forming reactions. Reading the result too soon might lead one to conclude that the glucose concentration of the urine sample is lower than it actually is (a *false-negative* result). Waiting too long to assess the color change can lead to a *false positive* due to the slower (not catalyzed) oxidation of iodide ion by other substances found in urine.

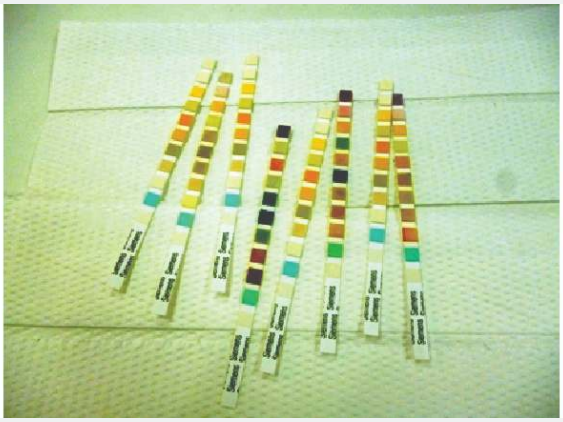


Figure 3.2.2: Test strips are commonly used to detect the presence of specific substances in a person's urine. Many test strips have several pads containing various reagents to permit the detection of multiple substances on a single strip. (credit: Iqbal Osman).

Relative Rates of Reaction

The rate of a reaction may be expressed in terms of the change in the amount of any reactant or product, and may be simply derived from the stoichiometry of the reaction. Consider the reaction represented by the following equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$$

The stoichiometric factors derived from this equation may be used to relate reaction rates in the same manner that they are used to related reactant and product amounts. The relation between the reaction rates expressed in terms of nitrogen production and ammonia consumption, for example, is:

$$-\frac{\Delta \text{mol NH}_3}{\Delta t} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol N}_2}{2 \text{ mol NH}_3} = \frac{\Delta \text{mol N}_2}{\Delta t}$$

We can express this more simply without showing the stoichiometric factor's units:

$$-\frac{1}{2}\frac{\Delta \text{mol NH}_3}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta \text{mol N}_2}{\Delta t}$$

Note that a negative sign has been added to account for the opposite signs of the two amount changes (the reactant amount is decreasing while the product amount is increasing). If the reactants and products are present in the same solution, the molar amounts may be replaced by concentrations:

$$-\frac{1}{2}\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{NH_3}]}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[\mathrm{N_2}]}{\Delta t}$$

Similarly, the rate of formation of $\mathrm{H_2}$ is three times the rate of formation of $\mathrm{N_2}$ because three moles of $\mathrm{H_2}$ form during the time required for the formation of one mole of $\mathrm{N_2}$:

$$\frac{1}{3}\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{H_2}]}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[\mathrm{N_2}]}{\Delta t}$$

Figure 3.2.3 illustrates the change in concentrations over time for the decomposition of ammonia into nitrogen and hydrogen at 1100 °C. We can see from the slopes of the tangents drawn at t = 500 seconds that the instantaneous rates of change in the concentrations of the reactants and products are related by their stoichiometric factors. The rate of hydrogen production, for example, is observed to be three times greater than that for nitrogen production:

$$\frac{2.91 \times 10^{-6}\ M/\text{s}}{9.71 \times 10^{-6}\ M/\text{s}} \approx 3$$

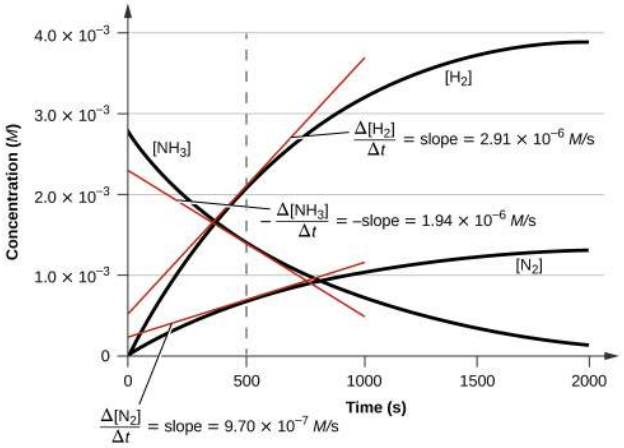


Figure 3.2.3: This graph shows the changes in concentrations of the reactants and products during the reaction $2\,\text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{N}_2 + 3\,\text{H}_2$. *The rates of change of the three concentrations are related by their stoichiometric factors, as shown by the different slopes of the tangents at t = 500 s.*

Example 3.2.1: Expressions for Relative Reaction Rates

The first step in the production of nitric acid is the combustion of ammonia:

$$4\,\text{NH}_3(g) + 5\,\text{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow 4\,\text{NO}(g) + 6\,\text{H}_2\text{O}(g)$$

Write the equations that relate the rates of consumption of the reactants and the rates of formation of the products.

Solution

Considering the stoichiometry of this homogeneous reaction, the rates for the consumption of reactants and formation of products are:

$$-\frac{1}{4}\frac{\Delta[\text{NH}_3]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{1}{5}\frac{\Delta[\text{O}_2]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{4}\frac{\Delta[\text{NO}]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{6}\frac{\Delta[\text{H}_2\text{O}]}{\Delta t}$$

Exercise 3.2.1

The rate of formation of Br_2 is 6.0 × 10^{-6} mol/L/s in a reaction described by the following net ionic equation:

$$5\,\text{Br}^- + \text{BrO}_3^- + 6\,\text{H}^+ \longrightarrow 3\,\text{Br}_2 + 3\,\text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Write the equations that relate the rates of consumption of the reactants and the rates of formation of the products.

Answer

$$-\frac{1}{5}\frac{\Delta[\text{Br}^-]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{BrO}_3^-]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{1}{6}\frac{\Delta[\text{H}^+]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{3}\frac{\Delta[\text{Br}_2]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{3}\frac{\Delta[\text{H}_2\text{O}]}{\Delta t}$$

Example 3.2.2: Reaction Rate Expressions for Decomposition of H_2O_2

The graph in Figure 3.2.3 shows the rate of the decomposition of H_2O_2 over time:

$$2\,H_2O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O + O_2$$

Based on these data, the instantaneous rate of decomposition of H_2O_2 at t = 11.1 h is determined to be 3.20 × 10^{-2} mol/L/h, that is:

$$-\frac{\Delta[H_2O_2]}{\Delta t} = 3.20 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{mol}\ \text{L}^{-1}\ \text{h}^{-1}$$

What is the instantaneous rate of production of H_2O and O_2?

Solution

Using the stoichiometry of the reaction, we may determine that:

$$-\frac{1}{2}\frac{\Delta[H_2O_2]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\Delta[H_2O]}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[O_2]}{\Delta t}$$

Therefore:

$$\frac{1}{2} \times 3.20 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{mol}\ \text{L}^{-1}\ \text{h}^{-1} = \frac{\Delta[O_2]}{\Delta t}$$

and

$$\frac{\Delta[O_2]}{\Delta t} = 1.60 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{mol}\ \text{L}^{-1}\ \text{h}^{-1}$$

Exercise 3.2.2

If the rate of decomposition of ammonia, NH_3, at 1150 K is 2.10 × 10^{-6} mol/L/s, what is the rate of production of nitrogen and hydrogen?

Answer

1.05 × 10^{-6} mol/L/s, N_2 and 3.15 × 10^{-6} mol/L/s, H_2.

Summary

The rate of a reaction can be expressed either in terms of the decrease in the amount of a reactant or the increase in the amount of a product per unit time. Relations between different rate expressions for a given reaction are derived directly from the stoichiometric coefficients of the equation representing the reaction.

Glossary

average rate
rate of a chemical reaction computed as the ratio of a measured change in amount or concentration of substance to the time interval over which the change occurred

initial rate
instantaneous rate of a chemical reaction at t = 0 s (immediately after the reaction has begun)

instantaneous rate
rate of a chemical reaction at any instant in time, determined by the slope of the line tangential to a graph of concentration as a function of time

rate of reaction
measure of the speed at which a chemical reaction takes place

rate expression

mathematical representation relating reaction rate to changes in amount, concentration, or pressure of reactant or product species per unit time

---

This page titled 3.2: Chemical Reaction Rates is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **12.2: Chemical Reaction Rates** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.3: Factors Affecting Reaction Rates

Learning Objectives

- Describe the effects of chemical nature, physical state, temperature, concentration, and catalysis on reaction rates

The rates at which reactants are consumed and products are formed during chemical reactions vary greatly. We can identify five factors that affect the rates of chemical reactions: the chemical nature of the reacting substances, the state of subdivision (one large lump versus many small particles) of the reactants, the temperature of the reactants, the concentration of the reactants, and the presence of a catalyst.

The Chemical Nature of the Reacting Substances

The rate of a reaction depends on the nature of the participating substances. Reactions that appear similar may have different rates under the same conditions, depending on the identity of the reactants. For example, when small pieces of the metals iron and sodium are exposed to air, the sodium reacts completely with air overnight, whereas the iron is barely affected. The active metals calcium and sodium both react with water to form hydrogen gas and a base. Yet calcium reacts at a moderate rate, whereas sodium reacts so rapidly that the reaction is almost explosive.

The State of Subdivision of the Reactants

Except for substances in the gaseous state or in solution, reactions occur at the boundary, or interface, between two phases. Hence, the rate of a reaction between two phases depends to a great extent on the surface contact between them. A finely divided solid has more surface area available for reaction than does one large piece of the same substance. Thus a liquid will react more rapidly with a finely divided solid than with a large piece of the same solid. For example, large pieces of iron react slowly with acids; finely divided iron reacts much more rapidly (Figure 3.3.1). Large pieces of wood smolder, smaller pieces burn rapidly, and saw dust burns explosively.



Figure 3.3.1: (a) Iron powder reacts rapidly with dilute hydrochloric acid and produces bubbles of hydrogen gas because the powder has a large total area: 2Fe(s) + 6HCl(aq) ⟶ 2FeCl3(aq) + 3H2(g). (surfaceb) An iron nail reacts more slowly.

This figure shows two photos labeled (a) and (b). Photo (a) shows the bottom of a test tube. The test tube is filled with a dark gas, and there is a dark substance and bubbles in the bottom. Photo (b) shows a rod and bubbles in a test tube similar to photo (a), but the gas in the test tube is not as dark.



***Video* 3.3.1**: *The reaction of cesium with water in slow motion and a discussion of how the state of reactants and particle size affect reaction rates.*

Temperature of the Reactants

Chemical reactions typically occur faster at higher temperatures. Food can spoil quickly when left on the kitchen counter. However, the lower temperature inside of a refrigerator slows that process so that the same food remains fresh for days. We use a burner or a hot plate in the laboratory to increase the speed of reactions that proceed slowly at ordinary temperatures. In many cases, an increase in temperature of only 10 °C will approximately double the rate of a reaction in a homogeneous system.

Concentrations of the Reactants

The rates of many reactions depend on the concentrations of the reactants. Rates usually increase when the concentration of one or more of the reactants increases. For example, calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) deteriorates as a result of its reaction with the pollutant sulfur dioxide. The rate of this reaction depends on the amount of sulfur dioxide in the air (Figure 3.3.2). As an acidic oxide, sulfur dioxide combines with water vapor in the air to produce sulfurous acid in the following reaction:

$$SO_{2(g)} + H_2O_{(g)} \longrightarrow H_2SO_{3(aq)} \tag{3.3.1}$$

Calcium carbonate reacts with sulfurous acid as follows:

$$CaCO_{3(s)} + H_2SO_{3(aq)} \longrightarrow CaSO_{3(aq)} + CO_{2(g)} + H_2O_{(l)} \tag{3.3.2}$$

In a polluted atmosphere where the concentration of sulfur dioxide is high, calcium carbonate deteriorates more rapidly than in less polluted air. Similarly, phosphorus burns much more rapidly in an atmosphere of pure oxygen than in air, which is only about 20% oxygen.

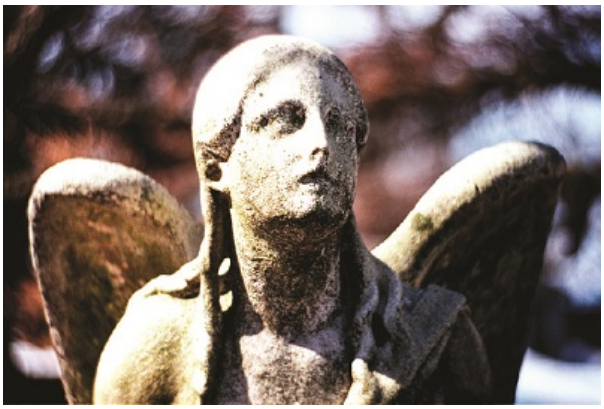


Figure 3.3.2: Statues made from carbonate compounds such as limestone and marble typically weather slowly over time due to the actions of water, and thermal expansion and contraction. However, pollutants like sulfur dioxide can accelerate weathering. As the concentration of air pollutants increases, deterioration of limestone occurs more rapidly. (credit: James P Fisher III).

A photograph is shown of an angel statue. While some details of the statue, including facial features, are present, effects of weathering appear to be diminishing these features.



***Video* 3.3.2**: *Phosphorous burns rapidly in air, but it will burn even more rapidly if the concentration of oxygen in is higher.*

The Presence of a Catalyst

Hydrogen peroxide solutions foam when poured onto an open wound because substances in the exposed tissues act as catalysts, increasing the rate of hydrogen peroxide's decomposition. However, in the absence of these catalysts (for example, in the bottle in the medicine cabinet) complete decomposition can take months. A catalyst is a substance that increases the rate of a chemical reaction by lowering the activation energy without itself being consumed by the reaction. Activation energy is the minimum amount of energy required for a chemical reaction to proceed in the forward direction. A catalyst increases the reaction rate by providing an alternative pathway or mechanism for the reaction to follow (Figure 3.3.3). Catalysis will be discussed in greater detail later in this chapter as it relates to mechanisms of reactions.

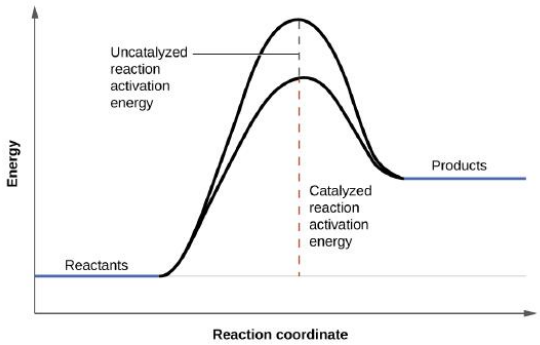


Figure 3.3.3: The presence of a catalyst increases the rate of a reaction by lowering its activation energy.

A graph is shown with the label, "Reaction coordinate," on the x-axis. The x-axis is depicted as an arrow. The y-axis is also an arrow and is labeled, "Energy." There is a horizontal line that runs the width of the graph and appears just above the x-axis. A segment of this line is blue and is labeled, "Reactants." From the right end of this line segment, a solid black, concave down curve is shown which reaches the level just below the end of the y-axis. The curve ends at another short, blue line labeled, "Products." The "Products" line appears at a higher level than the "Reactants" line. An arrow extends from the horizontal line to the apex of the curve. The arrow is labeled, "Uncatalyzed reaction activation energy." A second, black concave down curve is shown. This curve also meets the reactants and products blue line segments, but only extends to about two-thirds the height of the initial curve. From the horizontal line is another arrow pointing to the apex of the second curve. This arrow is labeled, "Catalyzed reaction activation energy."

> *Chemical reactions occur when molecules collide with each other and undergo a chemical transformation. Before physically performing a reaction in a laboratory, scientists can use molecular modeling simulations to predict how the parameters discussed earlier will influence the rate of a reaction. Use the PhET Reactions & Rates interactive to explore how temperature, concentration, and the nature of the reactants affect reaction rates.*

Summary

The rate of a chemical reaction is affected by several parameters. Reactions involving two phases proceed more rapidly when there is greater surface area contact. If temperature or reactant concentration is increased, the rate of a given reaction generally increases as well. A catalyst can increase the rate of a reaction by providing an alternative pathway that causes the activation energy of the reaction to decrease.

Glossary

catalyst

substance that increases the rate of a reaction without itself being consumed by the reaction

This page titled 3.3: Factors Affecting Reaction Rates is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **12.3: Factors Affecting Reaction Rates** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.4: Rate Laws

Learning Objectives

- Explain the form and function of a rate law
- Use rate laws to calculate reaction rates
- Use rate and concentration data to identify reaction orders and derive rate laws

As described in the previous module, the rate of a reaction is affected by the concentrations of reactants. Rate laws or rate equations are mathematical expressions that describe the relationship between the rate of a chemical reaction and the concentration of its reactants. In general, a rate law (or differential rate law, as it is sometimes called) takes this form:

$$\text{rate} = k[A]^m[B]^n[C]^p \ldots$$

in which [*A*], [*B*], and [*C*] represent the molar concentrations of reactants, and *k* is the rate constant, which is specific for a particular reaction at a particular temperature. The exponents *m*, *n*, and *p* are usually positive integers (although it is possible for them to be fractions or negative numbers). The rate constant *k* and the exponents *m*, *n*, and *p* must be determined experimentally by observing how the rate of a reaction changes as the concentrations of the reactants are changed. The rate constant *k* is independent of the concentration of *A*, *B*, or *C*, but it does vary with temperature and surface area.

The exponents in a rate law describe the effects of the reactant concentrations on the reaction rate and define the reaction order. Consider a reaction for which the rate law is:

$$\text{rate} = k[A]^m[B]^n$$

If the exponent *m* is 1, the reaction is first order with respect to *A*. If *m* is 2, the reaction is second order with respect to *A*. If *n* is 1, the reaction is first order in *B*. If *n* is 2, the reaction is second order in *B*. If *m* or *n* is zero, the reaction is zero order in *A* or *B*, respectively, and the rate of the reaction is not affected by the concentration of that reactant. The overall reaction order is the sum of the orders with respect to each reactant. If *m* = 1 and *n* = 1, the overall order of the reaction is second order (*m* + *n* = 1 + 1 = 2).

The rate law:

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{H}_2\text{O}_2]$$

describes a reaction that is first order in hydrogen peroxide and first order overall. The rate law:

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{C}_4\text{H}_6]^2$$

describes a reaction that is second order in C_4H_6 and second order overall. The rate law:

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{H}^+][\text{OH}^-]$$

describes a reaction that is first order in H^+, first order in OH^-, and second order overall.

Example 3.4.1: Writing Rate Laws from Reaction Orders

An experiment shows that the reaction of nitrogen dioxide with carbon monoxide:

$$\text{NO}_2(g) + \text{CO}(g) \longrightarrow \text{NO}(g) + \text{CO}_2(g)$$

is second order in NO_2 and zero order in CO at 100 °C. What is the rate law for the reaction?

Solution

The reaction will have the form:

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{NO}_2]^m[\text{CO}]^n$$

The reaction is second order in NO_2; thus *m* = 2. The reaction is zero order in CO; thus *n* = 0. The rate law is:

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{NO}_2]^2[\text{CO}]^0 = k[\text{NO}_2]^2$$

Remember that a number raised to the zero power is equal to 1, thus $[CO]^0 = 1$, which is why we can simply drop the concentration of CO from the rate equation: the rate of reaction is solely dependent on the concentration of NO_2. When we consider rate mechanisms later in this chapter, we will explain how a reactant's concentration can have no effect on a reaction despite being involved in the reaction.

Exercise 3.4.1A

The rate law for the reaction:

$$H_2(g) + 2\,NO(g) \longrightarrow N_2O(g) + H_2O(g)$$

has been experimentally determined to be rate = $k[NO]^2[H_2]$. What are the orders with respect to each reactant, and what is the overall order of the reaction?

Answer

- order in NO = 2;
- order in H_2 = 1;
- overall order = 3

Exercise 3.4.1B

In a transesterification reaction, a triglyceride reacts with an alcohol to form an ester and glycerol. Many students learn about the reaction between methanol (CH_3OH) and ethyl acetate ($CH_3CH_2OCOCH_3$) as a sample reaction before studying the chemical reactions that produce biodiesel:

$$CH_3OH + CH_3CH_2OCOCH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3OCOCH_3 + CH_3CH_2OH$$

The rate law for the reaction between methanol and ethyl acetate is, under certain conditions, experimentally determined to be:

$$\text{rate} = k[CH_3OH]$$

What is the order of reaction with respect to methanol and ethyl acetate, and what is the overall order of reaction?

Answer

- order in CH_3OH = 1;
- order in $CH_3CH_2OCOCH_3$ = 0;
- overall order = 1

It is sometimes helpful to use a more explicit algebraic method, often referred to as the method of initial rates, to determine the orders in rate laws. To use this method, we select two sets of rate data that differ in the concentration of only one reactant and set up a ratio of the two rates and the two rate laws. After canceling terms that are equal, we are left with an equation that contains only one unknown, the coefficient of the concentration that varies. We then solve this equation for the coefficient.

Example 3.4.2: Determining a Rate Law from Initial Rates

Ozone in the upper atmosphere is depleted when it reacts with nitrogen oxides. The rates of the reactions of nitrogen oxides with ozone are important factors in deciding how significant these reactions are in the formation of the ozone hole over Antarctica (Figure 3.4.1). One such reaction is the combination of nitric oxide, NO, with ozone, O_3:

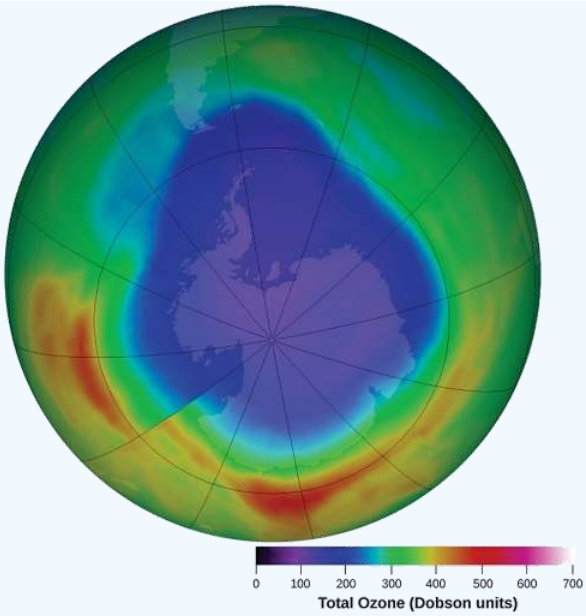


Figure 3.4.1: Over the past several years, the atmospheric ozone concentration over Antarctica has decreased during the winter. This map shows the decreased concentration as a purple area. (credit: modification of work by NASA)

A view of Earth's southern hemisphere is shown. A nearly circular region of approximately half the diameter of the image is shown in shades of purple, with Antarctica appearing in a slightly lighter color than the surrounding ocean areas. Immediately outside this region is a narrow bright blue zone followed by a bright green zone. In the top half of the figure, the purple region extends slightly outward from the circle and the blue zone extends more outward to the right of the center as compared to the lower half of the image. In the upper half of the image, the majority of the space outside the purple region is shaded green, with a few small strips of interspersed blue regions. The lower half however shows the majority of the space outside the central purple zone in yellow, orange, and red. The red zones appear in the lower central and left regions outside the purple zone. To the lower right of this image is a color scale that is labeled "Total Ozone (Dobsone units)." This scale begins at 0 and increases by 100's up to 700. At the left end of the scale, the value 0 shows a very deep purple color, 100 is indigo, 200 is blue, 300 is green, 400 is a yellow-orange, 500 is red, 600 is pink, and 700 is white.

$$\mathrm{NO}(g) + \mathrm{O_3}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g)$$

This reaction has been studied in the laboratory, and the following rate data were determined at 25 °C.

Trial	$[\mathrm{NO}]$ (mol/L)	$[\mathrm{O_3}]$ (mol/L)	$\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{NO_2}]}{\Delta t}$ $(\mathrm{mol\ L^{-1}\ s^{-1}})$
1	1.00×10^{-6}	3.00×10^{-6}	6.60×10^{-5}
2	1.00×10^{-6}	6.00×10^{-6}	1.32×10^{-4}
3	1.00×10^{-6}	9.00×10^{-6}	1.98×10^{-4}
4	2.00×10^{-6}	9.00×10^{-6}	3.96×10^{-4}
5	3.00×10^{-6}	9.00×10^{-6}	5.94×10^{-4}

Determine the rate law and the rate constant for the reaction at 25 °C.

Solution

The rate law will have the form:

$$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO}]^m[\mathrm{O_3}]^n$$

We can determine the values of *m*, *n*, and *k* from the experimental data using the following three-part process:

1. *Determine the value of* m *from the data in which [NO] varies and [O_3] is constant.* In the last three experiments, [NO] varies while [O_3] remains constant. When [NO] doubles from trial 3 to 4, the rate doubles, and when [NO] triples from trial 3 to 5, the rate also triples. Thus, the rate is also directly proportional to [NO], and *m* in the rate law is equal to 1.
2. *Determine the value of* n *from data in which [O_3] varies and [NO] is constant.* In the first three experiments, [NO] is constant and [O_3] varies. The reaction rate changes in direct proportion to the change in [O_3]. When [O_3] doubles from trial 1 to 2, the rate doubles; when [O_3] triples from trial 1 to 3, the rate increases also triples. Thus, the rate is directly proportional to [O_3], and *n* is equal to 1.The rate law is thus:

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{NO}]^1[\text{O}_3]^1 = k[\text{NO}][\text{O}_3]$$

3. *Determine the value of* k *from one set of concentrations and the corresponding rate*.

$$\begin{aligned} k &= \frac{\text{rate}}{[\text{NO}][\text{O}_3]} \\ &= \frac{6.60 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}\ \text{s}^{-1}}{(1.00 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol L}^{-1})(3.00 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol L}^{-1})} \\ &= 2.20 \times 10^{7}\ \text{L mol}^{-1}\ \text{s}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

The large value of *k* tells us that this is a fast reaction that could play an important role in ozone depletion if [NO] is large enough.

Exercise 3.4.2

Acetaldehyde decomposes when heated to yield methane and carbon monoxide according to the equation:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}(g) \longrightarrow \text{CH}_4(g) + \text{CO}(g)$$

Determine the rate law and the rate constant for the reaction from the following experimental data:

Trial	$[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}]$ **(mol/L)**	$-\frac{\Delta[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}]}{\Delta t}$ **(mol L^{-1} s^{-1})**
1	1.75×10^{-3}	2.06×10^{-11}
2	3.50×10^{-3}	8.24×10^{-11}
3	7.00×10^{-3}	3.30×10^{-10}

Answer

$\text{rate} = k[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}]^2$ with $k = 6.73 \times 10^{-6}$ L/mol/s

Example 3.4.3: Determining Rate Laws from Initial Rates

Using the initial rates method and the experimental data, determine the rate law and the value of the rate constant for this reaction:

$$2\,\text{NO}(g) + \text{Cl}_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\text{NOCl}(g)$$

Trial	[NO] (mol/L)	$[Cl_2]$ (mol/L)	$-\frac{\Delta[\text{NO}]}{2\Delta t}$ (mol L^{-1} s^{-1})
1	0.10	0.10	0.00300
2	0.10	0.15	0.00450
3	0.15	0.10	0.00675

Solution

The rate law for this reaction will have the form:

$$\text{rate} = k[\text{NO}]^m[\text{Cl}_2]^n$$

As in Example 3.4.2, we can approach this problem in a stepwise fashion, determining the values of *m* and *n* from the experimental data and then using these values to determine the value of *k*. In this example, however, we will use a different approach to determine the values of *m* and *n*:

Determine the value of m *from the data in which [NO] varies and [Cl$_2$] is constant.* We can write the ratios with the subscripts *x* and *y* to indicate data from two different trials:

$$\frac{\text{rate}_x}{\text{rate}_y} = \frac{k[\text{NO}]_x^m[\text{Cl}_2]_x^n}{k[\text{NO}]_y^m[\text{Cl}_2]_y^n}$$

Using the third trial and the first trial, in which [Cl$_2$] does not vary, gives:

$$\frac{\text{rate 3}}{\text{rate 1}} = \frac{0.00675}{0.00300} = \frac{k(0.15)^m(0.10)^n}{k(0.10)^m(0.10)^n}$$

After canceling equivalent terms in the numerator and denominator, we are left with:

$$\frac{0.00675}{0.00300} = \frac{(0.15)^m}{(0.10)^m}$$

which simplifies to:

$$2.25 = (1.5)^m$$

We can use natural logs to determine the value of the exponent *m*:

$$\ln(2.25) = m\ln(1.5)\frac{\ln(2.25)}{\ln(1.5)} \qquad = m2 = m$$

We can confirm the result easily, since:

$$1.5^2 = 2.25$$

- *Determine the value of* n *from data in which [Cl$_2$] varies and [NO] is constant.*

  $$\frac{\text{rate 2}}{\text{rate 1}} = \frac{0.00450}{0.00300} = \frac{k(0.10)^m(0.15)^n}{k(0.10)^m(0.10)^n}$$

  Cancelation gives:

  $$\frac{0.0045}{0.0030} = \frac{(0.15)^n}{(0.10)^n}$$

  which simplifies to:

  $$1.5 = (1.5)^n$$

  Thus *n* must be 1, and the form of the rate law is:

  $$\text{Rate} = k[\text{NO}]^m[\text{Cl}_2]^n = k[\text{NO}]^2[\text{Cl}_2]$$

- *Determine the numerical value of the rate constant* k *with appropriate units.* The units for the rate of a reaction are mol/L/s. The units for *k* are whatever is needed so that substituting into the rate law expression affords the appropriate units for the rate. In this example, the concentration units are mol^3/L^3. The units for *k* should be mol^{-2} L^2/s so that the rate is in terms of mol/L/s.

  To determine the value of *k* once the rate law expression has been solved, simply plug in values from the first experimental trial and solve for *k*:

  $$0.00300 \text{ mol L}^{-1} \text{ s}^{-1} = k(0.10 \text{ mol L}^{-1})^2(0.10 \text{ mol L}^{-1})^1$$
  $$k = 3.0 \text{ mol}^{-2} \text{ L}^2 \text{ s}^{-1}$$

Exercise 3.4.3

Use the provided initial rate data to derive the rate law for the reaction whose equation is:

$$\mathrm{OCl^-}(aq) + \mathrm{I^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{OI^-}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

Trial	[OCl^-] (mol/L)	[I^-] (mol/L)	Initial Rate (mol/L/s)
1	0.0040	0.0020	0.00184
2	0.0020	0.0040	0.00092
3	0.0020	0.0020	0.00046

Determine the rate law expression and the value of the rate constant *k* with appropriate units for this reaction.

Answer

$$\frac{\text{rate 2}}{\text{rate 3}} = \frac{0.00092}{0.00046} = \frac{k(0.0020)^x(0.0040)^y}{k(0.0020)^x(0.0020)^y}$$

$$2.00 = 2.00^y$$

$$y = 1$$

$$\frac{\text{rate 1}}{\text{rate 2}} = \frac{0.00184}{0.00092} = \frac{k(0.0040)^x(0.0020)^y}{k(0.0020)^x(0.0040)^y}$$

$$2.00 = \frac{2^x}{2^y}$$

$$2.00 = \frac{2^x}{2^1}$$

$$4.00 = 2^x$$

$$x = 2$$

Substituting the concentration data from trial 1 and solving for *k* yields:

$$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{OCl^-}]^2[\mathrm{I^-}]^1$$

$$0.00184 = k(0.0040)^2(0.0020)^1$$

$$k = 5.75 \times 10^4 \text{ mol}^{-2}\text{ L}^2\text{ s}^{-1}$$

Reaction Order and Rate Constant Units

In some of our examples, the reaction orders in the rate law happen to be the same as the coefficients in the chemical equation for the reaction. This is merely a coincidence and very often not the case. Rate laws may exhibit fractional orders for some reactants, and negative reaction orders are sometimes observed when an increase in the concentration of one reactant causes a decrease in reaction rate. A few examples illustrating these points are provided:

$$\mathrm{NO_2 + CO \longrightarrow NO + CO_2} \quad \text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2$$

$$\mathrm{CH_3CHO \longrightarrow CH_4 + CO} \quad \text{rate} = k[\mathrm{CH_3CHO}]^2$$

$$\mathrm{2\,N_2O_5 \longrightarrow 2\,NO_2 + O_2} \quad \text{rate} = k[\mathrm{N_2O_5}]$$

$$\mathrm{2\,NO_2 + F_2 \longrightarrow 2\,NO_2F} \quad \text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO_2}][\mathrm{F_2}]$$

$$\mathrm{2\,NO_2Cl \longrightarrow 2\,NO_2 + Cl_2} \quad \text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO_2Cl}]$$

> *It is important to note that rate laws are determined by experiment only and are not reliably predicted by reaction stoichiometry.*

Reaction orders also play a role in determining the units for the rate constant *k*. In Example 3.4.2, a second-order reaction, we found the units for *k* to be $\mathrm{L\ mol^{-1}\ s^{-1}}$, whereas in Example 3.4.3, a third order reaction, we found the units for *k* to be $\mathrm{mol^{-2}\ L^2/s}$. More generally speaking, the units for the rate constant for a reaction of order $(m+n)$ are $\mathrm{mol^{1-(m+n)}L^{(m+n)-1}s^{-1}}$. Table 3.4.1 summarizes the rate constant units for common reaction orders.

Table 3.4.1: Rate Constants for Common Reaction Orders

Reaction Order	Units of *k*
$(m+n)$	$\mathrm{mol^{1-(m+n)}\,L^{(m+n)-1}\,s^{-1}}$
zero	mol/L/s
first	$\mathrm{s^{-1}}$
second	L/mol/s
third	$\mathrm{mol^{-2}\,L^2\,s^{-1}}$

Note that the units in the table can also be expressed in terms of molarity (*M*) instead of mol/L. Also, units of time other than the second (such as minutes, hours, days) may be used, depending on the situation.

Summary

Rate laws provide a mathematical description of how changes in the amount of a substance affect the rate of a chemical reaction. Rate laws are determined experimentally and cannot be predicted by reaction stoichiometry. The order of reaction describes how much a change in the amount of each substance affects the overall rate, and the overall order of a reaction is the sum of the orders for each substance present in the reaction. Reaction orders are typically first order, second order, or zero order, but fractional and even negative orders are possible.

Glossary

method of initial rates
use of a more explicit algebraic method to determine the orders in a rate law

overall reaction order
sum of the reaction orders for each substance represented in the rate law

rate constant (*k*)
proportionality constant in the relationship between reaction rate and concentrations of reactants

rate law
(also, rate equation) mathematical equation showing the dependence of reaction rate on the rate constant and the concentration of one or more reactants

reaction order
value of an exponent in a rate law, expressed as an ordinal number (for example, zero order for 0, first order for 1, second order for 2, and so on)

This page titled 3.4: Rate Laws is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **12.4: Rate Laws** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.5: Integrated Rate Laws

Learning Objectives

- Explain the form and function of an integrated rate law
- Perform integrated rate law calculations for zero-, first-, and second-order reactions
- Define half-life and carry out related calculations
- Identify the order of a reaction from concentration/time data

The rate laws we have seen thus far relate the rate and the concentrations of reactants. We can also determine a second form of each rate law that relates the concentrations of reactants and time. These are called integrated rate laws. We can use an integrated rate law to determine the amount of reactant or product present after a period of time or to estimate the time required for a reaction to proceed to a certain extent. For example, an integrated rate law is used to determine the length of time a radioactive material must be stored for its radioactivity to decay to a safe level.

Using calculus, the differential rate law for a chemical reaction can be integrated with respect to time to give an equation that relates the amount of reactant or product present in a reaction mixture to the elapsed time of the reaction. This process can either be very straightforward or very complex, depending on the complexity of the differential rate law. For purposes of discussion, we will focus on the resulting integrated rate laws for first-, second-, and zero-order reactions.

First-Order Reactions

An equation relating the rate constant k to the initial concentration $[A]_0$ and the concentration $[A]_t$ present after any given time t can be derived for a first-order reaction and shown to be:

$$\ln\left(\frac{[A]_t}{[A]_0}\right) = -kt$$

or alternatively

$$\ln\left(\frac{[A]_0}{[A]_t}\right) = kt$$

or

$$[A] = [A]_0 e^{-kt}$$

Example 3.5.1: The Integrated Rate Law for a First-Order Reaction

The rate constant for the first-order decomposition of cyclobutane, C_4H_8 at 500 °C is 9.2×10^{-3} s^{-1}:

$$C_4H_8 \longrightarrow 2\,C_2H_4$$

How long will it take for 80.0% of a sample of C_4H_8 to decompose?

Solution

We use the integrated form of the rate law to answer questions regarding time:

$$\ln\left(\frac{[A]_0}{[A]}\right) = kt$$

There are four variables in the rate law, so if we know three of them, we can determine the fourth. In this case we know $[A]_0$, $[A]$, and k, and need to find t.

The initial concentration of C_4H_8, $[A]_0$, is not provided, but the provision that 80.0% of the sample has decomposed is enough information to solve this problem. Let x be the initial concentration, in which case the concentration after 80.0% decomposition is 20.0% of x or 0.200x. Rearranging the rate law to isolate t and substituting the provided quantities yields:

$$
\begin{aligned}
t &= \ln \frac{[x]}{[0.200x]} \times \frac{1}{k} \\
&= \ln \frac{0.100 \text{ mol L}^{-1}}{0.020 \text{ mol L}^{-1}} \times \frac{1}{9.2 \times 10^{-3} \text{ s}^{-1}} \\
&= 1.609 \times \frac{1}{9.2 \times 10^{-3} \text{ s}^{-1}} \\
&= 1.7 \times 10^{2} \text{ s}
\end{aligned}
$$

? Exercise 3.5.1

Iodine-131 is a radioactive isotope that is used to diagnose and treat some forms of thyroid cancer. Iodine-131 decays to xenon-131 according to the equation:

$$\text{I-131} \longrightarrow \text{Xe-131} + \text{electron}$$

The decay is first-order with a rate constant of 0.138 d^{-1}. All radioactive decay is first order. How many days will it take for 90% of the iodine−131 in a 0.500 *M* solution of this substance to decay to Xe-131?

Answer

16.7 days

We can use integrated rate laws with experimental data that consist of time and concentration information to determine the order and rate constant of a reaction. The integrated rate law can be rearranged to a standard linear equation format:

$$\ln[A] = (-k)(t) + \ln[A]_0 \tag{3.5.1}$$

$$y = mx + b \tag{3.5.2}$$

A plot of $\ln[A]$ versus t for a first-order reaction is a straight line with a slope of $-k$ and an intercept of $\ln[A]_0$. If a set of rate data are plotted in this fashion but do *not* result in a straight line, the reaction is not first order in A.

✓ Example 3.5.2: Determination of Reaction Order by Graphing

Show that the data in this Figure can be represented by a first-order rate law by graphing $\ln[H_2O_2]$ versus time. Determine the rate constant for the rate of decomposition of H_2O_2 from this data.

Solution

The data from this Figure with the addition of values of $\ln[H_2O_2]$ are given in Figure 3.5.1.

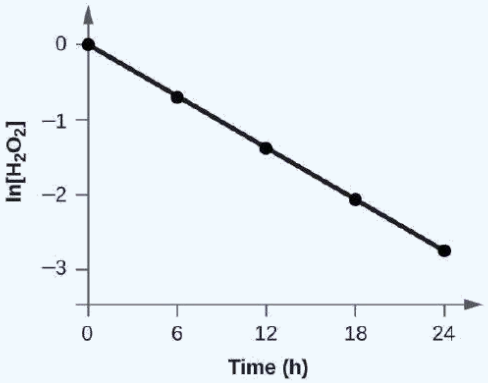


Figure 3.5.1: The linear relationship between the $\ln[H_2O_2]$ and time shows that the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide is a first-order reaction.

Solutions to Example 12.4.2

Trial	Time (h)	$[H_2O_2]$ (*M*)	$\ln[H_2O_2]$

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122499

Trial	Time (h)	$[H_2O_2]$ (M)	$\ln[H_2O_2]$
1	0	1.000	0.0
2	6.00	0.500	−0.693
3	12.00	0.250	−1.386
4	18.00	0.125	−2.079
5	24.00	0.0625	−2.772

The plot of $\ln[H_2O_2]$ versus time is linear, thus we have verified that the reaction may be described by a first-order rate law.

The rate constant for a first-order reaction is equal to the negative of the slope of the plot of $\ln[H_2O_2]$ versus time where:

$$\text{slope} = \frac{\text{change in } y}{\text{change in } x} = \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{\Delta \ln[H_2O_2]}{\Delta t}$$

In order to determine the slope of the line, we need two values of $\ln[H_2O_2]$ at different values of t (one near each end of the line is preferable). For example, the value of $\ln[H_2O_2]$ when t is 6.00 h is −0.693; the value when t = 12.00 h is −1.386:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{slope} &= \frac{-1.386 - (-0.693)}{12.00\ \text{h} - 6.00\ \text{h}} \\ &= \frac{-0.693}{6.00\ \text{h}} \\ &= -1.155 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{h}^{-1} \\ k &= -\text{slope} = -(-1.155 \times 10^{-1}\ \text{h}^{-1}) = 1.155 \times 10^{-1}\ \text{h}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 3.5.2

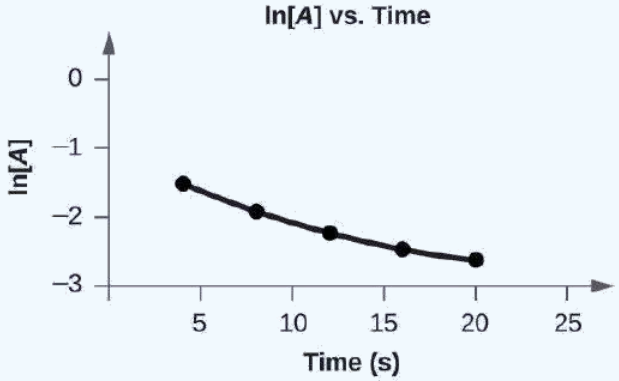
Graph the following data to determine whether the reaction $A \longrightarrow B + C$ is first order.

Data for the reaction $A \longrightarrow B + C$

Trial	Time (s)	[*A*]
1	4.0	0.220
2	8.0	0.144
3	12.0	0.110
4	16.0	0.088
5	20.0	0.074

Answer

The plot of ln[A] vs. t is not a straight line. The equation is not first order:



A graph, labeled above as “l n [A] vs. Time” is shown. The x-axis is labeled, “Time (s)” and the y-axis is labeled, “l n [A].” The x-axis shows markings at 5, 10, 15, 20, and 25 hours. The y-axis shows markings at negative 3, negative 2, negative 1, and 0. A slight curve is drawn connecting five points at coordinates of approximately (4, negative 1.5), (8, negative 2), (12, negative 2.2), (16, negative 2.4), and (20, negative 2.6).

Second-Order Reactions

The equations that relate the concentrations of reactants and the rate constant of second-order reactions are fairly complicated. We will limit ourselves to the simplest second-order reactions, namely, those with rates that are dependent upon just one reactant’s concentration and described by the differential rate law:

$$\text{Rate} = k[A]^2$$

For these second-order reactions, the integrated rate law is:

$$\frac{1}{[A]} = kt + \frac{1}{[A]_0} \tag{3.5.3}$$

where the terms in the equation have their usual meanings as defined earlier.

Example 3.5.3: The Integrated Rate Law for a Second-Order Reaction

The reaction of butadiene gas (C_4H_6) with itself produces C_8H_{12} gas as follows:

$$2\,C_4H_6(g) \longrightarrow C_8H_{12}(g)$$

The reaction is second order with a rate constant equal to 5.76×10^{-2} L/mol/min under certain conditions. If the initial concentration of butadiene is 0.200 *M*, what is the concentration remaining after 10.0 min?

Solution

We use the integrated form of the rate law to answer questions regarding time. For a second-order reaction, we have:

$$\frac{1}{[A]} = kt + \frac{1}{[A]_0}$$

We know three variables in this equation: $[A]_0$ = 0.200 mol/L, $k = 5.76 \times 10^{-2}$ L/mol/min, and t = 10.0 min. Therefore, we can solve for [*A*], the fourth variable:

$$\frac{1}{[A]} = (5.76 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{L mol}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1})(10\ \text{min}) + \frac{1}{0.200\ \text{mol}^{-1}}$$

$$\frac{1}{[A]} = (5.76 \times 10^{-1}\ \text{L mol}^{-1}) + 5.00\ \text{L mol}^{-1}$$

$$\frac{1}{[A]} = 5.58\ \text{L mol}^{-1}$$

$$[A] = 1.79 \times 10^{-1}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}$$

Therefore 0.179 mol/L of butadiene remain at the end of 10.0 min, compared to the 0.200 mol/L that was originally present.

? Exercise 3.5.3

If the initial concentration of butadiene is 0.0200 *M*, what is the concentration remaining after 20.0 min?

Answer

0.0196 mol/L

The integrated rate law for our second-order reactions has the form of the equation of a straight line:

$$\frac{1}{[A]} = kt + \frac{1}{[A]_0}$$

$$y = mx + b$$

A plot of $\frac{1}{[A]}$ versus *t* for a second-order reaction is a straight line with a slope of *k* and an intercept of $\frac{1}{[A]_0}$. If the plot is not a straight line, then the reaction is not second order.

✔ Example 3.5.4: Determination of Reaction Order by Graphing

Test the data given to show whether the dimerization of C_4H_6 is a first- or a second-order reaction.

Solution

Solutions to Example 3.5.4

Trial	Time (s)	$[C_4H_6]$ (*M*)
1	0	1.00×10^{-2}
2	1600	5.04×10^{-3}
3	3200	3.37×10^{-3}
4	4800	2.53×10^{-3}
5	6200	2.08×10^{-3}

In order to distinguish a first-order reaction from a second-order reaction, we plot $\ln[C_4H_6]$ versus *t* and compare it with a plot of $\frac{1}{[C_4H_6]}$ versus *t*. The values needed for these plots follow.

Solutions to Example ✔ 3.5.4

Time (s)	$\frac{1}{[C_4H_6]}$ (M^{-1})	$\ln[C_4H_6]$
0	100	−4.605
1600	198	−5.289
3200	296	−5.692
4800	395	−5.978
6200	481	−6.175

The plots are shown in Figure 3.5.2. As you can see, the plot of $\ln[C_4H_6]$ versus *t* is not linear, therefore the reaction is not first order. The plot of $\frac{1}{[C_4H_6]}$ versus *t* is linear, indicating that the reaction is second order.

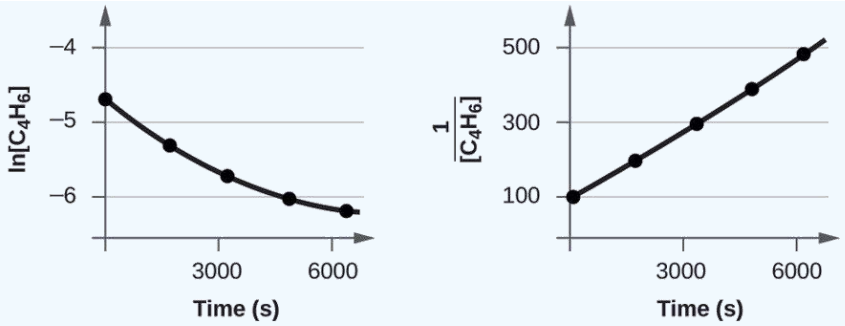


Figure 3.5.2: These two graphs show first- and second-order plots for the dimerization of C_4H_6. Since the first-order plot (left) is not linear, we know that the reaction is not first order. The linear trend in the second-order plot (right) indicates that the reaction follows second-order kinetics.

Exercise 3.5.4

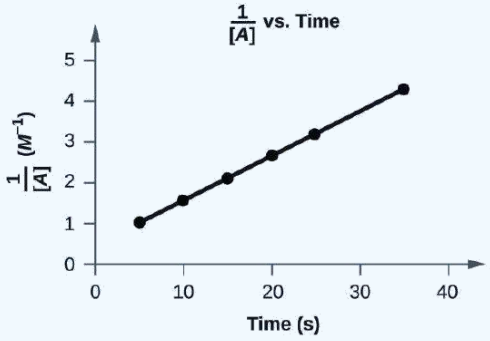
Does the following data fit a second-order rate law?

Data for second-order rate law

Trial	Time (s)	[*A*] (*M*)
1	5	0.952
2	10	0.625
3	15	0.465
4	20	0.370
5	25	0.308
6	35	0.230

Answer

Yes. The plot of $\frac{1}{[A]}$ vs. t is linear:



A graph, with the title “1 divided by [A] vs. Time” is shown, with the label, “Time (s),” on the x-axis. The label “1 divided by [A]” appears left of the y-axis. The x-axis shows markings beginning at zero and continuing at intervals of 10 up to and including 40. The y-axis on the left shows markings beginning at 0 and increasing by intervals of 1 up to and including 5. A line with an increasing trend is drawn through six points at approximately (4, 1), (10, 1.5), (15, 2.2), (20, 2.8), (26, 3.4), and (36, 4.4).

Zero-Order Reactions

For zero-order reactions, the differential rate law is:

$$\text{Rate} = k[A]^0 = k$$

A zero-order reaction thus exhibits a constant reaction rate, regardless of the concentration of its reactants.

The integrated rate law for a zero-order reaction also has the form of the equation of a straight line:

$$[A] = -kt + [A]_0$$
$$y = mx + b$$

A plot of $[A]$ versus t for a zero-order reaction is a straight line with a slope of $-k$ and an intercept of $[A]_0$. Figure $3.5.3$ shows a plot of [NH_3] versus t for the decomposition of ammonia on a hot tungsten wire and for the decomposition of ammonia on hot quartz (SiO_2). The decomposition of NH_3 on hot tungsten is zero order; the plot is a straight line. The decomposition of NH_3 on hot quartz is not zero order (it is first order). From the slope of the line for the zero-order decomposition, we can determine the rate constant:

$$\text{slope} = -k = 1.3110^{-6}\ \text{mol/L/s}$$

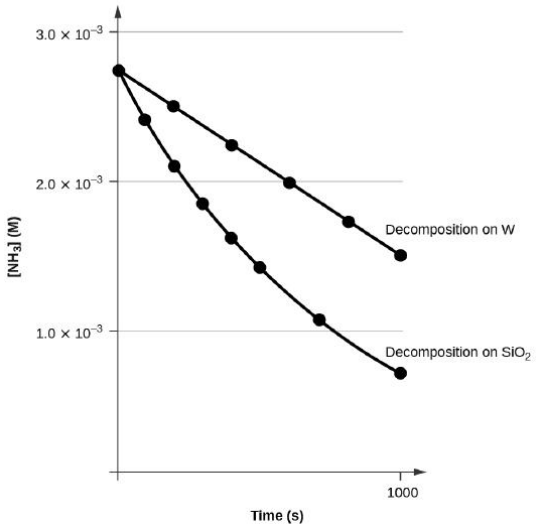


Figure $3.5.3$: The decomposition of NH_3 on a tungsten (W) surface is a zero-order reaction, whereas on a quartz (SiO_2) surface, the reaction is first order.

The Half-Life of a Reaction

The half-life of a reaction ($t_{1/2}$) is the time required for one-half of a given amount of reactant to be consumed. In each succeeding half-life, half of the remaining concentration of the reactant is consumed. Using the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide as an example, we find that during the first half-life (from 0.00 hours to 6.00 hours), the concentration of H_2O_2 decreases from 1.000 *M* to 0.500 *M*. During the second half-life (from 6.00 hours to 12.00 hours), it decreases from 0.500 *M* to 0.250 *M*; during the third half-life, it decreases from 0.250 *M* to 0.125 *M*. The concentration of H_2O_2 decreases by half during each successive period of 6.00 hours. The decomposition of hydrogen peroxide is a first-order reaction, and, as can be shown, the half-life of a first-order reaction is independent of the concentration of the reactant. However, half-lives of reactions with other orders depend on the concentrations of the reactants.

First-Order Reactions

We can derive an equation for determining the half-life of a first-order reaction from the alternate form of the integrated rate law as follows:

$$\ln \frac{[A]_0}{[A]} = kt$$

$$t = \ln \frac{[A]_0}{[A]} \times \frac{1}{k}$$

If we set the time *t* equal to the half-life, $t_{1/2}$, the corresponding concentration of *A* at this time is equal to one-half of its initial concentration. Hence, when $t = t_{1/2}$, $[A] = \frac{1}{2}[A]_0$.

Therefore:

$$t_{1/2} = \ln \frac{[A]_0}{\frac{1}{2}[A]_0} \times \frac{1}{k}$$

$$= \ln 2 \times \frac{1}{k} = 0.693 \times \frac{1}{k}$$

Thus:

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{k}$$

We can see that the half-life of a first-order reaction is inversely proportional to the rate constant *k*. A fast reaction (shorter half-life) will have a larger *k*; a slow reaction (longer half-life) will have a smaller *k*.

Example 3.5.5: Calculation of a First-order Rate Constant using Half-Life

Calculate the rate constant for the first-order decomposition of hydrogen peroxide in water at 40 °C, using the data given in Figure 3.5.4.



Figure 3.5.4: The decomposition of H_2O_2 $(2\,H_2O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O + O_2)$ *at 40 °C is illustrated. The intensity of the color symbolizes the concentration of* H_2O_2 *at the indicated times;* H_2O_2 *is actually colorless.*

Solution The half-life for the decomposition of H_2O_2 is 2.16×10^4 s:

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{k}$$

$$k = \frac{0.693}{t_{1/2}} = \frac{0.693}{2.16 \times 10^4\ \text{s}} = 3.21 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

Exercise 3.5.1

The first-order radioactive decay of iodine-131 exhibits a rate constant of 0.138 d^{-1}. What is the half-life for this decay?

Answer

5.02 d.

Second-Order Reactions

We can derive the equation for calculating the half-life of a second order as follows:

$$\frac{1}{[A]} = kt + \frac{1}{[A]_0}$$

or

$$\frac{1}{[A]} - \frac{1}{[A]_0} = kt$$

If

$$t = t_{1/2}$$

then

$$[A] = \frac{1}{2}[A]_0$$

and we can write:

$$\frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}[A]_0} - \frac{1}{[A]_0} = kt_{1/2}$$

$$2[A]_0 - \frac{1}{[A]_0} = kt_{1/2}$$

$$\frac{1}{[A]_0} = kt_{1/2}$$

Thus:

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{1}{k[A]_0}$$

For a second-order reaction, $t_{1/2}$ is inversely proportional to the concentration of the reactant, and the half-life increases as the reaction proceeds because the concentration of reactant decreases. Consequently, we find the use of the half-life concept to be more complex for second-order reactions than for first-order reactions. Unlike with first-order reactions, the rate constant of a second-order reaction cannot be calculated directly from the half-life unless the initial concentration is known.

Zero-Order Reactions

We can derive an equation for calculating the half-life of a zero order reaction as follows:

$$[A] = -kt + [A]_0$$

When half of the initial amount of reactant has been consumed $t = t_{1/2}$ and $[A] = \frac{[A]_0}{2}$. Thus:

$$\frac{[A]_0}{2} = -kt_{1/2} + [A]_0$$

$$kt_{1/2} = \frac{[A]_0}{2}$$

and

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{[A]_0}{2k}$$

The half-life of a zero-order reaction increases as the initial concentration increases. Equations for both differential and integrated rate laws and the corresponding half-lives for zero-, first-, and second-order reactions are summarized in Table $3.5.1$.

Table 3.5.1: Summary of Rate Laws for Zero-, First-, and Second-Order Reactions

	Zero-Order	First-Order	Second-Order
rate law	rate = k	rate = $k[A]$	rate = $k[A]^2$
units of rate constant	M s^{-1}	s^{-1}	M^{-1} s^{-1}
integrated rate law	$[A] = -kt + [A]_0$	$\ln[A] = -kt + \ln[A]_0$	$\frac{1}{[A]} = kt + \left(\frac{1}{[A]_0}\right)$
plot needed for linear fit of rate data	$[A]$ vs. t	$\ln[A]$ vs. t	$\frac{1}{[A]}$ vs. t
relationship between slope of linear plot and rate constant	k = −slope	k = −slope	k = +slope
half-life	$t_{1/2} = \frac{[A]_0}{2k}$	$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{k}$	$t_{1/2} = \frac{1}{[A]_0 k}$

Summary

Differential rate laws can be determined by the method of initial rates or other methods. We measure values for the initial rates of a reaction at different concentrations of the reactants. From these measurements, we determine the order of the reaction in each reactant. Integrated rate laws are determined by integration of the corresponding differential rate laws. Rate constants for those rate laws are determined from measurements of concentration at various times during a reaction.

The half-life of a reaction is the time required to decrease the amount of a given reactant by one-half. The half-life of a zero-order reaction decreases as the initial concentration of the reactant in the reaction decreases. The half-life of a first-order reaction is independent of concentration, and the half-life of a second-order reaction decreases as the concentration increases.

Key Equations

- integrated rate law for zero-order reactions (Equation ???):

$$[A] = -kt + [A]_0 \quad \text{with } t_{1/2} = \frac{[A]_0}{2k}$$

- integrated rate law for first-order reactions (Equation 3.5.1):

$$\ln[A] = -kt + \ln[A]_0 \quad \text{with } t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{k}$$

- integrated rate law for second-order reactions (Equation 3.5.3):

$$\frac{1}{[A]} = kt + \frac{1}{[A]_0} \quad \text{with } t_{1/2} = \frac{1}{[A]_0 k}$$

Glossary

half-life of a reaction ($t_{1/2}$)
time required for half of a given amount of reactant to be consumed

integrated rate law
equation that relates the concentration of a reactant to elapsed time of reaction

This page titled 3.5: Integrated Rate Laws is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **12.5: Integrated Rate Laws** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.6: Collision Theory

Learning Objectives

- Use the postulates of collision theory to explain the effects of physical state, temperature, and concentration on reaction rates
- Define the concepts of activation energy and transition state
- Use the Arrhenius equation in calculations relating rate constants to temperature

We should not be surprised that atoms, molecules, or ions must collide before they can react with each other. Atoms must be close together to form chemical bonds. This simple premise is the basis for a very powerful theory that explains many observations regarding chemical kinetics, including factors affecting reaction rates. Collision theory is based on the following postulates:

Postulates of Collision theory

1. The rate of a reaction is proportional to the rate of reactant collisions:

$$\text{reaction rate} \propto \frac{\#\,\text{collisions}}{\text{time}}$$

2. The reacting species must collide in an orientation that allows contact between the atoms that will become bonded together in the product.
3. The collision must occur with adequate energy to permit mutual penetration of the reacting species' valence shells so that the electrons can rearrange and form new bonds (and new chemical species).

We can see the importance of the two physical factors noted in postulates 2 and 3, the orientation and energy of collisions, when we consider the reaction of carbon monoxide with oxygen:

$$2\,\mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g)$$

Carbon monoxide is a pollutant produced by the combustion of hydrocarbon fuels. To reduce this pollutant, automobiles have catalytic converters that use a catalyst to carry out this reaction. It is also a side reaction of the combustion of gunpowder that results in muzzle flash for many firearms. If carbon monoxide and oxygen are present in sufficient quantity, the reaction is spontaneous at high temperature and pressure.

The first step in the gas-phase reaction between carbon monoxide and oxygen is a collision between the two molecules:

$$\mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O}(g)$$

Although there are many different possible orientations the two molecules can have relative to each other, consider the two presented in Figure 3.6.1. In the first case, the oxygen side of the carbon monoxide molecule collides with the oxygen molecule. In the second case, the carbon side of the carbon monoxide molecule collides with the oxygen molecule. The second case is clearly more likely to result in the formation of carbon dioxide, which has a central carbon atom bonded to two oxygen atoms (O=C=O). This is a rather simple example of how important the orientation of the collision is in terms of creating the desired product of the reaction.

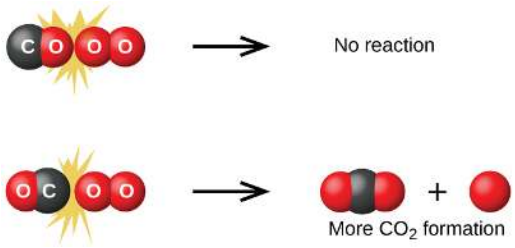


Figure 3.6.1: Illustrated are two collisions that might take place between carbon monoxide and oxygen molecules. The orientation of the colliding molecules partially determines whether a reaction between the two molecules will occur.

If the collision does take place with the correct orientation, there is still no guarantee that the reaction will proceed to form carbon dioxide. Every reaction requires a certain amount of activation energy for it to proceed in the forward direction, yielding an

appropriate activated complex along the way. As Figure 3.6.2 demonstrates, even a collision with the correct orientation can fail to form the reaction product. In the study of reaction mechanisms, each of these three arrangements of atoms is called a proposed activated complex or transition state.

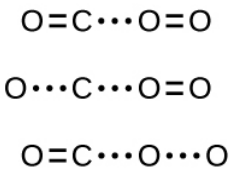


Figure 3.6.2: Possible transition states (activated complexes) for carbon monoxide reacting with oxygen to form carbon dioxide. Solid lines represent covalent bonds, while dotted lines represent unstable orbital overlaps that may, or may not, become covalent bonds as product is formed. In the first two examples in this figure, the O=O double bond is not impacted; therefore, carbon dioxide cannot form. The third proposed transition state will result in the formation of carbon dioxide if the third "extra" oxygen atom separates from the rest of the molecule.

In most circumstances, it is impossible to isolate or identify a transition state or activated complex. In the reaction between carbon monoxide and oxygen to form carbon dioxide, activated complexes have only been observed spectroscopically in systems that utilize a heterogeneous catalyst. The gas-phase reaction occurs too rapidly to isolate any such chemical compound.

Collision theory explains why most reaction rates increase as concentrations increase. With an increase in the concentration of any reacting substance, the chances for collisions between molecules are increased because there are more molecules per unit of volume. More collisions mean a faster reaction rate, assuming the energy of the collisions is adequate.

Activation Energy and the Arrhenius Equation

The minimum energy necessary to form a product during a collision between reactants is called the activation energy (E_a). The kinetic energy of reactant molecules plays an important role in a reaction because the energy necessary to form a product is provided by a collision of a reactant molecule with another reactant molecule. (In single-reactant reactions, activation energy may be provided by a collision of the reactant molecule with the wall of the reaction vessel or with molecules of an inert contaminant.) If the activation energy is much larger than the average kinetic energy of the molecules, the reaction will occur slowly: Only a few fast-moving molecules will have enough energy to react. If the activation energy is much smaller than the average kinetic energy of the molecules, the fraction of molecules possessing the necessary kinetic energy will be large; most collisions between molecules will result in reaction, and the reaction will occur rapidly.

Figure 3.6.3 shows the energy relationships for the general reaction of a molecule of A with a molecule of B to form molecules of C and D:

$$A + B \longrightarrow C + D$$

The figure shows that the energy of the transition state is higher than that of the reactants A and B by an amount equal to E_a, the activation energy. Thus, the sum of the kinetic energies of A and B must be **equal to or greater** than E_a to reach the transition state. After the transition state has been reached, and as C and D begin to form, the system loses energy until its total energy is lower than that of the initial mixture. This lost energy is transferred to other molecules, giving them enough energy to reach the transition state. The forward reaction (that between molecules A and B) therefore tends to take place readily once the reaction has started. In Figure 3.6.3, ΔH represents the difference in enthalpy between the reactants (A and B) and the products (C and D). The sum of E_a and ΔH represents the activation energy for the reverse reaction:

$$C + D \longrightarrow A + B$$

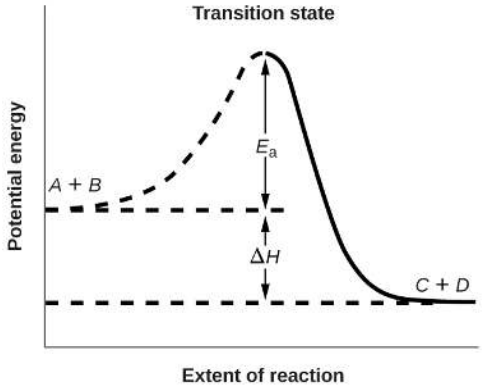


Figure 3.6.3: This graph shows the potential energy relationships for the reaction $A + B \longrightarrow C + D$. The dashed portion of the curve represents the energy of the system with a molecule of A and a molecule of B present, and the solid portion the energy of the system with a molecule of C and a molecule of D present. The activation energy for the forward reaction is represented by E_a. The activation energy for the reverse reaction is greater than that for the forward reaction by an amount equal to ΔH. The curve's peak represents the transition state.

We can use the Arrhenius equation to relate the activation energy and the rate constant, *k*, of a given reaction:

$$k = Ae^{-E_a/RT} \tag{3.6.1}$$

In this equation,

- R is the ideal gas constant, which has a value 8.314 J/mol/K,
- T is temperature on the Kelvin scale,
- E_a is the activation energy in joules per mole,
- e is the constant 2.7183, and
- A is a constant called the frequency factor, which is related to the frequency of collisions and the orientation of the reacting molecules.

Both postulates of the collision theory of reaction rates are accommodated in the Arrhenius equation. The frequency factor *A* is related to the rate at which collisions having the correct *orientation* occur. The exponential term, $e^{-E_a/RT}$, is related to the fraction of collisions providing adequate *energy* to overcome the activation barrier of the reaction.

At one extreme, the system does not contain enough energy for collisions to overcome the activation barrier. In such cases, no reaction occurs. At the other extreme, the system has so much energy that every collision with the correct orientation can overcome the activation barrier, causing the reaction to proceed. In such cases, the reaction is nearly instantaneous.

The Arrhenius equation (Equation 3.6.1) describes quantitatively much of what we have already discussed about reaction rates. For two reactions at the same temperature, the reaction with the higher activation energy has the lower rate constant and the slower rate. The larger value of E_a results in a smaller value for $e^{-E_a/RT}$, reflecting the smaller fraction of molecules with enough energy to react. Alternatively, the reaction with the smaller E_a has a larger fraction of molecules with enough energy to react. This will be reflected as a larger value of $e^{-E_a/RT}$, a larger rate constant, and a faster rate for the reaction.

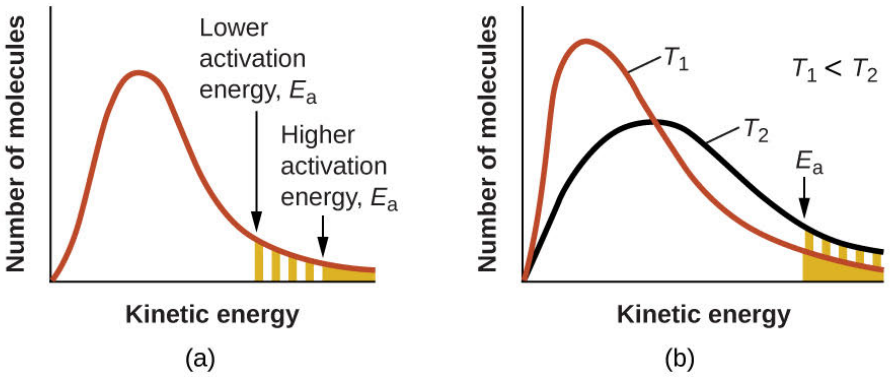


Figure 3.6.4: (a) As the activation energy of a reaction decreases, the number of molecules with at least this much energy increases, as shown by the shaded areas. (b) At a higher temperature, T2, more molecules have kinetic energies greater than Ea, as shown by the yellow shaded area.

An increase in temperature has the same effect as a decrease in activation energy. A larger fraction of molecules has the necessary energy to react (Figure 3.6.4), as indicated by an increase in the value of $e^{-E_a/RT}$. The rate constant is also directly proportional to the frequency factor, A. Hence a change in conditions or reactants that increases the number of collisions with a favorable orientation for reaction results in an increase in A and, consequently, an increase in k.

A convenient approach to determining E_a for a reaction involves the measurement of k at different temperatures and using of an alternate version of the Arrhenius equation that takes the form of linear equation:

$$\ln k = \left(\frac{-E_a}{R}\right)\left(\frac{1}{T}\right) + \ln A$$
$$y = mx + b$$

Thus, a plot of $\ln k$ versus $\frac{1}{T}$ gives a straight line with the slope $\frac{-E_a}{R}$, from which E_a may be determined. The intercept gives the value of $\ln A$. This is sometimes call an Arrhenius Plot.

Example 3.6.1

Determination of E_a The variation of the rate constant with temperature for the decomposition of HI(g) to $H_2(g)$ and $I_2(g)$ is given here. What is the activation energy for the reaction?

$$2\,HI(g) \longrightarrow H_2(g) + I_2(g)$$

variation of the rate constant with temperature for the decomposition of HI(g) to H2(g) and I2(g)

T (K)	k (L/mol/s)
555	3.52×10^{-7}
575	1.22×10^{-6}
645	8.59×10^{-5}
700	1.16×10^{-3}
781	3.95×10^{-2}

Solution

Values of $\frac{1}{T}$ and ln k are:

Solutions to Example 12.5.1

$\frac{1}{T}$ (K^{-1})	ln k

$\frac{1}{T}$ (K^{-1})	ln *k*
1.80×10^{-3}	−14.860
1.74×10^{-3}	−13.617
1.55×10^{-3}	−9.362
1.43×10^{-3}	−6.759
1.28×10^{-3}	−3.231

Figure 3.6.5 is a graph of ln *k* versus $\frac{1}{T}$. To determine the slope of the line, we need two values of ln *k*, which are determined from the line at two values of $\frac{1}{T}$ (one near each end of the line is preferable). For example, the value of ln *k* determined from the line when $\frac{1}{T} = 1.25 \times 10^{-3}$ is −2.593; the value when $\frac{1}{T} = 1.78 \times 10^{-3}$ is −14.447.

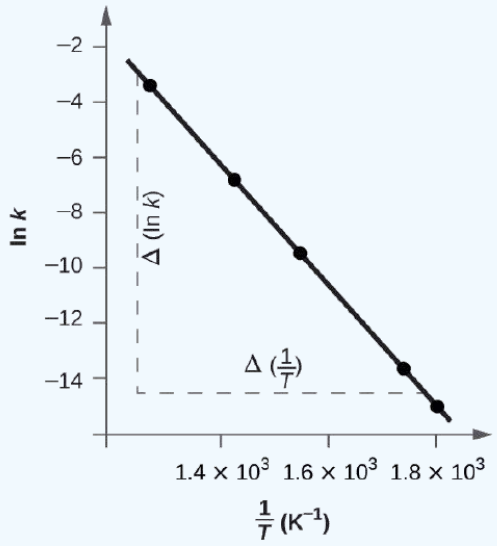


Figure 3.6.5: This graph shows the linear relationship between ln *k* and $\frac{1}{T}$ for the reaction $2\,HI \longrightarrow H_2 + I_2$ according to the Arrhenius equation.

The slope of this line is given by the following expression:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Slope} &= \frac{\Delta(\ln k)}{\Delta\left(\frac{1}{T}\right)} \\ &= \frac{(-14.447) - (-2.593)}{(1.78 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{K}^{-1}) - (1.25 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{K}^{-1})} \\ &= \frac{-11.854}{0.53 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{K}^{-1}} = 2.2 \times 10^{4}\ \text{K} \\ &= -\frac{E_a}{R} \end{aligned}$$

Thus:

$$\begin{aligned} E_a &= -\text{slope} \times R = -(-2.2 \times 10^{4}\ \text{K} \times 8.314\ \text{J mol}^{-1}\ \text{K}^{-1}) \\ &= 1.8 \times 10^{5}\ \text{J mol}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

In many situations, it is possible to obtain a reasonable estimate of the activation energy without going through the entire process of constructing the Arrhenius plot. The Arrhenius equation:

$$\ln k = \left(\frac{-E_a}{R}\right)\left(\frac{1}{T}\right) + \ln A$$

can be rearranged as shown to give:

$$\frac{\Delta(\ln k)}{\Delta\left(\frac{1}{T}\right)} = -\frac{E_a}{R}$$

or

$$\ln\frac{k_1}{k_2} = \frac{E_a}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_2} - \frac{1}{T_1}\right)$$

This equation can be rearranged to give a one-step calculation to obtain an estimate for the activation energy:

$$E_a = -R\left(\frac{\ln k_2 - \ln k_1}{\left(\frac{1}{T_2}\right) - \left(\frac{1}{T_1}\right)}\right)$$

Using the experimental data presented here, we can simply select two data entries. For this example, we select the first entry and the last entry:

First and Last Entry

T (K)	k (L/mol/s)	$\frac{1}{T}$ (K^{-1})	ln k
555	3.52×10^{-7}	1.80×10^{-3}	−14.860
781	3.95×10^{-2}	1.28×10^{-3}	−3.231

After calculating $\frac{1}{T}$ and ln *k*, we can substitute into the equation:

$$E_a = -8.314\ \text{J mol}^{-1}\ \text{K}^{-1}\left(\frac{-3.231 - (-14.860)}{1.28 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{K}^{-1} - 1.80 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{K}^{-1}}\right)$$

and the result is E_a = 185,900 J/mol.

This method is very effective, especially when a limited number of temperature-dependent rate constants are available for the reaction of interest.

? Exercise 3.6.1

The rate constant for the rate of decomposition of N_2O_5 to NO and O_2 in the gas phase is 1.66 L/mol/s at 650 K and 7.39 L/mol/s at 700 K:

$$2\,N_2O_5(g) \longrightarrow 4\,NO(g) + 3\,O_2(g)$$

Assuming the kinetics of this reaction are consistent with the Arrhenius equation, calculate the activation energy for this decomposition.

Answer

113,000 J/mol

Summary

Chemical reactions require collisions between reactant species. These reactant collisions must be of proper orientation and sufficient energy in order to result in product formation. Collision theory provides a simple but effective explanation for the effect

of many experimental parameters on reaction rates. The Arrhenius equation describes the relation between a reaction's rate constant and its activation energy, temperature, and dependence on collision orientation.

Key Equations

- $k = Ae^{-E_a/RT}$
- $\ln k = \left(\frac{-E_\text{a}}{R}\right)\left(\frac{1}{T}\right) + \ln A$
- $\ln \frac{k_1}{k_2} = \frac{E_\text{a}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_2} - \frac{1}{T_1}\right)$

Glossary

activated complex
(also, transition state) unstable combination of reactant species representing the highest energy state of a reaction system

activation energy (E_a)
energy necessary in order for a reaction to take place

Arrhenius equation
mathematical relationship between the rate constant and the activation energy of a reaction

collision theory
model that emphasizes the energy and orientation of molecular collisions to explain and predict reaction kinetics

frequency factor (A)
proportionality constant in the Arrhenius equation, related to the relative number of collisions having an orientation capable of leading to product formation

---

This page titled 3.6: Collision Theory is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **12.6: Collision Theory** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.7: Reaction Mechanisms

Learning Objectives

- Distinguish net reactions from elementary reactions (steps)
- Identify the molecularity of elementary reactions
- Write a balanced chemical equation for a process given its reaction mechanism
- Derive the rate law consistent with a given reaction mechanism

A balanced equation for a chemical reaction indicates what is reacting and what is produced, but it reveals nothing about how the reaction actually takes place. The reaction mechanism (or reaction path) is the process, or pathway, by which a reaction occurs. A chemical reaction often occurs in steps, although it may not always be obvious to an observer. The decomposition of ozone, for example, appears to follow a mechanism with two steps:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{O_3}(g) &\longrightarrow \mathrm{O_2}(g) + \mathrm{O} \\ \mathrm{O} + \mathrm{O_3}(g) &\longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \end{aligned} \tag{3.7.1}$$

We call each step in a reaction mechanism an elementary reaction. Elementary reactions occur exactly as they are written and cannot be broken down into simpler steps. Elementary reactions add up to the overall reaction, which, for the decomposition, is:

$$2\,\mathrm{O_3}(g) \longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \tag{3.7.2}$$

Notice that the oxygen atom produced in the first step of this mechanism is consumed in the second step and therefore does not appear as a product in the overall reaction. Species that are produced in one step and consumed in a subsequent step are called intermediates.

While the overall reaction equation for the decomposition of ozone indicates that two molecules of ozone react to give three molecules of oxygen, the mechanism of the reaction does not involve the collision and reaction of two ozone molecules. Rather, it involves a molecule of ozone decomposing to an oxygen molecule and an intermediate oxygen atom; the oxygen atom then reacts with a second ozone molecule to give two oxygen molecules. These two elementary reactions occur exactly as they are shown in the reaction mechanism.

Unimolecular Elementary Reactions

The molecularity of an elementary reaction is the number of reactant species (atoms, molecules, or ions). For example, a unimolecular reaction involves the rearrangement of a *single* reactant species to produce one or more molecules of product:

$$A \longrightarrow \text{products} \tag{3.7.3}$$

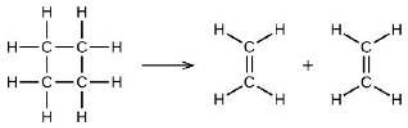
The rate equation for a unimolecular reaction is:

$$\text{rate} = k[A] \tag{3.7.4}$$

A unimolecular reaction may be one of several elementary reactions in a complex mechanism. For example, the reaction:

$$\mathrm{O_3} \longrightarrow \mathrm{O_2} + \mathrm{O} \tag{3.7.5}$$

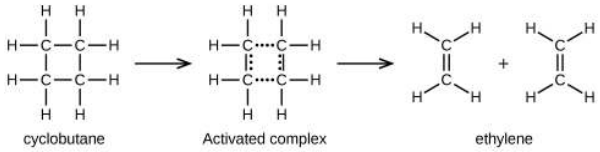
illustrates a unimolecular elementary reaction that occurs as one part of a two-step reaction mechanism. However, some unimolecular reactions may have only a single reaction in the reaction mechanism. (In other words, an elementary reaction can also be an overall reaction in some cases.) For example, the gas-phase decomposition of cyclobutane, $\mathrm{C_4H_8}$, to ethylene, $\mathrm{C_2H_4}$, occurs via a unimolecular, single-step mechanism:



In this figure, structural formulas are used to illustrate a chemical reaction. On the left, a structural formula for cyclobutane is shown. This structure is composed of 4 C atoms connected with single bonds in a square shape. Each C atom is bonded to two other C atoms in the structure, leaving two bonds for H atoms pointing outward above, below, left, and right. An arrow points right to two identical ethane molecules with a plus symbol between them. Each of these molecules contains two C atoms connected with a double bond oriented vertically between them. The C atom at the top of these molecules has H atoms bonded above to the right and left. Similarly, the lower C atom has two H atoms bonded below to the right and left.

For these unimolecular reactions to occur, all that is required is the separation of parts of single reactant molecules into products.

Chemical bonds do not simply fall apart during chemical reactions. Energy is required to break chemical bonds. The activation energy for the decomposition of $\mathrm{C_4H_8}$, for example, is 261 kJ per mole. This means that it requires 261 kilojoules to distort one mole of these molecules into activated complexes that decompose into products:



In this figure, structural formulas are used to illustrate a chemical reaction, including an intermediate step. On the left, a structural formula for cyclobutane is shown. This structure is composed of 4 C atoms connected with single bonds in a square shape. Each C atom is bonded to two other C atoms in the structure, leaving two bonds for H atoms pointing outward above, below, left, and right. This structure is labeled, “Cyclohexane.” An arrow points right to a similar structure which has the upper and lower bonds replaced by rows of 4 dots. Similarly, columns of 3 dots appear just inside the line segments indicating the vertically oriented single bonds in the structure. The label “Activated complex” appears beneath this structure. A second arrow points right to two identical ethane molecules with a plus symbol between them. Each of these molecules contains two C atoms connected with a double bond oriented vertically between them. The C atom at the top of these molecules has H atoms bonded above to the right and left. Similarly, the lower C atom has two H atoms bonded below to the right and left. Below these two molecules appears the label “Ethylene.”

In a sample of $\mathrm{C_4H_8}$, a few of the rapidly moving $\mathrm{C_4H_8}$ molecules collide with other rapidly moving molecules and pick up additional energy. When the $\mathrm{C_4H_8}$ molecules gain enough energy, they can transform into an activated complex, and the formation of ethylene molecules can occur. In effect, a particularly energetic collision knocks a $\mathrm{C_4H_8}$ molecule into the geometry of the activated complex. However, only a small fraction of gas molecules travel at sufficiently high speeds with large enough kinetic energies to accomplish this. Hence, at any given moment, only a few molecules pick up enough energy from collisions to react.

The rate of decomposition of $\mathrm{C_4H_8}$ is directly proportional to its concentration. Doubling the concentration of $\mathrm{C_4H_8}$ in a sample gives twice as many molecules per liter. Although the fraction of molecules with enough energy to react remains the same, the total number of such molecules is twice as great. Consequently, there is twice as much $\mathrm{C_4H_8}$ per liter, and the reaction rate is twice as fast:

$$\text{rate} = -\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{C_4H_8}]}{\Delta t} = k[\mathrm{C_4H_8}] \tag{3.7.6}$$

A similar relationship applies to any unimolecular elementary reaction; the reaction rate is directly proportional to the concentration of the reactant, and the reaction exhibits first-order behavior. The proportionality constant is the rate constant for the particular unimolecular reaction.

Bimolecular Elementary Reactions

The collision and combination of two molecules or atoms to form an activated complex in an elementary reaction is called a bimolecular reaction. There are two types of bimolecular elementary reactions:

$$A + B \longrightarrow \text{products} \tag{3.7.7}$$

and

$$2A \longrightarrow \text{products} \tag{3.7.8}$$

For the first type, in which the two reactant molecules are different, the rate law is first-order in *A* and first order in *B*:

$$\text{rate} = k[A][B] \tag{3.7.9}$$

For the second type, in which two identical molecules collide and react, the rate law is second order in *A*:

$$\text{rate} = k[A][A] = k[A]^2 \tag{3.7.10}$$

Some chemical reactions have mechanisms that consist of a single bimolecular elementary reaction. One example is the reaction of nitrogen dioxide with carbon monoxide:

$$\mathrm{NO_2}(g) + \mathrm{CO}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NO}(g) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \tag{3.7.11}$$

(see Figure 3.7.1)

Figure 3.7.1: The probable mechanism for the reaction between $\mathrm{NO_2}$ and CO to yield NO and $\mathrm{CO_2}$.

This figure provides an illustration of a reaction between two H I molecules using space filling models. H atoms are shown as white spheres, and I atoms are shown as purple spheres. On the left, two H I molecules are shownwith a small white sphere bonded to a much larger purple sphere. The label, “Two H I molecules,” appears below. An arrow points right to a similar structure in which the two molecules appear pushed together, so that the purple spheres of the two molecules are touching. Below appears the label, “Transition state.” Following another arrow, two white spheres are shown vertically oriented and bonded together with the label, “H subscript 2” above. The H subscript 2 molecule is followed by a plus sign and two purple spheres bonded together with the label, “I subscript 2” above. Below these structures is the label, “Hydrogen iodide molecules decompose to produce hydrogen H subscript 2 and iodine I subscript 2.”

Bimolecular elementary reactions may also be involved as steps in a multistep reaction mechanism. The reaction of atomic oxygen with ozone is one example:

$$\mathrm{O}(g) + \mathrm{O_3}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \tag{3.7.12}$$

Termolecular Elementary Reactions

An elementary termolecular reaction involves the simultaneous collision of three atoms, molecules, or ions. Termolecular elementary reactions are uncommon because the probability of three particles colliding simultaneously is less than one one-thousandth of the probability of two particles colliding. There are, however, a few established termolecular elementary reactions. The reaction of nitric oxide with oxygen appears to involve termolecular steps:

$$2\,\mathrm{NO} + \mathrm{O_2} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NO_2} \tag{3.7.13}$$
$$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO}]^2[\mathrm{O_2}]$$

Likewise, the reaction of nitric oxide with chlorine appears to involve termolecular steps:

$$2\,\mathrm{NO} + \mathrm{Cl_2} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NOCl} \tag{3.7.14}$$
$$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO}]^2[\mathrm{Cl_2}]$$

Relating Reaction Mechanisms to Rate Laws

It's often the case that one step in a multistep reaction mechanism is significantly slower than the others. Because a reaction cannot proceed faster than its slowest step, this step will limit the rate at which the overall reaction occurs. The slowest step is therefore called the rate-limiting step (or rate-determining step) of the reaction Figure 3.7.2.



Figure 3.7.2: A cattle chute is a nonchemical example of a rate-determining step. Cattle can only be moved from one holding pen to another as quickly as one animal can make its way through the chute. (credit: Loren Kerns)

A photo is shown of cattle passing through a narrow chute into a holding pen. A person directs them through the gate with a long white and red pole.

As described earlier, rate laws may be derived directly from the chemical equations for elementary reactions. This is not the case, however, for ordinary chemical reactions. The balanced equations most often encountered represent the overall change for some chemical system, and very often this is the result of some multistep reaction mechanisms. In every case, we must determine the overall rate law from experimental data and deduce the mechanism from the rate law (and sometimes from other data). The reaction of $\mathrm{NO_2}$ and CO provides an illustrative example:

$$\mathrm{NO_2}(g) + \mathrm{CO}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{NO}(g)$$

For temperatures above 225 °C, the rate law has been found to be:

$$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO_2}][\mathrm{CO}]$$

The reaction is first order with respect to $\mathrm{NO_2}$ and first-order with respect to CO. This is consistent with a single-step bimolecular mechanism and it is *possible* that this is the mechanism for this reaction at high temperatures.

At temperatures below 225 °C, the reaction is described by a rate law that is second order with respect to $\mathrm{NO_2}$:

$$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2$$

This is consistent with a mechanism that involves the following two elementary reactions, the first of which is slower and is therefore the rate-determining step:

$$NO_2(g) + NO_2(g) \longrightarrow NO_3(g) + NO(g) \text{ (slow)}$$
$$NO_3(g) + CO(g) \longrightarrow NO_2(g) + CO_2(g) \text{ (fast)}$$

The rate-determining step gives a rate law showing second-order dependence on the NO_2 concentration, and the sum of the two equations gives the net overall reaction.

In general, when the rate-determining (slower) step is the first step in a mechanism, the rate law for the overall reaction is the same as the rate law for this step. However, when the rate-determining step is preceded by a step involving an *equilibrium* reaction, the rate law for the overall reaction may be more difficult to derive.

An elementary reaction is at equilibrium when it proceeds in both the forward and reverse directions at equal rates. Consider the dimerization of NO to N_2O_2, with k_1 used to represent the rate constant of the forward reaction and k_{-1} used to represent the rate constant of the reverse reaction:

$$NO + NO \rightleftharpoons N_2O_2$$
$$\text{rate}_{\text{forward}} = \text{rate}_{\text{reverse}}$$
$$k_1[NO]^2 = k_{-1}[N_2O_2]$$

If N_2O_2 was an intermediate in a mechanism, this expression could be rearranged to represent the concentration of N_2O_2 in the overall rate law expression using algebraic manipulation:

$$\left(\frac{k_1[NO]^2}{k_{-1}}\right) = [N_2O_2]$$

However, once again, intermediates cannot be listed as part of the overall rate law expression, though they can be included in an individual elementary reaction of a mechanism. Example 3.7.1 will illustrate how to derive overall rate laws from mechanisms involving equilibrium steps preceding the rate-determining step.

Example 3.7.1: Deriving the Overall Rate Law Expression for a Multistep Reaction

Mechanism Nitryl chloride (NO_2Cl) decomposes to nitrogen dioxide (NO_2) and chlorine gas (Cl_2) according to the following mechanism:

1. $2\,NO_2Cl(g) \rightleftharpoons ClO_2(g) + N_2O(g) + ClO(g)$ (fast, k_1 represents the rate constant for the forward reaction and k_{-1} the rate constant for the reverse reaction)
2. $N_2O(g) + ClO_2(g) \rightleftharpoons NO_2(g) + NOCl(g)$ (fast, k_2 for the forward reaction, k_{-2} for the reverse reaction)
3. $NOCl + ClO \longrightarrow NO_2 + Cl_2$ (slow, k_3 the rate constant for the forward reaction)

Determine the overall reaction, write the rate law expression for each elementary reaction, identify any intermediates, and determine the overall rate law expression.

Solution

For the overall reaction, simply sum the three steps, cancel intermediates, and combine like formulas:

$$2\,NO_2Cl(g) \longrightarrow 2\,NO_2(g) + Cl_2(g)$$

Next, write the rate law expression for each elementary reaction. Remember that for elementary reactions that are part of a mechanism, the rate law expression can be derived directly from the stoichiometry:

$$k_1[NO_2Cl]_2 = k_{-1}[ClO_2][N_2O][ClO]$$
$$k_2[N_2O][ClO_2] = k_{-2}[NO_2][NOCl]$$
$$\text{Rate} = k_3[NOCl][ClO]$$

The third step, which is the slow step, is the rate-determining step. Therefore, the overall rate law expression could be written as Rate = k_3 [NOCl][ClO]. However, both NOCl and ClO are intermediates. Algebraic expressions must be used to represent [NOCl] and [ClO] such that no intermediates remain in the overall rate law expression.

- Using elementary reaction 1, $[ClO] = \dfrac{k_1[NO_2Cl]^2}{k_{-1}[ClO_2][N_2O]}$.
- Using elementary reaction 2, $[NOCl] = \dfrac{k_2[N_2O][ClO_2]}{k_{-2}[NO_2]}$.

Now substitute these algebraic expressions into the overall rate law expression and simplify:

$$\text{rate} = k_3\left(\frac{k_2[N_2O][ClO_2]}{k_{-2}[NO_2]}\right)\left(\frac{k_1[NO_2Cl]^2}{k_{-1}[ClO_2][N_2O]}\right)$$
$$\text{rate} = \frac{k_3k_2k_1[NO_2Cl]^2}{k_{-2}k_{-1}[NO_2]}$$

Notice that this rate law shows an *inverse* dependence on the concentration of one of the product species, consistent with the presence of an equilibrium step in the reaction mechanism.

Exercise 3.7.1

Atomic chlorine in the atmosphere reacts with ozone in the following pair of elementary reactions:

$$Cl + O_3(g) \longrightarrow ClO(g) + O_2(g) \quad \text{(rate constant } k_1\text{)}$$
$$ClO(g) + O \longrightarrow Cl(g) + O_2(g) \quad \text{(rate constant } k_2\text{)}$$

Determine the overall reaction, write the rate law expression for each elementary reaction, identify any intermediates, and determine the overall rate law expression.

Answer

- overall reaction: $O_3(g) + O \longrightarrow 2\,O_2(g)$
- $\text{rate}_1 = k_1[O_3][Cl]$; $\text{rate}_2 = k_2[ClO][O]$
- intermediate: ClO(g)
- overall rate = $k_2k_1[O_3][Cl][O]$

Summary

The sequence of individual steps, or elementary reactions, by which reactants are converted into products during the course of a reaction is called the reaction mechanism. The overall rate of a reaction is determined by the rate of the slowest step, called the rate-determining step. Unimolecular elementary reactions have first-order rate laws, while bimolecular elementary reactions have second-order rate laws. By comparing the rate laws derived from a reaction mechanism to that determined experimentally, the mechanism may be deemed either incorrect or plausible.

Footnotes

1. This question is taken from the Chemistry Advanced Placement Examination and is used with the permission of the Educational Testing Service.

Glossary

bimolecular reaction
elementary reaction involving the collision and combination of two reactant species

elementary reaction
reaction that takes place precisely as depicted in its chemical equation

intermediate
molecule or ion produced in one step of a reaction mechanism and consumed in another

molecularity
number of reactant species (atoms, molecules or ions) involved in an elementary reaction

rate-determining step
(also, rate-limiting step) slowest elementary reaction in a reaction mechanism; determines the rate of the overall reaction

reaction mechanism
stepwise sequence of elementary reactions by which a chemical change takes place

termolecular reaction
elementary reaction involving the simultaneous collision and combination of three reactant species

unimolecular reaction
elementary reaction involving the rearrangement of a single reactant species to produce one or more molecules of product

---

This page titled 3.7: Reaction Mechanisms is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **12.7: Reaction Mechanisms** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122501

3.8: Catalysis

Learning Objectives

- Explain the function of a catalyst in terms of reaction mechanisms and potential energy diagrams
- List examples of catalysis in natural and industrial processes

We have seen that the rate of many reactions can be accelerated by catalysts. A catalyst speeds up the rate of a reaction by lowering the activation energy; in addition, the catalyst is regenerated in the process. Several reactions that are thermodynamically favorable in the absence of a catalyst only occur at a reasonable rate when a catalyst is present. One such reaction is catalytic hydrogenation, the process by which hydrogen is added across an alkene C=C bond to afford the saturated alkane product. A comparison of the reaction coordinate diagrams (also known as energy diagrams) for catalyzed and uncatalyzed alkene hydrogenation is shown in Figure 3.8.1.

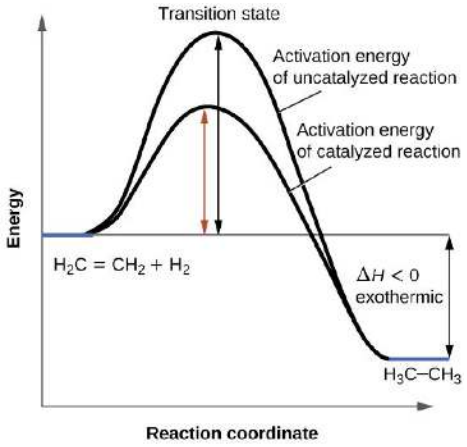


Figure 3.8.1: This graph compares the reaction coordinates for catalyzed and uncatalyzed alkene hydrogenation.

A graph is shown with the label, “Reaction coordinate,” on the x-axis and the label,“Energy,” on the y-axis. Approximately half-way up the y-axis, a short portion of a black concave down curve which has a horizontal line extended from it across the graph. The left end of this line is labeled “H subscript 2 C equals C H subscript 2 plus H subscript 2.” The black concave down curve extends upward to reach a maximum near the height of the y-axis. The peak of this curve is labeled, “Transition state.” A double sided arrow extends from the horizontal line to the peak of the curve. This arrow is labeled, “Activation energy of Uncatalyzed reation.” From the peak, the curve continues downward to a second horizontally flattened region well below the origin of the curve near the x-axis. This flattened region is shaded in blue and is labeled “H subscript 3 C dash C H subscript 3.” A double sided arrow is drawn from the lowers part of this curve at the far right of the graph to the line extending across the graph above it. This arrow is labeled, “capital delta H less than 0 : exothermic.” A second curve is drawn with the same flattened regions at the start and end of the curve. The height of this curve is about two-thirds the height of the first curve. A double sided arrow is drawn from the horizontal line that originates at the left side of the graph to the peak of this second curve. This arrow is labeled, “Activation energy of catalyzed reaction.”

Catalysts function by providing an alternate reaction mechanism that has a lower activation energy than would be found in the absence of the catalyst. In some cases, the catalyzed mechanism may include additional steps, as depicted in the reaction diagrams shown in Figure 3.8.2 This lower activation energy results in an increase in rate as described by the Arrhenius equation. Note that a catalyst decreases the activation energy for both the forward and the reverse reactions and hence *accelerates both the forward and the reverse reactions*. Consequently, the presence of a catalyst will permit a system to reach equilibrium more quickly, but it has no effect on the position of the equilibrium as reflected in the value of its equilibrium constant (see the later chapter on chemical equilibrium).

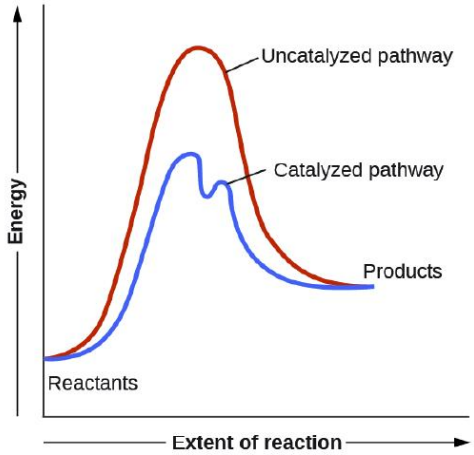
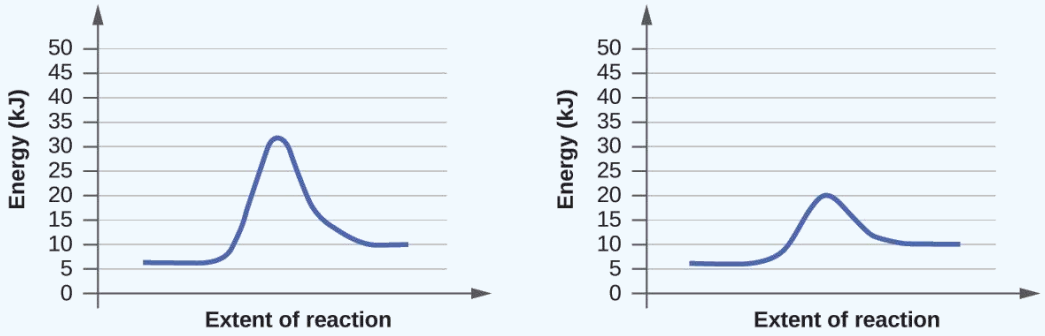


Figure 3.8.2: This potential energy diagram shows the effect of a catalyst on the activation energy. The catalyst provides a different reaction path with a lower activation energy. As shown, the catalyzed pathway involves a two-step mechanism (note the presence of two transition states) and an intermediate species (represented by the valley between the two transitions states).

A graph is shown with the label, “Extent of reaction,” appearing in a right pointing arrow below the x-axis and the label, “Energy,” in an upward pointing arrow just left of the y-axis. Approximately one-fifth of the way up the y-axis, a very short, somewhat flattened portion of both a red and a blue curve are shown. This region is labeled “Reactants.” A red concave down curve extends upward to reach a maximum near the height of the y-axis. This curve is labeled, “Uncatalyzed pathway.” From the peak, the curve continues downward to a second horizontally flattened region at a height of about one-third the height of the y-axis. This flattened region is labeled, “Products.” A second curve is drawn in blue with the same flattened regions at the start and end of the curve. The height of this curve is about two-thirds the height of the first curve and just right of its maximum, the curve dips low, then rises back and continues a downward trend at a lower height, but similar to that of the red curve. This blue curve is labeled, “Catalyzed pathway.”

Example 3.8.1: Using Reaction Diagrams to Compare Catalyzed Reactions

The two reaction diagrams here represent the same reaction: one without a catalyst and one with a catalyst. Identify which diagram suggests the presence of a catalyst, and determine the activation energy for the catalyzed reaction:



In this figure, two graphs are shown. The x-axes are labeled, “Extent of reaction,” and the y-axes are labeled, “Energy (k J).” The y-axes are marked off from 0 to 50 in intervals of five. In a, a blue curve is shown. It begins with a horizontal segment at about 6. The curve then rises sharply near the middle to reach a maximum of about 32 and similarly falls to another horizontal segment at about 10. In b, the curve begins and ends similarly, but the maximum reached near the center of the graph is only 20.

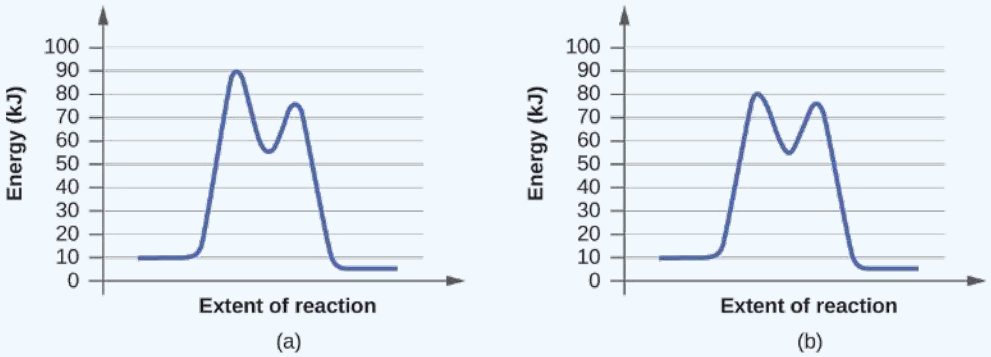
Solution

A catalyst does not affect the energy of reactant or product, so those aspects of the diagrams can be ignored; they are, as we would expect, identical in that respect. There is, however, a noticeable difference in the transition state, which is distinctly lower in diagram (b) than it is in (a). This indicates the use of a catalyst in diagram (b). The activation energy is the difference between the energy of the starting reagents and the transition state—a maximum on the reaction coordinate diagram. The reagents are at 6 kJ and the transition state is at 20 kJ, so the activation energy can be calculated as follows:

$$E_a = 20\ \text{kJ} - 6\ \text{kJ} = 14\ \text{kJ} \tag{3.8.1}$$

Exercise 3.8.1

Determine which of the two diagrams here (both for the same reaction) involves a catalyst, and identify the activation energy for the catalyzed reaction:



In this figure, two graphs are shown. The x-axes are labeled, “Extent of reaction,” and the y-axes are labeledc “Energy (k J).” The y-axes are marked off from 0 to 100 at intervals of 10. In a, a blue curve is shown. It begins with a horizontal segment at about 10. The curve then rises sharply near the middle to reach a maximum of about 91, then sharply falls to about 52, again rises sharply to about 73 and falls to another horizontal segment at about 5. In b, the curve begins and ends similarly, but the first peak reaches about 81, drops to about 55, then rises to about 77 before falling to the horizontal region at about 5.

Answer

Diagram (b) is a catalyzed reaction with an activation energy of about 70 kJ.

Homogeneous Catalysts

A homogeneous catalyst is present in the same phase as the reactants. It interacts with a reactant to form an intermediate substance, which then decomposes or reacts with another reactant in one or more steps to regenerate the original catalyst and form product. As an important illustration of homogeneous catalysis, consider the earth’s ozone layer. Ozone in the upper atmosphere, which protects the earth from ultraviolet radiation, is formed when oxygen molecules absorb ultraviolet light and undergo the reaction:

$$3\,O_2(g) \xrightarrow{h\nu} 2\,O_3(g) \tag{3.8.2}$$

Ozone is a relatively unstable molecule that decomposes to yield diatomic oxygen by the reverse of this equation. This decomposition reaction is consistent with the following mechanism:

$$\begin{aligned} O_3 &\longrightarrow O_2 + O \\ O + O_3 &\longrightarrow 2\,O_2 \end{aligned} \tag{3.8.3}$$

The presence of nitric oxide, NO, influences the rate of decomposition of ozone. Nitric oxide acts as a catalyst in the following mechanism:

$$\begin{aligned} NO(g) + O_3(g) &\longrightarrow NO_2(g) + O_2(g) \\ O_3(g) &\longrightarrow O_2(g) + O(g) \\ NO_2(g) + O(g) &\longrightarrow NO(g) + O_2(g) \end{aligned} \tag{3.8.4}$$

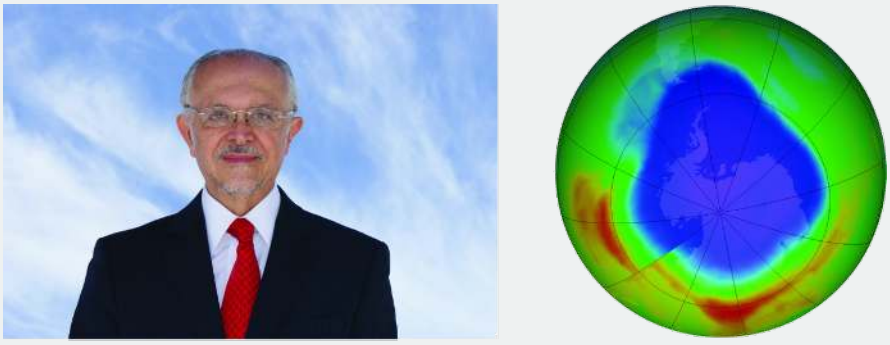
The overall chemical change for the catalyzed mechanism is the same as:

$$2\,O_3(g) \longrightarrow 3\,O_2(g) \tag{3.8.5}$$

The nitric oxide reacts and is regenerated in these reactions. It is not permanently used up; thus, it acts as a catalyst. The rate of decomposition of ozone is greater in the presence of nitric oxide because of the catalytic activity of NO. Certain compounds that contain chlorine also catalyze the decomposition of ozone.

Mario J. Molina

The 1995 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was shared by Paul J. Crutzen, Mario J. Molina (Figure 3.8.3), and F. Sherwood Rowland "for their work in atmospheric chemistry, particularly concerning the formation and decomposition of ozone." Molina, a Mexican citizen, carried out the majority of his work at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT).



(a) (b)

Figure 3.8.3: (a) Mexican chemist Mario Molina (1943 –) shared the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1995 for his research on (b) the Antarctic ozone hole. (credit a: courtesy of Mario Molina; credit b: modification of work by NASA)

A photograph is shown of Mario Molina. To the right of the photo, an image of Earth's southern hemisphere is shown with a central circular region in purple with a radius of about half that of the entire hemisphere. Just outside this region is a narrow royal blue band, followed by an outer thin turquoise blue band. The majority of the outermost region is green. Two small bands of yellow are present in the lower regions of the image.

In 1974, Molina and Rowland published a paper in the journal *Nature* (one of the major peer-reviewed publications in the field of science) detailing the threat of chlorofluorocarbon gases to the stability of the ozone layer in earth's upper atmosphere. The ozone layer protects earth from solar radiation by absorbing ultraviolet light. As chemical reactions deplete the amount of ozone in the upper atmosphere, a measurable "hole" forms above Antarctica, and an increase in the amount of solar ultraviolet radiation— strongly linked to the prevalence of skin cancers—reaches earth's surface. The work of Molina and Rowland was instrumental in the adoption of the Montreal Protocol, an international treaty signed in 1987 that successfully began phasing out production of chemicals linked to ozone destruction.

Molina and Rowland demonstrated that chlorine atoms from human-made chemicals can catalyze ozone destruction in a process similar to that by which NO accelerates the depletion of ozone. Chlorine atoms are generated when chlorocarbons or chlorofluorocarbons—once widely used as refrigerants and propellants—are photochemically decomposed by ultraviolet light or react with hydroxyl radicals. A sample mechanism is shown here using methyl chloride:

\[\ce{CH3Cl + OH ⟶ Cl + other\: products} \nonumber \]

Chlorine radicals break down ozone and are regenerated by the following catalytic cycle:

$$\mathrm{Cl + O_3 \longrightarrow ClO + O_2}$$
$$\mathrm{ClO + O \longrightarrow Cl + O_2}$$
$$\text{overall Reaction: } \mathrm{O_3 + O \longrightarrow 2\,O_2}$$

A single monatomic chlorine can break down thousands of ozone molecules. Luckily, the majority of atmospheric chlorine exists as the catalytically inactive forms Cl_2 and $ClONO_2$.

Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase Deficiency

Enzymes in the human body act as catalysts for important chemical reactions in cellular metabolism. As such, a deficiency of a particular enzyme can translate to a life-threatening disease. G6PD (glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase) deficiency, a genetic condition that results in a shortage of the enzyme glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, is the most common enzyme deficiency in humans. This enzyme, shown in Figure 3.8.4, is the rate-limiting enzyme for the metabolic pathway that supplies NADPH to cells (FIgure 3.8.5).

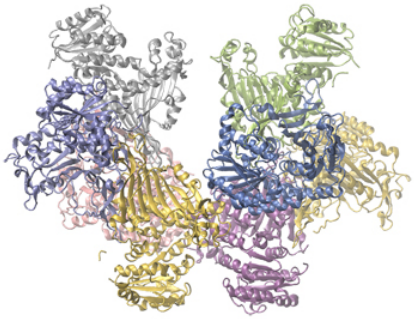


Figure **3.8.4:** Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase is a rate-limiting enzyme for the metabolic pathway that supplies NADPH to cells.

A colorful model of the Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase structure is shown. The molecule has two distinct lobes which are filled with spiraled ribbon-like regions of yellow, lavender, blue, silver, green, and pink.

A disruption in this pathway can lead to reduced glutathione in red blood cells; once all glutathione is consumed, enzymes and other proteins such as hemoglobin are susceptible to damage. For example, hemoglobin can be metabolized to bilirubin, which leads to jaundice, a condition that can become severe. People who suffer from G6PD deficiency must avoid certain foods and medicines containing chemicals that can trigger damage their glutathione-deficient red blood cells.

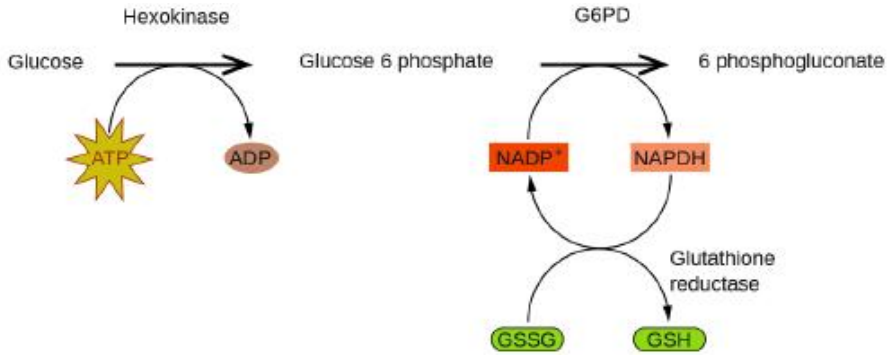


Figure 3.8.5: In the mechanism for the pentose phosphate pathway, G6PD catalyzes the reaction that regulates NAPDH, a co-enzyme that regulates glutathione, an antioxidant that protects red blood cells and other cells from oxidative damage.

A reaction mechanism is diagrammed in this figure. At the left, the name Glucose is followed by a horizontal, right pointing arrow, labeled, “Hexokinase.” Below this arrow and to the left is a yellow star shape labeled, “A T P.” A curved arrow extends from this shape to the right pointing arrow, and down to the right to a small brown oval labeled, “A D P.” To the right of the horizontal arrow is the name Glucose 6 phosphate, which is followed by another horizontal, right pointing arrow which is labeled, “G 6 P D.” A small orange rectangle below and left of this arrow is labeled “N A D P superscript plus.” A curved arrow extends from this shape to the right pointing arrow, and down to the right to a small salmon-colored rectangle labeled “N A P D H.” A curved arrow extends from this shape below and to the left, back to the orange rectangle labeled, “N A D P superscript plus.” Another curved arrow extends from a green oval labeled “G S S G” below the orange rectangle, up to the arrow curving back to the orange rectangle. This last curved arrow continues on to the lower right to a second green oval labeled, “G S H.” The end of this curved arrow is labeled, “Glutathione reductase.” To the right of the rightmost horizontal arrow appears the name 6 phosphogluconate.

Heterogeneous Catalysts

A heterogeneous catalyst is a catalyst that is present in a different phase (usually a solid) than the reactants. Such catalysts generally function by furnishing an active surface upon which a reaction can occur. Gas and liquid phase reactions catalyzed by heterogeneous catalysts occur on the surface of the catalyst rather than within the gas or liquid phase.

Heterogeneous catalysis has at least four steps:

1. Adsorption of the reactant onto the surface of the catalyst
2. Activation of the adsorbed reactant
3. Reaction of the adsorbed reactant
4. Diffusion of the product from the surface into the gas or liquid phase (desorption).

Any one of these steps may be slow and thus may serve as the rate determining step. In general, however, in the presence of the catalyst, the overall rate of the reaction is faster than it would be if the reactants were in the gas or liquid phase.

Figure 3.8.6 illustrates the steps that chemists believe to occur in the reaction of compounds containing a carbon–carbon double bond with hydrogen on a nickel catalyst. Nickel is the catalyst used in the hydrogenation of polyunsaturated fats and oils (which contain several carbon–carbon double bonds) to produce saturated fats and oils (which contain only carbon–carbon single bonds).

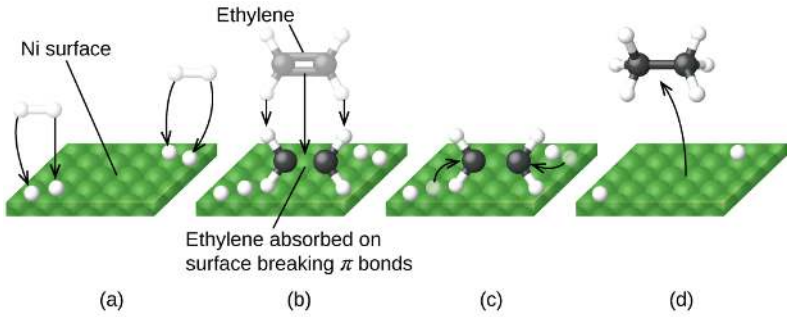


Figure 3.8.6: There are four steps in the catalysis of the reaction $C_2H_4 + H_2 \longrightarrow C_2H_6$ *by nickel. (a) Hydrogen is adsorbed on the surface, breaking the H–H bonds and forming Ni–H bonds. (b) Ethylene is adsorbed on the surface, breaking the π-bond and forming Ni–C bonds. (c) Atoms diffuse across the surface and form new C–H bonds when they collide. (d) C_2H_6 molecules escape from the nickel surface, since they are not strongly attracted to nickel.*

In this figure, four diagrams labeled a through d are shown. In each, a green square surface is shown in perspective to provide a three-dimensional appearance. In a, the label “N i surface” is placed above with a line segment extending to the green square. At the lower left and upper right, pairs of white spheres bonded tougher together appear as well as white spheres on the green surface. Black arrows are drawn from each of the white spheres above the surface to the white sphere on the green surface. In b, the white spheres are still present on the green surface. Near the center of this surface is a molecule with two central black spheres with a double bond indicated by two horizontal black rods between them. Above and below to the left and right, a total of four white spheres are connected to the black spheres with white rods. A line segment extends from this structure to the label, “Ethylene absorbed on surface breaking pi bonds.” Just above this is a nearly identical structure greyed out with three downward pointing arrows to the black and white structure to indicate downward motion. The label “Ethylene” at the top of the diagram is connected to the greyed out structure with a line segment. In c, the diagram is very similar to b except that the greyed out structure and labels are gone and one of the white spheres near the black and white structure in each pair on the green surface is greyed out. Arrows point from the greyed out white spheres to the double bond between the two black spheres. In d, only a single white sphere remains from each pair in the green surface. A curved arrow points from the middle of the green surface to a model above with two central black spheres with a single black rod indicating a single bond between them. Each of the black rods has three small white spheres bonded as indicated by white rods between the black spheres and the small white spheres. The four bonds around each black sphere are evenly distributed about the black spheres.

Other significant industrial processes that involve the use of heterogeneous catalysts include the preparation of sulfuric acid, the preparation of ammonia, the oxidation of ammonia to nitric acid, and the synthesis of methanol, CH_3OH. Heterogeneous catalysts are also used in the catalytic converters found on most gasoline-powered automobiles (Figure 3.8.7).

Automobile Catalytic Converters

Scientists developed catalytic converters to reduce the amount of toxic emissions produced by burning gasoline in internal combustion engines. Catalytic converters take advantage of all five factors that affect the speed of chemical reactions to ensure that exhaust emissions are as safe as possible.

By utilizing a carefully selected blend of catalytically active metals, it is possible to effect complete combustion of all carbon-containing compounds to carbon dioxide while also reducing the output of nitrogen oxides. This is particularly impressive when we consider that one step involves adding more oxygen to the molecule and the other involves removing the oxygen (Figure 3.8.6).

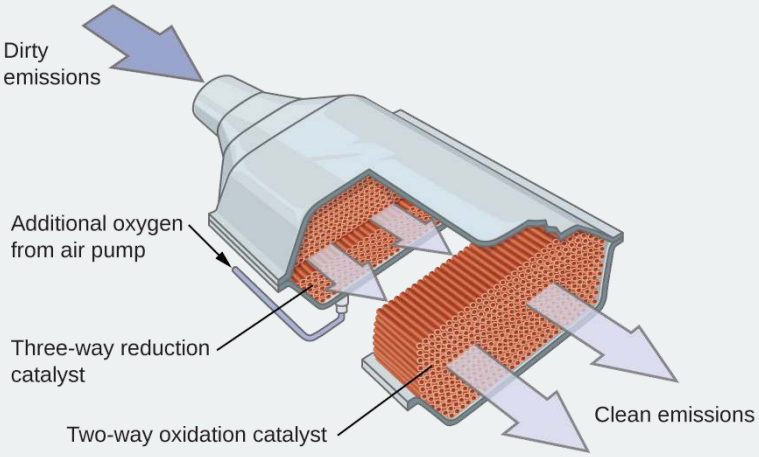


Figure 3.8.6: A catalytic converter allows for the combustion of all carbon-containing compounds to carbon dioxide, while at the same time reducing the output of nitrogen oxide and other pollutants in emissions from gasoline-burning engines.

An image is shown of a catalytic converter. At the upper left, a blue arrow pointing into a pipe that enters a larger, widened chamber is labeled, “Dirty emissions.” A small black arrow that points to the lower right is positioned along the upper left side of the widened region. This arrow is labeled, “Additional oxygen from air pump.” The image shows the converter with the upper surface removed, exposing a red-brown interior. The portion of the converter closest to the dirty emissions inlet shows small, round components in an interior layer. This layer is labeled “Three-way reduction catalyst.” The middle region shows closely packed small brown rods that are aligned parallel to the dirty emissions inlet pipe. The final quarter of the interior of the catalytic converter again shows a layer of closely packed small red brown circles. Two large light grey arrows extend from this layer to the open region at the lower right of the image to the label “Clean emissions.”

Most modern, three-way catalytic converters possess a surface impregnated with a platinum-rhodium catalyst, which catalyzes the conversion nitric oxide into dinitrogen and oxygen as well as the conversion of carbon monoxide and hydrocarbons such as octane into carbon dioxide and water vapor:

$$2\,NO_2(g) \longrightarrow N_2(g) + 2\,O_2(g)$$

$$[5pt] 2\,CO(g) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,CO_2(g)$$

$$[5pt] 2\,C_8H_{18}(g) + 25\,O_2(g) \longrightarrow 16\,CO_2(g) + 18\,H_2O(g)$$

In order to be as efficient as possible, most catalytic converters are preheated by an electric heater. This ensures that the metals in the catalyst are fully active even before the automobile exhaust is hot enough to maintain appropriate reaction temperatures.

Enzyme Structure and Function

The study of enzymes is an important interconnection between biology and chemistry. Enzymes are usually proteins (polypeptides) that help to control the rate of chemical reactions between biologically important compounds, particularly those that are involved in cellular metabolism. Different classes of enzymes perform a variety of functions, as shown in Table 3.8.1.

ATP hydrolysis.”" data-quail-id="131" data-mt-width="1016">

Table 3.8.1: Classes of Enzymes and Their Functions

Class	Function
oxidoreductases	redox reactions
transferases	transfer of functional groups
hydrolases	hydrolysis reactions
lyases	group elimination to form double bonds
isomerases	isomerization
ligases	bond formation with ATP hydrolysis

Enzyme molecules possess an active site, a part of the molecule with a shape that allows it to bond to a specific substrate (a reactant molecule), forming an enzyme-substrate complex as a reaction intermediate. There are two models that attempt to explain how this active site works. The most simplistic model is referred to as the lock-and-key hypothesis, which suggests that the molecular shapes of the active site and substrate are complementary, fitting together like a key in a lock. The induced fit hypothesis, on the other hand, suggests that the enzyme molecule is flexible and changes shape to accommodate a bond with the substrate. This is not to suggest that an enzyme's active site is completely malleable, however. Both the lock-and-key model and the induced fit model account for the fact that enzymes can only bind with specific substrates, since in general a particular enzyme only catalyzes a particular reaction (Figure 3.8.7).

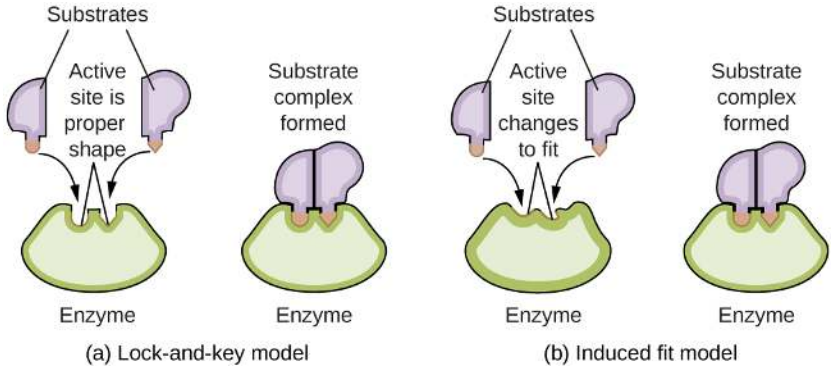


Figure 3.8.7: (a) According to the lock-and-key model, the shape of an enzyme's active site is a perfect fit for the substrate. (b) According to the induced fit model, the active site is somewhat flexible, and can change shape in order to bond with the substrate.

A diagram is shown of two possible interactions of an enzyme and a substrate. In a, which is labeled "Lock-and-key," two diagrams are shown. The first shows a green wedge-like shape with two small depressions in the upper surface of similar size, but the depression on the left has a curved shape, and the depression on the right has a pointed shape. This green shape is labeled "Enzyme." Just above this shape are two smaller, irregular, lavender shapes each with a projection from its lower surface. The lavender shape on the left has a curved projection which matches the shape of the depression on the left in the green shape below. This projection is shaded orange and has a curved arrow extending from in to the matching depression in the green shape below. Similarly, the lavender shape on the right has a projection with a pointed tip which matches the shape of the depression on the right in the green shape below. This projection is shaded orange and has a curved arrow extending from in to the matching depression in the green shape below. Two line segments extend from the depressions in the green shape to form an inverted V shape above the depressions. Above this and between the lavender shapes is the label, "Active site is proper shape." The label "Substrates" is at the very top of the diagram with line segments extending to the two lavender shapes. To the right of this diagram is a second diagram showing the lavender shapes positioned next to each other, fit snugly into the depressions in the green shape, which is labeled "Enzyme." Above this diagram is the label, "Substrate complex formed." In b, which is labeled "Induced fit," two diagrams are shown. The first shows a green wedge-like shape with two small depressions in the upper surface of similar size, but irregular shape. This green shape is labeled "Enzyme." Just above this shape are two smaller irregular lavender shapes each with a projection from its lower surface. The lavender shape on the left has a curved projection. This projection is shaded orange and has a curved arrow extending from it to the irregular depression just below it in the green shape below. Similarly, the lavender shape on the right has a projection with a pointed tip. This projection is shaded orange and has a curved arrow extending from it to the irregular depression just below it in the green shape below. Two line segments extend from the depressions in the green shape to form an inverted V shape above the depressions. Above this and between the lavender shapes is the label, "Active site changes to fit." The label, "Substrates" is at the very top of the diagram with line segments extending to the two lavender shapes. To the right of this diagram is a second diagram showing the purple shapes positioned next to each other, fit snugly into the depressions in the green shape, which is labeled "Enzyme." Above this diagram is the label "Substrate complex formed." The projections from the lavender shapes match the depression shapes in the green shape, resulting in a proper fit.

Summary

Catalysts affect the rate of a chemical reaction by altering its mechanism to provide a lower activation energy. Catalysts can be homogenous (in the same phase as the reactants) or heterogeneous (a different phase than the reactants).

Footnotes

1. "The Nobel Prize in Chemistry 1995," Nobel Prize.org, accessed February 18, 2015, Nobel Prizes Chemistry [www.nobelprize.org].

Glossary

heterogeneous catalyst

catalyst present in a different phase from the reactants, furnishing a surface at which a reaction can occur

homogeneous catalyst

catalyst present in the same phase as the reactants

This page titled 3.8: Catalysis is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **12.8: Catalysis** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.9.a: Kinetics (Exercises)

12.1: Chemical Reaction Rates

Q12.1.1

What is the difference between average rate, initial rate, and instantaneous rate?

Solution

First, a general reaction rate must be defined to know what any variation of a rate is. The reaction rate is defined as the measure of the change in concentration of the reactants or products per unit time. The rate of a chemical reaction is not a constant and rather changes continuously, and can be influenced by temperature. Rate of a reaction can be defined as the disappearance of any reactant or appearance of any product. Thus, an average rate is the average reaction rate over a given period of time in the reaction, the instantaneous rate is the reaction rate at a specific given moment during the reaction, and the initial rate is the instantaneous rate at the very start of the reaction (when the product begins to form).

The instantaneous rate of a reaction can be denoted as

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta [concentration]}{\Delta t}$$

Q12.1.2

Ozone decomposes to oxygen according to the equation $2\,O_3(g) \longrightarrow 3\,O_2(g)$. Write the equation that relates the rate expressions for this reaction in terms of the disappearance of O_3 and the formation of oxygen.

Solution

For the general reaction, aA ---> bB, the rate of the reaction can be expressed in terms of the disappearance of A or the appearance of B over a certain time period as follows.

$$-\frac{1}{a}\frac{\Delta [A]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{1}{b}\frac{\Delta [B]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{c}\frac{\Delta [C]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{d}\frac{\Delta [D]}{\Delta t} \tag{3.9.a.1}$$

We want the rate of a reaction to be positive, but the change in the concentration of a reactant, A, will be negative because it is being used up to be transformed into product, B. Therefore, when expressing the rate of the reaction in terms of the change in the concentration of A, it is important to add a negative sign in front to ensure the overall rate positive.

Lastly, the rate must be normalized according to the stoichiometry of the reaction. In the decomposition of ozone to oxygen, two moles of ozone form three moles of oxygen gas. This means that the increase in oxygen gas will be 1.5 times as great as the decrease in ozone. Because the rate of the reaction should be able to describe both species, we divide the change in concentration by its stoichiometric coefficient in the balanced reaction equation to deal with this issue.

Therefore, the rate of the reaction of the decomposition of ozone into oxygen gas can be described as follows:

$$Rate = -\frac{\Delta [O3]}{2\Delta T} = \frac{\Delta [O2]}{3\Delta T} \tag{3.9.a.2}$$

Answer

$$Rate=-\frac{\Delta[O3]}{2\Delta T}=\frac{\Delta[O2]}{3\Delta T}\]

Q12.1.3

In the nuclear industry, chlorine trifluoride is used to prepare uranium hexafluoride, a volatile compound of uranium used in the separation of uranium isotopes. Chlorine trifluoride is prepared by the reaction $Cl_2(g) + 3\,F_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,ClF_3(g)$. Write the equation that relates the rate expressions for this reaction in terms of the disappearance of Cl_2 and F_2 and the formation of ClF_3.

Solution

In this problem we are asked to write the equation that relates rate expressions in terms of disappearance of the reactants of the equation and in terms of the formation of the product. A reaction rate gives insight to how rate is affected as a function of

concentration of the substances in the equation. Rates can often be expressed on graphs of concentration vs time expressed in change (Δ) of concentration and time and in a short enough time interval, the instantaneous rate can be approximated. If we were to analyze the reaction given, the graph would demonstrate that Cl_2 decreases, that F_2 decreases 3 times as quickly, and then ClF_3 increases at a rate doubles. The reactants are being used and converted to product so they decrease while products increase.

For this problem, we can apply the general formula of a rate to the specific aspects of a problem where the general form follows:

$$aA + bB \longrightarrow cC + dD$$

.

And the rate can then be written as $rate = -\frac{1}{a}\frac{\Delta[A]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{1}{b}\frac{\Delta[B]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{c}\frac{\Delta[C]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{d}\frac{\Delta[D]}{\Delta t}$. Here the negative signs are used to keep the convention of expressing rates as positive numbers.

In this specific case we use the stoichiometry to get the specific rates of disappearance and formation (back to what was said in the first paragraph). So, the problem just involves referring the to the equation and its balanced coefficients. Based upon the equation we see that Cl_2 is a reactant and has no coefficient, F_2 has a coefficient of 3 and is also used up, and then ClF_3 is a product that increases two-fold with a coefficient of 2. So, the rate here can be written as:

$$rate = -\frac{\Delta[Cl_2]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{1}{3}\frac{\Delta[F_2]}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\Delta[ClF_3]}{\Delta t}$$

Answer

$$\text{rate} = +\frac{1}{2}\frac{\Delta[\text{ClF}_3]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[\text{Cl}_2]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{1}{3}\frac{\Delta[\text{F}_2]}{\Delta t}$$

Q12.1.4

A study of the rate of dimerization of C_4H_6 gave the data shown in the table:

$$2\,\text{C}_4\text{H}_6 \longrightarrow \text{C}_8\text{H}_{12}$$

Time (s)	0	1600	3200	4800	6200
[C_4H_6] (*M*)	1.00×10^{-2}	5.04×10^{-3}	3.37×10^{-3}	2.53×10^{-3}	2.08×10^{-3}

a. Determine the average rate of dimerization between 0 s and 1600 s, and between 1600 s and 3200 s.
b. Estimate the instantaneous rate of dimerization at 3200 s from a graph of time versus [C_4H_6]. What are the units of this rate?
c. Determine the average rate of formation of C_8H_{12} at 1600 s and the instantaneous rate of formation at 3200 s from the rates found in parts (a) and (b).

Solution

1.) The average rate of dimerization is the change in concentration of a reactant per unit time. In this case it would be:

$$rate\ of\ dimerization = -\frac{\Delta[C_4H_6]}{\Delta t}$$

Rate of dimerization between 0 s and 1600 s:

$$rate\ of\ dimerization = -\frac{5.04\times10^{-3}M - 1.00\times10^{-2}M}{1600s - 0s}$$

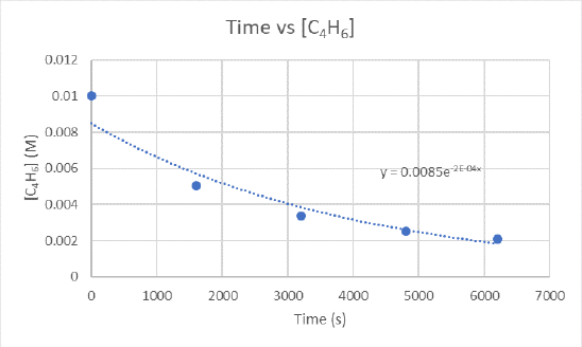
$$rate\ of\ dimerization = 3.10 \times 10^{-6}\,\frac{M}{s}$$

Rate of dimerization between 1600 s and 3200 s:

$$rate\ of\ dimerization = -\frac{3.37\times10^{-3}M - 5.04\times10^{-3}M}{3200s - 1600s}$$

$$rate\ of\ dimerization = 1.04 \times 10^{-6}\,\frac{M}{s}$$

2.) The instantaneous rate of dimerization at 3200 s can be found by graphing time versus [C_4H_6].



Because you want to find the rate of dimerization at 3200 s, you need to find the slope between 1600 s and 3200 s and also 3200 s and 4800 s.

For the slope between 1600 s and 3200 s use the points (1600 s, 5.04 x 10^{-3} M) and (3200 s, 3.37 x 10^{-3} M)

$$\frac{3.37\times10^{-3}M-5.04\times10^{-3}M}{3200s-1600s}$$

$$\frac{-0.00167M}{1600s}$$

$$-1.04\times10^{-6}\,\frac{M}{s}$$

For the slope between 3200 s and 4800 s use the points (3200s, 3.37 x 10^{-3} M) and (4800s, 2.53 x 10^{-3} M)

$$\frac{2.53\times10^{-3}M-3.37\times10^{-3}M}{4800s-3200s}$$

$$\frac{-8.4\times10^{-4}M}{1600s}$$

$$-5.25\times10^{-7}\,\frac{M}{s}$$

Take the two slopes you just found and find the average of them to get the instantaneous rate of dimerization.

$$\frac{-1.04\times10^{-6}\frac{M}{s}+-5.25\times x10^{-7}\frac{M}{s}}{2}$$

$$\frac{-1.565\times10^{-6}\frac{M}{s}}{2}$$

$$-7.83\times10^{-}7\frac{M}{s}$$

The instantaneous rate of dimerization is $-7.83\times10^{-}7\frac{M}{s}$ and the units of this rate is $\frac{M}{s}$.

3.) The average rate of formation of C_8H_{12} at 1600 s and the instantaneous rate of formation at 3200 s can be found by using our answers from part a and b. If you look back up at the original equation, you could see that C_4H_6 and C_8H_{12} are related in a two to one ratio. For every two moles of C_4H_6 used, there is one mole of C_8H_{12} produced.

For this reaction, the average rate of dimerization and the average rate of formation can be linked through this equation:

$$\frac{-1}{2}\frac{\Delta[C_4H_6]}{\Delta t}=\frac{\Delta[C_8H_{12}]}{\Delta t}$$

Notice that reactant side is negative because the reactants are being used up in the reaction.

So, for the average rate of formation of C_8H_{12} at 1600 s, use the rate of dimerization between 0 s and 1600 s we found earlier and plug into the equation:

$$\frac{-1}{2}\times3.10\times10^{-6}\,\frac{M}{s}=\frac{\Delta[C_8H_{12}]}{\Delta t}$$

$$\frac{\Delta[C_8H_{12}]}{\Delta t}=1.55\times10^{-6}\,\frac{M}{s}$$

The average rate of formation for C_8H_{12} at 1600 s is $1.55\times10^{-6}\,\frac{M}{s}$. The rate of formation will be positive because products are being formed.

The instantaneous rate of formation for C_8H_{12} can be linked to the instantaneous rate of dimerization by this equation:

$$\frac{-1}{2}\frac{d[C_4H_6]}{dt} = \frac{d[C_8H_{12}]}{dt}$$

So, for the instantaneous rate of formation for C_8H_{12} at 3200 s, use the value of instantaneous rate of dimerization at 3200 s found earlier and plug into the equation:

$$\frac{-1}{2} \times -7.83 \times 10^-7 \frac{M}{s} = \frac{d[C_8H_{12}]}{dt}$$

$$\frac{d[C_8H_{12}]}{dt} = -3.92 \times 10^{-7}\,\frac{M}{s}$$

The instantaneous rate of formation for C_8H_{12} at 3200 s is $-3.92 \times 10^-7 \frac{M}{s}$

Answer

a. $3.10 \times 10^{-6}\,\frac{M}{s}$ and $1.04 \times 10^{-6}\,\frac{M}{s}$
b. $-7.83 \times 10^-7 \frac{M}{s}$ and $\frac{M}{s}$
c. $-3.92 \times 10^-7 \frac{M}{s}$

Q12.1.5

A study of the rate of the reaction represented as $2A \longrightarrow B$ gave the following data:

Time (s)	0.0	5.0	10.0	15.0	20.0	25.0	35.0
[A] (M)	1.00	0.952	0.625	0.465	0.370	0.308	0.230

a. Determine the average rate of disappearance of *A* between 0.0 s and 10.0 s, and between 10.0 s and 20.0 s.
b. Estimate the instantaneous rate of disappearance of *A* at 15.0 s from a graph of time versus [*A*]. What are the units of this rate?
c. Use the rates found in parts (a) and (b) to determine the average rate of formation of *B* between 0.00 s and 10.0 s, and the instantaneous rate of formation of *B* at 15.0 s.

Solution

Equations: $\frac{-\triangle A}{\triangle time}$ and Rate=$\frac{-\triangle A}{2\triangle time} = \frac{\triangle B}{time}$

Solve: 1.)The change in A from 0s to 10s is .625-1=-.375 so $\frac{-\triangle A}{\triangle time}$ =.375/10= **0.0374 M/s**

Similarly, the change in A from 10 to 20 seconds is .370-.625=-.255 so $\frac{-\triangle A}{\triangle time}$ =.255/20-10= **0.0255M/s**

2.) We can estimate the rate law graphing the points against different order equations to determine the right order.

Zero Order:

$$\frac{d[A]}{dt} = -k$$

$$\int_{A_\circ}^{A} d[A] = -k\int_0^t dt$$

$$[A] = -kt + [A_\circ]$$

First Order:

$$\frac{d[A]}{dt} = -k[A]$$

$$\int_{A_\circ}^{A} \frac{d[A]}{[A]} = -kdt$$

$$Ln(A) = -kt + Ln(A_\circ)$$

Second Order:

$$\frac{d[A]}{dt} = -k[A]^2$$

$$\int_{A\circ}^{A} \frac{d[A]}{[A]^2} = -k\int_0^t dt$$

$$\frac{1}{[A]} = kt + \frac{1}{[A_\circ]}$$

Now that we have found the linear from of each order we will plot the points vs an [A] y-axis, a Ln(A) y-axis, and a 1/[A] y-axis. whichever of the plots has the most linear points will give us a good idea of the order and the slope will be the k value.



Here we notice that the second order is most linear so we conclude the Rate to be..

$$\frac{-d[A]}{2dt} = k[A]^2$$

At 15 seconds [A]=.465 and from the slope of the graph we find k=.116.so if we plug this data in and multiply both sides by 2 to get rid of the 2 in the denominator on the left side of the equation we find that the rate of disappearance of A is .05 M/s where the units are equivalent to [mol*L^{-1}*s^{-1}]

3.) Using the equation $\frac{-\triangle A}{2\triangle time} = \frac{\triangle B}{time}$ we divide the rates in part a and b in half to get .0188 M/s from 0 to 10 seconds and .025 M/s for the estimated instantaneous rate at 15s.

Answer

(a) average rate, 0 − 10 s = 0.0375 mol L^{-1} s^{-1}; average rate, 12 − 18 s = 0.0225 mol L^{-1} s^{-1}; (b) instantaneous rate, 15 s = 0.0500 mol L^{-1} s^{-1}; (c) average rate for B formation = 0.0188 mol L^{-1} s^{-1}; instantaneous rate for B formation = 0.0250 mol L^{-1} s^{-1}

Q12.1.6

Consider the following reaction in aqueous solution:

$$5\,\mathrm{Br}^-(aq) + \mathrm{BrO}_3^-(aq) + 6\,\mathrm{H}^+(aq) \longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{Br}_2(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{H}_2\mathrm{O}(l)$$

If the rate of disappearance of $Br^-(aq)$ at a particular moment during the reaction is $3.5 \times 10^{-4}\ M\ s^{-1}$, what is the rate of appearance of $Br_2(aq)$ at that moment?

Solution

Step 1. Define the rate of the reaction.

Recall:

For the general reaction: aA + bB → cC+ dD

$rate = -\frac{\Delta[A]}{a\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[B]}{b\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[C]}{c\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[D]}{d\Delta t}$

So, for the reaction: $5Br^-(aq) + BrO_3^-(aq) + 6H^+ \rightarrow 3Br_2(aq) + 3H_2O(l)$

The rate would be: $rate = -\frac{\Delta[Br^-]}{5\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[BrO_3^-]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[H^+]}{6\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[Br_2]}{3\Delta t} = \frac{H_2O}{3\Delta t}$

Step 2. Since we are given the rate for the disappearance of Br^-(aq) is $3.5x10^-4Ms^{-1}$, and we want to find the rate of appearance of Br_2(aq). Therefore we set the two rates equal to each other.

$$rate = -\frac{\Delta[Br^-]}{5\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta[Br_2]}{3\Delta t}$$

$$\text{And,} -\frac{\Delta[Br^-]}{\Delta t} = -3.5x10^{-4}Ms^{-1}$$

$$\text{So, } 3.5x10^{-4}Ms^{-1} = \frac{5}{3}\frac{\Delta[Br_2]}{\Delta t}$$

Step 3. Now solve the equation.

$$\frac{(3.5x10^{-4})(3)}{5} = \frac{\Delta[Br_2]}{\Delta t}$$

$$\frac{\Delta[Br_2]}{\Delta t} = 2.1x10^{-4}Ms^{-1}$$

Answer

$$\frac{\Delta[Br_2]}{\Delta t} = 2.1x10^{-4}Ms^{-1}$$

12.2: Factors Affecting Reaction Rates

Q12.2.1

Describe the effect of each of the following on the rate of the reaction of magnesium metal with a solution of hydrochloric acid: the molarity of the hydrochloric acid, the temperature of the solution, and the size of the pieces of magnesium.

Solution

Molarity of Hydrochloric Acid

- Reaction rates are affected by the frequency at which molecules collide. High Molarity=High Concentration which means more molecules are available to collide thus a faster reaction that one with a low molarity of HCl at a fixed volume.

Temperature of Solution

- Higher temperatures increase the rate of reaction because molecules move faster thus colliding more frequently
- increasing temperatures allows for more particles to move past activation energy barrier to start the reaction

Size of pieces of Magnesium

- reaction rate is dependent on solid reactant size; smaller pieces increases the chance of collision because they enable a greater surface area thus faster reaction rate

Q12.2.2

Go to the PhET Reactions & Rates interactive. Use the Single Collision tab to represent how the collision between monatomic oxygen (O) and carbon monoxide (CO) results in the breaking of one bond and the formation of another. Pull back on the red plunger to release the atom and observe the results. Then, click on “Reload Launcher” and change to “Angled shot” to see the difference.

a. What happens when the angle of the collision is changed?
b. Explain how this is relevant to rate of reaction.

Solution

According to the collision theory, there are many factors that cause a reaction to happen, with three of the factors being how often the molecules or atoms collide, the molecules' or atoms' orientations, and if there is sufficient energy for the reaction to happen. So, if the angle of the plunger is changed, the atom that is shot (a lone Oxygen atom in this case) will hit the other molecule (CO in this case) at a different spot and at a different angle, therefore changing the orientation and the number of proper collisions will most likely not cause for a reaction to happen. Thanks to the simulation, we can see that this is true: depending on the angle selected, the atom may take a long time to collide with the molecule and, when a collision does occur, it may not result in the breaking of the bond and the forming of the other (no reaction happens).

In this particular case, the rate of the reaction will decrease because, by changing the angle, the molecules or atoms won't collide with the correct orientation or as often with the correct orientation.

Q12.2.3

In the PhET Reactions & Rates interactive, use the “Many Collisions” tab to observe how multiple atoms and molecules interact under varying conditions. Select a molecule to pump into the chamber. Set the initial temperature and select the current amounts of each reactant. Select “Show bonds” under Options. How is the rate of the reaction affected by concentration and temperature?

S12.2.3

Based on the Collision Theory, a reaction will only occur if the molecules collide with proper orientation and with sufficient energy required for the reaction to occur. The minimum energy the molecules must collide with is called the activation energy (energy of transition state).

Increasing the concentration of reactants increases the probability that reactants will collide in the correct orientation since there are more reactants in the same volume of space. Therefore, increasing the concentration of reactants would increase the rate of the reaction. Decreasing the concentration of reactants would decrease the rate of reaction because the overall number of possible collisions would decrease.

Temperature is directly related the the kinetic energy of molecules and activation energy E_a is the minimum energy required for a reaction to occur and doesn't change for a reaction. Increasing the temperature increases the kinetic energy of the reactants meaning the reactants will move faster and collide with each other more frequently. Therefore, increasing the temperature increase the rate of the reaction. Decreasing the temperature decreases the rate of reaction since the molecules will have less kinetic energy, move slower, and therefore collide with each other less frequently.

Q12.2.4

In the PhET Reactions & Rates interactive, on the Many Collisions tab, set up a simulation with 15 molecules of A and 10 molecules of BC. Select “Show Bonds” under Options.

a. Leave the Initial Temperature at the default setting. Observe the reaction. Is the rate of reaction fast or slow?
b. Click “Pause” and then “Reset All,” and then enter 15 molecules of A and 10 molecules of BC once again. Select “Show Bonds” under Options. This time, increase the initial temperature until, on the graph, the total average energy line is completely above the potential energy curve. Describe what happens to the reaction.

Solution

a. On the simulation, we select the default setting and the reaction A+BC. In the default setting, we see frequent collisions, a low initial temperature, and a total average energy lower than the energy of activation. The collision theory states that the rate of a reaction is directly proportional to (the fraction of molecules with required orientation), (fractions of collisions with required energy), and (collision frequency). Although we see moving and frequently colliding reactants, the rate of the forward reaction is actually slow because it takes a long time for the products, AB and C, to start appearing. This is mainly because the fractions of collisions with required energy is low, coming from the average energy of the molecules being lower than the energy of activation.

b. The reaction proceeds at an even faster rate. Again, the collision theory states that the rate of a reaction is directly proportional to (the fraction of molecules with required orientation), (fractions of collisions with required energy), and (collision frequency). Because molecules have a higher amount of energy, they have more kinetic energy. With an increased kinetic energy, the molecules not only collide more but also increase in the fraction of collision. However, the forward reaction and the backward reaction both proceed at a fast rate, so both happen almost simultaneously. It takes a shorter time for both reactions to happen. With both of the reactions adding up together overall, there is eventually a state of equilibrium. The process at which equilibrium is reached, however, is faster. Therefore, the amount of products of A+BC stays the same after a while.

12.3: Rate Laws

Q12.3.1

How do the rate of a reaction and its rate constant differ?

S12.3.1

The rate of a reaction or reaction rate is the change in the concentration of either the reactant or the product over a period of time. If the concentrations change, the rate also changes.

Rate for A → B:

$$rate = \frac{\Delta[B]}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta[A]}{\Delta t}$$

The rate constant (k) is a proportionality constant that relates the reaction rates to reactants. If the concentrations change, the rate constant does not change.

For a reaction with the general equation: $aA + bB \rightarrow cC + dD$

the experimentally determined rate law usually has the following form:

$$rate = k[A]^m[B]^n$$

Q12.3.2

Doubling the concentration of a reactant increases the rate of a reaction four times. With this knowledge, answer the following questions:

a. What is the order of the reaction with respect to that reactant?
b. Tripling the concentration of a different reactant increases the rate of a reaction three times. What is the order of the reaction with respect to that reactant?

Solution

(a) 2; (b) 1

Q12.3.3

Tripling the concentration of a reactant increases the rate of a reaction nine times. With this knowledge, answer the following questions:

a. What is the order of the reaction with respect to that reactant?
b. Increasing the concentration of a reactant by a factor of four increases the rate of a reaction four times. What is the order of the reaction with respect to that reactant?

Q12.3.4

How much and in what direction will each of the following affect the rate of the reaction: $\mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{NO_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{NO}(g)$ if the rate law for the reaction is $\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2$?

a. Decreasing the pressure of NO_2 from 0.50 atm to 0.250 atm.
b. Increasing the concentration of CO from 0.01 *M* to 0.03 *M*.

Solution

(a) The process reduces the rate by a factor of 4. (b) Since CO does not appear in the rate law, the rate is not affected.

Q12.3.5

How will each of the following affect the rate of the reaction: $\mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{NO_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{NO}(g)$ if the rate law for the reaction is $\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO_2}][\mathrm{CO}]$?

a. Increasing the pressure of NO_2 from 0.1 atm to 0.3 atm
b. Increasing the concentration of CO from 0.02 *M* to 0.06 *M*.

Q12.3.6

Regular flights of supersonic aircraft in the stratosphere are of concern because such aircraft produce nitric oxide, NO, as a byproduct in the exhaust of their engines. Nitric oxide reacts with ozone, and it has been suggested that this could contribute to depletion of the ozone layer. The reaction $\mathrm{NO} + \mathrm{O_3} \longrightarrow \mathrm{NO_2} + \mathrm{O_2}$ is first order with respect to both NO and O_3 with a rate

constant of 2.20×10^7 L/mol/s. What is the instantaneous rate of disappearance of NO when [NO] = 3.3×10^{-6} *M* and [O_3] = 5.9×10^{-7} *M*?

Solution

4.3×10^{-5} mol/L/s

Q12.3.7

Radioactive phosphorus is used in the study of biochemical reaction mechanisms because phosphorus atoms are components of many biochemical molecules. The location of the phosphorus (and the location of the molecule it is bound in) can be detected from the electrons (beta particles) it produces:

$$^{32}_{15}\mathrm{P} \longrightarrow ^{32}_{16}\mathrm{S} + \mathrm{e}^-$$

Rate = $4.85 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{day}^{-1}\ [^{32}\mathrm{P}]$

What is the instantaneous rate of production of electrons in a sample with a phosphorus concentration of 0.0033 *M*?

Q12.3.8

The rate constant for the radioactive decay of ^{14}C is 1.21×10^{-4} year^{-1}. The products of the decay are nitrogen atoms and electrons (beta particles):

$$^{6}_{14}\mathrm{C} \longrightarrow ^{6}_{14}\mathrm{N} + \mathrm{e}^-$$

$$\text{rate} = k[^{6}_{14}\mathrm{C}]$$

What is the instantaneous rate of production of N atoms in a sample with a carbon-14 content of 6.5×10^{-9} *M*?

Solution

7.9×10^{-13} mol/L/year

Q12.3.9

What is the instantaneous rate of production of N atoms Q12.3.8 in a sample with a carbon-14 content of 1.5×10^{-9} *M*?

Q12.3.10

The decomposition of acetaldehyde is a second order reaction with a rate constant of 4.71×10^{-8} L/mol/s. What is the instantaneous rate of decomposition of acetaldehyde in a solution with a concentration of 5.55×10^{-4} *M*?

Q12.3.11

Alcohol is removed from the bloodstream by a series of metabolic reactions. The first reaction produces acetaldehyde; then other products are formed. The following data have been determined for the rate at which alcohol is removed from the blood of an average male, although individual rates can vary by 25–30%. Women metabolize alcohol a little more slowly than men:

[C_2H_5OH] (*M*)	4.4×10^{-2}	3.3×10^{-2}	2.2×10^{-2}
Rate (mol/L/h)	2.0×10^{-2}	2.0×10^{-2}	2.0×10^{-2}

Determine the rate equation, the rate constant, and the overall order for this reaction.

Solution

rate = k; $k = 2.0 \times 10^{-2}$ mol/L/h (about 0.9 g/L/h for the average male); The reaction is zero order.

Q12.3.12

Under certain conditions the decomposition of ammonia on a metal surface gives the following data:

[NH_3] (*M*)	1.0×10^{-3}	2.0×10^{-3}	3.0×10^{-3}
Rate (mol/L/h[1])	1.5×10^{-6}	1.5×10^{-6}	1.5×10^{-6}

Determine the rate equation, the rate constant, and the overall order for this reaction.

Q12.3.13

Nitrosyl chloride, NOCl, decomposes to NO and Cl_2.

$$2\,NOCl(g) \longrightarrow 2\,NO(g) + Cl_2(g)$$

Determine the rate equation, the rate constant, and the overall order for this reaction from the following data:

[NOCl] (*M*)	0.10	0.20	0.30
Rate (mol/L/h)	8.0×10^{-10}	3.2×10^{-9}	7.2×10^{-9}

Solution

Before we can figure out the rate constant first we must first determine the basic rate equation and rate order. The basic rate equation for this reaction, where n is the rate order of NOCl and k is the rate constant, is

$$rate = k[NOCl]^n$$

since NOCl is the reactant in the reaction.

In order to figure out the order of the reaction we must find the order of [NOCl] as it is the only reactant in the reaction. To do this we must examine how the rate of the reaction changes as the concentration of NOCl changes.

As [NOCl] doubles in concentration from 0.10 M to 0.20 M the rate goes from 8.0 x 10^{-10} to 3.2 x 10^{-9}

(3.2 x 10^{-9}(mol/L/h))/(8.0 x 10^{-10}(mol/L/h)) = 4

so we conclude that as [NOCl] doubles, the rate goes up by 4. Since 2^2= 4 we can say that the order of [NOCl] is 2 so our updated rate law is

$$rate = k[NOCl]^2$$

Now that we have the order, we can substitute the first experimental values from the given table to find the rate constant, k

(8.0 x 10^{-10}(mol/L/h)) = k(0.10 M)^2 so

$$k = \frac{8.0 \times 10^{-10}}{(0.10\,M)^2} = 8 \times 10^{-8}\,M^{-1}\,sec^{-1}$$

We were able to find the units of k using rate order, when the rate order is 2 units of k are M^{-1} x sec^{-1}

So the rate equation is: rate = k[NOCl]^2, it is second order, and k = 8 x 10^{-8} M^{-1} x sec^{-1}

Overall rate law :

$$rate = \underbrace{(8 \times 10^{-8})}_{1/(\text{M x sec})}[NOCl]^2$$

Answer

rate = *k*[NOCl]^2; *k* = 8.0×10^{-8} L/mol/s; second order

Q12.3.14

From the following data, determine the rate equation, the rate constant, and the order with respect to *A* for the reaction $A \longrightarrow 2C$.

[*A*] (*M*)	1.33×10^{-2}	2.66×10^{-2}	3.99×10^{-2}
Rate (mol/L/h)	3.80×10^{-7}	1.52×10^{-6}	3.42×10^{-6}

Solution

A. Using the experimental data, we can compare the effects of changing [A] on the rate of reaction by relating ratios of [A] to ratios of rates

$$\frac{2.66 \times 10^{-2}}{1.33 \times 10^{-2}} = 2$$

and

$$\frac{1.52 \times 10^{-6}}{3.8 \times 10^{-7}} = 4$$

B. From this we know that doubling the concentration of A will result in quadrupling the rate of reaction. The order of this reaction is 2.

C. We can now write the rate equation since we know the order:

$$rate = k[A]^2$$

D. By plugging in one set of experimental data into our rate equation we can solve for the rate constant, k:

$$3.8 \times 10^{-7} = k \times (1.33 \times 10^{-2})^2$$

$$k = \frac{3.8 \times 10^{-7}}{1.769 \times 10^{-4}}$$

$$k = .00215 M^{-1} s^{-1}$$

Answer

$k = .00215 M^{-1} s^{-1}$

2nd Order

Q12.3.15

Nitrogen(II) oxide reacts with chlorine according to the equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{NO}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NOCl}(g)$$

The following initial rates of reaction have been observed for certain reactant concentrations:

[NO] (mol/L^1)	[Cl_2] (mol/L)	Rate (mol/L/h)
0.50	0.50	1.14
1.00	0.50	4.56
1.00	1.00	9.12

What is the rate equation that describes the rate's dependence on the concentrations of NO and Cl_2? What is the rate constant? What are the orders with respect to each reactant?

Solution

For the general equation,

$aA + bB \rightarrow cC + dD$

The rate can be written as

$rate = k[A]^m[B]^n$ where k is the rate constant, and m and n are the reaction orders.

For our equation

$2NO(g) + Cl_2(g) \rightarrow 2NOCl(g)$

the $rate = k[NO]^m[Cl_2]^n$

Now, we need to find the reaction orders. Reaction orders can only be found through experimental values. We can compare two reactions where one of the reactants has the same concentration for both trials, and solve for the reaction order.

$$\frac{rate_1}{rate_2} = \frac{[NO]_1^m[Cl_2]_1^n}{[NO]_2^m[Cl_2]_2^n}$$

We can use the data in the table provided. If we plug in the values for rows 1 and 2, we see that the values for the concentration of Cl will cancel, leaving just the rates and the concentrations of NO.

$$\frac{1.14}{4.56} = \frac{[0.5]^m}{[1.0]^m}$$

We can now solve for m, and we find that m =2. This means that the reaction order for [NO] is 2.

Now we must find the value of n. To do so, we can use the same equation but with the values from rows 2 and 3. This time, the concentration of NO will cancel out.

$$\frac{4.56}{9.12} = \frac{[0.5]^n}{[1.0]^n}$$

When we solve for n, we find that n = 1. This means that the reaction order for [Cl_2] is 1.

We are one step closer to finishing our rate equation.

$$rate = k[NO]^2[Cl_2]$$

Finally, we can solve for the rate constant. To do this, we can use one of the trials of the experiment, and plug in the values for the rate, and concentrations of reactants, then solve for k.

$$1.14 mol/L/h = k[0.5 mol/L]^2[0.5 mol/L]$$

$$k = 9.12 L^2 mol^{-2} h^{-1}$$

So, our final rate equation is:

$$rate = (9.12 L^2 mol^{-2} h^{-1})[NO]^2[Cl_2]$$

*A common mistake is forgetting units. Make sure to track your units throughout the process of determining your rate constant. Be careful because the units will change relative to the reaction order.

Answer

rate = k[NO]^2[Cl]$_2$; k = 9.12 L^2 mol^{-2} h^{-1}; second order in NO; first order in Cl_2

Q12.3.17

Hydrogen reacts with nitrogen monoxide to form dinitrogen monoxide (laughing gas) according to the equation:

$$H_2(g) + 2\,NO(g) \longrightarrow N_2O(g) + H_2O(g)$$

Determine the rate equation, the rate constant, and the orders with respect to each reactant from the following data:

[NO] (*M*)	0.30	0.60	0.60
[H_2] (*M*)	0.35	0.35	0.70
Rate (mol/L/s)	2.835 × 10^{-3}	1.134 × 10^{-2}	2.268 × 10^{-2}

Solution

Determine the rate equation, the rate constant, and the orders with respect to each reactant.

The rate constant and the orders can be determined through the differential rate law. The general form of the differential rate law is given below:

aA + bB + cC ==> products

rate = - d[A]/dt = k[A]^n[B]^m[C]^p

where A, B, and C are the concentrations of the reactants, k is the rate constant, and n,m, and p refer to the order of each reactant.

To find the orders of each reactant, we see that when [NO] doubles but [H_2] doesn't change, the rate quadruples, meaning that [NO] is a second order reaction ([NO]^2). When [H_2] doubles but [NO] doesn't change, the rate doubles, meaning that [H_2] is a first order reaction. So the rate law would look something like this:

$$\text{Rate} = k[NO]^2[H_2]$$

We can use this rate law to determine the value of the rate constant. Plug in the data for reactant concentration and rate from one of the trials to solve for k the rate constant. In this case, we chose to use the data from trial 1 from the second column of the data table.

$$2.835 \times 10^{-3} = k[0.3]^2[0.35]$$

$$k = .09\ M^{-2}/s^{-1}$$

Q12.3.18

For the reaction $A \longrightarrow B + C$, the following data were obtained at 30 °C:

[*A*] (*M*)	0.230	0.356	0.557
Rate (mol/L/s)	4.17×10^{-4}	9.99×10^{-4}	2.44×10^{-3}

a. What is the order of the reaction with respect to [*A*], and what is the rate equation?
b. What is the rate constant?

Solution

1. The rate equation for an n order reaction is given as $\frac{dr}{dt} = k[A]^n$. Where $[A]$ is the concentration in M, and $\frac{dr}{dt}$ is the rate in M/s.

We can then use each set of data points, plug its values into the rate equation and solve for n. Note you can use any of the data points as long as the concentration corresponds to its rate.

Rate equation 1: $4.17 \times 10^{-4} = k[0.230]^n$

Rate equation 2: $9.99 \times 10^{-4} = k[0.356]^n$

We divide Rate equation 1 by Rate equation 2 in order to cancel out k, the rate constant.

$\frac{4.17 \times 10^{-4}}{9.99 \times 10^{-4}} = \frac{k[0.230]^n}{k[0.356]^n}$

$0.417 = 0.646^n$

Now the only unknown we have is n. Using logarithm rules one can solve for it.

$ln\ 0.417 = n \cdot ln\ 0.646$

$\frac{ln\ 0.417}{ln\ 0.646} = n = 2$

The rate equation is second order with respect to A and is written as $\frac{dr}{dt} = k[A]^2$.

2. We can solve for k by plugging in any data point into our rate equation $\frac{dr}{dt} = k[A]^2$.

Using the first data points for instance $[A] = 0.230\ \frac{mol}{L}$ and $\frac{dr}{dt} = 4.17 \times 10^{-4}\ \frac{mol}{L \cdot s}$] we get the equation $4.17 \times 10^{-4}\ \frac{mol}{L \cdot s} = k[0.230\ \frac{mol}{L}]^2$

Which solves for $k = 7.88 \times 10^{-3}\ \frac{L}{mol \cdot s}$

Since we know this is a second order reaction the appropriate units for k can also be written as $\frac{1}{M \cdot s}$

Answer

(a) The rate equation is second order in A and is written as rate = $k[A]^2$. (b) k = 7.88×10^{-13} L mol^{-1} s^{-1}

Q12.3.19

For the reaction $Q \longrightarrow W + X$, the following data were obtained at 30 °C:

$[Q]_{initial}$ (M)	0.170	0.212	0.357
Rate (mol/L/s)	6.68×10^{-3}	1.04×10^{-2}	2.94×10^{-2}

a. What is the order of the reaction with respect to [Q], and what is the rate equation?
b. What is the rate constant?

Solution

What is the order of the reaction with respect to [Q], and what is the rate equation?

- Order reaction: 2 because when you use the ratio trial 3:2, it will look like this:
- $(\frac{2.94 * 10^{-2}}{1.04 * 10^{-2}}) = (\frac{0.357^{x}}{0.212^{x}})$
- $2.82 = 1.7^{x}$
- x = 2 so the order of reaction is 2
- Rate reaction equation: Rate=k[Q]^2

What is the rate constant?

- To find the rate constant (k) simply plug and calculate one of the trials into the rate equation
- 1.04 x 10^{-2}=k[0.212]^2
- k=0.231 $M^{-1}s^{-1}$

Answer

Order: 2

k=0.231 $M^{-1}s^{-1}$

Q12.3.20

The rate constant for the first-order decomposition at 45 °C of dinitrogen pentoxide, N_2O_5, dissolved in chloroform, $CHCl_3$, is 6.2×10^{-4} min^{-1}.

$$2\,N_2O_5 \longrightarrow 4\,NO_2 + O_2$$

What is the rate of the reaction when [N_2O_5] = 0.40 M?

Solution

Step 1: The first step is to write the rate law. We know the general formula for for a first-order rate law. It is as follows: Rate=k[A]

Step 2: We now plug in [N_2O_5] in for [A] in our general rate law. We also plug in our rate constant (k), which was given to us. Now our equation looks as follows:

Rate=(6.2×10^{-4} min^{-1})[N_2O_5]

Step 3: We now plug in our given molarity. [N_2O_5]=0.4 M. Now our equation looks as follows:

Rate=(6.2×10^{-4} min^{-1})(0.4 M)

Step 4: We now solve our equation. Rate=(6.2×10^{-4} min^{-1})(0.4 M)= 2.48×10^{-4} M/min.
Step 5: Use significant figures and unit conversion to round 2.48×10^{-4} M/min to 2.5×10^{-4} (moles)$L^{-1}min^{-1}$

Answer

(a) 2.5×10^{-4} mol/L/min

Q12.3.21

The annual production of HNO_3 in 2013 was 60 million metric tons Most of that was prepared by the following sequence of reactions, each run in a separate reaction vessel.

a. $4\,NH_3(g) + 5\,O_2(g) \longrightarrow 4\,NO(g) + 6\,H_2O(g)$
b. $2\,NO(g) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,NO_2(g)$
c. $3\,NO_2(g) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow 2\,HNO_3(aq) + NO(g)$

The first reaction is run by burning ammonia in air over a platinum catalyst. This reaction is fast. The reaction in equation (c) is also fast. The second reaction limits the rate at which nitric acid can be prepared from ammonia. If equation (b) is second order in NO and first order in O_2, what is the rate of formation of NO_2 when the oxygen concentration is 0.50 *M* and the nitric oxide concentration is 0.75 *M*? The rate constant for the reaction is 5.8×10^{-6} $L^2/mol^2/s$.

Solution

To determine the rate law for an equation we need to look at its slow step. Since both equation a and c are fast, equation b can be considered the slow step of the reaction. The slow step is also considered the rate determining step of the system.

Hence, The rate determining step is the second step because it's the slow step.

rate of production of $NO_2 = k[A]^m[B]^n$

$rate = k[NO]^2[O_2]^1\ M/s$

$rate = (5.8 * 10^{-6})[0.75]^2[0.5]^1\ M/s$

$rate = 1.6 * 10^{-6}\ M/s$

Answer

$rate = 1.6 * 10^{-6}\ M/s$

Q12.3.22

The following data have been determined for the reaction:

$$I^- + OCl^- \longrightarrow IO^- + Cl^-$$

	1	2	3
$[I^-]_{initial}$ (*M*)	0.10	0.20	0.30
$[OCl^-]_{initial}$ (*M*)	0.050	0.050	0.010
Rate (mol/L/s)	3.05×10^{-4}	6.20×10^{-4}	1.83×10^{-4}

Determine the rate equation and the rate constant for this reaction.

Solution

Using the reactants, we can form the rate law of the reaction: $$ r=k[OCl^-]^n[I^-]^m \]

From there, we need to use the data to determine the order of both $[OCl^-]$ and $[I^-]$. In doing so, we need to compare r_1 to r_2 such that:

$$\frac{r_1}{r_2} = \frac{(0.10^m)(0.050^n)}{(0.20^m)(0.050^n)} = \frac{3.05 \times 10^{-4}}{6.20 \times 10^{-4}} \tag{3.9.a.3}$$

$$0.5^m = 0.5 \tag{3.9.a.4}$$

$$m = 1 \tag{3.9.a.5}$$

We can "cross out" the concentration of $[OCl^-]$ because it has the same concentration in both of the trials used.

Now that we know m ($[I^-]$) has a first order of 1.

We cannot "cross out" $[I^-]$ to find $[OCl^-]$ because no two trials have the same concentration. In order to solve for n we will plug in 1 for m.

$$\frac{r_1}{r_3} = \frac{(0.10^1)(0.050^n)}{(0.30^1)(0.010^n)} = \frac{3.05 \times 10^{-4}}{1.83 \times 10^{-4}} \tag{3.9.a.6}$$

$$\frac{1}{3}(5^n) = 1.6666667 \tag{3.9.a.7}$$

$$5^n = 5 \tag{3.9.a.8}$$

$$n = 1 \tag{3.9.a.9}$$

Since we know that orders of both n and m are equal to one, we can not substitute them into the rate law equation along with the respective concentrations (from either the first, second, or third reaction) and solve for the rate constant, k.

$$r = k[OCl^-]^n[I^-]^m \tag{3.9.a.10}$$

$$3.05 * 10^{-4} = k[0.05]^1[0.10]^1 \tag{3.9.a.11}$$

$$k = 6.1 * 10^{-2} \frac{L}{mol \times s} \tag{3.9.a.12}$$

Thus the overall rate law is: $$ r = (6.1 * 10^{-2} \frac {L}{mol \times s})[OCl^-][I^-] \]

The units for K depend on the overall order of the reaction. To find the overall order we add m and n together. By doing this we find an overall order of 2. This is why the units for K are $$ \frac {L}{mol \times s} \]

Answer

rate = k[I$^-$][OCl^{-1}]; k = 6.1 × 10^{-2} L mol $^{-1}$ s^{-1}

Q12.3.23

In the reaction

$$2NO + Cl_2 \rightarrow 2NOCl$$

the reactants and products are gases at the temperature of the reaction. The following rate data were measured for three experiments:

Initial p{NO}$	Initial p{Cl$_2$}$	Initial rate
(atm)	(atm)	(moles of A consumed atm sec^{-1})
0.50	0.50	5.1 x 10^{-3}
1.0	1.0	4.0 x 10^{-2}
0.50	1.0	1.0 x 10^{-2}

a. From these data, write the rate equation for this gas reaction. What order is the reaction in NO, Cl_2, and overall?
b. Calculate the specific rate constant for this reaction.

Solution

a. The rate equation can be determined by designing experiments that measure the concentration(s) of one or more reactants or products as a function of time. For the reaction $A + B \rightarrow products$, for example, we need to determine k and the exponents m and n in the following equation:

$$rate = k[A]^m[B]^n$$

To do this, the initial concentration of B can be kept constant while varying the initial concentration of A and calculating the initial reaction rate. This information would deduce the reaction order with respect to A. The same process can be done to find

the reaction order with respect to B.
In this particular example,

$$\frac{rate_2}{rate_3} = \frac{k[A_2]^m[B_2]^n}{k[A_3]^m[B_3]^n}$$

So taking the values from the table,

$$\frac{4.0*10^{-2}}{1.0*10^{-2}} = \frac{k[1.0]^m[1.0]^n}{k[0.5]^m[1.0]^n}$$

and by canceling like terms, you are left with

$$\frac{4.0*10^{-2}}{1.0*10^{-2}} = \frac{[1.0]^m}{[0.5]^m}$$

Now, solve for m

$4 = 2^m \Longrightarrow m = 2$ Because m=2, the reaction with respect to NO is 2. NO **is second order.**

You can repeat the same process to find n.

$$\frac{rate_3}{rate_1} = \frac{k[A_3]^m[B_3]^n}{k[A_1]^m[B_1]^n}$$

Taking the values from the table,

$$\frac{1.0*10^{-2}}{5.1*10^{-3}} = \frac{k[0.5]^m[1.0]^n}{k[0.5]^m[0.5]^n}$$

and by canceling like terms, you are left with

$$\frac{1.0*10^{-2}}{5.1*10^{-3}} = \frac{[1.0]^n}{[0.5]^n}$$

Now this time, solve for n

$2 = 2^n \Longrightarrow n = 1$

Because n=1, the reaction with respect to Cl_2 is 1. Cl_2 **is first order.**

So the rate equation is

$$rate = k[NO]^2[Cl_2]^1$$

To find the overall rate order, you simply add the orders together. Second order + first order makes the **overall reaction third order.**

b. The rate constant is calculated by inserting the data from any row of the table into the experimentally determined rate law and solving for k. For a third order reaction, the units of k are $frac1atm^2 * sec$. Using Experiment 1,

$$rate = k[NO]^2[Cl_2]^1 \Longrightarrow 5.1 * 10^{-3} \frac{atm}{sec} = k[0.5matm]^2[0.5atm]^1$$

$$k = 0.0408 \frac{1}{atm^2 * sec}$$

Answer

NO is second order.

Cl_2 is first order.

Overall reaction order is three.

b)

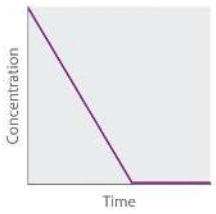
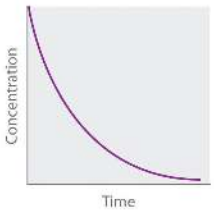
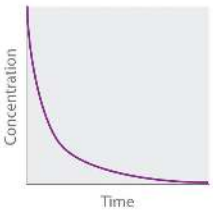
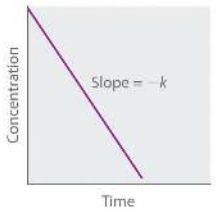
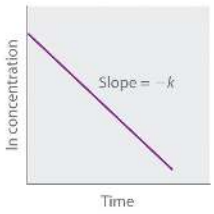
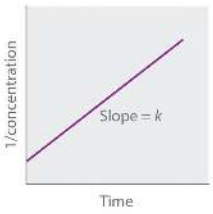
$k = 0.0408\ atm^{-2} * sec^{-1}$

12.4: Integrated Rate Laws

Q12.4.1

Describe how graphical methods can be used to determine the order of a reaction and its rate constant from a series of data that includes the concentration of *A* at varying times.

Solution

	Zeroth Order	First Order	Second Order
Differential rate law	$\text{Rate} = -\frac{\Delta[A]}{\Delta t} = k$	$\text{Rate} = -\frac{\Delta[A]}{\Delta t} = k[A]$	$\text{Rate} = -\frac{\Delta[A]}{\Delta t} = k[A]^2$
Concentration vs. time			
Integrated rate law	$[A] = [A]_0 - kt$	$[A] = [A]_0 e^{-kt}$ or $\ln[A] = \ln[A]_0 - kt$	$\frac{1}{[A]} = \frac{1}{[A]_0} + kt$
Straight-line plot to determine rate constant			
Relative rate vs. concentration	[A], *M* / Rate, M/s 1 / 1 2 / 1 3 / 1	[A], *M* / Rate, M/s 1 / 1 2 / 2 3 / 3	[A], *M* / Rate, M/s 1 / 1 2 / 4 3 / 9
Half-life	$t_{1/2} = \frac{[A]_0}{2k}$	$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{k}$	$t_{1/2} = \frac{1}{k[A]_0}$
Units of *k*, rate constant	M/s	1/s	$M^{-1}\cdot s^{-1}$

To determine the order of a reaction when given the data series, one must graph the data how it is, graph it as natural log of [A], and graph it as 1/[A]. Whichever method yields a straight line will determine the order. Respective of the methods of graphing above, if a straight line is yielded by the first graphing method its a 0 order, if by the second method it's a 1st order, and the third graphing method its a 2nd order. When the order of the graph is known, a series of equations, given in the above image, can be used with the various points on the graph to determine the value of k. We can see that we need an initial value of A and a final value of A, and both of these would be given by the data.

Zeroth order when plotting initial concentrating versus final concentration you have a negative linear slope.

$$[A] = [A]_0 - kt$$

First order when plotting ln[initial concentration] versus ln[final concentration] you have a negative linear slope.

$$\ln[A] = \ln[A]_0 - kt$$

Second order when plotting the 1/[initial concentration] versus 1/[final concentration] you have a positive linear slope.

$$\frac{1}{[\text{A}]} = \frac{1}{[\text{A}]_0} + kt$$

Q12.4.2

Use the data provided to graphically determine the order and rate constant of the following reaction: $\text{SO}_2\text{Cl}_2 \longrightarrow \text{SO}_2 + \text{Cl}_2$

Time (s)	0	5.00×10^3	1.00×10^4	1.50×10^4	2.50×10^4	3.00×10^4	4.00×10^4

$[SO_2Cl_2]$ (M)	0.100	0.0896	0.0802	0.0719	0.0577	0.0517	0.0415

Solution

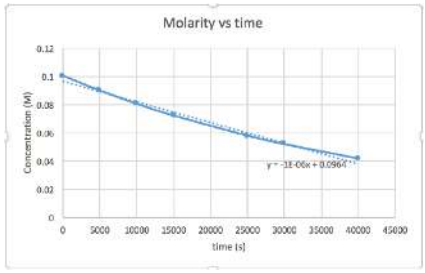
Use the data to graphically determine the order and rate constant of the following reaction.

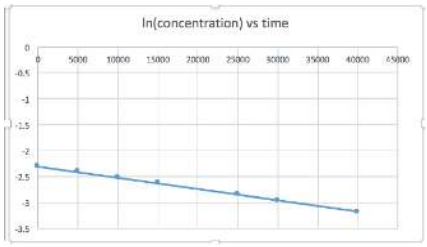
In order to determine the rate law for a reaction from a set of data consisting of concentration (or the values of some function of concentration) versus time, make three graphs of the data based on the integrated rate laws of each order reaction.

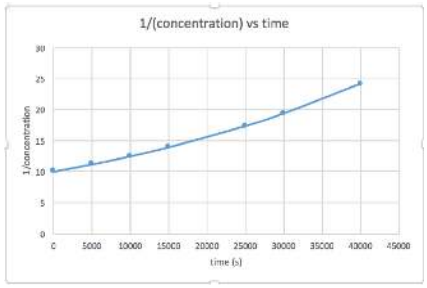
[concentration] versus time (linear for a zero order reaction) ln [concentration] versus time (linear for a 1st order reaction) 1 / [concentration] versus time (linear for a 2nd order reaction)

slope= -2.0×10^{-5}

k = 2.0×10^{-5}





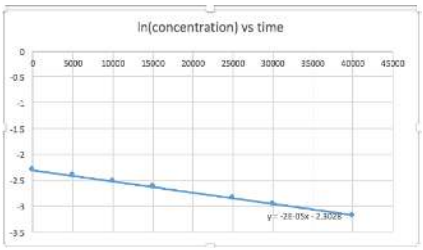


The graph that is linear indicates the order of the reaction. Then, you can find the correct rate equation:

zero order reaction	rate = k	(k = - slope of line)
1st order reaction	rate = k[A]	(k = - slope of line)
2nd order reaction	rate = $k[A]^2$	(k = slope of line)

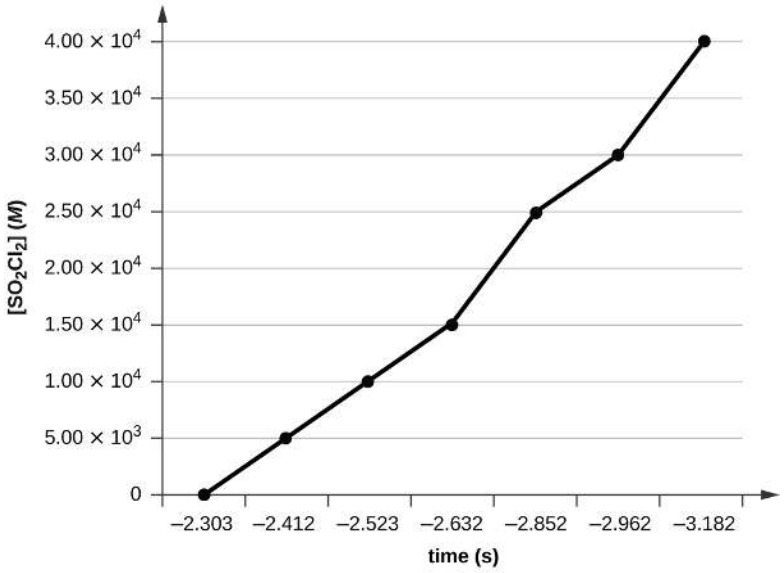
In this graph, ln(concentration) vs time is linear, indicating that the **reaction is first order**.

k=-slope of line



Answer

Plotting a graph of $\ln[SO_2Cl_2]$ versus t reveals a linear trend; therefore we know this is a first-order reaction:



$k = -2.20 \times 10^5\ s^{-1}$

Q12.4.3

Use the data provided in a graphical method to determine the order and rate constant of the following reaction:

$$2P \longrightarrow Q + W$$

Time (s)	9.0	13.0	18.0	22.0	25.0
[P] (*M*)	1.077×10^{-3}	1.068×10^{-3}	1.055×10^{-3}	1.046×10^{-3}	1.039×10^{-3}

Solution

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

Q12.4.4

Pure ozone decomposes slowly to oxygen, $2\,O_3(g) \longrightarrow 3\,O_2(g)$. Use the data provided in a graphical method and determine the order and rate constant of the reaction.

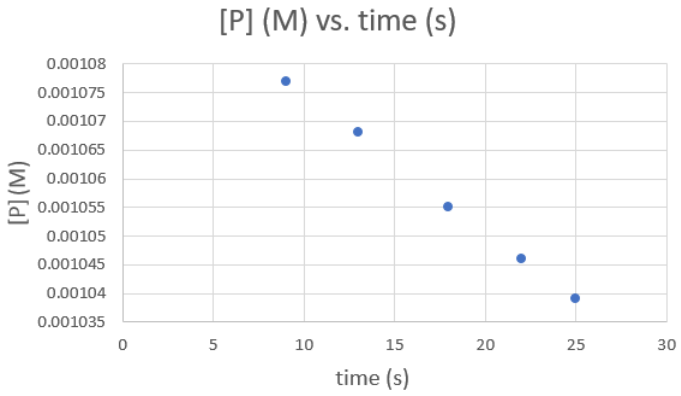
Time (h)	0	2.0×10^3	7.6×10^3	1.23×10^4	1.70×10^4	1.70×10^4
$[O_3]$ (*M*)	1.00×10^{-5}	4.98×10^{-6}	2.07×10^{-6}	1.39×10^{-6}	1.22×10^{-6}	1.05×10^{-6}

Solution

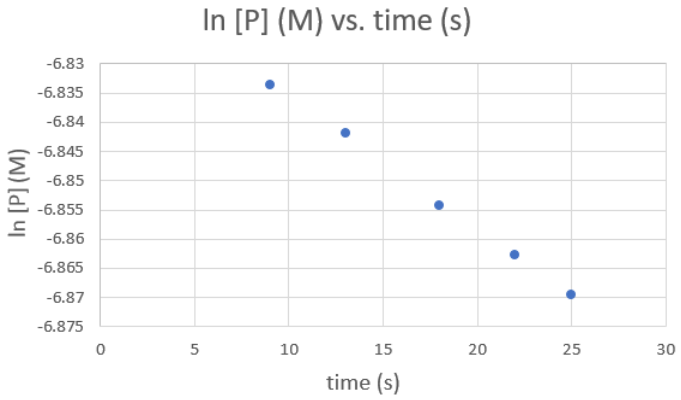
To determine the order and rate constant, you need to graph the data for zero order, first order, and second order by plotting concentration versus time- [A] vs. time, natural logarithm (ln) of [A] vs. time, and 1/[A] vs. time respectively. The order of the

reaction is determined by identifying which of these three graphs produces a straight line. The rate constant *k* is represented by the slope of the graph. The graphs with their respective data values would be

Time (s)	9.0	13.0	18.0	22.0	25.0
[P] (*M*)	1.077 × 10−3	1.068 × 10−3	1.055 × 10−3	1.046 × 10−3	1.039 × 10−3

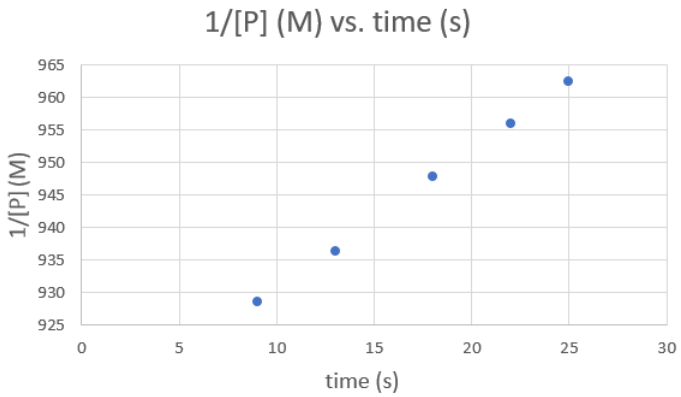


Time (s)	9.0	13.0	18.0	22.0	25.0
ln [P] (*M*)	-6.83358	-6.84197	-6.85421	-6.86278	-6.8695



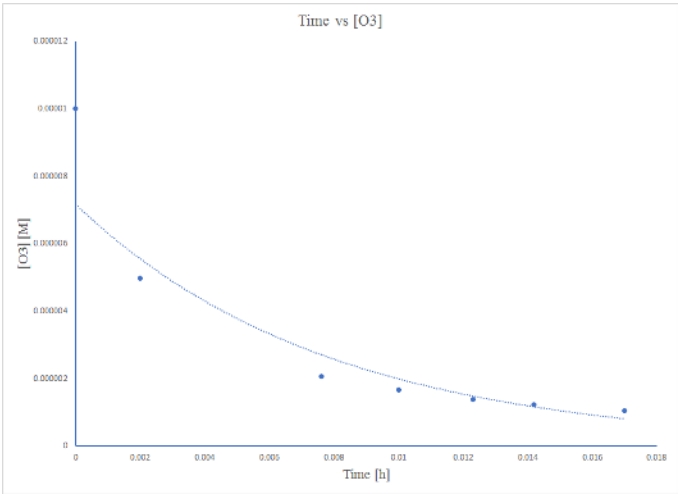
Time (s)	9.0	13.0	18.0	22.0	25.0
1/[P] (*M*)	928.5051	936.3296	947.8673	956.0229	962.4639

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122503

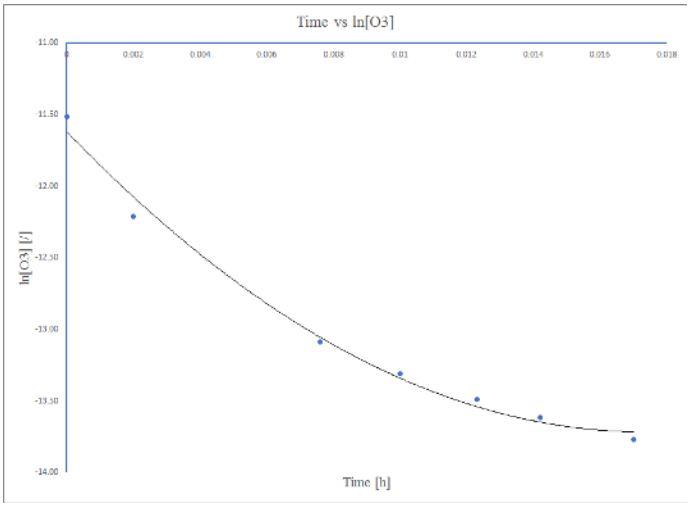


Since each graph yields a straight line **the order and rate constant of the reaction cannot be determined**.

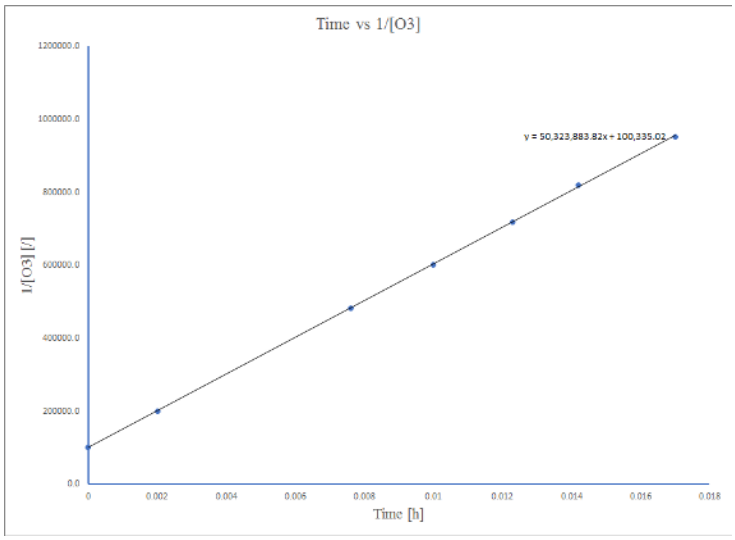
To identify how the concentrations changes a function of time, requires solving the appropriate differential equation (i.e., the differential rate law).
The zero-order rate law predicts in a linear decay of concentration with time
The 1st-order rate law predicts in an exponential decay of concentration with time
The 2nd-order rate law predicts in an reciprocal decay of concentration with time



The plot is not linear, so the reaction is not zero order.



The plot is not linear, so the reaction is not first order.



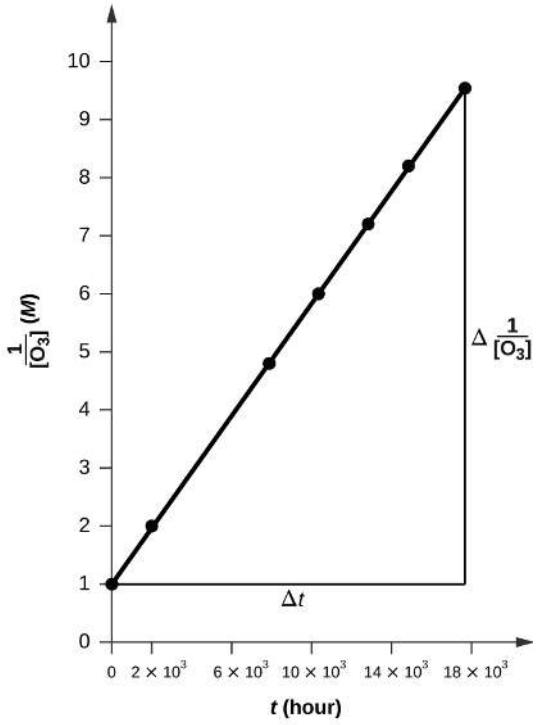
The plot is nicely linear, so the reaction is second order.

To a second order equation, $1/[A] = k*t+1/[A_0]$

Thus, the value of K is the slope of the graph Time vs $\frac{1}{O_3}$,

k = 50.3*10^6 L mol^{-1} h^{-1}

Answer



The plot is nicely linear, so the reaction is second order.

k = 50.1 L mol^{-1} h^{-1}

Q12.4.5

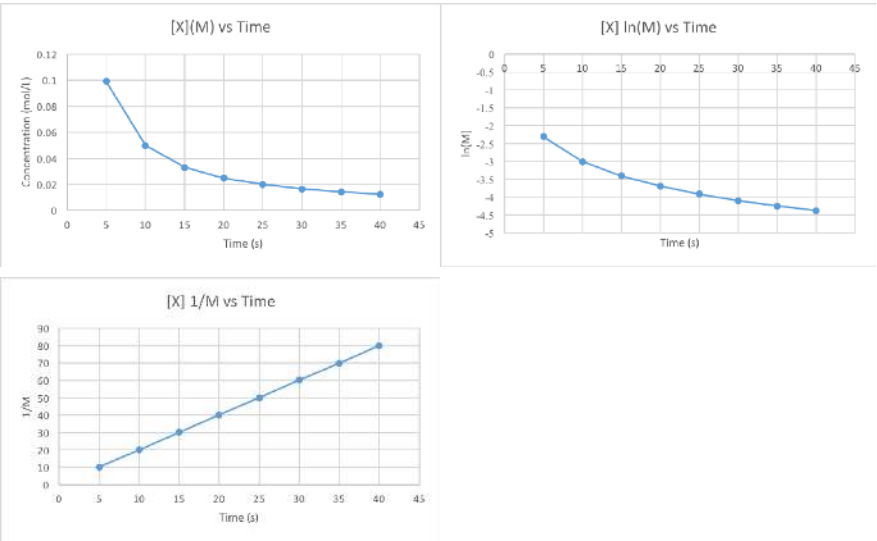
From the given data, use a graphical method to determine the order and rate constant of the following reaction:

$$2X \longrightarrow Y + Z \tag{3.9.a.13}$$

Time (s)	5.0	10.0	15.0	20.0	25.0	30.0	35.0	40.0
[*X*] (*M*)	0.0990	0.0497	0.0332	0.0249	0.0200	0.0166	0.0143	0.0125

Solution

In order to determine the order of the reaction we need to plot the data using three different graphs. All three graphs will have time in seconds as the x-axis, but the y-axis is what will differ. One graph will plot concentration versus time, the second will plot natural log of concentration versus time, and the other will plot 1/concentration versus times. Whichever graph results in a line, we know that must be the order of the reaction. If we get a line using the first graph, it will be zero order, if it is a line for the second graph it will be first order, and if it is a line for the third graph it will be a second order reaction. Now lets plot the data to determine the order.



We can clearly see that the third graph, which plots 1/M versus time, is a straight line while the other two are slightly curved. Therefore, we can determine that the rate of this reaction is second order. This also tells us that the units of the rate constant which should be $M^{-2}s^{-1}$ for a second order reaction.

To determine the rate constant, called k, we simple need to figure out the slope of the third graph since that is the order of this reaction. To find the slope of the line, we take two points and subtract the y values and then divide them by the difference of the x values. This is how to do it:

Use the points (5, 10.101) and (40, 80).

Now use these to get the slop, aka the rate constant: (80-10.101)/(40-5) = 1.997 = k

So the rate constant for this second order reaction is 1.997 $M^{-1}s^{-1}$.

Q12.4.6

What is the half-life for the first-order decay of phosphorus-32? $\left({}^{32}_{15}\mathrm{P} \longrightarrow {}^{32}_{16}\mathrm{S} + \mathrm{e}^{-}\right)$ The rate constant for the decay is 4.85×10^{-2} day^{-1}.

Solution

This is a first order reaction, so we can use our half life equation below:

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{k}$$

The rate constant is given to us in units per day. All we have to do, is to plug it into the equation.

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{4.85 * 10^{-2}}$$

$$= 14.3\ days$$

A12.4.6

14.3 d

Q12.4.7

What is the half-life for the first-order decay of carbon-14? $\left({}^{6}_{14}\mathrm{C} \longrightarrow {}^{7}_{14}\mathrm{N} + \mathrm{e}^{-}\right)$ The rate constant for the decay is 1.21 × 10^{-4} $year^{-1}$.

Solution

To find the half life, we need to use the first-order half-life equation. All half life reactions undergo first order reactions.

The half-life equation for first order is

$$t_{1/2} = ln2/k$$

with k being the rate constant. The rate constant for carbon-14 was given as $1.21 \times 10^{-4} year^{-1}$.

Plug it in the equation.

$$t_{1/2} = ln2/(1.21 \times 10^{-4} year^{-1})$$

and solve for $t_{1/2}$.

When you calculate it, the half life for carbon-14 is 5.73*10^{3}

Answer

The half-life for carbon-14 is calculated to be 5.73*10^{3}

Q12.4.8

What is the half-life for the decomposition of NOCl when the concentration of NOCl is 0.15 *M*? The rate constant for this second-order reaction is 8.0 × 10^{-8} L/mol/s.

Solution

The half-life of a reaction, $t_{1/2}$, is the amount of time that is required for a reactant concentration to decrease by half compared to its initial concentration. When solving for the half-life of a reaction, we should first consider the order of reaction to determine it's rate law. In this case, we are told that this reaction is second-order, so we know that the integrated rate law is given as:

$$\frac{1}{[A]} = kt + \frac{1}{[A]_0}$$

Isolating for time, we find that:

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{1}{k[A]_0}$$

Now it is just a matter of substituting the information we have been given to calculate $t_{1/2}$, where the rate constant, k, is equal to 8.0 × 10^{-8} L/mol/s and initial concentration, $[A]_0$, is equal to 0.15*M*:

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{1}{(8.0 \times 10^{-8})(0.15)} = 8.33 \times 10^{7}\ seconds$$

Answer

8.33 × 10^{7} s

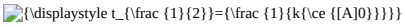
Q12.4.9

What is the half-life for the decomposition of O_3 when the concentration of O_3 is 2.35×10^{-6} *M*? The rate constant for this second-order reaction is 50.4 L/mol/h.

Solution

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

Since the reaction is second order, its half-life is



$$t_{1/2} = \frac{1}{(50.4 M^{-1}/h)[2.35 \times 10^{-6} M]}$$

So, half-life is 8443 hours.

Q12.4.10

The reaction of compound *A* to give compounds *C* and *D* was found to be second-order in *A*. The rate constant for the reaction was determined to be 2.42 L/mol/s. If the initial concentration is 0.500 mol/L, what is the value of $t_{1/2}$?

Solution

As mentioned in the question the reaction of compound *A* will result in the formation of compounds C and D. This reaction was found to be second-order in *A*. Therefore, we should use the second order equation for half-life which relates the rate constant and initial concentrations to the half-life:

$$t_{\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{1}{k[A]_0}$$

Since we were given *k* (rate constant) and Initial concentration of A, we have everything needed to calculate the half life of A.

$$k = 0.5 \frac{\frac{L}{mol}}{s}$$

$$[A]_0 = 2.42 \frac{mol}{L}$$

When we plug in the given information notice that the units cancel out to seconds.

$$t_{\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{1}{\frac{2.42 L mol^{-}}{s}[0.500 \frac{mol}{L}]} = 0.826 s$$

Answer

0.826 s

Q12.4.11

The half-life of a reaction of compound *A* to give compounds *D* and *E* is 8.50 minutes when the initial concentration of *A* is 0.150 mol/L. How long will it take for the concentration to drop to 0.0300 mol/L if the reaction is (a) first order with respect to *A* or (b) second order with respect to *A*?

Solution

Organize the given variables:

(half-life of *A*) $t_{1/2} = 8.50 min$
(initial concentration of *A*) $[A]_0 = 0.150 mol/L$
(target concentration of *A*) $[A] = 0.0300 mol/L$

Find the the rate constant k, using the half-life formulas for each respective order. After finding k, use the integrated rate law respective to each order and the initial and target concentrations of *A* to find the time it took for the concentration to drop.

(a) first order with respect to *A*

(half-life) $t_{1/2} = \frac{ln(2)}{k} = \frac{0.693}{k}$
(rearranged for k) $k = \frac{0.693}{t_{1/2}}$
(plug in $t_{1/2}$ = 8.50 min) $k = \frac{0.693}{8.50min} = 0.0815min^{-1}$
(integrated rate law) $ln[A] = -kt + ln[A]_0$
(rearranged for t) $ln(\frac{[A]}{[A]_0}) = -kt$
$-ln(\frac{[A]}{[A]_0}) = kt$
$ln(\frac{[A]}{[A]_0})^{-1} = kt$
$ln(\frac{[A]_0}{[A]}) = kt$
$t = \frac{ln(\frac{[A]_0}{[A]})}{k}$
(plug in variables) $t = \frac{ln(\frac{0.150mol/L}{0.0300mol/L})}{0.0815min^{-1}} = \frac{ln(5.00)}{0.0815min^{-1}} = 19.7min$

(b) second order with respect to *A*

(half-life) $t_{1/2} = \frac{1}{k[A]_0}$
(rearranged for k) $k = \frac{1}{t_{1/2}[A]_0}$
(plug in variables) $k = \frac{1}{(8.50min)(0.150mol/L)} = \frac{1}{1.275min \cdot mol/L} = 0.784L/mol \cdot min$
(integrated rate law) $\frac{1}{[A]} = kt + \frac{1}{[A]_0}$
(rearranged for t) $\frac{1}{[A]} - \frac{1}{[A]_0} = kt$
$t = \frac{1}{k}(\frac{1}{[A]} - \frac{1}{[A]_0})$
(plug in variables) $t = \frac{1}{0.784L/mol \cdot min}(\frac{1}{0.0300mol/L} - \frac{1}{0.150mol/L}) = \frac{1}{0.784L/mol \cdot min}(\frac{80}{3}L/mol) = 34.0min$

Answer

a) 19.7 min

b) 34.0 min

Q12.4.12

Some bacteria are resistant to the antibiotic penicillin because they produce penicillinase, an enzyme with a molecular weight of 3 × 10^4 g/mol that converts penicillin into inactive molecules. Although the kinetics of enzyme-catalyzed reactions can be complex, at low concentrations this reaction can be described by a rate equation that is first order in the catalyst (penicillinase) and that also involves the concentration of penicillin. From the following data: 1.0 L of a solution containing 0.15 µg (0.15 × 10^{-6} g) of penicillinase, determine the order of the reaction with respect to penicillin and the value of the rate constant.

[Penicillin] (*M*)	Rate (mol/L/min)
2.0 × 10^{-6}	1.0 × 10^{-10}
3.0 × 10^{-6}	1.5 × 10^{-10}
4.0 × 10^{-6}	2.0 × 10^{-10}

Solution

The first step is to solve for the order or the reaction. This can be done by setting up two expressions which equate the rate to the rate constant times the molar concentration of penicillin raised to the power of it's order. Once we have both expressions set up, we can divide them to cancel out k (rate constant) and use a basic logarithm to solve for the exponent, which is the order. It will look like this.

$$\text{rate(mol/L/min)}=k[M]^x$$

$$(1.0 \times 10^{-10})=k[2.0 \times 10^{-6}]^x$$

$$(1.5 \times 10^{-10})=k[3.0 \times 10^{-6}]^x$$

Dividing the two equations results in the expression:

$$(2/3)=(2/3)^x$$

*A single ratio equation can also be set up to solve for the reaction order:

*

$$\frac{rate_1}{rate_2}=\frac{k[Penicillin]_1^x}{k[Penicillin]_2^x}$$

*We then solve for x in a similar fashion.

*

$$\frac{1.0x10^{-10}}{1.5x10^{-10}}=\frac{[2.0x10^{-6}]^x}{[3.0x10^{-6}]^x}$$

We can now use the natural logarithm to solve for x, or simply and intuitively see that in order for the equation to work, **x must be equal to one. Thus, the reaction is of the first order.**

Now that we have the order of the reaction, we can proceed to solve for the value of the rate constant. Substituting x=1 into our first equation yields the expression:

$$(1 \times 10^{-10})=k[2.0 \times 10^{-6}]^1$$

$$k=(1 \times 10^{-10})/(2 \times 10^{-6})$$

$$k= (5 \times 10^{-5}) \text{ min}^{-1}$$

We have a unit of min^{-1} because we divided (mol/L/min) by molarity, which is in (mol/L), yielding a unit of min^{-1}.

We were given two important pieces of information to finish the problem. It is stated that the enzyme has a molecular weight of 3×10^4 g/mol, and that we have a one liter solution that contains $(0.15 \times 10^{-6}$ g) of penicillinase. Dividing the amount of grams by the molecular weight yields **5×10^{-12} moles**.

$$(0.15 \times 10^{-6}) \text{ g} / (3 \times 10^4) \text{ g/mol} = (5 \times 10^{-12}) \text{ mol}$$

Now that we have the amount of moles, we can divide our rate constant by this value.

$$(5 \times 10^{-5}) \text{ min}^{-1} / (5 \times 10^{-12}) \text{ mol} = \mathbf{(1 \times 10^7) \text{ mol}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}}$$

Answer

The reaction is first order with $k = 1.0 \times 10^7$ mol^{-1} min^{-1}

Q12.4.13

Both technetium-99 and thallium-201 are used to image heart muscle in patients with suspected heart problems. The half-lives are 6 h and 73 h, respectively. What percent of the radioactivity would remain for each of the isotopes after 2 days (48 h)?

Solution

This problem is asking us for the percentage of radioactivity remaining after a certain time for both isotopes after 48 hours. We must identify an equation that will help us solve this and we can determine that we can determine this information using the first order equation.

This equation $\text{Ln}(N/N_o)= -kt$ tells that the Natural log of the fraction remaining is equal to the rate constant times time. To determine the rate constant, we can also compute .693 over the half-life given in the information.

For Technetium-99 we can determine the rate constant by plugging into the second equation: .693/6 hrs= .1155 h^{-1}

Now that we have the rate constant we can plug in : $Ln(N/N_o)=-(.1155h^{-1})(48h)$ so $Ln(N/N_o)=-5.544$ and if we take the inverse of the natural log, we get $(N/N_o)=3.9x10^{-3}$ and if we multiply this by 100, we get .39% remaining.

We can do this same process for Thallium-201 and plugin: .693/73 hrs= .009493151 h^{-1} and when we plug this into the first order equation we get:

$Ln(N/N_o)=-(.009493h^{-1})(48h)$ so $Ln(N/N_o)=-.45567248$ and when we take the inverse of the natural log, we get $(N/N_o)=.6340$ and when multiplied by 100, we get 63.40% remaining which makes sense since its half-life is 73 hours and only 48 hours have passed, half of the amount has yet to be consumed.

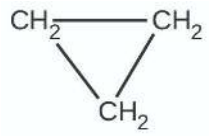
Answer

Technetium-99: 0.39%

Thallium-201: 63.40%

Q12.4.14

There are two molecules with the formula C_3H_6. Propene, $CH_3CH{=}CH_2$, is the monomer of the polymer polypropylene, which is used for indoor-outdoor carpets. Cyclopropane is used as an anesthetic:



When heated to 499 °C, cyclopropane rearranges (isomerizes) and forms propene with a rate constant of $5.95 \times 10^{-4}\ s^{-1}$. What is the half-life of this reaction? What fraction of the cyclopropane remains after 0.75 h at 499 °C?

Solution

Use the equation

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{ln2}{k}$$

since this is a first-order reaction. You can tell that this is a **first order reaction** due to the units of measurement of the rate constant, which is s^{-1}. Different orders of reactions lead to different rate constants, and a rate constant of s^{-1} will always be first order.

Plug into the equation, and you get half life = 1164.95 seconds. To convert this to hours, we would divide this number by 3600 seconds/hour, to get **0.324 hours**.

Use the integrated first order rate law

$$ln\frac{[A]}{[A]_0} = -kt$$

. In this equation, $[A]_0$ represents the initial amount of compound present at time 0, while [A] represents the amount of compound that is left after the reaction has occurred. Therefore, the fraction

$$\frac{[A]}{[A]_0}$$

is equal to the fraction of cyclopropane that remains after a certain amount of time, in this case, 0.75 hours.

Substitute x for the fraction of

$$\frac{[A]}{[A]_0}$$

into the integrated rate law:

$$ln\frac{[A]}{[A]_0} = -kt$$

$$ln(x) = -5.95x10^{-4}(0.75)$$

$$x = e^{(-0.000595)(0.75)}$$

= 0.20058 = 20%.

So, the half life is 0.324 hours, and 20% of the cyclopropane will remain as 80% will have formed propene.

Answer

0.324 hours. ; 20% remains

Q12.4.16

Fluorine-18 is a radioactive isotope that decays by positron emission to form oxygen-18 with a half-life of 109.7 min. (A positron is a particle with the mass of an electron and a single unit of positive charge; the nuclear equation is $^{18}_{9}\text{F} \longrightarrow {}^{18}_{8}\text{O} + {}^{0}_{1}\text{e}^{+}$.) Physicians use ^{18}F to study the brain by injecting a quantity of fluoro-substituted glucose into the blood of a patient. The glucose accumulates in the regions where the brain is active and needs nourishment.

a. What is the rate constant for the decomposition of fluorine-18?
b. If a sample of glucose containing radioactive fluorine-18 is injected into the blood, what percent of the radioactivity will remain after 5.59 h?
c. How long does it takFe for 99.99% of the ^{18}F to decay?

Solution

a) The nuclear decay of an isotope of an element is represented by the first order equation:

$$\ln(N/N0) = -kt$$

Where t is time, N0 is the initial amount of the substance, N is the amount of the substance after time t, and k is the rate constant. We can rearrange the equation and isolate k so that we could solve for the rate constant:

$$k = [-\ln(N/N0)] / t$$

We are given that fluorine-18 has a half-life of 109.7 minutes. Since we have the half-life, we can choose an arbitrary value for N_0 and use half of that value for N. In this case, we choose 100 for N_0 and 50 for N. Now we can plug in those values into the equation above and solve for k.

$$k = [-\ln(50/100)] / 109.7$$

$$k = 0.6931 / 109.7 = 0.006319 \text{ min}^{-1}$$

The rate constant for this reaction is 0.006319 min^{-1}.

b) For this problem, we are able to use the same equation from part a:

$$\ln(N/N0) = -kt$$

However, this time we are given the amount of time elapsed instead of the half-life, and we are asked to determine the percent of fluorine-18 radioactivity remaining after that time. In this problem, we must plug in values for N0, k (determined from part a), and t.

But first, since we are given the elapsed time in hours, we must convert it into minutes:

$$5.59 \text{ hours x } (60 \text{ minutes} / 1 \text{ hours}) = 335.4 \text{ minutes}$$

This gives us the value for t. We also have values for k (0.006319 min^{-1}) and N_0 (again an arbitrary number.) Now we can plug values into the original equation, giving us:

$$\ln(N/100) = -(0.006319)(335.4)$$

We solve this equation by taking the exponential of both sides:

$$e^{\ln(N/100)} = e^{-(0.006319)(335.4)}$$

where e^{ln} equals 1 and now we can just solve for N:

$$N/100 = e^{-(0.006319)(335.4)}$$

$$N = [e^{-(0.006319)(335.4)}] \times 100 = 12.0$$

Since 100 was used as the initial amount and 12.0 was determined as the remaining amount, 12.0 can be used as the percentage of remaining amount of radioactivity of fluorine-18. **Thus the percent of fluorine-18 radioactivity remaining after 5.59 hours is 12.0%.**

c) This part of the question is much like the previous two parts, but this time we are given the initial amount of radioactivity, the final amount of radioactivity and we are asked do determine how long it took for that amount of radioactivity to decay. We are able to use the same equation:

$$\ln(N/N0) = -kt$$

However, now we are given N and N_0 and we have already determined k from before. We are told that 99.99% of the radioactivity has decayed, so we can use 100 and 0.01 for N_0 and N respectively. We plug these values in to the equation, solve for t, and get

$$\ln(0.01/1000) = -0.006319t$$

$$-9.21 = -0.006319t$$

$$t = 1458 \text{ minutes}$$

Therefore, its takes 1458 minutes for 99.99% of the radioactivity to decay.

Answer

a) 0.006319 min^{-1}

b) 12.0%

c) 1458 minutes

Q12.4.17

Suppose that the half-life of steroids taken by an athlete is 42 days. Assuming that the steroids biodegrade by a first-order process, how long would it take for $\frac{1}{64}$ of the initial dose to remain in the athlete's body?

Solution

252 days

for first order reaction: $t_{1/2} = 0.693 / k$

$k = 0.693 / 42$

$k = 0.0165$

for first order reaction: $[A] = [A]_0 e^{-kt}$

1/64 initial means that: $[A] = 1/64 [A]_0$

therefore: $1/64 [A]_0 = [A]_0 e^{-0.0165t}$

$t = 252$ days

Q12.4.18

Recently, the skeleton of King Richard III was found under a parking lot in England. If tissue samples from the skeleton contain about 93.79% of the carbon-14 expected in living tissue, what year did King Richard III die? The half-life for carbon-14 is 5730 years.

Solution

In order to find out what year King Richard III died, set [A]/[A_0] (the percent of carbon-14 still contained) equal to $0.5^{\text{time(t)/half life } (t_{1/2})}$ or use the equation $N(t) = N_0e^{-rt.}$

Using the first equation:

$A/A_0 = 0.5^{t/t_{1/2}}$ plug in the given numbers $.9379 = 0.5^{t/5730}$ and solve for t.

$ln.9379 = (t/5730)(ln0.5)$ (using the rule of logs)

$-.0641 = (t/5730)(-.693)$

$-367.36 = -.693t$

$t = 530.1 years$

Using $N(t) = N_0e^{-rt}$ this problem is solved by the following:

$1/2 = e^{-5730r}$

$r = 0.000121$

Now that we know what r is, we can use this value in our original formula and solve for t, the amount of years that have passed.

This time, we use 93.78, the percent of the carbon-14 remaining as N(t) and 100 as the original, N_0.

$93.78 = 100e^{-0.000121t}$

$t = 530.7$ years

Another way of doing this is by using these two equations:

$\lambda = \frac{0.693}{t_{1/2}}$ and $\frac{n_t}{n_0} = -\lambda t$

n_t = concentration at time t (93.79)

n_0 = initial concentration (100)

First solve for lambda or the decay constant by plugging in the half life.

Then plug in lambda and the other numbers into the second equation, and solve for t- which should equal to 530.1 years as well.

If we want to find out what year King Richard III died, we take the current year, 2017, and subtract 530 years. Doing this, we find that King Richard III died in the year 1487.

Answer

King Richard III died in the year 1487

Q12.4.19

Nitroglycerine is an extremely sensitive explosive. In a series of carefully controlled experiments, samples of the explosive were heated to 160 °C and their first-order decomposition studied. Determine the average rate constants for each experiment using the following data:

Initial [$C_3H_5N_3O_9$] (*M*)	4.88	3.52	2.29	1.81	5.33	4.05	2.95	1.72
***t* (s)**	300	300	300	300	180	180	180	180
% Decomposed	52.0	52.9	53.2	53.9	34.6	35.9	36.0	35.4

Solution

First we need to understand what the question is asking for: the average rate constant. The average rate constant is the variable "k" when discussing kinetics and it can be defined as the proportionality constant in the equation that expresses the relationship

between the rate of a chemical reaction and the concentrations of the reacting substances. Knowing that we need to find K in this first order reaction, we can look to formulas that include "k," initial and final concentrations $[A]_o and [A]_t$, and half life time "t." Since this is a first order reaction, we can look to the first order equations, and doing that we find one that includes the variables given in the question:

$$\ln[A]_t = -kt + \ln[A]_o$$

For the first reaction, we have an initial concentration of 4.88 M, and a percentage decomposed. To find the final concentration, we must multiply the initial concentration by the percentage decomposed to know how much decomposed, and subtract that from the original to find out how much is left: 4.88M x 0.52= 2.54 M and 4.88M-2.54M=2.34M

Now, we have the variables we need, and we plug it into the equation above:

$\ln[A]_t = -kt + \ln[A]_o$

$\ln[2.34M] = -k(300s) + \ln[4.88M]$

$k = \frac{-(\ln[2.34M] - \ln[4.88M])}{300}$

$k = 2.45x10^{-3}$

Since it asks for the rate constant of each experiment, we now must do the same procedure for each data set to find the rate constant:

Second experiment

$\ln[A]_t = -kt + \ln[A]_o$

$\ln[1.66M] = -k(300s) + \ln[3.52M]$

$k = \frac{-(\ln[1.66M] - \ln[3.52M])}{300}$

$k = 2.51x10^{-3}$

Third experiment

$\ln[A]_t = -kt + \ln[A]_o$

$\ln[1.07M] = -k(300s) + \ln[2.29M]$

$k = \frac{-(\ln[1.07M] - \ln[2.29M])}{300}$

$k = 2.54x10^{-3}$

Fourth experiment

$\ln[A]_t = -kt + \ln[A]_o$

$\ln[0.834M] = -k(300s) + \ln[1.81M]$

$k = \frac{-(\ln[0.834M] - \ln[1.81M])}{300}$

$k = 2.58x10^{-3}$

Fifth Experiment

$\ln[A]_t = -kt + \ln[A]_o$

$\ln[3.49M] = -k(180s) + \ln[5.33M]$

$k = \frac{-(\ln[3.49M] - \ln[5.33M])}{180}$

$k = 2.35x10^{-3}$

Sixth Experiment

$\ln[A]_t = -kt + \ln[A]_o$

$\ln[2.60M] = -k(180s) + \ln[4.05M]$

$k=\frac{-(\ln[2.60M]-\ln[4.05M])}{180}$

$k=2.46x10^{-3}$

Seventh Experiment

$\ln[A]_t=-kt+\ln[A]_o$

$\ln[1.89M]=-k(180s)+\ln[2.95M]$

$k=\frac{-(\ln[1.89M]-\ln[2.95M])}{180}$

$k=2.47x10^{-3}$

Eighth experiment

$\ln[A]_t=-kt+\ln[A]_o$

$\ln[1.11M]=-k(180s)+\ln[1.72M]$

$k=\frac{-(\ln[1.11M]-\ln[1.72M])}{180}$

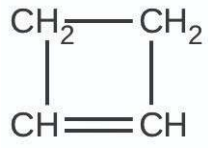
$k=2.43x10^{-3}$

Answer

$[A]_0$ (M)	$k \times 10^3$ (s^{-1})
4.88	2.45
3.52	2.51
2.29	2.54
1.81	2.58
5.33	2.35
4.05	2.44
2.95	2.47
1.72	2.43

Q12.4.20

For the past 10 years, the unsaturated hydrocarbon 1,3-butadiene ($CH_2=CH-CH=CH_2$) has ranked 38th among the top 50 industrial chemicals. It is used primarily for the manufacture of synthetic rubber. An isomer exists also as cyclobutene:



The isomerization of cyclobutene to butadiene is first-order and the rate constant has been measured as 2.0×10^{-4} s^{-1} at 150 °C in a 0.53-L flask. Determine the partial pressure of cyclobutene and its concentration after 30.0 minutes if an isomerization reaction is carried out at 150 °C with an initial pressure of 55 torr.

Solution

Since this is a first order reaction, the integrated rate law is: $[A_t]=[A_0]e^{-kt}$

Partial Pressure: Use the integrated rate law to find the partial pressure at 30 minutes:

Use A_0 = 55 torr, t = 30 min, and k = $2.0*10^{-4}s^{-1}$ to solve the integrated rate law equation:

$[A_{30}]=(55torr)*e^{-(2.0x10^{-4}\frac{1}{sec})(30min\cdot\frac{60sec}{1min})}$

Solve this equation to get:

$[A_{30}] = (55torr) * e^{-0.36}$

$A_{30}]$ = 38.37 torr.

Initial Concentration: Find the initial concentration using the ideal gas law.

The ideal gas law is given by $PV = nRT \rightarrow n = \frac{PV}{RT}$. Use this form of the gas law to solve for the initial concentration n.

Use V = 0.53L, R = 0.08206 $\frac{L*atm}{mol*L}$, T = 423.15 K, and P = $\frac{1atm}{760}$ = 0.07237 atm .

Solve the ideal gas equation using these values:

$n = \frac{(55torr)(0.53L)}{(0.08206\frac{L*atm}{mol*K})(423.15K)} = 0.00110$ moles cyclobutene.

Now find the initial concentration of cyclobutene A_0 using the equation $[A_0] = \frac{n}{V}$:

$A_0 = \frac{n}{V} = \frac{0.00110moles}{0.53L} = 0.00208M$

Concentration at 30 minutes: Find the concentration of cyclobutene at 30 minutes by using the integrated rate law given above, using time t = 30 minutes, or 1800 seconds.

$[A_{30}] = (0.00208M)e^{-0.36} = 0.00145M$

So at 30 minutes, the cyclobutene concentration is 0.00145 M, and the partial pressure is 38.37 torr.

Answer

Partial Pressure: 38.37 torr.

Concentration: 0.00145 M

12.5: Collision Theory

Q12.5.1

Chemical reactions occur when reactants collide. What are two factors that may prevent a collision from producing a chemical reaction?

Solution

The two factors that may prevent a collision from producing a chemical reaction are:

1. **Kinetic energy of the molecule**

In order for chemical reactions to occur, molecules require enough velocity to overcome the minimum activation energy needed to break the old bonds and form new bonds with other molecules. At higher temperatures, the molecules possess the minimum amount of kinetic energy needed which ensures the collisions will be energetic enough to lead to a reaction.

2. **The orientation of molecules during the collision**

Two molecules have to collide in the right orientation in order for the reaction to occur. Molecules have to orient properly for another molecule to collide at the right activation state.

Q12.5.2

When every collision between reactants leads to a reaction, what determines the rate at which the reaction occurs?

Solution

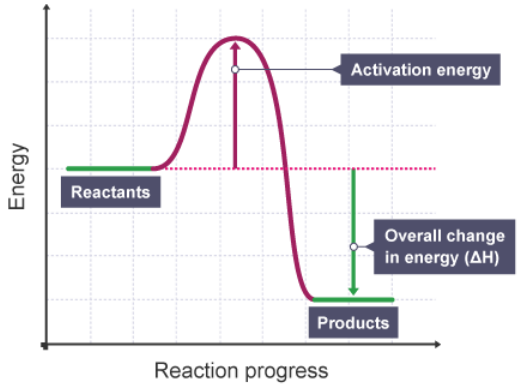
There has to be contact between reactants for a reaction to occur. The more the reactants collide, the more often reactions can occur. Factors that determine reaction rates include concentration of reactants, temperature, physical states of reactants, surface area, and the use of a catalyst. The reaction rate usually increases as the concentration of a reactant increases. Increasing the temperature increases the average kinetic energy of molecules, causing them to collide more frequently, which increases the reaction rate. When two reactants are in the same fluid phase, their particles collide more frequently, which increases the reaction rate. If the surface area of a reactant is increased, more particles are exposed to the other reactant therefore more

collisions occur and the rate of reaction increases. A catalyst participates in a chemical reaction and increases the reaction rate without changing itself.

Q12.5.3

What is the activation energy of a reaction, and how is this energy related to the activated complex of the reaction?

Solution



Activation energy is the energy barrier that must be overcome in order for a reaction to occur. To get the molecules into a state that allows them to break and form bonds, the molecules must be contorted (deformed, or bent) into an unstable state called the transition state. The transition state is a high-energy state, and some amount of energy – the activation energy – must be added in order for the molecule reach it. Because the transition state is unstable, reactant molecules don't stay there long, but quickly proceed to the next step of the chemical reaction.The activated complex is the highest energy of the transition state of the reaction.

Q12.5.5

Describe how graphical methods can be used to determine the activation energy of a reaction from a series of data that includes the rate of reaction at varying temperatures.

Solution

This method is based on the **Arrhenius equation** which can be used to show the effect of a change of temperature on the **rate constant**, and therefore on the rate of reaction.

The rate constant is different from reaction rat in that the reaction rate is the measure of how fast or slow a chemical reaction takes place while a rate constant is a constant that shows the relationship between the reaction rate and the concentrations of the reactants or products.

For example, for the reaction $A + B \rightarrow C$, the rate law would be:

$$rate = k[A]^a[B]^b$$

k = rate constant

[A] = concentration of reactant A

a = order of reaction with respect to A

[B] = concentration of reactant B

b = order of reaction with respect to B

However, the rate constant remains constant only if you are changing the concentration of the reactants. If you change the temperature or the catalyst of the reaction, the rate constant will change and this is demonstrated by the Arrhenius equation:

$$k = Ae^{\frac{-E_a}{RT}}$$

$$ln\left(\frac{k_1}{k_2}\right) = \left(\frac{-E_a}{R}\right)\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right)$$

k = rate constant

A = frequency factor

E_a = activation energy

e = exponential function, e^x

R = gas constant

T = temperature (K)

In other words, the activation energy of a reaction, E_a, from a series of data that includes the rate of reaction, k, at varying temperatures can be determined by graphing it on a plot of $\ln k$ versus $\frac{1}{T}$. You can then use the slope of the graph you have plotted to solve for E_a by setting the slope equal to $\frac{-E_a}{R}$.

Q12.5.6

How does an increase in temperature affect rate of reaction? Explain this effect in terms of the collision theory of the reaction rate.

S12.5.6

Collision theory states that the rates of chemical reactions depend on the fraction of molecules with the correct orientation, fraction of collisions with required energy, and the collision frequency. Because the fraction of collisions with required energy is a function of temperature, as temperature increases, the fraction of collisions with required energy also increases. The kinetic energy of reactants also increases with temperature which means molecules will collide more often increasing collisions frequency. With increased fraction of collisions with required energy and collisions frequency, the rate of chemical reaction increases. We see mathematically, from the Arrhenius equation, that temperature and the rate constant are related.

$$k = Ae^{\frac{E_a}{RT}} \tag{3.9.a.14}$$

where k is the rate constant, A is a specific constant, R is 8.3145 J/K, Ea is the reaction-specific activation energy in J, and T is temperature in K. We see from the equation that k is very sensitive to changes in the temperature.

Q12.5.7

The rate of a certain reaction doubles for every 10 °C rise in temperature.

a. How much faster does the reaction proceed at 45 °C than at 25 °C?
b. How much faster does the reaction proceed at 95 °C than at 25 °C?

Solution

By finding the difference in temperature, 45 °C - 25 °C, we get 20 °C. Since the rate of the reaction doubles every 10 °C increase in temperature and the rate of the reaction experienced a 20 °C increase in temperature, we see that the reaction rate doubled twice ($2^2 = 4$). As a result, the **reaction proceeds four times faster**.

Following the same process as in part a, we get the difference in temperature to be 70 °C. Since the rate of the reaction doubles every 10 °C increase in temperature and the system experienced a 70 °C change, we see that the reaction doubled seven times ($2^7 = 128$). We can see the **reaction proceeds 128 times faster**.

(a) 4-times faster (b) 128-times faster

Q12.5.8

In an experiment, a sample of $NaClO_3$ was 90% decomposed in 48 min. Approximately how long would this decomposition have taken if the sample had been heated 20 °C higher?

S12.5.8

First off, it is important to recognize that this decomposition reaction is a **first-order reaction**, which can be written as follows: $2NaClO_3 \rightarrow 2NaCl + 3O_2$

Understanding this, it is important to be able to then be able to recognize which equation would be most useful given the initial conditions presented by the question. Since we are dealing with time, percentage of material left, and temperature, the only viable equation that could relate all of this would be the Arrhenius Equation, which is written as follows: $\ln(\frac{k_2}{k_1}) = \frac{Ea}{R}(\frac{1}{t_1} - \frac{1}{t_2})$

However, this problem does not give us enough information such as what the activation energy is or the initial temperature in order to mathematically solve this problem. Additionally, the problem tells us to approximate how long the decomposition would take, which means we are asked to answer this question conceptually based on our knowledge of thermodynamics and reaction rates. As a general rule of thumb, we know that for every 10˚C rise in temperature the rate of reaction doubles. Since the question tells us that there is a 20˚C rise in temperature we can deduce that the reaction rate doubles twice, as per the general rule mentioned before. This means **the overall reaction rate for this decomposition would quadruple**, or would be 4 times faster than the reaction rate at the initial temperature.

We can gut check this answer by recalling how an increase in the average kinetic energy (temperature) decreases the time it takes for the reaction to take place and increase the reaction rate. Thus, if we increase the temperature we should have a faster reaction rate.

Q12.5.9

The rate constant at 325 °C for the decomposition reaction $\mathrm{C_4H_8} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{C_2H_4}$ is 6.1 × 10^{-8} s^{-1}, and the activation energy is 261 kJ per mole of C_4H_8. Determine the frequency factor for the reaction.

Solution

S12.5.9

Using the Arrhenius equation allows me to find the frequency factor, A.

$k=Ae^{-Ea/RT}$

k, Ea, R, and T are all known values. k, Ea, and T are given in the problem as $6.1x10^{-8}$, 261 kJ, and 598 K, respectively.

So, plugging them into the equation gives:

$6.1x10^{-8}\ s^{-1}=Ae^{(-261000\ J)/(8.3145\ J/mol)(598\ K)}$

Take $e^{(-261000\ J)/(8.3145\ J/mol)(598)}$ and get 1.59×10^{-23}. Divide k, 6.1×10^{-8}, by 1.59×10^{-23} and get $A=3.9 \times 10^{15} s^{-1}$

A12.5.9

$3.9 \times 10^{15}\ s^{-1}$

Q12.5.10

The rate constant for the decomposition of acetaldehyde (CH_3CHO), to methane (CH_4), and carbon monoxide (CO), in the gas phase is 1.1 × 10^{-2} L/mol/s at 703 K and 4.95 L/mol/s at 865 K. Determine the activation energy for this decomposition.

S12.5.10

The equation for relating the rate constant and activation energy of a reaction is the Arrhenius equation:

$$k = Ae^{-\frac{E_a}{RT}} \tag{3.9.a.15}$$

When given two rate constants at two different temperatures but for the same reaction, the Arrhenius equation can be rewritten as:

$$ln(\frac{k_2}{k_1}) = \frac{E_a}{R}(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}) \tag{3.9.a.16}$$

In this problem, all the variables are given except for the E_a (activation energy).

$k_1 = 1.1 \times 10^{-2}$ L/mol/s

$T_1 = 703$ K

k_2 = 4.95 L/mol/s

T_2 = 865 K

R = 8.314 J/(mol K) (Ideal Gas Constant)

Now plug in all these values into the equation, and solve for E_a.

$$ln(\frac{4.95\frac{L}{mol\times s}}{1.1\times10^{-2}\frac{L}{mol\times s}}) = \frac{E_a}{8.314\times10^{-3}\frac{kJ}{mol\times K}}(\frac{1}{703}-\frac{1}{865}) \quad (3.9.a.17)$$

E_a = 190 kJ (2 sig figs)

Q12.5.11

An elevated level of the enzyme alkaline phosphatase (ALP) in the serum is an indication of possible liver or bone disorder. The level of serum ALP is so low that it is very difficult to measure directly. However, ALP catalyzes a number of reactions, and its relative concentration can be determined by measuring the rate of one of these reactions under controlled conditions. One such reaction is the conversion of p-nitrophenyl phosphate (PNPP) to p-nitrophenoxide ion (PNP) and phosphate ion. Control of temperature during the test is very important; the rate of the reaction increases 1.47 times if the temperature changes from 30 °C to 37 °C. What is the activation energy for the ALP–catalyzed conversion of PNPP to PNP and phosphate?

Solution

43.0 kJ/mol

Q12.5.12

In terms of collision theory, to which of the following is the rate of a chemical reaction proportional?

a. the change in free energy per second
b. the change in temperature per second
c. the number of collisions per second
d. the number of product molecules

Q12.5.13

Hydrogen iodide, HI, decomposes in the gas phase to produce hydrogen, H_2, and iodine, I_2. The value of the rate constant, *k*, for the reaction was measured at several different temperatures and the data are shown here:

Temperature (K)	k (M^{-1} s^{-1})
555	6.23×10^{-7}
575	2.42×10^{-6}
645	1.44×10^{-4}
700	2.01×10^{-3}

What is the value of the activation energy (in kJ/mol) for this reaction?

Solution

177 kJ/mol

Q12.5.14

The element Co exists in two oxidation states, Co(II) and Co(III), and the ions form many complexes. The rate at which one of the complexes of Co(III) was reduced by Fe(II) in water was measured. Determine the activation energy of the reaction from the following data:

T (K)	k (s^{-1})

T (K)	k (s^{-1})
293	0.054
298	0.100

Q12.5.15

The hydrolysis of the sugar sucrose to the sugars glucose and fructose,

$$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O \longrightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + C_6H_{12}O_6$$

follows a first-order rate equation for the disappearance of sucrose: Rate = $k[C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}]$ (The products of the reaction, glucose and fructose, have the same molecular formulas but differ in the arrangement of the atoms in their molecules.)

a. In neutral solution, $k = 2.1 \times 10^{-11}$ s^{-1} at 27 °C and 8.5×10^{-11} s^{-1} at 37 °C. Determine the activation energy, the frequency factor, and the rate constant for this equation at 47 °C (assuming the kinetics remain consistent with the Arrhenius equation at this temperature).
b. When a solution of sucrose with an initial concentration of 0.150 *M* reaches equilibrium, the concentration of sucrose is 1.65×10^{-7} *M*. How long will it take the solution to reach equilibrium at 27 °C in the absence of a catalyst? Because the concentration of sucrose at equilibrium is so low, assume that the reaction is irreversible.
c. Why does assuming that the reaction is irreversible simplify the calculation in part (b)?

Solution

E_a = 108 kJ

$A = 2.0 \times 10^8$ s^{-1}

$k = 3.2 \times 10^{-10}$ s^{-1}

(b) 1.81×10^8 h or 7.6×10^6 day. (c) Assuming that the reaction is irreversible simplifies the calculation because we do not have to account for any reactant that, having been converted to product, returns to the original state.

Q12.5.16

Use the PhET Reactions & Rates interactive simulation to simulate a system. On the “Single collision” tab of the simulation applet, enable the “Energy view” by clicking the “+” icon. Select the first $A + BC \longrightarrow AB + C$ reaction (A is yellow, B is purple, and C is navy blue). Using the “straight shot” default option, try launching the *A* atom with varying amounts of energy. What changes when the Total Energy line at launch is below the transition state of the Potential Energy line? Why? What happens when it is above the transition state? Why?

Q12.5.17

Use the PhET Reactions & Rates interactive simulation to simulate a system. On the “Single collision” tab of the simulation applet, enable the “Energy view” by clicking the “+” icon. Select the first $A + BC \longrightarrow AB + C$ reaction (A is yellow, B is purple, and C is navy blue). Using the “angled shot” option, try launching the *A* atom with varying angles, but with more Total energy than the transition state. What happens when the *A* atom hits the *BC* molecule from different directions? Why?

Solution

The *A* atom has enough energy to react with *BC*; however, the different angles at which it bounces off of *BC* without reacting indicate that the orientation of the molecule is an important part of the reaction kinetics and determines whether a reaction will occur.

12.6: Reaction Mechanisms

Q12.6.1

Why are elementary reactions involving three or more reactants very uncommon?

Q12.6.2

In general, can we predict the effect of doubling the concentration of *A* on the rate of the overall reaction $A + B \longrightarrow C$? Can we predict the effect if the reaction is known to be an elementary reaction?

Solution

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

No. In general, for the overall reaction, we cannot predict the effect of changing the concentration without knowing the rate equation. Yes. If the reaction is an elementary reaction, then doubling the concentration of *A* doubles the rate.

Q12.6.3

Phosgene, $COCl_2$, one of the poison gases used during World War I, is formed from chlorine and carbon monoxide. The mechanism is thought to proceed by:

step 1:	Cl + CO → COCl
step 2:	COCl + Cl_2 → $COCl_2$ + Cl

a. Write the overall reaction equation.
b. Identify any reaction intermediates.
c. Identify any intermediates.

Q12.6.4

Define these terms:

a. unimolecular reaction
b. bimolecular reaction
c. elementary reaction
d. overall reaction

Q12.6.5

What is the rate equation for the elementary termolecular reaction $A + 2B \longrightarrow$ products ? For $3A \longrightarrow$ products?

Solution

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

We are given that both of these reactions are elementary termolecular. The molecularity of a reaction refers to the number of reactant particles that react together with the proper and energy and orientation. Termolecular reactions have three atoms to collide simultaneously. As it is termolecular, and there are no additional reactants aside from the three given in each reaction, there are no intermediate reactions. The rate law for elementary reactions is determined by the stoichiometry of the reaction without needed experimental data.

The basic rate form for the elementary step is what follows:

$rate = k \cdot reactant\ 1^{i} \cdot reactant\ 2^{ii} \cdot \ldots$ Where i and ii are the stochiometric coefficient from reactant 1 and 2 respectively.

For: $3A \rightarrow products$

$k \cdot A^3 = rate$

For: $A + 2B \rightarrow products$

$k \cdot [A] \cdot [B]^2 = rate$

Note that the order of these reactions are both three.

Answer

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

Rate = $k[A][B]^2$; Rate = $k[A]^3$

Q12.6.6

Given the following reactions and the corresponding rate laws, in which of the reactions might the elementary reaction and the overall reaction be the same?

(a) $\mathrm{Cl_2 + CO \longrightarrow Cl_2CO}$

$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{Cl_2}]^{\frac{3}{2}}[\mathrm{CO}]$

(b) $\mathrm{PCl_3 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow PCl_5}$

$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{PCl_3}][\mathrm{Cl_2}]$

(c) $\mathrm{2\,NO + H_2 \longrightarrow N_2 + H_2O}$

$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO}][\mathrm{H_2}]$

(d) $\mathrm{2\,NO + O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,NO_2}$

$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO}]^2[\mathrm{O_2}]$

(e) $\mathrm{NO + O_3 \longrightarrow NO_2 + O_2}$

$\text{rate} = k[\mathrm{NO}][\mathrm{O_3}]$

Solution

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

An elementary reaction is a chemical reaction in which the reactants directly form products in a single step. In another words, the rate law for the overall reaction is same as experimentally found rate law. Out of 5 options, option (b),(d), and (e) are such reactions

Q12.6.7

Write the rate equation for each of the following elementary reactions:

a. $\mathrm{O_3 \xrightarrow{sunlight} O_2 + O}$
b. $\mathrm{O_3 + Cl \longrightarrow O_2 + ClO}$
c. $\mathrm{ClO + O \longrightarrow Cl + O_2}$
d. $\mathrm{O_3 + NO \longrightarrow NO_2 + O_2}$
e. $\mathrm{NO_2 + O \longrightarrow NO + O_2}$

Solution

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

Rate equations are **dependent on the reactants and not the products.**

The rate law of a reaction can be found using a rate constant (which is found experimentally), and the initial concentrations of reactants.

A general solution for the equation

$aA + bB \rightarrow cC + dD$

is $rate = k[A]^m[B]^n$ where m and n are reaction orders.

However, reaction orders are found experimentally, and since we do not have experimental data for these reactions, we can disregard that part of the equation.

To find the rate laws, all we have to do is plug the reactants into the rate formula. This is only due to the case that these are elementary reactions. Further reading on elementary reactions can be found on Libre Texts.

a. $\mathrm{O_3 \longrightarrow O_2 + O}$

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122503

To write this reaction's rate equation, only focus on the reactant(s) and its/their concentration and multiplying that by a rate constant, "k".

$$\text{Rate} = k[O_3]$$

b. $O_3 + Cl \longrightarrow O_2 + ClO$

To write this reaction's rate equation, only focus on the reactant(s) and its/their concentration and multiplying that by a rate constant, "k".

$$\text{Rate} = k[O_3][Cl]$$

c. $ClO + O \longrightarrow Cl + O_2$

To write this reaction's rate equation, only focus on the reactant(s) and its/their concentration and multiplying that by a rate constant, "k".

$$\text{Rate} = k[ClO][O]$$

d. $O_3 + NO \longrightarrow NO_2 + O_2$

To write this reaction's rate equation, only focus on the reactant(s) and its/their concentration and multiplying that by a rate constant, "k".

$$\text{Rate} = k[O_3][NO]$$

e. $NO_2 + O \longrightarrow NO + O_2$

To write this reaction's rate equation, only focus on the reactant(s) and its/their concentration and multiplying that by a rate constant, "k".

$$\text{Rate} = k[NO_2][O]$$

Answer

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

(a) $\text{Rate}_1 = k[O_3]$; (b) $\text{Rate}_2 = k[O_3][Cl]$; (c) $\text{Rate}_3 = k[ClO][O]$; (d) $\text{Rate}_2 = k[O_3][NO]$; (e) $\text{Rate}_3 = k[NO_2][O]$

Q12.6.8

Nitrogen(II) oxide, NO, reacts with hydrogen, H_2, according to the following equation:

$$2\,NO + 2\,H_2 \longrightarrow N_2 + 2\,H_2O$$

What would the rate law be if the mechanism for this reaction were:

$$2\,NO + H_2 \longrightarrow N_2 + H_2O_2 \text{ (slow)}$$

$$H_2O_2 + H_2 \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O \text{ (fast)}$$

The rate law of the mechanism is determined by the slow step of the reaction. Since the slow step is an elementary step, the rate law can be drawn from the coefficients of the chemical equation. So therefore, the rate law is as follows: $\text{rate}=k[NO]^2[H_2]$. Since both NO and H_2 are reactants in the overall reaction (therefore are not intermediates in the reaction), no further steps have to be done to determine the rate law.

Q12.6.9

Consider the reaction

$CH_4 + Cl_2 \rightarrow CH_3Cl + HCl$ (occurs under light)

The mechanism is a chain reaction involving Cl atoms and CH_3 radicals. Which of the following steps does not terminate this chain reaction?

a. $CH_3 + Cl \rightarrow CH_3CI$
b. $CH_3 + HCl \rightarrow CH_4 + Cl$
c. $CH_3 + CH_3 \rightarrow C_2H_2$

d. $Cl + Cl \rightarrow Cl_2$

Solution

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

Chain reactions involve reactions that create products necessary for more reactions to occur. In this case, a reaction step will continue the chain reaction if a radical is generated. Radicals are highly reactive particles, so more reactions in the chain will take place as long as they are present. The chlorine is considered a free radical as it has an unpaired electron; for this reason it is very reactive and propagates a chain reaction. It does so by taking an electron from a stable molecule and making that molecule reactive, and that molecule goes on to react with stable species, and in that manner a long series of "chain" reactions are initiated. A chlorine radical will continue the chain by completing the following reaction:

$$Cl\cdot + CH_4 \rightarrow CH_3\cdot + HCl$$

The CH_3 generated by this reaction can then react with other species, continuing to propagate the chain reaction.

Option 1 is incorrect because the only species it produces is CH_3Cl, a product in the overall reaction that is unreactive. This terminates the chain reaction because it fails to produce any Cl or CH_3 radicals that are necessary for further propagating the overall reaction.

Option 2 is the correct answer because it produces a Cl radical. This Cl radical can continue the chain by colliding with CH_4 molecules.

Option 3 is incorrect because it fails to produce a radical capable of continuing the chain.

Option 4 is incorrect because it produces Cl_2, a molecule that does not react unless additional light is supplied. Therefore, this step breaks the chain.

Answer

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

Answer: Option 2: $CH_3 + HCl \rightarrow CH_4 + Cl$

Q12.6.10

Experiments were conducted to study the rate of the reaction represented by this equation.

$$2\,\mathrm{NO}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{N_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g)$$

Initial concentrations and rates of reaction are given here.

Experiment	Initial Concentration [NO] (mol/L)	Initial Concentration, [H_2] (mol/L)	Initial Rate of Formation of N_2 (mol/L min)
1	0.0060	0.0010	1.8×10^{-4}
2	0.0060	0.0020	3.6×10^{-4}
3	0.0010	0.0060	0.30×10^{-4}
4	0.0020	0.0060	1.2×10^{-4}

Consider the following questions:

a. Determine the order for each of the reactants, NO and H_2, from the data given and show your reasoning.
b. Write the overall rate law for the reaction.
c. Calculate the value of the rate constant, *k*, for the reaction. Include units.
d. For experiment 2, calculate the concentration of NO remaining when exactly one-half of the original amount of H_2 had been consumed.
e. The following sequence of elementary steps is a proposed mechanism for the reaction.

Step 1: $\mathrm{NO} + \mathrm{NO} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2O_2}$

Step 2: $N_2O_2 + H_2 \rightleftharpoons H_2O + N_2O$

Step 3: $N_2O + H_2 \rightleftharpoons N_2 + H_2O$

Based on the data presented, which of these is the rate determining step? Show that the mechanism is consistent with the observed rate law for the reaction and the overall stoichiometry of the reaction.

S12.6.10

1. i) Find the order for [NO] by using experiment 3 and 4 where [H_2] is constant

Notice that [NO] doubles from experiment 3 to 4 and the rate quadruples. So the order for [NO] is **2**

ii) Find the order for [H_2] by using experiment 1 and 2 where [NO] is constant

Notice that [H_2] doubles from experiment 1 to 2 and the rate doubles as well. So the order for [H_2] is **1**

2. Put in the order for each product as the exponents for the corresponding reactant.

$$rate = k[NO]^2[H_2]$$

3. Put in the concentrations and the rate from one of the experiments into the rate law and solve for k. (Here, experiement 1 is used but any of them will work)

$$rate = k[NO]^2[H_2] \;\; .00018 = k[.006]^2[.001] k = 5000 M^{-2} s^{-1}$$

4. Plug in values for experiment 2 into the rate law equation and solve for the concentration of NO

$$.00036 = 5000[NO]^2[.001] [NO]^2 = 7.2x10^{-5} \;\; [NO] = .0085M$$

5. Write the rate laws for each step and then see which matches the rate law we found in question 2. The rate determining step (the slow step) is the one that gives the rate for the overall reaction. Because of this, only those concentrations will influence the overall reaction, contrary to what we would believe if we just looked at the overall reaction.

Step 1: $NO + NO \rightleftharpoons N_2O_2$

$rate = k_1[NO]^2$ This rate law is not the same as the one we calculate in question 2 so this **can not** be the rate determining step

Step 2: $N_2O_2 + H_2 \rightleftharpoons N_2O + N_2O$

$rate = k_2[N_2O_2][H_2]$

Since N_2O_2 is an intermediate you must replace it in the rate law equation. Intermediates can not be in the rate law because they do not appear in the overall reaction. Here you can take the reverse of equation 1 (k_{-1}) and substitute the other side (the reactants of equation 1) for the intermediate in the rate law equation.

$$rate_1 = rate_{-1}$$

$$k_1[NO]^2 = k_{-1}[N_2O_2]$$

$$[N_2O_2] = \frac{k_1[NO]^2}{k_{-1}}$$

$rate = \frac{k_2 k_1 [NO]^2 [H_2]}{k_{-1}}$

Overall: $rate = k[NO]^2[H_2]$ This **is the same** so it is the rate determining step.

So $N_2O_2 + H_2 \rightleftharpoons N_2O + N_2O$ is the rate determining step step.

Answer

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

(a) NO: 2

H_2 : 1

(b) Rate = k [NO]^2[H_2];

(c) $k = 5.0 \times 10^3\ \text{mol}^{-2}\ \text{L}^{-2}\ \text{min}^{-1}$;

(d) 0.0050 mol/L;

(e) Step II is the rate-determining step.

Q12.6.11

The reaction of CO with Cl_2 gives phosgene ($COCl_2$), a nerve gas that was used in World War I. Use the mechanism shown here to complete the following exercises:

- $\text{Cl}_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\text{Cl}(g)$ (fast, k_1 represents the forward rate constant, k_{-1} the reverse rate constant)
- $\text{CO}(g) + \text{Cl}(g) \longrightarrow \text{COCl}(g)$ (slow, k_2 the rate constant)
- $\text{COCl}(g) + \text{Cl}(g) \longrightarrow \text{COCl}_2(g)$ (fast, k_3 the rate constant)

a. Write the overall reaction.
b. Identify all intermediates.
c. Write the rate law for each elementary reaction.
d. Write the overall rate law expression.

Solution

Add texts here. Do not delete this text first.

1. To write the overall reaction you have to identify the intermediates and leave them out. The easiest way to do this is to write out all the products and reactants and cross out anything that is on both sides.

$$Cl_2(g) + CO(g) + \cancel{2Cl(g)} + \cancel{COCl(g)} \Rightarrow \cancel{2Cl(g)} + \cancel{COCl(g)} + COCl_2(g)$$

In this you will cross out the 2Cl(g) molecules and the COCl(g). What is left after that is the overall reaction.

$Cl_2(g) + CO(g) \Rightarrow + COCl_2(g)$

2. For part two you will just list the intermediates that you crossed out.

Cl and COCl are intermediates

3. Each rate law will be the rate equal to the rate constant times the concentrations of the reactants

reaction 1

(forward) rate=$k_1[Cl_2]$ (reverse) rate=$k_{-1}[Cl]$

reaction 2

rate=$k_2[CO][Cl]$

Reaction 3

rate=$k_3[COCl][Cl]$

4. The overall rate law is based off the slowest step (step #2), since it is the rate determining step, but Cl is present in that rate law so we have to replace it with an equivalent that does not contain an intermediate. To do this you use the equilibrium since the rates are the same you can set up the rate laws of the forward and reverse equal to each other.

$k_1[Cl_2] = k_{-1}[Cl]$

$[Cl] = k_1[Cl_2]/k_{-1}$

rate=$k_2[CO]k_1[Cl_2]/k_{-1}$

rate=$k^{\circ}[CO][Cl_2]$

Steps to replacing and intermediate

1. Set the forward and reverse reaction equal to each other using separate constants
2. Solve for the intermediate using algebra
3. Plug into the rate determining formula

4. All the k's will be condensed into a K prime constant

12.7: Catalysis

Q12.7.1

Account for the increase in reaction rate brought about by a catalyst.

Q12.7.2

Compare the functions of homogeneous and heterogeneous catalysts.

Q12.7.3

Consider this scenario and answer the following questions: Chlorine atoms resulting from decomposition of chlorofluoromethanes, such as CCl_2F_2, catalyze the decomposition of ozone in the atmosphere. One simplified mechanism for the decomposition is:

$$\begin{aligned} O_3 &\xrightarrow{\text{sunlight}} O_2 + O \\ O_3 + Cl &\longrightarrow O_2 + ClO \\ ClO + O &\longrightarrow Cl + O_2 \end{aligned}$$

a. Explain why chlorine atoms are catalysts in the gas-phase transformation:

$$2\,O_3 \longrightarrow 3\,O_2$$

b. Nitric oxide is also involved in the decomposition of ozone by the mechanism:

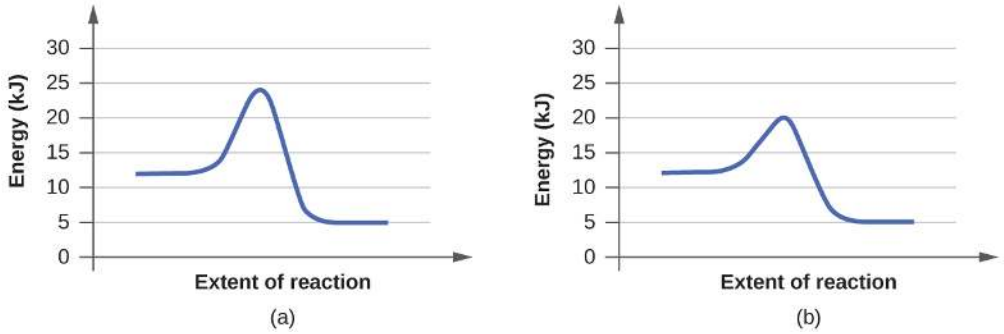
$$\begin{aligned} O_3 &\xrightarrow{\text{sunlight}} O_2 + O \\ O_3 + NO &\longrightarrow NO_2 + O_2 \\ NO_2 + O &\longrightarrow NO + O_2 \end{aligned}$$

Is NO a catalyst for the decomposition? Explain your answer.

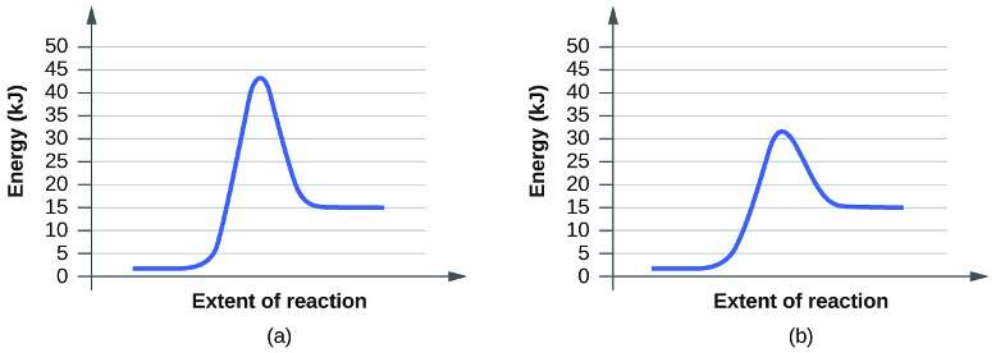
Q12.7.4

For each of the following pairs of reaction diagrams, identify which of the pair is catalyzed:

(a)



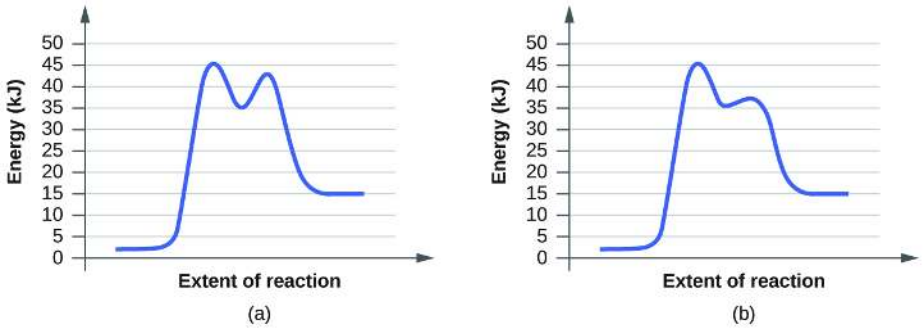
https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122503



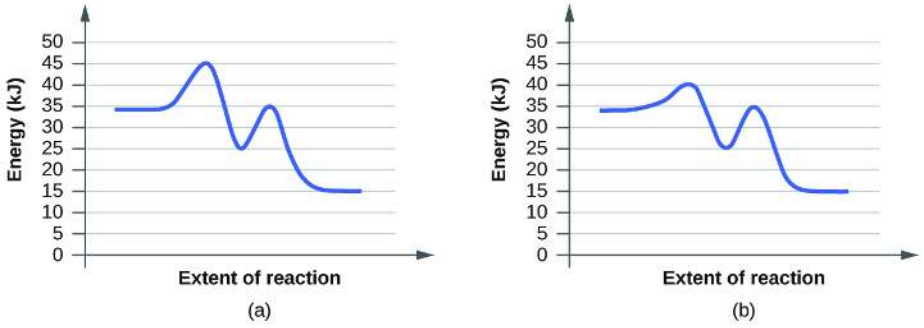
Q12.7.5

For each of the following pairs of reaction diagrams, identify which of the pairs is catalyzed:

(a)



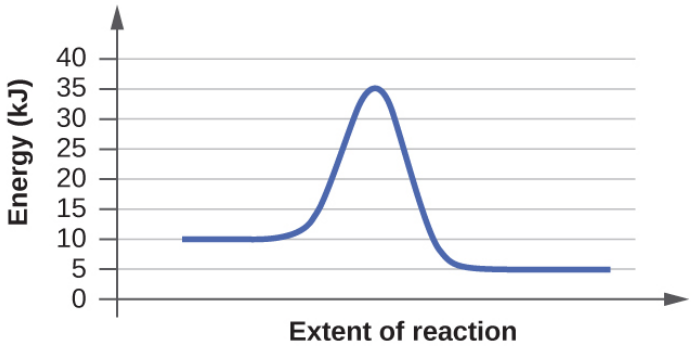
(b)



Q12.7.6

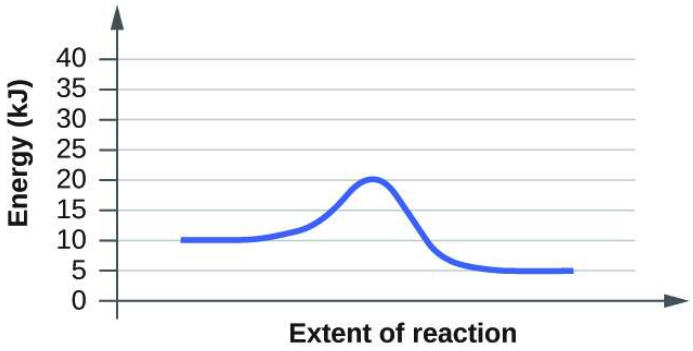
For each of the following reaction diagrams, estimate the activation energy (E_a) of the reaction:

(a)



https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122503

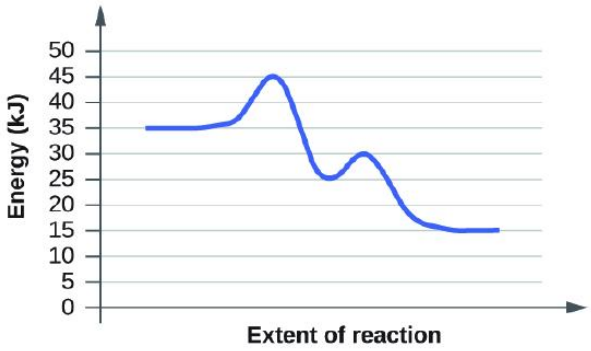
(b)



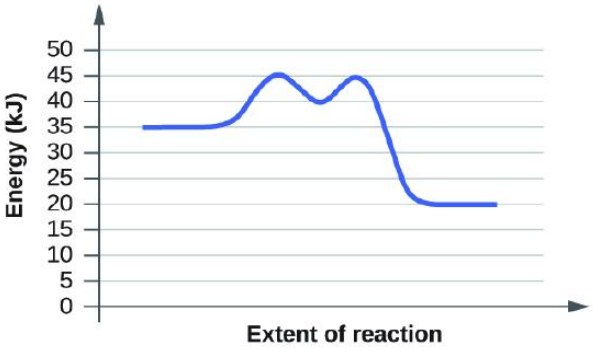
Q12.7.7

For each of the following reaction diagrams, estimate the activation energy (E_a) of the reaction:

(a)



(b)



Q12.7.8

1. Based on the diagrams in Question Q12.7.6, which of the reactions has the fastest rate? Which has the slowest rate?
2. Based on the diagrams in Question Q12.7.7, which of the reactions has the fastest rate? Which has the slowest rate?

This page titled 3.9.a: Kinetics (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3.9.0: Nuclear Chemistry

A general chemistry Libretexts Textbook remixed and remastered from OpenStax's textbook:

General Chemistry

The chemical reactions that we have considered in previous chapters involve changes in the *electronic* structure of the species involved, that is, the arrangement of the **electrons** around atoms, ions, or molecules. *Nuclear* structure, the numbers of protons and neutrons within the nuclei of the atoms involved, remains unchanged during chemical reactions. This chapter will introduce the topic of nuclear chemistry, which began with the discovery of radioactivity in 1896 by French physicist Antoine Becquerel and has become increasingly important during the twentieth and twenty-first centuries, providing the basis for various technologies related to energy, medicine, geology, and many other areas.

3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
3.9.2 Nuclear Equations
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
3.9.5 Uses of Radioisotopes
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
3.9.7 Nuclear Chemistry (Exercises)

Contributors

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 3.9.0: Nuclear Chemistry is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability

Learning Objectives

- Describe nuclear structure in terms of protons, neutrons, and electrons
- Calculate mass defect and binding energy for nuclei
- Explain trends in the relative stability of nuclei

Nuclear chemistry is the study of reactions that involve changes in nuclear structure. The chapter on atoms, molecules, and ions introduced the basic idea of nuclear structure, that the nucleus of an atom is composed of protons and, with the exception of ${}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$, neutrons. Recall that the number of protons in the nucleus is called the atomic number (Z) of the element, and the sum of the number of protons and the number of neutrons is the mass number (A). Atoms with the same atomic number but different mass numbers are isotopes of the same element. When referring to a single type of nucleus, we often use the term nuclide and identify it by the notation:

$$ {}^{\mathrm{A}}_{\mathrm{Z}}\mathrm{X} \tag{1}$$

where

- X is the symbol for the element,
- A is the mass number, and
- Z is the atomic number.

Often a nuclide is referenced by the name of the element followed by a hyphen and the mass number. For example, ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ is called "carbon-14."

Protons and neutrons, collectively called nucleons, are packed together tightly in a nucleus. With a radius of about 10^{-15} meters, a nucleus is quite small compared to the radius of the entire atom, which is about 10^{-10} meters. Nuclei are extremely dense compared to bulk matter, averaging 1.8×10^{14} grams per cubic centimeter. For example, water has a density of 1 gram per cubic centimeter, and iridium, one of the densest elements known, has a density of 22.6 g/cm^3. If the earth's density were equal to the average nuclear density, the earth's radius would be only about 200 meters (earth's actual radius is approximately 6.4×10^6 meters, 30,000 times larger). Example 1 demonstrates just how great nuclear densities can be in the natural world.

Example 1: Neutron Stars

Density of a Neutron Star Neutron stars form when the core of a very massive star undergoes gravitational collapse, causing the star's outer layers to explode in a supernova. Composed almost completely of neutrons, they are the densest-known stars in the universe, with densities comparable to the average density of an atomic nucleus. A neutron star in a faraway galaxy has a mass equal to 2.4 solar masses (1 solar mass = $M_\odot$ = mass of the sun = 1.99×10^{30} kg) and a diameter of 26 km.

a. What is the density ρ of this neutron star?
b. How does this neutron star's density compare to the density of a uranium nucleus, which has a diameter of about 15 fm (1 fm = 10^{-15} m)?

Solution

We can treat both the neutron star and the U-235 nucleus as spheres. Then the density for both is given by:

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V}$$

with

$$V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$$

(a) The radius of the neutron star is $\frac{1}{2} \times 26\ \mathrm{km} = \frac{1}{2} \times 2.6 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{m} = 1.3 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{m}$ so the density of the neutron star is:

$$\begin{aligned}\rho &= \frac{m}{V} \\ &= \frac{m}{\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3} \\ &= \frac{2.4(1.99 \times 10^{30}\ kg)}{\frac{4}{3}\pi(1.3 \times 10^4 m)^3} \\ &= 5.2 \times 10^{17}\ kg/m^3\end{aligned}$$

(b) The radius of the U-235 nucleus is $\frac{1}{2} \times 15 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{m} = 7.5 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{m}$, so the density of the U-235 nucleus is:

$$\begin{aligned}\rho &= \frac{m}{V} \\ &= \frac{m}{\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3} \\ &= \frac{235\ amu\left(\frac{1.66 \times 10^{-27}\ kg}{1\ amu}\right)}{\frac{4}{3}\pi(7.5 \times 10^{-15} m)^3} \\ &= 2.2 \times 10^{17}\ kg/m^3\end{aligned}$$

These values are fairly similar (same order of magnitude), but the nucleus is more than twice as dense as the neutron star.

? Exercise 1

Find the density of a neutron star with a mass of 1.97 solar masses and a diameter of 13 km, and compare it to the density of a hydrogen nucleus, which has a diameter of 1.75 fm ($1\ \text{fm} = 1 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{m}$).

Answer

The density of the neutron star is $3.4 \times 10^{18}\ \text{kg/m}^3$. The density of a hydrogen nucleus is $6.0 \times 10^{17}\ \text{kg/m}^3$. The neutron star is 5.7 times denser than the hydrogen nucleus.

To hold positively charged protons together in the very small volume of a nucleus requires very strong attractive forces because the positively charged protons repel one another strongly at such short distances. The force of attraction that holds the nucleus together is the strong nuclear force. (The strong force is one of the four fundamental forces that are known to exist. The others are the electromagnetic force, the gravitational force, and the nuclear weak force.) This force acts between protons, between neutrons, and between protons and neutrons. It is very different from the electrostatic force that holds negatively charged electrons around a positively charged nucleus (the attraction between opposite charges). Over distances less than 10^{-15} meters and within the nucleus, the strong nuclear force is much stronger than electrostatic repulsions between protons; over larger distances and outside the nucleus, it is essentially nonexistent.

Nuclear Binding Energy

As a simple example of the energy associated with the strong nuclear force, consider the helium atom composed of two protons, two neutrons, and two electrons. The total mass of these six subatomic particles may be calculated as:

$$\underset{\text{protons}}{(2 \times 1.0073\ \text{amu})} + \underset{\text{neutrons}}{(2 \times 1.0087\ \text{amu})} + \underset{\text{electrons}}{(2 \times 0.00055\ \text{amu})} = 4.0331\ \text{amu} \tag{2}$$

However, mass spectrometric measurements reveal that the mass of an ^4_2He atom is 4.0026 amu, less than the combined masses of its six constituent subatomic particles. This difference between the calculated and experimentally measured masses is known as the mass defect of the atom. In the case of helium, the mass defect indicates a “loss” in mass of 4.0331 amu – 4.0026 amu = 0.0305 amu. The loss in mass accompanying the formation of an atom from protons, neutrons, and electrons is due to the conversion of that mass into energy that is evolved as the atom forms. The nuclear binding energy is the energy produced when the atoms’ nucleons are bound together; this is also the energy needed to break a nucleus into its constituent protons and neutrons. In

comparison to chemical bond energies, nuclear binding energies are *vastly* greater, as we will learn in this section. Consequently, the energy changes associated with nuclear reactions are vastly greater than are those for chemical reactions.

The conversion between mass and energy is most identifiably represented by the mass-energy equivalence equation as stated by Albert Einstein:

$$E = mc^2 \tag{3}$$

where *E* is energy, *m* is mass of the matter being converted, and *c* is the speed of light in a vacuum. This equation can be used to find the amount of energy that results when matter is converted into energy. Using this mass-energy equivalence equation, the nuclear binding energy of a nucleus may be calculated from its **mass defect**, as demonstrated in Example 2. A variety of units are commonly used for nuclear binding energies, including electron volts (eV), with 1 eV equaling the amount of energy necessary to the move the charge of an electron across an electric potential difference of 1 volt, making $1\ \text{eV} = 1.602 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J}$.

Example 2: Calculation of Nuclear Binding Energy

Determine the binding energy for the nuclide $^{4}_{2}\text{He}$ in:

a. joules per mole of nuclei
b. joules per nucleus
c. MeV per nucleus

Solution

The mass defect for a $^{4}_{2}\text{He}$ nucleus is 0.0305 amu, as shown previously. Determine the binding energy in joules per nuclide using the mass-energy equivalence equation. To accommodate the requested energy units, the mass defect must be expressed in kilograms (recall that 1 J = 1 kg m^2/s^2).

(a) First, express the mass defect in g/mol. This is easily done considering the *numerical equivalence* of atomic mass (amu) and molar mass (g/mol) that results from the definitions of the amu and mole units (refer to the previous discussion in the chapter on atoms, molecules, and ions if needed). The mass defect is therefore 0.0305 g/mol. To accommodate the units of the other terms in the mass-energy equation, the mass must be expressed in kg, since 1 J = 1 kg m^2/s^2. Converting grams into kilograms yields a mass defect of $3.05 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{kg/mol}$. Substituting this quantity into the mass-energy equivalence equation yields:

\[\begin{align*} E &=mc^2 \\[4pt] &= \dfrac{3.05 \times 10^{-5}\;kg}{mol} \times \left(\dfrac{2.998 \times 10^8\;m}{s}\right)^2 \\[4pt] &= 2.74×10^{12}\:kg\:m^2s^{-2}mol^{-1} \\[4pt] &=2.74 \times 10^{12}\;J/mol=2.74\: TJ /mol \end{align*} \nonumber \]

Note that this tremendous amount of energy is associated with the conversion of a very small amount of matter (about 30 mg, roughly the mass of typical drop of water).

(b) The binding energy for a single nucleus is computed from the molar binding energy using Avogadro's number:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= 2.74 \times 10^{12}\ J\ mol^{-1} \times \frac{1\ mol}{6.022 \times 10^{23}\ nuclei} \\ &= 4.55 \times 10^{-12}\ J = 4.55\ pJ \end{aligned}$$

(c) Recall that $1\ \text{eV} = 1.602 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J}$. Using the binding energy computed in part (b):

$$\begin{aligned} E &= 4.55 \times 10^{-12}\ J \times \frac{1\ eV}{1.602 \times 10^{-19}\ J} \\ &= 2.84 \times 10^{7}\ eV = 28.4\ MeV \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 2

What is the binding energy for the nuclide $^{19}_{9}\text{F}$ (atomic mass: 18.9984 amu) in MeV per nucleus?

Answer

148.4 MeV

Because the energy changes for breaking and forming bonds are so small compared to the energy changes for breaking or forming nuclei, the changes in mass during all ordinary chemical reactions are virtually undetectable. As described in the chapter on thermochemistry, the most energetic chemical reactions exhibit enthalpies on the order of *thousands* of kJ/mol, which is equivalent to mass differences in the nanogram range (10^{-9} g). On the other hand, nuclear binding energies are typically on the order of *billions* of kJ/mol, corresponding to mass differences in the milligram range (10^{-3} g).

Nuclear Stability

A nucleus is stable if it cannot be transformed into another configuration without adding energy from the outside. Of the thousands of nuclides that exist, about 250 are stable. A plot of the number of neutrons versus the number of protons for stable nuclei reveals that the stable isotopes fall into a narrow band. This region is known as the band of stability (also called the belt, zone, or valley of stability). The straight line in Figure 1 represents nuclei that have a 1:1 ratio of protons to neutrons (n:p ratio). Note that the lighter stable nuclei, in general, have equal numbers of protons and neutrons. For example, nitrogen-14 has seven protons and seven neutrons. Heavier stable nuclei, however, have increasingly more neutrons than protons. For example: iron-56 has 30 neutrons and 26 protons, an n:p ratio of 1.15, whereas the stable nuclide lead-207 has 125 neutrons and 82 protons, an n:p ratio equal to 1.52. This is because larger nuclei have more proton-proton repulsions, and require larger numbers of neutrons to provide compensating strong forces to overcome these electrostatic repulsions and hold the nucleus together.

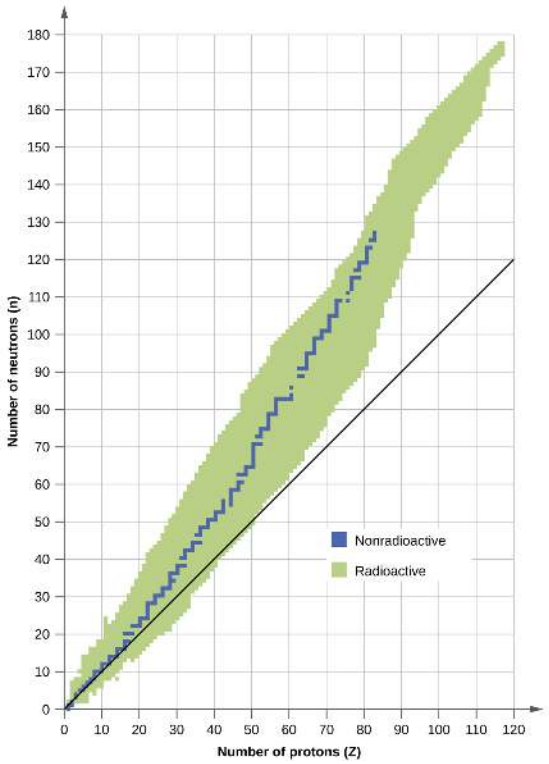


Figure 1: This plot shows the nuclides that are known to exist and those that are stable. The stable nuclides are indicated in blue, and the unstable nuclides are indicated in green. Note that all isotopes of elements with atomic numbers greater than 83 are unstable. The solid line is the line where n = Z.

The nuclei that are to the left or to the right of the band of stability are unstable and exhibit radioactivity. They change spontaneously (decay) into other nuclei that are either in, or closer to, the band of stability. These nuclear decay reactions convert one unstable isotope (or radioisotope) into another, more stable, isotope. We will discuss the nature and products of this radioactive decay in subsequent sections of this chapter.

Several observations may be made regarding the relationship between the stability of a nucleus and its structure. Nuclei with even numbers of protons, neutrons, or both are more likely to be stable (Table 1). Nuclei with certain numbers of nucleons, known as **magic numbers**, are stable against nuclear decay. These numbers of protons or neutrons (2, 8, 20, 28, 50, 82, and 126) make complete shells in the nucleus. These are similar in concept to the stable electron shells observed for the noble gases. Nuclei that have magic numbers of both protons and neutrons, such as ${}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$, ${}^{16}_{8}\mathrm{O}$, ${}^{40}_{20}\mathrm{Ca}$, and ${}^{208}_{82}\mathrm{Pb}$ and are particularly stable. These trends in

nuclear stability may be rationalized by considering a quantum mechanical model of nuclear energy states analogous to that used to describe electronic states earlier in this textbook. The details of this model are beyond the scope of this chapter.

Table 1: Stable Nuclear Isotopes

Number of Stable Isotopes	Proton Number	Neutron Number
157	even	even
53	even	odd
50	odd	even
5	odd	odd

The relative stability of a nucleus is correlated with its binding energy per nucleon, the total binding energy for the nucleus divided by the number or nucleons in the nucleus. For instance, the binding energy for a $^{4}_{2}\text{He}$ nucleus is therefore:

$$\frac{28.4\ \text{MeV}}{4\ \text{nucleons}} = 7.10\ \text{MeV/nucleon} \tag{4}$$

The binding energy per nucleon of a nuclide on the curve shown in Figure 2

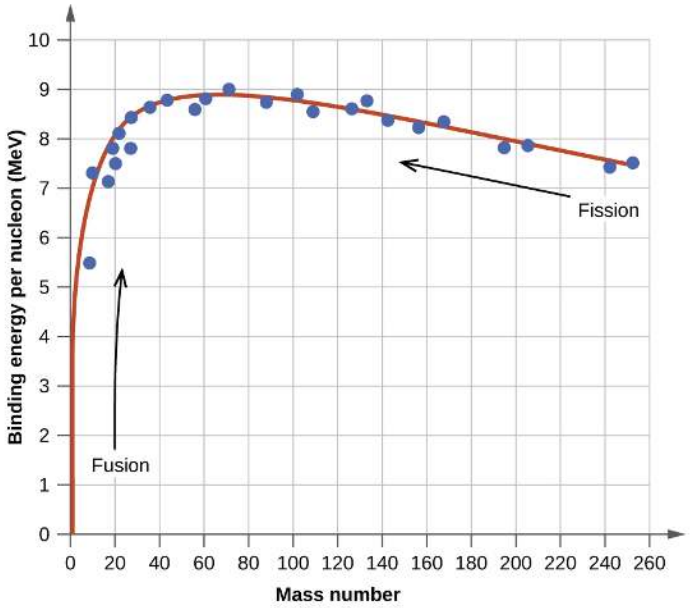


Figure 2: The binding energy per nucleon is largest for nuclides with mass number of approximately 56.

Example 3: Calculation of Binding Energy per Nucleon

The iron nuclide $^{56}_{26}\text{Fe}$ lies near the top of the binding energy curve (Figure 2) and is one of the most stable nuclides. What is the binding energy per nucleon (in MeV) for the nuclide $^{56}_{26}\text{Fe}$ (atomic mass of 55.9349 amu)?

Solution

As in Example, we first determine the mass defect of the nuclide, which is the difference between the mass of 26 protons, 30 neutrons, and 26 electrons, and the observed mass of an $^{56}_{26}\text{Fe}$ atom:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Mass defect} &= [(26 \times 1.0073\ \text{amu}) + (30 \times 1.0087\ \text{amu}) + (26 \times 0.00055\ \text{amu})] - 55.9349\ \text{amu} \\ &= 56.4651\ \text{amu} - 55.9349\ \text{amu} \\ &= 0.5302\ \text{amu}\end{aligned}$$

We next calculate the binding energy for one nucleus from the mass defect using the mass-energy equivalence equation:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= mc^2 = 0.5302 \text{ amu} \times \frac{1.6605 \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg}}{1 \text{ amu}} \times (2.998 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})^2 \\ &= 7.913 \times 10^{-11} \text{ kg·m/s}^2 \\ &= 7.913 \times 10^{-11} \text{ J} \end{aligned}$$

We then convert the binding energy in joules per nucleus into units of MeV per nuclide:

$$7.913 \times 10^{-11} \text{ J} \times \frac{1 \text{ MeV}}{1.602 \times 10^{-13} \text{ J}} = 493.9 \text{ MeV}$$

Finally, we determine the binding energy per nucleon by dividing the total nuclear binding energy by the number of nucleons in the atom:

$$\text{Binding energy per nucleon} = \frac{493.9 \text{ MeV}}{56} = 8.820 \text{ MeV/nucleon}$$

Note that this is almost 25% larger than the binding energy per nucleon for ^4_2He.(Note also that this is the same process as in Example \(\PageIndex{2}\, but with the additional step of dividing the total nuclear binding energy by the number of nucleons.)

? Exercise 3

What is the binding energy per nucleon in $^{19}_{9}\text{F}$ (atomic mass, 18.9984 amu)?

Answer

7.810 MeV/nucleon

Summary

An atomic nucleus consists of protons and neutrons, collectively called nucleons. Although protons repel each other, the nucleus is held tightly together by a short-range, but very strong, force called the strong nuclear force. A nucleus has less mass than the total mass of its constituent nucleons. This “missing” mass is the mass defect, which has been converted into the binding energy that holds the nucleus together according to Einstein’s mass-energy equivalence equation, $E = mc^2$. Of the many nuclides that exist, only a small number are stable. Nuclides with even numbers of protons or neutrons, or those with magic numbers of nucleons, are especially likely to be stable. These stable nuclides occupy a narrow band of stability on a graph of number of protons versus number of neutrons. The binding energy per nucleon is largest for the elements with mass numbers near 56; these are the most stable nuclei.

Key Equations

- $E = mc^2$

Glossary

band of stability
(also, belt of stability, zone of stability, or valley of stability) region of graph of number of protons versus number of neutrons containing stable (nonradioactive) nuclides

binding energy per nucleon
total binding energy for the nucleus divided by the number of nucleons in the nucleus

electron volt (eV)
measurement unit of nuclear binding energies, with 1 eV equaling the amount energy due to the moving an electron across an electric potential difference of 1 volt

magic number
nuclei with specific numbers of nucleons that are within the band of stability

mass defect

difference between the mass of an atom and the summed mass of its constituent subatomic particles (or the mass “lost” when nucleons are brought together to form a nucleus)

mass-energy equivalence equation

Albert Einstein’s relationship showing that mass and energy are equivalent

nuclear binding energy

energy lost when an atom’s nucleons are bound together (or the energy needed to break a nucleus into its constituent protons and neutrons)

nuclear chemistry

study of the structure of atomic nuclei and processes that change nuclear structure

nucleon

collective term for protons and neutrons in a nucleus

nuclide

nucleus of a particular isotope

radioactivity

phenomenon exhibited by an unstable nucleon that spontaneously undergoes change into a nucleon that is more stable; an unstable nucleon is said to be radioactive

radioisotope

isotope that is unstable and undergoes conversion into a different, more stable isotope

strong nuclear force

force of attraction between nucleons that holds a nucleus together

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **21.1: Nuclear Structure and Stability** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.9.2 Nuclear Equations

Learning Objectives

- Identify common particles and energies involved in nuclear reactions
- Write and balance nuclear equations

Changes of nuclei that result in changes in their atomic numbers, mass numbers, or energy states are nuclear reactions. To describe a nuclear reaction, we use an equation that identifies the nuclides involved in the reaction, their mass numbers and atomic numbers, and the other particles involved in the reaction.

Types of Particles in Nuclear Reactions

Many entities can be involved in nuclear reactions. The most common are protons, neutrons, alpha particles, beta particles, positrons, and gamma rays, as shown in Figure 1. Protons ($_1^1\text{p}$, also represented by the symbol $_1^1\text{H}$) and neutrons ($_0^1\text{n}$) are the constituents of atomic nuclei, and have been described previously. Alpha particles ($_2^4\text{He}$, also represented by the symbol $_2^4\alpha$) are high-energy helium nuclei. Beta particles ($_{-1}^0\beta$, also represented by the symbol $_{-1}^0\text{e}$) are high-energy electrons, and gamma rays are photons of very high-energy electromagnetic radiation. Positrons ($_{+1}^0\text{e}$, also represented by the symbol $_{+1}^0\beta$) are positively charged electrons ("anti-electrons"). The subscripts and superscripts are necessary for balancing nuclear equations, but are usually optional in other circumstances. For example, an alpha particle is a helium nucleus (He) with a charge of +2 and a mass number of 4, so it is symbolized $_2^4\text{He}$. This works because, in general, the ion charge is not important in the balancing of nuclear equations.



Figure 1: Although many species are encountered in nuclear reactions, this table summarizes the names, symbols, representations, and descriptions of the most common of these.

This table has four columns and seven rows. The first row is a header row and it labels each column: "Name," "Symbol(s)," "Representation," and "Description." Under the "Name" column are the following: "Alpha particle," "Beta particle," "Positron," "Proton," "Neutron," and "Gamma ray." Under the "Symbol(s)" column are the following: " superscript 4 stacked over a subscript 2 H e or lowercase alpha," "superscript 0 stacked over a subscript 1 e or lowercase beta," "superscript 0 stacked over a positive subscript 1 e or lowercase beta superscript positive sign," "superscript 1 stacked over a subscript 1 H or lowercase rho superscript 1 stacked over a subscript 1 H," "superscript 1 stacked over a subscript 0 n or lowercase eta superscript 1 stacked over a subscript 0 n," and a lowercase gamma. Under the "Representation column," are the following: two white sphere attached to two blue spheres of about the same size with positive signs in them; a small red sphere with a negative sign in it; a small red sphere with a positive sign in it; a blue spheres with a positive sign in it; a white sphere; and a purple squiggle ling with an arrow pointing right to a lowercase gamma. Under the "Description" column are the following: "(High-energy) helium nuclei consisting of two protons and two neutrons," "(High-energy) elections," "Particles with the same mass as an electron but with 1 unit of positive charge," "Nuclei of hydrogen atoms," "Particles with a mass approximately equal to that of a proton but with no charge," and "Very high-energy electromagnetic radiation."

Note that positrons are exactly like electrons, except they have the opposite charge. They are the most common example of antimatter, particles with the same mass but the opposite state of another property (for example, charge) than ordinary matter. When antimatter encounters ordinary matter, both are annihilated and their mass is converted into energy in the form of gamma rays (γ)—and other much smaller subnuclear particles, which are beyond the scope of this chapter—according to the mass-energy equivalence equation $E = mc^2$, seen in the preceding section. For example, when a positron and an electron collide, both are annihilated and two gamma ray photons are created:

$$_{-1}^0\text{e} + {}_{+1}^0\text{e} \rightarrow \gamma + \gamma \tag{1}$$

Gamma rays compose short wavelength, high-energy electromagnetic radiation and are (much) more energetic than better-known X-rays. Gamma rays are produced when a nucleus undergoes a transition from a higher to a lower energy state, similar to how a photon is produced by an electronic transition from a higher to a lower energy level. Due to the much larger energy differences between nuclear energy shells, gamma rays emanating from a nucleus have energies that are typically millions of times larger than electromagnetic radiation emanating from electronic transitions.

Balancing Nuclear Reactions

A balanced chemical reaction equation reflects the fact that during a chemical reaction, bonds break and form, and atoms are rearranged, but the total numbers of atoms of each element are conserved and do not change. A balanced nuclear reaction equation

indicates that there is a rearrangement during a nuclear reaction, but of subatomic particles rather than atoms. Nuclear reactions also follow conservation laws, and they are balanced in two ways:

1. The sum of the mass numbers of the reactants equals the sum of the mass numbers of the products.
2. The sum of the charges of the reactants equals the sum of the charges of the products.

If the atomic number and the mass number of all but one of the particles in a nuclear reaction are known, we can identify the particle by balancing the reaction. For instance, we could determine that $^{17}_{8}\mathrm{O}$ is a product of the nuclear reaction of $^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N}$ and $^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$ if we knew that a proton, $^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$, was one of the two products. Example 1 shows how we can identify a nuclide by balancing the nuclear reaction.

Example 1: Balancing Equations for Nuclear Reactions

The reaction of an α particle with magnesium-25 ($^{25}_{12}\mathrm{Mg}$) produces a proton and a nuclide of another element. Identify the new nuclide produced.

Solution

The nuclear reaction can be written as:

$$^{25}_{12}\mathrm{Mg} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \rightarrow {}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H} + {}^{\mathrm{A}}_{\mathrm{Z}}\mathrm{X}$$

where

- A is the mass number and
- Z is the atomic number of the new nuclide, X.

Because the sum of the mass numbers of the reactants must equal the sum of the mass numbers of the products:

$$25 + 4 = \mathrm{A} + 1$$

so

$$\mathrm{A} = 28$$

Similarly, the charges must balance, so:

$$12 + 2 = \mathrm{Z} + 1$$

so

$$\mathrm{Z} = 13$$

Check the periodic table: The element with nuclear charge = +13 is aluminum. Thus, the product is $^{28}_{13}\mathrm{Al}$.

Exercise 1

The nuclide $^{125}_{53}\mathrm{I}$ combines with an electron and produces a new nucleus and no other massive particles. What is the equation for this reaction?

Answer

$$^{125}_{53}\mathrm{I} + {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} \rightarrow {}^{125}_{52}\mathrm{Te}$$

Following are the equations of several nuclear reactions that have important roles in the history of nuclear chemistry:

- The first naturally occurring unstable element that was isolated, polonium, was discovered by the Polish scientist Marie Curie and her husband Pierre in 1898. It decays, emitting α particles:

$$^{212}_{84}\mathrm{Po} \longrightarrow {}^{208}_{82}\mathrm{Pb} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$$

- The first nuclide to be prepared by artificial means was an isotope of oxygen, $^{17}\mathrm{O}$. It was made by Ernest Rutherford in 1919 by bombarding nitrogen atoms with α particles:

$$^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N} + {}^{4}_{2}\alpha \longrightarrow {}^{17}_{8}\mathrm{O} + {}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$$

- James Chadwick discovered the neutron in 1932, as a previously unknown neutral particle produced along with ^{12}C by the nuclear reaction between ^{9}Be and ^{4}He:

$$^{9}_{4}\mathrm{Be} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \longrightarrow {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$$

- The first element to be prepared that does not occur naturally on the earth, technetium, was created by bombardment of molybdenum by deuterons (heavy hydrogen, $^{2}_{1}H$), by Emilio Segre and Carlo Perrier in 1937:

$$^{2}_{1}\mathrm{H} + {}^{97}_{42}\mathrm{Mo} \longrightarrow 2\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} + {}^{97}_{43}\mathrm{Tc}$$

- The first controlled nuclear chain reaction was carried out in a reactor at the University of Chicago in 1942. One of the many reactions involved was:

$$^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \longrightarrow {}^{87}_{35}\mathrm{Br} + {}^{146}_{57}\mathrm{La} + 3\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$$

Summary

Nuclei can undergo reactions that change their number of protons, number of neutrons, or energy state. Many different particles can be involved in nuclear reactions. The most common are protons, neutrons, positrons (which are positively charged electrons), alpha (α) particles (which are high-energy helium nuclei), beta (β) particles (which are high-energy electrons), and gamma (γ) rays (which compose high-energy electromagnetic radiation). As with chemical reactions, nuclear reactions are always balanced. When a nuclear reaction occurs, the total mass (number) and the total charge remain unchanged.

Glossary

alpha particle

(α or $^{4}_{2}He$ or $^{4}_{2}\alpha$) high-energy helium nucleus; a helium atom that has lost two electrons and contains two protons and two neutrons

antimatter

particles with the same mass but opposite properties (such as charge) of ordinary particles

beta particle

(β or $^{0}_{-1}e$ or $^{0}_{-1}\beta$) high-energy electron

gamma ray

(γ or $^{0}_{0}\gamma$) short wavelength, high-energy electromagnetic radiation that exhibits wave-particle duality

nuclear reaction

change to a nucleus resulting in changes in the atomic number, mass number, or energy state

positron ($^{0}_{+1}\beta$ or $^{0}_{+1}e$)

antiparticle to the electron; it has identical properties to an electron, except for having the opposite (positive) charge

---

This page titled 3.9.2 Nuclear Equations is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **21.2: Nuclear Equations** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.9.3 Radioactive Decay

Learning Objectives

- Recognize common modes of radioactive decay
- Identify common particles and energies involved in nuclear decay reactions
- Write and balance nuclear decay equations
- Calculate kinetic parameters for decay processes, including half-life
- Describe common radiometric dating techniques

Following the somewhat serendipitous discovery of radioactivity by Becquerel, many prominent scientists began to investigate this new, intriguing phenomenon. Among them were Marie Curie (the first woman to win a Nobel Prize, and the only person to win two Nobel Prizes in different sciences—chemistry and physics), who was the first to coin the term "radioactivity," and Ernest Rutherford (of gold foil experiment fame), who investigated and named three of the most common types of radiation. During the beginning of the twentieth century, many radioactive substances were discovered, the properties of radiation were investigated and quantified, and a solid understanding of radiation and nuclear decay was developed.

The spontaneous change of an unstable nuclide into another is radioactive decay. The unstable nuclide is called the parent nuclide; the nuclide that results from the decay is known as the daughter nuclide. The daughter nuclide may be stable, or it may decay itself. The radiation produced during radioactive decay is such that the daughter nuclide lies closer to the band of stability than the parent nuclide, so the location of a nuclide relative to the band of stability can serve as a guide to the kind of decay it will undergo (Figure 1).

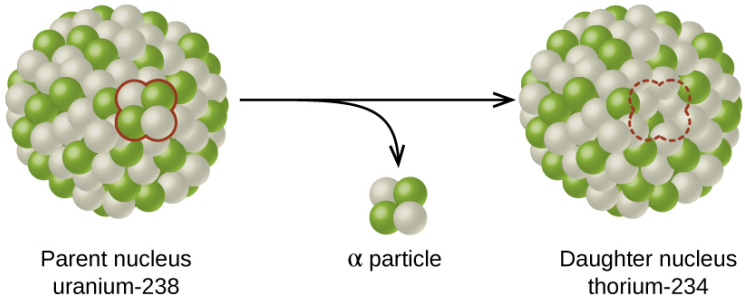


Figure 1: A nucleus of uranium-238 (the parent nuclide) undergoes α decay to form thorium-234 (the daughter nuclide). The alpha particle removes two protons (green) and two neutrons (gray) from the uranium-238 nucleus.

A diagram shows two spheres composed of many smaller white and green spheres connected by a right-facing arrow with another, down-facing arrow coming off of it. The left sphere, labeled "Parent nucleus uranium dash 238" has two white and two green spheres that are near one another and are outlined in red. These two green and two white spheres are shown near the tip of the down-facing arrow and labeled "alpha particle." The right sphere, labeled "Daughter nucleus radon dash 234," looks the same as the left, but has a space for four smaller spheres outlined with a red dotted line.

Although the radioactive decay of a nucleus is too small to see with the naked eye, we can indirectly view radioactive decay in an environment called a cloud chamber. Click here to learn about cloud chambers and to view an interesting Cloud Chamber Demonstration from the Jefferson Lab.



Video 1: How to Build a Cloud Chamber!

Types of Radioactive Decay

Ernest Rutherford's experiments involving the interaction of radiation with a magnetic or electric field (Figure 2) helped him determine that one type of radiation consisted of positively charged and relatively massive α particles; a second type was made up of negatively charged and much less massive β particles; and a third was uncharged electromagnetic waves, γ rays. We now know that α particles are high-energy helium nuclei, β particles are high-energy electrons, and γ radiation compose high-energy electromagnetic radiation. We classify different types of radioactive decay by the radiation produced.

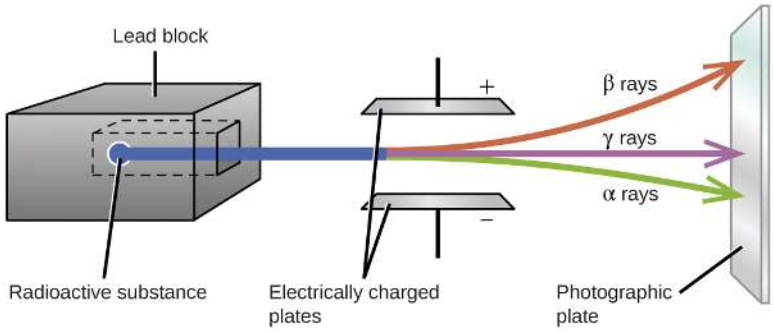


Figure 2: Alpha particles, which are attracted to the negative plate and deflected by a relatively small amount, must be positively charged and relatively massive. Beta particles, which are attracted to the positive plate and deflected a relatively large amount, must be negatively charged and relatively light. Gamma rays, which are unaffected by the electric field, must be uncharged.

A diagram is shown. A gray box on the left side of the diagram labeled "Lead block" has a chamber hollowed out in the center in which a sample labeled "Radioactive substance" is placed. A blue beam is coming from the sample, out of the block, and passing through two horizontally placed plates that are labeled "Electrically charged plates." The top plate is labeled with a positive sign while the bottom plate is labeled with a negative sign. The beam is shown to break into three beams as it passes in between the plates; in order from top to bottom, they are red, labeled "beta rays," purple labeled "gamma rays" and green labeled "alpha rays." The beams are shown to hit a vertical plate labeled "Photographic plate" on the far right side of the diagram.

Alpha (α) decay is the emission of an α particle from the nucleus. For example, polonium-210 undergoes α decay:

$$^{210}_{84}\mathrm{Po} \longrightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} + {}^{206}_{82}\mathrm{Pb} \qquad \text{or} \qquad {}^{210}_{84}\mathrm{Po} \longrightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\alpha + {}^{206}_{82}\mathrm{Pb}$$

Alpha decay occurs primarily in heavy nuclei (A > 200, Z > 83). Because the loss of an α particle gives a daughter nuclide with a mass number four units smaller and an atomic number two units smaller than those of the parent nuclide, the daughter nuclide has a larger n:p ratio than the parent nuclide. If the parent nuclide undergoing α decay lies below **the band of stability**, the daughter nuclide will lie closer to the band.

Beta (β) decay is the emission of an electron from a nucleus. Iodine-131 is an example of a nuclide that undergoes β decay:

$$^{131}_{53}\mathrm{I} \longrightarrow {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} + {}^{131}_{54}\mathrm{X} \qquad \text{or} \qquad {}^{131}_{53}\mathrm{I} \longrightarrow {}^{0}_{-1}\beta + {}^{131}_{54}\mathrm{Xe}$$

Beta decay, which can be thought of as the conversion of a neutron into a proton and a β particle, is observed in nuclides with a large n:p ratio. The beta particle (electron) emitted is from the atomic nucleus and is not one of the electrons surrounding the

nucleus. Such nuclei lie above the band of stability. Emission of an electron does not change the mass number of the nuclide but does increase the number of its protons and decrease the number of its neutrons. Consequently, the n:p ratio is decreased, and the daughter nuclide lies closer to the band of stability than did the parent nuclide.

Gamma emission (γ emission) is observed when a nuclide is formed in an excited state and then decays to its ground state with the emission of a γ ray, a quantum of high-energy electromagnetic radiation. The presence of a nucleus in an excited state is often indicated by an asterisk (*). Cobalt-60 emits γ radiation and is used in many applications including cancer treatment:

$$^{60}_{27}\mathrm{Co}^{*} \longrightarrow {}^{0}_{0}\gamma + {}^{60}_{27}\mathrm{Co}$$

There is no change in mass number or atomic number during the emission of a γ ray unless the γ emission accompanies one of the other modes of decay.

Positron emission (β^{+} decay) is the emission of a positron from the nucleus. Oxygen-15 is an example of a nuclide that undergoes positron emission:

$$^{15}_{8}\mathrm{O} \longrightarrow {}^{0}_{+1}\mathrm{e} + {}^{15}_{7}\mathrm{N} \qquad \text{or} \qquad {}^{15}_{8}\mathrm{O} \longrightarrow {}^{0}_{+1}\beta + {}^{15}_{7}\mathrm{N}$$

Positron emission is observed for nuclides in which the n:p ratio is low. These nuclides lie below the band of stability. Positron decay is the conversion of a proton into a neutron with the emission of a positron. The n:p ratio increases, and the daughter nuclide lies closer to the band of stability than did the parent nuclide.

Electron capture occurs when one of the inner electrons in an atom is captured by the atom's nucleus. For example, potassium-40 undergoes electron capture:

$$^{40}_{19}\mathrm{K} + {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} \longrightarrow {}^{40}_{18}\mathrm{Ar}$$

Electron capture occurs when an inner shell electron combines with a proton and is converted into a neutron. The loss of an inner shell electron leaves a vacancy that will be filled by one of the outer electrons. As the outer electron drops into the vacancy, it will emit energy. In most cases, the energy emitted will be in the form of an X-ray. Like positron emission, electron capture occurs for "proton-rich" nuclei that lie below the band of stability. Electron capture has the same effect on the nucleus as does positron emission: The atomic number is decreased by one and the mass number does not change. This increases the n:p ratio, and the daughter nuclide lies closer to the band of stability than did the parent nuclide. Whether electron capture or positron emission occurs is difficult to predict. The choice is primarily due to kinetic factors, with the one requiring the smaller activation energy being the one more likely to occur. Figure 3 summarizes these types of decay, along with their equations and changes in atomic and mass numbers.

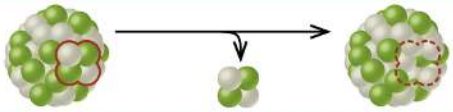
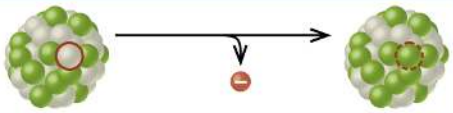
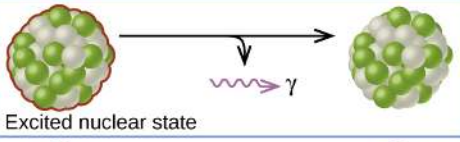
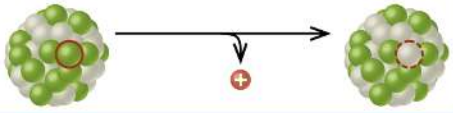
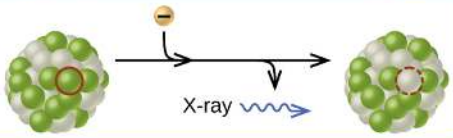
Type	Nuclear equation	Representation	Change in mass/atomic numbers
Alpha decay	${}^{A}_{Z}X \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}He + {}^{A-4}_{Z-2}Y$		A: decrease by 4 Z: decrease by 2
Beta decay	${}^{A}_{Z}X \rightarrow {}^{0}_{-1}e + {}^{A}_{Z+1}Y$		A: unchanged Z: increase by 1
Gamma decay	${}^{A}_{Z}X \rightarrow {}^{0}_{0}\gamma + {}^{A}_{Z}Y$		A: unchanged Z: unchanged
Positron emission	${}^{A}_{Z}X \rightarrow {}^{0}_{+1}e + {}^{A}_{Y-1}Y$		A: unchanged Z: decrease by 1
Electron capture	${}^{A}_{Z}X \rightarrow {}^{0}_{-1}e + {}^{A}_{Y-1}Y$		A: unchanged Z: decrease by 1

Figure 3: This table summarizes the type, nuclear equation, representation, and any changes in the mass or atomic numbers for various types of decay.

This table has four columns and six rows. The first row is a header row and it labels each column: “Type,” “Nuclear equation,” “Representation,” and “Change in mass / atomic numbers.” Under the “Type” column are the following: “Alpha decay,” “Beta decay,” “Gamma decay,” “Positron emission,” and “Electron capture.” Under the “Nuclear equation” column are several equations. Each begins with superscript A stacked over subscript Z X. There is a large gap of space and then the following equations: “superscript 4 stacked over subscript 2 He plus superscript A minus 4 stacked over subscript Z minus 2 Y,” “superscript 0 stacked over subscript negative 1 e plus superscript A stacked over subscript Z plus 1 Y,” “superscript 0 stacked over subscript 0 lowercase gamma plus superscript A stacked over subscript Z Y,” “superscript 0 stacked over subscript positive 1 e plus superscript A stacked over subscript Y minus 1 Y,” and “superscript 0 stacked over subscript negative 1 e plus superscript A stacked over subscript Y minus 1 Y.” Under the “Representation” column are the five diagrams. The first shows a cluster of green and white spheres. A section of the cluster containing two white and two green spheres is outlined. There is a right-facing arrow pointing to a similar cluster as previously described, but the outlined section is missing. From the arrow another arrow branches off and points downward. The small cluster to two white spheres and two green spheres appear at the end of the arrow. The next diagram shows the same cluster of white and green spheres. One white sphere is outlined. There is a right-facing arrow to a similar cluster, but the white sphere is missing. Another arrow branches off the main arrow and a red sphere with a negative sign appears at the end. The next diagram shows the same cluster of white and green spheres. The whole sphere is outlined and labeled, “excited nuclear state.” There is a right-facing arrow that points to the same cluster. No spheres are missing. Off the main arrow is another arrow which points to a purple squiggle arrow which in turn points to a lowercase gamma. The next diagram shows the same cluster of white and green spheres. One green sphere is outlined. There is a right-facing arrow to a similar cluster, but the green sphere is missing. Another arrow branches off the main arrow and a red sphere with a positive sign appears at the end. The next diagram shows the same cluster of white and green spheres. One green sphere is outlined. There is a right-facing arrow to a similar cluster, but the green sphere is missing. Two other arrows branch off the main arrow. The first shows a gold sphere with a negative sign joining with the right-facing arrow. The secon points to a blue squiggle arrow labeled, “X-ray.” Under the “Change in mass / atomic numbers” column are the following: “A: decrease by 4, Z: decrease by 2,” “A: unchanged, Z: increased by 1,” “A: unchanged, Z: unchanged,” “A: unchanged, Z: unchanged,” “A: unchanged, Z: decrease by 1,” and “A: unchanged, Z: decrease by 1.”

PET Scan

Positron emission tomography (PET) scans use radiation to diagnose and track health conditions and monitor medical treatments by revealing how parts of a patient’s body function (Figure 4). To perform a PET scan, a positron-emitting radioisotope is produced in a cyclotron and then attached to a substance that is used by the part of the body being investigated. This “tagged” compound, or radiotracer, is then put into the patient (injected via IV or breathed in as a gas), and how it is used by the tissue reveals how that organ or other area of the body functions.

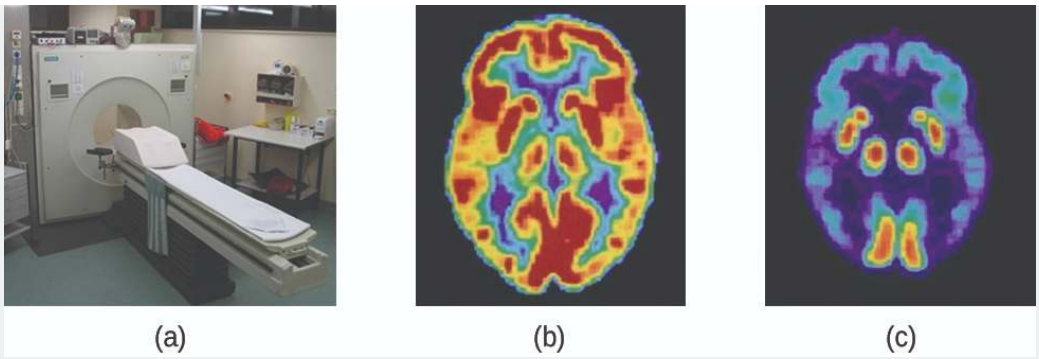


Figure 4: A PET scanner (a) uses radiation to provide an image of how part of a patient's body functions. The scans it produces can be used to image a healthy brain (b) or can be used for diagnosing medical conditions such as Alzheimer's disease (c). (credit a: modification of work by Jens Maus)

Three pictures are shown and labeled "a," "b" and "c." Picture a shows a machine with a round opening connected to an examination table. Picture b is a medical scan of the top of a person's head and shows large patches of yellow and red and smaller patches of blue, green and purple highlighting. Picture c also shows a medical scan of the top of a person's head, but this image is mostly colored in blue and purple with very small patches of red and yellow.

For example, F-18 is produced by proton bombardment of $^{18}\mathrm{O}$ $\left({}^{18}_{8}\mathrm{O}+{}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{p}\longrightarrow {}^{18}_{9}\mathrm{F}+{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}\right)$ and incorporated into a glucose analog called fludeoxyglucose (FDG). How FDG is used by the body provides critical diagnostic information; for example, since cancers use glucose differently than normal tissues, FDG can reveal cancers. The $^{18}\mathrm{F}$ emits positrons that interact with nearby electrons, producing a burst of gamma radiation. This energy is detected by the scanner and converted into a detailed, three-dimensional, color image that shows how that part of the patient's body functions. Different levels of gamma radiation produce different amounts of brightness and colors in the image, which can then be interpreted by a radiologist to reveal what is going on. PET scans can detect heart damage and heart disease, help diagnose Alzheimer's disease, indicate the part of a brain that is affected by epilepsy, reveal cancer, show what stage it is, and how much it has spread, and whether treatments are effective. Unlike magnetic resonance imaging and X-rays, which only show how something looks, the big advantage of PET scans is that they show how something functions. PET scans are now usually performed in conjunction with a computed tomography scan.

Radioactive Decay Series

The naturally occurring radioactive isotopes of the heaviest elements fall into chains of successive disintegrations, or decays, and all the species in one chain constitute a radioactive family, or radioactive decay series. Three of these series include most of the naturally radioactive elements of the periodic table. They are the uranium series, the actinide series, and the thorium series. The neptunium series is a fourth series, which is no longer significant on the earth because of the short half-lives of the species involved. Each series is characterized by a parent (first member) that has a long half-life and a series of daughter nuclides that ultimately lead to a stable end-product—that is, a nuclide on the band of stability (Figure 5). In all three series, the end-product is a stable isotope of lead. The neptunium series, previously thought to terminate with bismuth-209, terminates with thallium-205.

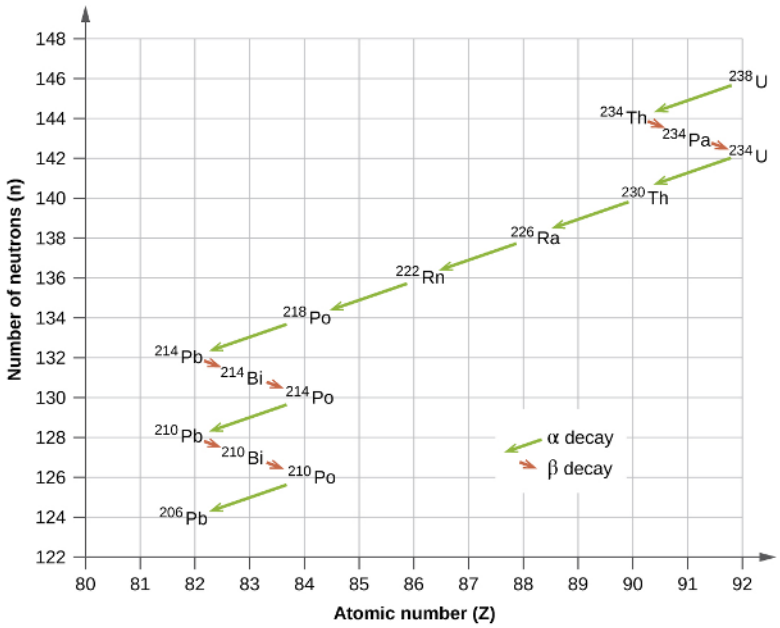


Figure 5: Uranium-238 undergoes a radioactive decay series consisting of 14 separate steps before producing stable lead-206. This series consists of eight α decays and six β decays.

A graph is shown where the x-axis is labeled “Number of neutrons, open parenthesis, n, close parenthesis” and has values of 122 to 148 in increments of 2. The y-axis is labeled “Atomic number” and has values of 80 to 92 in increments of 1. Two types of arrows are used in this graph to connect the points. Green arrows are labeled as “alpha decay” while red arrows are labeled “beta decay.” Beginning at the point “92, 146” that is labeled “superscript 238, U,” a green arrow connects this point to the second point “90, 144” which is labeled “superscript 234, T h.” A red arrow connect this to the third point “91, 143” which is labeled “superscript 234, P a” which is connected to the fourth point “92, 142” by a red arrow and which is labeled “superscript 234, U.” A green arrow leads to the next point, “90, 140” which is labeled “superscript 230, T h” and is connected by a green arrow to the sixth point, “88, 138” which is labeled “superscript 226, R a” that is in turn connected by a green arrow to the seventh point “86, 136” which is labeled “superscript 222, Ra.” The eighth point, at “84, 134” is labeled “superscript 218, P o” and has green arrows leading to it and away from it to the ninth point “82, 132” which is labeled “superscript 214, Pb” which is connected by a red arrow to the tenth point, “83, 131” which is labeled “superscript 214, B i.” A red arrow leads to the eleventh point “84, 130” which is labeled “superscript 214, P o” and a green arrow leads to the twelvth point “82, 128” which is labeled “superscript 210, P b.” A red arrow leads to the thirteenth point “83, 127” which is labeled “superscript 210, B i” and a red arrow leads to the fourteenth point “84, 126” which is labeled “superscript 210, P o.” The final point is labeled “82, 124” and “superscript 206, P b.”

Radioactive Half-Lives

Radioactive decay follows first-order kinetics. Since first-order reactions have already been covered in detail in the kinetics chapter, we will now apply those concepts to nuclear decay reactions. Each radioactive nuclide has a characteristic, constant half-life ($t_{1/2}$), the time required for half of the atoms in a sample to decay. An isotope’s half-life allows us to determine how long a sample of a useful isotope will be available, and how long a sample of an undesirable or dangerous isotope must be stored before it decays to a low-enough radiation level that is no longer a problem.

For example, cobalt-60, an isotope that emits gamma rays used to treat cancer, has a half-life of 5.27 years (Figure 6). In a given cobalt-60 source, since half of the $^{60}_{27}\text{Co}$ nuclei decay every 5.27 years, both the amount of material and the intensity of the radiation emitted is cut in half every 5.27 years. (Note that for a given substance, the intensity of radiation that it produces is directly proportional to the rate of decay of the substance and the amount of the substance.) This is as expected for a process following first-order kinetics. Thus, a cobalt-60 source that is used for cancer treatment must be replaced regularly to continue to be effective.

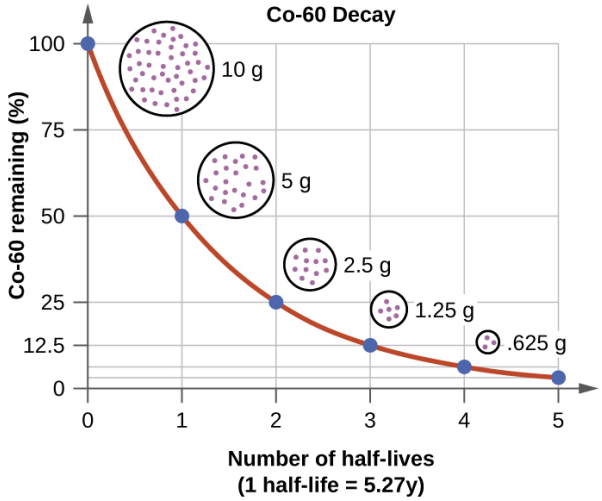


Figure 6: For cobalt-60, which has a half-life of 5.27 years, 50% remains after 5.27 years (one half-life), 25% remains after 10.54 years (two half-lives), 12.5% remains after 15.81 years (three half-lives), and so on.

A graph, titled “C o dash 60 Decay,” is shown where the x-axis is labeled “C o dash 60 remaining, open parenthesis, percent sign, close parenthesis” and has values of 0 to 100 in increments of 25. The y-axis is labeled “Number of half dash lives” and has values of 0 to 5 in increments of 1. The first point, at “0, 100” has a circle filled with tiny dots drawn near it labeled “10 g.” The second point, at “1, 50” has a smaller circle filled with tiny dots drawn near it labeled “5 g.” The third point, at “2, 25” has a small circle filled with tiny dots drawn near it labeled “2.5 g.” The fourth point, at “3, 12.5” has a very small circle filled with tiny dots drawn near it labeled “1.25 g.” The last point, at “4, 6.35” has a tiny circle filled with tiny dots drawn near it labeled.”625 g.”

Since nuclear decay follows first-order kinetics, we can adapt the mathematical relationships used for first-order chemical reactions. We generally substitute the number of nuclei, *N*, for the concentration. If the rate is stated in nuclear decays per second, we refer to it as the activity of the radioactive sample. The rate for radioactive decay is:

$$\text{decay rate} = \lambda N$$

with λ is the **decay constant** for the particular radioisotope.

The decay constant, λ, which is the same as a rate constant discussed in the kinetics chapter. It is possible to express the decay constant in terms of the half-life, $t_{1/2}$:

$$\lambda = \frac{\ln 2}{t_{1/2}} = \frac{0.693}{t_{1/2}} \qquad \text{or} \qquad t_{1/2} = \frac{\ln 2}{\lambda} = \frac{0.693}{\lambda}$$

The first-order equations relating amount, *N*, and time are:

$$N_t = N_0 e^{-kt} \qquad \text{or} \qquad t = -\frac{1}{\lambda}\ln\left(\frac{N_t}{N_0}\right)$$

where N_0 is the initial number of nuclei or moles of the isotope, and N_t is the number of nuclei/moles remaining at time *t*. Example 1 applies these calculations to find the rates of radioactive decay for specific nuclides.

Example 1: Rates of Radioactive Decay

$^{60}_{27}\text{Co}$ decays with a half-life of 5.27 years to produce $^{60}_{28}\text{Ni}$.

a. What is the decay constant for the radioactive disintegration of cobalt-60?
b. Calculate the fraction of a sample of the $^{60}_{27}\text{Co}$ isotope that will remain after 15 years.
c. How long does it take for a sample of $^{60}_{27}\text{Co}$ to disintegrate to the extent that only 2.0% of the original amount remains?

Solution

(a) The value of the rate constant is given by:

$$\lambda = \frac{\ln 2}{t_{1/2}} = \frac{0.693}{5.27\ \text{y}} = 0.132\ \text{y}^{-1}$$

(b) The fraction of $^{60}_{27}\text{Co}$ that is left after time t is given by $\frac{N_t}{N_0}$. Rearranging the first-order relationship $N_t = N_0 e^{-\lambda t}$ to solve for this ratio yields:

$$\frac{N_t}{N_0} = e^{-\lambda t} = e^{-(0.132/\text{y})(15.0/\text{y})} = 0.138$$

The fraction of $^{60}_{27}\text{Co}$ that will remain after 15.0 years is 0.138. Or put another way, 13.8% of the $^{60}_{27}\text{Co}$ originally present will remain after 15 years.

(c) 2.00% of the original amount of $^{60}_{27}\text{Co}$ is equal to 0.0200 × N_0. Substituting this into the equation for time for first-order kinetics, we have:

$$t = -\frac{1}{\lambda}\ln\left(\frac{N_t}{N_0}\right) = -\frac{1}{0.132\ \text{y}^{-1}}\ln\left(\frac{0.0200 \times N_0}{N_0}\right) = 29.6\ \text{y}$$

? Exercise 1

Radon-222, $^{222}_{86}\text{Rn}$, has a half-life of 3.823 days. How long will it take a sample of radon-222 with a mass of 0.750 g to decay into other elements, leaving only 0.100 g of radon-222?

Answer

11.1 days

Because each nuclide has a specific number of nucleons, a particular balance of repulsion and attraction, and its own degree of stability, the half-lives of radioactive nuclides vary widely. For example: the half-life of $^{209}_{83}\text{Bi}$ is 1.9×10^{19} years; $^{239}_{94}\text{Ra}$ is 24,000 years; $^{222}_{86}\text{Rn}$ is 3.82 days; and element-111 (Rg for roentgenium) is 1.5×10^{-3} seconds. The half-lives of a number of radioactive isotopes important to medicine are shown in Table 1, and others are listed in Appendix N1.

Table 1: Half-lives of Radioactive Isotopes Important to Medicine

Type	Decay Mode	Half-Life	Uses
F-18	β^+ decay	110. minutes	PET scans
Co-60	β decay, γ decay	5.27 years	cancer treatment
Tc-99m[1]	γ decay	8.01 hours	scans of brain, lung, heart, bone
I-131	β decay	8.02 days	thyroid scans and treatment
Tl-201	electron capture	73 hours	heart and arteries scans; cardiac stress tests

The “m” in Tc-99m stands for “metastable,” indicating that this is an unstable, high-energy state of Tc-99. Metastable isotopes emit γ radiation to rid themselves of excess energy and become (more) stable.

Radiometric Dating

Several radioisotopes have half-lives and other properties that make them useful for purposes of “dating” the origin of objects such as archaeological artifacts, formerly living organisms, or geological formations. This process is radiometric dating and has been responsible for many breakthrough scientific discoveries about the geological history of the earth, the evolution of life, and the history of human civilization. We will explore some of the most common types of radioactive dating and how the particular isotopes work for each type.

Radioactive Dating Using Carbon-14

The radioactivity of carbon-14 provides a method for dating objects that were a part of a living organism. This method of radiometric dating, which is also called radiocarbon dating or carbon-14 dating, is accurate for dating carbon-containing substances that are up to about 30,000 years old, and can provide reasonably accurate dates up to a maximum of about 50,000 years old.

Naturally occurring carbon consists of three isotopes: ${}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$, which constitutes about 99% of the carbon on earth; ${}^{13}_{6}\mathrm{C}$, about 1% of the total; and trace amounts of ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C}$. Carbon-14 forms in the upper atmosphere by the reaction of nitrogen atoms with neutrons from cosmic rays in space:

$$ {}^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \longrightarrow {}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} + {}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H} $$

All isotopes of carbon react with oxygen to produce CO_2 molecules. The ratio of ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{CO}_2$ to ${}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{CO}_2$ depends on the ratio of ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{CO}$ to ${}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{CO}$ in the atmosphere. The natural abundance of ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{CO}$ in the atmosphere is approximately 1 part per trillion; until recently, this has generally been constant over time, as seen is gas samples found trapped in ice. The incorporation of ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C}{}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{CO}_2$ and ${}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{CO}_2$ into plants is a regular part of the photosynthesis process, which means that the ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} : {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ ratio found in a living plant is the same as the ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} : {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ ratio in the atmosphere. But when the plant dies, it no longer traps carbon through photosynthesis. Because ${}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ is a stable isotope and does not undergo radioactive decay, its concentration in the plant does not change. However, carbon-14 decays by β emission with a half-life of 5730 years:

$$ {}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} \longrightarrow {}^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N} + {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} $$

Thus, the ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} : {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ ratio gradually decreases after the plant dies. The decrease in the ratio with time provides a measure of the time that has elapsed since the death of the plant (or other organism that ate the plant). Figure 7 visually depicts this process.

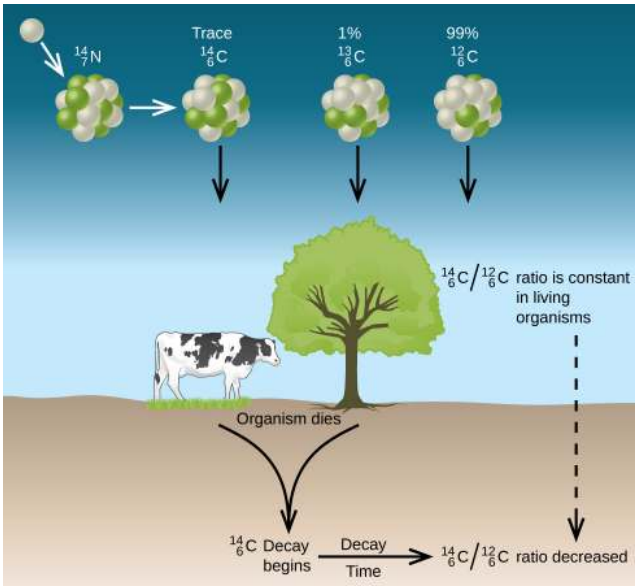


Figure 7: Along with stable carbon-12, radioactive carbon-14 is taken in by plants and animals, and remains at a constant level within them while they are alive. After death, the C-14 decays and the C-14:C-12 ratio in the remains decreases. Comparing this ratio to the C-14:C-12 ratio in living organisms allows us to determine how long ago the organism lived (and died).

A diagram shows a cow standing on the ground next to a tree. In the upper left of the diagram, where the sky is represented, a single white sphere is shown and is connected by a downward-facing arrow to a larger sphere composed of green and white spheres that is labeled “superscript 14, subscript 7, N.” This structure is connected to three other structures by a right-facing arrow. Each of the three it points to are composed of green and white spheres and all have arrows pointing from them to the ground. The first of these is labeled “Trace, superscript 14, subscript 6, C,” the second is labeled “1 percent, superscript 13, subscript 6, C” and the last is labeled “99 percent, superscript 12, subscript 6, C.” Two downward-facing arrows that merge into one arrow lead from the cow and tree to the ground and are labeled “organism dies” and “superscript 14, subscript 6, C, decay begins.” A right-facing arrow labeled on top as “Decay” and on bottom as “Time” leads from this to a label of “superscript 14, subscript 6, C, backslash, superscript 12, subscript 6, C, ratio decreased.” Near the top of the tree is a downward facing arrow with the label “superscript 14, subscript 6, C, backslash, superscript 12, subscript 6, C, ratio is constant in living organisms” that leads to the last of the lower statements.

For example, with the half-life of ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ being 5730 years, if the ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} : {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ ratio in a wooden object found in an archaeological dig is half what it is in a living tree, this indicates that the wooden object is 5730 years old. Highly accurate determinations of ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} : {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ ratios can be obtained from very small samples (as little as a milligram) by the use of a mass spectrometer.

Example 2: Radiocarbon Dating

A tiny piece of paper (produced from formerly living plant matter) taken from the Dead Sea Scrolls has an activity of 10.8 disintegrations per minute per gram of carbon. If the initial C-14 activity was 13.6 disintegrations/min/g of C, estimate the age of the Dead Sea Scrolls.

Solution

The rate of decay (number of disintegrations/minute/gram of carbon) is proportional to the amount of radioactive C-14 left in the paper, so we can substitute the rates for the amounts, *N*, in the relationship:

$$t = -\frac{1}{\lambda}\ln\left(\frac{N_t}{N_0}\right) \longrightarrow t = -\frac{1}{\lambda}\ln\left(\frac{\text{Rate}_t}{\text{Rate}_0}\right)$$

where the subscript 0 represents the time when the plants were cut to make the paper, and the subscript *t* represents the current time.

The decay constant can be determined from the half-life of C-14, 5730 years:

$$\lambda = \frac{\ln 2}{t_{1/2}} = \frac{0.693}{5730\ \text{y}} = 1.21 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{y}^{-1}$$

Substituting and solving, we have:

$$t = -\frac{1}{\lambda}\ln\left(\frac{\text{Rate}_t}{\text{Rate}_0}\right) = -\frac{1}{1.21 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{y}^{-1}}\ln\left(\frac{10.8\ \text{dis/min/g C}}{13.6\ \text{dis/min/g C}}\right) = 1910\ \text{y}$$

Therefore, the Dead Sea Scrolls are approximately 1900 years old (Figure 8).



Figure 8: Carbon-14 dating has shown that these pages from the Dead Sea Scrolls were written or copied on paper made from plants that died between 100 BC and AD 50.

Exercise 2

More accurate dates of the reigns of ancient Egyptian pharaohs have been determined recently using plants that were preserved in their tombs. Samples of seeds and plant matter from King Tutankhamun's tomb have a C-14 decay rate of 9.07 disintegrations/min/g of C. How long ago did King Tut's reign come to an end?

Answer

about 3350 years ago, or approximately 1340 BC

There have been some significant, well-documented changes to the ${}^{14}_{6}\text{C} : {}^{12}_{6}\text{C}$ ratio. The accuracy of a straightforward application of this technique depends on the ${}^{14}_{6}\text{C} : {}^{12}_{6}\text{C}$ ratio in a living plant being the same now as it was in an earlier era, but this is not always valid. Due to the increasing accumulation of CO_2 molecules (largely ${}^{12}_{6}\text{CO}_2$) in the atmosphere caused by combustion of fossil fuels (in which essentially all of the ${}^{14}_{6}\text{C}$ has decayed), the ratio of ${}^{14}_{6}\text{C} : {}^{12}_{6}\text{C}$ in the atmosphere may be changing. This manmade increase in ${}^{12}_{6}\text{CO}_2$ in the atmosphere causes the ${}^{14}_{6}\text{C} : {}^{12}_{6}\text{C}$ ratio to decrease, and this in turn affects the ratio in currently living organisms on the earth. Fortunately, however, we can use other data, such as tree dating via examination of annual growth rings, to calculate correction factors. With these correction factors, accurate dates can be determined. In general, radioactive dating only works for about 10 half-lives; therefore, the limit for carbon-14 dating is about 57,000 years.

Radioactive Dating Using Nuclides Other than Carbon-14

Radioactive dating can also use other radioactive nuclides with longer half-lives to date older events. For example, uranium-238 (which decays in a series of steps into lead-206) can be used for establishing the age of rocks (and the approximate age of the oldest rocks on earth). Since U-238 has a half-life of 4.5 billion years, it takes that amount of time for half of the original U-238 to decay into Pb-206. In a sample of rock that does not contain appreciable amounts of Pb-208, the most abundant isotope of lead, we can assume that lead was not present when the rock was formed. Therefore, by measuring and analyzing the ratio of U-238:Pb-206, we can determine the age of the rock. This assumes that all of the lead-206 present came from the decay of uranium-238. If there is additional lead-206 present, which is indicated by the presence of other lead isotopes in the sample, it is necessary to make an adjustment. Potassium-argon dating uses a similar method. K-40 decays by positron emission and electron capture to form Ar-40 with a half-life of 1.25 billion years. If a rock sample is crushed and the amount of Ar-40 gas that escapes is measured, determination of the Ar-40:K-40 ratio yields the age of the rock. Other methods, such as rubidium-strontium dating (Rb-87 decays into Sr-87 with a half-life of 48.8 billion years), operate on the same principle. To estimate the lower limit for the earth's age, scientists determine the age of various rocks and minerals, making the assumption that the earth is older than the oldest rocks and minerals in its crust. As of 2014, the oldest known rocks on earth are the Jack Hills zircons from Australia, found by uranium-lead dating to be almost 4.4 billion years old.

Example 3: Radioactive Dating of Rocks

An igneous rock contains 9.58×10^{-5} g of U-238 and 2.51×10^{-5} g of Pb-206, and much, much smaller amounts of Pb-208. Determine the approximate time at which the rock formed.

Solution

The sample of rock contains very little Pb-208, the most common isotope of lead, so we can safely assume that all the Pb-206 in the rock was produced by the radioactive decay of U-238. When the rock formed, it contained all of the U-238 currently in it, plus some U-238 that has since undergone radioactive decay.

The amount of U-238 currently in the rock is:

$$9.58 \times 10^{-5}\ \cancel{\text{g U}} \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{mol U}}{238\ \cancel{\text{g U}}} \right) = 4.03 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{mol U}$$

Because when one mole of U-238 decays, it produces one mole of Pb-206, the amount of U-238 that has undergone radioactive decay since the rock was formed is:

$$2.51 \times 10^{-5}\ \cancel{\text{g Pb}} \times \left(\frac{1\ \cancel{\text{mol Pb}}}{206\ \cancel{\text{g Pb}}} \right) \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{mol U}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol Pb}}} \right) = 1.22 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{mol U}$$

The total amount of U-238 originally present in the rock is therefore:

$$4.03 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{mol} + 1.22 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{mol} = 5.25 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{mol U}$$

The amount of time that has passed since the formation of the rock is given by:

$$t = -\frac{1}{\lambda} \ln \left(\frac{N_t}{N_0} \right)$$

with N_0 representing the original amount of U-238 and N_t representing the present amount of U-238.

U-238 decays into Pb-206 with a half-life of 4.5×10^9 y, so the decay constant λ is:

$$\lambda = \frac{\ln 2}{t_{1/2}} = \frac{0.693}{4.5 \times 10^9\ \text{y}} = 1.54 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{y}^{-1}$$

Substituting and solving, we have:

$$t = -\frac{1}{1.54 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{y}^{-1}} \ln \left(\frac{4.03 \times 10^{-7}\ \cancel{\text{mol U}}}{5.25 \times 10^{-7}\ \cancel{\text{mol U}}} \right) = 1.7 \times 10^9\ \text{y}$$

Therefore, the rock is approximately 1.7 billion years old.

? Exercise 3

A sample of rock contains 6.14×10^{-4} g of Rb-87 and 3.51×10^{-5} g of Sr-87. Calculate the age of the rock. (The half-life of the β decay of Rb-87 is 4.7×10^{10} y.)

Answer

3.7×10^{9} y

Summary

Nuclei that have unstable n:p ratios undergo spontaneous radioactive decay. The most common types of radioactivity are α decay, β decay, γ emission, positron emission, and electron capture. Nuclear reactions also often involve γ rays, and some nuclei decay by electron capture. Each of these modes of decay leads to the formation of a new nucleus with a more stable n:p ratio. Some substances undergo radioactive decay series, proceeding through multiple decays before ending in a stable isotope. All nuclear decay processes follow first-order kinetics, and each radioisotope has its own characteristic half-life, the time that is required for half of its atoms to decay. Because of the large differences in stability among nuclides, there is a very wide range of half-lives of radioactive substances. Many of these substances have found useful applications in medical diagnosis and treatment, determining the age of archaeological and geological objects, and more.

Key Equations

- decay rate = λN
- $t_{1/2} = \dfrac{\ln 2}{\lambda} = \dfrac{0.693}{\lambda}$

Glossary

alpha (α) decay
loss of an alpha particle during radioactive decay

beta (β) decay
breakdown of a neutron into a proton, which remains in the nucleus, and an electron, which is emitted as a beta particle

daughter nuclide
nuclide produced by the radioactive decay of another nuclide; may be stable or may decay further

electron capture
combination of a core electron with a proton to yield a neutron within the nucleus

gamma (γ) emission
decay of an excited-state nuclide accompanied by emission of a gamma ray

half-life ($t_{1/2}$)
time required for half of the atoms in a radioactive sample to decay

parent nuclide
unstable nuclide that changes spontaneously into another (daughter) nuclide

positron emission
(also, β^+ decay) conversion of a proton into a neutron, which remains in the nucleus, and a positron, which is emitted

radioactive decay
spontaneous decay of an unstable nuclide into another nuclide

radioactive decay series

chains of successive disintegrations (radioactive decays) that ultimately lead to a stable end-product

radiocarbon dating

highly accurate means of dating objects 30,000–50,000 years old that were derived from once-living matter; achieved by calculating the ratio of ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} : {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ in the object vs. the ratio of ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} : {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ in the present-day atmosphere

radiometric dating

use of radioisotopes and their properties to date the formation of objects such as archeological artifacts, formerly living organisms, or geological formations

---

This page titled 3.9.3 Radioactive Decay is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **21.3: Radioactive Decay** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy

Learning Objectives

- Describe the synthesis of transuranium nuclides
- Explain nuclear fission and fusion processes
- Relate the concepts of critical mass and nuclear chain reactions
- Summarize basic requirements for nuclear fission and fusion reactors

After the discovery of radioactivity, the field of nuclear chemistry was created and developed rapidly during the early twentieth century. A slew of new discoveries in the 1930s and 1940s, along with World War II, combined to usher in the Nuclear Age in the mid-twentieth century. Science learned how to create new substances, and certain isotopes of certain elements were found to possess the capacity to produce unprecedented amounts of energy, with the potential to cause tremendous damage during war, as well as produce enormous amounts of power for society's needs during peace.

Synthesis of Nuclides

Nuclear transmutation is the conversion of one nuclide into another. It can occur by the radioactive decay of a nucleus, or the reaction of a nucleus with another particle. The first manmade nucleus was produced in Ernest Rutherford's laboratory in 1919 by a transmutation reaction, the bombardment of one type of nuclei with other nuclei or with neutrons. Rutherford bombarded nitrogen atoms with high-speed α particles from a natural radioactive isotope of radium and observed protons resulting from the reaction:

$$^{14}_{7}\text{N} + ^{4}_{2}\text{He} \longrightarrow ^{17}_{8}\text{O} + ^{1}_{1}\text{H}$$

The $^{17}_{8}\text{O}$ and $^{1}_{1}\text{H}$ nuclei that are produced are stable, so no further (nuclear) changes occur.

To reach the kinetic energies necessary to produce transmutation reactions, devices called particle accelerators are used. These devices use magnetic and electric fields to increase the speeds of nuclear particles. In all accelerators, the particles move in a vacuum to avoid collisions with gas molecules. When neutrons are required for transmutation reactions, they are usually obtained from radioactive decay reactions or from various nuclear reactions occurring in nuclear reactors. The Chemistry in Everyday Life feature that follows discusses a famous particle accelerator that made worldwide news.

CERN Particle Accelerator

Located near Geneva, the CERN ("Conseil Européen pour la Recherche Nucléaire," or European Council for Nuclear Research) Laboratory is the world's premier center for the investigations of the fundamental particles that make up matter. It contains the 27-kilometer (17 mile) long, circular Large Hadron Collider (LHC), the largest particle accelerator in the world (Figure 1). In the LHC, particles are boosted to high energies and are then made to collide with each other or with stationary targets at nearly the speed of light. Superconducting electromagnets are used to produce a strong magnetic field that guides the particles around the ring. Specialized, purpose-built detectors observe and record the results of these collisions, which are then analyzed by CERN scientists using powerful computers.



Figure 1: A small section of the LHC is shown with workers traveling along it. (credit: Christophe Delaere)

In 2012, CERN announced that experiments at the LHC showed the first observations of the Higgs boson, an elementary particle that helps explain the origin of mass in fundamental particles. This long-anticipated discovery made worldwide news and resulted in the awarding of the 2103 Nobel Prize in Physics to François Englert and Peter Higgs, who had predicted the existence of this particle almost 50 years previously.

Prior to 1940, the heaviest-known element was uranium, whose atomic number is 92. Now, many artificial elements have been synthesized and isolated, including several on such a large scale that they have had a profound effect on society. One of these—element 93, neptunium (Np)—was first made in 1940 by McMillan and Abelson by bombarding uranium-238 with neutrons. The reaction creates unstable uranium-239, with a half-life of 23.5 minutes, which then decays into neptunium-239. Neptunium-239 is also radioactive, with a half-life of 2.36 days, and it decays into plutonium-239. The nuclear reactions are:

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U} + ^{1}_{0}\text{n} \longrightarrow ^{239}_{92}\text{U}$$

$$^{239}_{92}\text{U} \longrightarrow ^{239}_{93}\text{Np} + ^{0}_{-1}\text{e} \quad t_{\frac{1}{2}} \quad \text{half-life} = 23.5 \text{ min}$$

$$^{239}_{93}\text{Np} \longrightarrow ^{239}_{94}\text{Pu} + ^{0}_{-1}\text{e} \quad t_{\frac{1}{2}} \quad \text{half-life} = 2.36 \text{ days}$$

Plutonium is now mostly formed in nuclear reactors as a byproduct during the decay of uranium. Some of the neutrons that are released during U-235 decay combine with U-238 nuclei to form uranium-239; this undergoes β decay to form neptunium-239, which in turn undergoes β decay to form plutonium-239 as illustrated in the preceding three equations. It is possible to summarize these equations as:

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U} + ^{1}_{0}\text{n} \longrightarrow ^{239}_{92}\text{U} \xrightarrow{\beta^-} ^{239}_{93}\text{Np} \xrightarrow{\beta^-} ^{239}_{94}\text{Pu}$$

Heavier isotopes of plutonium—Pu-240, Pu-241, and Pu-242—are also produced when lighter plutonium nuclei capture neutrons. Some of this highly radioactive plutonium is used to produce military weapons, and the rest presents a serious storage problem because they have half-lives from thousands to hundreds of thousands of years.

Although they have not been prepared in the same quantity as plutonium, many other synthetic nuclei have been produced. Nuclear medicine has developed from the ability to convert atoms of one type into other types of atoms. Radioactive isotopes of several dozen elements are currently used for medical applications. The radiation produced by their decay is used to image or treat various organs or portions of the body, among other uses.

The elements beyond element 92 (uranium) are called transuranium elements. As of this writing, 22 transuranium elements have been produced and officially recognized by IUPAC; several other elements have formation claims that are waiting for approval. Some of these elements are shown in Table 1.

Table 1: Preparation of Some of the Transuranium Elements

Name	Symbol	Atomic Number	Reaction
americium	Am	95	$^{239}_{94}\text{Pu} + ^{1}_{0}\text{n} \longrightarrow ^{240}_{95}\text{Am} + ^{0}_{-1}\text{e}$

Name	Symbol	Atomic Number	Reaction
curium	Cm	96	$^{239}_{94}\mathrm{Pu} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \longrightarrow {}^{242}_{96}\mathrm{Cm} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
californium	Cf	98	$^{242}_{96}\mathrm{Cm} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \longrightarrow {}^{245}_{98}\mathrm{Cf} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
einsteinium	Es	99	$^{238}_{92}\mathrm{U} + 15\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \longrightarrow {}^{253}_{99}\mathrm{Es} + 7\,{}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e}$
mendelevium	Md	101	$^{253}_{99}\mathrm{Es} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \longrightarrow {}^{256}_{101}\mathrm{Md} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
nobelium	No	102	$^{246}_{96}\mathrm{Cm} + {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C} \longrightarrow {}^{254}_{102}\mathrm{No} + 4\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
rutherfordium	Rf	104	$^{249}_{98}\mathrm{Cf} + {}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C} \longrightarrow {}^{257}_{104}\mathrm{Rf} + 4\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
seaborgium	Sg	106	$^{206}_{82}\mathrm{Pb} + {}^{54}_{24}\mathrm{Cr} \longrightarrow {}^{257}_{106}\mathrm{Sg} + 3\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$ $^{249}_{98}\mathrm{Cf} + {}^{18}_{8}\mathrm{O} \longrightarrow {}^{263}_{106}\mathrm{Sg} + 4\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
meitnerium	Mt	107	$^{209}_{83}\mathrm{Bi} + {}^{58}_{26}\mathrm{Fe} \longrightarrow {}^{266}_{109}\mathrm{Mt} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$

Nuclear Fission

Many heavier elements with smaller binding energies per nucleon can decompose into more stable elements that have intermediate mass numbers and larger binding energies per nucleon—that is, mass numbers and binding energies per nucleon that are closer to the "peak" of the binding energy graph near 56. Sometimes neutrons are also produced. This decomposition is called fission, the breaking of a large nucleus into smaller pieces. The breaking is rather random with the formation of a large number of different products. Fission usually does not occur naturally, but is induced by bombardment with neutrons. The first reported nuclear fission occurred in 1939 when three German scientists, Lise Meitner, Otto Hahn, and Fritz Strassman, bombarded uranium-235 atoms with slow-moving neutrons that split the U-238 nuclei into smaller fragments that consisted of several neutrons and elements near the middle of the periodic table. Since then, fission has been observed in many other isotopes, including most actinide isotopes that have an odd number of neutrons. A typical nuclear fission reaction is shown in Figure 2.

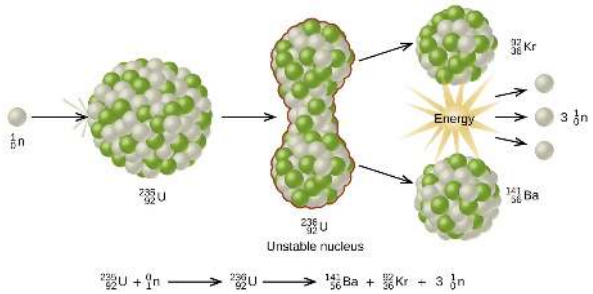


Figure 2: When a slow neutron hits a fissionable U-235 nucleus, it is absorbed and forms an unstable U-236 nucleus. The U-236 nucleus then rapidly breaks apart into two smaller nuclei (in this case, Ba-141 and Kr-92) along with several neutrons (usually two or three), and releases a very large amount of energy.

A diagram is shown which has a white sphere labeled "superscript, 1, subscript 0, n" followed by a right-facing arrow and a large sphere composed of many smaller white and green spheres labeled "superscript, 235, subscript 92, U." The single sphere has impacted the larger sphere. A right-facing arrow leads from the larger sphere to a vertical dumbbell shaped collection of the same white and green spheres labeled "superscript, 236, subscript 92, U, Unstable nucleus." Two right-facing arrows lead from the top and bottom of this structure to two new spheres that are also composed of green and white spheres and are slightly smaller than the others. The top sphere is labeled "superscript, 92, subscript 36, K r" while the lower one is labeled "superscript, 141, subscript 56, B a." A starburst pattern labeled "Energy" lies between these two spheres and has three right-facing arrows leading from it to three white spheres labeled "3, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n." A balanced nuclear equation is written below the diagram and says "superscript, 235, subscript 92, U, plus sign, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n, yield arrow, superscript, 236, subscript 92, U, yield arrow, superscript, 141, subscript 56, B a, plus sign, superscript, 92, subscript 36, K r, plus sign, 3, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n."

Among the products of Meitner, Hahn, and Strassman's fission reaction were barium, krypton, lanthanum, and cerium, all of which have nuclei that are more stable than uranium-235. Since then, hundreds of different isotopes have been observed among the products of fissionable substances. A few of the many reactions that occur for U-235, and a graph showing the distribution of its fission products and their yields, are shown in Figure 3. Similar fission reactions have been observed with other uranium isotopes, as well as with a variety of other isotopes such as those of plutonium.

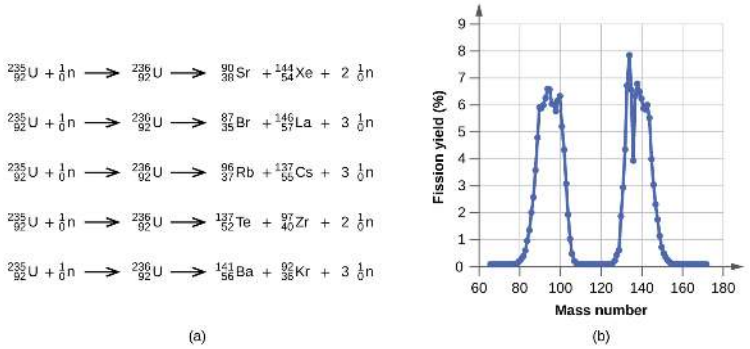


Figure 3: (a) Nuclear fission of U-235 produces a range of fission products. (b) The larger fission products of U-235 are typically one isotope with a mass number around 85–105, and another isotope with a mass number that is about 50% larger, that is, about 130–150.

Five nuclear equations and a graph are shown. The first equation is "superscript, 235, subscript 92, U, plus sign, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n, yield arrow, superscript, 236, subscript 92, U, yield arrow, superscript, 90, subscript 38, S r, plus sign, superscript, 144, subscript 54, X e, plus sign, 2, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n." The second equation is "superscript, 235, subscript 92, U, plus sign, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n, yield arrow, superscript, 236, subscript 92, U, yield arrow, superscript, 87, subscript 35, B r, plus sign, superscript, 146, subscript 57, L a, plus sign, 3, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n." The third equation is "superscript, 235, subscript 92, U, plus sign, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n, yield arrow, superscript, 236, subscript 92, U, yield arrow, superscript, 97, subscript 37, R b, plus sign, superscript, 137, subscript 55, C s, plus sign, 3, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n." The fourth equation is "superscript, 235, subscript 92, U, plus sign, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n, yield arrow, superscript, 236, subscript 92, U, yield arrow, superscript, 137, subscript 52, T e, plus sign, superscript, 97, subscript 40, Z r, plus sign, 2, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n." The fifth equation is "superscript, 235, subscript 92, U, plus sign, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n, yield arrow, superscript, 236, subscript 92, U, yield arrow, superscript, 141, subscript 56, B a, plus sign, superscript, 92, subscript 36, K r, plus sign, 3, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n." A graph is also shown where the y-axis is labeled "Fission yield, open parenthesis, percent sign, close parenthesis" and has values of 0 to 9 in increments of 1 while the x-axis is labeled "Mass number" and has values of 60 to 180 in increments of 20. The graph begins near point "65, 0" and rises rapidly to near "92, 6.6," then drops just as rapidly to "107, 0" and remains there to point "127, 0." The graph then rises again to near "132, 8," then goes up and down a bit before falling to a point "153, 0," and going horizontal.

A tremendous amount of energy is produced by the fission of heavy elements. For instance, when one mole of U-235 undergoes fission, the products weigh about 0.2 grams less than the reactants; this "lost" mass is converted into a very large amount of energy, about 1.8×10^{10} kJ per mole of U-235. Nuclear fission reactions produce incredibly large amounts of energy compared to chemical reactions. The fission of 1 kilogram of uranium-235, for example, produces about 2.5 million times as much energy as is produced by burning 1 kilogram of coal.

As described earlier, when undergoing fission U-235 produces two “medium-sized” nuclei, and two or three neutrons. These neutrons may then cause the fission of other uranium-235 atoms, which in turn provide more neutrons that can cause fission of even more nuclei, and so on. If this occurs, we have a nuclear chain reaction (Figure 4). On the other hand, if too many neutrons escape the bulk material without interacting with a nucleus, then no chain reaction will occur.

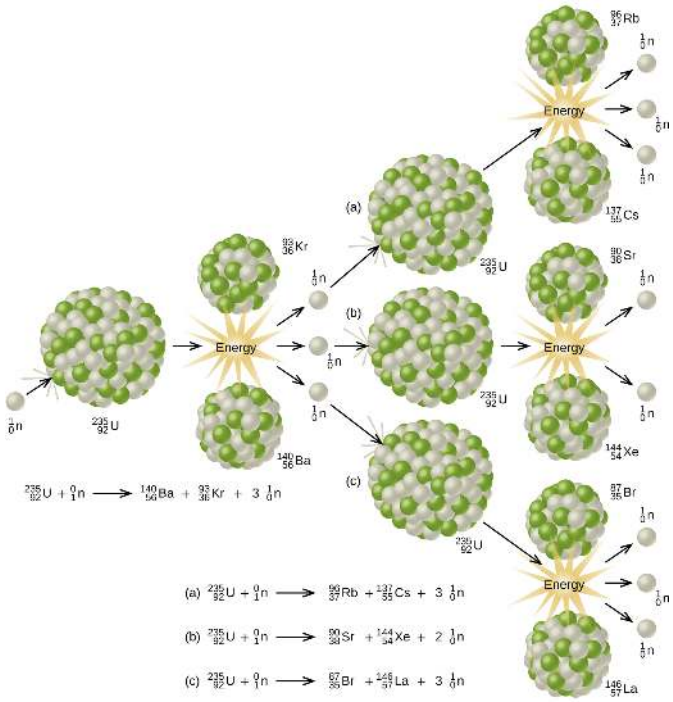


Figure 4: The fission of a large nucleus, such as U-235, produces two or three neutrons, each of which is capable of causing fission of another nucleus by the reactions shown. If this process continues, a nuclear chain reaction occurs.

A diagram is shown which has a white sphere labeled “superscript, 1, subscript 0, n” followed by a right-facing arrow and a large sphere composed of many smaller white and green spheres labeled “superscript, 235, subscript 92, U.” The single sphere has impacted the larger sphere. A right-facing arrow leads from the larger sphere to a pair of smaller spheres which are collections of the same white and green spheres. The upper of these two images is labeled “superscript, 93, subscript 36, K r” while the lower of the two is labeled “superscript, 142, subscript 56, B a.” A starburst pattern labeled “Energy” lies between these two spheres and has three right-facing arrows leading from it to three white spheres labeled “ superscript, 1, subscript 0, n.” An equation below this portion of the diagram reads ““superscript, 235, subscript 92, U, plus sign, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n, yield arrow, superscript, 140, subscript 56, B a, plus sign, superscript 90, subscript 36, K r, plus sign, 3, superscript 1, subscript 0, n.” A right-facing arrow leads from each of these white spheres to three larger spheres, each composed of many smaller green and white spheres and labeled, from top to bottom as “a, superscript,235, subscript 92, U,” “b, superscript,235, subscript 92, U” and “c, superscript,235, subscript 92, U.” Each of these spheres is followed by a right-facing arrow which points to a pair of smaller spheres composed of the same green and white spheres with starburst patterns in between each pair labeled “Energy.” The spheres of the top pair are labeled, from top to bottom, “superscript, 96, subscript 37, R b” and “superscript, 137, subscript 55, C s.” The spheres of the middle pair are labeled, from top to bottom, “superscript, 90, subscript 38, S r” and “superscript, 144, subscript 54, X e.” The spheres of the bottom pair are labeled, from top to bottom, “superscript, 87, subscript 35, B r” and “superscript, 146, subscript 57, L a.” Each pair of spheres is followed by three right-facing arrows leading to three white spheres labeled “superscript, 1, subscript 0, n.” Below the diagram are three nuclear equations. Equation a reads “superscript, 235, subscript 92, U, plus sign, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n, yield arrow, superscript, 96, subscript 37, R b, plus sign, superscript 137, subscript 55, C s, plus sign, 3, superscript 1, subscript 0, n.” Equation b reads “superscript, 235, subscript 92, U, plus sign, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n, yield arrow, superscript, 90, subscript 38, S r, plus sign, superscript144, subscript 54, X e, plus sign, 2, superscript 1, subscript 0, n.” Equation c reads “superscript, 235, subscript 92, U, plus sign, superscript, 1, subscript 0, n, yield arrow, superscript, 87, subscript 35, B r, plus sign, superscript 146, subscript 57, L a, plus sign, 3, superscript 1, subscript 0, n”

Material that can sustain a nuclear fission chain reaction is said to be fissile or fissionable. (Technically, fissile material can undergo fission with neutrons of any energy, whereas fissionable material requires high-energy neutrons.) Nuclear fission becomes self-sustaining when the number of neutrons produced by fission equals or exceeds the number of neutrons absorbed by splitting nuclei plus the number that escape into the surroundings. The amount of a fissionable material that will support a self-sustaining chain reaction is a critical mass. An amount of fissionable material that cannot sustain a chain reaction is a subcritical mass. An amount of material in which there is an increasing rate of fission is known as a supercritical mass. The critical mass depends on the type of material: its purity, the temperature, the shape of the sample, and how the neutron reactions are controlled (Figure 5).

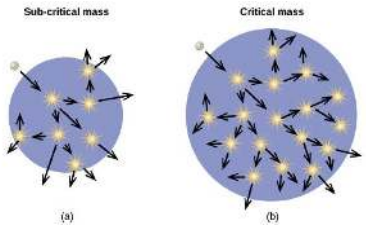


Figure 5: (a) In a subcritical mass, the fissile material is too small and allows too many neutrons to escape the material, so a chain reaction does not occur. (b) In a critical mass, a large enough number of neutrons in the fissile material induce fission to create a chain reaction.

The images are shown and labeled “a,” “b” and “c.” Image a, labeled “Sub-critical mass,” shows a blue circle background with a white sphere near the outer, top, left edge of the circle. A downward, right-facing arrow indicates that the white sphere enters the circle. Seven small, yellow starbursts are drawn in the blue circle and each has an arrow facing from it to outside the circle, in seemingly random directions. Image b, labeled “Critical mass,” shows a blue circle background with a white sphere near the outer, top, left edge of the circle. A downward, right-facing arrow indicates that the white sphere enters the circle. Seventeen small, yellow starbursts are drawn in the blue circle and each has an arrow facing from it to outside the circle, in seemingly random directions. Image c, labeled “Critical mass from neutron deflection,” shows a blue circle background, lying in a larger purple circle, with a white sphere near the outer, top, left edge of the purple circle. A downward, right-facing arrow indicates that the white sphere enters both of the circles. Thirteen small, yellow starbursts are drawn in the blue circle and each has an arrow facing from it to outside the blue circle, and a couple outside of the purple circle, in seemingly random directions.

An atomic bomb (Figure 6) contains several pounds of fissionable material, $^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U}$ or $^{239}_{94}\mathrm{Pu}$, a source of neutrons, and an explosive device for compressing it quickly into a small volume. When fissionable material is in small pieces, the proportion of neutrons that escape through the relatively large surface area is great, and a chain reaction does not take place. When the small pieces of fissionable material are brought together quickly to form a body with a mass larger than the critical mass, the relative number of escaping neutrons decreases, and a chain reaction and explosion result.

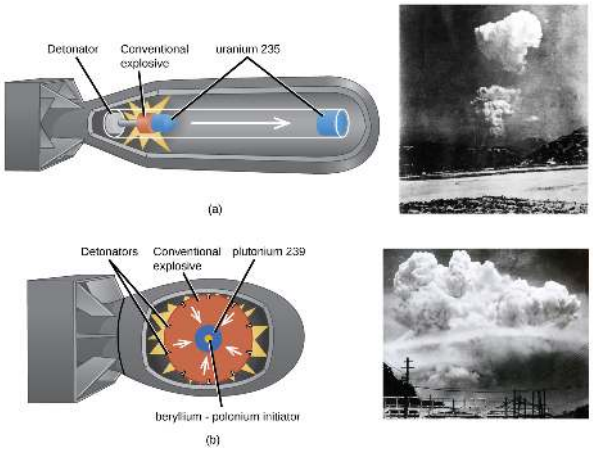


Figure 6: (a) The nuclear fission bomb that destroyed Hiroshima on August 6, 1945, consisted of two subcritical masses of U-235, where conventional explosives were used to fire one of the subcritical masses into the other, creating the critical mass for the nuclear explosion. (b) The plutonium bomb that destroyed Nagasaki on August 12, 1945, consisted of a hollow sphere of plutonium that was rapidly compressed by conventional explosives. This led to a concentration of plutonium in the center that was greater than the critical mass necessary for the nuclear explosion.

Two diagrams are shown, each to the left of a photo, and labeled “a” and “b.” Diagram a shows the outer casing of a bomb that has a long, tubular shape with a squared-off tail. Components in the shell show a tube with a white disk labeled “Detonator” on the left, an orange disk with a bright yellow starburst drawn around it labeled “Conventional explosive” in the middle and a right-facing arrow leading to a blue disk in the nose of the bomb labeled “uranium 235.” A small blue cone next to the orange disk is shares the label of “uranium 235.” A black and white photo next to this diagram shows a far-off shot of a rising cloud over a landscape. Diagram b shows the outer casing of a bomb that has a short, rounded shape with a squared-off tail. Components in the shell show a large orange circle labeled “Conventional explosive” with a series of black dots around its edge, labeled “Detonators,” and a yellow starburst behind it. White arrows face from the outer edge of the orange circle to a blue circle in the center with a yellow core. The blue circle is labeled “plutonium 239” while the yellow core is labeled “beryllium, dash, polonium initiator.” A black and white photo next to this diagram shows a far-off shot of a giant rising cloud over a landscape.

Fission Reactors

Chain reactions of fissionable materials can be controlled and sustained without an explosion in a nuclear reactor (Figure 7). Any nuclear reactor that produces power via the fission of uranium or plutonium by bombardment with neutrons must have at least five components: nuclear fuel consisting of fissionable material, a nuclear moderator, reactor coolant, control rods, and a shield and containment system. We will discuss these components in greater detail later in the section. The reactor works by separating the fissionable nuclear material such that a critical mass cannot be formed, controlling both the flux and absorption of neutrons to allow shutting down the fission reactions. In a nuclear reactor used for the production of electricity, the energy released by fission reactions is trapped as thermal energy and used to boil water and produce steam. The steam is used to turn a turbine, which powers a generator for the production of electricity.

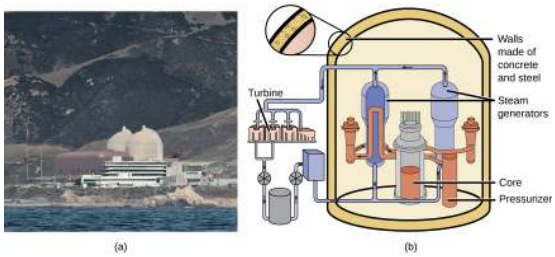


Figure 7: (a) The Diablo Canyon Nuclear Power Plant near San Luis Obispo is the only nuclear power plant currently in operation in California. The domes are the containment structures for the nuclear reactors, and the brown building houses the turbine where electricity is generated. Ocean water is used for cooling. (b) The Diablo Canyon uses a pressurized water reactor, one of a few different fission reactor designs in use around the world, to produce electricity. Energy from the nuclear fission reactions in the core heats water in a closed, pressurized system. Heat from this system produces steam that drives a turbine, which in turn produces electricity. (credit a: modification of work by “Mike” Michael L. Baird; credit b: modification of work by the Nuclear Regulatory Commission)

A photo labeled “a” and a diagram labeled “b” is shown. The photo is of a power plant with two large white domes and many buildings. The diagram shows a cylindrical container with thick walls labeled “Walls made of concrete and steel” and three main components inside. The first of these components is a pair of tall cylinders labeled “Steam generators” that sit to either side of a shorter cylinder labeled “Core.” Next to the core is a thin cylinder labeled “Pressurizer.” To the left of the outer walls is a set of pistons labeled “Turbines” that sit above a series of other equipment.

Nuclear Fuels

Nuclear fuel consists of a fissionable isotope, such as uranium-235, which must be present in sufficient quantity to provide a self-sustaining chain reaction. In the United States, uranium ores contain from 0.05–0.3% of the uranium oxide U_3O_8; the uranium in the ore is about 99.3% nonfissionable U-238 with only 0.7% fissionable U-235. Nuclear reactors require a fuel with a higher concentration of U-235 than is found in nature; it is normally enriched to have about 5% of uranium mass as U-235. At this concentration, it is not possible to achieve the supercritical mass necessary for a nuclear explosion. Uranium can be enriched by gaseous diffusion (the only method currently used in the US), using a gas centrifuge, or by laser separation.

In the gaseous diffusion enrichment plant where U-235 fuel is prepared, UF_6 (uranium hexafluoride) gas at low pressure moves through barriers that have holes just barely large enough for UF_6 to pass through. The slightly lighter $^{235}UF_6$ molecules diffuse through the barrier slightly faster than the heavier $^{238}UF_6$ molecules. This process is repeated through hundreds of barriers, gradually increasing the concentration of $^{235}UF_6$ to the level needed by the nuclear reactor. The basis for this process, Graham’s law, is described in the chapter on gases. The enriched UF_6 gas is collected, cooled until it solidifies, and then taken to a fabrication facility where it is made into fuel assemblies. Each fuel assembly consists of fuel rods that contain many thimble-sized, ceramic-encased, enriched uranium (usually UO_2) fuel pellets. Modern nuclear reactors may contain as many as 10 million fuel pellets. The amount of energy in each of these pellets is equal to that in almost a ton of coal or 150 gallons of oil.

Nuclear Moderators

Neutrons produced by nuclear reactions move too fast to cause fission (Figure 21.5.5). They must first be slowed to be absorbed by the fuel and produce additional nuclear reactions. A nuclear moderator is a substance that slows the neutrons to a speed that is low enough to cause fission. Early reactors used high-purity graphite as a moderator. Modern reactors in the US exclusively use heavy water $\left({}^{2}_{1}H_2O\right)$ or light water (ordinary H_2O), whereas some reactors in other countries use other materials, such as carbon dioxide, beryllium, or graphite.

Reactor Coolants

A nuclear reactor coolant is used to carry the heat produced by the fission reaction to an external boiler and turbine, where it is transformed into electricity. Two overlapping coolant loops are often used; this counteracts the transfer of radioactivity from the reactor to the primary coolant loop. All nuclear power plants in the US use water as a coolant. Other coolants include molten sodium, lead, a lead-bismuth mixture, or molten salts.

Control Rods

Nuclear reactors use control rods (Figure 8) to control the fission rate of the nuclear fuel by adjusting the number of slow neutrons present to keep the rate of the chain reaction at a safe level. Control rods are made of boron, cadmium, hafnium, or other elements that are able to absorb neutrons. Boron-10, for example, absorbs neutrons by a reaction that produces lithium-7 and alpha

particles:

$$^{10}_{5}\mathrm{B} + ^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \longrightarrow ^{7}_{3}\mathrm{Li} + ^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$$

When control rod assemblies are inserted into the fuel element in the reactor core, they absorb a larger fraction of the slow neutrons, thereby slowing the rate of the fission reaction and decreasing the power produced. Conversely, if the control rods are removed, fewer neutrons are absorbed, and the fission rate and energy production increase. In an emergency, the chain reaction can be shut down by fully inserting all of the control rods into the nuclear core between the fuel rods.

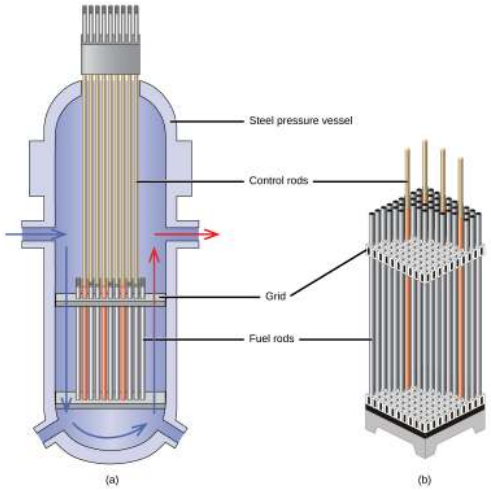


Figure 8: The nuclear reactor core shown in (a) contains the fuel and control rod assembly shown in (b). (credit: modification of work by E. Generalic, glossary.periodni.com/glossar...en=control+rod)

Two diagrams are shown and labeled “a” and “b.” Diagram a shows a cut-away view of a vertical tube with a flat, horizontal plate near the bottom that connects to a series of vertical pipes lined up next to one another and labeled “Fuel rods.” A second horizontal plate labeled “Grid” lies at the top of the pipes and a second set of thinner, vertical pipes, labeled “Control rods,” leads from this plate to the top of the container. The walls of the container are labeled “Steel pressure vessel.” A blue, right-facing arrow leads from an entry point in the left side of the container and is followed by a second, down-facing blue arrow and a curved, right-facing arrow that trace along the outer, bottom edge of the container. A blue and red arrow follows these and faces up the right side of the container to an exit near the right face where a red, right-facing arrow leads out. Diagram b is a cut-away image of a vertical, rectangular, three dimensional set of vertical pipes. The pipes are labeled “Fuel rods” and are inserted into an upper and lower horizontal plate labeled “Grid.” Four thin rods extend above the pipes and are labeled “Control rods.

Shield and Containment System

During its operation, a nuclear reactor produces neutrons and other radiation. Even when shut down, the decay products are radioactive. In addition, an operating reactor is thermally very hot, and high pressures result from the circulation of water or another coolant through it. Thus, a reactor must withstand high temperatures and pressures, and must protect operating personnel from the radiation. Reactors are equipped with a containment system (or shield) that consists of three parts:

1. The reactor vessel, a steel shell that is 3–20-centimeters thick and, with the moderator, absorbs much of the radiation produced by the reactor
2. A main shield of 1–3 meters of high-density concrete
3. A personnel shield of lighter materials that protects operators from γ rays and X-rays

In addition, reactors are often covered with a steel or concrete dome that is designed to contain any radioactive materials might be released by a reactor accident.



Video 1: Click here to watch a 3-minute video from the Nuclear Energy Institute on how nuclear reactors work.

Nuclear power plants are designed in such a way that they cannot form a supercritical mass of fissionable material and therefore cannot create a nuclear explosion. But as history has shown, failures of systems and safeguards can cause catastrophic accidents, including chemical explosions and nuclear meltdowns (damage to the reactor core from overheating). The following Chemistry in Everyday Life feature explores three infamous meltdown incidents.

Nuclear Accidents

The importance of cooling and containment are amply illustrated by three major accidents that occurred with the nuclear reactors at nuclear power generating stations in the United States (Three Mile Island), the former Soviet Union (Chernobyl), and Japan (Fukushima).

In March 1979, the cooling system of the Unit 2 reactor at Three Mile Island Nuclear Generating Station in Pennsylvania failed, and the cooling water spilled from the reactor onto the floor of the containment building. After the pumps stopped, the reactors overheated due to the high radioactive decay heat produced in the first few days after the nuclear reactor shut down. The temperature of the core climbed to at least 2200 °C, and the upper portion of the core began to melt. In addition, the zirconium alloy cladding of the fuel rods began to react with steam and produced hydrogen:

$$\mathrm{Zr}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZrO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$$

The hydrogen accumulated in the confinement building, and it was feared that there was danger of an explosion of the mixture of hydrogen and air in the building. Consequently, hydrogen gas and radioactive gases (primarily krypton and xenon) were vented from the building. Within a week, cooling water circulation was restored and the core began to cool. The plant was closed for nearly 10 years during the cleanup process.

Although zero discharge of radioactive material is desirable, the discharge of radioactive krypton and xenon, such as occurred at the Three Mile Island plant, is among the most tolerable. These gases readily disperse in the atmosphere and thus do not produce highly radioactive areas. Moreover, they are noble gases and are not incorporated into plant and animal matter in the food chain. Effectively none of the heavy elements of the core of the reactor were released into the environment, and no cleanup of the area outside of the containment building was necessary (Figure 9).

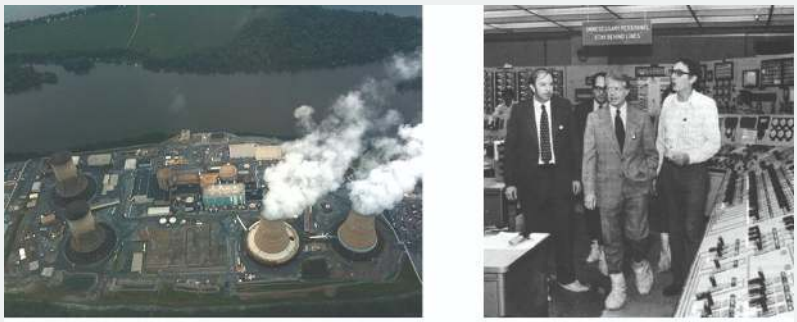


Figure 9: (a) In this 2010 photo of Three Mile Island, the remaining structures from the damaged Unit 2 reactor are seen on the left, whereas the separate Unit 1 reactor, unaffected by the accident, continues generating power to this day (right). (b) President Jimmy Carter visited the Unit 2 control room a few days after the accident in 1979.

Two photos, labeled “a” and “b” are shown. Photo a is an aerial view of a nuclear power plant. Photo b shows a small group of men walking through a room filled with electronics.

Another major nuclear accident involving a reactor occurred in April 1986, at the Chernobyl Nuclear Power Plant in Ukraine, which was still a part of the former Soviet Union. While operating at low power during an unauthorized experiment with some of its safety devices shut off, one of the reactors at the plant became unstable. Its chain reaction became uncontrollable and increased to a level far beyond what the reactor was designed for. The steam pressure in the reactor rose to between 100 and 500 times the full power pressure and ruptured the reactor. Because the reactor was not enclosed in a containment building, a large amount of radioactive material spewed out, and additional fission products were released, as the graphite (carbon) moderator of the core ignited and burned. The fire was controlled, but over 200 plant workers and firefighters developed acute radiation sickness and at least 32 soon died from the effects of the radiation. It is predicted that about 4000 more deaths will occur among emergency workers and former Chernobyl residents from radiation-induced cancer and leukemia. The reactor has since been encapsulated in steel and concrete, a now-decaying structure known as the sarcophagus. Almost 30 years later, significant radiation problems still persist in the area, and Chernobyl largely remains a wasteland.

In 2011, the Fukushima Daiichi Nuclear Power Plant in Japan was badly damaged by a 9.0-magnitude earthquake and resulting tsunami. Three reactors up and running at the time were shut down automatically, and emergency generators came online to power electronics and coolant systems. However, the tsunami quickly flooded the emergency generators and cut power to the pumps that circulated coolant water through the reactors. High-temperature steam in the reactors reacted with zirconium alloy to produce hydrogen gas. The gas escaped into the containment building, and the mixture of hydrogen and air exploded. Radioactive material was released from the containment vessels as the result of deliberate venting to reduce the hydrogen pressure, deliberate discharge of coolant water into the sea, and accidental or uncontrolled events.

An evacuation zone around the damaged plant extended over 12.4 miles away, and an estimated 200,000 people were evacuated from the area. All 48 of Japan’s nuclear power plants were subsequently shut down, remaining shuttered as of December 2014. Since the disaster, public opinion has shifted from largely favoring to largely opposing increasing the use of nuclear power plants, and a restart of Japan’s atomic energy program is still stalled (Figure 10).



Figure 10: (a) After the accident, contaminated waste had to be removed, and (b) an evacuation zone was set up around the plant in areas that received heavy doses of radioactive fallout. (credit a: modification of work by “Live Action Hero”/Flickr)

A photo and a map, labeled “a” and “b,” respectively, are shown. Photo a shows a man in a body-covering safety suit working near a series of blue, plastic coated containers. Map b shows a section of land with the ocean on each side. Near the upper right side of the land is a small red dot, labeled “greater than, 12.5, m R backslash, h r,” that is surrounded by a zone of orange that extends in the upper left direction labeled “2.17, dash, 12.5, m R backslash, h r.” The orange is surrounded by an outline of yellow labeled “1.19, dash, 2.17, m R backslash, h r” and a wider outline of green labeled “0.25, dash, 1.19, m R backslash, h r.” A large area of light blue, labeled “0.03, dash, 0.25, m R backslash, h r” surrounds the green area and extends to the lower middle of the map. A large section of the lower middle and left of the land is covered by dark blue, labeled “less than 0.03, m R backslash, h r.”

The energy produced by a reactor fueled with enriched uranium results from the fission of uranium as well as from the fission of plutonium produced as the reactor operates. As discussed previously, the plutonium forms from the combination of neutrons and the uranium in the fuel. In any nuclear reactor, only about 0.1% of the mass of the fuel is converted into energy. The other 99.9% remains in the fuel rods as fission products and unused fuel. All of the fission products absorb neutrons, and after a period of several months to a few years, depending on the reactor, the fission products must be removed by changing the fuel rods. Otherwise, the concentration of these fission products would increase and absorb more neutrons until the reactor could no longer operate.

Spent fuel rods contain a variety of products, consisting of unstable nuclei ranging in atomic number from 25 to 60, some transuranium elements, including plutonium and americium, and unreacted uranium isotopes. The unstable nuclei and the transuranium isotopes give the spent fuel a dangerously high level of radioactivity. The long-lived isotopes require thousands of years to decay to a safe level. The ultimate fate of the nuclear reactor as a significant source of energy in the United States probably rests on whether or not a politically and scientifically satisfactory technique for processing and storing the components of spent fuel rods can be developed.

Nuclear Fusion and Fusion Reactors

The process of converting very light nuclei into heavier nuclei is also accompanied by the conversion of mass into large amounts of energy, a process called fusion. The principal source of energy in the sun is a net fusion reaction in which four hydrogen nuclei fuse and produce one helium nucleus and two positrons. This is a net reaction of a more complicated series of events:

$$4\,{}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H} \longrightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} + 2\,{}^{0}_{+1}$$

A helium nucleus has a mass that is 0.7% less than that of four hydrogen nuclei; this lost mass is converted into energy during the fusion. This reaction produces about 3.6×10^{11} kJ of energy per mole of ${}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$ produced. This is somewhat larger than the energy produced by the nuclear fission of one mole of U-235 (1.8×10^{10} kJ), and over 3 million times larger than the energy produced by the (chemical) combustion of one mole of octane (5471 kJ).

It has been determined that the nuclei of the heavy isotopes of hydrogen, a deuteron, ${}^{2}_{1}$ and a triton, ${}^{3}_{1}$, undergo fusion at extremely high temperatures (thermonuclear fusion). They form a helium nucleus and a neutron:

$$ {}^{2}_{1}\mathrm{H} + {}^{3}_{1}\mathrm{H} \longrightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} + 2\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$$

This change proceeds with a mass loss of 0.0188 amu, corresponding to the release of 1.69×10^{9} kilojoules per mole of ${}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$ formed. The very high temperature is necessary to give the nuclei enough kinetic energy to overcome the very strong repulsive forces resulting from the positive charges on their nuclei so they can collide.

Useful fusion reactions require very high temperatures for their initiation—about 15,000,000 K or more. At these temperatures, all molecules dissociate into atoms, and the atoms ionize, forming plasma. These conditions occur in an extremely large number of locations throughout the universe—stars are powered by fusion. Humans have already figured out how to create temperatures high enough to achieve fusion on a large scale in thermonuclear weapons. A thermonuclear weapon such as a hydrogen bomb contains a nuclear fission bomb that, when exploded, gives off enough energy to produce the extremely high temperatures necessary for fusion to occur.

Another much more beneficial way to create fusion reactions is in a fusion reactor, a nuclear reactor in which fusion reactions of light nuclei are controlled. Because no solid materials are stable at such high temperatures, mechanical devices cannot contain the plasma in which fusion reactions occur. Two techniques to contain plasma at the density and temperature necessary for a fusion reaction are currently the focus of intensive research efforts: containment by a magnetic field and by the use of focused laser beams (Figure 11). A number of large projects are working to attain one of the biggest goals in science: getting hydrogen fuel to ignite and produce more energy than the amount supplied to achieve the extremely high temperatures and pressures that are required for fusion. At the time of this writing, there are no self-sustaining fusion reactors operating in the world, although small-scale controlled fusion reactions have been run for very brief periods.

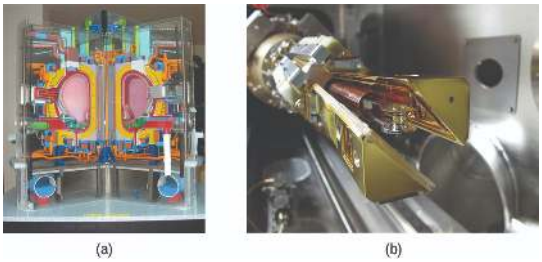


Figure 11: (a) This model is of the International Thermonuclear Experimental Reactor (ITER) reactor. Currently under construction in the south of France with an expected completion date of 2027, the ITER will be the world's largest experimental Tokamak nuclear fusion reactor with a goal of achieving large-scale sustained energy production. (b) In 2012, the National Ignition Facility at Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory briefly produced over 500,000,000,000 watts (500 terawatts, or 500 TW) of peak power and delivered 1,850,000 joules (1.85 MJ) of energy, the largest laser energy ever produced and 1000 times the power usage of the entire United States in any given moment. Although lasting only a few billionths of a second, the 192 lasers attained the conditions needed for nuclear fusion ignition. This image shows the target prior to the laser shot. (credit a: modification of work by Stephan Mosel)

Two photos are shown and labeled "a" and "b." Photo a shows a model of the ITER reactor made up of colorful components. Photo b shows a close-up view of the end of a long, mechanical arm made up of many metal components.

Summary

It is possible to produce new atoms by bombarding other atoms with nuclei or high-speed particles. The products of these transmutation reactions can be stable or radioactive. A number of artificial elements, including technetium, astatine, and the transuranium elements, have been produced in this way.

Nuclear power as well as nuclear weapon detonations can be generated through fission (reactions in which a heavy nucleus is split into two or more lighter nuclei and several neutrons). Because the neutrons may induce additional fission reactions when they combine with other heavy nuclei, a chain reaction can result. Useful power is obtained if the fission process is carried out in a nuclear reactor. The conversion of light nuclei into heavier nuclei (fusion) also produces energy. At present, this energy has not been contained adequately and is too expensive to be feasible for commercial energy production.

Glossary

chain reaction
repeated fission caused when the neutrons released in fission bombard other atoms

containment system
(also, shield) a three-part structure of materials that protects the exterior of a nuclear fission reactor and operating personnel from the high temperatures, pressures, and radiation levels inside the reactor

control rod
material inserted into the fuel assembly that absorbs neutrons and can be raised or lowered to adjust the rate of a fission reaction

critical mass
amount of fissionable material that will support a self-sustaining (nuclear fission) chain reaction

fissile (or fissionable)
when a material is capable of sustaining a nuclear fission reaction

fission
splitting of a heavier nucleus into two or more lighter nuclei, usually accompanied by the conversion of mass into large amounts of energy

fusion
combination of very light nuclei into heavier nuclei, accompanied by the conversion of mass into large amounts of energy

fusion reactor
nuclear reactor in which fusion reactions of light nuclei are controlled

nuclear fuel
fissionable isotope present in sufficient quantities to provide a self-sustaining chain reaction in a nuclear reactor

nuclear moderator
substance that slows neutrons to a speed low enough to cause fission

nuclear reactor
environment that produces energy via nuclear fission in which the chain reaction is controlled and sustained without explosion

nuclear transmutation
conversion of one nuclide into another nuclide

particle accelerator
device that uses electric and magnetic fields to increase the kinetic energy of nuclei used in transmutation reactions

reactor coolant
assembly used to carry the heat produced by fission in a reactor to an external boiler and turbine where it is transformed into electricity

subcritical mass
amount of fissionable material that cannot sustain a chain reaction; less than a critical mass

supercritical mass
amount of material in which there is an increasing rate of fission

transmutation reaction
bombardment of one type of nuclei with other nuclei or neutrons

transuranium element
element with an atomic number greater than 92; these elements do not occur in nature

---

This page titled 3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **21.4: Transmutation and Nuclear Energy** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122508

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122508

3.9.5 Uses of Radioisotopes

Learning Objectives

- List common applications of radioactive isotopes

Radioactive isotopes have the same chemical properties as stable isotopes of the same element, but they emit radiation, which can be detected. If we replace one (or more) atom(s) with radioisotope(s) in a compound, we can track them by monitoring their radioactive emissions. This type of compound is called a radioactive tracer (or radioactive label). Radioisotopes are used to follow the paths of biochemical reactions or to determine how a substance is distributed within an organism. Radioactive tracers are also used in many medical applications, including both diagnosis and treatment. They are used to measure engine wear, analyze the geological formation around oil wells, and much more.

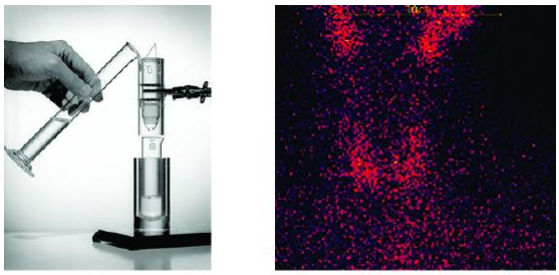
Radioisotopes have revolutionized medical practice, where they are used extensively. Over 10 million nuclear medicine procedures and more than 100 million nuclear medicine tests are performed annually in the United States. Four typical examples of radioactive tracers used in medicine are technetium-99 ($^{99}_{43}\mathrm{Tc}$), thallium-201 ($^{201}_{81}\mathrm{Tl}$), iodine-131 ($^{131}_{53}\mathrm{I}$), and sodium-24 ($^{24}_{11}\mathrm{Na}$). Damaged tissues in the heart, liver, and lungs absorb certain compounds of technetium-99 preferentially. After it is injected, the location of the technetium compound, and hence the damaged tissue, can be determined by detecting the γ rays emitted by the Tc-99 isotope. Thallium-201 (Figure 1) becomes concentrated in healthy heart tissue, so the two isotopes, Tc-99 and Tl-201, are used together to study heart tissue. Iodine-131 concentrates in the thyroid gland, the liver, and some parts of the brain. It can therefore be used to monitor goiter and treat thyroid conditions, such as Grave's disease, as well as liver and brain tumors. Salt solutions containing compounds of sodium-24 are injected into the bloodstream to help locate obstructions to the flow of blood.



Figure 1: Administering thallium-201 to a patient and subsequently performing a stress test offer medical professionals an opportunity to visually analyze heart function and blood flow. (credit: modification of work by "Blue0ctane"/Wikimedia Commons)

A medical professional is assisting a topless elderly man on a treadmill with sensors and electrical wires connected to his torso.

Radioisotopes used in medicine typically have short half-lives—for example, the ubiquitous Tc-99m has a half-life of 6.01 hours. This makes Tc-99m essentially impossible to store and prohibitively expensive to transport, so it is made on-site instead. Hospitals and other medical facilities use Mo-99 (which is primarily extracted from U-235 fission products) to generate Tc-99. Mo-99 undergoes β decay with a half-life of 66 hours, and the Tc-99 is then chemically extracted (Figure 2). The parent nuclide Mo-99 is part of a molybdate ion, $\mathrm{MoO_4^{2-}}$; when it decays, it forms the pertechnetate ion, $\mathrm{TcO_4^-}$. These two water-soluble ions are separated by column chromatography, with the higher charge molybdate ion adsorbing onto the alumina in the column, and the lower charge pertechnetate ion passing through the column in the solution. A few micrograms of Mo-99 can produce enough Tc-99 to perform as many as 10,000 tests.



(a) (b)

Figure 2: (a) The first Tc-99m generator (circa 1958) is used to separate Tc-99 from Mo-99. The MoO_4^{2-} *is retained by the matrix in the column, whereas the* TcO_4^- *passes through and is collected. (b) Tc-99 was used in this scan of the neck of a patient with Grave's disease. The scan shows the location of high concentrations of Tc-99. (credit a: modification of work by the Department of Energy; credit b: modification of work by "MBq"/Wikimedia Commons)*

The first image shows a hand pouring a liquid from a measuring cylinder into a column held up by a clamp. Below the column is a glass tube. The second picture shows red dots on a dark background dispersed everywhere with four spots of heavily concentrated regions.

Radioisotopes can also be used, typically in higher doses than as a tracer, as treatment. Radiation therapy is the use of high-energy radiation to damage the DNA of cancer cells, which kills them or keeps them from dividing (Figure 3). A cancer patient may receive external beam radiation therapy delivered by a machine outside the body, or internal radiation therapy (brachytherapy) from a radioactive substance that has been introduced into the body. Note that chemotherapy is similar to internal radiation therapy in that the cancer treatment is injected into the body, but differs in that chemotherapy uses chemical rather than radioactive substances to kill the cancer cells.

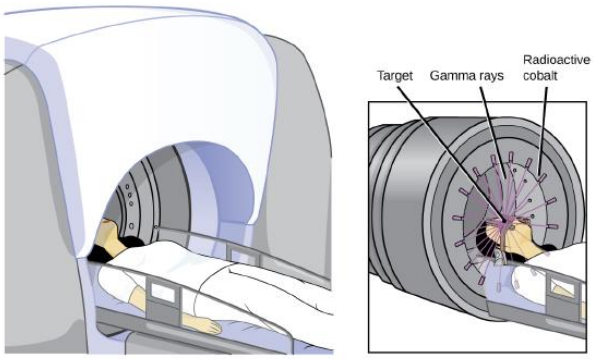


Figure 3: The cartoon in (a) shows a cobalt-60 machine used in the treatment of cancer. The diagram in (b) shows how the gantry of the Co-60 machine swings through an arc, focusing radiation on the targeted region (tumor) and minimizing the amount of radiation that passes through nearby regions.

A. A woman lies down as she goes into a dome shaped medical machine. B. A closer view of the women's head shows gamma rays from radioactive cobalt attacks the target on the woman's head.

Cobalt-60 is a synthetic radioisotope produced by the neutron activation of Co-59, which then undergoes β decay to form Ni-60, along with the emission of γ radiation. The overall process is:

$$^{59}_{27}\mathrm{Co} + ^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \longrightarrow ^{60}_{27}\mathrm{Co} \longrightarrow ^{60}_{28}\mathrm{Ni} + ^{0}_{-1}\beta + 2\,^{0}_{0}\gamma$$

The overall decay scheme for this is shown graphically in Figure 4.

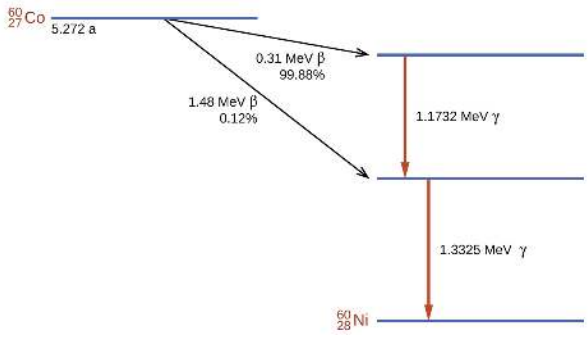


Figure 4: Co-60 undergoes a series of radioactive decays. The γ emissions are used for radiation therapy.

Radioisotopes are used in diverse ways to study the mechanisms of chemical reactions in plants and animals. These include labeling fertilizers in studies of nutrient uptake by plants and crop growth, investigations of digestive and milk-producing processes in cows, and studies on the growth and metabolism of animals and plants.

For example, the radioisotope C-14 was used to elucidate the details of how photosynthesis occurs. The overall reaction is:

$$6\,CO_2(g) + 6\,H_2O(l) \longrightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6(s) + 6\,O_2(g),$$

but the process is much more complex, proceeding through a series of steps in which various organic compounds are produced. In studies of the pathway of this reaction, plants were exposed to CO_2 containing a high concentration of ${}^{14}_{6}C$. At regular intervals, the plants were analyzed to determine which organic compounds contained carbon-14 and how much of each compound was present. From the time sequence in which the compounds appeared and the amount of each present at given time intervals, scientists learned more about the pathway of the reaction.

Commercial applications of radioactive materials are equally diverse (Figure 5). They include determining the thickness of films and thin metal sheets by exploiting the penetration power of various types of radiation. Flaws in metals used for structural purposes can be detected using high-energy gamma rays from cobalt-60 in a fashion similar to the way X-rays are used to examine the human body. In one form of pest control, flies are controlled by sterilizing male flies with γ radiation so that females breeding with them do not produce offspring. Many foods are preserved by radiation that kills microorganisms that cause the foods to spoil.

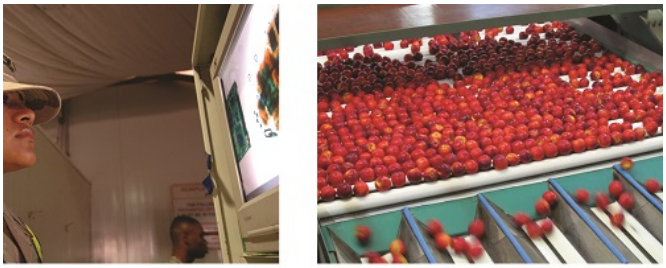


Figure 5: Common commercial uses of radiation include (a) X-ray examination of luggage at an airport and (b) preservation of food. (credit a: modification of work by the Department of the Navy; credit b: modification of work by the US Department of Agriculture)

A. A man is observing a monitor which shows the X-ray of luggages. B. Many apples on processing belts.

Americium-241, an α emitter with a half-life of 458 years, is used in tiny amounts in ionization-type smoke detectors (Figure 6). The α emissions from Am-241 ionize the air between two electrode plates in the ionizing chamber. A battery supplies a potential that causes movement of the ions, thus creating a small electric current. When smoke enters the chamber, the movement of the ions is impeded, reducing the conductivity of the air. This causes a marked drop in the current, triggering an alarm.

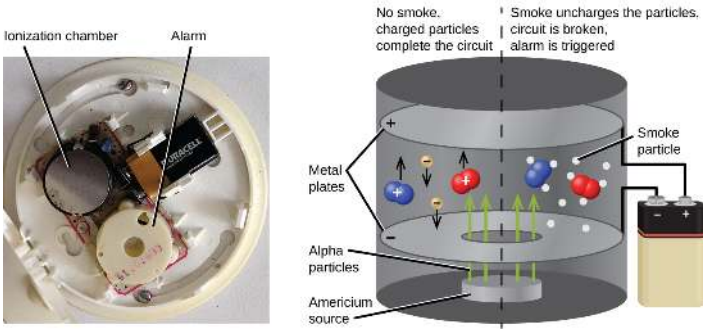


Figure 6: Inside a smoke detector, Am-241 emits α particles that ionize the air, creating a small electric current. During a fire, smoke particles impede the flow of ions, reducing the current and triggering an alarm. (credit a: modification of work by "Muffet"/Wikimedia Commons)

The inside of a smoke detector is shown with the alarm and ionization chamber labeled. In the picture beside it, a schematic shows the mechanisms of a smoke detector. The two oppositely charged metals plates in the detector are shown along with the Americium source on the bottom part emitting alpha particles. The schematic is divided into two parts, one to show the presence and the other for the absence of smoke.

Summary

Compounds known as radioactive tracers can be used to follow reactions, track the distribution of a substance, diagnose and treat medical conditions, and much more. Other radioactive substances are helpful for controlling pests, visualizing structures, providing fire warnings, and for many other applications. Hundreds of millions of nuclear medicine tests and procedures, using a wide variety of radioisotopes with relatively short half-lives, are performed every year in the US. Most of these radioisotopes have relatively short half-lives; some are short enough that the radioisotope must be made on-site at medical facilities. Radiation therapy uses high-energy radiation to kill cancer cells by damaging their DNA. The radiation used for this treatment may be delivered externally or internally.

Glossary

chemotherapy
similar to internal radiation therapy, but chemical rather than radioactive substances are introduced into the body to kill cancer cells

external beam radiation therapy
radiation delivered by a machine outside the body

internal radiation therapy
(also, brachytherapy) radiation from a radioactive substance introduced into the body to kill cancer cells

radiation therapy
use of high-energy radiation to damage the DNA of cancer cells, which kills them or keeps them from dividing

radioactive tracer
(also, radioactive label) radioisotope used to track or follow a substance by monitoring its radioactive emissions

This page titled 3.9.5 Uses of Radioisotopes is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **21.5: Uses of Radioisotopes** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation

Learning Objectives

- Describe the biological impact of ionizing radiation.
- Define units for measuring radiation exposure.
- Explain the operation of common tools for detecting radioactivity.
- List common sources of radiation exposure in the US.

The increased use of radioisotopes has led to increased concerns over the effects of these materials on biological systems (such as humans). All radioactive nuclides emit high-energy particles or electromagnetic waves. When this radiation encounters living cells, it can cause heating, break chemical bonds, or ionize molecules. The most serious biological damage results when these radioactive emissions fragment or ionize molecules. For example, alpha and beta particles emitted from nuclear decay reactions possess much higher energies than ordinary chemical bond energies. When these particles strike and penetrate matter, they produce ions and molecular fragments that are extremely reactive. The damage this does to biomolecules in living organisms can cause serious malfunctions in normal cell processes, taxing the organism's repair mechanisms and possibly causing illness or even death (Figure 1).

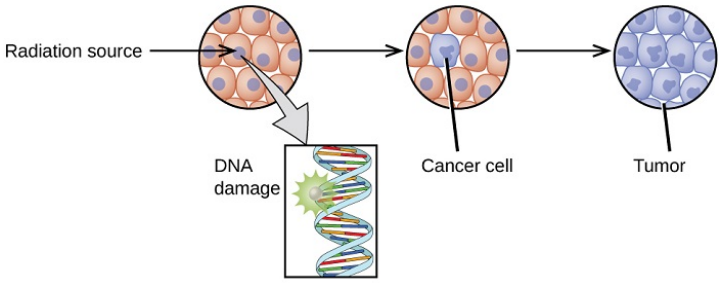


Figure 1: Radiation can harm biological systems by damaging the DNA of cells. If this damage is not properly repaired, the cells may divide in an uncontrolled manner and cause cancer.

A diagram is shown which has a white sphere followed by a right-facing arrow and a large sphere composed of many smaller white and green spheres. The single sphere has impacted the larger sphere. A right-facing arrow leads from the larger sphere to a pair of smaller spheres which are collections of the same white and green spheres. A starburst pattern lies between these two spheres and has three right-facing arrows leading from it to two white spheres and a circle full of ten smaller, peach-colored circles with purple dots in their centers. An arrow leads downward from this circle to a box that contains a helical shape with a starburst near its top left side and is labeled "D N A damage." A right-facing arrow leads from this circle to a second circle, with nine smaller, peach-colored circles with purple dots in their centers and one fully purple small circle labeled "Cancer cell." A right-facing arrow leads to a final circle, this time full of the purple cells, that is labeled "Tumor."

Ionizing vs. Nonionizing Radiation

There is a large difference in the magnitude of the biological effects of nonionizing radiation (for example, light and microwaves) and ionizing radiation, emissions energetic enough to knock electrons out of molecules (for example, α and β particles, γ rays, X-rays, and high-energy ultraviolet radiation) (Figure 2).

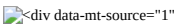


Figure 2: Lower frequency, lower-energy electromagnetic radiation is nonionizing, and higher frequency, higher-energy electromagnetic radiation is ionizing.

Energy absorbed from nonionizing radiation speeds up the movement of atoms and molecules, which is equivalent to heating the sample. Although biological systems are sensitive to heat (as we might know from touching a hot stove or spending a day at the beach in the sun), a large amount of nonionizing radiation is necessary before dangerous levels are reached. Ionizing radiation, however, may cause much more severe damage by breaking bonds or removing electrons in biological molecules, disrupting their structure and function. The damage can also be done indirectly, by first ionizing H_2O (the most abundant molecule in living organisms), which forms a H_2O^+ ion that reacts with water, forming a hydronium ion and a hydroxyl radical:

$$H_2O + \text{radiation} \xrightarrow{e^-} H_2O^+ + H_2O \longrightarrow H_3O^+ + OH^\bullet$$

Figure 3.

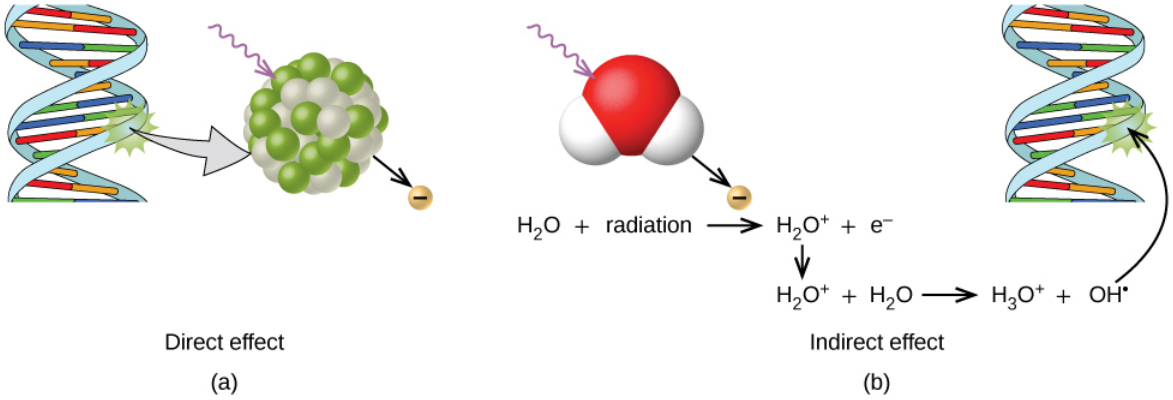


Figure 3: Ionizing radiation can (a) directly damage a biomolecule by ionizing it or breaking its bonds, or (b) create an H_2O^+ ion, which reacts with H_2O to form a hydroxyl radical, which in turn reacts with the biomolecule, causing damage indirectly.

Biological Effects of Exposure to Radiation

Radiation can harm either the whole body (somatic damage) or eggs and sperm (genetic damage). Its effects are more pronounced in cells that reproduce rapidly, such as the stomach lining, hair follicles, bone marrow, and embryos. This is why patients undergoing radiation therapy often feel nauseous or sick to their stomach, lose hair, have bone aches, and so on, and why particular care must be taken when undergoing radiation therapy during pregnancy.

Different types of radiation have differing abilities to pass through material (Figure 4). A very thin barrier, such as a sheet or two of paper, or the top layer of skin cells, usually stops alpha particles. Because of this, alpha particle sources are usually not dangerous if outside the body, but are quite hazardous if ingested or inhaled (see the Chemistry in Everyday Life feature on Radon Exposure). Beta particles will pass through a hand, or a thin layer of material like paper or wood, but are stopped by a thin layer of metal. Gamma radiation is very penetrating and can pass through a thick layer of most materials. Some high-energy gamma radiation is able to pass through a few feet of concrete. Certain dense, high atomic number elements (such as lead) can effectively attenuate gamma radiation with thinner material and are used for shielding. The ability of various kinds of emissions to cause ionization varies greatly, and some particles have almost no tendency to produce ionization. Alpha particles have about twice the ionizing power of fast-moving neutrons, about 10 times that of β particles, and about 20 times that of γ rays and X-rays.

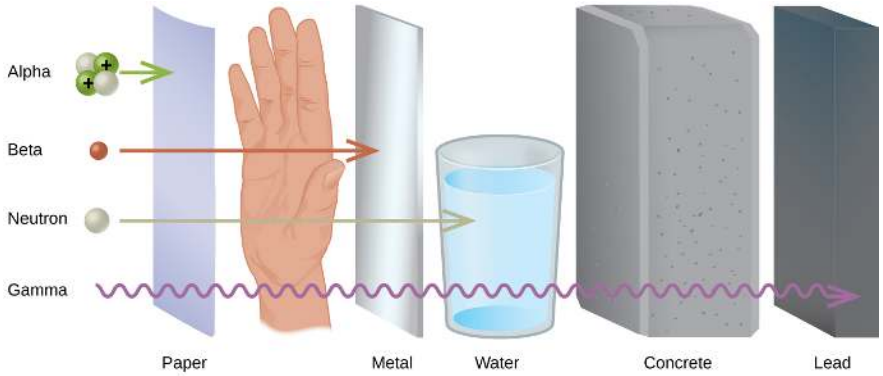


Figure 4: The ability of different types of radiation to pass through material is shown. From least to most penetrating, they are alpha < beta < neutron < gamma.

A diagram shows four particles in a vertical column on the left, followed by an upright sheet of paper, a person's hand, an upright sheet of metal, a glass of water, a thick block of concrete and an upright, thick piece of lead. The top particle listed is made up of two white spheres and two green spheres that are labeled with positive signs and is labeled "Alpha." A right-facing arrow leads from this to the paper. The second particle is a red sphere labeled "Beta" and is followed by a right-facing arrow that passes through the paper and stops at the hand. The third particle is a white sphere labeled "Neutron" and is followed by a right-facing arrow that passes through the paper, hand and metal but is stopped at the glass of water. The fourth particle is shown by a squiggly arrow and it passes through all of the substances but stops at the lead. Terms at the bottom read, from left to right, "Paper," "Metal," "Water," "Concrete" and "Lead."

For many people, one of the largest sources of exposure to radiation is from radon gas (Rn-222). Radon-222 is an α emitter with a half–life of 3.82 days. It is one of the products of the radioactive decay series of U-238, which is found in trace amounts in soil and rocks. The radon gas that is produced slowly escapes from the ground and gradually seeps into homes and other structures above.

Since it is about eight times more dense than air, radon gas accumulates in basements and lower floors, and slowly diffuses throughout buildings (Figure 5).

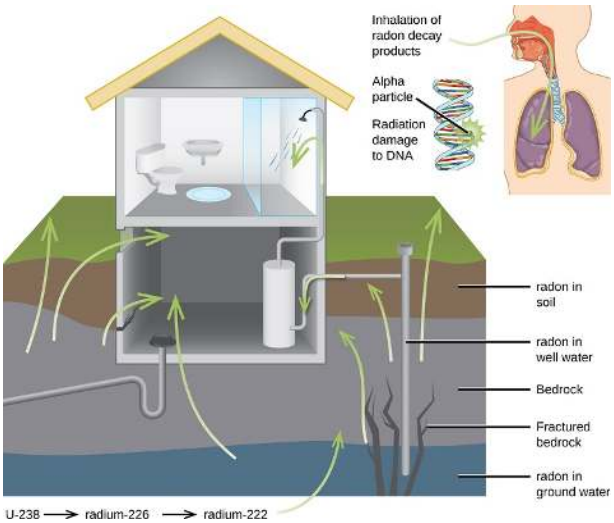


Figure 5: Radon-222 seeps into houses and other buildings from rocks that contain uranium-238, a radon emitter. The radon enters through cracks in concrete foundations and basement floors, stone or porous cinderblock foundations, and openings for water and gas pipes.

A cut-away image of the side of a house and four layers of the ground it rests on is shown, as well as a second cut-away image of a person's head and chest cavity. The house is shown with a restroom on the second floor and a basement with a water heater as the first floor. Green arrows lead from the lowest ground layer, labeled "radon in ground water," from the third ground layer, labeled "Bedrock" and "Fractured bedrock," from the second layer, labeled "radon in well water," and from the top layer, labeled "radon in soil to the inside of the basement area. In the smaller image of the torso, a green arrow is shown to enter the person's nasal passage and travel to the lungs. This is labeled "Inhalation of radon decay products." A small coiled, helical structure next to the torso is labeled "alpha particle" on one section where it has a starburst pattern and "Radiation damage to D N A" on another segment.

Radon is found in buildings across the country, with amounts dependent on location. The average concentration of radon inside houses in the US (1.25 pCi/L) is about three times the level found in outside air, and about one in six houses have radon levels high enough that remediation efforts to reduce the radon concentration are recommended. Exposure to radon increases one's risk of getting cancer (especially lung cancer), and high radon levels can be as bad for health as smoking a carton of cigarettes a day. Radon is the number one cause of lung cancer in nonsmokers and the second leading cause of lung cancer overall. Radon exposure is believed to cause over 20,000 deaths in the US per year.

Measuring Radiation Exposure

Several different devices are used to detect and measure radiation, including Geiger counters, scintillation counters (scintillators), and radiation dosimeters (Figure 6). Probably the best-known radiation instrument, the Geiger counter (also called the Geiger-Müller counter) detects and measures radiation. Radiation causes the ionization of the gas in a Geiger-Müller tube. The rate of ionization is proportional to the amount of radiation. A scintillation counter contains a scintillator—a material that emits light (luminesces) when excited by ionizing radiation—and a sensor that converts the light into an electric signal. Radiation dosimeters also measure ionizing radiation and are often used to determine personal radiation exposure. Commonly used types are electronic, film badge, thermoluminescent, and quartz fiber dosimeters.



Figure 6: Devices such as (a) Geiger counters, (b) scintillators, and (c) dosimeters can be used to measure radiation. (Credit c: modification of work by "osaMu"/Wikimedia commons.)

Three photographs are shown and labeled "a," "b" and "c." Photo a shows a Geiger counter sitting on a table. It is made up of a metal box with a read-out screen and a wire leading away from the box connected to a sensor wand. Photograph b shows a collection of tall and short vertical tubes arranged in a grouping while photograph c shows a person's hand holding a small machine with a digital readout while standing on the edge of a roadway.

A variety of units are used to measure various aspects of radiation (Table 1). The SI unit for rate of radioactive decay is the becquerel (Bq), with 1 Bq = 1 disintegration per second. The curie (Ci) and millicurie (mCi) are much larger units and are frequently used in medicine (1 curie = 1 Ci = 3.7×10^{10} disintegrations per second). The SI unit for measuring radiation dose is the gray (Gy), with 1 Gy = 1 J of energy absorbed per kilogram of tissue. In medical applications, the radiation absorbed dose (rad) is more often used (1 rad = 0.01 Gy; 1 rad results in the absorption of 0.01 J/kg of tissue). The SI unit measuring tissue damage caused by radiation is the sievert (Sv). This takes into account both the energy and the biological effects of the type of radiation involved in the radiation dose.

Table 1: Units Used for Measuring Radiation

Measurement Purpose	Unit	Quantity Measured	Description
activity of source	becquerel (Bq)	radioactive decays or emissions	amount of sample that undergoes 1 decay/second
	curie (Ci)		amount of sample that undergoes 3.7×10^{10} decays/second
absorbed dose	gray (Gy)	energy absorbed per kg of tissue	1 Gy = 1 J/kg tissue
	radiation absorbed dose (rad)		1 rad = 0.01 J/kg tissue
biologically effective dose	sievert (Sv)	tissue damage	Sv = RBE × Gy
	roentgen equivalent for man (rem)		Rem = RBE × rad

The roentgen equivalent for man (rem) is the unit for radiation damage that is used most frequently in medicine (1 rem = 1 Sv). Note that the tissue damage units (rem or Sv) includes the energy of the radiation dose (rad or Gy), along with a biological factor referred to as the RBE (for relative biological effectiveness), that is an approximate measure of the relative damage done by the radiation. These are related by:

$$\text{number of rems} = \text{RBE} \times \text{number of rads} \tag{1}$$

with RBE approximately 10 for α radiation, 2(+) for protons and neutrons, and 1 for β and γ radiation.

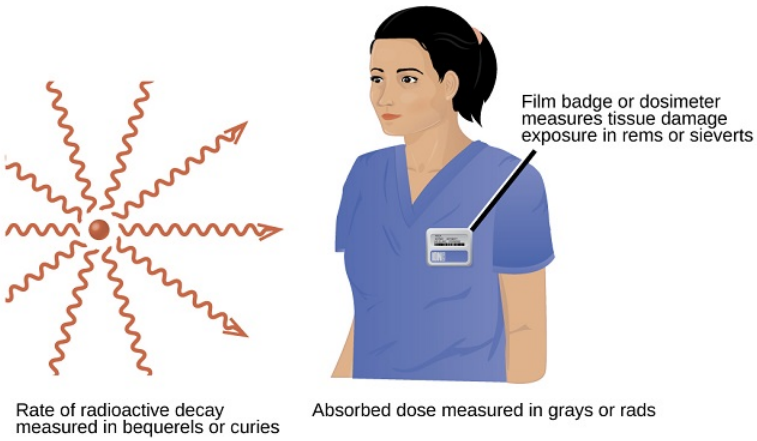


Figure 7: Different units are used to measure the rate of emission from a radioactive source, the energy that is absorbed from the source, and the amount of damage the absorbed radiation does. (CC by 4.0; OpenStax)

Two images are shown. The first, labeled “Rate of radioactive decay measured in becquerels or curies,” shows a red sphere with ten red squiggly arrows facing away from it in a 360 degree circle. The second image shows the head and torso of a woman wearing medical scrubs with a badge on her chest. The caption to the badge reads “Film badge or dosimeter measures tissue damage exposure in rems or sieverts” while a phrase under this image states “Absorbed dose measured in grays or rads.”

Example 1: Amount of Radiation

Cobalt-60 ($t_{1/2}$ = 5.26 y) is used in cancer therapy since the γ rays it emits can be focused in small areas where the cancer is located. A 5.00-g sample of Co-60 is available for cancer treatment.

a. What is its activity in Bq?
b. What is its activity in Ci?

Solution

The activity is given by:

$$\text{Activity} = \lambda N = \left(\frac{\ln 2}{t_{1/2}}\right) N = \left(\frac{\ln 2}{5.26\ \text{y}}\right) \times 5.00\ \text{g} = 0.659\ \frac{\text{g}}{\text{y}}\ \text{of}\ {}^{60}\text{Co that decay}$$

And to convert this to decays per second:

$$0.659\ \frac{\text{g}}{\text{y}} \times \frac{\text{y}}{365\ \text{day}} \times \frac{1\ \text{day}}{24\ \text{hours}} \times \frac{1\ \text{h}}{3,600\ \text{s}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}}{59.9\ \text{g}} \times \frac{6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{atoms}}{1\ \text{mol}} \times \frac{1\ \text{decay}}{1\ \text{atom}}$$

$$= 2.10 \times 10^{14}\ \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}}$$

(a) Since $1\ \text{Bq} = 1\ \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}}$, the activity in Becquerel (Bq) is:

$$2.10 \times 10^{14} \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}} \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{Bq}}{1\ \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}}}\right) = 2.10 \times 10^{14}\ \text{Bq}$$

(b) Since $1\ \text{Ci} = 3.7 \times 10^{11}\ \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}}$, the activity in curie (Ci) is:

$$2.10 \times 10^{14} \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}} \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{Ci}}{3.7 \times 10^{11}\ \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}}}\right) = 5.7 \times 10^{2}\ \text{Ci}$$

Exercise 1

Tritium is a radioactive isotope of hydrogen ($t_{1/2} = 12.32$ years) that has several uses, including self-powered lighting, in which electrons emitted in tritium radioactive decay cause phosphorus to glow. Its nucleus contains one proton and two neutrons, and the atomic mass of tritium is 3.016 amu. What is the activity of a sample containing 1.00mg of tritium (a) in Bq and (b) in Ci?

Answer a

$3.56 \times 10^{11}\text{Bq}$

Answer b

$0.962\ \text{Ci}$

Effects of Long-term Radiation Exposure on the Human Body

The effects of radiation depend on the type, energy, and location of the radiation source, and the length of exposure. As shown in Figure 8, the average person is exposed to background radiation, including cosmic rays from the sun and radon from uranium in the ground (see the Chemistry in Everyday Life feature on Radon Exposure); radiation from medical exposure, including CAT scans, radioisotope tests, X-rays, and so on; and small amounts of radiation from other human activities, such as airplane flights (which are bombarded by increased numbers of cosmic rays in the upper atmosphere), radioactivity from consumer products, and a variety of radionuclides that enter our bodies when we breathe (for example, carbon-14) or through the food chain (for example, potassium-40, strontium-90, and iodine-131).

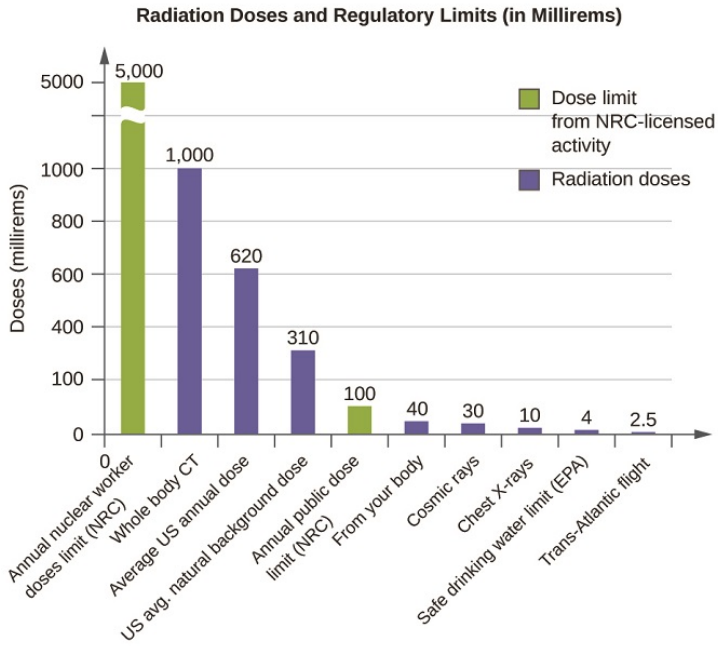


Figure 8: The total annual radiation exposure for a person in the US is about 620 mrem. The various sources and their relative amounts are shown in this bar graph. (source: U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission).

A bar graph titled “Radiation Doses and Regulatory Limits, open parenthesis, in Millirems, close parenthesis” is shown. The y-axis is labeled “Doses in Millirems” and has values from 0 to 5000 with a break between 1000 and 5000 to indicate a different scale to the top of the graph. The y-axis is labeled corresponding to each bar. The first bar, measured to 5000 on the y-axis, is drawn in red and is labeled “Annual Nuclear Worker Doses Limit, open parenthesis, N R C, close parenthesis.” The second bar, measured to 1000 on the y-axis, is drawn in blue and is labeled “Whole Body C T” while the third bar, measured to 620 on the y-axis, is drawn in blue and is labeled “Average U period S period Annual Dose.” The fourth bar, measured to 310 on the y-axis, is drawn in blue and is labeled “U period S period Natural Background Dose” while the fifth bar, measured to 100 on the y-axis and drawn in red reads “Annual Public Dose Limit, open parenthesis, N R C, close parenthesis.” The sixth bar, measured to 40 on the y-axis, is drawn in blue and is labeled “From Your Body” while the seventh bar, measured to 30 on the y-axis and drawn in blue reads “Cosmic rays.” The eighth bar, measured to 4 on the y-axis, is drawn in blue and is labeled “Safe Drinking Water Limit, open parenthesis, E P A, close parenthesis” while the ninth bar, measured to 2.5 on the y-axis and drawn in red reads “Trans Atlantic Flight.” A legend on the graph shows that red means “Dose Limit From N R C dash licensed activity” while blue means “Radiation Doses.”

A short-term, sudden dose of a large amount of radiation can cause a wide range of health effects, from changes in blood chemistry to death. Short-term exposure to tens of rems of radiation will likely cause very noticeable symptoms or illness; a dose of about 500 rems is estimated to have a 50% probability of causing the death of the victim within 30 days of exposure. Exposure to radioactive emissions has a cumulative effect on the body during a person’s lifetime, which is another reason why it is important to avoid any unnecessary exposure to radiation. Health effects of short-term exposure to radiation are shown in Table 2.

Table 2: Health Effects of Radiation

Exposure (rem)	Health Effect	Time to Onset (Without Treatment)
5–10	changes in blood chemistry	—
50	nausea	hours
55	fatigue	—
70	vomiting	—
75	hair loss	2–3 weeks
90	diarrhea	—
100	hemorrhage	—
400	possible death	within 2 months
1000	destruction of intestinal lining	—
	internal bleeding	—
	death	1–2 weeks
2000	damage to central nervous system	—
	loss of consciousness	minutes
	death	hours to days

It is impossible to avoid some exposure to ionizing radiation. We are constantly exposed to background radiation from a variety of natural sources, including cosmic radiation, rocks, medical procedures, consumer products, and even our own atoms. We can minimize our exposure by blocking or shielding the radiation, moving farther from the source, and limiting the time of exposure.

Summary

We are constantly exposed to radiation from a variety of naturally occurring and human-produced sources. This radiation can affect living organisms. Ionizing radiation is the most harmful because it can ionize molecules or break chemical bonds, which damages the molecule and causes malfunctions in cell processes. It can also create reactive hydroxyl radicals that damage biological molecules and disrupt physiological processes. Radiation can cause somatic or genetic damage, and is most harmful to rapidly reproducing cells. Types of radiation differ in their ability to penetrate material and damage tissue, with alpha particles the least penetrating, but potentially most damaging, and gamma rays the most penetrating.

Various devices, including Geiger counters, scintillators, and dosimeters, are used to detect and measure radiation, and monitor radiation exposure. We use several units to measure radiation: becquerels or curies for rates of radioactive decay; gray or rads for energy absorbed; and rems or sieverts for biological effects of radiation. Exposure to radiation can cause a wide range of health effects, from minor to severe, including death. We can minimize the effects of radiation by shielding with dense materials such as lead, moving away from the source of radiation, and limiting time of exposure.

Footnotes

1. 1 Source: US Environmental Protection Agency

Glossary

becquerel (Bq)

SI unit for rate of radioactive decay; 1 Bq = 1 disintegration/s.

curie (Ci)

Larger unit for rate of radioactive decay frequently used in medicine; 1 Ci = 3.7×10^{10} disintegrations/s.

Geiger counter

Instrument that detects and measures radiation via the ionization produced in a Geiger-Müller tube.

gray (Gy)

SI unit for measuring radiation dose; 1 Gy = 1 J absorbed/kg tissue.

ionizing radiation

Radiation that can cause a molecule to lose an electron and form an ion.

millicurie (mCi)

Larger unit for rate of radioactive decay frequently used in medicine; 1 Ci = 3.7×10^{10} disintegrations/s.

nonionizing radiation

Radiation that speeds up the movement of atoms and molecules; it is equivalent to heating a sample, but is not energetic enough to cause the ionization of molecules.

radiation absorbed dose (rad)

SI unit for measuring radiation dose, frequently used in medical applications; 1 rad = 0.01 Gy.

radiation dosimeter

Device that measures ionizing radiation and is used to determine personal radiation exposure.

relative biological effectiveness (RBE)

Measure of the relative damage done by radiation.

roentgen equivalent man (rem)

Unit for radiation damage, frequently used in medicine; 1 rem = 1 Sv.

scintillation counter

Instrument that uses a scintillator—a material that emits light when excited by ionizing radiation—to detect and measure radiation.

sievert (Sv)

SI unit measuring tissue damage caused by radiation; takes energy and biological effects of radiation into account.

This page titled 3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **21.6: Biological Effects of Radiation** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.9.7 Nuclear Chemistry (Exercises)

21.2: Nuclear Structure and Stability

Q21.2.1

Write the following isotopes in hyphenated form (e.g., “carbon-14”)

a. $^{24}_{11}\text{Na}$
b. $^{29}_{13}\text{Al}$
c. $^{73}_{36}\text{Kr}$
d. $^{194}_{77}\text{Ir}$

Q21.2.2

Write the following isotopes in nuclide notation (e.g., " $^{14}_{6}\text{C}$ ")

a. oxygen-14
b. copper-70
c. tantalum-175
d. francium-217

Q21.2.3

For the following isotopes that have missing information, fill in the missing information to complete the notation

a. $^{34}_{14}\text{X}$
b. ^{36}P
c. $^{57}_{\text{X}}\text{Mn}$
d. $^{121}_{56}\text{X}$

Q21.2.4

For each of the isotopes in Question 21.2.3, determine the numbers of protons, neutrons, and electrons in a neutral atom of the isotope.

Q21.2.5

Write the nuclide notation, including charge if applicable, for atoms with the following characteristics:

a. 25 protons, 20 neutrons, 24 electrons
b. 45 protons, 24 neutrons, 43 electrons
c. 53 protons, 89 neutrons, 54 electrons
d. 97 protons, 146 neutrons, 97 electrons

Q21.2.6

Calculate the density of the $^{24}_{12}\text{Mg}$ nucleus in g/mL, assuming that it has the typical nuclear diameter of 1×10^{-13} cm and is spherical in shape.

Q21.2.7

What are the two principal differences between nuclear reactions and ordinary chemical changes?

Q21.2.8

The mass of the atom $^{23}_{11}\text{Na}$ is 22.9898 amu.

a. Calculate its binding energy per atom in millions of electron volts.
b. Calculate its binding energy per nucleon.

Q21.2.9

Which of the following nuclei lie within the band of stability?

a. chlorine-37
b. calcium-40
c. ^{204}Bi
d. ^{56}Fe
e. ^{206}Pb
f. ^{211}Pb
g. ^{222}Rn
h. carbon-14

Q21.2.10

Which of the following nuclei lie within the band of stability?

a. argon-40
b. oxygen-16
c. ^{122}Ba
d. ^{58}Ni
e. ^{205}Tl
f. ^{210}Tl
g. ^{226}Ra
h. magnesium-24

21.3: Nuclear Equations

Q21.3.1

Write a brief description or definition of each of the following:

a. nucleon
b. α particle
c. β particle
d. positron
e. γ ray
f. nuclide
g. mass number
h. atomic number

Q21.3.2

Which of the various particles (α particles, β particles, and so on) that may be produced in a nuclear reaction are actually nuclei?

Q21.3.3

Complete each of the following equations by adding the missing species:

a. $^{27}_{13}\mathrm{Al} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \longrightarrow \, ? + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
b. $^{239}_{94}\mathrm{Pu} + \, ? \longrightarrow {}^{242}_{96}\mathrm{Cm} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
c. $^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \longrightarrow \, ? + {}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$
d. $^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U} \longrightarrow \, ? + {}^{135}_{55}\mathrm{Cs} + 4\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$

Q21.3.4

Complete each of the following equations:

a. $^{7}_{3}\mathrm{Li} + \, ? \longrightarrow 2\,{}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$
b. $^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} \longrightarrow {}^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N} + \, ?$
c. $^{27}_{13}\mathrm{Al} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} \longrightarrow \, ? + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$
d. $^{250}_{96}\mathrm{Cm} \longrightarrow \, ? + {}^{98}_{38}\mathrm{Sr} + 4\,{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$

Q21.3.5

Write a balanced equation for each of the following nuclear reactions:

a. the production of ^{17}O from ^{14}N by α particle bombardment
b. the production of ^{14}C from ^{14}N by neutron bombardment
c. the production of ^{233}Th from ^{232}Th by neutron bombardment
d. the production of ^{239}U from ^{238}U by $^{2}_{1}H$ bombardment

Q21.3.6

Technetium-99 is prepared from ^{98}Mo. Molybdenum-98 combines with a neutron to give molybdenum-99, an unstable isotope that emits a β particle to yield an excited form of technetium-99, represented as $^{99}Tc^{*}$. This excited nucleus relaxes to the ground state, represented as ^{99}Tc, by emitting a γ ray. The ground state of ^{99}Tc then emits a β particle. Write the equations for each of these nuclear reactions.

Q21.3.7

The mass of the atom $^{19}_{9}F$ is 18.99840 amu.

a. Calculate its binding energy per atom in millions of electron volts.
b. Calculate its binding energy per nucleon.

Q21.3.8

For the reaction $^{14}_{6}C \longrightarrow {}^{14}_{7}N + ?$, if 100.0 g of carbon reacts, what volume of nitrogen gas (N_2) is produced at 273 K and 1 atm?

21.4: Radioactive Decay

Q21.4.1

What are the types of radiation emitted by the nuclei of radioactive elements?

Q21.4.2

What changes occur to the atomic number and mass of a nucleus during each of the following decay scenarios?

a. an α particle is emitted
b. a β particle is emitted
c. γ radiation is emitted
d. a positron is emitted
e. an electron is captured

Q21.4.3

What is the change in the nucleus that results from the following decay scenarios?

a. emission of a β particle
b. emission of a β^{+} particle
c. capture of an electron

Q21.4.4

Many nuclides with atomic numbers greater than 83 decay by processes such as electron emission. Explain the observation that the emissions from these unstable nuclides also normally include α particles.

Q21.4.5

Why is electron capture accompanied by the emission of an X-ray?

Q21.4.6

Explain how unstable heavy nuclides (atomic number > 83) may decompose to form nuclides of greater stability (a) if they are below the band of stability and (b) if they are above the band of stability.

Q21.4.7

Which of the following nuclei is most likely to decay by positron emission? Explain your choice.

a. chromium-53
b. manganese-51
c. iron-59

Q21.4.8

The following nuclei do not lie in the band of stability. How would they be expected to decay? Explain your answer.

a. $^{34}_{15}\mathrm{P}$
b. $^{239}_{92}\mathrm{U}$
c. $^{38}_{20}\mathrm{Ca}$
d. $^{3}_{1}\mathrm{H}$
e. $^{245}_{94}\mathrm{Pu}$

Q21.4.9

The following nuclei do not lie in the band of stability. How would they be expected to decay?

a. $^{28}_{15}\mathrm{P}$
b. $^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U}$
c. $^{37}20\,\mathrm{Ca}$
d. $^{9}_{3}\mathrm{Li}$
e. $^{245}_{96}\mathrm{Cm}$

Q21.4.10

Predict by what mode(s) of spontaneous radioactive decay each of the following unstable isotopes might proceed:

a. $^{6}_{2}\mathrm{He}$
b. $^{60}_{30}\mathrm{Zn}$
c. $^{235}_{91}\mathrm{Pa}$
d. $^{241}_{94}\mathrm{Np}$
e. $^{18}\mathrm{F}$
f. $^{129}\mathrm{Ba}$
g. $^{237}\mathrm{Pu}$

Q21.4.11

Write a nuclear reaction for each step in the formation of $^{218}_{84}\mathrm{Po}$ from $^{238}_{92}\mathrm{U}$, which proceeds by a series of decay reactions involving the step-wise emission of α, β, β, α, α, α, α particles, in that order.

Q21.4.12

Write a nuclear reaction for each step in the formation of $^{208}_{82}\mathrm{Pb}$ from $^{228}_{90}\mathrm{Th}$, which proceeds by a series of decay reactions involving the step-wise emission of α, α, α, α, β, β, α particles, in that order.

Q21.4.13

Define the term half-life and illustrate it with an example.

Q21.4.14

A 1.00×10^{-6}-g sample of nobelium, $^{254}_{102}\mathrm{No}$, has a half-life of 55 seconds after it is formed. What is the percentage of $^{254}_{102}\mathrm{No}$ remaining at the following times?

a. 5.0 min after it forms
b. 1.0 h after it forms

Q21.4.15

^{239}Pu is a nuclear waste byproduct with a half-life of 24,000 y. What fraction of the ^{239}Pu present today will be present in 1000 y?

Q21.4.16

The isotope ^{208}Tl undergoes β decay with a half-life of 3.1 min.

a. What isotope is produced by the decay?
b. How long will it take for 99.0% of a sample of pure ^{208}Tl to decay?
c. What percentage of a sample of pure ^{208}Tl remains un-decayed after 1.0 h?

Q21.4.17

If 1.000 g of $^{226}_{88}$Ra produces 0.0001 mL of the gas $^{222}_{86}$Rn at STP (standard temperature and pressure) in 24 h, what is the half-life of ^{226}Ra in years?

Q21.4.18

The isotope $^{90}_{38}$Sr is one of the extremely hazardous species in the residues from nuclear power generation. The strontium in a 0.500-g sample diminishes to 0.393 g in 10.0 y. Calculate the half-life.

Q21.4.19

Technetium-99 is often used for assessing heart, liver, and lung damage because certain technetium compounds are absorbed by damaged tissues. It has a half-life of 6.0 h. Calculate the rate constant for the decay of $^{99}_{43}$Tc.

Q21.4.20

What is the age of mummified primate skin that contains 8.25% of the original quantity of ^{14}C?

Q21.4.21

A sample of rock was found to contain 8.23 mg of rubidium-87 and 0.47 mg of strontium-87.

a. Calculate the age of the rock if the half-life of the decay of rubidium by β emission is 4.7×10^{10} y.
b. If some $^{87}_{38}$Sr was initially present in the rock, would the rock be younger, older, or the same age as the age calculated in (a)? Explain your answer.

Q21.4.22

A laboratory investigation shows that a sample of uranium ore contains 5.37 mg of $^{238}_{92}$U and 2.52 mg of $^{206}_{82}$Pb. Calculate the age of the ore. The half-life of $^{238}_{92}$U is 4.5×10^9 yr.

Q21.4.23

Plutonium was detected in trace amounts in natural uranium deposits by Glenn Seaborg and his associates in 1941. They proposed that the source of this ^{239}Pu was the capture of neutrons by ^{238}U nuclei. Why is this plutonium not likely to have been trapped at the time the solar system formed 4.7×10^9 years ago?

Q21.4.24

A $^{7}_{4}$Be atom (mass = 7.0169 amu) decays into a $^{7}_{3}$Li atom (mass = 7.0160 amu) by electron capture. How much energy (in millions of electron volts, MeV) is produced by this reaction?

Q21.4.25

A $^{8}_{5}$B atom (mass = 8.0246 amu) decays into a $^{8}_{4}$Be atom (mass = 8.0053 amu) by loss of a β^+ particle (mass = 0.00055 amu) or by electron capture. How much energy (in millions of electron volts) is produced by this reaction?

Q21.4.26

Isotopes such as ^{26}Al (half-life: 7.2×10^5 years) are believed to have been present in our solar system as it formed, but have since decayed and are now called extinct nuclides.

a. ^{26}Al decays by β^+ emission or electron capture. Write the equations for these two nuclear transformations.

b. The earth was formed about 4.7×10^9 (4.7 billion) years ago. How old was the earth when 99.999999% of the ^{26}Al originally present had decayed?

Q21.4.27

Write a balanced equation for each of the following nuclear reactions:

a. bismuth-212 decays into polonium-212
b. beryllium-8 and a positron are produced by the decay of an unstable nucleus
c. neptunium-239 forms from the reaction of uranium-238 with a neutron and then spontaneously converts into plutonium-239
d. strontium-90 decays into yttrium-90

Q21.4.28

Write a balanced equation for each of the following nuclear reactions:

a. mercury-180 decays into platinum-176
b. zirconium-90 and an electron are produced by the decay of an unstable nucleus
c. thorium-232 decays and produces an alpha particle and a radium-228 nucleus, which decays into actinium-228 by beta decay
d. neon-19 decays into fluorine-19

21.5: Transmutation and Nuclear Energy

Q21.5.1

Write the balanced nuclear equation for the production of the following transuranium elements:

a. berkelium-244, made by the reaction of Am-241 and He-4
b. fermium-254, made by the reaction of Pu-239 with a large number of neutrons
c. lawrencium-257, made by the reaction of Cf-250 and B-11
d. dubnium-260, made by the reaction of Cf-249 and N-15

Q21.5.2

How does nuclear fission differ from nuclear fusion? Why are both of these processes exothermic?

Q21.5.3

Both fusion and fission are nuclear reactions. Why is a very high temperature required for fusion, but not for fission?

Q21.5.4

Cite the conditions necessary for a nuclear chain reaction to take place. Explain how it can be controlled to produce energy, but not produce an explosion.

Q21.5.5

Describe the components of a nuclear reactor.

Q21.5.6

In usual practice, both a moderator and control rods are necessary to operate a nuclear chain reaction safely for the purpose of energy production. Cite the function of each and explain why both are necessary.

Q21.5.7

Describe how the potential energy of uranium is converted into electrical energy in a nuclear power plant.

Q21.5.8

The mass of a hydrogen atom $\left({}_1^1\text{H}\right)$ is 1.007825 amu; that of a tritium atom $\left({}_1^3\text{H}\right)$ is 3.01605 amu; and that of an α particle is 4.00150 amu. How much energy in kilojoules per mole of ${}_2^4\text{He}$ produced is released by the following fusion reaction: ${}_1^1\text{H} + {}_1^3\text{H} \longrightarrow {}_2^4\text{He}$.

21.6: Uses of Radioisotopes

Q21.6.1

How can a radioactive nuclide be used to show that the equilibrium:

$$\mathrm{AgCl}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag}^+(aq) + \mathrm{Cl}^-(aq) \tag{1}$$

is a dynamic equilibrium?

Q21.6.2

Technetium-99m has a half-life of 6.01 hours. If a patient injected with technetium-99m is safe to leave the hospital once 75% of the dose has decayed, when is the patient allowed to leave?

Q21.6.3

Iodine that enters the body is stored in the thyroid gland from which it is released to control growth and metabolism. The thyroid can be imaged if iodine-131 is injected into the body. In larger doses, I-131 is also used as a means of treating cancer of the thyroid. I-131 has a half-life of 8.70 days and decays by β^- emission.

a. Write a nuclear equation for the decay.
b. How long will it take for 95.0% of a dose of I-131 to decay?

21.7: Biological Effects of Radiation

Q21.7.1

If a hospital were storing radioisotopes, what is the minimum containment needed to protect against:

a. cobalt-60 (a strong γ emitter used for irradiation)
b. molybdenum-99 (a beta emitter used to produce technetium-99 for imaging)

Q21.7.2

Based on what is known about Radon-222's primary decay method, why is inhalation so dangerous?

Q21.7.3

Given specimens uranium-232 ($t_{1/2} = 68.9$ y) and uranium-233 ($t_{1/2} = 159,200$ y) of equal mass, which one would have greater activity and why?

Q21.7.4

A scientist is studying a 2.234 g sample of thorium-229 ($t_{1/2}$ = 7340 y) in a laboratory.

a. What is its activity in Bq?
b. What is its activity in Ci?

Q21.7.5

Given specimens neon-24 ($t_{1/2} = 3.38$ min) and bismuth-211 ($t_{1/2} = 2.14$ min) of equal mass, which one would have greater activity and why?

This page titled 3.9.7 Nuclear Chemistry (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Thermodynamics

A general chemistry Libretexts Textbook remixed and remastered from OpenStax's textbook:

General Chemistry

Among the many capabilities of chemistry is its ability to predict if a process will occur under specified conditions. Thermodynamics, the study of relationships between the energy and work associated with chemical and physical processes, provides this predictive ability. Previous chapters in this text have described various applications of thermochemistry, an important aspect of thermodynamics concerned with the heat flow accompanying chemical reactions and phase transitions. This chapter will introduce additional thermodynamic concepts, including those that enable the prediction of any chemical or physical changes under a given set of conditions.

4.1: Energy Basics
4.2: Calorimetry
4.3: Enthalpy
4.4: Thermochemistry (Exercises)
4.5: Spontaneity
4.6: Entropy
4.7: The Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics
4.8: Gibbs Energy
4.9: Thermodynamics (Exercises)

Contributors

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 4: Thermodynamics is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

4.1: Energy Basics

Learning Objectives

- Define energy, distinguish types of energy, and describe the nature of energy changes that accompany chemical and physical changes
- Distinguish the related properties of heat, thermal energy, and temperature
- Define and distinguish specific heat and heat capacity, and describe the physical implications of both
- Perform calculations involving heat, specific heat, and temperature change

Chemical changes and their accompanying changes in energy are important parts of our everyday world (Figure 4.1.1). The macronutrients in food (proteins, fats, and carbohydrates) undergo metabolic reactions that provide the energy to keep our bodies functioning. We burn a variety of fuels (gasoline, natural gas, coal) to produce energy for transportation, heating, and the generation of electricity. Industrial chemical reactions use enormous amounts of energy to produce raw materials (such as iron and aluminum). Energy is then used to manufacture those raw materials into useful products, such as cars, skyscrapers, and bridges.



(a) (b) (c)

Figure 4.1.1: The energy involved in chemical changes is important to our daily lives: (a) A cheeseburger for lunch provides the energy you need to get through the rest of the day; (b) the combustion of gasoline provides the energy that moves your car (and you) between home, work, and school; and (c) coke, a processed form of coal, provides the energy needed to convert iron ore into iron, which is essential for making many of the products we use daily. (credit a: modification of work by “Pink Sherbet Photography”/Flickr; credit b: modification of work by Jeffery Turner).

Over 90% of the energy we use comes originally from the sun. Every day, the sun provides the earth with almost 10,000 times the amount of energy necessary to meet all of the world’s energy needs for that day. Our challenge is to find ways to convert and store incoming solar energy so that it can be used in reactions or chemical processes that are both convenient and nonpolluting. Plants and many bacteria capture solar energy through photosynthesis. We release the energy stored in plants when we burn wood or plant products such as ethanol. We also use this energy to fuel our bodies by eating food that comes directly from plants or from animals that got their energy by eating plants. Burning coal and petroleum also releases stored solar energy: These fuels are fossilized plant and animal matter.

This chapter will introduce the basic ideas of an important area of science concerned with the amount of heat absorbed or released during chemical and physical changes—an area called thermochemistry. The concepts introduced in this chapter are widely used in almost all scientific and technical fields. Food scientists use them to determine the energy content of foods. Biologists study the energetics of living organisms, such as the metabolic combustion of sugar into carbon dioxide and water. The oil, gas, and transportation industries, renewable energy providers, and many others endeavor to find better methods to produce energy for our commercial and personal needs. Engineers strive to improve energy efficiency, find better ways to heat and cool our homes, refrigerate our food and drinks, and meet the energy and cooling needs of computers and electronics, among other applications. Understanding thermochemical principles is essential for chemists, physicists, biologists, geologists, every type of engineer, and just about anyone who studies or does any kind of science.

Energy

Energy can be defined as the capacity to supply heat or do work. One type of work (w) is the process of causing matter to move against an opposing force. For example, we do work when we inflate a bicycle tire—we move matter (the air in the pump) against the opposing force of the air surrounding the tire.

Like matter, energy comes in different types. One scheme classifies energy into two types: potential energy, the energy an object has because of its relative position, composition, or condition, and kinetic energy, the energy that an object possesses because of its motion. Water at the top of a waterfall or dam has potential energy because of its position; when it flows downward through generators, it has kinetic energy that can be used to do work and produce electricity in a hydroelectric plant (Figure 4.1.2). A battery has potential energy because the chemicals within it can produce electricity that can do work.



(a) (b)

Figure 4.1.2: (a) Water that is higher in elevation, for example, at the top of Victoria Falls, has a higher potential energy than water at a lower elevation. As the water falls, some of its potential energy is converted into kinetic energy. (b) If the water flows through generators at the bottom of a dam, such as the Hoover Dam shown here, its kinetic energy is converted into electrical energy. (credit a: modification of work by Steve Jurvetson; credit b: modification of work by "curimedia"/Wikimedia commons).

Two pictures are shown and labeled a and b. Picture a shows a large waterfall with water falling from a high elevation at the top of the falls to a lower elevation. The second picture is a view looking down into the Hoover Dam. Water is shown behind the high wall of the dam on one side and at the base of the dam on the other.

Energy can be converted from one form into another, but all of the energy present before a change occurs always exists in some form after the change is completed. This observation is expressed in the law of conservation of energy: during a chemical or physical change, energy can be neither created nor destroyed, although it can be changed in form. (This is also one version of the first law of thermodynamics, as you will learn later.)

When one substance is converted into another, there is always an associated conversion of one form of energy into another. Heat is usually released or absorbed, but sometimes the conversion involves light, electrical energy, or some other form of energy. For example, chemical energy (a type of potential energy) is stored in the molecules that compose gasoline. When gasoline is combusted within the cylinders of a car's engine, the rapidly expanding gaseous products of this chemical reaction generate mechanical energy (a type of kinetic energy) when they move the cylinders' pistons.

According to the law of conservation of matter (seen in an earlier chapter), there is no detectable change in the total amount of matter during a chemical change. When chemical reactions occur, the energy changes are relatively modest and the mass changes are too small to measure, so the laws of conservation of matter and energy hold well. However, in nuclear reactions, the energy changes are much larger (by factors of a million or so), the mass changes are measurable, and matter-energy conversions are significant. This will be examined in more detail in a later chapter on nuclear chemistry. To encompass both chemical and nuclear changes, we combine these laws into one statement: The total quantity of matter and energy in the universe is fixed.

Thermal Energy, Temperature, and Heat

Thermal energy is kinetic energy associated with the random motion of atoms and molecules. Temperature is a quantitative measure of "hot" or "cold." When the atoms and molecules in an object are moving or vibrating quickly, they have a higher average kinetic energy (KE), and we say that the object is "hot." When the atoms and molecules are moving slowly, they have lower KE, and we say that the object is "cold" (Figure 4.1.3). Assuming that no chemical reaction or phase change (such as melting or vaporizing) occurs, increasing the amount of thermal energy in a sample of matter will cause its temperature to increase. And, assuming that no chemical reaction or phase change (such as condensation or freezing) occurs, decreasing the amount of thermal energy in a sample of matter will cause its temperature to decrease.

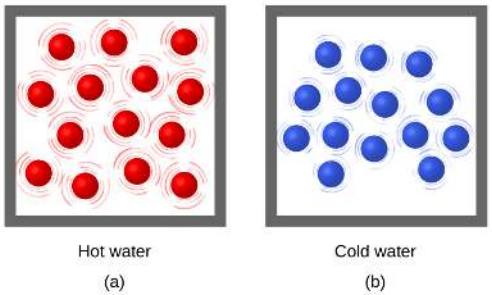


Figure 4.1.3: (a) The molecules in a sample of hot water move more rapidly than (b) those in a sample of cold water.

Two molecular drawings are shown and labeled a and b. Drawing a is a box containing fourteen red spheres that are surrounded by lines indicating that the particles are moving rapidly. This drawing has a label that reads “Hot water.” Drawing b depicts another box of equal size that also contains fourteen spheres, but these are blue. They are all surrounded by smaller lines that depict some particle motion, but not as much as in drawing a. This drawing has a label that reads “Cold water.”



Measuring Energy and Heat Capacity

Historically, energy was measured in units of calories (cal). A calorie is the amount of energy required to raise one gram of water by 1 degree C (1 kelvin). However, this quantity depends on the atmospheric pressure and the starting temperature of the water. The ease of measurement of energy changes in calories has meant that the calorie is still frequently used. The Calorie (with a capital C), or large calorie, commonly used in quantifying food energy content, is a kilocalorie. The SI unit of heat, work, and energy is the joule. A joule (J) is defined as the amount of energy used when a force of 1 newton moves an object 1 meter. It is named in honor of the English physicist James Prescott Joule. One joule is equivalent to 1 kg m^2/s^2, which is also called 1 newton–meter. A kilojoule (kJ) is 1000 joules. To standardize its definition, 1 calorie has been set to equal 4.184 joules.

We now introduce two concepts useful in describing heat flow and temperature change. The heat capacity (C) of a body of matter is the quantity of heat (q) it absorbs or releases when it experiences a temperature change (ΔT) of 1 degree Celsius (or equivalently, 1 kelvin)

$$C = \frac{q}{\Delta T} \tag{4.1.1}$$

Heat capacity is determined by both the type and amount of substance that absorbs or releases heat. It is therefore an extensive property—its value is proportional to the amount of the substance.

For example, consider the heat capacities of two cast iron frying pans. The heat capacity of the large pan is five times greater than that of the small pan because, although both are made of the same material, the mass of the large pan is five times greater than the mass of the small pan. More mass means more atoms are present in the larger pan, so it takes more energy to make all of those atoms vibrate faster. The heat capacity of the small cast iron frying pan is found by observing that it takes 18,150 J of energy to raise the temperature of the pan by 50.0 °C

$$C_{\text{small pan}} = \frac{18,140 \text{ J}}{50.0 \text{ }^\circ\text{C}} = 363 \text{ J/}^\circ\text{C} \tag{4.1.2}$$

The larger cast iron frying pan, while made of the same substance, requires 90,700 J of energy to raise its temperature by 50.0 °C. The larger pan has a (proportionally) larger heat capacity because the larger amount of material requires a (proportionally) larger amount of energy to yield the same temperature change:

$$C_{\text{large pan}} = \frac{90,700 \text{ J}}{50.0 \text{ }^\circ\text{C}} = 1814 \text{ J/}^\circ\text{C} \tag{4.1.3}$$

The specific heat capacity (c) of a substance, commonly called its “specific heat,” is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of a substance by 1 degree Celsius (or 1 kelvin):

$$c = \frac{q}{\text{m}\Delta\text{T}} \tag{4.1.4}$$

Specific heat capacity depends only on the kind of substance absorbing or releasing heat. It is an intensive property—the type, but not the amount, of the substance is all that matters. For example, the small cast iron frying pan has a mass of 808 g. The specific heat of iron (the material used to make the pan) is therefore:

$$c_{\text{iron}} = \frac{18,140 \text{ J}}{(808 \text{ g})(50.0 \text{ }^\circ\text{C})} = 0.449 \text{ J/g }^\circ\text{C} \tag{4.1.5}$$

The large frying pan has a mass of 4040 g. Using the data for this pan, we can also calculate the specific heat of iron:

$$c_{\text{iron}} = \frac{90,700 \text{ J}}{(4,040 \text{ g})(50.0 \text{ }^\circ\text{C})} = 0.449 \text{ J/g }^\circ\text{C} \tag{4.1.6}$$

Although the large pan is more massive than the small pan, since both are made of the same material, they both yield the same value for specific heat (for the material of construction, iron). Note that specific heat is measured in units of energy per temperature per mass and is an intensive property, being derived from a ratio of two extensive properties (heat and mass). The molar heat capacity, also an intensive property, is the heat capacity per mole of a particular substance and has units of J/mol °C (Figure 4.1.7).



Figure 4.1.7: Due to its larger mass, a large frying pan has a larger heat capacity than a small frying pan. Because they are made of the same material, both frying pans have the same specific heat. (credit: Mark Blaser).

The picture shows two black metal frying pans sitting on a flat surface. The left pan is about half the size of the right pan.

Liquid water has a relatively high specific heat (about 4.2 J/g °C); most metals have much lower specific heats (usually less than 1 J/g °C). The specific heat of a substance varies somewhat with temperature. However, this variation is usually small enough that we will treat specific heat as constant over the range of temperatures that will be considered in this chapter. Specific heats of some common substances are listed in Table 4.1.1.

Table 4.1.1: Specific Heats of Common Substances at 25 °C and 1 bar

Substance	Symbol (state)	Specific Heat (J/g °C)
helium	He(*g*)	5.193
water	$H_2O(l)$	4.184
ethanol	$C_2H_6O(l)$	2.376
ice	$H_2O(s)$	2.093 (at −10 °C)
water vapor	$H_2O(g)$	1.864
nitrogen	$N_2(g)$	1.040
air		1.007
oxygen	$O_2(g)$	0.918
aluminum	Al(*s*)	0.897
carbon dioxide	$CO_2(g)$	0.853
argon	Ar(*g*)	0.522
iron	Fe(*s*)	0.449
copper	Cu(*s*)	0.385
lead	Pb(*s*)	0.130
gold	Au(*s*)	0.129
silicon	Si(*s*)	0.712

If we know the mass of a substance and its specific heat, we can determine the amount of heat, *q*, entering or leaving the substance by measuring the temperature change before and after the heat is gained or lost:

$$\begin{aligned} q &= (\text{specific heat}) \times (\text{mass of substance}) \times (\text{temperature change}) \\ q &= c \times m \times \Delta T \\ &= c \times m \times (T_{\text{final}} - T_{\text{initial}}) \end{aligned}$$

In this equation, *c* is the specific heat of the substance, *m* is its mass, and Δ*T* (which is read “delta T”) is the temperature change, $T_{\text{final}} - T_{\text{initial}}$. If a substance gains thermal energy, its temperature increases, its final temperature is higher than its initial

temperature, $T_{final} - T_{initial}$ has a positive value, and the value of q is positive. If a substance loses thermal energy, its temperature decreases, the final temperature is lower than the initial temperature, $T_{final} - T_{initial}$ has a negative value, and the value of q is negative.

Example 4.1.1: Measuring Heat

A flask containing 8.0×10^2 g of water is heated, and the temperature of the water increases from 21 °C to 85 °C. How much heat did the water absorb?

Solution

To answer this question, consider these factors:

- the specific heat of the substance being heated (in this case, water)
- the amount of substance being heated (in this case, 800 g)
- the magnitude of the temperature change (in this case, from 21 °C to 85 °C).

The specific heat of water is 4.184 J/g °C, so to heat 1 g of water by 1 °C requires 4.184 J. We note that since 4.184 J is required to heat 1 g of water by 1 °C, we will need 800 times as much to heat 800 g of water by 1 °C. Finally, we observe that since 4.184 J are required to heat 1 g of water by 1 °C, we will need 64 times as much to heat it by 64 °C (that is, from 21 °C to 85 °C).

This can be summarized using the equation:

$$\begin{aligned} q &= c \times m \times \Delta T \\ &= c \times m \times (T_{\text{final}} - T_{\text{initial}}) \\ &= (4.184 \text{ J/ } \cancel{\text{g}}^{\circ}\text{C}) \times (800 \ \cancel{\text{g}}) \times (85 - 21)^{\circ}\text{C} \\ &= (4.184 \text{ J/ } \cancel{\text{g}}^{\circ} \ \cancel{\text{C}}) \times (800 \ \cancel{\text{g}}) \times (64)^{\circ} \ \cancel{\text{C}} \\ &= 210,000 \text{ J} (= 210 \text{ kJ}) \end{aligned}$$

Because the temperature increased, the water absorbed heat and q is positive.

Exercise 4.1.1

How much heat, in joules, must be added to a 5.00×10^2 g iron skillet to increase its temperature from 25 °C to 250 °C? The specific heat of iron is 0.451 J/g °C.

Answer

5.05×10^4 J

Note that the relationship between heat, specific heat, mass, and temperature change can be used to determine any of these quantities (not just heat) if the other three are known or can be deduced.

Example 4.1.2: Determining Other Quantities

A piece of unknown metal weighs 348 g. When the metal piece absorbs 6.64 kJ of heat, its temperature increases from 22.4 °C to 43.6 °C. Determine the specific heat of this metal (which might provide a clue to its identity).

Solution

Since mass, heat, and temperature change are known for this metal, we can determine its specific heat using the relationship:

$$\begin{aligned} q &= c \times m \times \Delta T \\ &= c \times m \times (T_{\text{final}} - T_{\text{initial}}) \end{aligned}$$

Substituting the known values:

$$6,640\ \text{J} = c \times (348\ \text{g}) \times (43.6 - 22.4)\ ^\circ\text{C}$$

Solving:

$$c = \frac{6,640\ \text{J}}{(348\ \text{g}) \times (21.2\ ^\circ\text{C})} = 0.900\ \text{J/g}\ ^\circ\text{C}$$

Comparing this value with the values in Table 4.1.1, this value matches the specific heat of aluminum, which suggests that the unknown metal may be aluminum.

? Exercise 4.1.2

A piece of unknown metal weighs 217 g. When the metal piece absorbs 1.43 kJ of heat, its temperature increases from 24.5 °C to 39.1 °C. Determine the specific heat of this metal, and predict its identity.

Answer

$c = 0.45\ \text{J/g}\ ^\circ\text{C}$; the metal is likely to be iron from checking Table 4.1.1

Solar Thermal Energy Power Plants

The sunlight that reaches the earth contains thousands of times more energy than we presently capture. Solar thermal systems provide one possible solution to the problem of converting energy from the sun into energy we can use. Large-scale solar thermal plants have different design specifics, but all concentrate sunlight to heat some substance; the heat "stored" in that substance is then converted into electricity.

The Solana Generating Station in Arizona's Sonora Desert produces 280 megawatts of electrical power. It uses parabolic mirrors that focus sunlight on pipes filled with a heat transfer fluid (HTF) (Figure 4.1.8). The HTF then does two things: It turns water into steam, which spins turbines, which in turn produces electricity, and it melts and heats a mixture of salts, which functions as a thermal energy storage system. After the sun goes down, the molten salt mixture can then release enough of its stored heat to produce steam to run the turbines for 6 hours. Molten salts are used because they possess a number of beneficial properties, including high heat capacities and thermal conductivities.

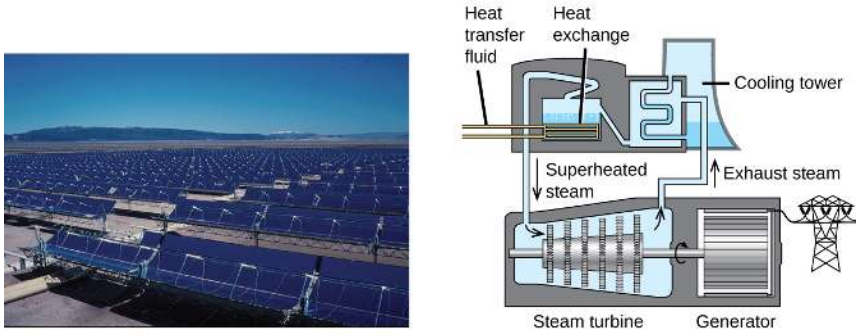


Figure 4.1.8: This solar thermal plant uses parabolic trough mirrors to concentrate sunlight. (credit a: modification of work by Bureau of Land Management)

This figure has two parts labeled a and b. Part a shows rows and rows of trough mirrors. Part b shows how a solar thermal plant works. Heat transfer fluid enters a tank via pipes. The tank contains water which is heated. As the heat is exchanged from the pipes to the water, the water becomes steam. The steam travels to a steam turbine. The steam turbine begins to turn which powers a generator. Exhaust steam exits the steam turbine and enters a cooling tower.

The 377-megawatt Ivanpah Solar Generating System, located in the Mojave Desert in California, is the largest solar thermal power plant in the world (Figure 4.1.9). Its 170,000 mirrors focus huge amounts of sunlight on three water-filled towers, producing steam at over 538 °C that drives electricity-producing turbines. It produces enough energy to power 140,000 homes. Water is used as the working fluid because of its large heat capacity and heat of vaporization.



(a) (b)

Figure 4.1.9: (a) The Ivanpah solar thermal plant uses 170,000 mirrors to concentrate sunlight on water-filled towers. (b) It covers 4000 acres of public land near the Mojave Desert and the California-Nevada border. (credit a: modification of work by Craig Dietrich; credit b: modification of work by "USFWS Pacific Southwest Region"/Flickr)

Two pictures are shown and labeled a and b. Picture a shows a thermal plant with three tall metal towers. Picture b is an arial picture of the mirrors used at the plant. They are arranged in rows.

Summary

Energy is the capacity to do work (applying a force to move matter). Kinetic energy (KE) is the energy of motion; potential energy is energy due to relative position, composition, or condition. When energy is converted from one form into another, energy is neither created nor destroyed (law of conservation of energy or first law of thermodynamics). Matter has thermal energy due to the KE of its molecules and temperature that corresponds to the average KE of its molecules. Heat is energy that is transferred between objects at different temperatures; it flows from a high to a low temperature. Chemical and physical processes can absorb heat (endothermic) or release heat (exothermic). The SI unit of energy, heat, and work is the joule (J). Specific heat and heat capacity are measures of the energy needed to change the temperature of a substance or object. The amount of heat absorbed or released by a substance depends directly on the type of substance, its mass, and the temperature change it undergoes.

Key Equations

- $q = c \times m \times \Delta T = c \times m \times (T_{\text{final}} - T_{\text{initial}})$

Glossary

calorie (cal)

unit of heat or other energy; the amount of energy required to raise 1 gram of water by 1 degree Celsius; 1 cal is defined as 4.184 J

endothermic process

chemical reaction or physical change that absorbs heat

energy

capacity to supply heat or do work

exothermic process

chemical reaction or physical change that releases heat

heat (*q*)

transfer of thermal energy between two bodies

heat capacity (*C*)

extensive property of a body of matter that represents the quantity of heat required to increase its temperature by 1 degree Celsius (or 1 kelvin)

joule (J)

SI unit of energy; 1 joule is the kinetic energy of an object with a mass of 2 kilograms moving with a velocity of 1 meter per second, 1 J = 1 kg m^2/s and 4.184 J = 1 cal

kinetic energy

energy of a moving body, in joules, equal to $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ (where m = mass and v = velocity)

potential energy

energy of a particle or system of particles derived from relative position, composition, or condition

specific heat capacity (*c*)

intensive property of a substance that represents the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of the substance by 1 degree Celsius (or 1 kelvin)

temperature

intensive property of matter that is a quantitative measure of “hotness” and “coldness”

thermal energy

kinetic energy associated with the random motion of atoms and molecules

thermochemistry

study of measuring the amount of heat absorbed or released during a chemical reaction or a physical change

work (*w*)

energy transfer due to changes in external, macroscopic variables such as pressure and volume; or causing matter to move against an opposing force

---

This page titled 4.1: Energy Basics is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **5.2: Energy Basics** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.2: Calorimetry

Learning Objectives

- Explain the technique of calorimetry
- Calculate and interpret heat and related properties using typical calorimetry data

One technique we can use to measure the amount of heat involved in a chemical or physical process is known as calorimetry. Calorimetry is used to measure amounts of heat transferred to or from a substance. To do so, the heat is exchanged with a calibrated object (calorimeter). The change in temperature of the measuring part of the calorimeter is converted into the amount of heat (since the previous calibration was used to establish its heat capacity). The measurement of heat transfer using this approach requires the definition of a system (the substance or substances undergoing the chemical or physical change) and its surroundings (the other components of the measurement apparatus that serve to either provide heat to the system or absorb heat from the system). Knowledge of the heat capacity of the surroundings, and careful measurements of the masses of the system and surroundings and their temperatures before and after the process allows one to calculate the heat transferred as described in this section.

A calorimeter is a device used to measure the amount of heat involved in a chemical or physical process. For example, when an exothermic reaction occurs in solution in a calorimeter, the heat produced by the reaction is absorbed by the solution, which increases its temperature. When an endothermic reaction occurs, the heat required is absorbed from the thermal energy of the solution, which decreases its temperature (Figure 4.2.1). The temperature change, along with the specific heat and mass of the solution, can then be used to calculate the amount of heat involved in either case.

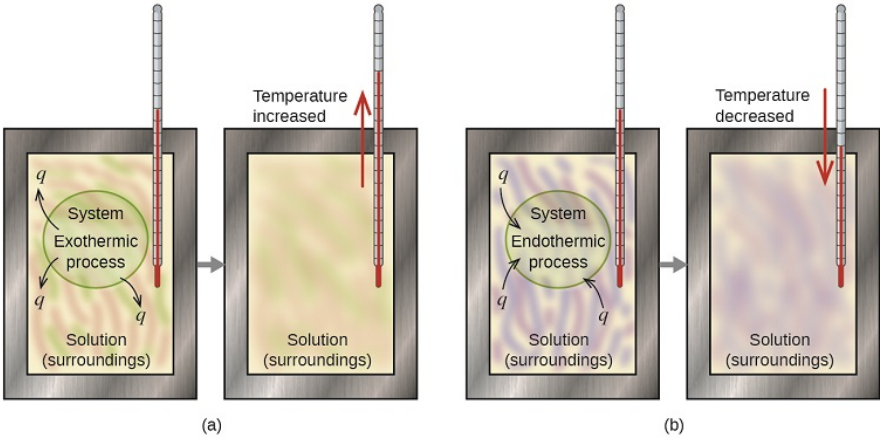


Figure 4.2.1: In a calorimetric determination, either (a) an exothermic process occurs and heat, q, is negative, indicating that thermal energy is transferred from the system to its surroundings, or (b) an endothermic process occurs and heat, q, is positive, indicating that thermal energy is transferred from the surroundings to the system.

Two diagrams labeled a and b are shown. Each is made up of two rectangular containers with a thermometer inserted into the top right and extending inside. There is a right facing arrow connecting each box in each diagram. The left container in diagram a depicts a pink and green swirling solution with the terms “Exothermic process” and “System” written in the center with arrows facing away from the terms pointing to “q.” The labels “Solution” and “Surroundings” are written at the bottom of the container. The right container in diagram a has the term “Solution” written at the bottom of the container and a red arrow facing up near the thermometer with the phrase “Temperature increased” next to it. The pink and green swirls are more blended in this container. The left container in diagram b depicts a purple and blue swirling solution with the terms “Endothermic process” and “System” written in the center with arrows facing away from the terms and “Solution” and “Surroundings” written at the bottom. The arrows point away from the letter “q.” The right container in diagram b has the term “Solution” written at the bottom and a red arrow facing down near the thermometer with the phrase “Temperature decreased” next to it. The blue and purple swirls are more blended in this container.

> By convention, q is given a negative (-) sign when the system releases heat to the surroundings (exothermic); q is given a positive (+) sign when the system absorbs heat from the surroundings (endothermic).

Scientists use well-insulated calorimeters that all but prevent the transfer of heat between the calorimeter and its environment. This enables the accurate determination of the heat involved in chemical processes, the energy content of foods, and so on. General chemistry students often use simple calorimeters constructed from polystyrene cups (Figure 4.2.2). These easy-to-use “coffee cup” calorimeters allow more heat exchange with their surroundings, and therefore produce less accurate energy values.

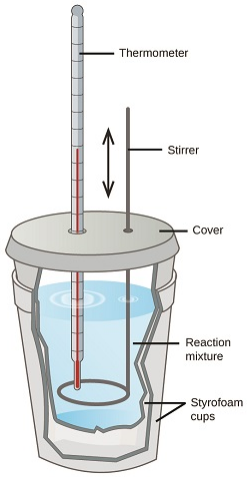


Figure 4.2.2: A simple calorimeter can be constructed from two polystyrene cups. A thermometer and stirrer extend through the cover into the reaction mixture.

Two Styrofoam cups are shown nested in one another with a cover over the top. A thermometer and stirring rod are inserted through the cover and into the solution inside the cup, which is shown as a cut-away. The stirring rod has a double headed arrow next to it facing up and down. The liquid mixture inside the cup is labeled “Reaction mixture.”

Commercial solution calorimeters are also available. Relatively inexpensive calorimeters often consist of two thin-walled cups that are nested in a way that minimizes thermal contact during use, along with an insulated cover, handheld stirrer, and simple thermometer. More expensive calorimeters used for industry and research typically have a well-insulated, fully enclosed reaction vessel, motorized stirring mechanism, and a more accurate temperature sensor (Figure 4.2.3).

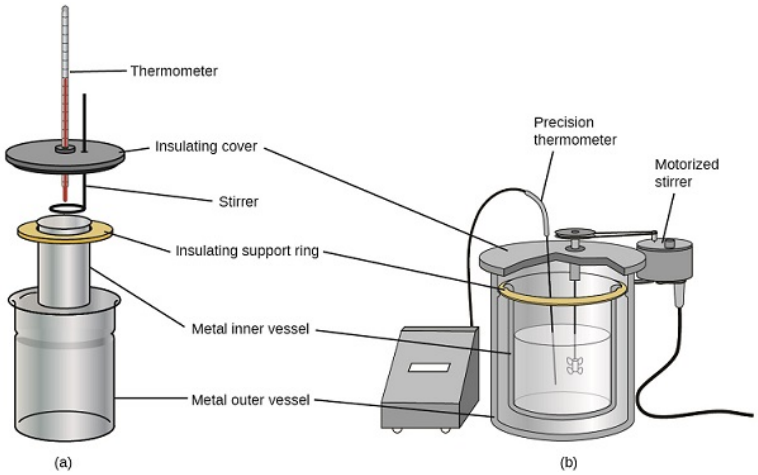


Figure 4.2.3: Commercial solution calorimeters range from (a) simple, inexpensive models for student use to (b) expensive, more accurate models for industry and research.

Two diagrams are shown and labeled a and b. Diagram a depicts a thermometer which passes through a disk-like insulating cover and into a metal cylinder which is labeled “metal inner vessel,” which is in turn nested in a metal cylinder labeled “metal outer vessel.” The inner cylinder rests on an insulating support ring. A stirrer passes through the insulating cover and into the inner cylinder as well. Diagram b shows an inner metal vessel half full of liquid resting on an insulating support ring and nested in a metal outer vessel. A precision temperature probe and motorized stirring rod are placed into the solution in the inner vessel and connected by wires to equipment exterior to the set-up.

Before we practice calorimetry problems involving chemical reactions, consider a simple example that illustrates the core idea behind calorimetry. Suppose we initially have a high-temperature substance, such as a hot piece of metal (M), and a low-temperature substance, such as cool water (W). If we place the metal in the water, heat will flow from M to W. The temperature of M will decrease, and the temperature of W will increase, until the two substances have the same temperature—that is, when they reach thermal equilibrium (Figure 4.2.4). If this occurs in a calorimeter, ideally all of this heat transfer occurs between the two substances, with no heat gained or lost by either the calorimeter or the calorimeter’s surroundings. Under these ideal circumstances, the net heat change is zero:

$$q_{\text{substance M}} + q_{\text{substance W}} = 0 \tag{4.2.1}$$

This relationship can be rearranged to show that the heat gained by substance M is equal to the heat lost by substance W:

$$q_{\text{substance M}} = -q_{\text{substance W}} \tag{4.2.2}$$

The magnitude of the heat (change) is therefore the same for both substances, and the negative sign merely shows that $q_{substance\,M}$ and $q_{substance\,W}$ are opposite in direction of heat flow (gain or loss) but does not indicate the arithmetic sign of either q value (that is determined by whether the matter in question gains or loses heat, per definition). In the specific situation described, $q_{substance\,M}$ is a negative value and $q_{substance\,W}$ is positive, since heat is transferred from M to W.

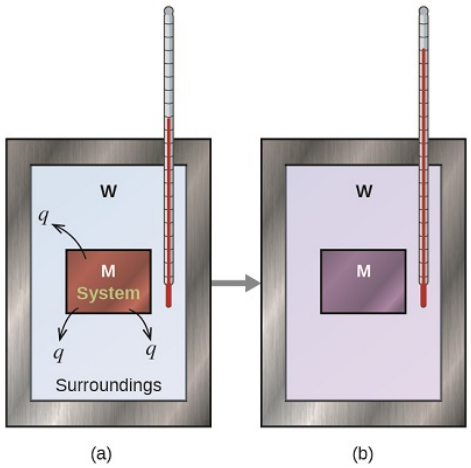


Figure 4.2.4: In a simple calorimetry process, (a) heat, q, is transferred from the hot metal, M, to the cool water, W, until (b) both are at the same temperature.

Two diagrams are shown and labeled a and b. Each diagram is composed of a rectangular container with a thermometer inserted inside from the top right corner. Both containers are connected by a right-facing arrow. Both containers are full of water, which is depicted by the letter "W," and each container has a square in the middle which represents a metal which is labeled with a letter "M." In diagram a, the metal is drawn in brown and has three arrows facing away from it. Each arrow has the letter "q" at its end. The metal is labeled "system" and the water is labeled "surroundings." The thermometer in this diagram has a relatively low reading. In diagram b, the metal is depicted in purple and the thermometer has a relatively high reading.

Example 4.2.1: Heat Transfer between Substances at Different Temperatures

A hot 360-g piece of rebar (a steel rod used for reinforcing concrete) is dropped into 425 mL of water at 24.0 °C. The final temperature of the water is measured as 42.7 °C. Calculate the initial temperature of the piece of rebar. Assume the specific heat of steel is approximately the same as that for iron (Table T4), and that all heat transfer occurs between the rebar and the water (there is no heat exchange with the surroundings).

Solution

The temperature of the water increases from 24.0 °C to 42.7 °C, so the water absorbs heat. That heat came from the piece of rebar, which initially was at a higher temperature. Assuming that all heat transfer was between the rebar and the water, with no heat "lost" to the surroundings, then heat given off by rebar = − heat taken in by water, or:

$$q_{\text{rebar}} = -q_{\text{water}}$$

Since we know how heat is related to other measurable quantities, we have:

$$(c \times m \times \Delta T)_{\text{rebar}} = -(c \times m \times \Delta T)_{\text{water}}$$

Letting f = final and i = initial, in expanded form, this becomes:

$$c_{\text{rebar}} \times m_{\text{rebar}} \times (T_{\text{f,rebar}} - T_{\text{i,rebar}}) = -c_{\text{water}} \times m_{\text{water}} \times (T_{\text{f,water}} - T_{\text{i,water}})$$

The density of water is 1.0 g/mL, so 425 mL of water = 425 g. Noting that the final temperature of both the rebar and water is 42.7 °C, substituting known values yields:

$$(0.449\ \text{J/g}\ ^\circ\text{C})(360\text{g})(42.7^\circ\text{C} - T_{\text{i,rebar}}) = -(4.184\ \text{J/g}\ ^\circ\text{C})(425\ \text{g})(42.7^\circ\text{C} - 24.0^\circ\text{C})$$

$$T_{\text{i,rebar}} = \frac{(4.184\ \text{J/g}\ ^\circ\text{C})(425\ \text{g})(42.7^\circ\text{C} - 24.0^\circ\text{C})}{(0.449\ \text{J/g}\ ^\circ\text{C})(360\ \text{g})} + 42.7^\circ\text{C}$$

Solving this gives Ti,rebar= 248 °C, so the initial temperature of the rebar was 248 °C.

Exercise 4.2.1A

A 248-g piece of copper is dropped into 390 mL of water at 22.6 °C. The final temperature of the water was measured as 39.9 °C. Calculate the initial temperature of the piece of copper. Assume that all heat transfer occurs between the copper and the water.

Answer

The initial temperature of the copper was 335.6 °C.

Exercise 4.2.1B

A 248-g piece of copper initially at 314 °C is dropped into 390 mL of water initially at 22.6 °C. Assuming that all heat transfer occurs between the copper and the water, calculate the final temperature.

Answer

The final temperature (reached by both copper and water) is 38.7 °C.

This method can also be used to determine other quantities, such as the specific heat of an unknown metal.

Example 4.2.2: Identifying a Metal by Measuring Specific Heat

A 59.7 g piece of metal that had been submerged in boiling water was quickly transferred into 60.0 mL of water initially at 22.0 °C. The final temperature is 28.5 °C. Use these data to determine the specific heat of the metal. Use this result to identify the metal.

Solution

Assuming perfect heat transfer, heat given off by metal = −heat taken in by water, or:

$$q_{\text{metal}} = -q_{\text{water}}$$

In expanded form, this is:

$$c_{\text{metal}} \times m_{\text{metal}} \times (T_{\text{f,metal}} - T_{\text{i,metal}}) = -c_{\text{water}} \times m_{\text{water}} \times (T_{\text{f,water}} - T_{\text{i,water}})$$

Noting that since the metal was submerged in boiling water, its initial temperature was 100.0 °C; and that for water, 60.0 mL = 60.0 g; we have:

$$(c_{\text{metal}})(59.7\text{ g})(28.5^\circ\text{C} - 100.0^\circ\text{C}) = -(4.18\text{ J/g }^\circ\text{C})(60.0\text{ g})(28.5^\circ\text{C} - 22.0^\circ\text{C})$$

Solving this:

$$c_{\text{metal}} = \frac{-(4.184\text{ J/g }^\circ\text{C})(60.0\text{ g})(6.5^\circ\text{C})}{(59.7\text{ g})(-71.5^\circ\text{C})} = 0.38\text{ J/g }^\circ\text{C}$$

Comparing this with values in Table T4, our experimental specific heat is closest to the value for copper (0.39 J/g °C), so we identify the metal as copper.

Exercise 4.2.2

A 92.9-g piece of a silver/gray metal is heated to 178.0 °C, and then quickly transferred into 75.0 mL of water initially at 24.0 °C. After 5 minutes, both the metal and the water have reached the same temperature: 29.7 °C. Determine the specific heat and the identity of the metal. (Note: You should find that the specific heat is close to that of two different metals. Explain how you can confidently determine the identity of the metal).

Answer

$c_{metal} = 0.13\ J/g\ ^\circ C$

This specific heat is close to that of either gold or lead. It would be difficult to determine which metal this was based solely on the numerical values. However, the observation that the metal is silver/gray in addition to the value for the specific heat indicates that the metal is lead.

When we use calorimetry to determine the heat involved in a chemical reaction, the same principles we have been discussing apply. The amount of heat absorbed by the calorimeter is often small enough that we can neglect it (though not for highly accurate measurements, as discussed later),

and the calorimeter minimizes energy exchange with the surroundings. Because energy is neither created nor destroyed during a chemical reaction, there is no overall energy change during the reaction. The heat produced or consumed in the reaction (the "system"), q_{reaction}, plus the heat absorbed or lost by the solution (the "surroundings"), $q_{solution}$, must add up to zero:

$$q_{\text{reaction}} + q_{\text{solution}} = 0 \tag{4.2.3}$$

This means that the amount of heat produced or consumed in the reaction equals the amount of heat absorbed or lost by the solution:

$$q_{\text{reaction}} = -q_{\text{solution}} \tag{4.2.4}$$

This concept lies at the heart of all calorimetry problems and calculations.

Example 4.2.3: Heat Produced by an Exothermic Reaction

When 50.0 mL of 0.10 M HCl(*aq*) and 50.0 mL of 1.00 M NaOH(*aq*), both at 22.0 °C, are added to a coffee cup calorimeter, the temperature of the mixture reaches a maximum of 28.9 °C. What is the approximate amount of heat produced by this reaction?

$$\text{HCl}(aq) + \text{NaOH}(aq) \longrightarrow \text{NaCl}(aq) + \text{H}_2\text{O}(l)$$

Solution

To visualize what is going on, imagine that you could combine the two solutions so quickly that no reaction took place while they mixed; then after mixing, the reaction took place. At the instant of mixing, you have 100.0 mL of a mixture of HCl and NaOH at 22.0 °C. The HCl and NaOH then react until the solution temperature reaches 28.9 °C.

The heat given off by the reaction is equal to that taken in by the solution. Therefore:

$$q_{\text{reaction}} = -q_{\text{solution}}$$

(It is important to remember that this relationship only holds if the calorimeter does not absorb any heat from the reaction, and there is no heat exchange between the calorimeter and its surroundings.)

Next, we know that the heat absorbed by the solution depends on its specific heat, mass, and temperature change:

$$q_{\text{solution}} = (c \times m \times \Delta T)_{\text{solution}}$$

To proceed with this calculation, we need to make a few more reasonable assumptions or approximations. Since the solution is aqueous, we can proceed as if it were water in terms of its specific heat and mass values. The density of water is approximately 1.0 g/mL, so 100.0 mL has a mass of about 1.0×10^2 g (two significant figures). The specific heat of water is approximately 4.18 J/g °C, so we use that for the specific heat of the solution. Substituting these values gives:

$$q_{\text{solution}} = (4.184 \text{ J/g } ^\circ\text{C})(1.0 \times 10^2 \text{ g})(28.9^\circ\text{C} - 22.0^\circ\text{C}) = 2.89 \times 10^3 \text{ J}$$

Finally, since we are trying to find the heat of the reaction, we have:

$$q_{\text{reaction}} = -q_{\text{solution}} = -2.89 \times 10^3 \ J$$

The negative sign indicates that the reaction is exothermic. It produces 2.89 kJ of heat.

Exercise 4.2.3

When 100 mL of 0.200 M NaCl(*aq*) and 100 mL of 0.200 M $AgNO_3$(*aq*), both at 21.9 °C, are mixed in a coffee cup calorimeter, the temperature increases to 23.5 °C as solid AgCl forms. How much heat is produced by this precipitation reaction? What assumptions did you make to determine your value?

Answer

$1.34 \times 10^3 \ J$; assume no heat is absorbed by the calorimeter, no heat is exchanged between the calorimeter and its surroundings, and that the specific heat and mass of the solution are the same as those for water

Thermochemistry of Hand Warmers

When working or playing outdoors on a cold day, you might use a hand warmer to warm your hands (Figure 4.2.5). A common reusable hand warmer contains a supersaturated solution of $NaC_2H_3O_2$ (sodium acetate) and a metal disc. Bending the disk creates nucleation sites around which the metastable $NaC_2H_3O_2$ quickly crystallizes (a later chapter on solutions will investigate saturation and supersaturation in more detail).

The process $\text{NaC}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2(aq) \longrightarrow \text{NaC}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2(s)$ is exothermic, and the heat produced by this process is absorbed by your hands, thereby warming them (at least for a while). If the hand warmer is reheated, the $NaC_2H_3O_2$ redissolves and can be reused.



Figure 4.2.5: Chemical hand warmers produce heat that warms your hand on a cold day. In this one, you can see the metal disc that initiates the exothermic precipitation reaction. (credit: modification of work by Science Buddies TV/YouTube)

A series of three photos is shown. There are two right-facing arrows connecting one photo to the next. The first photo shows a chemical hand warmer. It is a bag that contains a clear, colorless liquid. There is a white disk located to the right inside the bag. The second photo shows the same thing, except the white disc has become a white, cloudy substance. The third photo shows the entire bag filled with this white substance.

Another common hand warmer produces heat when it is ripped open, exposing iron and water in the hand warmer to oxygen in the air. One simplified version of this exothermic reaction is

$$2\,\mathrm{Fe(s)} + \tfrac{3}{2}\mathrm{O_2(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe_2O_3(s).}\ n$$

Salt in the hand warmer catalyzes the reaction, so it produces heat more rapidly; cellulose, vermiculite, and activated carbon help distribute the heat evenly. Other types of hand warmers use lighter fluid (a platinum catalyst helps lighter fluid oxidize exothermically), charcoal (charcoal oxidizes in a special case), or electrical units that produce heat by passing an electrical current from a battery through resistive wires.

Example 4.2.4: Heat Flow in an Instant Ice Pack

When solid ammonium nitrate dissolves in water, the solution becomes cold. This is the basis for an “instant ice pack” (Figure 4.2.5). When 3.21 g of solid NH_4NO_3 dissolves in 50.0 g of water at 24.9 °C in a calorimeter, the temperature decreases to 20.3 °C.

Calculate the value of *q* for this reaction and explain the meaning of its arithmetic sign. State any assumptions that you made.



Figure 4.2.5: An instant cold pack consists of a bag containing solid ammonium nitrate and a second bag of water. When the bag of water is broken, the pack becomes cold because the dissolution of ammonium nitrate is an endothermic process that removes thermal energy from the water. The cold pack then removes thermal energy from your body.

Solution

We assume that the calorimeter prevents heat transfer between the solution and its external environment (including the calorimeter itself), in which case:

$$q_{\mathrm{rxn}} = -q_{\mathrm{soln}}$$

with “rxn” and “soln” used as shorthand for “reaction” and “solution,” respectively.

Assuming also that the specific heat of the solution is the same as that for water, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} q_{\mathrm{rxn}} &= -q_{\mathrm{soln}} = -(c \times m \times \Delta T)_{\mathrm{soln}} \\ &= -[(4.184\mathrm{J/g\ ^\circ C}) \times (53.2\ \mathrm{g}) \times (20.3^\circ\mathrm{C} - 24.9^\circ\mathrm{C})] \\ &= -[(4.184\mathrm{J/g\ ^\circ C}) \times (53.2\ \mathrm{g}) \times (-4.6^\circ\mathrm{C})] \\ &+1.0 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{J} = +1.0\ \mathrm{kJ} \end{aligned}$$

The positive sign for *q* indicates that the dissolution is an endothermic process.

? Exercise 4.2.4

When a 3.00-g sample of KCl was added to 3.00×10^2 g of water in a coffee cup calorimeter, the temperature decreased by 1.05 °C. How much heat is involved in the dissolution of the KCl? What assumptions did you make?

Answer

1.33 kJ; assume that the calorimeter prevents heat transfer between the solution and its external environment (including the calorimeter itself) and that the specific heat of the solution is the same as that for water.

If the amount of heat absorbed by a calorimeter is too large to neglect or if we require more accurate results, then we must take into account the heat absorbed both by the solution and by the calorimeter.

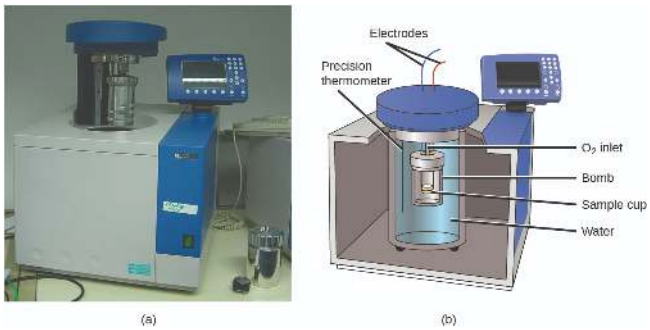
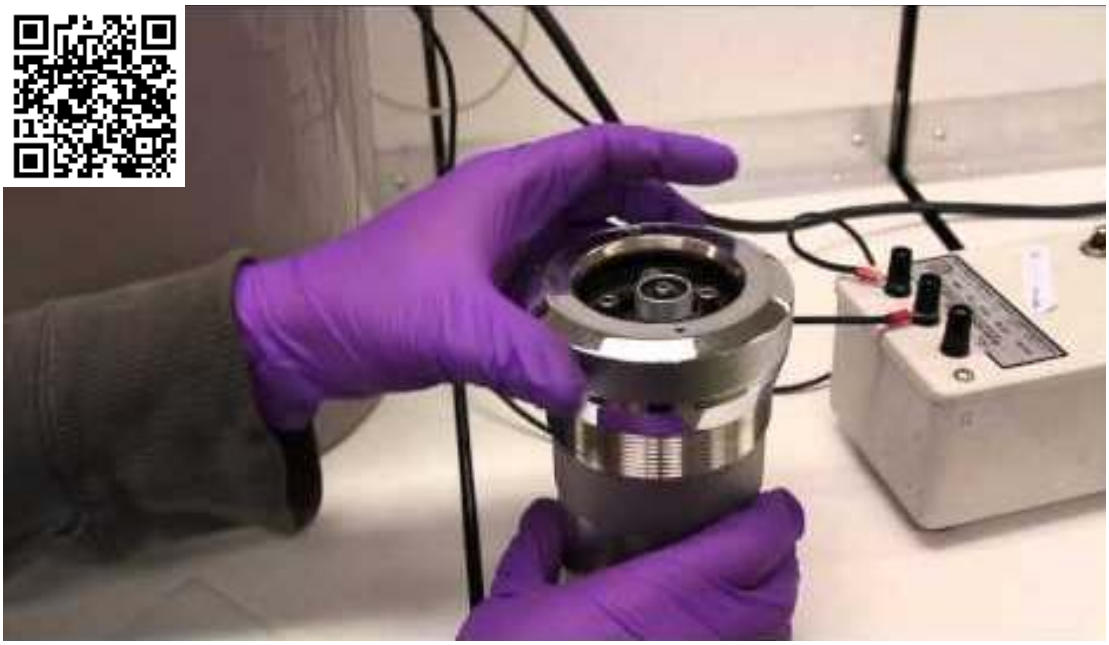


Figure 4.2.6: (a) A bomb calorimeter is used to measure heat produced by reactions involving gaseous reactants or products, such as combustion. (b) The reactants are contained in the gas-tight "bomb," which is submerged in water and surrounded by insulating materials. (credit a: modification of work by "Harbor1"/Wikimedia commons)

A picture and a diagram are shown, labeled a and b, respectively. Picture a depicts a bomb calorimeter. It is a cube-shaped machine with a cavity in the top, a metal cylinder that is above the cavity, and a read-out panel attached to the top-right side. Diagram b depicts a cut away figure of a cube with a cylindrical container full of water in the middle of it. Another container, labeled "bomb," sits inside of a smaller cylinder which holds a sample cup and is nested in the cylindrical container surrounded by the water. A black line extends into the water and is labeled "Precision thermometer." Two wires labeled "Electrodes" extend away from a cover that sits on top of the interior container. A read-out panel is located at the top right of the cube.

The calorimeters described are designed to operate at constant (atmospheric) pressure and are convenient to measure heat flow accompanying processes that occur in solution. A different type of calorimeter that operates at constant volume, colloquially known as a bomb calorimeter, is used to measure the energy produced by reactions that yield large amounts of heat and gaseous products, such as combustion reactions. (The term "bomb" comes from the observation that these reactions can be vigorous enough to resemble explosions that would damage other calorimeters.) This type of calorimeter consists of a robust steel container (the "bomb") that contains the reactants and is itself submerged in water (Figure 4.2.6). The sample is placed in the bomb, which is then filled with oxygen at high pressure. A small electrical spark is used to ignite the sample. The energy produced by the reaction is trapped in the steel bomb and the surrounding water. The temperature increase is measured and, along with the known heat capacity of the calorimeter, is used to calculate the energy produced by the reaction. Bomb calorimeters require calibration to determine the heat capacity of the calorimeter and ensure accurate results. The calibration is accomplished using a reaction with a known q, such as a measured quantity of benzoic acid ignited by a spark from a nickel fuse wire that is weighed before and after the reaction. The temperature change produced by the known reaction is used to determine the heat capacity of the calorimeter. The calibration is generally performed each time before the calorimeter is used to gather research data.



Video $4.2.1$*: Video of view how a bomb calorimeter is prepared for action.*

Example $4.2.5$: Bomb Calorimetry

When 3.12 g of glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$, is burned in a bomb calorimeter, the temperature of the calorimeter increases from 23.8 °C to 35.6 °C. The calorimeter contains 775 g of water, and the bomb itself has a heat capacity of 893 J/°C. How much heat was produced by the combustion of the glucose sample?

Solution

The combustion produces heat that is primarily absorbed by the water and the bomb. (The amounts of heat absorbed by the reaction products and the unreacted excess oxygen are relatively small and dealing with them is beyond the scope of this text. We will neglect them in our calculations.)

The heat produced by the reaction is absorbed by the water and the bomb:

$$\begin{aligned} q_{\text{rxn}} &= -(q_{\text{water}} + q_{\text{bomb}}) \\ &= -[(4.184\ \text{J/g}\ ^\circ\text{C}) \times (775\ \text{g}) \times (35.6\ ^\circ\text{C} - 23.8\ ^\circ\text{C}) + 893\ \text{J/}\ ^\circ\text{C} \times (35.6\ ^\circ\text{C} - 23.8\ ^\circ\text{C})] \\ &= -(38,300\ \text{J} + 10,500\ \text{J}) \\ &= -48,800\ \text{J} = -48.8\ \text{kJ} \end{aligned}$$

This reaction released 48.7 kJ of heat when 3.12 g of glucose was burned.

Exercise $4.2.5$

When 0.963 g of benzene, C_6H_6, is burned in a bomb calorimeter, the temperature of the calorimeter increases by 8.39 °C. The bomb has a heat capacity of 784 J/°C and is submerged in 925 mL of water. How much heat was produced by the combustion of the glucose sample?

Answer

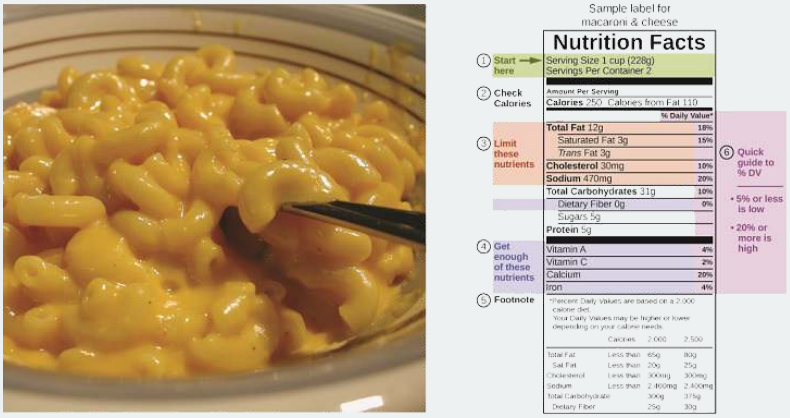
39.0 kJ

Since the first one was constructed in 1899, 35 calorimeters have been built to measure the heat produced by a living person.[1] These whole-body calorimeters of various designs are large enough to hold an individual human being. More recently, whole-room calorimeters allow for relatively normal activities to be performed, and these calorimeters generate data that more closely reflect the real world. These calorimeters are used to measure the metabolism of individuals under different environmental conditions, different dietary regimes, and with different health conditions, such as diabetes. In humans, metabolism is typically measured in Calories per day. A nutritional calorie (Calorie) is the energy unit used to quantify the amount of energy derived from the metabolism of foods; one Calorie is equal to 1000 calories (1 kcal), the amount of energy needed to heat 1 kg of water by 1 °C.

Measuring Nutritional Calories

In your day-to-day life, you may be more familiar with energy being given in Calories, or nutritional calories, which are used to quantify the amount of energy in foods. One calorie (cal) = exactly 4.184 joules, and one Calorie (note the capitalization) = 1000 cal, or 1 kcal. (This is approximately the amount of energy needed to heat 1 kg of water by 1 °C.)

The macronutrients in food are proteins, carbohydrates, and fats or oils. Proteins provide about 4 Calories per gram, carbohydrates also provide about 4 Calories per gram, and fats and oils provide about 9 Calories/g. Nutritional labels on food packages show the caloric content of one serving of the food, as well as the breakdown into Calories from each of the three macronutrients (Figure 4.2.7).



(a) (b)

Figure 4.2.7: (a) Macaroni and cheese contain energy in the form of the macronutrients in the food. (b) The food's nutritional information is shown on the package label. In the US, the energy content is given in Calories (per serving); the rest of the world usually uses kilojoules. (credit a: modification of work by "Rex Roof"/Flickr)

For the example shown in (b), the total energy per 228-g portion is calculated by:

$$(5\text{ g protein} \times 4\text{ Calories/g}) + (31\text{ g carb} \times 4\text{ Calories/g}) + (12\text{ g fat} \times 9\text{ Calories/g}) = 252\text{ Calories} \qquad (4.2.5)$$

So, you can use food labels to count your Calories. But where do the values come from? And how accurate are they? The caloric content of foods can be determined by using bomb calorimetry; that is, by burning the food and measuring the energy it contains. A sample of food is weighed, mixed in a blender, freeze-dried, ground into powder, and formed into a pellet. The pellet is burned inside a bomb calorimeter, and the measured temperature change is converted into energy per gram of food.

Today, the caloric content on food labels is derived using a method called the Atwater system that uses the average caloric content of the different chemical constituents of food, protein, carbohydrate, and fats. The average amounts are those given in the equation and are derived from the various results given by bomb calorimetry of whole foods. The carbohydrate amount is discounted a certain amount for the fiber content, which is indigestible carbohydrate. To determine the energy content of a food, the quantities of carbohydrate, protein, and fat are each multiplied by the average Calories per gram for each and the products summed to obtain the total energy.

Summary

Calorimetry is used to measure the amount of thermal energy transferred in a chemical or physical process. This requires careful measurement of the temperature change that occurs during the process and the masses of the system and surroundings. These measured quantities are then used to compute the amount of heat produced or consumed in the process using known mathematical relations. Calorimeters are designed to minimize energy exchange between the system being studied and its surroundings. They range from simple coffee cup calorimeters used by introductory chemistry students to sophisticated bomb calorimeters used to determine the energy content of food.

Footnotes

1. 1 Francis D. Reardon et al. "The Snellen human calorimeter revisited, re-engineered and upgraded: Design and performance characteristics." *Medical and Biological Engineering and Computing* 8 (2006)721–28, The Snellen human calorimeter revisited, re-engineered and upgraded: design and performance characteristics [link.springer.com].

Glossary

bomb calorimeter

device designed to measure the energy change for processes occurring under conditions of constant volume; commonly used for reactions involving solid and gaseous reactants or products

calorimeter
device used to measure the amount of heat absorbed or released in a chemical or physical process

calorimetry
process of measuring the amount of heat involved in a chemical or physical process

nutritional calorie (Calorie)
unit used for quantifying energy provided by digestion of foods, defined as 1000 cal or 1 kcal

surroundings
all matter other than the system being studied

system
portion of matter undergoing a chemical or physical change being studied

---

This page titled 4.2: Calorimetry is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **5.3: Calorimetry** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.3: Enthalpy

Learning Objectives

- State the first law of thermodynamics
- Define enthalpy and explain its classification as a state function
- Write and balance thermochemical equations
- Calculate enthalpy changes for various chemical reactions
- Explain Hess's law and use it to compute reaction enthalpies

Thermochemistry is a branch of chemical thermodynamics, the science that deals with the relationships between heat, work, and other forms of energy in the context of chemical and physical processes. As we concentrate on thermochemistry in this chapter, we need to consider some widely used concepts of thermodynamics.

Substances act as reservoirs of energy, meaning that energy can be added to them or removed from them. Energy is stored in a substance when the kinetic energy of its atoms or molecules is raised. The greater kinetic energy may be in the form of increased translations (travel or straight-line motions), vibrations, or rotations of the atoms or molecules. When thermal energy is lost, the intensities of these motions decrease and the kinetic energy falls. The total of all possible kinds of energy present in a substance is called the internal energy (U), sometimes symbolized as E.

As a system undergoes a change, its internal energy can change, and energy can be transferred from the system to the surroundings, or from the surroundings to the system. Energy is transferred into a system when it absorbs heat (q) from the surroundings or when the surroundings do work (w) on the system. For example, energy is transferred into room-temperature metal wire if it is immersed in hot water (the wire absorbs heat from the water), or if you rapidly bend the wire back and forth (the wire becomes warmer because of the work done on it). Both processes increase the internal energy of the wire, which is reflected in an increase in the wire's temperature. Conversely, energy is transferred out of a system when heat is lost from the system, or when the system does work on the surroundings.

The relationship between internal energy, heat, and work can be represented by the equation:

$$\Delta U = q + w \tag{4.3.1}$$

as shown in Figure 4.3.1. This is one version of the first law of thermodynamics, and it shows that the internal energy of a system changes through heat flow into or out of the system (positive q is heat flow in; negative q is heat flow out) or work done on or by the system. The work, w, is positive if it is done on the system and negative if it is done by the system.

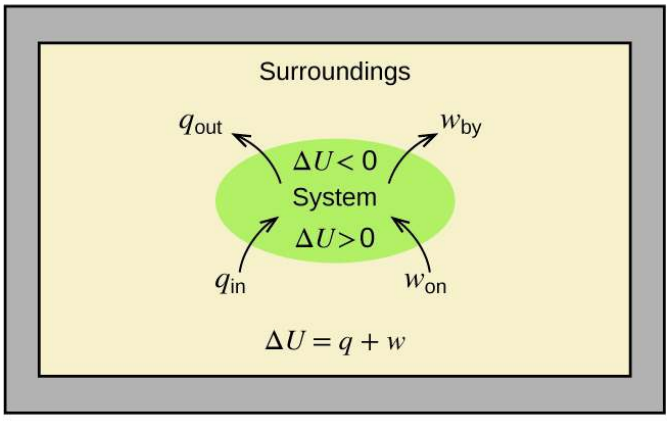


Figure 4.3.1: The internal energy, U, of a system can be changed by heat flow and work. If heat flows into the system, q_{in}, or work is done on the system, w_{on}, its internal energy increases, $\Delta U > 0$. If heat flows out of the system, q_{out}, or work is done by the system, w_{by}, its internal energy decreases, $\Delta U < 0$.

A type of work called expansion work (or pressure-volume work) occurs when a system pushes back the surroundings against a restraining pressure, or when the surroundings compress the system. An example of this occurs during the operation of an internal combustion engine. The reaction of gasoline and oxygen is exothermic. Some of this energy is given off as heat, and some does work pushing the piston in the cylinder. The substances involved in the reaction are the system, and the engine and the rest of the

universe are the surroundings. The system loses energy by both heating and doing work on the surroundings, and its internal energy decreases. (The engine is able to keep the car moving because this process is repeated many times per second while the engine is running.) We will consider how to determine the amount of work involved in a chemical or physical change in the chapter on thermodynamics.

As discussed, the relationship between internal energy, heat, and work can be represented as $\Delta U = q + w$. Internal energy is a type of quantity known as a state function (or state variable), whereas heat and work are not state functions. The value of a state function depends only on the state that a system is in, and not on how that state is reached. If a quantity is not a state function, then its value *does* depend on how the state is reached. An example of a state function is altitude or elevation. If you stand on the summit of Mt. Kilimanjaro, you are at an altitude of 5895 m, and it does not matter whether you hiked there or parachuted there. The distance you traveled to the top of Kilimanjaro, however, is not a state function. You could climb to the summit by a direct route or by a more roundabout, circuitous path (Figure 4.3.2). The distances traveled would differ (distance is not a state function) but the elevation reached would be the same (altitude is a state function).

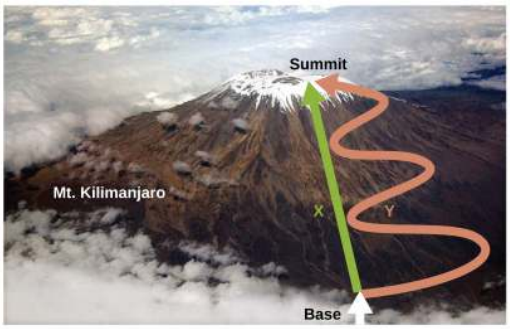


Figure 4.3.2: Paths X and Y represent two different routes to the summit of Mt. Kilimanjaro. Both have the same change in elevation (altitude or elevation on a mountain is a state function; it does not depend on path), but they have very different distances traveled (distance walked is not a state function; it depends on the path). (credit: modification of work by Paul Shaffner)

An aerial photo depicts a view of Mount Kilimanjaro. A straight, green arrow labeled X is drawn from the term “base,” written at the bottom of the mountain, to the term “Summit,” written at the top of the mountain. Another arrow labeled Y is draw from the base to the summit alongside the green arrow, but this arrow is pink and has three large S-shaped curves along its length.

Chemists ordinarily use a property known as enthalpy (H) to describe the thermodynamics of chemical and physical processes. Enthalpy is defined as the sum of a system’s internal energy (U) and the mathematical product of its pressure (P) and volume (V):

$$H = U + PV \tag{4.3.2}$$

Since it is derived from three state functions (U, P, and V), enthalpy is also a state function. Enthalpy values for specific substances cannot be measured directly; only enthalpy changes for chemical or physical processes can be determined. For processes that take place at constant pressure (a common condition for many chemical and physical changes), the enthalpy change (ΔH) is:

$$\Delta H = \Delta U + P\Delta V \tag{4.3.3}$$

The mathematical product $P\Delta V$ represents work (w), namely, expansion or pressure-volume work as noted. By their definitions, the arithmetic signs of ΔV and w will always be opposite:

$$P\Delta V = -w \tag{4.3.4}$$

Substituting Equation 4.3.4 and the definition of internal energy (Equation 4.3.1) into Equation 4.3.3 yields:

$$\Delta H = \Delta U + P\Delta V \tag{4.3.5}$$

$$= q_\text{p} + \cancel{w} - \cancel{w} \tag{4.3.6}$$

$$= q_\text{p} \tag{4.3.7}$$

where q_p is the heat of reaction under conditions of constant pressure.

And so, if a chemical or physical process is carried out at constant pressure with the only work done caused by expansion or contraction, then the heat flow (q_p) and enthalpy change (ΔH) for the process are equal.

The heat given off when you operate a Bunsen burner is equal to the enthalpy change of the methane combustion reaction that takes place, since it occurs at the essentially constant pressure of the atmosphere. On the other hand, the heat produced by a reaction measured in a bomb calorimeter is not equal to ΔH because the closed, constant-volume metal container prevents expansion work from occurring. Chemists usually perform experiments under normal atmospheric conditions, at constant external pressure with $q = \Delta H$, which makes enthalpy the most convenient choice for determining heat.

The following conventions apply when we use ΔH:

1. Chemists use a thermochemical equation to represent the changes in both matter and energy. In a thermochemical equation, the enthalpy change of a reaction is shown as a Δ*H* value following the equation for the reaction. This ΔH value indicates the amount of heat associated with the reaction involving the number of moles of reactants and products as shown in the chemical equation. For example, consider this equation:

$$\mathrm{H_2(g) + \tfrac{1}{2}O_2(g) \longrightarrow H_2O(l)} \quad \Delta H = -286\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.3.8}$$

   This equation indicates that when 1 mole of hydrogen gas and 12 mole of oxygen gas at some temperature and pressure change to 1 mole of liquid water at the same temperature and pressure, 286 kJ of heat are released to the surroundings. If the coefficients of the chemical equation are multiplied by some factor, the enthalpy change must be multiplied by that same factor (ΔH is an extensive property).

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{(two-fold increase in amounts)}\\
&\mathrm{2\,H_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{2\,H_2O}(l) \quad \Delta H = 2 \times (-286\ \mathrm{kJ}) = -572\ \mathrm{kJ}\\
&\text{(two-fold decrease in amounts)}\\
&\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \frac{1}{4}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \quad \Delta H = \frac{1}{2} \times (-286\ \mathrm{kJ}) = -143\ \mathrm{kJ}
\end{aligned}$$

2. The enthalpy change of a reaction depends on the physical state of the reactants and products of the reaction (whether we have gases, liquids, solids, or aqueous solutions), so these must be shown. For example, when 1 mole of hydrogen gas and 12 mole of oxygen gas change to 1 mole of liquid water at the same temperature and pressure, 286 kJ of heat are released. If gaseous water forms, only 242 kJ of heat are released.

$$\mathrm{H_2(g) + \tfrac{1}{2}O_2(g) \longrightarrow H_2O(g)} \quad \Delta H = -242\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.3.9}$$

3. A negative value of an enthalpy change, Δ*H*, indicates an exothermic reaction; a positive value of Δ*H* indicates an endothermic reaction. If the direction of a chemical equation is reversed, the arithmetic sign of its Δ*H* is changed (a process that is endothermic in one direction is exothermic in the opposite direction).

Example 4.3.1: Measurement of an Enthalpy Change

When 0.0500 mol of HCl(*aq*) reacts with 0.0500 mol of NaOH(*aq*) to form 0.0500 mol of NaCl(*aq*), 2.9 kJ of heat are produced. What is ΔH, the enthalpy change, per mole of acid reacting, for the acid-base reaction run under the conditions described ?

$$\mathrm{HCl(aq) + NaOH(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

Solution

For the reaction of 0.0500 mol acid (HCl), q = −2.9 kJ. This ratio

$$\frac{-2.9\ \mathrm{kJ}}{0.0500\ \mathrm{mol\ HCl}}$$

can be used as a conversion factor to find the heat produced when 1 mole of HCl reacts:

$$\Delta H = 1\ \ \mathrm{mol\ \cancel{HCl}} \times \frac{-2.9\ \mathrm{kJ}}{0.0500\ \ \mathrm{mol\ \cancel{HCl}}} = -58\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

The enthalpy change when 1 mole of HCl reacts is −58 kJ. Since that is the number of moles in the chemical equation, we write the thermochemical equation as:

$$\mathrm{HCl}_{(aq)} + \mathrm{NaOH}_{(aq)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{NaCl}_{(aq)} + \mathrm{H_2O}_{(l)} \quad \Delta H = -58 \text{ kJ}$$

Exercise 4.3.1

When 1.34 g Zn(s) reacts with 60.0 mL of 0.750 M HCl(aq), 3.14 kJ of heat are produced. Determine the enthalpy change per mole of zinc reacting for the reaction:

$$\mathrm{Zn}_{(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{HCl}_{(aq)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZnCl}_{(aq)} + \mathrm{H}_{2(g)}$$

Answer

ΔH = −153 kJ

Be sure to take both stoichiometry and limiting reactants into account when determining the Δ*H* for a chemical reaction.

Example 4.3.2: Another Example of the Measurement of an Enthalpy Change

A gummy bear contains 2.67 g sucrose, $\mathrm{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}}$. When it reacts with 7.19 g potassium chlorate, $\mathrm{KClO_3}$, 43.7 kJ of heat are produced. Determine the enthalpy change for the reaction

$$\mathrm{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}}(aq) + 8\,\mathrm{KClO_3}(aq) \longrightarrow 12\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 11\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 8\,\mathrm{KCl}(aq)$$

Solution

We have $2.67 \text{ g} \times \dfrac{1 \text{ mol}}{342.3 \text{ g}} = 0.00780 \text{ mol } \mathrm{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}}$ available, and

$7.19 \text{ g} \times \dfrac{1 \text{ mol}}{122.5 \text{ g}} = 0.0587 \text{ mol } \mathrm{KClO_3}$ available.

Since

$$0.0587 \text{ mol } \mathrm{KClO_3} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } \mathrm{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}}}{8 \text{ mol } \mathrm{KClO_3}} = 0.00734 \text{ mol } \mathrm{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}}$$

is needed, $\mathrm{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}}$ is the excess reactant and $\mathrm{KClO_3}$ is the limiting reactant.

The reaction uses 8 mol $\mathrm{KClO_3}$, and the conversion factor is $\dfrac{-43.7 \text{ kJ}}{0.0587 \text{ mol } \mathrm{KClO_3}}$, so we have $\Delta H = 8 \text{ mol} \times \dfrac{-43.7 \text{ kJ}}{0.0587 \text{ mol } \mathrm{KClO_3}} = -5960 \text{ kJ}$. The enthalpy change for this reaction is −5960 kJ, and the thermochemical equation is:

$$\mathrm{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}} + 8\,\mathrm{KClO_3} \longrightarrow 12\,\mathrm{CO_2} + 11\,\mathrm{H_2O} + 8\,\mathrm{KCl} \quad \Delta H = -5960 \text{ kJ}$$

Exercise 4.3.2

When 1.42 g of iron reacts with 1.80 g of chlorine, 3.22 g of $\mathrm{FeCl}_{2(s)}$ and 8.60 kJ of heat is produced. What is the enthalpy change for the reaction when 1 mole of $\mathrm{FeCl_2(s)}$ is produced?

Answer

ΔH = −338 kJ

Enthalpy changes are typically tabulated for reactions in which both the reactants and products are at the same conditions. A standard state is a commonly accepted set of conditions used as a reference point for the determination of properties under other different conditions. For chemists, the IUPAC standard state refers to materials under a pressure of 1 bar and solutions at 1 M, and **does not specify a temperature** (it used too). Many thermochemical tables list values with a standard state of 1 atm. Because the Δ*H* of a reaction changes very little with such small changes in pressure (1 bar = 0.987 atm), Δ*H* values (except for the most

precisely measured values) are essentially the same under both sets of standard conditions. We will include a superscripted "o" in the enthalpy change symbol to designate standard state. Since the usual (but not technically standard) temperature is 298.15 K, we will use a subscripted "298" to designate this temperature. Thus, the symbol (ΔH°_{298}) is used to indicate an enthalpy change for a process occurring under these conditions. (The symbol ΔH is used to indicate an enthalpy change for a reaction occurring under nonstandard conditions.)

The enthalpy changes for many types of chemical and physical processes are available in the reference literature, including those for combustion reactions, phase transitions, and formation reactions. As we discuss these quantities, it is important to pay attention to the *extensive* nature of enthalpy and enthalpy changes. Since the enthalpy change for a given reaction is proportional to the amounts of substances involved, it may be reported on that basis (i.e., as the ΔH for specific amounts of reactants). However, we often find it more useful to divide one extensive property (ΔH) by another (amount of substance), and report a per-amount *intensive* value of ΔH, often "normalized" to a per-mole basis. (Note that this is similar to determining the intensive property specific heat from the extensive property heat capacity, as seen previously.)

Enthalpy of Combustion

Standard enthalpy of combustion (ΔH°_C) is the enthalpy change when 1 mole of a substance burns (combines vigorously with oxygen) under standard state conditions; it is sometimes called "heat of combustion." For example, the enthalpy of combustion of ethanol, −1366.8 kJ/mol, is the amount of heat produced when one mole of ethanol undergoes complete combustion at 25 °C and 1 atmosphere pressure, yielding products also at 25 °C and 1 atm.

$$\mathrm{C_2H_5OH}(l) + 3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{CO_2} + 3\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -1366.8\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.3.10}$$

Enthalpies of combustion for many substances have been measured; a few of these are listed in Table 4.3.1. Many readily available substances with large enthalpies of combustion are used as fuels, including hydrogen, carbon (as coal or charcoal), and hydrocarbons (compounds containing only hydrogen and carbon), such as methane, propane, and the major components of gasoline.

Table 4.3.1: Standard Molar Enthalpies of Combustion

Substance	Combustion Reaction	Enthalpy of Combustion $\Delta H_c^\circ \left(\frac{\mathrm{kJ}}{\mathrm{mol}} \text{ at } 25^\circ\mathrm{C}\right)$
carbon	$\mathrm{C}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$	−393.5
hydrogen	$\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$	−285.8
magnesium	$\mathrm{Mg}(s) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{MgO}(s)$	−601.6
sulfur	$\mathrm{S}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{SO_2}(g)$	−296.8
carbon monoxide	$\mathrm{CO}(g) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$	−283.0
methane	$\mathrm{CH_4}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$	−890.8
acetylene	$\mathrm{C_2H_2}(g) + \frac{5}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$	−1301.1
ethanol	$\mathrm{C_2H_5OH}(l) + 3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$	−1366.8
methanol	$\mathrm{CH_3OH}(l) + \frac{3}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$	−726.1
isooctane	$\mathrm{C_8H_{18}}(l) + \frac{25}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 8\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 9\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$	−5461

Example 4.3.3: Using Enthalpy of Combustion

As Figure 4.3.3 suggests, the combustion of gasoline is a highly exothermic process. Let us determine the approximate amount of heat produced by burning 1.00 L of gasoline, assuming the enthalpy of combustion of gasoline is the same as that of isooctane, a common component of gasoline. The density of isooctane is 0.692 g/mL.



Figure 4.3.3: The combustion of gasoline is very exothermic. (credit: modification of work by “AlexEagle”/Flickr)

Solution

Starting with a known amount (1.00 L of isooctane), we can perform conversions between units until we arrive at the desired amount of heat or energy. The enthalpy of combustion of isooctane provides one of the necessary conversions. Table 4.3.1 gives this value as −5460 kJ per 1 mole of isooctane (C_8H_{18}).

Using these data,

$$1.00\ \cancel{\text{L C}_8\text{H}_{18}} \times \frac{1000\ \cancel{\text{mL C}_8\text{H}_{18}}}{1\ \cancel{\text{L C}_8\text{H}_{18}}} \times \frac{0.692\ \cancel{\text{g C}_8\text{H}_{18}}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mL C}_8\text{H}_{18}}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\text{mol C}_8\text{H}_{18}}}{114\ \cancel{\text{g C}_8\text{H}_{18}}} \times \frac{-5460\ \text{kJ}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol C}_8\text{H}_{18}}} = -3.31 \times 10^4\ \text{kJ}$$

The combustion of 1.00 L of isooctane produces 33,100 kJ of heat. (This amount of energy is enough to melt 99.2 kg, or about 218 lbs, of ice.)

Note: If you do this calculation one step at a time, you would find:

$$1.00\ \text{L C}_8\text{H}_{18} \longrightarrow 1.00 \times 10^3\ \text{mL C}_8\text{H}_{18}$$
$$1.00 \times 10^3\ \text{mL C}_8\text{H}_{18} \longrightarrow 692\ \text{g C}_8\text{H}_{18}$$
$$692\ \text{g C}_8\text{H}_{18} \longrightarrow 6.07\ \text{mol C}_8\text{H}_{18}$$
$$692\ \text{g C}_8\text{H}_{18} \longrightarrow -3.31 \times 10^4\ \text{kJ}$$

? Exercise 4.3.3

How much heat is produced by the combustion of 125 g of acetylene?

Answer

6.25×10^3 kJ

Emerging Algae-Based Energy Technologies (Biofuels)

As reserves of fossil fuels diminish and become more costly to extract, the search is ongoing for replacement fuel sources for the future. Among the most promising biofuels are those derived from algae (Figure 4.3.4). The species of algae used are nontoxic, biodegradable, and among the world’s fastest growing organisms. About 50% of algal weight is oil, which can be readily converted into fuel such as biodiesel. Algae can yield 26,000 gallons of biofuel per hectare—much more energy per acre than other crops. Some strains of algae can flourish in brackish water that is not usable for growing other crops. Algae can produce biodiesel, biogasoline, ethanol, butanol, methane, and even jet fuel.



Figure 4.3.4: (a) Tiny algal organisms can be (b) grown in large quantities and eventually (c) turned into a useful fuel such as biodiesel. (credit a: modification of work by Micah Sittig; credit b: modification of work by Robert Kerton; credit c: modification of work by John F. Williams)

According to the US Department of Energy, only 39,000 square kilometers (about 0.4% of the land mass of the US or less than $\frac{1}{7}$ of the area used to grow corn) can produce enough algal fuel to replace all the petroleum-based fuel used in the US. The cost of algal fuels is becoming more competitive—for instance, the US Air Force is producing jet fuel from algae at a total cost of under $5 per gallon. The process used to produce algal fuel is as follows: grow the algae (which use sunlight as their energy source and CO_2 as a raw material); harvest the algae; extract the fuel compounds (or precursor compounds); process as necessary (e.g., perform a transesterification reaction to make biodiesel); purify; and distribute (Figure 4.3.5).



Figure 4.3.5: Algae convert sunlight and carbon dioxide into oil that is harvested, extracted, purified, and transformed into a variety of renewable fuels.

Standard Enthalpy of Formation

A standard enthalpy of formation ΔH_f° is an enthalpy change for a reaction in which exactly 1 mole of a pure substance is formed from free elements in their most stable states under standard state conditions. These values are especially useful for computing or predicting enthalpy changes for chemical reactions that are impractical or dangerous to carry out, or for processes for which it is difficult to make measurements. If we have values for the appropriate standard enthalpies of formation, we can determine the enthalpy change for any reaction, which we will practice in the next section on Hess's law.

The standard enthalpy of formation of $CO_2(g)$ is −393.5 kJ/mol. This is the enthalpy change for the exothermic reaction:

$$\mathrm{C}(s) + \mathrm{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO}_2(g) \quad \Delta H_f^\circ = \Delta H_{298}^\circ = -393.5 \text{ kJ} \tag{4.3.11}$$

starting with the reactants at a pressure of 1 atm and 25 °C (with the carbon present as graphite, the most stable form of carbon under these conditions) and ending with one mole of CO_2, also at 1 atm and 25 °C. For nitrogen dioxide, $NO_{2(g)}$, ΔH_f° is 33.2 kJ/mol. This is the enthalpy change for the reaction:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{N}_2(g) + \mathrm{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NO}_2(g) \quad \Delta H_f^\circ = \Delta H_{298}^\circ = +33.2 \text{ kJ} \tag{4.3.12}$$

A reaction equation with $\frac{1}{2}$ mole of N_2 and 1 mole of O_2 is correct in this case because the standard enthalpy of formation always refers to 1 mole of product, $NO_2(g)$.

You will find a table of standard enthalpies of formation of many common substances in Tables T1 and T2. These values indicate that formation reactions range from highly exothermic (such as −2984 kJ/mol for the formation of P_4O_{10}) to strongly endothermic (such as +226.7 kJ/mol for the formation of acetylene, C_2H_2). By definition, the standard enthalpy of formation of an element in its most stable form is equal to zero under standard conditions, which is 1 atm for gases and 1 M for solutions.

Example 4.3.4: Evaluating an Enthalpy of Formation

Ozone, $O_3(g)$, forms from oxygen, $O_2(g)$, by an endothermic process. Ultraviolet radiation is the source of the energy that drives this reaction in the upper atmosphere. Assuming that both the reactants and products of the reaction are in their standard states, determine the standard enthalpy of formation, ΔH_f° of ozone from the following information:

$$3\,O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,O_3(g) \quad \Delta H_{298}^\circ = +286\ \text{kJ}$$

Solution ΔH_f° is the enthalpy change for the formation of one mole of a substance in its standard state from the elements in their standard states. Thus, ΔH_f° for $O_3(g)$ is the enthalpy change for the reaction:

$$\frac{3}{2}O_2(g) \longrightarrow O_3(g)$$

For the formation of 2 mol of $O_3(g)$, $\Delta H_{298}^\circ = +286$ kJ. This ratio, $\left(\dfrac{286\ \text{kJ}}{2\ \text{mol}\ O_3}\right)$, can be used as a conversion factor to find the heat produced when 1 mole of $O_3(g)$ is formed, which is the enthalpy of formation for $O_3(g)$:

$$\Delta H^\circ \text{ for } 1\ \text{ mole of } O_3(g) = 1\ \cancel{\text{mol } O_3} \times \frac{286\ \text{kJ}}{2\ \cancel{\text{mol } O_3}} = 143\ \text{kJ}$$

Therefore, $\Delta H_f^\circ[O_3(g)] = +143\ \text{kJ/mol}$.

Exercise 4.3.4

Hydrogen gas, H_2, reacts explosively with gaseous chlorine, Cl_2, to form hydrogen chloride, HCl(g). What is the enthalpy change for the reaction of 1 mole of $H_2(g)$ with 1 mole of $Cl_2(g)$ if both the reactants and products are at standard state conditions? The standard enthalpy of formation of HCl(g) is −92.3 kJ/mol.

Answer

For the reaction

$$H_2(g) + Cl_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,HCl(g) \quad \Delta H_{298}^\circ = -184.6\ \text{kJ}$$

Example 4.3.5: Writing Reaction Equations for ΔH_f°

Write the heat of formation reaction equations for:

a. $C_2H_5OH_{(l)}$
b. $Ca_3(PO_4)_{2(s)}$

Solution

Remembering that ΔH_f° reaction equations are for forming 1 mole of the compound from its constituent elements under standard conditions, we have:

a. $2\,C(s,\ \text{graphite}) + 3\,H_2(g) + \frac{1}{2}O_2(g) \longrightarrow C_2H_5OH(l)$
b. $3\,Ca(s) + \frac{1}{2}P_4(s) + 4\,O_2(g) \longrightarrow Ca_3(PO_4)_2(s)$

Note: The standard state of carbon is graphite, and phosphorus exists as P_4.

Exercise 4.3.5

Write the heat of formation reaction equations for:

a. $C_2H_5OC_2H_{5(l)}$
b. $Na_2CO_{3(s)}$

Answer a

$$4\,\mathrm{C}(s,\ \text{graphite}) + 5\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \tfrac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{C_2H_5OC_2H_5}(l)\ ;$$

Answer b

$$2\,\mathrm{Na}(s) + \mathrm{C}(s,\ \text{graphite}) + \frac{3}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Na_2CO_3}(s)$$

Hess's Law

There are two ways to determine the amount of heat involved in a chemical change: measure it experimentally, or calculate it from other experimentally determined enthalpy changes. Some reactions are difficult, if not impossible, to investigate and make accurate measurements for experimentally. And even when a reaction is not hard to perform or measure, it is convenient to be able to determine the heat involved in a reaction without having to perform an experiment.

This type of calculation usually involves the use of Hess's law, which states: If a process can be written as the sum of several stepwise processes, the enthalpy change of the total process equals the sum of the enthalpy changes of the various steps. Hess's law is valid because enthalpy is a state function: Enthalpy changes depend only on where a chemical process starts and ends, but not on the path it takes from start to finish. For example, we can think of the reaction of carbon with oxygen to form carbon dioxide as occurring either directly or by a two-step process. The direct process is written:

$$\mathrm{C}_{(s)} + \mathrm{O}_{2(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO}_{2(g)} \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -394\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.3.13}$$

In the two-step process, first carbon monoxide is formed:

$$\mathrm{C}_{(s)} + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O}_{2(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO}_{(g)} \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -111\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.3.14}$$

Then, carbon monoxide reacts further to form carbon dioxide:

$$\mathrm{CO}(g) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -283\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.3.15}$$

The equation describing the overall reaction is the sum of these two chemical changes:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{Step 1: } \mathrm{C}(s) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO}(g)\\
&\text{Step 2: } \mathrm{CO}(g) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g)\\
&\text{Sum: } \mathrm{C}(s) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) + \mathrm{CO}(g) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g)
\end{aligned}$$

Because the CO produced in Step 1 is consumed in Step 2, the net change is:

$$\mathrm{C}_{(s)} + \mathrm{O}_{2(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO}_{2(g)} \tag{4.3.16}$$

According to Hess's law, the enthalpy change of the reaction will equal the sum of the enthalpy changes of the steps. We can apply the data from the experimental enthalpies of combustion in Table 4.3.1 to find the enthalpy change of the entire reaction from its two steps:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{C}(s) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO}(g) && \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -111\ \mathrm{kJ}\\
&\mathrm{CO}(g) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) && \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -283\ \mathrm{kJ}\\
&\overline{\mathrm{C}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g)} && \overline{\Delta H^\circ_{298} = -394\ \mathrm{kJ}}
\end{aligned}$$

The result is shown in Figure 4.3.6. We see that ΔH of the overall reaction is the same whether it occurs in one step or two. This finding (overall ΔH for the reaction = sum of Δ*H* values for reaction "steps" in the overall reaction) is true in general for chemical and physical processes.

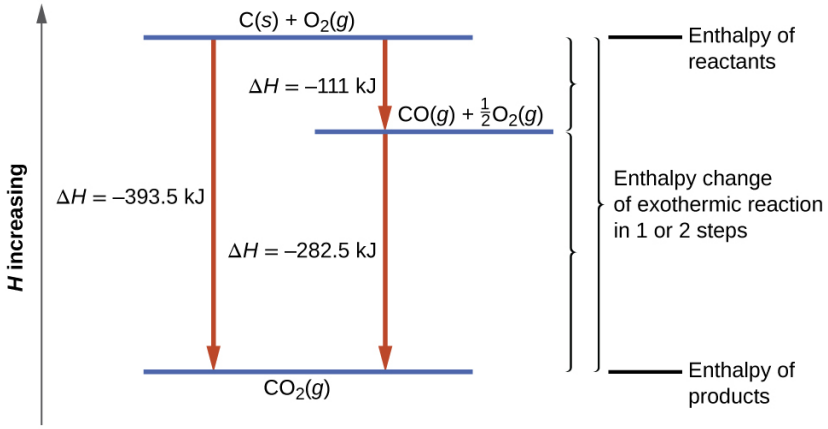


Figure 4.3.6: The formation of CO_2(g) from its elements can be thought of as occurring in two steps, which sum to the overall reaction, as described by Hess's law. The horizontal blue lines represent enthalpies. For an exothermic process, the products are at lower enthalpy than are the reactants.

Before we further practice using Hess's law, let us recall two important features of ΔH.

1. ΔH is directly proportional to the quantities of reactants or products. For example, the enthalpy change for the reaction forming 1 mole of $NO_2(g)$ is +33.2 kJ:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{N_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NO_2}(g) \quad \Delta H = +33.2\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.3.17}$$

When 2 moles of NO_2 (twice as much) are formed, the ΔH will be twice as large:

$$\mathrm{N_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NO_2}(g) \quad \Delta H = +66.4\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.3.18}$$

In general, if we multiply or divide an equation by a number, then the enthalpy change should also be multiplied or divided by the same number.

2. ΔH for a reaction in one direction is equal in magnitude and opposite in sign to ΔH for the reaction in the reverse direction. For example, given that:

$$\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{HCl}(g) \quad \Delta H = -184.6\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.3.19}$$

Then, for the "reverse" reaction, the enthalpy change is also "reversed":

$$2\,\mathrm{HCl}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \quad \Delta H = +184.6\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.3.20}$$

Example 4.3.6: Stepwise Calculation of ΔH_f°

Using Hess's Law Determine the enthalpy of formation, ΔH_f°, of $FeCl_3$(s) from the enthalpy changes of the following two-step process that occurs under standard state conditions:

$$\mathrm{Fe}(s) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{FeCl_2}(s) \quad \Delta H^\circ = -341.8\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

$$\mathrm{FeCl_2}(s) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{FeCl_3}(s) \quad \Delta H^\circ = -57.7\ kJ$$

Solution

We are trying to find the standard enthalpy of formation of FeCl3(s), which is equal to ΔH° for the reaction:

$$\mathrm{Fe}(s) + \frac{3}{2}\mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{FeCl_3}(s) \quad \Delta H_f^\circ = ?$$

Looking at the reactions, we see that the reaction for which we want to find $\Delta H°$ is the sum of the two reactions with known ΔH values, so we must sum their ΔHs:

$$\mathrm{Fe}(s) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{FeCl_2}(s) \qquad \Delta H^\circ = -341.8\ \mathrm{kJ}$$
$$\mathrm{FeCl_2}(s) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{FeCl_3}(s) \qquad \Delta H^\circ = -57.7\ \mathrm{kJ}$$
$$\mathrm{Fe}(s) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{FeCl_3}(s) \qquad \Delta H^\circ = -399.5\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

The enthalpy of formation, $\Delta H_\mathrm{f}^\circ$, of $FeCl_3$(s) is −399.5 kJ/mol.

Exercise 4.3.6

Calculate ΔH for the process:

$$\mathrm{N_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NO_2}(g)$$

from the following information:

$$\mathrm{N_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NO}(g) \qquad \Delta H = 180.5\ \mathrm{kJ}$$
$$\mathrm{NO}(g) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NO_2}(g) \qquad \Delta H = -57.06\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Answer

66.4 kJ

Here is a less straightforward example that illustrates the thought process involved in solving many Hess's law problems. It shows how we can find many standard enthalpies of formation (and other values of Δ*H*) if they are difficult to determine experimentally.

Example 4.3.7: A More Challenging Problem

Using Hess's Law Chlorine monofluoride can react with fluorine to form chlorine trifluoride:

$$\text{(i)}\ \mathrm{ClF}(g) + \mathrm{F_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ClF_3}(g) \qquad \Delta H^\circ = ?$$

Use the reactions here to determine the ΔH° for reaction (i):

$$\text{(ii)}\ 2\,\mathrm{OF_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{O_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{F_2}(g) \qquad \Delta H^\circ_{(ii)} = -49.4\ \mathrm{kJ}$$
$$\text{(iii)}\ 2\,\mathrm{ClF}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cl_2O}(g) + \mathrm{OF_2}(g) \qquad \Delta H^\circ_{(iii)} = +205.6\ \mathrm{kJ}$$
$$\text{(iv)}\ \mathrm{ClF_3}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \tfrac{1}{2}\mathrm{Cl_2O}(g) + \frac{3}{2}\mathrm{OF_2}(g) \qquad \Delta H^\circ_{(iv)} = +266.7\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Solution

Our goal is to manipulate and combine reactions (ii), (iii), and (iv) such that they add up to reaction (i). Going from left to right in (i), we first see that $\mathrm{ClF}_{(g)}$ is needed as a reactant. This can be obtained by multiplying reaction (iii) by $\frac{1}{2}$, which means that the ΔH° change is also multiplied by $\frac{1}{2}$:

$$\mathrm{ClF}(g) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Cl_2O}(g) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{OF_2}(g) \qquad \Delta H^\circ = \frac{1}{2}(205.6) = +102.8\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Next, we see that F_2 is also needed as a reactant. To get this, reverse and halve reaction (ii), which means that the ΔH° changes sign and is halved:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) + \mathrm{F_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{OF_2}(g) \qquad \Delta H^\circ = +24.7\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

To get ClF_3 as a product, reverse (iv), changing the sign of ΔH°:

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Cl_2O}(g) + \frac{3}{2}\mathrm{OF_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ClF_3}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \qquad \Delta H^\circ = -266.7\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Now check to make sure that these reactions add up to the reaction we want:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{ClF}(g)+\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g)\longrightarrow\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Cl_2O}(g)+\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{OF_2}(g) && \Delta H^\circ=+102.8\ \mathrm{kJ}\\
&\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g)+\mathrm{F_2}(g)\longrightarrow\mathrm{OF_2}(g) && \Delta H^\circ=+24.7\ \mathrm{kJ}\\
&\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Cl_2O}(g)+\frac{3}{2}\mathrm{OF_2}(g)\longrightarrow\mathrm{ClF_3}(g)+\mathrm{O_2}(g) && \Delta H^\circ=-266.7\ \mathrm{kJ}\\
&\overline{\mathrm{ClF}(g)+\mathrm{F_2}\longrightarrow\mathrm{ClF_3}(g)} && \overline{\Delta H^\circ=-139.2\ \mathrm{kJ}}
\end{aligned}$$

Reactants $\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}$ and $\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}$ cancel out product $\mathrm{O_2}$; product $\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Cl_2O}$ cancels reactant $\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Cl_2O}$; and reactant $\frac{3}{2}\mathrm{OF_2}$ is cancelled by products $\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{OF_2}$ and $\mathrm{OF_2}$. This leaves only reactants ClF(g) and $\mathrm{F_2}$(g) and product $\mathrm{ClF_3}$(g), which are what we want. Since summing these three modified reactions yields the reaction of interest, summing the three modified ΔH° values will give the desired ΔH°:

$$\Delta H^\circ=(+102.8\ \mathrm{kJ})+(24.7\ \mathrm{kJ})+(-266.7\ \mathrm{kJ})=-139.2\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Exercise 4.3.7

Aluminum chloride can be formed from its elements:

$$\text{(i) } 2\ \mathrm{Al}(s)+3\ \mathrm{Cl_2}(g)\longrightarrow 2\ \mathrm{AlCl_3}(s)\quad \Delta H^\circ=?$$

Use the reactions here to determine the ΔH° for reaction (i):

$$\text{(ii) } \mathrm{HCl}(g)\longrightarrow\mathrm{HCl}(aq)\quad \Delta H^\circ_{(ii)}=-74.8\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

$$\text{(iii) } \mathrm{H_2}(g)+\mathrm{Cl_2}(g)\longrightarrow 2\ \mathrm{HCl}(g)\quad \Delta H^\circ_{(iii)}=-185\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

$$\text{(iv) } \mathrm{AlCl_3}(aq)\longrightarrow\mathrm{AlCl_3}(s)\quad \Delta H^\circ_{(iv)}=+323\ \mathrm{kJ/mol}$$

$$\text{(v) } 2\ \mathrm{Al}(s)+6\ \mathrm{HCl}(aq)\longrightarrow 2\ \mathrm{AlCl_3}(aq)+3\ \mathrm{H_2}(g)\quad \Delta H^\circ_{(v)}=-1049\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Answer

−1407 kJ

We also can use Hess's law to determine the enthalpy change of any reaction if the corresponding enthalpies of formation of the reactants and products are available. The stepwise reactions we consider are: (i) decompositions of the reactants into their component elements (for which the enthalpy changes are proportional to the negative of the enthalpies of formation of the reactants), followed by (ii) re-combinations of the elements to give the products (with the enthalpy changes proportional to the enthalpies of formation of the products). The standard enthalpy change of the overall reaction is therefore equal to: (ii) the sum of the standard enthalpies of formation of all the products plus (i) the sum of the negatives of the standard enthalpies of formation of the reactants. This is usually rearranged slightly to be written as follows, with $\sum$ representing "the sum of" and *n* standing for the stoichiometric coefficients:

$$\Delta H^\circ_{\text{reaction}}=\sum n\times\Delta H^\circ_{\text{f}}(\text{products})-\sum n\times\Delta H^\circ_{\text{f}}(\text{reactants}) \tag{4.3.21}$$

The following example shows in detail why this equation is valid, and how to use it to calculate the enthalpy change for a reaction of interest.

Example 4.3.8: Using Hess's Law

What is the standard enthalpy change for the reaction:

$$3\ \mathrm{NO_2}(g)+\mathrm{H_2O}(l)\longrightarrow 2\ \mathrm{HNO_3}(aq)+\mathrm{NO}(g)\quad \Delta H^\circ=?$$

Solution 1: Using the Equation

Alternatively, we could use the special form of Hess's law given previously:

$$\Delta H^\circ_{\text{reaction}}=\sum n\times\Delta H^\circ_{\text{f}}(\text{products})-\sum n\times\Delta H^\circ_{\text{f}}(\text{reactants})$$

$$= \left[2 \text{ mol } \cancel{\text{HNO}_3} \times \frac{-207.4 \text{ kJ}}{\text{mol } \cancel{\text{HNO}_3 \text{ (aq)}}} + 1 \text{ mol } \cancel{\text{NO (g)}} \times \frac{+90.2 \text{ kJ}}{\text{mol } \cancel{\text{NO (g)}}}\right]$$

$$- \left[3 \text{ mol } \cancel{\text{NO}_2 \text{ (g)}} \times \frac{+33.2 \text{ kJ}}{\text{mol } \cancel{\text{NO}_2 \text{ (g)}}} + 1 \text{ mol } \cancel{\text{H}_2\text{O (l)}} \times \frac{-285.8 \text{ kJ}}{\text{mol } \cancel{\text{H}_2\text{O (l)}}}\right]$$

$$= 2(-207.4 \text{ kJ}) + 1(+90.2 \text{ kJ}) - 3(+33.2 \text{ kJ}) - 1(-285.8 \text{ kJ})$$

$$= -138.4 \text{ kJ}$$

Solution 2: Supporting Why the General Equation Is Valid

We can write this reaction as the sum of the decompositions of $3NO_2(g)$ and $1H_2O(l)$ into their constituent elements, and the formation of 2 $HNO_3(aq)$ and 1 $NO(g)$ from their constituent elements. Writing out these reactions, and noting their relationships to the ΔH_f° values for these compounds (from Tables T1 and T2), we have:

$$3\,\text{NO}_2(g) \longrightarrow \frac{3}{2}\text{N}_2(g) + 3\text{O}_2(g) \quad \Delta H_1^\circ = -99.6 \text{ kJ}$$

$$\text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \longrightarrow \text{H}_2(g) + \frac{1}{2}\text{O}_2(g) \quad \Delta H_2^\circ = +285.8 \text{ kJ } [-1 \times \Delta H_f^\circ(\text{H}_2\text{O})]$$

$$\text{H}_2(g) + \text{N}_2(g) + 3\text{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\text{HNO}_3(aq) \quad \Delta H_3^\circ = -414.8\ kJ\ [2 \times \Delta H_f^\circ(\text{HNO}_3)]$$

$$\frac{1}{2}\text{N}_2(g) + \frac{1}{2}\text{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow \text{NO}(g) \quad \Delta H_4^\circ = +90.2 \text{ kJ } [1 \times (\text{NO})]$$

Summing these reaction equations gives the reaction we are interested in:

$$3\,\text{NO}_2(g) + \text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \longrightarrow 2\,\text{HNO}_3(aq) + \text{NO}(g)$$

Summing their enthalpy changes gives the value we want to determine:

$$\Delta H_{\text{rxn}}^\circ = \Delta H_1^\circ + \Delta H_2^\circ + \Delta H_3^\circ + \Delta H_4^\circ = (-99.6 \text{ kJ}) + (+285.8 \text{ kJ}) + (-414.8 \text{ kJ}) + (+90.2 \text{ kJ})$$
$$= -138.4 \text{ kJ}$$

So the standard enthalpy change for this reaction is $\Delta H° = -138.4$ kJ.

Note that this result was obtained by:

1. multiplying the ΔH_f° of each product by its stoichiometric coefficient and summing those values,
2. multiplying the ΔH_f° of each reactant by its stoichiometric coefficient and summing those values, and then
3. subtracting the result found in step 2 from the result found in step 1.

This is also the procedure in using the general equation, as shown.

? Exercise 4.3.8

Calculate the heat of combustion of 1 mole of ethanol, $C_2H_5OH(l)$, when $H_2O(l)$ and $CO_2(g)$ are formed. Use the following enthalpies of formation: $C_2H_5OH(l)$, −278 kJ/mol; $H_2O(l)$, −286 kJ/mol; and $CO_2(g)$, −394 kJ/mol.

Answer

−1368 kJ/mol

Summary

If a chemical change is carried out at constant pressure and the only work done is caused by expansion or contraction, q for the change is called the enthalpy change with the symbol ΔH, or ΔH_{298}° for reactions occurring under standard state conditions. The value of ΔH for a reaction in one direction is equal in magnitude, but opposite in sign, to ΔH for the reaction in the opposite direction, and ΔH is directly proportional to the quantity of reactants and products. Examples of enthalpy changes include enthalpy of combustion, enthalpy of fusion, enthalpy of vaporization, and standard enthalpy of formation. The standard enthalpy of formation, ΔH_f°, is the enthalpy change accompanying the formation of 1 mole of a substance from the elements in their most

stable states at 1 bar (standard state). Many of the processes are carried out at 298.15 K. If the enthalpies of formation are available for the reactants and products of a reaction, the enthalpy change can be calculated using Hess's law: If a process can be written as the sum of several stepwise processes, the enthalpy change of the total process equals the sum of the enthalpy changes of the various steps.

Key Equations

- $\Delta U = q + w$
- $\Delta H^\circ_{\text{reaction}} = \sum n \times \Delta H^\circ_{\text{f}}(\text{products}) - \sum n \times \Delta H^\circ_{\text{f}}(\text{reactants})$

Footnotes

1. 1 For more on algal fuel, see www.theguardian.com/environme...n-fuel-problem.

Glossary

chemical thermodynamics
: area of science that deals with the relationships between heat, work, and all forms of energy associated with chemical and physical processes

enthalpy (*H*)
: sum of a system's internal energy and the mathematical product of its pressure and volume

enthalpy change (ΔH)
: heat released or absorbed by a system under constant pressure during a chemical or physical process

expansion work (pressure-volume work)
: work done as a system expands or contracts against external pressure

first law of thermodynamics
: internal energy of a system changes due to heat flow in or out of the system or work done on or by the system

Hess's law
: if a process can be represented as the sum of several steps, the enthalpy change of the process equals the sum of the enthalpy changes of the steps

hydrocarbon
: compound composed only of hydrogen and carbon; the major component of fossil fuels

internal energy (*U*)
: total of all possible kinds of energy present in a substance or substances

standard enthalpy of combustion ($\Delta H^\circ_{\text{c}}$)
: heat released when one mole of a compound undergoes complete combustion under standard conditions

standard enthalpy of formation ($\Delta H^\circ_{\text{f}}$)
: enthalpy change of a chemical reaction in which 1 mole of a pure substance is formed from its elements in their most stable states under standard state conditions

standard state
: set of physical conditions as accepted as common reference conditions for reporting thermodynamic properties; 1 bar of pressure, and solutions at 1 molar concentrations, usually at a temperature of 298.15 K

state function
: property depending only on the state of a system, and not the path taken to reach that state

This page titled 4.3: Enthalpy is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **5.4: Enthalpy** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.4: Thermochemistry (Exercises)

5.1: Energy Basics

Q5.1.1

A burning match and a bonfire may have the same temperature, yet you would not sit around a burning match on a fall evening to stay warm. Why not?

S5.1.1

The temperature of 1 gram of burning wood is approximately the same for both a match and a bonfire. This is an intensive property and depends on the material (wood). However, the overall amount of produced heat depends on the amount of material; this is an extensive property. The amount of wood in a bonfire is much greater than that in a match; the total amount of produced heat is also much greater, which is why we can sit around a bonfire to stay warm, but a match would not provide enough heat to keep us from getting cold.

Q5.1.2

Prepare a table identifying several energy transitions that take place during the typical operation of an automobile.

Q5.1.3

Explain the difference between heat capacity and specific heat of a substance.

S5.1.3

Heat capacity refers to the heat required to raise the temperature of the mass of the substance 1 degree; specific heat refers to the heat required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of the substance 1 degree. Thus, heat capacity is an extensive property, and specific heat is an intensive one.

Q5.1.4

Calculate the heat capacity, in joules and in calories per degree, of the following:

a. 28.4 g of water
b. 1.00 oz of lead

Q5.1.5

Calculate the heat capacity, in joules and in calories per degree, of the following:

a. 45.8 g of nitrogen gas
b. 1.00 pound of aluminum metal

S5.1.5

a. 47.6 J/°C; 11.38 cal $°C^{-1}$;
b. 407 J/°C; 97.3 cal $°C^{-1}$

Q5.1.6

How much heat, in joules and in calories, must be added to a 75.0–g iron block with a specific heat of 0.449 J/g °C to increase its temperature from 25 °C to its melting temperature of 1535 °C?

S5.1.6

$q = mC\Delta^{\circ}T$

$q = (75.0g) \times (\frac{0.449\ J}{g^{\circ}C}) \times (1,510^{\circ}K) = 50,800J$

50,800J ; 12,200cal

Q5.1.7

How much heat, in joules and in calories, is required to heat a 28.4-g (1-oz) ice cube from −23.0 °C to −1.0 °C?

S5.1.7

1310 J; 313 cal

Q5.1.8

How much would the temperature of 275 g of water increase if 36.5 kJ of heat were added?

S5.1.8

ΔT° = 31.7° C

Q5.1.9

If 14.5 kJ of heat were added to 485 g of liquid water, how much would its temperature increase?

S5.1.9

7.15 °C

Q5.1.10

A piece of unknown substance weighs 44.7 g and requires 2110 J to increase its temperature from 23.2 °C to 89.6 °C.

a. What is the specific heat of the substance?
b. If it is one of the substances found in Table, what is its likely identity?

S5.1.10

a.) Solve for the specific heat C and compare the values with the chart

$q = mC\Delta^{\circ}T$

$2110J = (44.7\ g)(C)(66.4^{\circ}C)$

$$C = \frac{2110\ J}{2970\ g^{\circ}C}$$

$$C = \frac{0.711\ J}{g^{\circ}C}$$

b.) Silicon

Q5.1.11

A piece of unknown solid substance weighs 437.2 g, and requires 8460 J to increase its temperature from 19.3 °C to 68.9 °C.

a. What is the specific heat of the substance?
b. If it is one of the substances found in Table, what is its likely identity?

S5.1.11

a. 0.390 J/g °C;
b. Copper is a likely candidate.

Q5.1.12

An aluminum kettle weighs 1.05 kg.

a. What is the heat capacity of the kettle?
b. How much heat is required to increase the temperature of this kettle from 23.0 °C to 99.0 °C?
c. How much heat is required to heat this kettle from 23.0 °C to 99.0 °C if it contains 1.25 L of water (density of 0.997 g/mL and a specific heat of 4.184 J/g °C)?

Q5.1.13

Most people find waterbeds uncomfortable unless the water temperature is maintained at about 85 °F. Unless it is heated, a waterbed that contains 892 L of water cools from 85 °F to 72 °F in 24 hours. Estimate the amount of electrical energy required over 24 hours, in kWh, to keep the bed from cooling. Note that 1 kilowatt-hour (kWh) = 3.6×10^6 J, and assume that the density of water is 1.0 g/mL (independent of temperature). What other assumptions did you make? How did they affect your calculated result (i.e., were they likely to yield “positive” or “negative” errors)?

S5.1.13

We assume that the density of water is 1.0 g/cm^3(1 g/mL) and that it takes as much energy to keep the water at 85 °F as to heat it from 72 °F to 85 °F. We also assume that only the water is going to be heated. Energy required = 7.47 kWh

5.2: Calorimetry

Q5.2.1

A 500-mL bottle of water at room temperature and a 2-L bottle of water at the same temperature were placed in a refrigerator. After 30 minutes, the 500-mL bottle of water had cooled to the temperature of the refrigerator. An hour later, the 2-L of water had cooled to the same temperature. When asked which sample of water lost the most heat, one student replied that both bottles lost the same amount of heat because they started at the same temperature and finished at the same temperature. A second student thought that the 2-L bottle of water lost more heat because there was more water. A third student believed that the 500-mL bottle of water lost more heat because it cooled more quickly. A fourth student thought that it was not possible to tell because we do not know the initial temperature and the final temperature of the water. Indicate which of these answers is correct and describe the error in each of the other answers.

Q5.2.2

Would the amount of heat measured for the reaction in Example be greater, lesser, or remain the same if we used a calorimeter that was a poorer insulator than a coffee cup calorimeter? Explain your answer.

S5.2.2

lesser; more heat would be lost to the coffee cup and the environment and so ΔT for the water would be lesser and the calculated q would be lesser

Q5.2.3

Would the amount of heat absorbed by the dissolution in Example appear greater, lesser, or remain the same if the experimenter used a calorimeter that was a poorer insulator than a coffee cup calorimeter? Explain your answer.

Q5.2.4

Would the amount of heat absorbed by the dissolution in Example appear greater, lesser, or remain the same if the heat capacity of the calorimeter were taken into account? Explain your answer.

S5.2.4

greater, since taking the calorimeter’s heat capacity into account will compensate for the thermal energy transferred to the solution from the calorimeter; this approach includes the calorimeter itself, along with the solution, as “surroundings”: $q_{rxn} = -(q_{solution} + q_{calorimeter})$; since both $q_{solution}$ and $q_{calorimeter}$ are negative, including the latter term (q_{rxn}) will yield a greater value for the heat of the dissolution

Q5.2.5

How many milliliters of water at 23 °C with a density of 1.00 g/mL must be mixed with 180 mL (about 6 oz) of coffee at 95 °C so that the resulting combination will have a temperature of 60 °C? Assume that coffee and water have the same density and the same specific heat.

Q5.2.6

How much will the temperature of a cup (180 g) of coffee at 95 °C be reduced when a 45 g silver spoon (specific heat 0.24 J/g °C) at 25 °C is placed in the coffee and the two are allowed to reach the same temperature? Assume that the coffee has the same density

and specific heat as water.

S5.2.6

The temperature of the coffee will drop 1 degree.

Q5.2.7

A 45-g aluminum spoon (specific heat 0.88 J/g °C) at 24 °C is placed in 180 mL (180 g) of coffee at 85 °C and the temperature of the two become equal.

a. What is the final temperature when the two become equal? Assume that coffee has the same specific heat as water.
b. The first time a student solved this problem she got an answer of 88 °C. Explain why this is clearly an incorrect answer.

Q5.2.8

The temperature of the cooling water as it leaves the hot engine of an automobile is 240 °F. After it passes through the radiator it has a temperature of 175 °F. Calculate the amount of heat transferred from the engine to the surroundings by one gallon of water with a specific heat of 4.184 J/g °C.

S5.2.8

$5.7 \times 10^2\ kJ$

Q5.2.8

A 70.0-g piece of metal at 80.0 °C is placed in 100 g of water at 22.0 °C contained in a calorimeter like that shown in Figure. The metal and water come to the same temperature at 24.6 °C. How much heat did the metal give up to the water? What is the specific heat of the metal?

Q5.2.9

If a reaction produces 1.506 kJ of heat, which is trapped in 30.0 g of water initially at 26.5 °C in a calorimeter like that in Figure, what is the resulting temperature of the water?

S5.2.9

38.5 °C

Q5.2.10

A 0.500-g sample of KCl is added to 50.0 g of water in a calorimeter (Figure). If the temperature decreases by 1.05 °C, what is the approximate amount of heat involved in the dissolution of the KCl, assuming the heat capacity of the resulting solution is 4.18 J/g °C? Is the reaction exothermic or endothermic?

Q5.2.11

Dissolving 3.0 g of $CaCl_2(s)$ in 150.0 g of water in a calorimeter (Figure) at 22.4 °C causes the temperature to rise to 25.8 °C. What is the approximate amount of heat involved in the dissolution, assuming the heat capacity of the resulting solution is 4.18 J/g °C? Is the reaction exothermic or endothermic?

S5.2.11

2.2 kJ; The heat produced shows that the reaction is exothermic.

Q5.2.12

When 50.0 g of 0.200 M NaCl(*aq*) at 24.1 °C is added to 100.0 g of 0.100 M $AgNO_3(aq)$ at 24.1 °C in a calorimeter, the temperature increases to 25.2 °C as AgCl(*s*) forms. Assuming the specific heat of the solution and products is 4.20 J/g °C, calculate the approximate amount of heat in joules produced.

Q5.2.13

The addition of 3.15 g of $Ba(OH)_2 \cdot 8H_2O$ to a solution of 1.52 g of NH_4SCN in 100 g of water in a calorimeter caused the temperature to fall by 3.1 °C. Assuming the specific heat of the solution and products is 4.20 J/g °C, calculate the approximate amount of heat absorbed by the reaction, which can be represented by the following equation:

$$Ba(OH)_2 \cdot 8H_2O_{(s)} + 2NH_4SCN_{(aq)} \rightarrow Ba(SCN)_{2(aq)} + 2NH_{3(aq)} + 10H_2O_{(l)} \quad (4.4.1)$$

S5.2.13

1.4 kJ

Q5.2.14

The reaction of 50 mL of acid and 50 mL of base described in Example increased the temperature of the solution by 6.9 degrees. How much would the temperature have increased if 100 mL of acid and 100 mL of base had been used in the same calorimeter starting at the same temperature of 22.0 °C? Explain your answer.

Q5.2.15

If the 3.21 g of NH_4NO_3 in Example were dissolved in 100.0 g of water under the same conditions, how much would the temperature change? Explain your answer.

S5.2.15

22.6. Since the mass and the heat capacity of the solution is approximately equal to that of the water, the two-fold increase in the amount of water leads to a two-fold decrease of the temperature change.

Q5.2.16

When 1.0 g of fructose, $C_6H_{12}O_6(s)$, a sugar commonly found in fruits, is burned in oxygen in a bomb calorimeter, the temperature of the calorimeter increases by 1.58 °C. If the heat capacity of the calorimeter and its contents is 9.90 kJ/°C, what is q for this combustion?

Q5.2.17

When a 0.740-g sample of trinitrotoluene (TNT), $C_7H_5N_2O_6$, is burned in a bomb calorimeter, the temperature increases from 23.4 °C to 26.9 °C. The heat capacity of the calorimeter is 534 J/°C, and it contains 675 mL of water. How much heat was produced by the combustion of the TNT sample?

S5.2.17

11.7 kJ

Q5.2.18

One method of generating electricity is by burning coal to heat water, which produces steam that drives an electric generator. To determine the rate at which coal is to be fed into the burner in this type of plant, the heat of combustion per ton of coal must be determined using a bomb calorimeter. When 1.00 g of coal is burned in a bomb calorimeter, the temperature increases by 1.48 °C. If the heat capacity of the calorimeter is 21.6 kJ/°C, determine the heat produced by combustion of a ton of coal (2.000×10^3 pounds).

Q5.2.19

The amount of fat recommended for someone with a daily diet of 2000 Calories is 65 g. What percent of the calories in this diet would be supplied by this amount of fat if the average number of Calories for fat is 9.1 Calories/g?

S5.2.19

30%

Q5.2.20

A teaspoon of the carbohydrate sucrose (common sugar) contains 16 Calories (16 kcal). What is the mass of one teaspoon of sucrose if the average number of Calories for carbohydrates is 4.1 Calories/g?

Q5.2.21

What is the maximum mass of carbohydrate in a 6-oz serving of diet soda that contains less than 1 Calorie per can if the average number of Calories for carbohydrates is 4.1 Calories/g?

S5.2.21

0.24 g

Q5.2.22

A pint of premium ice cream can contain 1100 Calories. What mass of fat, in grams and pounds, must be produced in the body to store an extra 1.1×10^3 Calories if the average number of Calories for fat is 9.1 Calories/g?

Q5.2.23

A serving of a breakfast cereal contains 3 g of protein, 18 g of carbohydrates, and 6 g of fat. What is the Calorie content of a serving of this cereal if the average number of Calories for fat is 9.1 Calories/g, for carbohydrates is 4.1 Calories/g, and for protein is 4.1 Calories/g?

S5.2.23

1.4×10^2 Calories

Q5.2.24

Which is the least expensive source of energy in kilojoules per dollar: a box of breakfast cereal that weighs 32 ounces and costs $4.23, or a liter of isooctane (density, 0.6919 g/mL) that costs $0.45? Compare the nutritional value of the cereal with the heat produced by combustion of the isooctane under standard conditions. A 1.0-ounce serving of the cereal provides 130 Calories.

5.3: Enthalpy

Q5.3.1

Explain how the heat measured in [link] differs from the enthalpy change for the exothermic reaction described by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{HCl}(aq) + \mathrm{NaOH}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NaCl}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \tag{4.4.2}$$

The enthalpy change of the indicated reaction is for exactly 1 mol HCL and 1 mol NaOH; the heat in the example is produced by 0.0500 mol HCl and 0.0500 mol NaOH. Using the data in the check your learning section of [link], calculate ΔH in kJ/mol of $AgNO_3(aq)$ for the reaction:

$$\mathrm{NaCl}(aq) + \mathrm{AgNO_3}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{AgCl}(s) + \mathrm{NaNO_3}(aq) \tag{4.4.3}$$

Q5.3.2

Calculate the enthalpy of solution (ΔH for the dissolution) per mole of NH_4NO_3 under the conditions described in [link].

S5.3.2

25 kJ mol^{-1}

Q5.3.3

Calculate ΔH for the reaction described by the equation.

$$\mathrm{Ba(OH)_2 \cdot 8\,H_2O}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{NH_4SCN}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ba(SCN)_2}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) + 10\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

Q5.3.4

Calculate the enthalpy of solution (ΔH for the dissolution) per mole of $CaCl_2$.

S5.3.4

81 kJ mol^{-1}

Q5.3.5

Although the gas used in an oxyacetylene torch is essentially pure acetylene, the heat produced by combustion of one mole of acetylene in such a torch is likely not equal to the enthalpy of combustion of acetylene listed in Table. Considering the conditions for which the tabulated data are reported, suggest an explanation.

Q5.3.6

How much heat is produced by burning 4.00 moles of acetylene under standard state conditions?

S5.3.6

5204.4 kJ

Q5.3.7

How much heat is produced by combustion of 125 g of methanol under standard state conditions?

Q5.3.8

How many moles of isooctane must be burned to produce 100 kJ of heat under standard state conditions?

S5.3.8

1.83×10^{-2} mol

Q5.3.9

What mass of carbon monoxide must be burned to produce 175 kJ of heat under standard state conditions?

Q5.3.10

When 2.50 g of methane burns in oxygen, 125 kJ of heat is produced. What is the enthalpy of combustion per mole of methane under these conditions?

S5.3.10

802 kJ mol^{-1}

Q5.3.11

How much heat is produced when 100 mL of 0.250 M HCl (density, 1.00 g/mL) and 200 mL of 0.150 M NaOH (density, 1.00 g/mL) are mixed?

$$\text{HCl}(aq) + \text{NaOH}(aq) \longrightarrow \text{NaCl}(aq) + \text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -58 \text{ kJ} \tag{4.4.4}$$

If both solutions are at the same temperature and the heat capacity of the products is 4.19 J/g °C, how much will the temperature increase? What assumption did you make in your calculation?

Q5.3.12

A sample of 0.562 g of carbon is burned in oxygen in a bomb calorimeter, producing carbon dioxide. Assume both the reactants and products are under standard state conditions, and that the heat released is directly proportional to the enthalpy of combustion of graphite. The temperature of the calorimeter increases from 26.74 °C to 27.93 °C. What is the heat capacity of the calorimeter and its contents?

S5.3.12

15.5 kJ/ºC

Q5.3.13

Before the introduction of chlorofluorocarbons, sulfur dioxide (enthalpy of vaporization, 6.00 kcal/mol) was used in household refrigerators. What mass of SO_2 must be evaporated to remove as much heat as evaporation of 1.00 kg of CCl_2F_2 (enthalpy of vaporization is 17.4 kJ/mol)?

The vaporization reactions for SO_2 and CCl_2F_2 are

$\text{SO}_2(l) \longrightarrow \text{SO}_2(g)$ and $\text{CCl}_2\text{F}(l) \longrightarrow \text{CCl}_2\text{F}_2(g)$, respectively.

Q5.3.14

Homes may be heated by pumping hot water through radiators. What mass of water will provide the same amount of heat when cooled from 95.0 to 35.0 °C, as the heat provided when 100 g of steam is cooled from 110 °C to 100 °C.

S5.3.14

7.43 g

Q5.3.15

Which of the enthalpies of combustion in Table the table are also standard enthalpies of formation?

Q5.3.16

Does the standard enthalpy of formation of $H_2O(g)$ differ from $\Delta H°$ for the reaction $2\,H_2(g) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O(g)$?

S5.3.16

No.

Q5.3.17

Joseph Priestly prepared oxygen in 1774 by heating red mercury(II) oxide with sunlight focused through a lens. How much heat is required to decompose exactly 1 mole of red HgO(*s*) to Hg(*l*) and $O_2(g)$ under standard conditions?

Q5.3.18

How many kilojoules of heat will be released when exactly 1 mole of manganese, Mn, is burned to form $Mn_3O_4(s)$ at standard state conditions?

S5.3.18

459.6 kJ

Q5.3.19

How many kilojoules of heat will be released when exactly 1 mole of iron, Fe, is burned to form $Fe_2O_3(s)$ at standard state conditions?

Q5.3.20

The following sequence of reactions occurs in the commercial production of aqueous nitric acid:

$$4\,NH_3(g) + 5\,O_2(g) \longrightarrow 4\,NO(g) + 6\,H_2O(l) \quad \Delta H = -907\text{ kJ}$$

$$2\,NO(g) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,NO_2(g) \quad \Delta H = -113\text{ kJ}$$

$$3\,NO_2 + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow 2\,HNO_2(aq) + NO(g) \quad \Delta H = -139\text{ kJ}$$

Determine the total energy change for the production of one mole of aqueous nitric acid by this process.

S5.3.20

495 kJ/mol

Q5.3.21

Both graphite and diamond burn.

$$C(s,\text{ diamond}) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow CO_2(g)$$

For the conversion of graphite to diamond:

$$C(s,\text{ graphite}) \longrightarrow C(s,\text{ diamond}) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = 1.90\text{ kJ}$$

Which produces more heat, the combustion of graphite or the combustion of diamond?

Q5.3.22

From the molar heats of formation in Appendix G, determine how much heat is required to evaporate one mole of water: $H_2O(l) \longrightarrow H_2O(g)$

S5.3.22

44.01 kJ/mol

Q5.3.23

Which produces more heat?

$$\mathrm{Os}(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{OsO}_4(s)$$

or

$$\mathrm{Os}(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{OsO}_4(g)$$

for the phase change $\mathrm{OsO}_4(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{OsO}_4(g) \quad \Delta H = 56.4\ \mathrm{kJ}$

Q5.3.24

Calculate ΔH°_{298} for the process

$$\mathrm{Sb}(s) + \frac{5}{2}\mathrm{Cl}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{SbCl}_5(g)$$

from the following information:

$$\mathrm{Sb}(s) + \frac{3}{2}\mathrm{Cl}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{SbCl}_3(g) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -314\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

$$\mathrm{SbCl}_3(s) + \mathrm{Cl}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{SbCl}_5(g) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -80\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

S5.3.24

394 kJ

Q5.3.25

Calculate ΔH°_{298} for the process $\mathrm{Zn}(s) + \mathrm{S}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZnSO}_4(s)$

from the following information:

$$\mathrm{Zn}(s) + \mathrm{S}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZnS}(s) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -206.0\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

$$\mathrm{ZnS}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZnSO}_4(s) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -776.8\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Q5.3.26

Calculate ΔH for the process

$$\mathrm{Hg}_2\mathrm{Cl}_2(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Hg}(l) + \mathrm{Cl}_2(g)$$

from the following information:

$\mathrm{Hg}(l) + \mathrm{Cl}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{HgCl}_2(s) \quad \Delta H = -224\ \mathrm{kJ}$

$\mathrm{Hg}(l) + \mathrm{HgCl}_2(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hg}_2\mathrm{Cl}_2(s) \quad \Delta H = -41.2\ \mathrm{kJ}$

S5.3.26

265 kJ

Q5.3.27

Calculate ΔH°_{298} for the process

$$\mathrm{Co}_3\mathrm{O}_4(s) \longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{Co}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{O}_2(g)$$

from the following information:

$$\mathrm{Co}(s) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CoO}(s) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -237.9\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

$$3\,\mathrm{Co}(s) + \mathrm{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Co}_3\mathrm{O}_4(s) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -177.5\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Q5.3.28

Calculate the standard molar enthalpy of formation of NO(g) from the following data:

$$\mathrm{N}_2(g) + 2\,\mathrm{O}_2 \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NO}_2(g) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = 66.4\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

$$2\,NO(g) + O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,NO_2(g) \quad \Delta H^\circ_{298} = -114.1\ kJ$$

S5.3.28

90.3 mol^{-1} of NO

Q5.3.29

Using the data in Appendix G, calculate the standard enthalpy change for each of the following reactions:

a. $N_2(g) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,NO(g)$
b. $Si(s) + 2\,Cl_2(g) \longrightarrow SiCl_4(g)$
c. $Fe_2O_3(s) + 3\,H_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,Fe(s) + 3\,H_2O(l)$
d. $2\,LiOH(s) + CO_2(g) \longrightarrow Li_2CO_3(s) + H_2O(g)$

Q5.3.30

Using the data in Appendix G, calculate the standard enthalpy change for each of the following reactions:

a. $Si(s) + 2\,F_2(g) \longrightarrow SiF_4(g)$
b. $2\,C(s) + 2\,H_2(g) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow CH_3CO_2H(l)$
c. $CH_4(g) + N_2(g) \longrightarrow HCN(g) + NH_3(g)$;
d. $CS_2(g) + 3\,Cl_2(g) \longrightarrow CCl_4(g) + S_2Cl_2(g)$

S5.3.30

a. −1615.0 kJ mol^{-1};
b. −484.3 kJ mol^{-1};
c. 164.2 kJ;
d. −232.1 kJ

Q5.3.31

The following reactions can be used to prepare samples of metals. Determine the enthalpy change under standard state conditions for each.

a. $2\,Ag_2O(s) \longrightarrow 4\,Ag(s) + O_2(g)$
b. $SnO(s) + CO(g) \longrightarrow Sn(s) + CO_2(g)$
c. $Cr_2O_3(s) + 3\,H_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,Cr(s) + 3\,H_2O(l)$
d. $2\,Al(s) + Fe_2O_3(s) \longrightarrow Al_2O_3(s) + 2\,Fe(s)$

Q5.3.32

The decomposition of hydrogen peroxide, H_2O_2, has been used to provide thrust in the control jets of various space vehicles. Using the data in Appendix G, determine how much heat is produced by the decomposition of exactly 1 mole of H_2O_2 under standard conditions.

$$2\,H_2O_2(l) \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O(g) + O_2(g)$$

S5.3.32

−54.04 kJ mol^{-1}

Q5.3.33

Calculate the enthalpy of combustion of propane, $C_3H_8(g)$, for the formation of $H_2O(g)$ and $CO_2(g)$. The enthalpy of formation of propane is −104 kJ/mol.

Q5.3.34

Calculate the enthalpy of combustion of butane, $C_4H_{10}(g)$ for the formation of $H_2O(g)$ and $CO_2(g)$. The enthalpy of formation of butane is −126 kJ/mol.

S5.3.34

2660 kJ mol^{-1}

Q5.3.35

Both propane and butane are used as gaseous fuels. Which compound produces more heat per gram when burned?

Q5.3.36

The white pigment TiO_2 is prepared by the reaction of titanium tetrachloride, $TiCl_4$, with water vapor in the gas phase:

$$\mathrm{TiCl_4}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{TiO_2}(s) + 4\,\mathrm{HCl}(g) \quad .$$

How much heat is evolved in the production of exactly 1 mole of $TiO_2(s)$ under standard state conditions?

S5.3.36

67.1 kJ

Q5.3.37

Water gas, a mixture of H_2 and CO, is an important industrial fuel produced by the reaction of steam with red hot coke, essentially pure carbon:

$$\mathrm{C}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \quad .$$

a. Assuming that coke has the same enthalpy of formation as graphite, calculate ΔH°_{298} for this reaction.
b. Methanol, a liquid fuel that could possibly replace gasoline, can be prepared from water gas and additional hydrogen at high temperature and pressure in the presence of a suitable catalyst:

$$2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{CO}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3OH}(g). \tag{4.4.5}$$

   Under the conditions of the reaction, methanol forms as a gas. Calculate ΔH°_{298} for this reaction and for the condensation of gaseous methanol to liquid methanol.
c. Calculate the heat of combustion of 1 mole of liquid methanol to $H_2O(g)$ and $CO_2(g)$.

Q5.3.38

In the early days of automobiles, illumination at night was provided by burning acetylene, C_2H_2. Though no longer used as auto headlamps, acetylene is still used as a source of light by some cave explorers. The acetylene is (was) prepared in the lamp by the reaction of water with calcium carbide, CaC_2:

$$\mathrm{CaC_2}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}(s) + \mathrm{C_2H_2}(g) \quad .$$

Calculate the standard enthalpy of the reaction. The ΔH°_f of CaC_2 is −15.14 kcal/mol.

S5.3.38

122.8 kJ

Q5.3.39

From the data in Table, determine which of the following fuels produces the greatest amount of heat per gram when burned under standard conditions: $CO(g)$, $CH_4(g)$, or $C_2H_2(g)$.

Q5.3.40

The enthalpy of combustion of hard coal averages −35 kJ/g, that of gasoline, 1.28×10^5 kJ/gal. How many kilograms of hard coal provide the same amount of heat as is available from 1.0 gallon of gasoline? Assume that the density of gasoline is 0.692 g/mL (the same as the density of isooctane).

S5.3.40

3.7 kg

Q5.3.41

Ethanol, C_2H_5OH, is used as a fuel for motor vehicles, particularly in Brazil.

a. Write the balanced equation for the combustion of ethanol to $CO_2(g)$ and $H_2O(g)$, and, using the data in Appendix G, calculate the enthalpy of combustion of 1 mole of ethanol.
b. The density of ethanol is 0.7893 g/mL. Calculate the enthalpy of combustion of exactly 1 L of ethanol.
c. Assuming that an automobile's mileage is directly proportional to the heat of combustion of the fuel, calculate how much farther an automobile could be expected to travel on 1 L of gasoline than on 1 L of ethanol. Assume that gasoline has the heat of combustion and the density of n–octane, C_8H_{18} ($\Delta H_f^\circ = -208.4\ \text{kJ/mol}$; density = 0.7025 g/mL).

Q5.3.42

Among the substances that react with oxygen and that have been considered as potential rocket fuels are diborane [B_2H_6, produces $B_2O_3(s)$ and $H_2O(g)$], methane [CH_4, produces $CO_2(g)$ and $H_2O(g)$], and hydrazine [N_2H_4, produces $N_2(g)$ and $H_2O(g)$]. On the basis of the heat released by 1.00 g of each substance in its reaction with oxygen, which of these compounds offers the best possibility as a rocket fuel? The ΔH_f° of $B_2H_6(g)$, $CH_4(g)$, and $N_2H_4(l)$ may be found in Appendix G.

S5.3.42

On the assumption that the best rocket fuel is the one that gives off the most heat, B_2H_6 is the prime candidate.

Q5.3.43

How much heat is produced when 1.25 g of chromium metal reacts with oxygen gas under standard conditions?

Ethylene, C_2H_2, a byproduct from the fractional distillation of petroleum, is fourth among the 50 chemical compounds produced commercially in the largest quantities. About 80% of synthetic ethanol is manufactured from ethylene by its reaction with water in the presence of a suitable catalyst.

$$\mathrm{C_2H_4}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{C_2H_5OH}(l)$$

Using the data in the table in Appendix G, calculate $\Delta H°$ for the reaction.

S5.3.43

88.2 kJ

Q5.3.44

The oxidation of the sugar glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$, is described by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6}(s) + 6\ \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 6\ \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 6\ \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \quad \Delta H = -2816\ \text{kJ}$$

The metabolism of glucose gives the same products, although the glucose reacts with oxygen in a series of steps in the body.

a. How much heat in kilojoules can be produced by the metabolism of 1.0 g of glucose?
b. How many Calories can be produced by the metabolism of 1.0 g of glucose?

Q5.3.45

Propane, C_3H_8, is a hydrocarbon that is commonly used as a fuel.

a. Write a balanced equation for the complete combustion of propane gas.
b. Calculate the volume of air at 25 °C and 1.00 atmosphere that is needed to completely combust 25.0 grams of propane. Assume that air is 21.0 percent O_2 by volume. (Hint: we will see how to do this calculation in a later chapter on gases—for now use the information that 1.00 L of air at 25 °C and 1.00 atm contains 0.275 g of O_2 per liter.)
c. The heat of combustion of propane is −2,219.2 kJ/mol. Calculate the heat of formation, ΔH_f° of propane given that ΔH_f° of $H_2O(l)$ = −285.8 kJ/mol and ΔH_f° of $CO_2(g)$ = −393.5 kJ/mol.
d. Assuming that all of the heat released in burning 25.0 grams of propane is transferred to 4.00 kilograms of water, calculate the increase in temperature of the water.

S5.3.45

a. $\mathrm{C_3H_8}(g) + 5\ \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 3\ \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 4\ \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$;
b. 330 L;

c. $-104.5\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$;
d. 75.4 °C

Q5.3.46

During a recent winter month in Sheboygan, Wisconsin, it was necessary to obtain 3500 kWh of heat provided by a natural gas furnace with 89% efficiency to keep a small house warm (the efficiency of a gas furnace is the percent of the heat produced by combustion that is transferred into the house).

a. Assume that natural gas is pure methane and determine the volume of natural gas in cubic feet that was required to heat the house. The average temperature of the natural gas was 56 °F; at this temperature and a pressure of 1 atm, natural gas has a density of 0.681 g/L.
b. How many gallons of LPG (liquefied petroleum gas) would be required to replace the natural gas used? Assume the LPG is liquid propane [C_3H_8: density, 0.5318 g/mL; enthalpy of combustion, 2219 kJ/mol for the formation of $CO_2(g)$ and $H_2O(l)$] and the furnace used to burn the LPG has the same efficiency as the gas furnace.
c. What mass of carbon dioxide is produced by combustion of the methane used to heat the house?
d. What mass of water is produced by combustion of the methane used to heat the house?
e. What volume of air is required to provide the oxygen for the combustion of the methane used to heat the house? Air contains 23% oxygen by mass. The average density of air during the month was 1.22 g/L.
f. How many kilowatt–hours (1 kWh = 3.6×10^6 J) of electricity would be required to provide the heat necessary to heat the house? Note electricity is 100% efficient in producing heat inside a house.
g. Although electricity is 100% efficient in producing heat inside a house, production and distribution of electricity is not 100% efficient. The efficiency of production and distribution of electricity produced in a coal-fired power plant is about 40%. A certain type of coal provides 2.26 kWh per pound upon combustion. What mass of this coal in kilograms will be required to produce the electrical energy necessary to heat the house if the efficiency of generation and distribution is 40%?

This page titled 4.4: Thermochemistry (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

4.5: Spontaneity

Learning Objectives

- Distinguish between spontaneous and nonspontaneous processes
- Describe the dispersal of matter and energy that accompanies certain spontaneous processes

In this section, consider the differences between two types of changes in a system: Those that occur spontaneously and those that occur only with the continuous input of energy. In doing so, we'll gain an understanding as to why some systems are naturally inclined to change in one direction under certain conditions. We'll also gain insight into how the spontaneity of a process affects the distribution of energy and matter within the system.

Spontaneous and Nonspontaneous Processes

Processes have a natural tendency to occur in one direction under a given set of conditions. Water will naturally flow downhill, but uphill flow requires outside intervention such as the use of a pump. A spontaneous process is one that occurs naturally under certain conditions. A nonspontaneous process, on the other hand, will not take place unless it is "driven" by the continual input of energy from an external source. A process that is spontaneous in one direction under a particular set of conditions is nonspontaneous in the reverse direction. At room temperature and typical atmospheric pressure, for example, ice will spontaneously melt, but water will not spontaneously freeze.

The spontaneity of a process is *not* correlated to the speed of the process. A spontaneous change may be so rapid that it is essentially instantaneous or so slow that it cannot be observed over any practical period of time. To illustrate this concept, consider the decay of radioactive isotopes, a topic more thoroughly treated in the chapter on nuclear chemistry. Radioactive decay is by definition a spontaneous process in which the nuclei of unstable isotopes emit radiation as they are converted to more stable nuclei. All the decay processes occur spontaneously, but the rates at which different isotopes decay vary widely. Technetium-99m is a popular radioisotope for medical imaging studies that undergoes relatively rapid decay and exhibits a half-life of about six hours. Uranium-238 is the most abundant isotope of uranium, and its decay occurs much more slowly, exhibiting a half-life of more than four billion years (Figure 4.5.1).

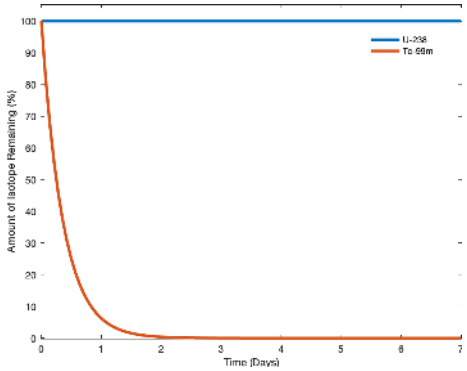


Figure 4.5.1: Both U-238 and Tc-99m undergo spontaneous radioactive decay, but at drastically different rates. Over the course of one week, essentially all of a Tc-99m sample and none of a U-238 sample will have decayed. (CC by 4.0; Morgan Johnson via LibreTexts)

Two curves are shown to represent U-238 and Tc-99m respectively. The vertical axes represents the percentage of isotope remaining and the horizontal axes is the time that has elapsed in days.

As another example, consider the conversion of diamond into graphite (Figure 4.5.2).

$$\mathrm{C(s,\,diamond)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{C(s,\,graphite)} \tag{4.5.1}$$

The phase diagram for carbon indicates that graphite is the stable form of this element under ambient atmospheric pressure, while diamond is the stable allotrope at very high pressures, such as those present during its geologic formation. Thermodynamic calculations of the sort described in the last section of this chapter indicate that the conversion of diamond to graphite at ambient pressure occurs spontaneously, yet diamonds are observed to exist, and persist, under these conditions. Though the process is spontaneous under typical ambient conditions, its rate is extremely slow, and so for all practical purposes diamonds are indeed "forever." Situations such as these emphasize the important distinction between the thermodynamic and the kinetic aspects of a process. In this particular case, diamonds are said to be *thermodynamically unstable* but *kinetically stable* under ambient conditions.

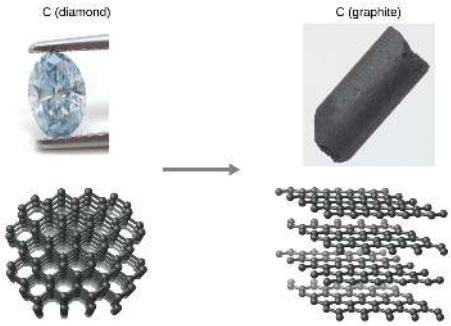


Figure 4.5.2: The conversion of carbon from the diamond allotrope to the graphite allotrope is spontaneous at ambient pressure, but its rate is immeasurably slow at low to moderate temperatures. This process is known as graphitization, and its rate can be increased to easily measurable values at temperatures in the 1000–2000 K range. (credit "diamond" photo: modification of work by "Fancy Diamonds"/Flickr; credit "graphite" photo: modification of work by images-of-elements.com/carbon.php)

Comparison of diamond and graphite shown in its physical form as well as its molecular arrangement respectively.

Dispersal of Matter and Energy

As we extend our discussion of thermodynamic concepts toward the objective of predicting spontaneity, consider now an isolated system consisting of two flasks connected with a closed valve. Initially there is an ideal gas on the left and a vacuum on the right (Figure 4.5.3). When the valve is opened, the gas spontaneously expands to fill both flasks. Recalling the definition of pressure-volume work from the chapter on thermochemistry, note that no work has been done because the pressure in a vacuum is zero.

$$w = -P\Delta V \tag{4.5.2}$$

$$= 0 \;\; (\mathrm{P} = 0 \text{ in a vaccum}) \tag{4.5.3}$$

Note as well that since the system is isolated, no heat has been exchanged with the surroundings (q = 0). The first law of thermodynamics confirms that there has been no change in the system's internal energy as a result of this process.

$$\Delta U = q + w \qquad \text{(First Law of Thermodynamics)}$$
$$= 0 + 0 = 0 \qquad (4.5.4)$$

The spontaneity of this process is therefore not a consequence of any change in energy that accompanies the process. Instead, the movement of the gas appears to be related to the greater, more *uniform dispersal of matter* that results when the gas is allowed to expand. Initially, the system was comprised of one flask containing matter and another flask containing nothing. After the spontaneous process took place, the matter was distributed both more widely (occupying twice its original volume) and more uniformly (present in equal amounts in each flask).

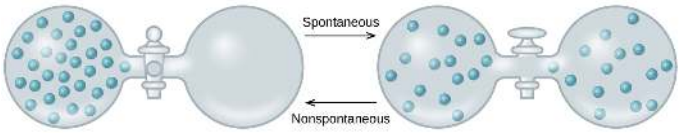


Figure 4.5.3: An isolated system consists of an ideal gas in one flask that is connected by a closed valve to a second flask containing a vacuum. Once the valve is opened, the gas spontaneously becomes evenly distributed between the flasks.
When the valve is closed, all of the gas molecules accumlating only in one side of the flask. The diagram with the open valve shows gas being equally distributed among the two flasks. The dispersion of the gas is labeled as spontaneous while the reverse is labeled as non spontaneous.

Now consider two objects at different temperatures: object X at temperature T_X and object Y at temperature T_Y, with $T_X > T_Y$ (Figure 4.5.4). When these objects come into contact, heat spontaneously flows from the hotter object (X) to the colder one (Y). This corresponds to a loss of thermal energy by X and a gain of thermal energy by Y.

$$q_X < 0 \quad \text{and} \quad q_Y = -q_X > 0 \qquad (4.5.5)$$

From the perspective of this two-object system, there was no net gain or loss of thermal energy, rather the available thermal energy was redistributed among the two objects. This spontaneous process resulted in a *more uniform dispersal of energy*.



Figure 4.5.4:When two objects at different temperatures come in contact, heat spontaneously flows from the hotter to the colder object.
Two separated blocks. One is labeled X and the other labeled Y. The diagram next to it shows the two blocks in contact with one another.

As illustrated by the two processes described, an important factor in determining the spontaneity of a process is the extent to which it changes the dispersal or distribution of matter and/or energy. In each case, a spontaneous process took place that resulted in a more uniform distribution of matter or energy.

Example 4.5.1: Redistribution of Matter during a Spontaneous Process

Describe how matter and energy are redistributed when the following spontaneous processes take place:

a. A solid sublimes.
b. A gas condenses.
c. A drop of food coloring added to a glass of water forms a solution with uniform color.

Solution



Figure 4.5.5:(credit a: modification of work by Jenny Downing; credit b: modification of work by “Fuzzy Gerdes”/Flickr; credit c: modification of work by Sahar Atwa)
This figure has three photos labeled, “a,” “b,” and “c.” Photo a shows a glass with dry ice in water. There is a thick vapor coming from the top of the glass. Photo b shows water forming outside of a glass containing cold beverage. Photo c shows a sealed container that holds a red liquid.

a. *Sublimation* is the conversion of a solid (relatively high density) to a gas (much lesser density). This process yields a much greater dispersal of matter, since the molecules will occupy a much greater volume after the solid-to-gas transition. However, an input of energy from the surroundings ss required for the molecules to leave the solid phase and enter the gas phase.
b. *Condensation* is the conversion of a gas (relatively low density) to a liquid (much greater density). This process yields a much lesser dispersal of matter, since the molecules will occupy a much lesser volume after the gas-to-liquid transition. As the gas molecules move together to form the droplets of liquid, they form intermolecular forces and thus release energy to the surroundings.
c. The process in question is *dilution*. The food dye molecules initially occupy a much smaller volume (the drop of dye solution) than they occupy once the process is complete (in the full glass of water). The process therefore entails a greater dispersal of matter. The process may also yield a more uniform dispersal of matter, since the initial state of the system involves two regions of different dye concentrations (high in the drop, zero in the water), and the final state of the system contains a single dye concentration throughout. This process can occur with out a change in energy because the molecules have kinetic energy relative to the temperature of the water, and so will be constantly in motion.

Exercise 4.5.1

Describe how matter and energy are redistributed when you empty a canister of compressed air into a room.

Answer

This process entails both a greater and more uniform dispersal of matter as the compressed air in the canister is permitted to expand into the lower-pressure air of the room. The process also requires an input of energy to disrupt the intermolecular forces between the closely-spaced gas molecules that are originally compressed into the container. If you were to touch the nozzle of the canister, you would notice that it is cold because the exiting molecules are taking energy away from their surroundings, and the canister is part of the surroundings.

Summary

Chemical and physical processes have a natural tendency to occur in one direction under certain conditions. A spontaneous process occurs without the need for a continual input of energy from some external source, while a nonspontaneous process requires such. Systems undergoing a spontaneous process may or may not experience a gain or loss of energy, but they will experience a change in the way matter and/or energy is distributed within the system. In this section we have only discussed nuclear decay, physical changes of pure substances, and macroscopic events such as water flowing downhill. In the following sections we will discuss mixtures and chemical reactions, situations in which the description of sponteneity becomes more challenging.

Glossary

nonspontaneous process
process that requires continual input of energy from an external source

spontaneous change
process that takes place without a continuous input of energy from an external source

---

This page titled 4.5: Spontaneity is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **16.1: Spontaneity** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.



https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122517

4.6: Entropy

Learning Objectives

- Define entropy
- Explain the relationship between entropy and the number of microstates
- Predict the sign of the entropy change for chemical and physical processes

In 1824, at the age of 28, Nicolas Léonard Sadi Carnot (Figure 4.6.2) published the results of an extensive study regarding the efficiency of steam heat engines. In a later review of Carnot's findings, Rudolf Clausius introduced a new thermodynamic property that relates the spontaneous heat flow accompanying a process to the temperature at which the process takes place. This new property was expressed as the ratio of the *reversible* heat (q_{rev}) and the kelvin temperature (T). The term reversible process refers to a process that takes place at such a slow rate that it is always at equilibrium and its direction can be changed (it can be "reversed") by an infinitesimally small change is some condition. Note that the idea of a reversible process is a formalism required to support the development of various thermodynamic concepts; no real processes are truly reversible, rather they are classified as *irreversible*.

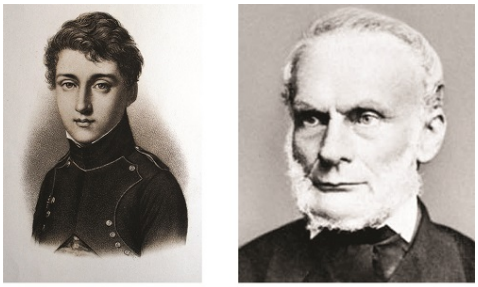


Figure 4.6.1: (a) Nicholas Léonard Sadi Carnot's research into steam-powered machinery and (b) Rudolf Clausius's later study of those findings led to groundbreaking discoveries about spontaneous heat flow processes.

Similar to other thermodynamic properties, this new quantity is a state function, and so its change depends only upon the initial and final states of a system. In 1865, Clausius named this property entropy (S) and defined its change for any process as the following:

$$\Delta S = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T} \tag{4.6.1}$$

The entropy change for a real, irreversible process is then equal to that for the theoretical reversible process that involves the same initial and final states.

Entropy and Microstates

Following the work of Carnot and Clausius, Ludwig Boltzmann developed a molecular-scale statistical model that related the entropy of a system to the number of *microstates* possible for the system. A microstate (Ω) is a specific configuration of the locations and energies of the atoms or molecules that comprise a system like the following:

$$S = k \ln \Omega \tag{4.6.2}$$

Here k is the Boltzmann constant and has a value of $1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ J/K$.

As for other state functions, the change in entropy for a process is the difference between its final (S_f) and initial (S_i) values:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta S &= S_{\text{f}} - S_{\text{i}} \\ &= k \ln \Omega_{\text{f}} - k \ln \Omega_{\text{i}} \\ &= k \ln \frac{\Omega_{\text{f}}}{\Omega_{\text{i}}} \end{aligned} \tag{4.6.3}$$

For processes involving an increase in the number of microstates of the system, $\Omega_f > \Omega_i$, the entropy of the system increases, $\Delta S > 0$. Conversely, processes that reduce the number of microstates in the system, $\Omega_f < \Omega_i$, yield a decrease in system entropy,

$\Delta S < 0$. This molecular-scale interpretation of entropy provides a link to the probability that a process will occur as illustrated in the next paragraphs.

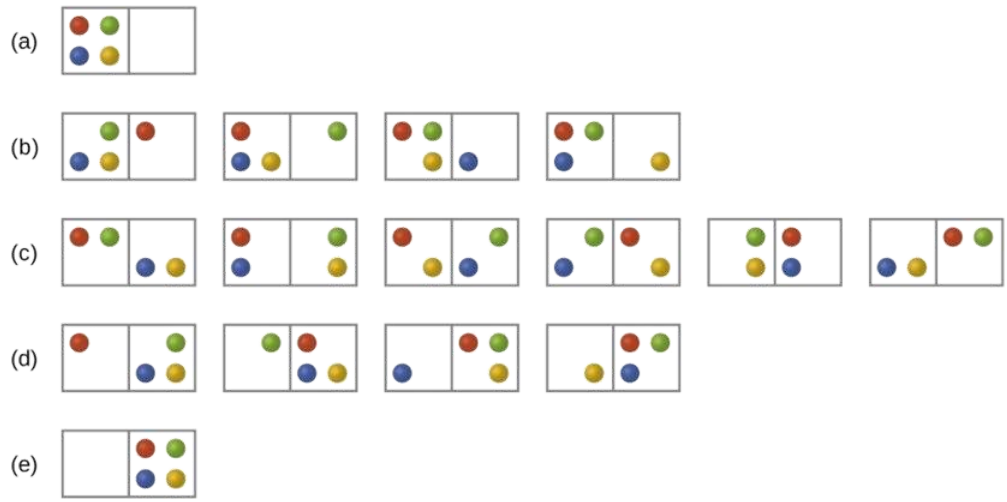


Figure 4.6.2: The sixteen microstates associated with placing four particles in two boxes are shown. The microstates are collected into five distributions—(a), (b), (c), (d), and (e)—based on the numbers of particles in each box.

Five rows of diagrams that look like dominoes are shown and labeled a, b, c, d, and e. Row a has one “domino” that has four dots on the left side, red, green, blue and yellow in a clockwise pattern from the top left, and no dots on the right. Row b has four “dominos,” each with three dots on the left and one dot on the right. The first shows a “domino” with green, yellow and blue on the left and red on the right. The second “domino” has yellow, blue and red on the left and green on the right. The third “domino” has red, green and yellow on the left and blue on the right while the fourth has red, green and blue on the left and yellow on the right. Row c has six “dominos”, each with two dots on either side. The first has a red and green on the left and a blue and yellow on the right. The second has a red and blue on the left and a green and yellow on the right while the third has a yellow and red on the left and a green and blue on the right. The fourth has a green and blue on the left and a red and yellow on the right. The fifth has a green and yellow on the left and a red and blue on the right. The sixth has a blue and yellow on the left and a green and red on the right. Row d has four “dominos,” each with one dot on the left and three on the right. The first “domino” has red on the left and a blue, green and yellow on the right. The second has a green on the left and a red, yellow and blue on the right. The third has a blue on the left and a red, green and yellow on the right. The fourth has a yellow on the left and a red, green and blue on the right. Row e has 1 “domino” with no dots on the left and four dots on the right that are red, green, blue and yellow.

Consider the general case of a system comprised of *N* particles distributed among *n* boxes. The number of microstates possible for such a system is n^N. For example, distributing four particles among two boxes will result in 2^4 = 16 different microstates as illustrated in Figure 4.6.2. Microstates with equivalent particle arrangements (not considering individual particle identities) are grouped together and are called *distributions* (sometimes called macrostates or configurations). The probability that a system will exist with its components in a given distribution is proportional to the number of microstates within the distribution. Since entropy increases logarithmically with the number of microstates, *the most probable distribution is therefore the one of greatest entropy*.

For this system, the most probable configuration is one of the six microstates associated with distribution (c) where the particles are evenly distributed between the boxes, that is, a configuration of two particles in each box. The probability of finding the system in this configuration is

$$\frac{6}{16} = \frac{3}{8}$$

The least probable configuration of the system is one in which all four particles are in one box, corresponding to distributions (a) and (e), each with a probability of

$$\frac{1}{16}$$

The probability of finding all particles in only one box (either the left box or right box) is then

$$\left(\frac{1}{16} + \frac{1}{16}\right) = \frac{2}{16} = \frac{1}{8}$$

As you add more particles to the system, the number of possible microstates increases exponentially (2^N). A macroscopic (laboratory-sized) system would typically consist of moles of particles ($N \sim 10^{23}$), and the corresponding number of microstates would be staggeringly huge. Regardless of the number of particles in the system, however, the distributions in which roughly equal numbers of particles are found in each box are always the most probable configurations.

> *The most probable distribution is therefore the one of greatest entropy.*

The previous description of an ideal gas expanding into a vacuum is a macroscopic example of this particle-in-a-box model. For this system, the most probable distribution is confirmed to be the one in which the matter is most uniformly dispersed or distributed between the two flasks. The spontaneous process whereby the gas contained initially in one flask expands to fill both flasks equally therefore yields an increase in entropy for the system.

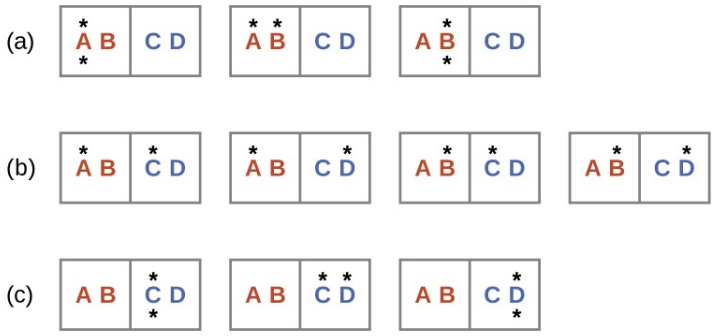


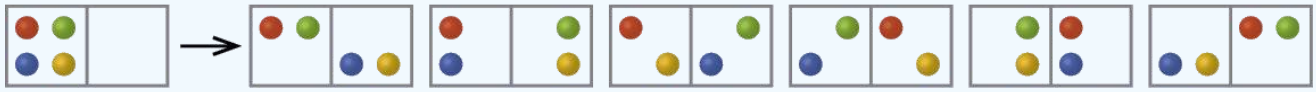
Figure 4.6.3: This shows a microstate model describing the flow of heat from a hot object to a cold object. (a) Before the heat flow occurs, the object comprised of particles **A** and **B** contains both units of energy and as represented by a distribution of three microstates. (b) If the heat flow results in an even dispersal of energy (one energy unit transferred), a distribution of four microstates results. (c) If both energy units are transferred, the resulting distribution has three microstates.

Three rows labeled a, b, and c are shown and each contains rectangles with two sides where the left side is labeled, “A,” and “B,” and the right is labeled, “C,” and “D.” Row a has three rectangles where the first has a dot above and below the letter A, the second has a dot above the A and B, and the third which has a dot above and below the letter B. Row b has four rectangles; the first has a dot above A and C, the second has a dot above A and D, the third has a dot above B and C and the fourth has a dot above B and D. Row c has three rectangles; the first has a dot above and below the letter C, the second has a dot above C and D and the third has a dot above and below the letter D.

A similar approach may be used to describe the spontaneous flow of heat. Consider a system consisting of two objects, each containing two particles, and two units of energy (represented as “*”) in Figure 4.6.3. The hot object is comprised of particles **A** and **B** and initially contains both energy units. The cold object is comprised of particles **C** and **D**, which initially has no energy units. Distribution (a) shows the three microstates possible for the initial state of the system, with both units of energy contained within the hot object. If one of the two energy units is transferred, the result is distribution (b) consisting of four microstates. If both energy units are transferred, the result is distribution (c) consisting of three microstates. And so, we may describe this system by a total of ten microstates. The probability that the heat does not flow when the two objects are brought into contact, that is, that the system remains in distribution (a), is $\frac{3}{10}$. More likely is the flow of heat to yield one of the other two distribution, the combined probability being $\frac{7}{10}$. The most likely result is the flow of heat to yield the uniform dispersal of energy represented by distribution (b), the probability of this configuration being $\frac{4}{10}$. As for the previous example of matter dispersal, extrapolating this treatment to macroscopic collections of particles dramatically increases the probability of the uniform distribution relative to the other distributions. This supports the common observation that placing hot and cold objects in contact results in spontaneous heat flow that ultimately equalizes the objects’ temperatures. And, again, this spontaneous process is also characterized by an increase in system entropy.

✔ Example 4.6.1: Determination of ΔS

Consider the system shown here. What is the change in entropy for a process that converts the system from distribution (a) to (c)?



A diagram shows one rectangle with two sides that has four dots, red, green, yellow and blue written on the left side. A right-facing arrow leads to six more two-sided rectangles, each with two dots on the left and right sides. The first rectangle has a red and green dot on the left and a blue and yellow on the right, while the second shows a red and blue on the left and a green and yellow on the right. The third rectangle has a red and yellow dot on the left and a blue and green on the right, while the fourth shows a green and blue on the left and a red and yellow on the right. The fifth rectangle has a yellow and green dot on the left and a blue and red on the right, while the sixth shows a yellow and blue on the left and a green and red on the right.

Solution

We are interested in the following change:

The initial number of microstates is one, the final six:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S &= k \ln \frac{\Omega_c}{\Omega_a} \\ &= 1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ J/K \times \ln \frac{6}{1} \\ &= 2.47 \times 10^{-23}\ J/K\end{aligned}$$

The sign of this result is consistent with expectation; since there are more microstates possible for the final state than for the initial state, the change in entropy should be positive.

? Exercise 4.6.1

Consider the system shown in Figure 4.6.3. What is the change in entropy for the process where *all* the energy is transferred from the hot object (**AB**) to the cold object (**CD**)?

Answer

0 J/K

Predicting the Sign of ΔS

The relationships between entropy, microstates, and matter/energy dispersal described previously allow us to make generalizations regarding the relative entropies of substances and to predict the sign of entropy changes for chemical and physical processes. Consider the phase changes illustrated in Figure 4.6.4. In the solid phase, the atoms or molecules are restricted to nearly fixed positions with respect to each other and are capable of only modest oscillations about these positions. With essentially fixed locations for the system's component particles, the number of microstates is relatively small. In the liquid phase, the atoms or molecules are free to move over and around each other, though they remain in relatively close proximity to one another. This increased freedom of motion results in a greater variation in possible particle locations, so the number of microstates is correspondingly greater than for the solid. As a result, $S_{liquid} > S_{solid}$ and the process of converting a substance from solid to liquid (melting) is characterized by an increase in entropy, $\Delta S > 0$. By the same logic, the reciprocal process (freezing) exhibits a decrease in entropy, $\Delta S < 0$.

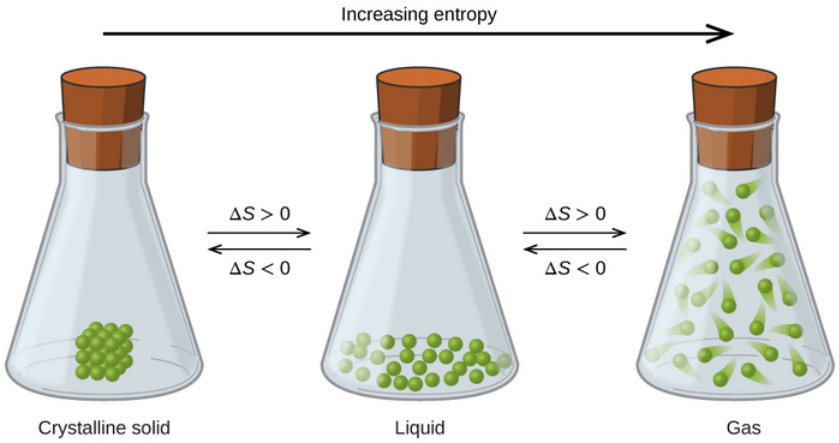


Figure 4.6.4: The entropy of a substance increases (ΔS > 0) as it transforms from a relatively ordered solid, to a less-ordered liquid, and then to a still less-ordered gas. The entropy decreases (ΔS < 0) as the substance transforms from a gas to a liquid and then to a solid.

Three stoppered flasks are shown with right and left-facing arrows in between each; the first is labeled above as, “delta S greater than 0,” and below as, “delta S less than 0,” while the second is labeled above as, “delta S greater than 0,” and below as, “delta S less than 0.” A long, right-facing arrow is drawn above all the flasks and labeled, “Increasing entropy.” The left flask contains twenty-seven particles arranged in a cube in the bottom of the flask and is labeled, “Crystalline solid,” below. The middle flask contains twenty-seven particles dispersed randomly in the bottom of the flask and is labeled, “Liquid,” below. The right flask contains twenty-seven particles dispersed inside of the flask and moving rapidly and is labeled, “Gas,” below.

Now consider the vapor or gas phase. The atoms or molecules occupy a *much* greater volume than in the liquid phase; therefore each atom or molecule can be found in many more locations than in the liquid (or solid) phase. Consequently, for any substance, $S_{gas} > S_{liquid} > S_{solid}$, and the processes of vaporization and sublimation likewise involve increases in entropy, $\Delta S > 0$. Likewise, the reciprocal phase transitions, condensation and deposition, involve decreases in entropy, $\Delta S < 0$.

According to kinetic-molecular theory, the temperature of a substance is proportional to the average kinetic energy of its particles. Raising the temperature of a substance will result in more extensive vibrations of the particles in solids and more rapid translations of the particles in liquids and gases. At higher temperatures, the distribution of kinetic energies among the atoms or molecules of the substance is also broader (more dispersed) than at lower temperatures. Thus, the entropy for any substance increases with temperature (Figure 4.6.5).

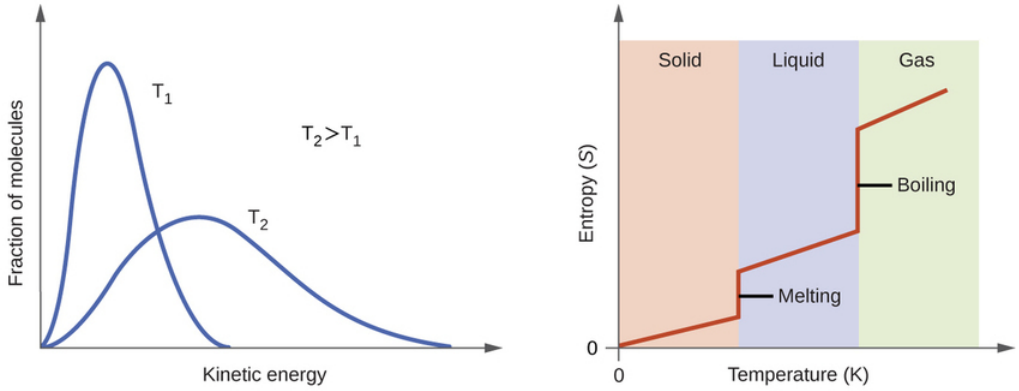


Figure 4.6.5: Entropy increases as the temperature of a substance is raised, which corresponds to the greater spread of kinetic energies. When a substance melts or vaporizes, it experiences a significant increase in entropy.

Two graphs are shown. The y-axis of the left graph is labeled, “Fraction of molecules,” while the x-axis is labeled, “Velocity, v (m / s),” and has values of 0 through 1,500 along the axis with increments of 500. Four lines are plotted on this graph. The first, labeled, “100 K,” peaks around 200 m / s while the second, labeled, “200 K,” peaks near 300 m / s and is slightly lower on the y-axis than the first. The third line, labeled, “500 K,” peaks around 550 m / s and is lower than the first two on the y-axis. The fourth line, labeled, “1000 K,” peaks around 750 m / s and is the lowest of the four on the y-axis. Each line get increasingly broad. The second graph has a y-axis labeled, “Entropy, S,” with an upward-facing arrow and an x-axis labeled, “Temperature (K),” and a right-facing arrow. The graph has three equally spaced columns in the background, labeled, “Solid,” “Liquid,” and, “Gas,” from left to right. A line extends slightly upward through the first column in a slight upward direction, then goes straight up in the transition between the first two columns. In then progresses in a slight upward direction through the second column, then goes up dramatically between the second and third columns, then continues in a slight upward direction once more. The first vertical region of this line is labeled, “Melting,” and the second is labeled, “Boiling.”

The entropy of a substance is influenced by structure of the particles (atoms or molecules) that comprise the substance. With regard to atomic substances, heavier atoms possess greater entropy at a given temperature than lighter atoms, which is a consequence of the relation between a particle's mass and the spacing of quantized translational energy levels (which is a topic beyond the scope of our treatment). For molecules, greater numbers of atoms (regardless of their masses) increase the ways in which the molecules can vibrate and thus the number of possible microstates and the system entropy.

Finally, variations in the types of particles affects the entropy of a system. Compared to a pure substance, in which all particles are identical, the entropy of a mixture of two or more different particle types is greater. This is because of the additional orientations and interactions that are possible in a system comprised of nonidentical components. For example, when a solid dissolves in a liquid, the particles of the solid experience both a greater freedom of motion and additional interactions with the solvent particles. This corresponds to a more uniform dispersal of matter and energy and a greater number of microstates. The process of dissolution therefore involves an increase in entropy, $\Delta S > 0$.

Considering the various factors that affect entropy allows us to make informed predictions of the sign of ΔS for various chemical and physical processes as illustrated in Example .

Example 4.6.2: Predicting the Sign of ΔS

Predict the sign of the entropy change for the following processes. Indicate the reason for each of your predictions.

a. One mole liquid water at room temperature $\longrightarrow$ one mole liquid water at 50 °C
b. $\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{AgCl}(s)$
c. $\mathrm{C_6H_6}(l) + \dfrac{15}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 6\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$
d. $\mathrm{NH_3}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_3}(l)$

Solution

a. positive, temperature increases
b. negative, reduction in the number of ions (particles) in solution, decreased dispersal of matter
c. negative, net decrease in the amount of gaseous species
d. positive, phase transition from solid to liquid, net increase in dispersal of matter

Exercise 4.6.2

Predict the sign of the enthalpy change for the following processes. Give a reason for your prediction.

a. $\mathrm{NaNO_3}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NO_3^-}(aq)$
b. the freezing of liquid water
c. $\mathrm{CO_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$
d. $\mathrm{CaCO}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$

Answer a

Positive; The solid dissolves to give an increase of mobile ions in solution.

Answer b

Negative; The liquid becomes a more ordered solid.

Answer c

Positive; The relatively ordered solid becomes a gas

Answer d

Positive; There is a net production of one mole of gas.

Summary

Entropy (\(S\)) is a state function that can be related to the number of microstates for a system (the number of ways the system can be arranged) and to the ratio of reversible heat to kelvin temperature. It may be interpreted as a measure of the dispersal or

distribution of matter and/or energy in a system, and it is often described as representing the “disorder” of the system. For a given substance, $S_{solid} < S_{liquid} \ll S_{gas}$ in a given physical state at a given temperature, entropy is typically greater for heavier atoms or more complex molecules. Entropy increases when a system is heated and when solutions form. Using these guidelines, the sign of entropy changes for some chemical reactions may be reliably predicted.

Key Equations

- $\Delta S = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T}$
- $S = k \ln W$
- $\Delta S = k \ln \frac{W_{\text{f}}}{W_{\text{i}}}$

Glossary

entropy (*S*)

state function that is a measure of the matter and/or energy dispersal within a system, determined by the number of system microstates often described as a measure of the disorder of the system

microstate (*W*)

possible configuration or arrangement of matter and energy within a system

reversible process

process that takes place so slowly as to be capable of reversing direction in response to an infinitesimally small change in conditions; hypothetical construct that can only be approximated by real processes removed

---

This page titled 4.6: Entropy is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **16.2: Entropy** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.7: The Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics

Learning Objectives

- State and explain the second and third laws of thermodynamics
- Calculate entropy changes for phase transitions and chemical reactions under standard conditions

The Second Law of Thermodynamics

In the quest to identify a property that may reliably predict the spontaneity of a process, we have identified a very promising candidate: entropy. Processes that involve an increase in entropy *of the system* ($\Delta S > 0$) are very often spontaneous; however, examples to the contrary are plentiful. By expanding consideration of entropy changes to include *the surroundings*, we may reach a significant conclusion regarding the relation between this property and spontaneity. In thermodynamic models, the system and surroundings comprise everything, that is, the universe, and so the following is true:

$$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \Delta S_{\text{surr}} \tag{4.7.1}$$

To illustrate this relation, consider again the process of heat flow between two objects, one identified as the system and the other as the surroundings. There are three possibilities for such a process:

1. The objects are at different temperatures, and heat flows from the hotter to the cooler object. *This is always observed to occur spontaneously.* Designating the hotter object as the system and invoking the definition of entropy yields the following:

$$\Delta S_{\text{sys}} = \frac{-q_{\text{rev}}}{T_{\text{sys}}} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta S_{\text{surr}} = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T_{\text{surr}}} \tag{4.7.2}$$

   The arithmetic signs of q_{rev} denote the loss of heat by the system and the gain of heat by the surroundings. Since $T_{\text{sys}} > T_{\text{surr}}$ in this scenario, the magnitude of the entropy change for the surroundings will be greater than that for the system, and so the sum of ΔS_{sys} and ΔS_{surr} will yield a positive value for ΔS_{univ}. *This process involves an increase in the entropy of the universe.*
2. The objects are at different temperatures, and heat flows from the cooler to the hotter object. *This is never observed to occur spontaneously.* Again designating the hotter object as the system and invoking the definition of entropy yields the following:

$$\Delta S_{\text{sys}} = \frac{q_{\text{rev}}}{T_{\text{sys}}} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta S_{\text{surr}} = \frac{-q_{\text{rev}}}{T_{\text{surr}}} \tag{4.7.3}$$

   The arithmetic signs of q_{rev} denote the gain of heat by the system and the loss of heat by the surroundings. The magnitude of the entropy change for the surroundings will again be greater than that for the system, but in this case, the signs of the heat changes will yield a negative value for ΔS_{univ}. *This process involves a decrease in the entropy of the universe.*
3. The temperature difference between the objects is infinitesimally small, $T_{\text{sys}} \approx T_{\text{surr}}$, and so the heat flow is thermodynamically reversible. See the previous section's discussion). In this case, the system and surroundings experience entropy changes that are equal in magnitude and therefore sum to yield a value of zero for ΔS_{univ}. *This process involves no change in the entropy of the universe.*

These results lead to a profound statement regarding the relation between entropy and spontaneity known as the second law of thermodynamics: *all spontaneous changes cause an increase in the entropy of the universe.* A summary of these three relations is provided in Table 4.7.1.

Table 4.7.1: The Second Law of Thermodynamics

$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} > 0$	spontaneous
$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} < 0$	nonspontaneous (spontaneous in opposite direction)
$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = 0$	reversible (system is at equilibrium)

All spontaneous changes cause an increase in the entropy of the universe.

For many realistic applications, the surroundings are vast in comparison to the system. In such cases, the heat gained or lost by the surroundings as a result of some process represents a very small, nearly infinitesimal, fraction of its total thermal energy. For

example, combustion of a fuel in air involves transfer of heat from a system (the fuel and oxygen molecules undergoing reaction) to surroundings that are infinitely more massive (the earth's atmosphere). As a result, q_{surr} is a good approximation of q_{rev}, and the second law may be stated as the following:

$$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \Delta S_{\text{surr}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \frac{q_{\text{surr}}}{T} \tag{4.7.4}$$

We may use this equation to predict the spontaneity of a process as illustrated in Example 4.7.1.

Example 4.7.1: Will Ice Spontaneously Melt?

The entropy change for the process

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

is 22.1 J/K and requires that the surroundings transfer 6.00 kJ of heat to the system. Is the process spontaneous at −10.00 °C? Is it spontaneous at +10.00 °C?

Solution

We can assess the spontaneity of the process by calculating the entropy change of the universe. If ΔS_{univ} is positive, then the process is spontaneous. At both temperatures, ΔS_{sys} = 22.1 J/K and q_{surr} = −6.00 kJ.

At −10.00 °C (263.15 K), the following is true:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S_{\text{univ}} &= \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \Delta S_{\text{surr}} = \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \frac{q_{\text{surr}}}{T} \\ &= 22.1\ \text{J/K} + \frac{-6.00 \times 10^3\ \text{J}}{263.15\ \text{K}} = -0.7\ \text{J/K}\end{aligned}$$

$S_{univ} < 0$, so melting is nonspontaneous (*not* spontaneous) at **−10.0 °C**.

At 10.00 °C (283.15 K), the following is true:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S_{\text{univ}} &= \Delta S_{\text{sys}} + \frac{q_{\text{surr}}}{T} \\ &= 22.1\ J/K + \frac{-6.00 \times 10^3\ J}{283.15\ K} = +0.9\ J/K\end{aligned}$$

$S_{univ} > 0$, so melting *is* spontaneous at **10.00 °C.**

Exercise 4.7.1

Using this information, determine if liquid water will spontaneously freeze at the same temperatures. What can you say about the values of S_{univ}?

Answer

Entropy is a state function, and freezing is the opposite of melting. At −10.00 °C spontaneous, +0.7 J/K; at +10.00 °C nonspontaneous, −0.9 J/K.

The Third Law of Thermodynamics

The previous section described the various contributions of matter and energy dispersal that contribute to the entropy of a system. With these contributions in mind, consider the entropy of a pure, perfectly crystalline solid possessing no kinetic energy (that is, at a temperature of absolute zero, 0 K). This system may be described by a single microstate, as its purity, perfect crystallinity and complete lack of motion means there is but one possible location for each identical atom or molecule comprising the crystal (W = 1). According to the Boltzmann equation, the entropy of this system is zero.

$$S = k \ln W = k \ln(1) = 0 \tag{4.7.5}$$

This limiting condition for a system's entropy represents the third law of thermodynamics: *the entropy of a pure, perfect crystalline substance at 0 K is zero.*

Definition: Third Law of Thermodynamics

The entropy of a pure, perfect crystalline substance at 0 K is zero.

We can make careful calorimetric measurements to determine the temperature dependence of a substance's entropy and to derive absolute entropy values under specific conditions. Standard entropies are given the label S°_{298} for values determined for one mole of substance, isolated in its pure form in its own container, at a pressure of 1 bar and a temperature of 298 K.

Definition: Term

The thermodynamic standard state of a substance refers to an isolated sample of that substance, in its own container, at 1.000 bar (0.9869 atm) pressure. If the substance is a solute, the most common standard state is one in which the concentration of the solute is 1.000 molal (sometimes approximated with 1.000 M). There is no defined temperature for the standard state, but most discussions about standard state assume that the temperature is 298.15 K (25ºC) unless otherwise noted.

This may seem like a strange definition, because it requires that each of the reactants and each of the products of a reaction are kept separate from one another, unmixed. The entropy of mixing must be determined separately.

The standard entropy change (Δ*S*°) for any process may be computed from the standard entropies of its reactant and product species like the following:

$$\Delta S^\circ = \sum \nu S^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu S^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants}) \tag{4.7.6}$$

Here, ν represents stoichiometric coefficients in the balanced equation representing the process. For example, Δ*S*° for the following reaction at room temperature

$$m\text{A} + n\text{B} \longrightarrow x\text{C} + y\text{D} \tag{4.7.7}$$

is computed as the following:

$$= [xS^\circ_{298}(\text{C}) + yS^\circ_{298}(\text{D})] - [mS^\circ_{298}(\text{A}) + nS^\circ_{298}(\text{B})] \tag{4.7.8}$$

Table 4.7.2 lists some standard entropies at 298.15 K. You can find additional standard entropies in Tables T1 or T2.

Table 4.7.2: Standard Entropies (at 298.15 K, 1 atm)

Substance	S°_{298} $\frac{J}{mol\,K}$
carbon	
C(*s*, graphite)	5.740
C(*s*, diamond)	2.38
CO(*g*)	197.7
CO_2(*g*)	213.8
CH_4(*g*)	186.3
C_2H_4(*g*)	219.5
C_2H_6(*g*)	229.5
CH_3OH(*l*)	126.8
C_2H_5OH(*l*)	160.7
hydrogen	
H_2(*g*)	130.57
H(*g*)	114.6

Substance	$S^\circ_{298}\ \frac{J}{mol\,K}$
$H_2O(g)$	188.71
$H_2O(l)$	69.91
HCI(g)	186.8
$H_2S(g)$	205.7
oxygen	
$O_2(g)$	205.03

Example 4.7.2: Determination of ΔS°

Calculate the standard entropy change for the following process:

$$H_2O(g) \longrightarrow H_2O(l)$$

Solution

The value of the standard entropy change at room temperature, ΔS°_{298}, is the difference between the standard entropy of the product, $H_2O(l)$, and the standard entropy of the reactant, $H_2O(g)$.

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S^\circ_{298} &= S^\circ_{298}(H_2O(l)) - S^\circ_{298}(H_2O(g)) \\ &= (70.0\ J\,mol^{-1}K^{-1}) - (188.8\ Jmol^{-1}K^{-1}) = -118.8\ J\,mol^{-1}K^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

The value for ΔS^o_{298} is negative, as expected for this phase transition (condensation), which the previous section discussed.

Exercise 4.7.2

Calculate the standard entropy change for the following process:

$$H_2(g) + C_2H_4(g) \longrightarrow C_2H_6(g)$$

Answer

−120.6 J mol^{-1} K^{-1}

Example 4.7.3: Determination of ΔS°

Calculate the standard entropy change for the combustion of methanol, CH_3OH at room temperature:

$$2\,CH_3OH(l) + 3\,O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,CO_2(g) + 4\,H_2O(l)$$

Solution

The value of the standard entropy change is equal to the difference between the standard entropies of the products and the entropies of the reactants scaled by their stoichiometric coefficients.

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S^\circ &= \Delta S^\circ_{298} = \sum \nu S^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu S^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants}) \\ &= [2S^\circ_{298}(CO_2(g)) + 4S^\circ_{298}(H_2O(l))] - [2S^\circ_{298}(CH_3OH(l)) + 3S^\circ_{298}(O_2(g))] \\ &= \{[2(213.8) + 4 \times 70.0] - [2(126.8) + 3(205.03)]\} = -161.1\ J/mol \cdot K\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 4.7.3

Calculate the standard entropy change for the following reaction:

$$Ca(OH)_2(s) \longrightarrow CaO(s) + H_2O(l)$$

Answer

24.7 J/mol•K

Summary

The second law of thermodynamics states that a spontaneous process increases the entropy of the universe, $S_{univ} > 0$. If $\Delta S_{univ} < 0$, the process is nonspontaneous, and if $\Delta S_{univ} = 0$, the system is at equilibrium. The third law of thermodynamics establishes the zero for entropy as that of a perfect, pure crystalline solid at 0 K. With only one possible microstate, the entropy is zero. We may compute the standard entropy change for a process by using standard entropy values for the reactants and products involved in the process.

Key Equations

- $\Delta S^\circ = \Delta S^\circ_{298} = \sum \nu S^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu S^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants})$
- $\Delta S = \frac{q_{rev}}{T}$
- $\Delta S_{univ} = \Delta S_{sys} + \Delta S_{surr}$
- $\Delta S_{univ} = \Delta S_{sys} + \Delta S_{surr} = \Delta S_{sys} + \frac{q_{surr}}{T}$

Glossary

second law of thermodynamics

entropy of the universe increases for a spontaneous process

standard entropy (*S*°)

entropy for a substance at 1 bar pressure; tabulated values are usually determined at 298.15 K and denoted S°_{298}

standard entropy change (Δ*S*°)

change in entropy for a reaction calculated using the standard entropies, usually at room temperature and denoted ΔS°_{298}

third law of thermodynamics

entropy of a perfect crystal at absolute zero (0 K) is zero

This page titled 4.7: The Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **16.3: The Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.8: Gibbs Energy

Learning Objectives

- Define Gibbs free energy, and describe its relation to spontaneity
- Calculate the standard free energy change for a process using standard free energies of formation for its reactants and products
- Calculate standard free energy change for a process using senthalpies of formation and the entropies for its reactants and products
- Explain how temperature affects the spontaneity of some processes
- Relate standard free energy changes to equilibrium constants

One of the challenges of using the second law of thermodynamics to determine if a chemical reaction is spontaneous is that we must determine the entropy change for the system *and* the entropy change for the surroundings. A second challenge when working with a chemical reaction is that we need to take into account the mixing of the substances, an issue that does not occur when observing the phase change if a pure substance. An alternative approach involving a new thermodynamic property defined in terms of system properties only was introduced in the late nineteenth century by American mathematician Josiah Willard Gibbs. This new property is called the Gibbs free energy (G) (or simply the *free energy*), and it is defined in terms of a system's enthalpy and entropy as the following:

$$G = H - TS$$

Free energy is a state function, and at constant temperature and pressure, the standard free energy change (ΔG°) may be expressed as the following:

$$\Delta G^\circ_{\text{sys}} = \Delta H^\circ_{\text{sys}} - T\Delta S^\circ_{\text{sys}}$$

(For simplicity's sake, the subscript "sys" will be omitted henceforth.) We can understand the relationship between this system property and the spontaneity of a process by recalling the previously derived second law expression:

$$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S + \frac{q_{\text{surr}}}{T}$$

The first law requires that $q_{surr} = -q_{sys}$, and at constant pressure $q_{sys} = \Delta H$, and so this expression may be rewritten as the following:

$$\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta S - \frac{\Delta H}{T}$$

ΔH is the enthalpy change of the system. Multiplying both sides of this equation by −T, and rearranging yields the following:

$$-T\Delta S_{\text{univ}} = \Delta H - T\Delta S$$

Comparing this equation to the previous one for free energy change shows the following relation:

$$\Delta G = -T\Delta S_{\text{univ}} \tag{4.8.1}$$

The free energy change is therefore a reliable indicator of the spontaneity of a process, being directly related to the previously identified spontaneity indicator, ΔS_{univ}. Table 4.8.1 summarizes the relation between the spontaneity of a process and the arithmetic signs of these indicators.

Table 4.8.1: Relation between Process Spontaneity and Signs of Thermodynamic Properties

$\Delta S_{univ} > 0$	$\Delta G < 0$	moves spontaneously in the forward direction, as written, to reach equilibrium
$\Delta S_{univ} < 0$	$\Delta G > 0$	nonspontaneous in the forward direction, as written, but moves spontaneously in the reverse direction, as written, to reach equilibrium

$\Delta S_{univ} = 0$	$\Delta G = 0$	reversible (at equilibrium)

Calculating Free Energy Change

Free energy is a state function, so its value depends only on the conditions of the initial and final states of the system that have undergone some change. A convenient and common approach to the calculation of free energy changes for physical changes and chemical reactions is by use of widely available compilations of standard state thermodynamic data. One method involves the use of standard enthalpies and entropies to compute standard free energy changes according to the following relation as demonstrated in Example 4.8.1.

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \tag{4.8.2}$$

It is important to understand that for phase changes, ΔG° tells you if the phase change is spontaneous or not; will it happen, or not happen. For chemical reactions, ΔG° tells you the **extent** of a reaction. In other words, ΔG° for a reaction tells you how much product will be present at equilibrium. A reaction with $\Delta G^\circ < 0$ is considered **product-favored at equilibrium**; there will be more products than reactants when the reaction reaches equilibrium. A reaction with $\Delta G^\circ > 0$ is considered **reactant-favored at equilibrium**; there will be more reactants than products when the reaction reaches equilibrium.

Example 4.8.1: Evaluation of ΔG° for a Phase Change of a Pure Substance

Use standard enthalpy and entropy data from Tables T1 or T2 to calculate the standard free energy change for the vaporization of water at room temperature (298 K). What does the computed value for ΔG° say about the spontaneity of this physical change for a pure substance?

Solution

The process of interest is the following:

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \tag{4.8.3}$$

The standard change in free energy may be calculated using the following equation:

$$\Delta G^\circ_{298} = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \tag{4.8.4}$$

From Tables T1 or T2, here are the data:

Data from Tables T1 or T2

Substance	ΔH°_f (kJ/mol)	S°_{298} (J/K·mol)
$H_2O(l)$	−286.83	70.0
$H_2O(g)$	−241.82	188.8

Combining at 298 K:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H^\circ &= \Delta H^\circ_{298} = \Delta H^\circ_f(\mathrm{H_2O}(g)) - \Delta H^\circ_f(\mathrm{H_2O}(l)) \\ &= [-241.82\ kJ - (-285.83)]\ kJ/mol \\ &= 44.01\ kJ/mol \\ \Delta S^\circ &= \Delta S^\circ_{298} = S^\circ_{298}(\mathrm{H_2O}(g)) - S^\circ_{298}(\mathrm{H_2O}(l)) \\ &= 188.8\ J/mol\cdot K - 70.0\ J/K \\ &= 118.8\ J/mol\cdot K\end{aligned}$$

then use Equation 4.8.2:

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$$

Converting everything into kJ and combining at 298 K:

$$\Delta G^\circ_{298} = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$$

$$= 44.01\ kJ/mol - (298\ K \times 118.8\ J/mol \cdot K) \times \frac{1\ kJ}{1000\ J}$$

$$44.01\ \text{kJ/mol} - 35.4\ \text{kJ/mol} = 8.6\ \text{kJ/mol}$$

At 298 K (25 °C) $\Delta G^\circ_{298} > 0$, and so boiling is nonspontaneous (not spontaneous) at 298 K.

? Exercise 4.8.1: Evaluation of ΔG° for a Chemical Reaction

Use standard enthalpy and entropy data from Tables T1 or T2 to calculate the standard free energy change for the reaction shown here (298 K). What does the computed value for ΔG° say about the extent of this reaction at 298 K?

$$\text{C}_2\text{H}_6(g) \longrightarrow \text{H}_2(g) + \text{C}_2\text{H}_4(g)$$

Answer

$\Delta G^\circ_{298} = 102.0\ \text{kJ/mol}$; the reaction is reactant-favored at equilibrium at 25 °C. There will be more $\text{C}_2\text{H}_6(g)$ than $\text{H}_2(g)$ and $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4(g)$ at equilibrium

Free energy changes may also use the standard free energy of formation $(\Delta G^\circ_\text{f})$, for each of the reactants and products involved in the reaction. The standard free energy of formation is the free energy change that accompanies the formation of one mole of a substance from its elements in their standard states. Similar to the standard enthalpies of formation, $(\Delta G^\circ_\text{f})$ is by definition zero for elemental substances under standard state conditions. The approach to computing the free energy change for a reaction using this approach is the same as that demonstrated previously for enthalpy and entropy changes. For the reaction

$$m\text{A} + n\text{B} \longrightarrow x\text{C} + y\text{D},$$

the standard free energy change at room temperature may be calculated as

$$\Delta G^\circ_{298} = \Delta G^\circ \tag{4.8.5}$$

$$= \sum \nu \Delta G^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu \Delta G^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants}) \tag{4.8.6}$$

$$= [x\Delta G^\circ_\text{f}(\text{C}) + y\Delta G^\circ_\text{f}(\text{D})] - [m\Delta G^\circ_\text{f}(\text{A}) + n\Delta G^\circ_\text{f}(\text{B})]. \tag{4.8.7}$$

✓ Example 4.8.2: Calculation of ΔG°_{298}

Consider the decomposition of yellow mercury(II) oxide.

$$\text{HgO}(s,\ \text{yellow}) \longrightarrow \text{Hg}(l) + \tfrac{1}{2}\text{O}_2(\text{g})$$

Calculate the standard free energy change at room temperature, ΔG°_{298}, using:

a. standard free energies of formation and
b. standard enthalpies of formation and standard entropies.

Do the results indicate the reaction to be product-favored or reactant-favored at equilibrium?

Solution

The required data are available in Tables T1 or T2 and are shown here.

Required data for Tables T1 or T2

Compound	ΔG°_f (kJ/mol)	ΔH°_f (kJ/mol)	S°_{298} (J/K·mol)
HgO (*s*, yellow)	−58.43	−90.46	71.13
Hg(*l*)	0	0	75.9
$O_2(g)$	0	0	205.2

(a) Using free energies of formation:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G^\circ_{298} &= \sum \nu G S^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu \Delta G^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants}) \\ &= \left[1\Delta G^\circ_{298}\text{Hg}(l) + \frac{1}{2}\Delta G^\circ_{298}\text{O}_2(g)\right] - 1\Delta G^\circ_{298}\text{HgO}(s,\text{ yellow}) \\ &= \left[1\text{ mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol}) + \frac{1}{2}\text{mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol})\right] - 1\text{ mol}(-58.43\text{ kJ/mol}) = 58.43\text{ kJ/mol}\end{aligned}$$

(b) Using enthalpies and entropies of formation:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H^\circ_{298} &= \sum \nu \Delta H^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu \Delta H^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants}) \\ &= \left[1\Delta H^\circ_{298}\text{Hg}(l) + \frac{1}{2}\Delta H^\circ_{298}\text{O}_2(g)\right] - 1\Delta H^\circ_{298}\text{HgO}(s,\text{ yellow}) \\ &= [1\text{ mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol}) + \frac{1}{2}\text{mol}(0\text{ kJ/mol})] - 1\text{ mol}(-90.46\text{ kJ/mol}) = 90.46\text{ kJ/mol} \\ \Delta S^\circ_{298} &= \sum \nu \Delta S^\circ_{298}(\text{products}) - \sum \nu \Delta S^\circ_{298}(\text{reactants}) \\ &= \left[1\Delta S^\circ_{298}\text{Hg}(l) + \frac{1}{2}\Delta S^\circ_{298}\text{O}_2(g)\right] - 1\Delta S^\circ_{298}\text{HgO}(s,\text{ yellow}) \\ &= \left[1\text{ mol}(75.9\text{ J/mol K}) + \frac{1}{2}\text{mol}(205.2\text{ J/mol K})\right] - 1\text{ mol}(71.13\text{ J/mol K}) = 107.4\text{ J/mol K}\end{aligned}$$

then we can use Equation \ref7} directly:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G^\circ &= \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \\ &= 90.46\text{ kJ} - 298.15\text{ K} \times 107.4\text{ J/K}\cdot\text{mol} \times \frac{1\text{ kJ}}{1000\text{ J}} \\ &= (90.46 - 32.01)\text{ kJ/mol} = 58.45\text{ kJ/mol}\end{aligned}$$

Both ways to calculate the standard free energy change at 25 °C give the same numerical value (to three significant figures), and both predict that the process is reactant-favored at equilibrium at room temperature.

? Exercise 4.8.2

Calculate ΔG° using (a) free energies of formation and (b) enthalpies of formation and entropies (Tables T1 or T2). Do the results indicate the reaction to be product-favored or reactant-favored at equilibrium at 25 °C?

$$\text{C}_2\text{H}_4(g) \longrightarrow \text{H}_2(g) + \text{C}_2\text{H}_2(g)$$

Answer

141.5 kJ/mol, reactant-favored at equilibrium

Temperature Dependence of Spontaneity and Extent of Reaction

As was previously demonstrated in this chapter's section on entropy, the spontaneity of a process may depend upon the temperature of the system. Phase transitions, for example, will proceed spontaneously in one direction or the other depending upon the temperature of the substance in question. In a similar, but not identical fashion, some chemical reactions can switch from being product-favored at equilibrium, to being reactant-favored at equilibrium, depending on the temperature.

Note

The numerical value of ΔG° is always dependent on the temperature. In this section we are determining whether or not the **sign** of ΔG° is dependent on the temperature.

To illustrate this concept, the equation relating free energy change to the enthalpy and entropy changes for the process is considered:

$$\Delta G^{\circ} = \Delta H^{\circ} - T\Delta S^{\circ}$$

The extent of a process, as reflected in the arithmetic sign of its standard free energy change, is then determined by the signs of the enthalpy and entropy changes and, in some cases, the absolute temperature. Since T is the absolute (Kelvin) temperature, it can only have positive values. Four possibilities therefore exist with regard to the signs of the enthalpy and entropy changes:

1. **Both ΔH^o and ΔS^o are positive.** This condition describes an endothermic process that involves an increase in system entropy. In this case, ΔG^o will be negative if the magnitude of the $T\Delta S^o$ term is greater than ΔH^o. If the $T\Delta S^o$ term is less than ΔH^o, the free energy change will be positive. Such a process is *product-favored at equilibrium at high temperatures and reactant-favored at equilibrium at low temperatures.*
2. **Both ΔH^o and ΔS^o are negative.** This condition describes an exothermic process that involves a decrease in system entropy. In this case, ΔG^o will be negative if the magnitude of the $T\Delta S^o$ term is less than ΔH^o. If the $T\Delta S^o$ term's magnitude is greater than ΔH^o, the free energy change will be positive. Such a process is *product-favored at equilibrium at low temperatures* and *reactant-favored at equilibrium at high temperatures.*
3. **ΔH^o is positive and ΔS^o is negative.** This condition describes an endothermic process that involves a decrease in system entropy. In this case, ΔG^o will be positive regardless of the temperature. Such a process is *reactant-favored at equilibrium at all temperatures.*
4. **ΔH^o is negative and ΔS^o is positive.** This condition describes an exothermic process that involves an increase in system entropy. In this case, ΔG^o will be negative regardless of the temperature. Such a process is *product-favored at equilibrium at all temperatures.*

These four scenarios are summarized in Table 4.8.1

Table 4.8.1

Sign of ΔH^o	Sign of ΔS^o	Sign of ΔG^o	Temperature Dependence of ΔG^o
-	+	-	The sign of ΔG^o does not depend on the temperature.The reaction is product-favored at equilibrium at all temperatures.
+	-	+	The sign of ΔG^o does not depend on the temperature.The reaction is reactant-favored at equilibrium at all temperatures.
-	-	- or +	The sign of ΔG^o **does** depend on the temperature. The reaction will be product-favored at equilibrium at lower temperatures.
+	+	- or +	The sign of ΔG^o **does** depend on the temperature. The reaction will be product-favored at equilibrium at lower temperatures.

Example 4.8.3: Predicting the Temperature Dependence of Spontaneity

The incomplete combustion of carbon is described by the following equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{C}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{CO}(g)$$

Does the sign of ΔG° of this process depend upon temperature?

Solution

Combustion processes are exothermic ($\Delta H^\circ < 0$). This particular reaction involves an increase in entropy due to the accompanying increase in the amount of gaseous species (net gain of one mole of gas, $\Delta S^\circ > 0$). The reaction is therefore product-favored at equilibrium ($\Delta G^\circ < 0$) at all temperatures.

Exercise 4.8.3

Popular chemical hand warmers generate heat by the air-oxidation of iron:

$$4\,\mathrm{Fe}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}(s)$$

Does the sign of ΔG^o of this process depend upon temperature?

Answer

ΔH^o and ΔS^o are both negative; the reaction is product-favored at equilibrium at low temperatures.

When considering the conclusions drawn regarding the temperature dependence of the sign of ΔG^o, it is important to keep in mind what the terms “high” and “low” mean. Since these terms are adjectives, the temperatures in question are deemed high or low relative to some reference temperature. A process that is reactant-favored at equilibrium at one temperature but product-favored at equilibrium at another temperature will necessarily undergo a change in “extent” (as reflected by its ΔG^o) as temperature varies. This is clearly illustrated by a graphical presentation of the free energy change equation, in which ΔG^o is plotted on the y axis versus T on the x axis:

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$$

$$y = b + mx$$

Such a plot is shown in Figure 4.8.2. A process whose enthalpy and entropy changes are of the same arithmetic sign will exhibit a temperature-dependence for the sign of ΔG^o as depicted by the two yellow lines in the plot. Each line crosses from one spontaneity domain (positive or negative ΔG^o) to the other at a temperature that is characteristic of the process in question. This temperature is represented by the x-intercept of the line, that is, the value of T for which ΔG^o is zero:

$$\Delta G^\circ = 0 = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$$

$$T = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{\Delta S^\circ}$$

Thus, saying a process is product-favored at equilibrium at “high” or “low” temperatures means the temperature is above or below, respectively, that temperature at which ΔG^o for the process is zero.

Note

In this discussion, we have used two different descriptions for the meaning of the sign of ΔG^o. You should be aware of the meaning of each description.

a) **Extent of Reaction:** This description is used to predict the ratio of the product and reactant concentrations at equilibrium. In this description, we use the thermodynamic term ΔG^o to tell us the same information as the equilibrium constant, K. When ΔG^o < 0, K > 1, and the reaction will be product-favored at equilibrium. When ΔG^o > 0, K< 1, and the reaction is reactant-favored at equilibrium. When ΔG^o = 0, K =1, and the reaction will have roughly equal amounts of products and

reactants at equilibrium. In all cases, the reaction will form a mixture of products and reactants at equilibrium. We use the sign and magnitude of ΔG^o to tell us how much product will be made if the reaction is allowed to reach equilibrium.

b) **Spontaneity:** This description is much more complicated because it involves two different interpretations of how a reaction at standard state occurs. One interpretation involves the hypothetical process in which the reaction proceeds from a starting point of pure reactants to a finishing point of pure products, with all substances isolated in their own containers under standard state conditions. In the second, more realistic interpretation, the reaction starts with all reactants and all products in their standard state in one container. We then allow this specific mixture to react an infinitesimally small amount so that we can obtain a rate of change in free energy with respect to the extent of reaction when all reactants and products are mixed and (essentially) in their standard states. Although each interpretation describes a different reaction scenario, the value of the difference in free energy and the value of the rate of change in free energy are the same number. If $\Delta G^o < 0$, we say that the reaction is spontaneous, meaning that the reaction would proceed in the forward direction, as written, to form pure products in their standard state. If $\Delta G^o > 0$, we say that the reaction is nonspontaneous, meaning that the reaction would proceed in the reverse direction, as written, to form pure reactants in their standard state. If $\Delta G^o = 0$, we say that the neither the reactants nor the products are favored to be formed.

A detailed treatment of the meaning of ΔGº can be found in the paper, "Free Energy versus Extent of Reaction" by Richard S. Treptow, Journal of Chemical Education, **1996**, Volume 73 (1), 51-54.

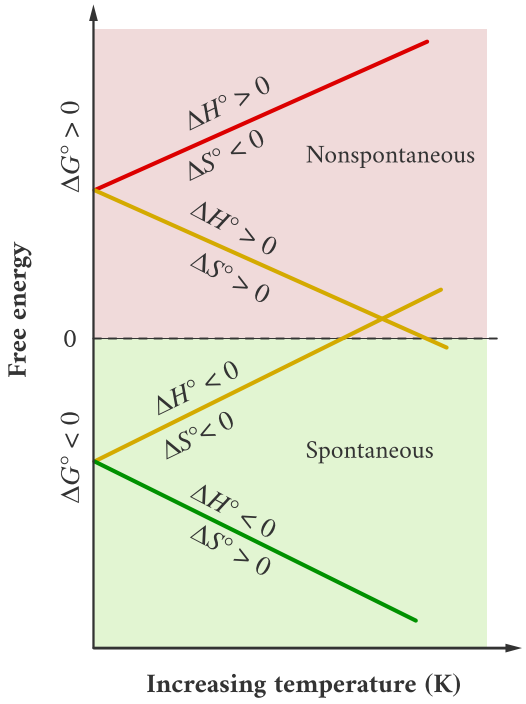


Figure 4.8.2: These plots show the variation in ΔGº with temperature for the four possible combinations of arithmetic sign for ΔHº and ΔSº. Note that in this graph of ΔGº, "spontaneous" is synonymous with "product-favored at equilibrium", and "nonspontaneous" is synonymous with "reactant-favored at equilibrium".

✔ Example 4.8.4: Equilibrium Temperature for a Phase Transition

As defined in the chapter on liquids and solids, the boiling point of a liquid is the temperature at which its solid and liquid phases are in equilibrium (that is, when vaporization and condensation occur at equal rates). Use the information in Tables T1 or T2 to estimate the boiling point of water.

Solution

The process of interest is the following phase change:

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}(g)$$

When this process is at equilibrium, $\Delta G = 0$, so the following is true:

$$0 = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \qquad \text{or} \qquad T = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{\Delta S^\circ}$$

Using the standard thermodynamic data from Tables T1 or T2,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H^\circ &= \Delta H_\mathrm{f}^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O}(g)) - \Delta H_\mathrm{f}^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O}(l)) \\ &= -241.82\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} - (-285.83\ \mathrm{kJ/mol}) = 44.01\ \mathrm{kJ/mol}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta S^\circ &= \Delta S_{298}^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O}(g)) - \Delta S_{298}^\circ(\mathrm{H_2O}(l)) \\ &= 188.8\ \mathrm{J/K \cdot mol} - 70.0\ \mathrm{J/K \cdot mol} = 118.8\ \mathrm{J/K \cdot mol}\end{aligned}$$

$$T = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{\Delta S^\circ} = \frac{44.01 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{J/mol}}{118.8\ \mathrm{J/K \cdot mol}} = 370.5\ \mathrm{K} = 97.3\ ^\circ\mathrm{C}$$

The accepted value for water's normal boiling point is 373.2 K (100.0 °C), and so this calculation is in reasonable agreement. Note that the values for enthalpy and entropy changes data used were derived from standard data at 298 K (Tables T1 or T2.). If desired, you could obtain more accurate results by using enthalpy and entropy changes determined at (or at least closer to) the actual boiling point.

? Exercise 4.8.4

Use the information in Tables T1 or T2 to estimate the boiling point of CS_2.

Answer

313 K (accepted value 319 K).

Free Energy and Equilibrium

The free energy change for a process may be viewed as a measure of its driving force. A negative value for ΔG represents a finite driving force for the process in the forward direction, while a positive value represents a driving force for the process in the reverse direction. When ΔG is zero, the forward and reverse driving forces are equal, and so the process occurs in both directions at the same rate (the system is at equilibrium).

In the chapter on equilibrium the *reaction quotient*, Q, was introduced as a convenient measure of the status of an equilibrium system. Recall that Q is the numerical value of the mass action expression for the system, and that you may use its value to identify the direction in which a reaction will proceed in order to achieve equilibrium. When Q is lesser than the equilibrium constant, K, the reaction will proceed in the forward direction until equilibrium is reached and $Q = K$. Conversely, if $Q > K$, the process will proceed in the reverse direction until equilibrium is achieved.

The free energy change for a process taking place with reactants and products present under nonstandard conditions, ΔG, is related to the standard free energy change, $\Delta G°$, according to this equation:

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^\circ + RT \ln Q \tag{4.8.8}$$

R is the gas constant (8.314 J/K mol), T is the kelvin or absolute temperature, and Q is the reaction quotient. We may use this equation to predict the spontaneity for a process under any given set of conditions as illustrated in Example 4.8.1.

✓ Example 4.8.5: Calculating ΔG under Nonstandard Conditions

What is the free energy change for the process shown here under the specified conditions?

T = 25 °C, $P_{\mathrm{N_2}} = 0.870$ atm, $P_{\mathrm{H_2}} = 0.250$ atm, and $P_{\mathrm{NH_3}} = 12.9$ atm

$$2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{N_2}(g) \quad \Delta G^\circ = 33.0\ \mathrm{kJ/mol}$$

Solution

Equation 4.8.8 relates free energy change to standard free energy change and reaction quotient and may be used directly:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G &= \Delta G^\circ + RT\ln Q \\ &= 33.0\ \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{mol}} + \left(8.314\ \frac{\text{J}}{\text{mol K}} \times 298\ \text{K} \times \ln\frac{(0.250^3)\times 0.870}{12.9^2}\right) \\ &= 9680\ \frac{\text{J}}{\text{mol}}\ \text{or}\ 9.68\ \text{kJ/mol}\end{aligned}$$

Since the computed value for ΔG is positive, the reaction is nonspontaneous under these conditions. The reaction will proceed in the reverse direction to reach equilibrium.

Exercise 4.8.5

Calculate the free energy change for this same reaction at 875 °C in a 5.00 L mixture containing 0.100 mol of each gas. Is the reaction spontaneous under these conditions?

Answer

ΔG = −47 kJ; yes, the reaction proceeds in the forward direction, as written, to reach equilibrium.

For a system at equilibrium, $Q = K$ and $\Delta G = 0$, and the Equation 4.8.8 may be written as

$$\underbrace{0 = \Delta G^\circ + RT\ln K}_{\text{at equilibrium}}$$

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT\ln K \tag{4.8.9}$$

or alternatively

$$K = e^{-\frac{\Delta G^\circ}{RT}} \tag{4.8.10}$$

This form of the equation provides a useful link between these two essential thermodynamic properties, and it can be used to derive equilibrium constants from standard free energy changes and vice versa. The relations between standard free energy changes and equilibrium constants are summarized in Table 4.8.1.

Table 4.8.1: Relations between Standard Free Energy Changes and Equilibrium Constants

K	ΔG°	Comments
< 1	> 0	Reactants are more abundant at equilibrium.
= 1	= 0	Reactants and products are equally abundant at equilibrium.
> 1	< 0	Products are more abundant at equilibrium.

Example 4.8.6: Equilibrium Constant using Standard Free Energy Change

Given that the standard free energies of formation of $Ag^+(aq)$, $Cl^-(aq)$, and $AgCl(s)$ are 77.1 kJ/mol, −131.2 kJ/mol, and −109.8 kJ/mol, respectively, calculate the solubility product, K_{sp}, for AgCl.

Solution

The reaction of interest is the following:

$$\text{AgCl}(s) \rightleftharpoons \text{Ag}^+(aq) + \text{Cl}^-(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [\text{Ag}^+][\text{Cl}^-]$$

The standard free energy change for this reaction is first computed using standard free energies of formation for its reactants and products:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G^\circ = \Delta G^\circ_{298} &= [\Delta G^\circ_f(Ag^+(aq)) + \Delta G^\circ_f(Cl^-(aq))] - [\Delta G^\circ_f(AgCl(s))] \\ &= [77.1\ kJ/mol - 131.2\ kJ/mol] - [-109.8\ kJ/mol] \\ &= 55.7\ kJ/mol\end{aligned}$$

The equilibrium constant for the reaction may then be derived from its standard free energy change via Equation 4.8.10:

$$\begin{aligned}K_{sp} = e^{-\frac{\Delta G^\circ}{RT}} &= \exp\left(-\frac{\Delta G^\circ}{RT}\right) \\ &= \exp\left(-\frac{55.7 \times 10^3\ \text{J/mol}}{8.314\ \text{J/mol}\cdot\text{K} \times 298.15\ \text{K}}\right) \\ &= \exp(-22.470) = e^{-22.470} = 1.74 \times 10^{-10}\end{aligned}$$

? Exercise 4.8.6: dissociation of dinitrogen tetroxide

Use the thermodynamic data provided in Tables T1 or T2 to calculate the equilibrium constant for the dissociation of dinitrogen tetroxide at 25 °C.

$$NO_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons N_2O_{4(g)}$$

Answer

K = 6.9

To further illustrate the relation between these two essential thermodynamic concepts, consider the observation that reactions spontaneously proceed in a direction that ultimately establishes equilibrium. As may be shown by plotting the free energy change versus the extent of the reaction (for example, as reflected in the value of *Q*), equilibrium is established when the system's free energy is minimized (Figure 4.8.3). If a system is present with reactants and products present in nonequilibrium amounts ($Q \neq K$), the reaction will proceed spontaneously in the direction necessary to establish equilibrium.

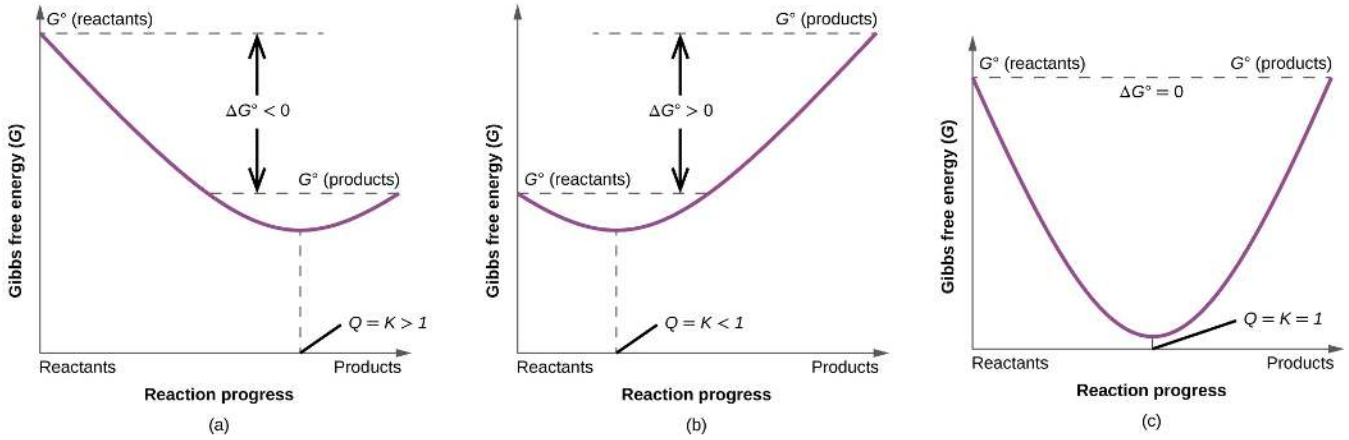


Figure 4.8.3: These plots show the free energy versus reaction progress for systems whose standard free changes are (a) negative, (b) positive, and (c) zero. Nonequilibrium systems will proceed spontaneously in whatever direction is necessary to minimize free energy and establish equilibrium. Note that reactions with K equal to exactly 1.000 are rare.

Summary

Gibbs free energy (*G*) is a state function defined with regard to system quantities only and may be used to predict the spontaneity of a process. A negative value for Δ*G* indicates that the process will proceed in the forward direction to reach equilibrium; a positive Δ*G* indicates that the process will proceed in the reverse direction to reach equilibrium ; and a Δ*G* of zero indicates that the system is at equilibrium. A negative value for Δ*G°* means that the reaction is product-favored at equilibrium. A positive value for Δ*G°* means that the reaction is reactant-favored at equilibrium. If Δ*G°* equals 0 (a rare occurrence), the reaction has roughly

equal amounts of reactants and products at equilibrium.A number of approaches to the computation of free energy changes are possible.

Key Equations

- $\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$
- $\Delta G = \Delta G° + RT \ln Q$
- $\Delta G° = -RT \ln K$

Glossary

Gibbs free energy change (G)

thermodynamic property defined in terms of system enthalpy and entropy; all spontaneous processes involve a decrease in G

standard free energy change ($\Delta G°$)

change in free energy for a process occurring under standard conditions (1 bar pressure for gases, 1 M concentration for solutions)

standard free energy of formation (ΔG_f°)

change in free energy accompanying the formation of one mole of substance from its elements in their standard states

This page titled 4.8: Gibbs Energy is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **16.4: Gibbs Energy** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.9: Thermodynamics (Exercises)

16.1: Spontaneity Exercises

Q16.1.1

What is a spontaneous reaction?

S16.1.1

A reaction has a natural tendency to occur and takes place without the continual input of energy from an external source.

Q16.1.2

What is a nonspontaneous reaction?

Q16.1.3

Indicate whether the following processes are spontaneous or nonspontaneous.

a. Liquid water freezing at a temperature below its freezing point
b. Liquid water freezing at a temperature above its freezing point
c. The combustion of gasoline
d. A ball thrown into the air
e. A raindrop falling to the ground
f. Iron rusting in a moist atmosphere

S16.1.2

spontaneous; nonspontaneous; spontaneous; nonspontaneous; spontaneous; spontaneous

Q16.1.4

A helium-filled balloon spontaneously deflates overnight as He atoms diffuse through the wall of the balloon. Describe the redistribution of matter and/or energy that accompanies this process.

Q16.1.5

Many plastic materials are organic polymers that contain carbon and hydrogen. The oxidation of these plastics in air to form carbon dioxide and water is a spontaneous process; however, plastic materials tend to persist in the environment. Explain.

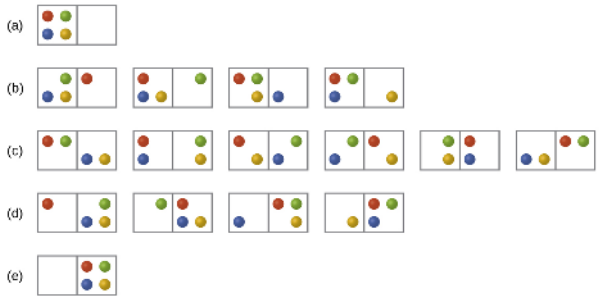
S16.1.5

Although the oxidation of plastics is spontaneous, the rate of oxidation is very slow. Plastics are therefore kinetically stable and do not decompose appreciably even over relatively long periods of time.

16.2: Entropy Exercises

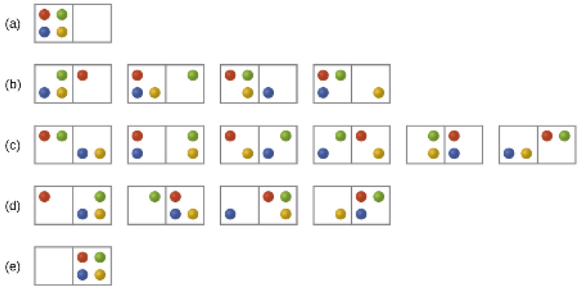
Q16.2.1

In the below Figure all possible distributions and microstates are shown for four different particles shared between two boxes. Determine the entropy change, ΔS, if the particles are initially evenly distributed between the two boxes, but upon redistribution all end up in Box (b).



Q16.2.2

In Figure all of the possible distributions and microstates are shown for four different particles shared between two boxes. Determine the entropy change, ΔS, for the system when it is converted from distribution to distribution (d).



S16.2.2

There are four initial microstates and four final microstates.

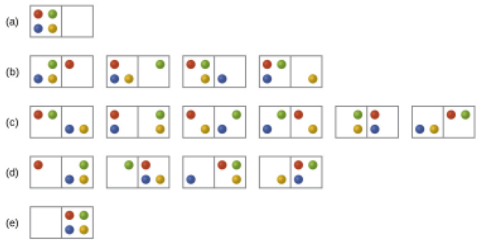
$$\Delta S = k \ln \frac{W_\mathrm{f}}{W_\mathrm{i}} = 1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ \mathrm{J/K} \times \ln \frac{4}{4} = 0 \tag{4.9.1}$$

Q16.2.3

How does the process described in the previous item relate to the system shown in [link]?

Q16.2.4

Consider a system similar to the one below, except that it contains six particles instead of four. What is the probability of having all the particles in only one of the two boxes in the case? Compare this with the similar probability for the system of four particles that we have derived to be equal to $\frac{1}{8}$. What does this comparison tell us about even larger systems?



S16.2.4

The probability for all the particles to be on one side is $\frac{1}{32}$. This probability is noticeably lower than the $\frac{1}{8}$ result for the four-particle system. The conclusion we can make is that the probability for all the particles to stay in only one part of the system will decrease rapidly as the number of particles increases, and, for instance, the probability for all molecules of gas to gather in only one side of a room at room temperature and pressure is negligible since the number of gas molecules in the room is very large.

Q16.2.5

Consider the system shown in Figure. What is the change in entropy for the process where the energy is initially associated only with particle A, but in the final state the energy is distributed between two different particles?



Q16.2.6

Consider the system shown in Figure. What is the change in entropy for the process where the energy is initially associated with particles A and B, and the energy is distributed between two particles in different boxes (one in A-B, the other in C-D)?

S16.2.6

There is only one initial state. For the final state, the energy can be contained in pairs A-C, A-D, B-C, or B-D. Thus, there are four final possible states.

$$\Delta S = k \ln \left(\frac{W_\mathrm{f}}{W_\mathrm{i}} \right) = 1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ \mathrm{J/K} \times \ln \left(\frac{4}{1} \right) = 1.91 \times 10^{-23}\ \mathrm{J/K} \tag{4.9.2}$$

Q16.2.7

Arrange the following sets of systems in order of increasing entropy. Assume one mole of each substance and the same temperature for each member of a set.

a. $H_2(g)$, $HBrO_4(g)$, $HBr(g)$
b. $H_2O(l)$, $H_2O(g)$, $H_2O(s)$
c. $He(g)$, $Cl_2(g)$, $P_4(g)$

Q16.2.8

At room temperature, the entropy of the halogens increases from I_2 to Br_2 to Cl_2. Explain.

S16.2.8

The masses of these molecules would suggest the opposite trend in their entropies. The observed trend is a result of the more significant variation of entropy with a physical state. At room temperature, I_2 is a solid, Br_2 is a liquid, and Cl_2 is a gas.

Q16.2.9

Consider two processes: sublimation of $I_2(s)$ and melting of $I_2(s)$ (Note: the latter process can occur at the same temperature but somewhat higher pressure).

$$\mathrm{I_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{I_2}(g) \tag{4.9.3}$$

$$\mathrm{I_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{I_2}(l) \tag{4.9.4}$$

Is ΔS positive or negative in these processes? In which of the processes will the magnitude of the entropy change be greater?

Q16.2.11

Indicate which substance in the given pairs has the higher entropy value. Explain your choices.

a. $C_2H_5OH(l)$ or $C_3H_7OH(l)$
b. $C_2H_5OH(l)$ or $C_2H_5OH(g)$
c. 2Hor $H(g)$

S16.2.11

$C_3H_7OH(l)$ as it is a larger molecule (more complex and more massive), and so more microstates describing its motions are available at any given temperature. $C_2H_5OH(g)$ as it is in the gaseous state. $2H(g)$, since entropy is an extensive property, and so two H atoms (or two moles of H atoms) possess twice as much entropy as one atom (or one mole of atoms).

Q16.2.11

Predict the sign of the entropy change for the following processes:

a. An ice cube is warmed to near its melting point.
b. Exhaled breath forms fog on a cold morning.
c. Snow melts.

Q16.2.12

Predict the sign of the enthalpy change for the following processes. Give a reason for your prediction.

a. $\mathrm{Pb^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{S^{2-}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{PbS}(s)$
b. $2\,\mathrm{Fe}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe_2O_3}(s)$
c. $2\,\mathrm{C_6H_{14}}(l) + 19\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 14\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) + 12\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g)$

S16.2.12

Negative. The relatively ordered solid precipitating decreases the number of mobile ions in solution. Negative. There is a net loss of three moles of gas from reactants to products. Positive. There is a net increase of seven moles of gas from reactants to products.

Q16.2.13

Write the balanced chemical equation for the combustion of methane, $CH_4(g)$, to give carbon dioxide and water vapor. Explain why it is difficult to predict whether ΔS is positive or negative for this chemical reaction.

Q16.2.14

Write the balanced chemical equation for the combustion of benzene, $C_6H_6(l)$, to give carbon dioxide and water vapor. Would you expect ΔS to be positive or negative in this process?

S16.2.14

$$\mathrm{C_6H_6}(l) + 7.5\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) + 6\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g) \tag{4.9.5}$$

There are 7.5 moles of gas initially, and 3 + 6 = 9 moles of gas in the end. Therefore, it is likely that the entropy increases as a result of this reaction, and ΔS is positive.

16.3: The Second and Third law

Q16.3.0

What is the difference between ΔS, $\Delta S°$, and ΔS°_{298} for a chemical change?

Q16.3.1

Calculate ΔS°_{298} for the following changes.

a. $\mathrm{SnCl_4}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{SnCl_4}(g)$
b. $\mathrm{CS_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CS_2}(l)$
c. $\mathrm{Cu}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cu}(g)$
d. $\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}(g)$
e. $2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$
f. $2\,\mathrm{HCl}(g) + \mathrm{Pb}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{PbCl_2}(s) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$
g. $\mathrm{Zn}(s) + \mathrm{CuSO_4}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cu}(s) + \mathrm{ZnSO_4}(s)$

S16.3.1

107 J/K; −86.4 J/K; 133.2 J/K; 118.8 J/K; −326.6 J/K; −171.9 J/K; (g) −7.2 J/K

Q16.3.2

Determine the entropy change for the combustion of liquid ethanol, C_2H_5OH, under standard state conditions to give gaseous carbon dioxide and liquid water.

Q16.3.3

Determine the entropy change for the combustion of gaseous propane, C_3H_8, under standard state conditions to give gaseous carbon dioxide and water.

S16.3.3

100.6 J/K

Q16.3.4

“Thermite” reactions have been used for welding metal parts such as railway rails and in metal refining. One such thermite reaction is:

$$\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{Al}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Al_2O_3}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{Fe}(s) \tag{4.9.6}$$

Is the reaction spontaneous at room temperature under standard conditions? During the reaction, the surroundings absorb 851.8 kJ/mol of heat.

Q16.3.5

Using the relevant S°_{298} values listed in Appendix G, calculate S°_{298} for the following changes:

a. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g)$
b. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + \frac{5}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{N_2O_5}(g)$

S16.3.5

−198.1 J/K; −348.9 J/K

Q16.3.6

From the following information, determine ΔS°_{298} for the following:

a. $\mathrm{N}(g) + \mathrm{O}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NO}(g) \quad \Delta S^\circ_{298} = ?$
b. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NO}(g) \quad \Delta S^\circ_{298} = 24.8\ \mathrm{J/K}$
c. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{N}(g) \quad \Delta S^\circ_{298} = 115.0\ \mathrm{J/K}$
d. $\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{O}(g) \quad \Delta S^\circ_{298} = 117.0\ \mathrm{J/K}$

Q16.3.7

By calculating ΔS_{univ} at each temperature, determine if the melting of 1 mole of NaCl(*s*) is spontaneous at 500 °C and at 700 °C.

S^\circ_{\ce{NaCl}(s)}=\mathrm{72.11\:\dfrac{J}{mol·K}}\hspace{40px} S^\circ_{\ce{NaCl}(l)}=\mathrm{95.06\:\dfrac{J}{mol·K}}\hspace{40px ΔH^\circ_\ce{fusion}=\mathrm{27.95\: kJ/mol}

What assumptions are made about the thermodynamic information (entropy and enthalpy values) used to solve this problem?

S16.3.7

As $\Delta S_{\text{univ}} < 0$ at each of these temperatures, melting is not spontaneous at either of them. The given values for entropy and enthalpy are for NaCl at 298 K. It is assumed that these do not change significantly at the higher temperatures used in the problem.

Q16.3.8

Use the standard entropy data in Appendix G to determine the change in entropy for each of the reactions listed in [link]. All are run under standard state conditions and 25 °C.

Q16.3.8

2.86 J/K; 24.8 J/K; −113.2 J/K; −24.7 J/K; 15.5 J/K; 290.0 J/K

16.4: Free Energy

Q16.4.1

What is the difference between ΔG, $\Delta G°$, and ΔG°_{298} for a chemical change?

Q16.4.2

A reactions has ΔH°_{298} = 100 kJ/mol and $\Delta S^\circ_{298} = 250\ \mathrm{J/mol{\cdot}K}$. Is the reaction spontaneous at room temperature? If not, under what temperature conditions will it become spontaneous?

S16.4.2

The reaction is nonspontaneous at room temperature. Above 400 K, ΔG will become negative, and the reaction will become spontaneous.

Q16.4.3

Explain what happens as a reaction starts with $\Delta G < 0$ (negative) and reaches the point where $\Delta G = 0$.

Use the standard free energy of formation data in Appendix G to determine the free energy change for each of the following reactions, which are run under standard state conditions and 25 °C. Identify each as either spontaneous or nonspontaneous at these conditions.

a. $\mathrm{MnO_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g)$
b. $\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{Br_2}(l) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{HBr}(g)$
c. $\mathrm{Cu}(s) + \mathrm{S}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CuS}(s)$
d. $2\,\mathrm{LiOH}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Li_2CO_3}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g)$
e. $\mathrm{CH_4}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{C}(s,\ \text{graphite}) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g)$
f. $\mathrm{CS_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CCl_4}(g) + \mathrm{S_2Cl_2}(g)$

S16.4.3

465.1 kJ nonspontaneous; −106.86 kJ spontaneous; −53.6 kJ spontaneous; −83.4 kJ spontaneous; −406.7 kJ spontaneous; −30.0 kJ spontaneous

Q16.4.4

Use the standard free energy data in Appendix G to determine the free energy change for each of the following reactions, which are run under standard state conditions and 25 °C. Identify each as either spontaneous or nonspontaneous at these conditions.

a. $\mathrm{C}(s,\ \text{graphite}) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$
b. $\mathrm{O_2}(g) + \mathrm{N_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NO}(g)$
c. $2\,\mathrm{Cu}(s) + \mathrm{S}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cu_2S}(s)$
d. $\mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}(s)$
e. $\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{CO}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g)$
f. $\mathrm{CaSO_4 \cdot 2\,H_2O}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CaSO_4}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g)$

Given:

$$\mathrm{P_4}(s) + 5\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{P_4O_{10}}(s) \quad \Delta G^\circ_{298} = -2697.0\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} \tag{4.9.7}$$

$$2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) \quad \Delta G^\circ_{298} = -457.18\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} \tag{4.9.8}$$

$$6\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) + \mathrm{P_4O_{10}}(g) \longrightarrow 4\,\mathrm{H_3PO_4}(l) \quad \Delta G^\circ_{298} = -428.66\ \mathrm{kJ/mol} \tag{4.9.9}$$

Q16.4.5

a. Determine the standard free energy of formation, $\Delta G^\circ_\mathrm{f}$, for phosphoric acid.
b. How does your calculated result compare to the value in Appendix G? Explain.

S16.4.5

−1124.3 kJ/mol for the standard free energy change. The calculation agrees with the value in Appendix G because free energy is a state function (just like the enthalpy and entropy), so its change depends only on the initial and final states, not the path between them.

Q16.4.6

Is the formation of ozone ($O_3(g)$) from oxygen ($O_2(g)$) spontaneous at room temperature under standard state conditions?

Q16.4.7

Consider the decomposition of red mercury(II) oxide under standard state conditions.

$$2\,\mathrm{HgO}(s,\ \mathrm{red}) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Hg}(l) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \tag{4.9.10}$$

a. Is the decomposition spontaneous under standard state conditions?
b. Above what temperature does the reaction become spontaneous?

S16.4.7

The reaction is nonspontaneous; Above 566 °C the process is spontaneous.

Q16.4.8

Among other things, an ideal fuel for the control thrusters of a space vehicle should decompose in a spontaneous exothermic reaction when exposed to the appropriate catalyst. Evaluate the following substances under standard state conditions as suitable candidates for fuels.

a. Ammonia: $2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$
b. Diborane: $\mathrm{B_2H_6}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{B}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$
c. Hydrazine: $\mathrm{N_2H_4}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{N_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$
d. Hydrogen peroxide: $\mathrm{H_2O_2}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}(g) + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2}(g)$

Q16.4.9

Calculate $\Delta G°$ for each of the following reactions from the equilibrium constant at the temperature given.

a. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NO}(g) \quad \mathrm{T} = 2000\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 4.1 \times 10^{-4}$
b. $\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{I_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{HI}(g) \quad \mathrm{T} = 400\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 50.0$
c. $\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \quad \mathrm{T} = 980\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 1.67$
d. $\mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \quad \mathrm{T} = 900\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 1.04$
e. $\mathrm{HF}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{F^-}(aq) \quad \mathrm{T} = 25\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 7.2 \times 10^{-4}$
f. $\mathrm{AgBr}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Br^-}(aq) \quad \mathrm{T} = 25\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 3.3 \times 10^{-13}$

S16.4.9

1.5 × 10^2 kJ; −21.9 kJ; −5.34 kJ; −0.383 kJ; 18 kJ; 71 kJ

Q16.4.10

Calculate $\Delta G°$ for each of the following reactions from the equilibrium constant at the temperature given.

a. $\mathrm{Cl_2}(g) + \mathrm{Br_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{BrCl}(g) \quad \mathrm{T} = 25\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 4.7 \times 10^{-2}$
b. $2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g) \quad \mathrm{T} = 500\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 48.2$
c. $\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \quad \mathrm{T} = 60\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 0.196\ \mathrm{atm}$
d. $\mathrm{CoO}(s) + \mathrm{CO}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Co}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \quad \mathrm{T} = 550\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 4.90 \times 10^2$
e. $\mathrm{CH_3NH_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3NH_3^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \quad \mathrm{T} = 25\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 4.4 \times 10^{-4}$
f. $\mathrm{PbI_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Pb^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{I^-}(aq) \quad \mathrm{T} = 25\ ^\circ\mathrm{C} \quad K_p = 8.7 \times 10^{-9}$

Q16.4.11

Calculate the equilibrium constant at 25 °C for each of the following reactions from the value of $\Delta G°$ given.

a. $\mathrm{O_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{F_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{OF_2}(g) \quad \Delta G^\circ = -9.2\ \mathrm{kJ}$
b. $\mathrm{I_2}(s) + \mathrm{Br_2}(l) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{IBr}(g) \quad \Delta G^\circ = 7.3\ \mathrm{kJ}$
c. $2\,\mathrm{LiOH}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Li_2CO_3}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \quad \Delta G^\circ = -79\ \mathrm{kJ}$
d. $\mathrm{N_2O_3}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NO}(g) + \mathrm{NO_2}(g) \quad \Delta G^\circ = -1.6\ \mathrm{kJ}$
e. $\mathrm{SnCl_4}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{SnCl_4}(l) \quad \Delta G^\circ = 8.0\ \mathrm{kJ}$

S16.4.11

K = 41; *K* = 0.053; *K* = 6.9 × 10^{13}; *K* = 1.9; *K* = 0.04

Q16.4.2

Calculate the equilibrium constant at 25 °C for each of the following reactions from the value of $\Delta G°$ given.

a. $\mathrm{I_2}(s) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{ICl}(g) \quad \Delta G^\circ = -10.88\ \mathrm{kJ}$
b. $\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{I_2}(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{HI}(g) \quad \Delta G^\circ = 3.4\ \mathrm{kJ}$
c. $\mathrm{CS_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CCl_4}(g) + \mathrm{S_2Cl_2}(g) \quad \Delta G^\circ = -39\ \mathrm{kJ}$
d. $2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g) \quad \Delta G^\circ = -141.82\ \mathrm{kJ}$
e. $\mathrm{CS_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CS_2}(l) \quad \Delta G^\circ = -1.88\ \mathrm{kJ}$

Q16.4.13

Calculate the equilibrium constant at the temperature given.

a. (a) $\mathrm{O_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{F_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{F_2O}(g) \quad (\mathrm{T} = 100\ ^\circ\mathrm{C})$
b. $\mathrm{I_2}(s) + \mathrm{Br_2}(l) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{IBr}(g) \quad (\mathrm{T} = 0.0\ ^\circ\mathrm{C})$

c. $2\,\mathrm{LiOH}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Li_2CO_3}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \quad (\mathrm{T} = 575\ ^\circ\mathrm{C})$
d. $\mathrm{N_2O_3}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NO}(g) + \mathrm{NO_2}(g) \quad (\mathrm{T} = -10.0\ ^\circ\mathrm{C})$
e. $\mathrm{SnCl_4}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{SnCl_4}(g) \quad (\mathrm{T} = 200\ ^\circ\mathrm{C})$

S16.4.13

In each of the following, the value of ΔG is not given at the temperature of the reaction. Therefore, we must calculate $\Delta G°$ from the values $\Delta H°$ and $\Delta S°$ and then calculate ΔG from the relation $\Delta G° = \Delta H° - T\Delta S°$.

a. $K = 1.29$
b. $K = 2.51 \times 10^{-3}$
c. $K = 4.83 \times 10^{3}$
d. $K = 0.219$
e. $K = 16.1$

Q16.4.14

Calculate the equilibrium constant at the temperature given.

a. (a) $\mathrm{I_2}(s) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{ICl}(g) \quad (\mathrm{T} = 100\ ^\circ\mathrm{C})$
b. $\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{I_2}(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{HI}(g) \quad (\mathrm{T} = 0.0\ ^\circ\mathrm{C})$
c. $\mathrm{CS_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CCl_4}(g) + \mathrm{S_2Cl_2}(g) \quad (\mathrm{T} = 125\ ^\circ\mathrm{C})$
d. $2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g) \quad (\mathrm{T} = 675\ ^\circ\mathrm{C})$
e. $\mathrm{CS_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CS_2}(l) \quad (\mathrm{T} = 90\ ^\circ\mathrm{C})$

Q16.4.15

Consider the following reaction at 298 K:

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO_2}(g) \quad K_P = 0.142 \tag{4.9.11}$$

What is the standard free energy change at this temperature? Describe what happens to the initial system, where the reactants and products are in standard states, as it approaches equilibrium.

S16.4.16

The standard free energy change is $\Delta G°_{298} = -RT\ln K = 4.84\ \mathrm{kJ/mol}$. When reactants and products are in their standard states (1 bar or 1 atm), $Q = 1$. As the reaction proceeds toward equilibrium, the reaction shifts left (the amount of products drops while the amount of reactants increases): $Q < 1$, and ΔG_{298} becomes less positive as it approaches zero. At equilibrium, $Q = K$, and $\Delta G = 0$.

Q16.4.17

Determine the normal boiling point (in kelvin) of dichloroethane, $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$. Find the actual boiling point using the Internet or some other source, and calculate the percent error in the temperature. Explain the differences, if any, between the two values.

Q16.4.18

Under what conditions is $\mathrm{N_2O_3}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NO}(g) + \mathrm{NO_2}(g)$ spontaneous?

S16.4.18

The reaction will be spontaneous at temperatures greater than 287 K.

Q16.4.19

At room temperature, the equilibrium constant (K_w) for the self-ionization of water is 1.00×10^{-14}. Using this information, calculate the standard free energy change for the aqueous reaction of hydrogen ion with hydroxide ion to produce water. (Hint: The reaction is the reverse of the self-ionization reaction.)

Q16.4.20

Hydrogen sulfide is a pollutant found in natural gas. Following its removal, it is converted to sulfur by the reaction $2\,\mathrm{H_2S}(g) + \mathrm{SO_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \frac{3}{8}\mathrm{S_8}(s,\ \text{rhombic}) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$. What is the equilibrium constant for this reaction? Is the reaction endothermic or exothermic?

S16.4.20

$K = 5.35 \times 10^{15}$

The process is exothermic.

Q16.4.21

Consider the decomposition of $\mathrm{CaCO_3}(s)$ into $\mathrm{CaO}(s)$ and $\mathrm{CO_2}(g)$. What is the equilibrium partial pressure of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ at room temperature?

Q16.4.22

In the laboratory, hydrogen chloride ($\mathrm{HCl}(g)$) and ammonia ($\mathrm{NH_3}(g)$) often escape from bottles of their solutions and react to form the ammonium chloride ($\mathrm{NH_4Cl}(s)$), the white glaze often seen on glassware. Assuming that the number of moles of each gas that escapes into the room is the same, what is the maximum partial pressure of HCl and $\mathrm{NH_3}$ in the laboratory at room temperature? (Hint: The partial pressures will be equal and are at their maximum value when at equilibrium.)

S16.4.22

1.0×10^{-8} atm. This is the maximum pressure of the gases under the stated conditions.

Q16.4.23

Benzene can be prepared from acetylene. $3\,\mathrm{C_2H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{C_6H_6}(g)$. Determine the equilibrium constant at 25 °C and at 850 °C. Is the reaction spontaneous at either of these temperatures? Why is all acetylene not found as benzene?

Q16.4.24

Carbon dioxide decomposes into CO and O_2 at elevated temperatures. What is the equilibrium partial pressure of oxygen in a sample at 1000 °C for which the initial pressure of CO_2 was 1.15 atm?

$$x = 1.29 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{atm} = P_{O_2} \tag{4.9.12}$$

Q16.4.25

Carbon tetrachloride, an important industrial solvent, is prepared by the chlorination of methane at 850 K.

$$\text{CH}_4(g) + 4\,\text{Cl}_2(g) \longrightarrow \text{CCl}_4(g) + 4\,\text{HCl}(g) \tag{4.9.13}$$

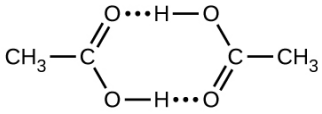
What is the equilibrium constant for the reaction at 850 K? Would the reaction vessel need to be heated or cooled to keep the temperature of the reaction constant?

Q16.4.25B

Acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H, can form a dimer, $(CH_3CO_2H)_2$, in the gas phase.

$$2\,\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}(g) \longrightarrow (\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2(g) \tag{4.9.14}$$

The dimer is held together by two hydrogen bonds with a total strength of 66.5 kJ per mole of dimer.



At 25 °C, the equilibrium constant for the dimerization is 1.3×10^3 (pressure in atm). What is $\Delta S°$ for the reaction?

S16.4.25B

−0.16 kJ

Q16.4.26

Nitric acid, HNO_3, can be prepared by the following sequence of reactions:

$$4\,\text{NH}_3(g) + 5\,\text{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow 4\,\text{NO}(g) + 6\,\text{H}_2\text{O}(g) \tag{4.9.15}$$

$$2\,\text{NO}(g) + \text{O}_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\text{NO}_2(g) \tag{4.9.16}$$

$$3\,\text{NO}_2(g) + \text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \longrightarrow 2\,\text{HNO}_3(l) + \text{NO}(g) \tag{4.9.17}$$

How much heat is evolved when 1 mol of $NH_3(g)$ is converted to $HNO_3(l)$? Assume standard states at 25 °C.

Q16.4.27A

Determine ΔG for the following reactions.

(a) Antimony pentachloride decomposes at 448 °C. The reaction is:

$$\text{SbCl}_5(g) \longrightarrow \text{SbCl}_3(g) + \text{Cl}_2(g) \tag{4.9.18}$$

An equilibrium mixture in a 5.00 L flask at 448 °C contains 3.85 g of $SbCl_5$, 9.14 g of $SbCl_3$, and 2.84 g of Cl_2.

Chlorine molecules dissociate according to this reaction:

$$\text{Cl}_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\text{Cl}(g) \tag{4.9.19}$$

1.00% of Cl_2 molecules dissociate at 975 K and a pressure of 1.00 atm.

S16.4.27A

a. (a) −22.1 kJ;
b. 61.6 kJ/mol

Q16.4.27

Given that the ΔG_f° for $Pb^{2+}(aq)$ and $Cl^-(aq)$ is −24.3 kJ/mole and −131.2 kJ/mole respectively, determine the solubility product, K_{sp}, for $PbCl_2(s)$.

Q16.4.28

Determine the standard free energy change, ΔG_f°, for the formation of $S^{2-}(aq)$ given that the ΔG_f° for $Ag^+(aq)$ and $Ag_2S(s)$ are 77.1 k/mole and −39.5 kJ/mole respectively, and the solubility product for $Ag_2S(s)$ is 8×10^{-51}.

S16.4.28

90 kJ/mol

Q16.4.29

Determine the standard enthalpy change, entropy change, and free energy change for the conversion of diamond to graphite. Discuss the spontaneity of the conversion with respect to the enthalpy and entropy changes. Explain why diamond spontaneously changing into graphite is not observed.

Q16.4.30

The evaporation of one mole of water at 298 K has a standard free energy change of 8.58 kJ.

$$\text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_2\text{O}(g) \quad \Delta G^\circ_{298} = 8.58\ \text{kJ} \tag{4.9.20}$$

a. (a) Is the evaporation of water under standard thermodynamic conditions spontaneous?
b. Determine the equilibrium constant, K_P, for this physical process.

c. By calculating ΔG, determine if the evaporation of water at 298 K is spontaneous when the partial pressure of water, $P_{\mathrm{H_2O}}$, is 0.011 atm.
d. If the evaporation of water were always nonspontaneous at room temperature, wet laundry would never dry when placed outside. In order for laundry to dry, what must be the value of $P_{\mathrm{H_2O}}$ in the air?

S16.4.30

(a) Under standard thermodynamic conditions, the evaporation is nonspontaneous; K_p = 0.031; The evaporation of water is spontaneous; $P_{\mathrm{H_2O}}$ must always be less than K_p or less than 0.031 atm. 0.031 atm represents air saturated with water vapor at 25 °C, or 100% humidity.

Q16.4.31

In glycolysis, the reaction of glucose (Glu) to form glucose-6-phosphate (G6P) requires ATP to be present as described by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{Glu} + \mathrm{ATP} \longrightarrow \mathrm{G6P} + \mathrm{ADP} \quad \Delta G^\circ_{298} = -17\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.9.21}$$

In this process, ATP becomes ADP summarized by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{ATP} \longrightarrow \mathrm{ADP} \quad \Delta G^\circ_{298} = -30\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.9.22}$$

Determine the standard free energy change for the following reaction, and explain why ATP is necessary to drive this process:

$$\mathrm{Glu} \longrightarrow \mathrm{G6P} \quad \Delta G^\circ_{298} = ? \tag{4.9.23}$$

Q16.4.32

One of the important reactions in the biochemical pathway glycolysis is the reaction of glucose-6-phosphate (G6P) to form fructose-6-phosphate (F6P):

$$\mathrm{G6P} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{F6P} \quad \Delta G^\circ_{298} = 1.7\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.9.24}$$

a. (a) Is the reaction spontaneous or nonspontaneous under standard thermodynamic conditions?
b. Standard thermodynamic conditions imply the concentrations of G6P and F6P to be 1 *M*, however, in a typical cell, they are not even close to these values. Calculate ΔG when the concentrations of G6P and F6P are 120 μ*M* and 28 μ*M* respectively, and discuss the spontaneity of the forward reaction under these conditions. Assume the temperature is 37 °C.

S16.4.32

(a) Nonspontaneous as $\Delta G^\circ_{298} > 0$; $\Delta G^\circ_{298} = -RT\ln K$, $\Delta G = 1.7 \times 10^3 + \left(8.314 \times 335 \times \ln\dfrac{28}{128}\right) = -2.5\ \mathrm{kJ}$. The forward reaction to produce F6P is spontaneous under these conditions.

Q16.4.33

Without doing a numerical calculation, determine which of the following will reduce the free energy change for the reaction, that is, make it less positive or more negative, when the temperature is increased. Explain.

a. (a) $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g)$
b. $\mathrm{HCl}(g) + \mathrm{NH_3}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_4Cl}(s)$
c. $\mathrm{(NH_4)_2Cr_2O_7}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cr_2O_3}(s) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) + \mathrm{N_2}(g)$
d. $2\,\mathrm{Fe}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe_2O_3}(s)$

When ammonium chloride is added to water and stirred, it dissolves spontaneously and the resulting solution feels cold. Without doing any calculations, deduce the signs of ΔG, ΔH, and ΔS for this process, and justify your choices.

S16.4.33

ΔG is negative as the process is spontaneous. ΔH is positive as with the solution becoming cold, the dissolving must be endothermic. ΔS must be positive as this drives the process, and it is expected for the dissolution of any soluble ionic compound.

Q16.4.34

An important source of copper is from the copper ore, chalcocite, a form of copper(I) sulfide. When heated, the Cu_2S decomposes to form copper and sulfur described by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{Cu_2S}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cu}(s) + \mathrm{S}(s) \tag{4.9.25}$$

a. (a) Determine ΔG°_{298} for the decomposition of $Cu_2S(s)$.
b. The reaction of sulfur with oxygen yields sulfur dioxide as the only product. Write an equation that describes this reaction, and determine ΔG°_{298} for the process.
c. The production of copper from chalcocite is performed by roasting the Cu_2S in air to produce the Cu. By combining the equations from Parts (a) and (b), write the equation that describes the roasting of the chalcocite, and explain why coupling these reactions together makes for a more efficient process for the production of the copper.

Q16.4.35

What happens to ΔG°_{298} (becomes more negative or more positive) for the following chemical reactions when the partial pressure of oxygen is increased?

a. (a) $\mathrm{S}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{SO_2}(g)$
b. $2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{SO_3}(g)$
c. $\mathrm{HgO}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hg}(l) + \mathrm{O_2}(g)$

S16.4.35

a. (a) Increasing $P_{\mathrm{O_2}}$ will shift the equilibrium toward the products, which increases the value of *K*. ΔG°_{298} therefore becomes more negative.
b. Increasing $P_{\mathrm{O_2}}$ will shift the equilibrium toward the products, which increases the value of *K*. ΔG°_{298} therefore becomes more negative.
c. Increasing $P_{\mathrm{O_2}}$ will shift the equilibrium the reactants, which decreases the value of *K*. ΔG°_{298} therefore becomes more positive.

This page titled 4.9: Thermodynamics (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Electrochemistry

A general chemistry Libretexts Textbook remixed and remastered from OpenStax's textbook:

General Chemistry

Electrochemistry deals with chemical reactions that produce electricity and the changes associated with the passage of electrical current through matter. The reactions involve electron transfer, and so they are oxidation-reduction (or redox) reactions. Many metals may be purified or electroplated using electrochemical methods. Devices such as automobiles, smartphones, electronic tablets, watches, pacemakers, and many others use batteries for power. Batteries use chemical reactions that produce electricity spontaneously and that can be converted into useful work. All electrochemical systems involve the transfer of electrons in a reacting system. In many systems, the reactions occur in a region known as the cell, where the transfer of electrons occurs at electrodes.

5.1: Balancing Oxidation-Reduction Reactions
5.2: Galvanic Cells
5.3: Standard Reduction Potentials
5.4: The Nernst Equation
5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells
5.6: Corrosion
5.7: Electrolysis
5.8: Electrochemistry (Exercises)

Contributors

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 5: Electrochemistry is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

5.1: Balancing Oxidation-Reduction Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Define electrochemistry and a number of important associated terms
- Split oxidation-reduction reactions into their oxidation half-reactions and reduction half-reactions
- Produce balanced oxidation-reduction equations for reactions in acidic or basic solution
- Identify oxidizing agents and reducing agents

Electricity refers to a number of phenomena associated with the presence and flow of electric charge. Electricity includes such diverse things as lightning, static electricity, the current generated by a battery as it discharges, and many other influences on our daily lives. The flow or movement of charge is an electric current (Figure 5.1.1). Electrons or ions may carry the charge. The elementary unit of charge is the charge of a proton, which is equal in magnitude to the charge of an electron. The SI unit of charge is the coulomb (C) and the charge of a proton is 1.602×10^{-19} C. The presence of an electric charge generates an electric field. Electric current is the rate of flow of charge.



Figure 5.1.1: Electricity-related phenomena include lightning, accumulation of static electricity, and current produced by a battery. (credit left: modification of work by Thomas Bresson; credit middle: modification of work by Chris Darling; credit right: modification of work by Windell Oskay).

The SI unit for electrical current is the SI base unit called the ampere (A), which is a flow rate of 1 coulomb of charge per second (1 A = 1 C/s). An electric current flows in a path, called an electric circuit. In most chemical systems, it is necessary to maintain a closed path for current to flow. The flow of charge is generated by an electrical potential difference, or potential, between two points in the circuit. Electrical potential is the ability of the electric field to do work on the charge. The SI unit of electrical potential is the volt (V). When 1 coulomb of charge moves through a potential difference of 1 volt, it gains or loses 1 joule (J) of energy. Table 5.1.1 summarizes some of this information about electricity.

Table 5.1.1: Common Electrical Terms

Quantity	Definition	Measure or Unit
Electric charge	Charge on a proton	1.602×10^{-19} C
Electric current	The movement of charge	ampere = A = 1 C/s
Electric potential	The force trying to move the charge	volt = V = J/C
Electric field	The force acting upon other charges in the vicinity	

Electrochemistry studies oxidation-reduction reactions, which were first discussed in an earlier chapter, where we learned that oxidation was the loss of electrons and reduction was the gain of electrons. The reactions discussed tended to be rather simple, and conservation of mass (atom counting by type) and deriving a correctly balanced chemical equation were relatively simple. In this section, we will concentrate on the half-reaction method for balancing oxidation-reduction reactions. The use of half-reactions is important partly for balancing more complicated reactions and partly because many aspects of electrochemistry are easier to discuss in terms of half-reactions. There are alternate methods of balancing these reactions; however, there are no good alternatives to half-reactions for discussing what is occurring in many systems. The half-reaction method splits oxidation-reduction reactions into their oxidation “half” and reduction “half” to make finding the overall equation easier.

Electrochemical reactions frequently occur in solutions, which could be acidic, basic, or neutral. When balancing oxidation-reduction reactions, the nature of the solution may be important. It helps to see this in an actual problem. Consider the following unbalanced oxidation-reduction reaction in acidic solution:

$$\mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{Fe^{2+}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{Fe^{3+}}(aq)$$

We can start by collecting the species we have so far into an unbalanced oxidation half-reaction and an unbalanced reduction half-reaction. Each of these half-reactions contain the same element in two different oxidation states. The Fe^{2+} has lost an electron to become Fe^{3+}; therefore, the iron underwent oxidation. The reduction is not as obvious; however, the manganese gained five electrons to change from Mn^{7+} to Mn^{2+}.

$$\text{oxidation (unbalanced): } \mathrm{Fe^{2+}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe^{3+}}(aq)$$
$$\text{reduction (unbalanced): } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq)$$

In acidic solution, there are hydrogen ions present, which are often useful in balancing half-reactions. It may be necessary to use the hydrogen ions directly or as a reactant that may react with oxygen to generate water. Hydrogen ions are very important in acidic solutions where the reactants or products contain hydrogen and/or oxygen. In this example, the oxidation half-reaction involves neither hydrogen nor oxygen, so hydrogen ions are not necessary to the balancing. However, the reduction half-reaction does involve oxygen. It is necessary to use hydrogen ions to convert this oxygen to water.

$$\text{charge not balanced: } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 8\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

The situation is different in basic solution because the hydrogen ion concentration is lower and the hydroxide ion concentration is higher. After finishing this example, we will examine how basic solutions differ from acidic solutions. A neutral solution may be treated as acidic or basic, though treating it as acidic is usually easier.

The iron atoms in the oxidation half-reaction are balanced (mass balance); however, the charge is unbalanced, since the charges on the ions are not equal. It is necessary to use electrons to balance the charge. The way to balance the charge is by *adding* electrons to one side of the equation. Adding a single electron on the right side gives a balanced oxidation half-reaction:

$$\text{oxidation (balanced): } \mathrm{Fe^{2+}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe^{3+}}(aq) + \mathrm{e^-}$$

You should check the half-reaction for the number of each atom type and the total charge on each side of the equation. The charges include the actual charges of the ions times the number of ions and the charge on an electron times the number of electrons.

$$\text{Fe: Does } (1 \times 1) = (1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}$$
$$\text{Charge: Does } [1 \times (+2)] = [1 \times (+3) + 1 \times (-1)]\text{? Yes.}$$

If the atoms and charges balance, the half-reaction is balanced. In oxidation half-reactions, electrons appear as products (on the right). As discussed in the earlier chapter, since iron underwent oxidation, iron is the reducing agent.

Now return to the reduction half-reaction equation:

$$\text{reduction (unbalanced): } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 8\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

The atoms are balanced (mass balance), so it is now necessary to check for charge balance. The total charge on the left of the reaction arrow is [(−1) × (1) + (8) × (+1)], or +7, while the total charge on the right side is [(1) × (+2) + (4) × (0)], or +2. The difference between +7 and +2 is five; therefore, it is necessary to add five electrons to the left side to achieve charge balance.

$$\text{Reduction (balanced): } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 8\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 5\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

You should check this half-reaction for each atom type and for the charge, as well:

$$\text{Mn: Does } (1 \times 1) = (1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}$$
$$\text{H: Does } (8 \times 1) = (4 \times 2)\text{? Yes.}$$
$$\text{O: Does } (1 \times 4) = (4 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}$$
$$\text{Charge: Does } [1 \times (-1) + 8 \times (+1) + 5 \times (-1)] = [1 \times (+2)]\text{? Yes.}$$

Now that this half-reaction is balanced, it is easy to see it involves reduction because electrons were gained when MnO_4^- was reduced to Mn^{2+}. In all reduction half-reactions, electrons appear as reactants (on the left side). As discussed in the earlier chapter, the species that was reduced, MnO_4^- in this case, is also called the oxidizing agent. We now have two balanced half-reactions.

$$\text{oxidation: } \mathrm{Fe^{2+}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe^{3+}}(aq) + \mathrm{e^-}$$
$$\text{reduction: } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 8\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 5\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

It is now necessary to combine the two halves to produce a whole reaction. The key to combining the half-reactions is the electrons. The electrons lost during oxidation must go somewhere. These electrons go to cause reduction. The number of electrons transferred from the oxidation half-reaction to the reduction half-reaction must be equal. There can be no missing or excess electrons. In this example, the oxidation half-reaction generates one electron, while the reduction half-reaction requires five. The lowest common multiple of one and five is five; therefore, it is necessary to multiply every term in the oxidation half-reaction by five and every term in the reduction half-reaction by one. (In this case, the multiplication of the reduction half-reaction generates no change; however, this will not always be the case.) The multiplication of the two half-reactions by the appropriate factor followed by addition of the two halves gives

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{oxidation: } 5 \times (\mathrm{Fe^{2+}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe^{3+}}(aq) + \mathrm{e^-})\\ &\text{reduction: } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 8\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 5\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)\\ \hline &\text{overall: } 5\,\mathrm{Fe^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 8\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) \longrightarrow 5\,\mathrm{Fe^{3+}}(aq) + \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)\end{aligned}$$

The electrons do not appear in the final answer because the oxidation electrons are the same electrons as the reduction electrons and they “cancel.” Carefully check each side of the overall equation to verify everything was combined correctly:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Fe: Does } (5 \times 1) = (5 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{Mn: Does } (1 \times 1) = (1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{H: Does } (8 \times 1) = (4 \times 2)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{O: Does } (1 \times 4) = (4 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{Charge: Does } [5 \times (+2) + 1 \times (-1) + 8 \times (+1)] = [5 \times (+3) + 1 \times (+2)]\text{? Yes.}\end{aligned}$$

Everything checks, so this is the overall equation in acidic solution. If something does not check, the most common error occurs during the multiplication of the individual half-reactions.

Now suppose we wanted the solution to be basic. Recall that basic solutions have excess hydroxide ions. Some of these hydroxide ions will react with hydrogen ions to produce water. The simplest way to generate the balanced overall equation in basic solution is to start with the balanced equation in acidic solution, then “convert” it to the equation for basic solution. However, it is necessary to exercise caution when doing this, as many reactants behave differently under basic conditions and many metal ions will precipitate as the metal hydroxide. We just produced the following reaction, which we want to change to a basic reaction:

$$5\,\mathrm{Fe^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 8\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) \longrightarrow 5\,\mathrm{Fe^{3+}}(aq) + \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

However, under basic conditions, $\mathrm{MnO_4^-}$ normally reduces to $\mathrm{MnO_2}$ and iron will be present as either $\mathrm{Fe(OH)_2}$ or $\mathrm{Fe(OH)_3}$. For these reasons, under basic conditions, this reaction will be

$$3\,\mathrm{Fe(OH)_2}(s) + \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{Fe(OH)_3}(s) + \mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

(Under very basic conditions $\mathrm{MnO_4^-}$ will reduce to $\mathrm{MnO_4^{2-}}$, instead of $\mathrm{MnO_2}$.)

It is still possible to balance any oxidation-reduction reaction as an acidic reaction and then, when necessary, convert the equation to a basic reaction. This will work if the acidic and basic reactants and products are the same or if the basic reactants and products are used before the conversion from acidic or basic. There are very few examples in which the acidic and basic reactions will involve the same reactants and products. However, balancing a basic reaction as acidic and then converting to basic will work. To convert to a basic reaction, it is necessary to add the same number of hydroxide ions to each side of the equation so that all the hydrogen ions ($\mathrm{H^+}$) are removed and mass balance is maintained. Hydrogen ion combines with hydroxide ion ($\mathrm{OH^-}$) to produce water.

Let us now try a basic equation. We will start with the following basic reaction:

$$\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) + \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ClO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{MnO_2}(s)$$

Balancing this as acid gives

$$\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ClO_3^-}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

In this case, it is necessary to add two hydroxide ions to each side of the equation to convert the two hydrogen ions on the left into water:

$$\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + (2\,\mathrm{H^+} + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-})(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ClO_3^-}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + (2\,\mathrm{H_2O})(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ClO_3^-}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

Note that both sides of the equation show water. Simplifying should be done when necessary, and gives the desired equation. In this case, it is necessary to remove one H_2O from each side of the reaction arrows.

$$\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ClO_3^-}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

Again, check each side of the overall equation to make sure there are no errors:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{Cl: Does } (1 \times 1) = (1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\
&\text{Mn: Does } (2 \times 1) = (2 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\
&\text{H: Does } (1 \times 2) = (2 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\
&\text{O: Does } (2 \times 4 + 1 \times 1) = (3 \times 1 + 2 \times 2 + 2 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\
&\text{Charge: Does } [1 \times (-1) + 2 \times (-1)] = [1 \times (-1) + 2 \times (-1)]\text{? Yes.}
\end{aligned}$$

Everything checks, so this is the overall equation in basic solution.

Example 5.1.1: Balancing Acidic Oxidation-Reduction Reactions

Balance the following reaction equation in acidic solution:

$$\mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{Cr^{3+}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}(aq)$$

Solution

This is an oxidation-reduction reaction, so start by collecting the species given into an unbalanced oxidation half-reaction and an unbalanced reduction half-reaction.

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{oxidation (unbalanced): } \mathrm{Cr^{3+}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}(aq)\\
&\text{reduction (unbalanced): } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq)
\end{aligned}$$

Starting with the oxidation half-reaction, we can balance the chromium

$$\text{oxidation (unbalanced): } 2\,\mathrm{Cr^{3+}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}(aq)$$

In acidic solution, we can use or generate hydrogen ions (H^+). Adding seven water molecules to the left side provides the necessary oxygen; the “left over” hydrogen appears as 14 H^+ on the right:

$$\text{oxidation (unbalanced): } 2\,\mathrm{Cr^{3+}}(aq) + 7\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}(aq) + 14\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq)$$

The left side of the equation has a total charge of [2 × (+3) = +6], and the right side a total charge of [−2 + 14 × (+1) = +12]. The difference is six; adding six electrons to the right side produces a mass- and charge-balanced oxidation half-reaction (in acidic solution):

$$\text{oxidation (balanced): } 2\,\mathrm{Cr^{3+}}(aq) + 7\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}(aq) + 14\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 6\,\mathrm{e^-}$$

Checking the half-reaction:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{Cr: Does } (2 \times 1) = (1 \times 2)\text{? Yes.}\\
&\text{H: Does } (7 \times 2) = (14 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\
&\text{O: Does } (7 \times 1) = (1 \times 7)\text{? Yes.}\\
&\text{Charge: Does } [2 \times (+3)] = [1 \times (-2) + 14 \times (+1) + 6 \times (-1)]\text{? Yes.}
\end{aligned}$$

Now work on the reduction. It is necessary to convert the four oxygen atoms in the permanganate into four water molecules. To do this, add eight H^+ to convert the oxygen into four water molecules:

$$\text{reduction (unbalanced): } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 8\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

Then add five electrons to the left side to balance the charge:

$$\text{reduction (balanced): } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 8\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 5\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

Make sure to check the half-reaction:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Mn: Does } (1\times1)=(1\times1)\text{? Yes.}\\&\text{H: Does } (8\times1)=(4\times2)\text{? Yes.}\\&\text{O: Does } (1\times4)=(4\times1)\text{? Yes.}\\&\text{Charge: Does } [1\times(-1)+8\times(+1)+5\times(-1)]=[1\times(+2)]\text{? Yes.}\end{aligned}$$

Collecting what we have so far:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{oxidation: } 2\,Cr^{3+}(aq)+7\,H_2O(l)\longrightarrow Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq)+14\,H^+(aq)+6\,e^-\\&\text{reduction: } MnO_4^-(aq)+8\,H^+(aq)+5\,e^-\longrightarrow Mn^{2+}(aq)+4\,H_2O(l)\end{aligned}$$

The least common multiple for the electrons is 30, so multiply the oxidation half-reaction by five, the reduction half-reaction by six, combine, and simplify:

$$10\,Cr^{3+}(aq)+35\,H_2O(l)+6\,MnO_4^-(aq)+48\,H^+(aq)\longrightarrow 5\,Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq)+70\,H^+(aq)+6\,Mn^{2+}(aq)+24\,H_2O(l)$$

$$10\,Cr^{3+}(aq)+11\,H_2O(l)+6\,MnO_4^-(aq)\longrightarrow 5\,Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq)+22\,H^+(aq)+6\,Mn^{2+}(aq)$$

Checking each side of the equation:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Mn: Does } (6\times1)=(6\times1)\text{? Yes.}\\&\text{Cr: Does } (10\times1)=(5\times2)\text{? Yes.}\\&\text{H: Does } (11\times2)=(22\times1)\text{? Yes.}\\&\text{O: Does } (11\times1+6\times4)=(5\times7)\text{? Yes.}\\&\text{Charge: Does } [10\times(+3)+6\times(-1)]=[5\times(-2)+22\times(+1)+6\times(+2)]\text{? Yes.}\end{aligned}$$

This is the balanced equation in acidic solution.

? Exercise 5.1.1

Balance the following equation in acidic solution:

$$Hg_2^{2+}+Ag\longrightarrow Hg+Ag^+$$

Answer

$$Hg_2^{2+}(aq)+2\,Ag(s)\longrightarrow 2\,Hg(l)+2\,Ag^+(aq)$$

✓ Example 5.1.2: Balancing Basic Oxidation-Reduction Reactions

Balance the following reaction equation in basic solution:

$$MnO_4^-(aq)+Cr(OH)_3(s)\longrightarrow MnO_2(s)+CrO_4^{2-}(aq)$$

Solution

This is an oxidation-reduction reaction, so start by collecting the species given into an unbalanced oxidation half-reaction and an unbalanced reduction half-reaction

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{oxidation (unbalanced): } Cr(OH)_3(s)\longrightarrow CrO_4^{2-}(aq)\\&\text{reduction (unbalanced): } MnO_4^-(aq)\longrightarrow MnO_2(s)\end{aligned}$$

Starting with the oxidation half-reaction, we can balance the chromium

$$\text{oxidation (unbalanced): } Cr(OH)_3(s)\longrightarrow CrO_4^{2-}(aq)$$

In acidic solution, we can use or generate hydrogen ions (H^+). Adding one water molecule to the left side provides the necessary oxygen; the “left over” hydrogen appears as five H^+ on the right side:

$$\text{oxidation (unbalanced): } Cr(OH)_3(s)+H_2O(l)\longrightarrow CrO_4^{2-}(aq)+5\,H^+(aq)$$

The left side of the equation has a total charge of [0], and the right side a total charge of [−2 + 5 × (+1) = +3]. The difference is three, adding three electrons to the right side produces a mass- and charge-balanced oxidation half-reaction (in acidic solution):

$$\text{oxidation (balanced): } \mathrm{Cr(OH)_3}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}(aq) + 5\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{e^-}$$

Checking the half-reaction:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Cr: Does } (1 \times 1) = (1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{H: Does } (1 \times 3 + 1 \times 2) = (5 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{O: Does } (1 \times 3 + 1 \times 1) = (4 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{Charge: Does } [0 = [1 \times (-2) + 5 \times (+1) + 3 \times (-1)]\text{? Yes.}\end{aligned}$$

Now work on the reduction. It is necessary to convert the four O atoms in the MnO_4^- minus the two O atoms in MnO_2 into two water molecules. To do this, add four H^+ to convert the oxygen into two water molecules:

$$\text{reduction (unbalanced): } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

Then add three electrons to the left side to balance the charge:

$$\text{reduction (balanced): } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

Make sure to check the half-reaction:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Mn: Does } (1 \times 1) = (1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{H: Does } (4 \times 1) = (2 \times 2)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{O: Does } (1 \times 4) = (1 \times 2 + 2 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{Charge: Does } [1 \times (-1) + 4 \times (+1) + 3 \times (-1)] = [0]\text{? Yes.}\end{aligned}$$

Collecting what we have so far:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{oxidation: } \mathrm{Cr(OH)_3}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}(aq) + 5\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{e^-}\\ &\text{reduction: } \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)\end{aligned}$$

In this case, both half reactions involve the same number of electrons; therefore, simply add the two half-reactions together.

$$\mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cr(OH)_3}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}(aq) + \mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 5\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{Cr(OH)_3}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}(aq) + \mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \mathrm{H^+}(aq)$$

Checking each side of the equation:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Mn: Does } (1 \times 1) = (1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{Cr: Does } (1 \times 1) = (1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{H: Does } (1 \times 3) = (2 \times 1 + 1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{O: Does } (1 \times 4 + 1 \times 3) = (1 \times 4 + 1 \times 2 + 1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{Charge: Does } [1 \times (-1)] = [1 \times (-2) + 1 \times (+1)]\text{? Yes.}\end{aligned}$$

This is the balanced equation in acidic solution. For a basic solution, add one hydroxide ion to each side and simplify:

$$\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) + \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{Cr(OH)_3}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}(aq) + \mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + (\mathrm{H^+} + \mathrm{OH^-})(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) + \mathrm{MnO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{Cr(OH)_3}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}(aq) + \mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

Checking each side of the equation:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Mn: Does } (1 \times 1) = (1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{Cr: Does } (1 \times 1) = (1 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{H: Does } (1 \times 1 + 1 \times 3) = (2 \times 2)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{O: Does } (1 \times 1 + 1 \times 4 + 1 \times 3) = (1 \times 4 + 1 \times 2 + 2 \times 1)\text{? Yes.}\\ &\text{Charge: Does } [1 \times (-1) + 1 \times (-1)] = [1 \times (-2)]\text{? Yes.}\end{aligned}$$

This is the balanced equation in basic solution.

? Exercise 5.1.2

Balance the following in the type of solution indicated.

a. $\mathrm{H_2 + Cu^{2+} \longrightarrow Cu}$ (acidic solution)
b. $\mathrm{H_2 + Cu(OH)_2 \longrightarrow Cu}$ (basic solution)
c. $\mathrm{Fe + Ag^{+} \longrightarrow Fe^{2+} + Ag}$
d. Identify the oxidizing agents in reactions (a), (b), and (c).
e. Identify the reducing agents in reactions (a), (b), and (c).

Answer a

$$\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{Cu^{2+}}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H^{+}}(aq) + \mathrm{Cu}(s)$$

Answer b

$$\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{Cu(OH)_2}(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \mathrm{Cu}(s)$$

Answer c

$$\mathrm{Fe}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{Ag^{+}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Ag}(s)$$

Answer d

oxidizing agent = species reduced: Cu^{2+}, $Cu(OH)_2$, Ag^{+}

Answer e

reducing agent = species oxidized: H_2, H_2, Fe.

Summary

An electric current consists of moving charge. The charge may be in the form of electrons or ions. Current flows through an unbroken or closed circular path called a circuit. The current flows through a conducting medium as a result of a difference in electrical potential between two points in a circuit. Electrical potential has the units of energy per charge. In SI units, charge is measured in coulombs (C), current in amperes $\left(\mathrm{A} = \frac{\mathrm{C}}{\mathrm{s}}\right)$, and electrical potential in volts $\left(\mathrm{V} = \frac{\mathrm{J}}{\mathrm{C}}\right)$.

Oxidation is the loss of electrons, and the species that is oxidized is also called the reducing agent. Reduction is the gain of electrons, and the species that is reduced is also called the oxidizing agent. Oxidation-reduction reactions can be balanced using the half-reaction method. In this method, the oxidation-reduction reaction is split into an oxidation half-reaction and a reduction half-reaction. The oxidation half-reaction and reduction half-reaction are then balanced separately. Each of the half-reactions must have the same number of each type of atom on both sides of the equation *and* show the same total charge on each side of the equation. Charge is balanced in oxidation half-reactions by adding electrons as products; in reduction half-reactions, charge is balanced by adding electrons as reactants. The total number of electrons gained by reduction must exactly equal the number of electrons lost by oxidation when combining the two half-reactions to give the overall balanced equation. Balancing oxidation-reduction reaction equations in aqueous solutions frequently requires that oxygen or hydrogen be added or removed from a reactant. In acidic solution, hydrogen is added by adding hydrogen ion (H^{+}) and removed by producing hydrogen ion; oxygen is removed by adding hydrogen ion and producing water, and added by adding water and producing hydrogen ion. A balanced equation in basic solution can be obtained by first balancing the equation in acidic solution, and then adding hydroxide ion to each side of the balanced equation in such numbers that all the hydrogen ions are converted to water.

Glossary

circuit

path taken by a current as it flows because of an electrical potential difference

current

flow of electrical charge; the SI unit of charge is the coulomb (C) and current is measured in amperes $\left(1\ \mathrm{A} = 1\ \frac{\mathrm{C}}{\mathrm{s}}\right)$

electrical potential

energy per charge; in electrochemical systems, it depends on the way the charges are distributed within the system; the SI unit of electrical potential is the volt $\left(1\ \text{V} = 1\ \frac{\text{J}}{\text{C}}\right)$

half-reaction method

method that produces a balanced overall oxidation-reduction reaction by splitting the reaction into an oxidation “half” and reduction “half,” balancing the two half-reactions, and then combining the oxidation half-reaction and reduction half-reaction in such a way that the number of electrons generated by the oxidation is exactly canceled by the number of electrons required by the reduction

oxidation half-reaction

the “half” of an oxidation-reduction reaction involving oxidation; the half-reaction in which electrons appear as products; balanced when each atom type, as well as the charge, is balanced

reduction half-reaction

the “half” of an oxidation-reduction reaction involving reduction; the half-reaction in which electrons appear as reactants; balanced when each atom type, as well as the charge, is balanced

---

This page titled 5.1: Balancing Oxidation-Reduction Reactions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **17.1: Balancing Oxidation-Reduction Reactions** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.2: Galvanic Cells

Learning Objectives

- Use cell notation to describe galvanic cells
- Describe the basic components of galvanic cells

Galvanic cells, also known as voltaic cells, are electrochemical cells in which spontaneous oxidation-reduction reactions produce electrical energy. In writing the equations, it is often convenient to separate the oxidation-reduction reactions into half-reactions to facilitate balancing the overall equation and to emphasize the actual chemical transformations.

Consider what happens when a clean piece of copper metal is placed in a solution of silver nitrate (Figure 5.2.1). As soon as the copper metal is added, silver metal begins to form and copper ions pass into the solution. The blue color of the solution on the far right indicates the presence of copper ions. The reaction may be split into its two half-reactions. Half-reactions separate the oxidation from the reduction, so each can be considered individually.

$$\text{oxidation: } \mathrm{Cu}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cu}^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e}^- \tag{5.2.1}$$

$$\text{reduction: } 2 \times (\mathrm{Ag}^+(aq) + \mathrm{e}^- \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ag}(s)) \quad \text{or} \quad 2\,\mathrm{Ag}^+(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e}^- \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Ag}(s) \tag{5.2.2}$$

$$\text{overall: } 2\,\mathrm{Ag}^+(aq) + \mathrm{Cu}(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Ag}(s) + \mathrm{Cu}^{2+}(aq) \tag{5.2.3}$$

The equation for the reduction half-reaction had to be doubled so the number electrons “gained” in the reduction half-reaction equaled the number of electrons “lost” in the oxidation half-reaction.

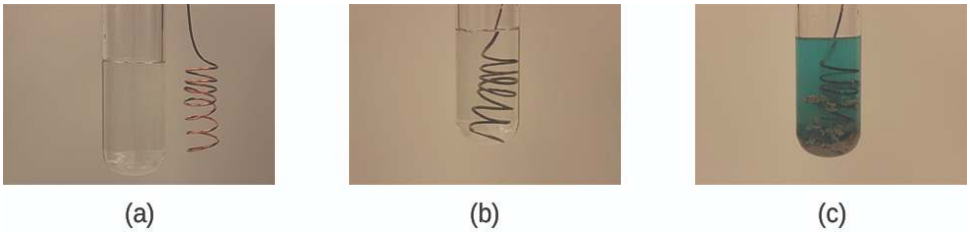


Figure 5.2.1: When a clean piece of copper metal is placed into a clear solution of silver nitrate (a), an oxidation-reduction reaction occurs that results in the exchange of Cu^{2+} for Ag^+ ions in solution. As the reaction proceeds (b), the solution turns blue (c) because of the copper ions present, and silver metal is deposited on the copper strip as the silver ions are removed from solution. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

Galvanic or voltaic cells involve spontaneous electrochemical reactions in which the half-reactions are separated (Figure 5.2.2) so that current can flow through an external wire. The beaker on the left side of the figure is called a half-cell, and contains a 1 *M* solution of copper(II) nitrate [$Cu(NO_3)_2$] with a piece of copper metal partially submerged in the solution. The copper metal is an electrode. The copper is undergoing oxidation; therefore, the copper electrode is the anode. The anode is connected to a voltmeter with a wire and the other terminal of the voltmeter is connected to a silver electrode by a wire. The silver is undergoing reduction; therefore, the silver electrode is the cathode. The half-cell on the right side of the figure consists of the silver electrode in a 1 *M* solution of silver nitrate ($AgNO_3$). At this point, no current flows—that is, no significant movement of electrons through the wire occurs because the circuit is open. The circuit is closed using a salt bridge, which transmits the current with moving ions. The salt bridge consists of a concentrated, nonreactive, electrolyte solution such as the sodium nitrate ($NaNO_3$) solution used in this example. As electrons flow from left to right through the electrode and wire, nitrate ions (anions) pass through the porous plug on the left into the copper(II) nitrate solution. This keeps the beaker on the left electrically neutral by neutralizing the charge on the copper(II) ions that are produced in the solution as the copper metal is oxidized. At the same time, the nitrate ions are moving to the left, sodium ions (cations) move to the right, through the porous plug, and into the silver nitrate solution on the right. These added cations “replace” the silver ions that are removed from the solution as they were reduced to silver metal, keeping the beaker on the right electrically neutral. Without the salt bridge, the compartments would not remain electrically neutral and no significant current would flow. However, if the two compartments are in direct contact, a salt bridge is not necessary. The instant the circuit is completed, the voltmeter reads +0.46 V, this is called the cell potential. The cell potential is created when the two dissimilar metals are connected, and is a measure of the energy per unit charge available from the oxidation-reduction reaction. The volt is the derived SI unit for electrical potential

$$\text{volt} = V = \frac{\text{J}}{\text{C}}$$

In this equation, A is the current in amperes and C the charge in coulombs. Note that volts must be multiplied by the charge in coulombs (C) to obtain the energy in joules (J).

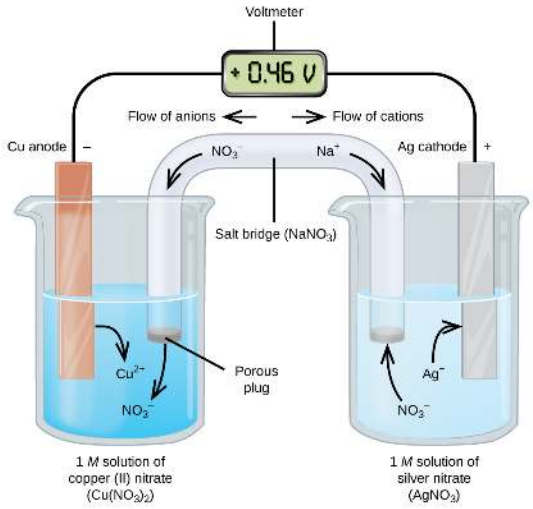


Figure 5.2.2: In this standard galvanic cell, the half-cells are separated; electrons can flow through an external wire and become available to do electrical work.

When the electrochemical cell is constructed in this fashion, a positive cell potential indicates a spontaneous reaction *and* that the electrons are flowing from the left to the right. There is a lot going on in Figure 5.2.2, so it is useful to summarize things for this system:

- Electrons flow from the anode to the cathode: left to right in the standard galvanic cell in the figure.
- The electrode in the left half-cell is the anode because oxidation occurs here. The name refers to the flow of anions in the salt bridge toward it.
- The electrode in the right half-cell is the cathode because reduction occurs here. The name refers to the flow of cations in the salt bridge toward it.
- Oxidation occurs at the anode (the left half-cell in the figure).
- Reduction occurs at the cathode (the right half-cell in the figure).
- The cell potential, +0.46 V, in this case, results from the inherent differences in the nature of the materials used to make the two half-cells.
- The salt bridge must be present to close (complete) the circuit and both an oxidation and reduction must occur for current to flow.

There are many possible galvanic cells, so a shorthand notation is usually used to describe them. The cell notation (sometimes called a cell diagram) provides information about the various species involved in the reaction. This notation also works for other types of cells. A vertical line, $|$, denotes a phase boundary and a double line, $\|$, the salt bridge. Information about the anode is written to the left, followed by the anode solution, then the salt bridge (when present), then the cathode solution, and, finally, information about the cathode to the right. The cell notation for the galvanic cell in Figure 5.2.2 is then

$$\text{Cu}(s)\,|\,\text{Cu}^{2+}(aq,\ 1\ M)\,\|\,\text{Ag}^{+}(aq,\ 1\ M)\,|\,\text{Ag}(s)$$

Note that spectator ions are not included and that the simplest form of each half-reaction was used. When known, the initial concentrations of the various ions are usually included.

One of the simplest cells is the Daniell cell. It is possible to construct this battery by placing a copper electrode at the bottom of a jar and covering the metal with a copper sulfate solution. A zinc sulfate solution is floated on top of the copper sulfate solution; then a zinc electrode is placed in the zinc sulfate solution. Connecting the copper electrode to the zinc electrode allows an electric current to flow. This is an example of a cell without a salt bridge, and ions may flow across the interface between the two solutions.

Some oxidation-reduction reactions involve species that are poor conductors of electricity, and so an electrode is used that does not participate in the reactions. Frequently, the electrode is platinum, gold, or graphite, all of which are inert to many chemical

reactions. One such system is shown in Figure 5.2.3. Magnesium undergoes oxidation at the anode on the left in the figure and hydrogen ions undergo reduction at the cathode on the right. The reaction may be summarized as

$$\text{oxidation: } \mathrm{Mg}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mg}^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e}^- \tag{5.2.4}$$

$$\text{reduction: } 2\,\mathrm{H}^+(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e}^- \longrightarrow \mathrm{H}_2(g) \tag{5.2.5}$$

$$\text{overall: } \mathrm{Mg}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H}^+(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mg}^{2+}(aq) + \mathrm{H}_2(g) \tag{5.2.6}$$

The cell used an inert platinum wire for the cathode, so the cell notation is

$$\mathrm{Mg}(s)\,|\,\mathrm{Mg}^{2+}(aq)\,\|\,\mathrm{H}^+(aq)\,|\,\mathrm{H}_2(g)\,|\,\mathrm{Pt}(s)$$

The magnesium electrode is an active electrode because it participates in the oxidation-reduction reaction. Inert electrodes, like the platinum electrode in Figure 5.2.3, do not participate in the oxidation-reduction reaction and are present so that current can flow through the cell. Platinum or gold generally make good inert electrodes because they are chemically unreactive.

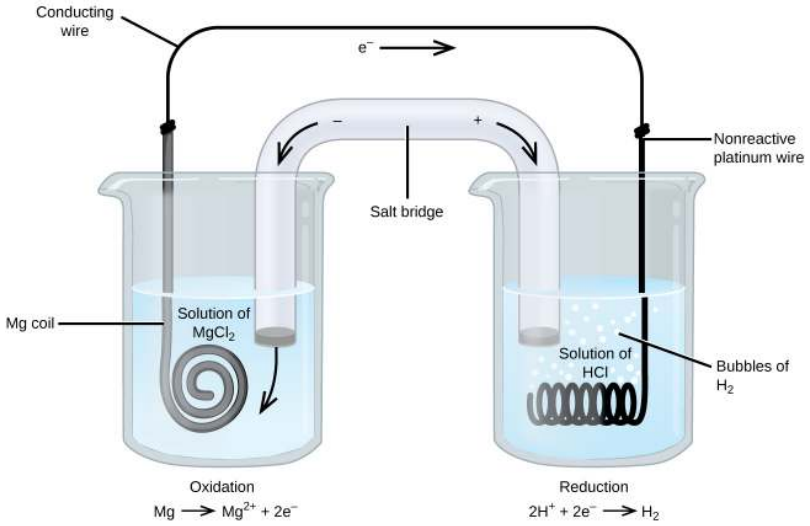


Figure 5.2.2: The oxidation of magnesium to magnesium ion occurs in the beaker on the left side in this apparatus; the reduction of hydrogen ions to hydrogen occurs in the beaker on the right. A nonreactive, or inert, platinum wire allows electrons from the left beaker to move into the right beaker. The overall reaction is: $\mathrm{Mg} + 2\,\mathrm{H}^+ \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mg}^{2+} + \mathrm{H}_2$, *which is represented in cell notation as:* $\mathrm{Mg}(s)\,|\,\mathrm{Mg}^{2+}(aq)\,\|\,\mathrm{H}^+(aq)\,|\,\mathrm{H}_2(g)\,|\,\mathrm{Pt}(s)$

Example 5.2.1: Using Cell Notation

Consider a galvanic cell consisting of

$$2\,\mathrm{Cr}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{Cu}^{2+}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Cr}^{3+}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{Cu}(s)$$

Write the oxidation and reduction half-reactions and write the reaction using cell notation. Which reaction occurs at the anode? The cathode?

Solution

By inspection, Cr is oxidized when three electrons are lost to form Cr^{3+}, and Cu^{2+} is reduced as it gains two electrons to form Cu. Balancing the charge gives

$$\text{oxidation: } 2\,\mathrm{Cr}(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Cr}^{3+}(aq) + 6\,\mathrm{e}^- \tag{5.2.7}$$

$$\text{reduction: } 3\,\mathrm{Cu}^{2+}(aq) + 6\,\mathrm{e}^- \longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{Cu}(s) \tag{5.2.8}$$

$$\text{overall: } 2\,\mathrm{Cr}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{Cu}^{2+}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Cr}^{3+}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{Cu}(s) \tag{5.2.9}$$

Cell notation uses the simplest form of each of the equations, and starts with the reaction at the anode. No concentrations were specified so:

$$\mathrm{Cr}(s)\,|\,\mathrm{Cr}^{3+}(aq)\,\|\,\mathrm{Cu}^{2+}(aq)\,|\,\mathrm{Cu}(s).$$

Oxidation occurs at the anode and reduction at the cathode.

Example 5.2.2: Using Cell Notation

Consider a galvanic cell consisting of

$$5\,Fe^{2+}(aq) + MnO_4^-(aq) + 8\,H^+(aq) \longrightarrow 5\,Fe^{3+}(aq) + Mn^{2+}(aq) + 4\,H_2O(l)$$

Write the oxidation and reduction half-reactions and write the reaction using cell notation. Which reaction occurs at the anode? The cathode?

Solution

By inspection, Fe^{2+} undergoes oxidation when one electron is lost to form Fe^{3+}, and MnO_4^- is reduced as it gains five electrons to form Mn^{2+}. Balancing the charge gives

$$\text{oxidation: } 5(Fe^{2+}(aq) \longrightarrow Fe^{3+}(aq) + e^-) \tag{5.2.10}$$

$$\text{reduction: } MnO_4^-(aq) + 8\,H^+(aq) + 5\,e^- \longrightarrow Mn^{2+}(aq) + 4\,H_2O(l) \tag{5.2.11}$$

$$\text{overall: } 5\,Fe^{2+}(aq) + MnO_4^-(aq) + 8\,H^+(aq) \longrightarrow 5\,Fe^{3+}(aq) + Mn^{2+}(aq) + 4\,H_2O(l) \tag{5.2.12}$$

Cell notation uses the simplest form of each of the equations, and starts with the reaction at the anode. It is necessary to use an inert electrode, such as platinum, because there is no metal present to conduct the electrons from the anode to the cathode. No concentrations were specified so:

$$Pt(s)\,|\,Fe^{2+}(aq),\ Fe^{3+}(aq)\,\|\,MnO_4^-(aq),\ H^+(aq),\ Mn^{2+}(aq)\,|\,Pt(s).$$

Oxidation occurs at the anode and reduction at the cathode.

Exercise 5.2.1

Use cell notation to describe the galvanic cell where copper(II) ions are reduced to copper metal and zinc metal is oxidized to zinc ions.

Answer

From the information given in the problem:

$$\text{anode (oxidation): } Zn(s) \longrightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + 2\,e^- \tag{5.2.13}$$

$$\text{cathode (reduction): } Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2\,e^- \longrightarrow Cu(s) \tag{5.2.14}$$

$$\text{overall: } Zn(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \longrightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s) \tag{5.2.15}$$

Using cell notation:

$$Zn(s)\,|\,Zn^{2+}(aq)\,\|\,Cu^{2+}(aq)\,|\,Cu(s).$$

Summary

Electrochemical cells typically consist of two half-cells. The half-cells separate the oxidation half-reaction from the reduction half-reaction and make it possible for current to flow through an external wire. One half-cell, normally depicted on the left side in a figure, contains the anode. Oxidation occurs at the anode. The anode is connected to the cathode in the other half-cell, often shown on the right side in a figure. Reduction occurs at the cathode. Adding a salt bridge completes the circuit allowing current to flow. Anions in the salt bridge flow toward the anode and cations in the salt bridge flow toward the cathode. The movement of these ions completes the circuit and keeps each half-cell electrically neutral. Electrochemical cells can be described using cell notation. In this notation, information about the reaction at the anode appears on the left and information about the reaction at the cathode on the right. The salt bridge is represented by a double line, ‖. The solid, liquid, or aqueous phases within a half-cell are separated by a single line, |. The phase and concentration of the various species is included after the species name. Electrodes that participate in the oxidation-reduction reaction are called active electrodes. Electrodes that do not participate in the oxidation-reduction reaction

but are there to allow current to flow are inert electrodes. Inert electrodes are often made from platinum or gold, which are unchanged by many chemical reactions.

Glossary

active electrode
: electrode that participates in the oxidation-reduction reaction of an electrochemical cell; the mass of an active electrode changes during the oxidation-reduction reaction

anode
: electrode in an electrochemical cell at which oxidation occurs; information about the anode is recorded on the left side of the salt bridge in cell notation

cathode
: electrode in an electrochemical cell at which reduction occurs; information about the cathode is recorded on the right side of the salt bridge in cell notation

cell notation
: shorthand way to represent the reactions in an electrochemical cell

cell potential
: difference in electrical potential that arises when dissimilar metals are connected; the driving force for the flow of charge (current) in oxidation-reduction reactions

galvanic cell
: electrochemical cell that involves a spontaneous oxidation-reduction reaction; electrochemical cells with positive cell potentials; also called a voltaic cell

inert electrode
: electrode that allows current to flow, but that does not otherwise participate in the oxidation-reduction reaction in an electrochemical cell; the mass of an inert electrode does not change during the oxidation-reduction reaction; inert electrodes are often made of platinum or gold because these metals are chemically unreactive.

voltaic cell
: another name for a galvanic cell

This page titled 5.2: Galvanic Cells is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **17.2: Galvanic Cells** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.3: Standard Reduction Potentials

Learning Objectives

- Determine standard cell potentials for oxidation-reduction reactions
- Use standard reduction potentials to determine the better oxidizing or reducing agent from among several possible choices

The cell potential results from the difference in the electrical potentials for each electrode. While it is impossible to determine the electrical potential of a single electrode, we can assign an electrode the value of zero and then use it as a reference. The electrode chosen as the zero is shown in Figure 17.4.1 and is called the standard hydrogen electrode (SHE). The SHE consists of 1 atm of hydrogen gas bubbled through a 1 M HCl solution, usually at room temperature. Platinum, which is chemically inert, is used as the electrode. The reduction half-reaction chosen as the reference is

$$2\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq,\ 1\ M) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2}(g,\ 1\ \mathrm{atm}) \quad E^\circ = 0\ \mathrm{V}$$

$E°$ is the standard reduction potential. The superscript "°" on the E denotes standard conditions (1 bar or 1 atm for gases, 1 M for solutes). The voltage is defined as zero for all temperatures.

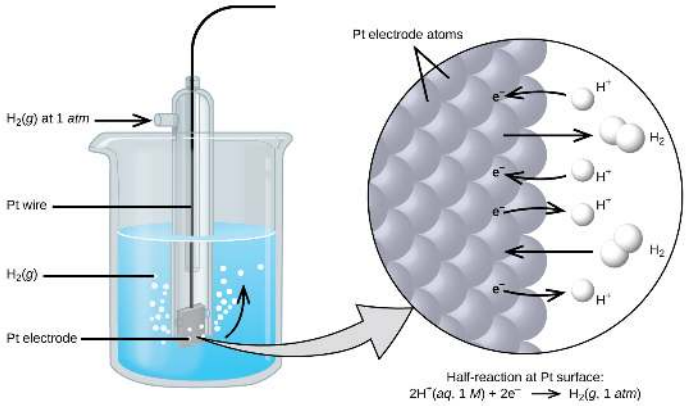


Figure 5.3.1: Hydrogen gas at 1 atm is bubbled through 1 M HCl solution. Platinum, which is inert to the action of the 1 M HCl, is used as the electrode. Electrons on the surface of the electrode combine with H^+ in solution to produce hydrogen gas.

A galvanic cell consisting of a SHE and Cu^{2+}/Cu half-cell can be used to determine the standard reduction potential for Cu^{2+} (Figure 5.3.2). In cell notation, the reaction is

$$\mathrm{Pt}(s)\,|\,\mathrm{H_2}(g,\ 1\ \mathrm{atm})\,|\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq,\ 1\ M)\,\|\,\mathrm{Cu^{2+}}(aq,\ 1\ M)\,|\,\mathrm{Cu}(s)$$

Electrons flow from the anode to the cathode. The reactions, which are reversible, are

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Anode (oxidation): } \mathrm{H_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}\\ &\text{Cathode (reduction): } \mathrm{Cu^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cu}(s)\\ \hline &\text{Overall: } \mathrm{Cu^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cu}(s)\end{aligned}$$

The standard reduction potential can be determined by subtracting the standard reduction potential for the reaction occurring at the anode from the standard reduction potential for the reaction occurring at the cathode. The minus sign is necessary because oxidation is the reverse of reduction.

$$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} - E^\circ_{\text{anode}}$$

$$+0.34\ \mathrm{V} = E^\circ_{\mathrm{Cu^{2+}/Cu}} - E^\circ_{\mathrm{H^+/H_2}} = E^\circ_{\mathrm{Cu^{2+}/Cu}} - 0 = E^\circ_{\mathrm{Cu^{2+}/Cu}}$$

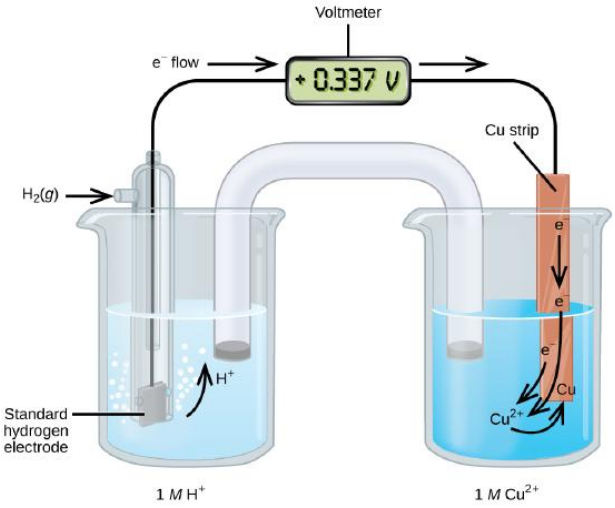


Figure 5.3.2: A galvanic cell can be used to determine the standard reduction potential of Cu^{2+}.

Using the SHE as a reference, other standard reduction potentials can be determined. Consider the cell shown in Figure 5.3.2, where

$$\mathrm{Pt}(s)\,|\,\mathrm{H_2}(g,\ 1\ \mathrm{atm})\,|\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq,\ 1\ M)\,\|\,\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq,\ 1\ M)\,|\,\mathrm{Ag}(s)$$

Electrons flow from left to right, and the reactions are

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{anode (oxidation): } \mathrm{H_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}\\ &\text{cathode (reduction): } 2\,\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Ag}(s)\\ \hline &\text{overall: } 2\,\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Ag}(s)\end{aligned}$$

The standard reduction potential can be determined by subtracting the standard reduction potential for the reaction occurring at the anode from the standard reduction potential for the reaction occurring at the cathode. The minus sign is needed because oxidation is the reverse of reduction.

$$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} - E^\circ_{\text{anode}}$$

$$+0.80\ \mathrm{V} = E^\circ_{\mathrm{Ag^+/Ag}} - E^\circ_{\mathrm{H^+/H_2}} = E^\circ_{\mathrm{Ag^+/Ag}} - 0 = E^\circ_{\mathrm{Ag^+/Ag}}$$

It is important to note that the potential is *not* doubled for the cathode reaction.

The SHE is rather dangerous and rarely used in the laboratory. Its main significance is that it established the zero for standard reduction potentials. Once determined, standard reduction potentials can be used to determine the standard cell potential, E°_{cell}, for any cell. For example, for the following cell:

$$\mathrm{Cu}(s)\,|\,\mathrm{Cu^{2+}}(aq,\ 1\ M)\,\|\,\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq,\ 1\ M)\,|\,\mathrm{Ag}(s)$$

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{anode (oxidation): } \mathrm{Cu}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cu^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}\\ &\text{cathode (reduction): } 2\,\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Ag}(s)\\ \hline &\text{overall: } \mathrm{Cu}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cu^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Ag}(s)\end{aligned}$$

$$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} - E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = E^\circ_{\mathrm{Ag^+/Ag}} - E^\circ_{\mathrm{Cu^{2+}/Cu}} = 0.80\ \mathrm{V} - 0.34\ \mathrm{V} = 0.46\ \mathrm{V}$$

Again, note that when calculating E°_{cell}, standard reduction potentials always remain the same even when a half-reaction is multiplied by a factor. Standard reduction potentials for selected reduction reactions are shown in Table 5.3.1. A more complete list is provided in Tables P1 or P2.

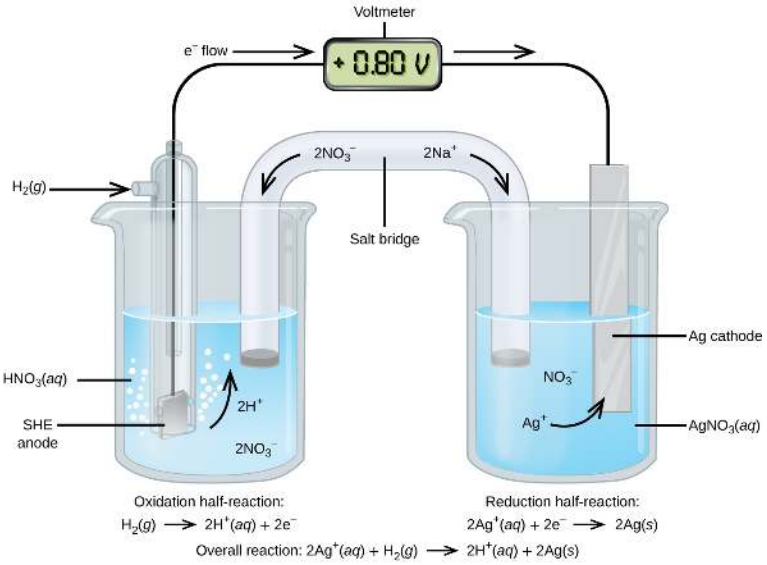


Figure 5.3.3: A galvanic cell can be used to determine the standard reduction potential of Ag^+. The SHE on the left is the anode and assigned a standard reduction potential of zero.

Table 5.3.1: Selected Standard Reduction Potentials at 25 °C

Half-Reaction	E° (V)
$F_2(g) + 2e^- \longrightarrow 2F^-(aq)$	+2.866
$PbO_2(s) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) + 4H^+(aq) + 2e^- \longrightarrow PbSO_4(s) + 2H_2O(l)$	+1.69
$MnO_4^-(aq) + 8H^+(aq) + 5e^- \longrightarrow Mn^{2+}(aq) + 4H_2O(l)$	+1.507
$Au^{3+}(aq) + 3e^- \longrightarrow Au(s)$	+1.498
$Cl_2(g) + 2e^- \longrightarrow 2Cl^-(aq)$	+1.35827
$O_2(g) + 4H^+(aq) + 4e^- \longrightarrow 2H_2O(l)$	+1.229
$Pt^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \longrightarrow Pt(s)$	+1.20
$Br_2(aq) + 2e^- \longrightarrow 2Br^-(aq)$	+1.0873
$Ag^+(aq) + e^- \longrightarrow Ag(s)$	+0.7996
$Hg_2^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \longrightarrow 2Hg(l)$	+0.7973
$Fe^{3+}(aq) + e^- \longrightarrow Fe^{2+}(aq)$	+0.771
$MnO_4^-(aq) + 2H_2O(l) + 3e^- \longrightarrow MnO_2(s) + 4OH^-(aq)$	+0.558
$I_2(s) + 2e^- \longrightarrow 2I^-(aq)$	+0.5355
$NiO_2(s) + 2H_2O(l) + 2e^- \longrightarrow Ni(OH)_2(s) + 2OH^-(aq)$	+0.49
$Cu^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \longrightarrow Cu(s)$	+0.34
$Hg_2Cl_2(s) + 2e^- \longrightarrow 2Hg(l) + 2Cl^-(aq)$	+0.26808
$AgCl(s) + e^- \longrightarrow Ag(s) + Cl^-(aq)$	+0.22233
$Sn^{4+}(aq) + 2e^- \longrightarrow Sn^{2+}(aq)$	+0.151
$2H^+(aq) + 2e^- \longrightarrow H_2(g)$	0.00
$Pb^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \longrightarrow Pb(s)$	−0.1262
$Sn^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \longrightarrow Sn(s)$	−0.1375

Half-Reaction	E° (V)
$\mathrm{Ni^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ni}(s)$	−0.257
$\mathrm{Co^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Co}(s)$	−0.28
$\mathrm{PbSO_4}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Pb}(s) + \mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}(aq)$	−0.3505
$\mathrm{Cd^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cd}(s)$	−0.4030
$\mathrm{Fe^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe}(s)$	−0.447
$\mathrm{Cr^{3+}}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cr}(s)$	−0.744
$\mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn}(s)$	−1.185
$\mathrm{Zn(OH)_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Zn}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$	−1.245
$\mathrm{Zn^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Zn}(s)$	−0.7618
$\mathrm{Al^{3+}}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Al}(s)$	−1.662
$\mathrm{Mg^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mg}(s)$	−2.372
$\mathrm{Na^{+}}(aq) + \mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Na}(s)$	−2.71
$\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ca}(s)$	−2.868
$\mathrm{Ba^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ba}(s)$	−2.912
$\mathrm{K^{+}}(aq) + \mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{K}(s)$	−2.931
$\mathrm{Li^{+}}(aq) + \mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Li}(s)$	−3.04

Tables like this make it possible to determine the standard cell potential for many oxidation-reduction reactions.

Example 5.3.1: Cell Potentials from Standard Reduction Potentials

What is the standard cell potential for a galvanic cell that consists of $\mathrm{Au^{3+}}$/Au and $\mathrm{Ni^{2+}}$/Ni half-cells? Identify the oxidizing and reducing agents.

Solution

Using Table 5.3.1, the reactions involved in the galvanic cell, both written as reductions, are

$$\mathrm{Au^{3+}}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Au}(s) \quad E^\circ_{\mathrm{Au^{3+}/Au}} = +1.498\ \mathrm{V}$$

$$\mathrm{Ni^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ni}(s) \quad E^\circ_{\mathrm{Ni^{2+}/Ni}} = -0.257\ \mathrm{V}$$

Galvanic cells have positive cell potentials, and all the reduction reactions are reversible. The reaction at the anode will be the half-reaction with the smaller or more negative standard reduction potential. Reversing the reaction at the anode (to show the oxidation) but *not* its standard reduction potential gives:

$$\text{Anode (oxidation): } \mathrm{Ni}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ni^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \quad E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = E^\circ_{\mathrm{Ni^{2+}/Ni}} = -0.257\ \mathrm{V}$$

$$\text{Cathode (reduction): } \mathrm{Au^{3+}}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Au}(s) \quad E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = E^\circ_{\mathrm{Au^{3+}/Au}} = +1.498\ \mathrm{V}$$

The least common factor is six, so the overall reaction is

$$3\,\mathrm{Ni}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{Au^{3+}}(aq) \longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{Ni^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Au}(s)$$

The reduction potentials are *not* scaled by the stoichiometric coefficients when calculating the cell potential, and the unmodified standard reduction potentials must be used.

$$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} - E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = 1.498\ \mathrm{V} - (-0.257\ \mathrm{V}) = 1.755\ \mathrm{V}$$

From the half-reactions, Ni is oxidized, so it is the reducing agent, and Au^{3+} is reduced, so it is the oxidizing agent.

Exercise 5.3.1

A galvanic cell consists of a Mg electrode in 1 *M* $Mg(NO_3)_2$ solution and a Ag electrode in 1 *M* $AgNO_3$ solution. Calculate the standard cell potential at 25 °C.

Answer

$$Mg(s) + 2\,Ag^+(aq) \longrightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2\,Ag(s) \qquad E^\circ_{cell} = 0.7996\text{ V} - (-2.372\text{ V}) = 3.172\text{ V}$$

Summary

Assigning the potential of the standard hydrogen electrode (SHE) as zero volts allows the determination of standard reduction potentials, *E*°, for half-reactions in electrochemical cells. As the name implies, standard reduction potentials use standard states (1 bar or 1 atm for gases; 1 *M* for solutes, often at 298.15 K) and are written as reductions (where electrons appear on the left side of the equation). The reduction reactions are reversible, so standard cell potentials can be calculated by subtracting the standard reduction potential for the reaction at the anode from the standard reduction for the reaction at the cathode. When calculating the standard cell potential, the standard reduction potentials are *not* scaled by the stoichiometric coefficients in the balanced overall equation.

Key Equations

- $E^\circ_{cell} = E^\circ_{cathode} - E^\circ_{anode}$

Glossary

standard cell potential (E°_{cell})
: the cell potential when all reactants and products are in their standard states (1 bar or 1 atm or gases; 1 *M* for solutes), usually at 298.15 K; can be calculated by subtracting the standard reduction potential for the half-reaction at the anode from the standard reduction potential for the half-reaction occurring at the cathode

standard hydrogen electrode (SHE)
: the electrode consists of hydrogen gas bubbling through hydrochloric acid over an inert platinum electrode whose reduction at standard conditions is assigned a value of 0 V; the reference point for standard reduction potentials

standard reduction potential (*E*°)
: the value of the reduction under standard conditions (1 bar or 1 atm for gases; 1 *M* for solutes) usually at 298.15 K; tabulated values used to calculate standard cell potentials

This page titled 5.3: Standard Reduction Potentials is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **17.3: Standard Reduction Potentials** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.4: The Nernst Equation

Learning Objectives

- Relate cell potentials to free energy changes
- Use the Nernst equation to determine cell potentials at nonstandard conditions
- Perform calculations that involve converting between cell potentials, free energy changes, and equilibrium constants

We will now extend electrochemistry by determining the relationship between E°_{cell} and the thermodynamics quantities such as $\Delta G°$ (Gibbs free energy) and K (the equilibrium constant). In galvanic cells, chemical energy is converted into electrical energy, which can do work. The electrical work is the product of the charge transferred multiplied by the potential difference (voltage):

$$\text{electrical work} = \text{volts} \times (\text{charge in coulombs}) = \text{J}$$

The charge on 1 mole of electrons is given by Faraday's constant (F)

$$\begin{aligned} F &= \frac{6.022 \times 10^{23}\ e^-}{mol} \times \frac{1.602 \times 10^{-19}\ C}{e^-} \\ &= 9.648 \times 10^4\ \frac{C}{mol} \\ &= 9.648 \times 10^4\ \frac{J}{V \cdot mol} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\text{total charge} = (\text{number of moles of e}^-) \times F = nF$$

In this equation, n is the number of moles of electrons for the *balanced* oxidation-reduction reaction. The measured cell potential is the maximum potential the cell can produce and is related to the electrical work (w_{ele}) by

$$E_{\text{cell}} = \frac{-w_{\text{ele}}}{nF} \qquad \text{or} \qquad w_{\text{ele}} = -nFE_{\text{cell}}$$

The negative sign for the work indicates that the electrical work is done by the system (the galvanic cell) on the surroundings. In an earlier chapter, the free energy was defined as the energy that was available to do work. In particular, the change in free energy was defined in terms of the maximum work (w_{max}), which, for electrochemical systems, is w_{ele}.

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G &= w_{\text{max}} = w_{\text{ele}} \\ &= -nFE_{\text{cell}} \end{aligned}$$

We can verify the signs are correct when we realize that n and F are positive constants and that galvanic cells, which have positive cell potentials, involve spontaneous reactions. Thus, spontaneous reactions, which have $\Delta G < 0$, must have $E_{cell} > 0$. If all the reactants and products are in their standard states, this becomes

$$\Delta G^\circ = -nFE^\circ_{\text{cell}}$$

This provides a way to relate standard cell potentials to equilibrium constants, since

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K$$

$$-nFE^\circ_{\text{cell}} = -RT \ln K$$

or

$$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = \frac{RT}{nF} \ln K$$

Most of the time, the electrochemical reactions are run at standard temperature (298.15 K). Collecting terms at this temperature yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
E^\circ_{\text{cell}} &= \frac{RT}{nF}\ln K \\
&= \frac{\left(8.314\ \dfrac{\text{J}}{\text{K·mol}}\right)(298.15\ K)}{n \times 96,485\ \text{C/V·mol}}\ln K \\
&= \frac{0.0257\ \text{V}}{n}\ln K
\end{aligned}
$$

where n is the number of moles of electrons. The logarithm in equations involving cell potentials is often expressed using base 10 logarithms (i.e., $\log_{10}$ or just log), which changes the constant by a factor of 2.303:

$$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = \frac{0.0592\ \text{V}}{n}\log K$$

Thus, if $\Delta G°$, K, or E°_{cell} is known or can be calculated, the other two quantities can be readily determined. The relationships are shown graphically in Figure 5.4.1.

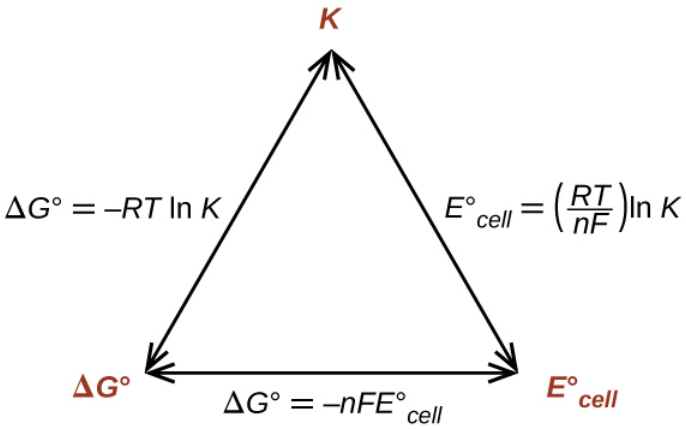


Figure 5.4.1: The relationships between ΔG°, K, and E°_{cell}. *Given any one of the three quantities, the other two can be calculated, so any of the quantities could be used to determine whether a process was spontaneous.*

A diagram is shown that involves three double headed arrows positioned in the shape of an equilateral triangle. The vertices are labeled in red. The top vertex is labeled “K.“ The vertex at the lower left is labeled “delta G superscript degree symbol.” The vertex at the lower right is labeled “E superscript degree symbol subscript cell.” The right side of the triangle is labeled “E superscript degree symbol subscript cell equals (R T divided by n F) l n K.” The lower side of the triangle is labeled “delta G superscript degree symbol equals negative n F E superscript degree symbol subscript cell.” The left side of the triangle is labeled “delta G superscript degree symbol equals negative R T l n K.”

Given any one of the quantities, the other two can be calculated.

Example 5.4.1: Equilibrium Constants, Potentials, & Free Energy Changes

What is the standard Gibbs free energy change and equilibrium constant for the following reaction at 25 °C?

$$2\,\text{Ag}^+(aq) + \text{Fe}(s) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\text{Ag}(s) + \text{Fe}^{2+}(aq)$$

Solution

The reaction involves an oxidation-reduction reaction, so the standard cell potential can be calculated using the data in Table P1.

$$\text{anode (oxidation): Fe}(s) \longrightarrow \text{Fe}^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\text{e}^- \qquad E^\circ_{\text{Fe}^{2+}/\text{Fe}} = -0.447\ \text{V}$$

$$\text{cathode (reduction): } 2 \times (\text{Ag}^+(aq) + \text{e}^- \longrightarrow \text{Ag}(s)) \qquad E^\circ_{\text{Ag}^+/\text{Ag}} = 0.7996\ \text{V}$$

$$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} - E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = E^\circ_{\text{Ag}^+/\text{Ag}} - E^\circ_{\text{Fe}^{2+}/\text{Fe}} = +1.247\ \text{V}$$

Remember that the cell potential for the cathode is not multiplied by two when determining the standard cell potential. With *n* = 2, the equilibrium constant is then

$$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = \frac{0.0592\ \text{V}}{n} \log K$$

$$K = 10^{n \times E^\circ_{\text{cell}}/0.0592\ \text{V}}$$

$$= 10^{2 \times 1.247\ \text{V}/0.0592\ \text{V}}$$

$$= 10^{42.128}$$

$$= 1.3 \times 10^{42}$$

The standard free energy is then

$$\Delta G^\circ = -nFE^\circ_{\text{cell}}$$

$$\Delta G^\circ = -2 \times 96,485\ \frac{\text{J}}{\text{V·mol}} \times 1.247\ \text{V} = -240.6\ \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{mol}}$$

Check your answer: A positive standard cell potential means a spontaneous reaction, so the standard free energy change should be negative, and an equilibrium constant should be >1.

? Exercise 5.4.1

What is the standard Gibbs free energy change and the equilibrium constant for the following reaction at room temperature? Is the reaction spontaneous?

$$\text{Sn}(s) + 2\ \text{Cu}^{2+}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \text{Sn}^{2+}(aq) + 2\ \text{Cu}^{+}(aq)$$

Answer

Spontaneous; n = 2; $E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = +0.291\ \text{V}$; $\Delta G^\circ = -56.2\ \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{mol}}$; $K = 6.8 \times 10^9$.

Now that the connection has been made between the free energy and cell potentials, nonstandard concentrations follow. Recall that

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^\circ + RT \ln Q$$

where Q is the reaction quotient (see the chapter on equilibrium fundamentals). Converting to cell potentials:

$$-nFE_{\text{cell}} = -nFE^\circ_{\text{cell}} + RT \ln Q \tag{5.4.1}$$

or

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \frac{RT}{nF} \ln Q \tag{5.4.2}$$

Equation 5.4.2 is the generalized Nernst equation that is applicable at any temperature. However, is can be simplified for reactions occuring at 25 °C (298.15 K) by rewriting it as

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \frac{0.0257\ \text{V}}{n} \ln Q \tag{5.4.3}$$

or

$$E_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \frac{0.0592\ \text{V}}{n} \log_{10} Q \tag{5.4.4}$$

If the temperature is not 298.15 K, it is necessary to recalculate the potential with Equation5.4.2. With the Nernst equation, it is possible to calculate the cell potential at nonstandard conditions. This adjustment is necessary because potentials determined under different conditions will have different values.

Example 5.4.2: Cell Potentials at Nonstandard Conditions

Consider the following reaction at room temperature:

$$\mathrm{Co}(s) + \mathrm{Fe}^{2+}(aq,\ 1.94\ M) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Co}^{2+}(aq,\ 0.15\ M) + \mathrm{Fe}(s)$$

Is the process spontaneous?

Solution

There are two ways to solve the problem. If the thermodynamic information in Table T1 were available, you could calculate the free energy change. If the free energy change is negative, the process is spontaneous. The other approach, which we will use, requires information like that given in Table P1. Using those data, the cell potential can be determined. If the cell potential is positive, the process is spontaneous. Collecting information from Table P1 and the problem,

$$\text{Anode (oxidation): } \mathrm{Co}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Co}^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e}^- \qquad E^\circ_{\mathrm{Co}^{2+}/\mathrm{Co}} = -0.28\ \mathrm{V}$$

$$\text{Cathode (reduction): } \mathrm{Fe}^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e}^- \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe}(s) \qquad E^\circ_{\mathrm{Fe}^{2+}/\mathrm{Fe}} = -0.447\ \mathrm{V}$$

$$E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} - E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = -0.447\ \mathrm{V} - (-0.28\ \mathrm{V}) = -0.17\ \mathrm{V}$$

The process is not spontaneous under standard conditions. Using the Nernst equation and the concentrations stated in the problem and $n = 2$,

$$Q = \frac{[\mathrm{Co}^{2+}]}{[\mathrm{Fe}^{2+}]} = \frac{0.15\ M}{1.94\ M} = 0.077$$

Now we can insert these into the Nernst Equation at room temperature (Equation 5.4.4)

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{cell}} &= E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \frac{0.0592\ \mathrm{V}}{n} \log Q \\ &= -0.17\ \mathrm{V} - \frac{0.0592\ \mathrm{V}}{2} \log 0.077 \\ &= -0.17\ \mathrm{V} + 0.033\ \mathrm{V} = -0.14\ \mathrm{V} \end{aligned}$$

The process is (still) nonspontaneous.

Exercise 5.4.2

What is the cell potential for the following reaction at room temperature?

$$\mathrm{Al}(s)\,|\,\mathrm{Al}^{3+}(aq,\ 0.15\ M)\,\|\,\mathrm{Cu}^{2+}(aq,\ 0.025\ M)\,|\,\mathrm{Cu}(s)$$

What are the values of *n* and Q for the overall reaction? Is the reaction spontaneous under these conditions?

Answer

n = 6; *Q* = 1440; E_{cell} = +1.97 V, spontaneous.

Finally, we will take a brief look at a special type of cell called a concentration cell. In a concentration cell, the electrodes are the same material and the half-cells differ only in concentration. Since one or both compartments is not standard, the cell potentials will be unequal; therefore, there will be a potential difference, which can be determined with the aid of the Nernst equation.

Example 5.4.3: Concentration Cells

What is the cell potential of the concentration cell described by

$$\mathrm{Zn}(s)\,|\,\mathrm{Zn}^{2+}(aq,\ 0.10\ M)\,\|\,\mathrm{Zn}^{2+}(aq,\ 0.50\ M)\,|\,\mathrm{Zn}(s)$$

Solution

From the information given:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{Anode: } \mathrm{Zn}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Zn^{2+}}(aq,\ 0.10\ M) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \qquad E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = -0.7618\ \mathrm{V}\\
&\text{Cathode: } \mathrm{Zn^{2+}}(aq,\ 0.50\ M) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Zn}(s) \qquad E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = -0.7618\ \mathrm{V}\\
&\text{Overall: } \mathrm{Zn^{2+}}(aq,\ 0.50\ M) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Zn^{2+}}(aq,\ 0.10\ M) \qquad E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = 0.000\ \mathrm{V}
\end{aligned}$$

The standard cell potential is zero because the anode and cathode involve the same reaction; only the concentration of Zn^{2+} changes. Substituting into the Nernst equation,

$$E_{\text{cell}} = 0.000\ \mathrm{V} - \frac{0.0592\ \mathrm{V}}{2} \log \frac{0.10}{0.50} = +0.021\ \mathrm{V}$$

and the process is spontaneous at these conditions.

Check your answer: In a concentration cell, the standard cell potential will always be zero. To get a positive cell potential (spontaneous process) the reaction quotient *Q* must be <1. *Q* < 1 in this case, so the process is spontaneous.

? Exercise 5.4.3

What value of *Q* for the previous concentration cell would result in a voltage of 0.10 V? If the concentration of zinc ion at the cathode was 0.50 *M*, what was the concentration at the anode?

Answer

Q = 0.00042; $[Zn^{2+}]_{cat}$ = 2.1 \times 10^{-4} *M*.

Summary

Electrical work (w_{ele}) is the negative of the product of the total charge (*Q*) and the cell potential (E_{cell}). The total charge can be calculated as the number of moles of electrons (*n*) times the Faraday constant (*F* = 96,485 C/mol e^-). Electrical work is the maximum work that the system can produce and so is equal to the change in free energy. Thus, anything that can be done with or to a free energy change can also be done to or with a cell potential. The Nernst equation relates the cell potential at nonstandard conditions to the logarithm of the reaction quotient. Concentration cells exploit this relationship and produce a positive cell potential using half-cells that differ only in the concentration of their solutes.

Key Equations

- $E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = \dfrac{RT}{nF} \ln K$
- $E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = \dfrac{0.0257\ \mathrm{V}}{n} \ln K = \dfrac{0.0592\ \mathrm{V}}{n} \log K \qquad (\text{at } 298.15\ K)$
- $E_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \dfrac{RT}{nF} \ln Q \qquad (\text{Nernst equation})$
- $E_{\text{cell}} = E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \dfrac{0.0257\ V}{n} \ln Q = E^\circ_{\text{cell}} - \dfrac{0.0592\ \mathrm{V}}{n} \log Q \qquad (\text{at } 298.15\ K)$
- $\Delta G = -nFE_{\text{cell}}$
- $\Delta G^\circ = -nFE^\circ_{\text{cell}}$
- $w_{\text{ele}} = w_{\text{max}} = -nFE_{\text{cell}}$

Glossary

concentration cell

galvanic cell in which the two half-cells are the same except for the concentration of the solutes; spontaneous when the overall reaction is the dilution of the solute

electrical work (w_{ele})

negative of total charge times the cell potential; equal to w_{max} for the system, and so equals the free energy change (ΔG)

Faraday's constant (F)

charge on 1 mol of electrons; *F* = 96,485 C/mol e^-

Nernst equation

equation that relates the logarithm of the reaction quotient (Q) to nonstandard cell potentials; can be used to relate equilibrium constants to standard cell potentials

---

This page titled 5.4: The Nernst Equation is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **17.4: The Nernst Equation** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells

Learning Objectives

- Classify batteries as primary or secondary
- List some of the characteristics and limitations of batteries
- Provide a general description of a fuel cell

A battery is an electrochemical cell or series of cells that produces an electric current. In principle, any galvanic cell could be used as a battery. An ideal battery would never run down, produce an unchanging voltage, and be capable of withstanding environmental extremes of heat and humidity. Real batteries strike a balance between ideal characteristics and practical limitations. For example, the mass of a car battery is about 18 kg or about 1% of the mass of an average car or light-duty truck. This type of battery would supply nearly unlimited energy if used in a smartphone, but would be rejected for this application because of its mass. Thus, no single battery is "best" and batteries are selected for a particular application, keeping things like the mass of the battery, its cost, reliability, and current capacity in mind. There are two basic types of batteries: primary and secondary. A few batteries of each type are described next.

> *Visit this site to learn more about batteries.*

Primary Batteries

Primary batteries are single-use batteries because they cannot be recharged. A common primary battery is the dry cell (Figure 5.5.1). The dry cell is a zinc-carbon battery. The zinc can serves as both a container and the negative electrode. The positive electrode is a rod made of carbon that is surrounded by a paste of manganese(IV) oxide, zinc chloride, ammonium chloride, carbon powder, and a small amount of water. The reaction at the anode can be represented as the ordinary oxidation of zinc:

$$\mathrm{Zn}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Zn}^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e}^- \qquad E^\circ_{\mathrm{Zn}^{2+}/\mathrm{Zn}} = -0.7618\ \mathrm{V}$$

The reaction at the cathode is more complicated, in part because more than one reaction occurs. The series of reactions that occurs at the cathode is approximately

$$2\,\mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{NH_4Cl}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e}^- \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn_2O_3}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{Cl}^-$$

The overall reaction for the zinc–carbon battery can be represented as

$$2\,\mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{NH_4Cl}(aq) + \mathrm{Zn}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Zn}^{2+}(aq) + \mathrm{Mn_2O_3}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{Cl}^-$$

with an overall cell potential which is initially about 1.5 V, but decreases as the battery is used. It is important to remember that the voltage delivered by a battery is the same regardless of the size of a battery. For this reason, D, C, A, AA, and AAA batteries all have the same voltage rating. However, larger batteries can deliver more moles of electrons. As the zinc container oxidizes, its contents eventually leak out, so this type of battery should not be left in any electrical device for extended periods.



Figure 5.5.1: The diagram shows a cross section of a flashlight battery, a zinc-carbon dry cell.

A diagram of a cross section of a dry cell battery is shown. The overall shape of the cell is cylindrical. The lateral surface of the cylinder, indicated as a thin red line, is labeled "zinc can (electrode)." Just beneath this is a slightly thicker dark grey surface that covers the lateral surface, top, and bottom of the battery, which is labeled "Porous separator." Inside is a purple region with many evenly spaced small darker purple dots, labeled "Paste of M n O subscript 2, N H subscript 4 C l, Z n C l subscript 2, water (cathode)." A dark grey rod, labeled "Carbon rod (electrode)," extends from the top of the battery, leaving a gap of less than one-fifth the height of the battery below the rod to the bottom of the cylinder. A thin grey line segment at the very bottom of the cylinder is labeled "Metal bottom cover (negative)." The very top of the cylinder has a thin grey surface that curves upward at the center over the top of the carbon electrode at the center of the cylinder. This upper surface is labeled "Metal top cover (positive)." A thin dark grey line just below this surface is labeled "Insulator." Below this, above the purple region, and outside of the carbon electrode at the center is an orange region that is labeled "Seal."

Alkaline batteries (Figure 5.5.2) were developed in the 1950s partly to address some of the performance issues with zinc–carbon dry cells. They are manufactured to be exact replacements for zinc-carbon dry

cells. As their name suggests, these types of batteries use alkaline electrolytes, often potassium hydroxide. The reactions are

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{anode: } \mathrm{Zn}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZnO}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \qquad E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = -1.28\ \mathrm{V} \\
&\text{cathode: } 2\,\mathrm{MnO_2}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn_2O_3}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \qquad E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = +0.15\ \mathrm{V} \\
&\text{overall: } \mathrm{Zn}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{MnO_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZnO}(s) + \mathrm{Mn_2O_3}(s) \qquad E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = +1.43\ \mathrm{V}
\end{aligned}$$

An alkaline battery can deliver about three to five times the energy of a zinc-carbon dry cell of similar size. Alkaline batteries are prone to leaking potassium hydroxide, so these should also be removed from devices for long-term storage. While some alkaline batteries are rechargeable, most are not. Attempts to recharge an alkaline battery that is not rechargeable often leads to rupture of the battery and leakage of the potassium hydroxide electrolyte.

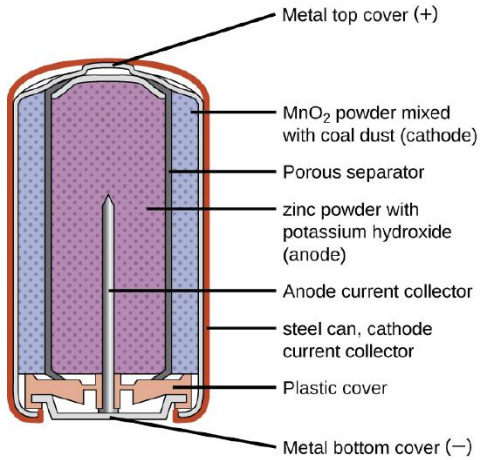


Figure 5.5.2: Alkaline batteries were designed as direct replacements for zinc-carbon (dry cell) batteries.

Secondary Batteries

Secondary batteries are rechargeable. These are the types of batteries found in devices such as smartphones, electronic tablets, and automobiles.

Nickel-cadmium, or NiCd, batteries (Figure 5.5.3) consist of a nickel-plated cathode, cadmium-plated anode, and a potassium hydroxide electrode. The positive and negative plates, which are prevented from shorting by the separator, are rolled together and put into the case. This is a “jelly-roll” design and allows the NiCd cell to deliver much more current than a similar-sized alkaline battery. The reactions are

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{anode: } \mathrm{Cd}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cd(OH)_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \\
&\text{cathode: } \mathrm{NiO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ni(OH)_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \\
&\text{overall: } \mathrm{Cd}(s) + \mathrm{NiO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cd(OH)_2}(s) + \mathrm{Ni(OH)_2}(s)
\end{aligned}$$

The voltage is about 1.2 V to 1.25 V as the battery discharges. When properly treated, a NiCd battery can be recharged about 1000 times. Cadmium is a toxic heavy metal so NiCd batteries should never be opened or put into the regular trash.

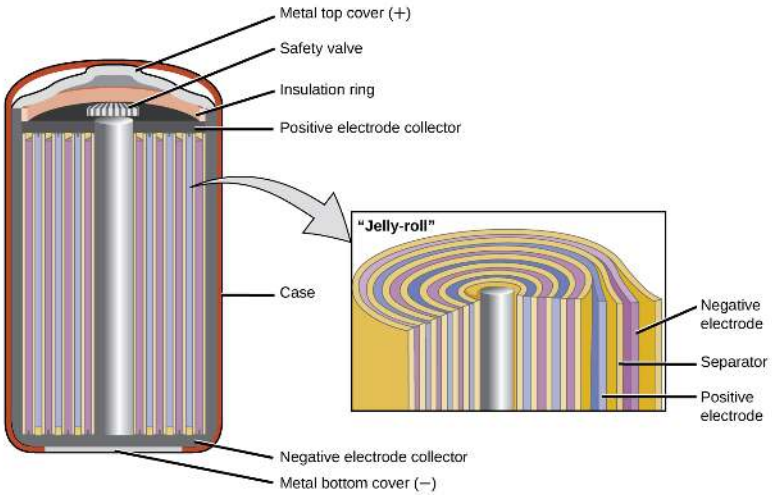


Figure 5.5.3: NiCd batteries use a "jelly-roll" design that significantly increases the amount of current the battery can deliver as compared to a similar-sized alkaline battery.

Lithium ion batteries (Figure 5.5.4) are among the most popular rechargeable batteries and are used in many portable electronic devices. The reactions are

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{anode: } \mathrm{LiCoO_2} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Li_{1-x}CoO_2} + x\mathrm{Li^+} + x\mathrm{e^-}\\ &\text{cathode: } x\mathrm{Li^+} + x\mathrm{e^-} + x\mathrm{C_6} \rightleftharpoons x\mathrm{LiC_6}\\ \hline &\text{overall: } \mathrm{LiCoO_2} + x\mathrm{C_6} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Li_{1-x}CoO_2} + x\mathrm{LiC_6}\end{aligned}$$

With the coefficients representing moles, *x* is no more than about 0.5 moles. The battery voltage is about 3.7 V. Lithium batteries are popular because they can provide a large amount current, are lighter than comparable batteries of other types, produce a nearly constant voltage as they discharge, and only slowly lose their charge when stored.

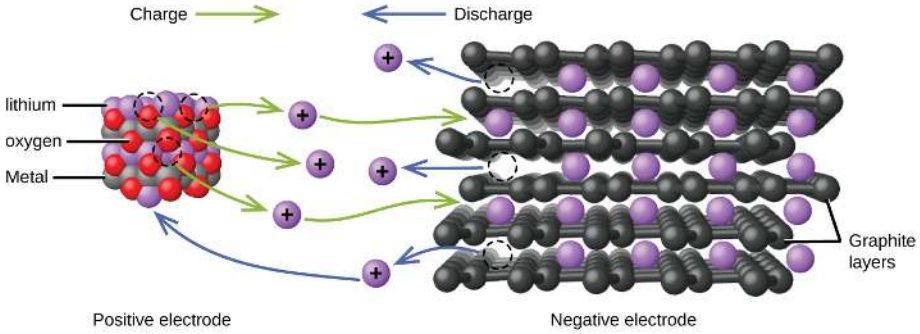


Figure 5.5.4: In a lithium ion battery, charge flows between the electrodes as the lithium ions move between the anode and cathode.

The lead acid battery (Figure 5.5.5) is the type of secondary battery used in your automobile. It is inexpensive and capable of producing the high current required by automobile starter motors. The reactions for a lead acid battery are

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{anode: } \mathrm{Pb}(s) + \mathrm{HSO_4^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{PbSO_4}(s) + \mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}\\ &\text{cathode: } \mathrm{PbO_2}(s) + \mathrm{HSO_4^-}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{PbSO_4}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)\\ \hline &\text{overall: } \mathrm{Pb}(s) + \mathrm{PbO_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2SO_4}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{PbSO_4}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)\end{aligned}$$

Each cell produces 2 V, so six cells are connected in series to produce a 12-V car battery. Lead acid batteries are heavy and contain a caustic liquid electrolyte, but are often still the battery of choice because of their high current density. Since these batteries contain a significant amount of lead, they must always be disposed of properly.

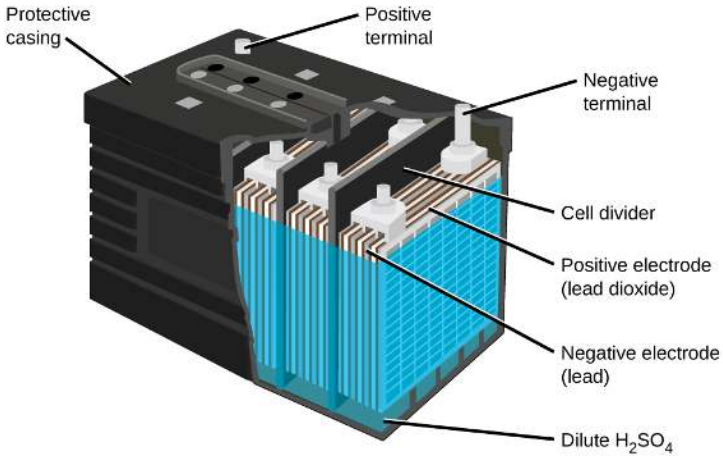


Figure 5.5.5: The lead acid battery in your automobile consists of six cells connected in series to give 12 V. Their low cost and high current output makes these excellent candidates for providing power for automobile starter motors.

Fuel Cells

A fuel cell is a device that converts chemical energy into electrical energy. Fuel cells are similar to batteries but require a continuous source of fuel, often hydrogen. They will continue to produce electricity as long as fuel is available. Hydrogen fuel cells have been used to supply power for satellites, space capsules, automobiles, boats, and submarines (Figure 5.5.6).

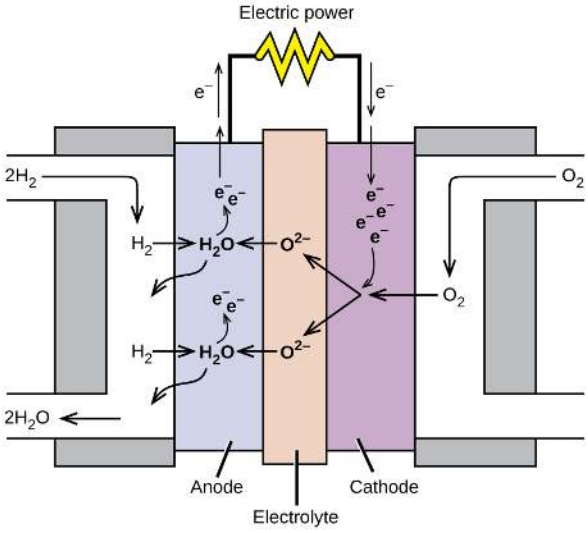


Figure 5.5.6: In this hydrogen fuel-cell schematic, oxygen from the air reacts with hydrogen, producing water and electricity.

In a hydrogen fuel cell, the reactions are

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{anode: } 2\,H_2 + 2\,O^{2-} \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O + 4\,e^- \\ &\text{cathode: } O_2 + 4\,e^- \longrightarrow 2\,O^{2-} \\ &\text{overall: } 2\,H_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O \end{aligned}$$

The voltage is about 0.9 V. The efficiency of fuel cells is typically about 40% to 60%, which is higher than the typical internal combustion engine (25% to 35%) and, in the case of the hydrogen fuel cell, produces only water as exhaust. Currently, fuel cells are rather expensive and contain features that cause them to fail after a relatively short time.

Summary

Batteries are galvanic cells, or a series of cells, that produce an electric current. When cells are combined into batteries, the potential of the battery is an integer multiple of the potential of a single cell. There are two basic types of batteries: primary and secondary. Primary batteries are “single use” and cannot be recharged. Dry cells and (most) alkaline batteries are examples of

primary batteries. The second type is rechargeable and is called a secondary battery. Examples of secondary batteries include nickel-cadmium (NiCd), lead acid, and lithium ion batteries. Fuel cells are similar to batteries in that they generate an electrical current, but require continuous addition of fuel and oxidizer. The hydrogen fuel cell uses hydrogen and oxygen from the air to produce water, and is generally more efficient than internal combustion engines.

Summary

alkaline battery

primary battery that uses an alkaline (often potassium hydroxide) electrolyte; designed to be an exact replacement for the dry cell, but with more energy storage and less electrolyte leakage than typical dry cell

battery

galvanic cell or series of cells that produces a current; in theory, any galvanic cell

dry cell

primary battery, also called a zinc-carbon battery; can be used in any orientation because it uses a paste as the electrolyte; tends to leak electrolyte when stored

fuel cell

devices that produce an electrical current as long as fuel and oxidizer are continuously added; more efficient than internal combustion engines

lead acid battery

secondary battery that consists of multiple cells; the lead acid battery found in automobiles has six cells and a voltage of 12 V

lithium ion battery

very popular secondary battery; uses lithium ions to conduct current and is light, rechargeable, and produces a nearly constant potential as it discharges

nickel-cadmium battery

(NiCd battery) secondary battery that uses cadmium, which is a toxic heavy metal; heavier than lithium ion batteries, but with similar performance characteristics

primary battery

single-use nonrechargeable battery

secondary battery

battery that can be recharged

This page titled 5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **17.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.6: Corrosion

Learning Objectives

- Define corrosion
- List some of the methods used to prevent or slow corrosion

Corrosion is usually defined as the degradation of metals due to an electrochemical process. The formation of rust on iron, tarnish on silver, and the blue-green patina that develops on copper are all examples of corrosion. The total cost of corrosion in the United States is significant, with estimates in excess of half a trillion dollars a year.

Changing Colors

The Statue of Liberty is a landmark every American recognizes. The Statue of Liberty is easily identified by its height, stance, and unique blue-green color. When this statue was first delivered from France, its appearance was not green. It was brown, the color of its copper "skin." So how did the Statue of Liberty change colors? The change in appearance was a direct result of corrosion. The copper that is the primary component of the statue slowly underwent oxidation from the air. The oxidation-reduction reactions of copper metal in the environment occur in several steps. Copper metal is oxidized to copper(I) oxide ($\mathrm{Cu_2O}$), which is red, and then to copper(II) oxide, which is black.

$$2\,\mathrm{Cu(s)} + \tfrac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightarrow \underset{\text{red}}{\mathrm{Cu_2O(s)}}$$

$$\mathrm{Cu_2O(s)} + \tfrac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightarrow 2\,\underset{\text{black}}{\mathrm{CuO(s)}}$$

Coal, which was often high in sulfur, was burned extensively in the early part of the last century. As a result, sulfur trioxide, carbon dioxide, and water all reacted with the CuO.

$$2\,\mathrm{CuO(s)} + \mathrm{CO_2(g)} + \mathrm{H_2O(l)} \rightarrow \underset{\text{green}}{\mathrm{Cu_2CO_3(OH)_2(s)}}$$

$$3\,\mathrm{CuO(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{CO_2(g)} + \mathrm{H_2O(l)} \rightarrow \underset{\text{blue}}{\mathrm{Cu_2(CO_3)_2(OH)_2(s)}}$$

$$4\,\mathrm{CuO(s)} + \mathrm{SO_3(g)} + 3\,\mathrm{H_2O(l)} \rightarrow \underset{\text{green}}{\mathrm{Cu_4SO_4(OH)_6(s)}}$$

These three compounds are responsible for the characteristic blue-green patina seen today. Fortunately, formation of the patina created a protective layer on the surface, preventing further corrosion of the copper skin. The formation of the protective layer is a form of passivation, which is discussed further in a later chapter.

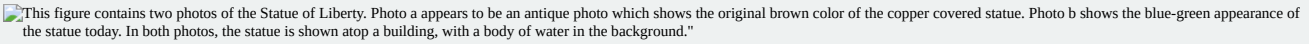

This figure contains two photos of the Statue of Liberty. Photo a appears to be an antique photo which shows the original brown color of the copper covered statue. Photo b shows the blue-green appearance of the statue today. In both photos, the statue is shown atop a building, with a body of water in the background."

Figure 5.6.1: (a) The Statue of Liberty is covered with a copper skin, and was originally brown, as shown in this painting. (b) Exposure to the elements has resulted in the formation of the blue-green patina seen today.

Perhaps the most familiar example of corrosion is the formation of rust on iron. Iron will rust when it is exposed to oxygen and water. The main steps in the rusting of iron appear to involve the following. Once exposed to the atmosphere, iron rapidly oxidizes.

$$\text{anode: } \mathrm{Fe_{(s)}} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe^{2+}_{(aq)}} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \quad E^\circ_{\mathrm{Fe^{2+}/Fe}} = -0.44\ \mathrm{V}$$

The electrons reduce oxygen in the air in acidic solutions.

$$\text{cathode: } \mathrm{O_{2(g)}} + 4\,\mathrm{H^+_{(aq)}} + 4\,\mathrm{e^-} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H_2O_{(l)}} \quad E^\circ_{\mathrm{O_2/O_2}} = +1.23\ \mathrm{V}$$

$$\text{overall: } 2\,\mathrm{Fe_{(s)}} + \mathrm{O_{2(g)}} + 4\,\mathrm{H^+_{(aq)}} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe^{2+}_{(aq)}} + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O_{(l)}} \quad E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = +1.67\ \mathrm{V}$$

What we call rust is hydrated iron(III) oxide, which forms when iron(II) ions react further with oxygen.

$$4\,\mathrm{Fe^{2+}_{(aq)}} + \mathrm{O_{2(g)}} + (4+2x)\mathrm{H_2O_{(l)}} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe_2O_3 \cdot}\,x\mathrm{H_2O_{(s)}} + 8\,\mathrm{H^+_{(aq)}}$$

The number of water molecules is variable, so it is represented by *x*. Unlike the patina on copper, the formation of rust does not create a protective layer and so corrosion of the iron continues as the rust flakes off and exposes fresh iron to the atmosphere.

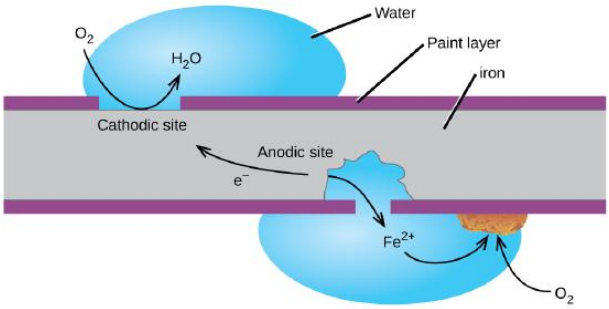


Figure 5.6.2: Once the paint is scratched on a painted iron surface, corrosion occurs and rust begins to form. The speed of the spontaneous reaction is increased in the presence of electrolytes, such as the sodium chloride used on roads to melt ice and snow or in salt water.

A grey rectangle, labeled “iron,” is shown with thin purple layers, labeled “Paint layer,” at its upper and lower surfaces. A gap in the upper purple layer at the upper left of the diagram is labeled “Cathodic site.” A blue droplet labeled “water” is positioned on top of the gap. A curved arrow extends from a space above the droplet to the surface of the grey region and into the water droplet. The base of the arrow is labeled “O subscript 2” and the tip of the arrow is labeled “H subscript 2 O.” A gap to the right and on the bottom side of the grey region shows that some of the grey region is gone from the region beneath the purple layer. A water droplet covers this gap and extends into the open space in the grey rectangle. The label “F e superscript 2 positive” is at the center of the droplet. A curved arrow points from the edge of the grey area below to the label. A second curved arrow extends from the F e superscript 2 positive arrow to a rust brown chunk on the lower surface of the purple layer at the edge of the water droplet. A curved arrow extends from O subscript 2 outside the droplet into the droplet to the rust brown chunk. The grey region at the lower right portion of the diagram is labeled “Anodic site.” An arrow extends from the anodic site toward the cathodic site, which is labeled “e superscript negative.”

One way to keep iron from corroding is to keep it painted. The layer of paint prevents the water and oxygen necessary for rust formation from coming into contact with the iron. As long as the paint remains intact, the iron is protected from corrosion.

Other strategies include alloying the iron with other metals. For example, stainless steel is mostly iron with a bit of chromium. The chromium tends to collect near the surface, where it forms an oxide layer that protects the iron.

Zinc-plated or galvanized iron uses a different strategy. Zinc is more easily oxidized than iron because zinc has a lower reduction potential. Since zinc has a lower reduction potential, it is a more active metal. Thus, even if the zinc coating is scratched, the zinc will still oxidize before the iron. This suggests that this approach should work with other active metals.



Figure 5.6.3: One way to protect an underground iron storage tank is through cathodic protection. Using an active metal like zinc or magnesium for the anode effectively makes the storage tank the cathode, preventing it from corroding (oxidizing).

A diagram is shown of an underground storage tank system. Underground, to the left end of the diagram is a horizontal grey tank which is labeled “Object to be protected.” A black line extends upward from the center of the tank above ground. An arrow points upward at the left side of the line segment. A horizontal black line segment continues right above ground, which is labeled “No power source is needed.” A line segment extends up and to the right, which is labeled “ Lead wire.” A line segment with a downward pointing arrow to its right extends downward below the ground to a second metal tank-like structure, labeled “Sacrificial anode” which is vertically oriented. Five black arrows point left underground toward the first tank. These arrows are collectively labeled “Protective current.”

Another important way to protect metal is to make it the cathode in a galvanic cell. This is cathodic protection and can be used for metals other than just iron. For example, the rusting of underground iron storage tanks and pipes can be prevented or greatly reduced by connecting them to a more active metal such as zinc or magnesium. This is also used to protect the metal parts in water heaters. The more active metals (lower reduction potential) are called sacrificial anodes because as they get used up as they corrode (oxidize) at the anode. The metal being protected serves as the cathode, and so does not oxidize (corrode). When the anodes are properly monitored and periodically replaced, the useful lifetime of the iron storage tank can be greatly extended.

Summary

Corrosion is the degradation of a metal caused by an electrochemical process. Large sums of money are spent each year repairing the effects of, or preventing, corrosion. Some metals, such as aluminum and copper, produce a protective layer when they corrode in air. The thin layer that forms on the surface of the metal prevents oxygen from coming into contact with more of the metal atoms and thus “protects” the remaining metal from further corrosion. Iron corrodes (forms rust) when exposed to water and oxygen. The

rust that forms on iron metal flakes off, exposing fresh metal, which also corrodes. One way to prevent, or slow, corrosion is by coating the metal. Coating prevents water and oxygen from contacting the metal. Paint or other coatings will slow corrosion, but they are not effective once scratched. Zinc-plated or galvanized iron exploits the fact that zinc is more likely to oxidize than iron. As long as the coating remains, even if scratched, the zinc will oxidize before the iron. Another method for protecting metals is cathodic protection. In this method, an easily oxidized and inexpensive metal, often zinc or magnesium (the sacrificial anode), is electrically connected to the metal that must be protected. The more active metal is the sacrificial anode, and is the anode in a galvanic cell. The “protected” metal is the cathode, and remains unoxidized. One advantage of cathodic protection is that the sacrificial anode can be monitored and replaced if needed.

Glossary

cathodic protection
: method of protecting metal by using a sacrificial anode and effectively making the metal that needs protecting the cathode, thus preventing its oxidation

corrosion
: degradation of metal through an electrochemical process

galvanized iron
: method for protecting iron by covering it with zinc, which will oxidize before the iron; zinc-plated iron

sacrificial anode
: more active, inexpensive metal used as the anode in cathodic protection; frequently made from magnesium or zinc

---

This page titled 5.6: Corrosion is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **17.6: Corrosion** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.7: Electrolysis

Learning Objectives

- Describe electrolytic cells and their relationship to galvanic cells
- Perform various calculations related to electrolysis

In galvanic cells, chemical energy is converted into electrical energy. The opposite is true for electrolytic cells. In electrolytic cells, electrical energy causes nonspontaneous reactions to occur in a process known as electrolysis. The charging electric barttery shows one such process. Electrical energy is converted into the chemical energy in the battery as it is charged. Once charged, the battery can be used to power the automobile. The same principles are involved in electrolytic cells as in galvanic cells. We will look at three electrolytic cells and the quantitative aspects of electrolysis.

The Electrolysis of Molten Sodium Chloride

In molten sodium chloride, the ions are free to migrate to the electrodes of an electrolytic cell. A simplified diagram of the cell commercially used to produce sodium metal and chlorine gas is shown in Figure 5.7.1. Sodium is a strong reducing agent and chlorine is used to purify water, and is used in antiseptics and in paper production. The reactions are

$$\text{anode: } 2\,\text{Cl}^-(l) \longrightarrow \text{Cl}_2(g) + 2\,\text{e}^- \quad E^\circ_{\text{Cl}_2/\text{Cl}^-} = +1.3\ \text{V} \tag{5.7.1}$$

$$\text{cathode: } \text{Na}^+(l) + \text{e}^- \longrightarrow \text{Na}(l) \quad E^\circ_{\text{Na}^+/\text{Na}} = -2.7\ \text{V} \tag{5.7.2}$$

$$\text{overall: } 2\,\text{Na}^+(l) + 2\,\text{Cl}^-(l) \longrightarrow 2\,\text{Na}(l) + \text{Cl}_2(g) \quad E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = -4.0\ \text{V} \tag{5.7.3}$$

The power supply (battery) must supply a minimum of 4 V, but, in practice, the applied voltages are typically higher because of inefficiencies in the process itself.

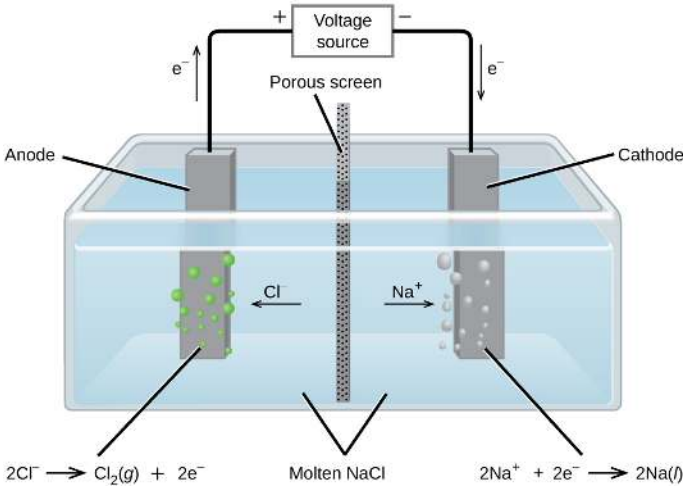


Figure 5.7.1: Passing an electric current through molten sodium chloride decomposes the material into sodium metal and chlorine gas. Care must be taken to keep the products separated to prevent the spontaneous formation of sodium chloride.

The Electrolysis of Water

It is possible to split water into hydrogen and oxygen gas by electrolysis. Acids are typically added to increase the concentration of hydrogen ion in solution (Figure 5.7.2). The reactions are

$$\text{anode: } 2\,\text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \longrightarrow \text{O}_2(g) + 4\,\text{H}^+(aq) + 4\,\text{e}^- \quad E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = +1.229\ \text{V} \tag{5.7.4}$$

$$\text{cathode: } 2\,\text{H}^+(aq) + 2\,\text{e}^- \longrightarrow \text{H}_2(g) \quad E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = 0\ \text{V} \tag{5.7.5}$$

$$\text{overall: } 2\,\text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \longrightarrow 2\,\text{H}_2(g) + \text{O}_2(g) \quad E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = -1.229\ \text{V} \tag{5.7.6}$$

Note that the sulfuric acid is not consumed and that the volume of hydrogen gas produced is twice the volume of oxygen gas produced. The minimum applied voltage is 1.229 V.

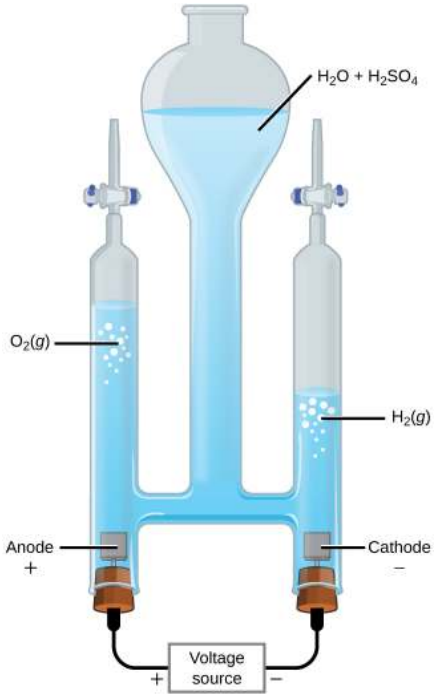


Figure 5.7.2: Water decomposes into oxygen and hydrogen gas during electrolysis. Sulfuric acid was added to increase the concentration of hydrogen ions and the total number of ions in solution, but does not take part in the reaction. The volume of hydrogen gas collected is twice the volume of oxygen gas collected, due to the stoichiometry of the reaction.

The Electrolysis of Aqueous Sodium Chloride

The electrolysis of aqueous sodium chloride is the more common example of electrolysis because more than one species can be oxidized and reduced. Considering the anode first, the possible reactions are

$$\text{(i)}\ 2\,\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \quad E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = +1.35827\ \mathrm{V} \tag{5.7.7}$$

$$\text{(ii)}\ 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{O_2}(g) + 4\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{e^-} \quad E^\circ_{\text{anode}} = +1.229\ \mathrm{V} \tag{5.7.8}$$

These values suggest that water should be oxidized at the anode because a smaller potential would be needed—using reaction (ii) for the oxidation would give a less-negative cell potential. When the experiment is run, it turns out chlorine, not oxygen, is produced at the anode. The unexpected process is so common in electrochemistry that it has been given the name overpotential. The overpotential is the difference between the theoretical cell voltage and the actual voltage that is necessary to cause electrolysis. It turns out that the overpotential for oxygen is rather high and effectively makes the reduction potential more positive. As a result, under normal conditions, chlorine gas is what actually forms at the anode.

Now consider the cathode. Three reductions could occur:

$$\text{(iii)}\ 2\,\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2}(g) \quad E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = 0\ \mathrm{V} \tag{5.7.9}$$

$$\text{(iv)}\ 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \quad E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = -0.8277\ \mathrm{V} \tag{5.7.10}$$

$$\text{(v)}\ \mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + \mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Na}(s) \quad E^\circ_{\text{cathode}} = -2.71\ \mathrm{V} \tag{5.7.11}$$

Reaction (v) is ruled out because it has such a negative reduction potential. Under standard state conditions, reaction (iii) would be preferred to reaction (iv). However, the pH of a sodium chloride solution is 7, so the concentration of hydrogen ions is only 1×10^{-7} *M*. At such low concentrations, reaction (iii) is unlikely and reaction (iv) occurs. The overall reaction is then

$$\text{overall:}\ 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \quad E^\circ_{\text{cell}} = -2.186\ \mathrm{V}$$

As the reaction proceeds, hydroxide ions replace chloride ions in solution. Thus, sodium hydroxide can be obtained by evaporating the water after the electrolysis is complete. Sodium hydroxide is valuable in its own right and is used for things like oven cleaner, drain opener, and in the production of paper, fabrics, and soap.

Electroplating

An important use for electrolytic cells is in electroplating. Electroplating results in a thin coating of one metal on top of a conducting surface. Reasons for electroplating include making the object more corrosion resistant, strengthening the surface, producing a more attractive finish, or for purifying metal. The metals commonly used in electroplating include cadmium, chromium, copper, gold, nickel, silver, and tin. Common consumer products include silver-plated or gold-plated tableware, chrome-plated automobile parts, and jewelry. We can get an idea of how this works by investigating how silver-plated tableware is produced (Figure 5.7.3).

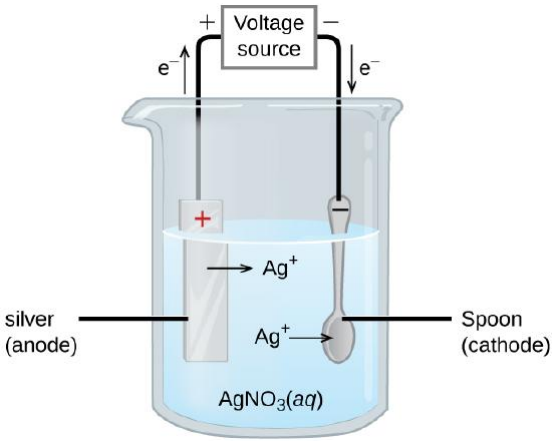


Figure 5.7.3: The spoon, which is made of an inexpensive metal, is connected to the negative terminal of the voltage source and acts as the cathode. The anode is a silver electrode. Both electrodes are immersed in a silver nitrate solution. When a steady current is passed through the solution, the net result is that silver metal is removed from the anode and deposited on the cathode.

In the figure, the anode consists of a silver electrode, shown on the left. The cathode is located on the right and is the spoon, which is made from inexpensive metal. Both electrodes are immersed in a solution of silver nitrate. As the potential is increased, current flows. Silver metal is lost at the anode as it goes into solution.

$$\text{anode: } \mathrm{Ag}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ag}^{+}(aq) + \mathrm{e}^{-}$$

The mass of the cathode increases as silver ions from the solution are deposited onto the spoon

$$\text{cathode: } \mathrm{Ag}^{+}(aq) + \mathrm{e}^{-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ag}(s)$$

The net result is the transfer of silver metal from the anode to the cathode. The quality of the object is usually determined by the thickness of the deposited silver and the rate of deposition.

Quantitative Aspects of Electrolysis

The amount of current that is allowed to flow in an electrolytic cell is related to the number of moles of electrons. The number of moles of electrons can be related to the reactants and products using stoichiometry. Recall that the SI unit for current (I) is the ampere (A), which is the equivalent of 1 coulomb per second (1 A = 1 $\frac{\mathrm{C}}{\mathrm{s}}$). The total charge ($Q$, in coulombs) is given by

$$Q = I \times t = n \times F$$

where

- t is the time in seconds,
- n the number of moles of electrons, and
- F is the Faraday constant.

Moles of electrons can be used in stoichiometry problems. The time required to deposit a specified amount of metal might also be requested, as in the second of the following examples.

Example 5.7.1: Converting Current to Moles of Electrons

In one process used for electroplating silver, a current of 10.23 A was passed through an electrolytic cell for exactly 1 hour. How many moles of electrons passed through the cell? What mass of silver was deposited at the cathode from the silver nitrate solution?

Solution

Faraday's constant can be used to convert the charge (Q) into moles of electrons (n). The charge is the current (I) multiplied by the time

$$n = \frac{Q}{F} = \frac{\frac{10.23\ \text{C}}{\text{s}} \times 1\ \text{hr} \times \frac{60\ \text{min}}{\text{hr}} \times \frac{60\ \text{s}}{\text{min}}}{96,485\ \text{C/mol e}^-} = \frac{36,830\ \text{C}}{96,485\ \text{C/mol e}^-} = 0.3817\ \text{mol e}^-$$

From the problem, the solution contains $AgNO_3$, so the reaction at the cathode involves 1 mole of electrons for each mole of silver

$$\text{cathode: } \text{Ag}^+(aq) + \text{e}^- \longrightarrow \text{Ag}(s)$$

The atomic mass of silver is 107.9 g/mol, so

$$\text{mass Ag} = 0.3817\ \text{mol e}^- \times \frac{1\ \text{mol Ag}}{1\ \text{mol e}^-} \times \frac{107.9\ \text{g Ag}}{1\ \text{mol Ag}} = 41.19\ \text{g Ag}$$

Check your answer: From the stoichiometry, 1 mole of electrons would produce 1 mole of silver. Less than one-half a mole of electrons was involved and less than one-half a mole of silver was produced.

Exercise 5.7.1

Aluminum metal can be made from aluminum ions by electrolysis. What is the half-reaction at the cathode? What mass of aluminum metal would be recovered if a current of 2.50 × 10^3 A passed through the solution for 15.0 minutes? Assume the yield is 100%.

Answer

$\text{Al}^{3+}(aq) + 3\,\text{e}^- \longrightarrow \text{Al}(s)$; 7.77 mol Al = 210.0 g Al.

Example 5.7.2: Time Required for Deposition

In one application, a 0.010-mm layer of chromium must be deposited on a part with a total surface area of 3.3 m^2 from a solution of containing chromium(III) ions. How long would it take to deposit the layer of chromium if the current was 33.46 A? The density of chromium (metal) is 7.19 g/cm^3.

Solution This problem brings in a number of topics covered earlier. An outline of what needs to be done is:

- If the total charge can be determined, the time required is just the charge divided by the current
- The total charge can be obtained from the amount of Cr needed and the stoichiometry
- The amount of Cr can be obtained using the density and the volume Cr required
- The volume Cr required is the thickness times the area

Solving in steps, and taking care with the units, the volume of Cr required is

$$\text{volume} = \left(0.010\ \text{mm} \times \frac{1\ \text{cm}}{10\ \text{mm}}\right) \times \left(3.3\ \text{m}^2 \times \left(\frac{10,000\ \text{cm}^2}{1\ \text{m}^2}\right)\right) = 33\ \text{cm}^3$$

Cubic centimeters were used because they match the volume unit used for the density. The amount of Cr is then

$$\text{mass} = \text{volume} \times \text{density} = 33\ \cancel{\text{cm}^3} \times \frac{7.19\ \text{g}}{\cancel{\text{cm}^3}} = 237\ \text{g Cr}$$

$$\text{mol Cr} = 237 \text{ g Cr} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol Cr}}{52.00 \text{ g Cr}} = 4.56 \text{ mol Cr}$$

Since the solution contains chromium(III) ions, 3 moles of electrons are required per mole of Cr. The total charge is then

$$Q = 4.56 \text{ mol Cr} \times \frac{3 \text{ mol e}^-}{1 \text{ mol Cr}} \times \frac{96485 \text{ C}}{\text{mol e}^-} = 1.32 \times 10^6 \text{ C}$$

The time required is then

$$t = \frac{Q}{I} = \frac{1.32 \times 10^6 \text{ C}}{33.46 \text{ C/s}} = 3.95 \times 10^4 \text{ s} = 11.0 \text{ hr}$$

Check your answer: In a long problem like this, a single check is probably not enough. Each of the steps gives a reasonable number, so things are probably correct. Pay careful attention to unit conversions and the stoichiometry.

? Exercise 5.7.2

What mass of zinc is required to galvanize the top of a 3.00 m × 5.50 m sheet of iron to a thickness of 0.100 mm of zinc? If the zinc comes from a solution of $Zn(NO_3)_2$ and the current is 25.5 A, how long will it take to galvanize the top of the iron? The density of zinc is 7.140 g/cm^3.

Answer

231 g Zn required 23,000 minutes.

Summary

Using electricity to force a nonspontaneous process to occur is electrolysis. Electrolytic cells are electrochemical cells with negative cell potentials (meaning a positive Gibbs free energy), and so are nonspontaneous. Electrolysis can occur in electrolytic cells by introducing a power supply, which supplies the energy to force the electrons to flow in the nonspontaneous direction. Electrolysis is done in solutions, which contain enough ions so current can flow. If the solution contains only one material, like the electrolysis of molten sodium chloride, it is a simple matter to determine what is oxidized and what is reduced. In more complicated systems, like the electrolysis of aqueous sodium chloride, more than one species can be oxidized or reduced and the standard reduction potentials are used to determine the most likely oxidation (the half-reaction with the largest [most positive] standard reduction potential) and reduction (the half-reaction with the smallest [least positive] standard reduction potential). Sometimes unexpected half-reactions occur because of overpotential. Overpotential is the difference between the theoretical half-reaction reduction potential and the actual voltage required. When present, the applied potential must be increased, making it possible for a different reaction to occur in the electrolytic cell. The total charge, Q, that passes through an electrolytic cell can be expressed as the current (I) multiplied by time ($Q = It$) or as the moles of electrons (n) multiplied by Faraday's constant ($Q = nF$). These relationships can be used to determine things like the amount of material used or generated during electrolysis, how long the reaction must proceed, or what value of the current is required.

Summary

electrolysis

process using electrical energy to cause a nonspontaneous process to occur

electrolytic cell

electrochemical cell in which electrolysis is used; electrochemical cell with negative cell potentials

electroplating

depositing a thin layer of one metal on top of a conducting surface

overpotential

difference between the theoretical potential and actual potential in an electrolytic cell; the "extra" voltage required to make some nonspontaneous electrochemical reaction to occur

This page titled 5.7: Electrolysis is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **17.7: Electrolysis** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.8: Electrochemistry (Exercises)

Migrated to ADAPT

This page titled 5.8: Electrochemistry (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding

A general chemistry Libretexts Textbook remixed and remastered from OpenStax's textbook:

General Chemistry

We have examined the basic ideas of bonding, showing that atoms share electrons to form molecules with stable Lewis structures and that we can predict the shapes of those molecules by valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory. These ideas provide an important starting point for understanding chemical bonding. But these models sometimes fall short in their abilities to predict the behavior of real substances. How can we reconcile the geometries of *s*, *p*, and *d* atomic orbitals with molecular shapes that show angles like 120° and 109.5°? Furthermore, we know that electrons and magnetic behavior are related through electromagnetic fields.

6.1: Prelude to Covalent Bonding
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
6.4: Multiple Bonds
6.5: Molecular Orbital Theory
6.6: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding (Exercises)

Contributors

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 6: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

6.1: Prelude to Covalent Bonding

We have examined the basic ideas of bonding, showing that atoms share electrons to form molecules with stable Lewis structures and that we can predict the shapes of those molecules by valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory. These ideas provide an important starting point for understanding chemical bonding. But these models sometimes fall short in their abilities to predict the behavior of real substances. How can we reconcile the geometries of *s*, *p*, and *d* atomic orbitals with molecular shapes that show angles like 120° and 109.5°? Furthermore, we know that electrons and magnetic behavior are related through electromagnetic fields. Both N_2 and O_2 have fairly similar Lewis structures that contain lone pairs of electrons.



Two Lewis diagrams are shown. The diagram on the left shows two nitrogen atoms, represented by the letter N connected by three lines and with a lone pair of electrons on each end of the structure. The diagram on the right shows two oxygen atoms, depicted by the letter O, connected by two lines. Two pairs of electrons surround each oxygen to the top and ends of the structure.

Yet oxygen demonstrates very different magnetic behavior than nitrogen. We can pour liquid nitrogen through a magnetic field with no visible interactions, while liquid oxygen is attracted to the magnet and floats in the magnetic field. We need to understand the additional concepts of valence bond theory, orbital hybridization, and molecular orbital theory to understand these observations.

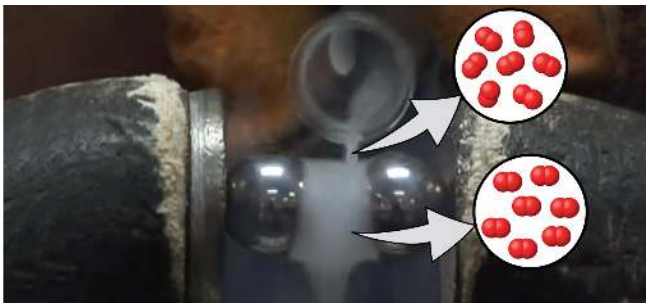


Figure 6.1.1: Oxygen molecules orient randomly most of the time, as shown in the top magnified view. However, when we pour liquid oxygen through a magnet, the molecules line up with the magnetic field, and the attraction allows them to stay suspended between the poles of the magnet where the magnetic field is strongest. Other diatomic molecules (like N_2) flow past the magnet. The detailed explanation of bonding described in this chapter allows us to understand this phenomenon. (credit: modification of work by Jefferson Lab)

A pitcher is shown pouring liquid oxygen through the gap between two magnets, where it has formed a solid disk. A call out box near the stream of liquid oxygen shows an image of six pairs of spheres, spread apart from one another. Another call out box near the solid disk shows ten pairs of spheres much closer together.

This page titled 6.1: Prelude to Covalent Bonding is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **8.1: Prelude to Covalent Bonding** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.2: Valence Bond Theory

Learning Objectives

- Describe the formation of covalent bonds in terms of atomic orbital overlap
- Define and give examples of σ and π bonds

As we know, a scientific theory is a strongly supported explanation for observed natural laws or large bodies of experimental data. For a theory to be accepted, it must explain experimental data and be able to predict behavior. For example, VSEPR theory has gained widespread acceptance because it predicts three-dimensional molecular shapes that are consistent with experimental data collected for thousands of different molecules. However, VSEPR theory does not provide an explanation of chemical bonding.

There are successful theories that describe the electronic structure of atoms. We can use quantum mechanics to predict the specific regions around an atom where electrons are likely to be located: A spherical shape for an *s* orbital, a dumbbell shape for a *p* orbital, and so forth. However, these predictions only describe the orbitals around free atoms. When atoms bond to form molecules, atomic orbitals are not sufficient to describe the regions where electrons will be located in the molecule. A more complete understanding of electron distributions requires a model that can account for the electronic structure of molecules. One popular theory holds that a covalent bond forms when a pair of electrons is shared by two atoms and is simultaneously attracted by the nuclei of both atoms. In the following sections, we will discuss how such bonds are described by valence bond theory and hybridization.

Valence bond theory describes a covalent bond as the overlap of half-filled atomic orbitals (each containing a single electron) that yield a pair of electrons shared between the two bonded atoms. We say that orbitals on two different atoms overlap when a portion of one orbital and a portion of a second orbital occupy the same region of space. According to valence bond theory, a covalent bond results when two conditions are met:

1. an orbital on one atom overlaps an orbital on a second atom and
2. the single electrons in each orbital combine to form an electron pair.

The mutual attraction between this negatively charged electron pair and the two atoms' positively charged nuclei serves to physically link the two atoms through a force we define as a covalent bond. The strength of a covalent bond depends on the extent of overlap of the orbitals involved. Orbitals that overlap extensively form bonds that are stronger than those that have less overlap.

The energy of the system depends on how much the orbitals overlap. Figure 6.2.1 illustrates how the sum of the energies of two hydrogen atoms (the colored curve) changes as they approach each other. When the atoms are far apart there is no overlap, and by convention we set the sum of the energies at zero. As the atoms move together, their orbitals begin to overlap. Each electron begins to feel the attraction of the nucleus in the other atom. In addition, the electrons begin to repel each other, as do the nuclei. While the atoms are still widely separated, the attractions are slightly stronger than the repulsions, and the energy of the system decreases. (A bond begins to form.) As the atoms move closer together, the overlap increases, so the attraction of the nuclei for the electrons continues to increase (as do the repulsions among electrons and between the nuclei). At some specific distance between the atoms, which varies depending on the atoms involved, the energy reaches its lowest (most stable) value. This optimum distance between the two bonded nuclei is the bond distance between the two atoms. The bond is stable because at this point, the attractive and repulsive forces combine to create the lowest possible energy configuration. If the distance between the nuclei were to decrease further, the repulsions between nuclei and the repulsions as electrons are confined in closer proximity to each other would become stronger than the attractive forces. The energy of the system would then rise (making the system destabilized), as shown at the far left of Figure 6.2.1.

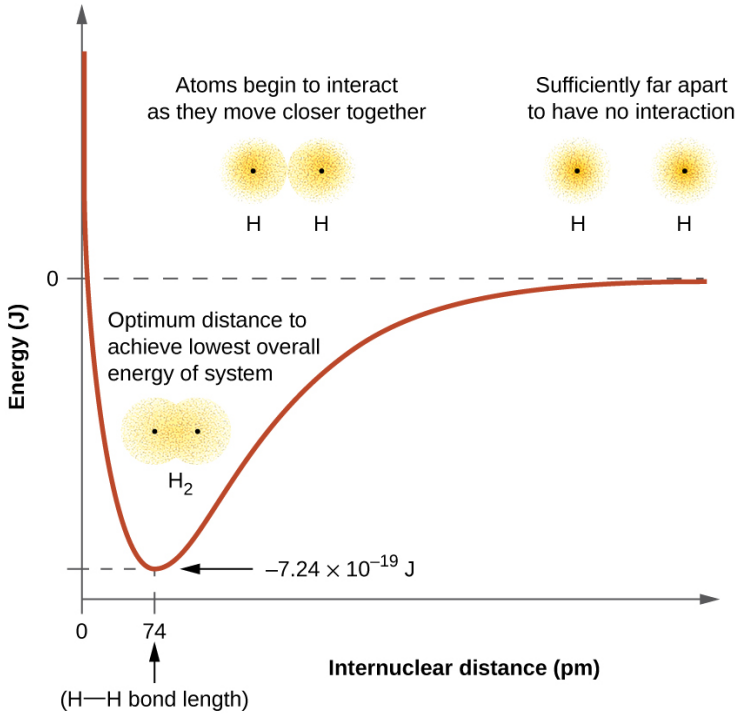


Figure 6.2.1: The interaction of two hydrogen atoms changes as a function of distance. The energy of the system changes as the atoms interact. The lowest (most stable) energy occurs at a distance of 74 pm, which is the bond length observed for the H_2 molecule.

A pair of diagrams are shown and labeled “a” and “b”. Diagram a shows three consecutive images. The first image depicts two separated blurry circles, each labeled with a positive sign and the term “H atom.” The phrase written under them reads, “Sufficiently far apart to have no interaction.” The second image shows the same two circles, but this time they are much closer together and are labeled, “Atoms begin to interact as they move closer together.” The third image shows the two circles overlapping, labeled, “H subscript 2,” and, “Optimum distance to achieve lowest overall energy of system.” Diagram b shows a graph on which the y-axis is labeled “Energy (J),” and the x-axis is labeled, “Internuclear distance (p m).” The midpoint of the y-axis is labeled as zero. The curve on the graph begins at zero p m and high on the y-axis. The graph slopes downward steeply to a point far below the zero joule line on the y-axis and the lowest point reads “0.74 p m” and “H bonded to H bond length.” It is also labeled “ negative 7.24 times 10 superscript negative 19 J.” The graph then rises again to zero J. The graph is accompanied by the same images from diagram a; the first image correlates to the point in the graph where it crosses the zero point on the y-axis, the third image where the graph is lowest.

The bond energy is the difference between the energy minimum (which occurs at the bond distance) and the energy of the two separated atoms. This is the quantity of energy released when the bond is formed. Conversely, the same amount of energy is required to break the bond. For the H_2 molecule shown in Figure 6.2.1, at the bond distance of 74 pm the system is $7.24 \times 10^{-19}\ J$ lower in energy than the two separated hydrogen atoms. This may seem like a small number. However, we know from our earlier description of thermochemistry that bond energies are often discussed on a per-mole basis. For example, it requires $7.24 \times 10^{-19}\ J$ to break one H–H bond, but it takes $4.36 \times 10^{5}\ J$ to break 1 mole of H–H bonds. A comparison of some bond lengths and energies is shown in Table 6.2.1. We can find many of these bonds in a variety of molecules, and this table provides average values. For example, breaking the first C–H bond in CH4 requires 439.3 kJ/mol, while breaking the first C–H bond in $H–CH_2C_6H_5$ (a common paint thinner) requires 375.5 kJ/mol.

Table 6.2.1: Representative Bond Energies and Lengths

Bond	Length (pm)	Energy (kJ/mol)	Bond	Length (pm)	Energy (kJ/mol)
H–H	74	436	C–O	140.1	358
H–C	106.8	413	C = O	119.7	745
H–N	101.5	391	C ≡ O	113.7	1072
H–O	97.5	467	H–Cl	127.5	431
C–C	150.6	347	H–Br	141.4	366

Bond	Length (pm)	Energy (kJ/mol)
C = C	133.5	614
C ≡ C	120.8	839
C–N	142.1	305
C = N	130.0	615
C ≡ N	116.1	891

Bond	Length (pm)	Energy (kJ/mol)
H–I	160.9	298
O–O	148	146
O = O	120.8	498
F–F	141.2	159
Cl–Cl	198.8	243

In addition to the distance between two orbitals, the orientation of orbitals also affects their overlap (other than for two *s* orbitals, which are spherically symmetric). Greater overlap is possible when orbitals are oriented such that they overlap on a direct line between the two nuclei. Figure 6.2.2 illustrates this for two *p* orbitals from different atoms; the overlap is greater when the orbitals overlap end to end rather than at an angle.

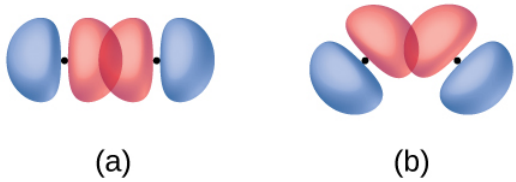


Figure 6.2.2: (a) The overlap of two p orbitals is greatest when the orbitals are directed end to end. (b) Any other arrangement results in less overlap. The dots indicate the locations of the nuclei.

The overlap of two *s* orbitals (as in H_2), the overlap of an *s* orbital and a *p* orbital (as in HCl), and the end-to-end overlap of two *p* orbitals (as in Cl_2) all produce sigma bonds (σ bonds), as illustrated in Figure 6.2.3. A σ bond is a covalent bond in which the electron density is concentrated in the region along the internuclear axis; that is, a line between the nuclei would pass through the center of the overlap region. Single bonds in Lewis structures are described as σ bonds in valence bond theory.

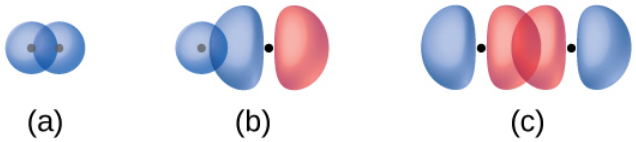


Figure 6.2.3: Sigma (σ) bonds form from the overlap of the following: (a) two s orbitals, (b) an s orbital and a p orbital, and (c) two p orbitals. The dots indicate the locations of the nuclei.

Three diagrams are shown and labeled “a,” “b,” and “c.” Diagram a shows two spherical orbitals lying side by side and overlapping. Diagram b shows one spherical and one peanut-shaped orbital lying near one another so that the spherical orbital overlaps with one end of the peanut-shaped orbital. Diagram c shows two peanut-shaped orbitals lying end to end so that one end of each orbital overlaps the other.

A pi bond (π bond) is a type of covalent bond that results from the side-by-side overlap of two *p* orbitals, as illustrated in Figure 6.2.4. In a π bond, the regions of orbital overlap lie on opposite sides of the internuclear axis. Along the axis itself, there is a node, that is, a plane with no probability of finding an electron.

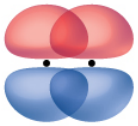
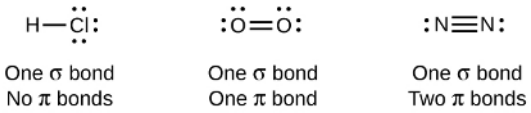


Figure 6.2.4: Pi (π) bonds form from the side-by-side overlap of two p orbitals. The dots indicate the location of the nuclei.

While all single bonds are σ bonds, multiple bonds consist of both σ and π bonds. As the Lewis structures suggest, O_2 contains a double bond, and N_2 contains a triple bond. The double bond consists of one σ bond and one π bond, and the triple bond consists of one σ bond and two π bonds. Between any two atoms, the first bond formed will always be a σ bond, but there can only be one σ bond in any one location. In any multiple bond, there will be one σ bond, and the remaining one or two bonds will be π bonds. These bonds are described in more detail later in this chapter.

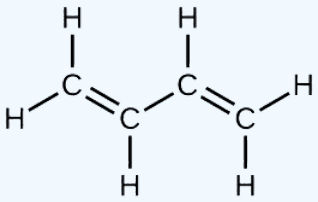


A diagram contains three Lewis structures. The left most structure shows an H atom bonded to a C l atom by a single bond. The C l atom has three lone pairs of electrons. The phrase “One sigma bond No pi bonds” is written below the drawing. The center structure shows two O atoms bonded by a double bond. The O atoms each have two lone pairs of electrons. The phrase “One sigma bond One pi bond” is written below the drawing. The right most structure shows two N atoms bonded by a triple bond. Each N atom has a lone pairs of electrons. The phrase “One sigma bond Two pi bonds” is written below the drawing.

As seen in Table 6.2.1, an average carbon-carbon single bond is 347 kJ/mol, while in a carbon-carbon double bond, the π bond increases the bond strength by 267 kJ/mol. Adding an additional π bond causes a further increase of 225 kJ/mol. We can see a similar pattern when we compare other σ and π bonds. Thus, each individual π bond is generally weaker than a corresponding σ bond between the same two atoms. In a σ bond, there is a greater degree of orbital overlap than in a π bond.

Example 6.2.1: Counting σ and π Bonds

Butadiene, C_4H_6, is used to make synthetic rubber. Identify the number of σ and π bonds contained in this molecule.



Butadiene

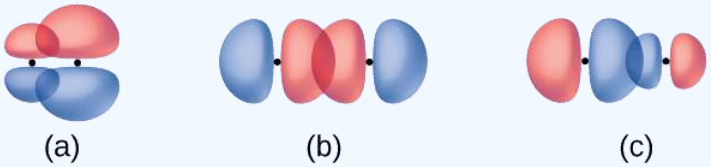
Solution

There are six σ C–H bonds and one σ C–C bond, for a total of seven from the single bonds. There are two double bonds that each have a π bond in addition to the σ bond. This gives a total nine σ and two π bonds overall.

Exercise 6.2.1

Identify each illustration as depicting a σ or π bond:

a. side-by-side overlap of a 4*p* and a 2*p* orbital
b. end-to-end overlap of a 4*p* and 4*p* orbital
c. end-to-end overlap of a 4*p* and a 2*p* orbital



Answer

(a) is a π bond with a node along the axis connecting the nuclei while (b) and (c) are σ bonds that overlap along the axis.

Summary

Valence bond theory describes bonding as a consequence of the overlap of two separate atomic orbitals on different atoms that creates a region with one pair of electrons shared between the two atoms. When the orbitals overlap along an axis containing the nuclei, they form a σ bond. When they overlap in a fashion that creates a node along this axis, they form a π bond.

Glossary

overlap
coexistence of orbitals from two different atoms sharing the same region of space, leading to the formation of a covalent bond

node
plane separating different lobes of orbitals, where the probability of finding an electron is zero

pi bond (π bond)
covalent bond formed by side-by-side overlap of atomic orbitals; the electron density is found on opposite sides of the internuclear axis

sigma bond (σ bond)
covalent bond formed by overlap of atomic orbitals along the internuclear axis

valence bond theory
description of bonding that involves atomic orbitals overlapping to form σ or π bonds, within which pairs of electrons are shared

---

This page titled 6.2: Valence Bond Theory is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **8.2: Valence Bond Theory** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals

Learning Objectives

- Explain the concept of atomic orbital hybridization
- Determine the hybrid orbitals associated with various molecular geometries

Thinking in terms of overlapping atomic orbitals is one way for us to explain how chemical bonds form in diatomic molecules. However, to understand how molecules with more than two atoms form stable bonds, we require a more detailed model. As an example, let us consider the water molecule, in which we have one oxygen atom bonding to two hydrogen atoms. Oxygen has the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$, with two unpaired electrons (one in each of the two 2*p* orbitals). Valence bond theory would predict that the two O–H bonds form from the overlap of these two 2*p* orbitals with the 1*s* orbitals of the hydrogen atoms. If this were the case, the bond angle would be 90°, as shown in Figure 6.3.1, because *p* orbitals are perpendicular to each other. Experimental evidence shows that the bond angle is 104.5°, not 90°. The prediction of the valence bond theory model does not match the real-world observations of a water molecule; a different model is needed.

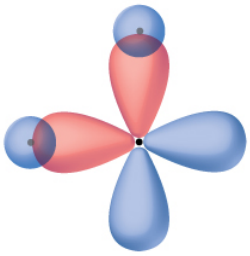


Figure 6.3.1: The hypothetical overlap of two of the 2p orbitals on an oxygen atom (red) with the 1s orbitals of two hydrogen atoms (blue) would produce a bond angle of 90°. This is not consistent with experimental evidence.[1]

Two peanut-shaped orbitals lie perpendicular to one another. They overlap with spherical orbitals to the left and top of the diagram.

Quantum-mechanical calculations suggest why the observed bond angles in H_2O differ from those predicted by the overlap of the 1*s* orbital of the hydrogen atoms with the 2*p* orbitals of the oxygen atom. The mathematical expression known as the wave function, ψ, contains information about each orbital and the wavelike properties of electrons in an isolated atom. When atoms are bound together in a molecule, the wave functions combine to produce new mathematical descriptions that have different shapes. This process of combining the wave functions for atomic orbitals is called hybridization and is mathematically accomplished by the *linear combination of atomic orbitals*, LCAO, (a technique that we will encounter again later). The new orbitals that result are called hybrid orbitals. The valence orbitals in an *isolated* oxygen atom are a 2*s* orbital and three 2*p* orbitals. The valence orbitals in an oxygen atom in a water molecule differ; they consist of four equivalent hybrid orbitals that point approximately toward the corners of a tetrahedron (Figure 6.3.2). Consequently, the overlap of the O and H orbitals should result in a tetrahedral bond angle (109.5°). The observed angle of 104.5° is experimental evidence for which quantum-mechanical calculations give a useful explanation: Valence bond theory must include a hybridization component to give accurate predictions.

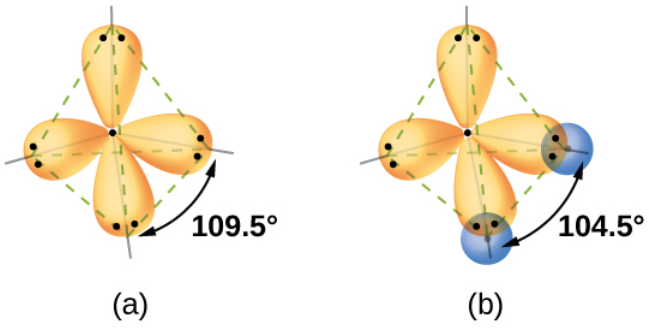


Figure 6.3.2: (a) A water molecule has four regions of electron density, so VSEPR theory predicts a tetrahedral arrangement of hybrid orbitals. (b) Two of the hybrid orbitals on oxygen contain lone pairs, and the other two overlap with the 1s orbitals of hydrogen atoms to form the O–H bonds in H_2O. This description is more consistent with the experimental structure.

Two diagrams are shown and labeled “a” and “b.” Diagram a shows two peanut-shaped orbitals lying in a tetrahedral arrangement around the letter “O.” Diagram b shows the same two orbitals, but they now overlap to the top and to the left with two spherical orbitals, each labeled “H.” A pair of electrons occupies each lobe of the peanut-shaped orbitals.

The following ideas are important in understanding hybridization:

1. Hybrid orbitals do not exist in isolated atoms. They are formed only in covalently bonded atoms.
2. Hybrid orbitals have shapes and orientations that are very different from those of the atomic orbitals in isolated atoms.
3. A set of hybrid orbitals is generated by combining atomic orbitals. The number of hybrid orbitals in a set is equal to the number of atomic orbitals that were combined to produce the set.
4. All orbitals in a set of hybrid orbitals are equivalent in shape and energy.
5. The type of hybrid orbitals formed in a bonded atom depends on its electron-pair geometry as predicted by the VSEPR theory.
6. Hybrid orbitals overlap to form σ bonds. Unhybridized orbitals overlap to form π bonds.

In the following sections, we shall discuss the common types of hybrid orbitals.

sp Hybridization

The beryllium atom in a gaseous $BeCl_2$ molecule is an example of a central atom with no lone pairs of electrons in a linear arrangement of three atoms. There are two regions of valence electron density in the $BeCl_2$ molecule that correspond to the two covalent Be–Cl bonds. To accommodate these two electron domains, two of the Be atom's four valence orbitals will mix to yield two hybrid orbitals. This hybridization process involves mixing of the valence *s* orbital with one of the valence *p* orbitals to yield two equivalent *sp* hybrid orbitals that are oriented in a linear geometry (Figure 6.3.3). In this figure, the set of *sp* orbitals appears similar in shape to the original *p* orbital, but there is an important difference. The number of atomic orbitals combined always equals the number of hybrid orbitals formed. The *p* orbital is one orbital that can hold up to two electrons. The *sp* set is two equivalent orbitals that point 180° from each other. The two electrons that were originally in the *s* orbital are now distributed to the two *sp* orbitals, which are half filled. In gaseous $BeCl_2$, these half-filled hybrid orbitals will overlap with orbitals from the chlorine atoms to form two identical σ bonds.

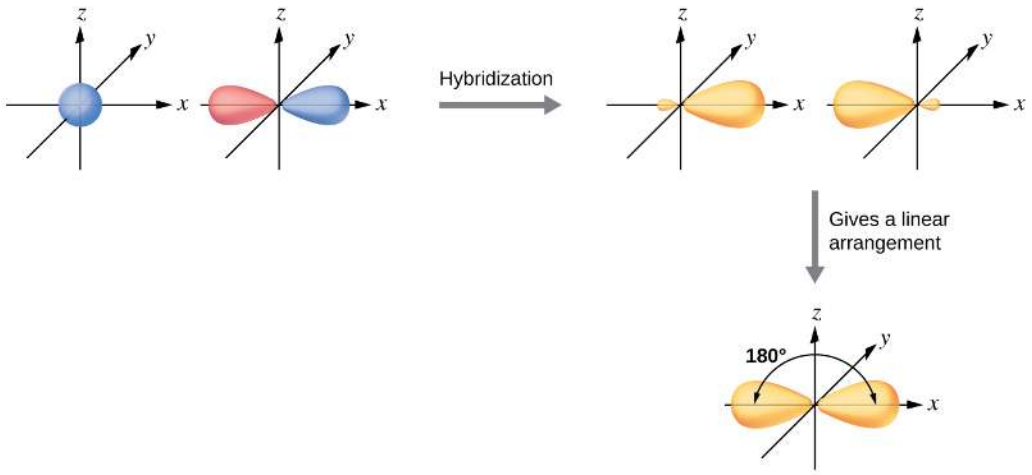


Figure 6.3.3: Hybridization of an s orbital (blue) and a p orbital (red) of the same atom produces two sp hybrid orbitals (yellow). Each hybrid orbital is oriented primarily in just one direction. Note that each sp orbital contains one lobe that is significantly larger than the other. The set of two sp orbitals are oriented at 180°, which is consistent with the geometry for two domains.

A series of three diagrams connected by a right-facing arrow that is labeled, "Hybridization," and a downward-facing arrow labeled, "Gives a linear arrangement," are shown. The first diagram shows a blue spherical orbital and a red, peanut-shaped orbital, each placed on an X, Y, Z axis system. The second diagram shows the same two orbitals, but they are now purple and have one enlarged lobe and one smaller lobe. Each lies along the x-axis in the drawing. The third diagram shows the same two orbitals, but their smaller lobes now overlap along the x-axis while their larger lobes are located at and labeled as "180 degrees" from one another.

We illustrate the electronic differences in an isolated Be atom and in the bonded Be atom in the orbital energy-level diagram in Figure 6.3.4. These diagrams represent each orbital by a horizontal line (indicating its energy) and each electron by an arrow. Energy increases toward the top of the diagram. We use one upward arrow to indicate one electron in an orbital and two arrows (up and down) to indicate two electrons of opposite spin.

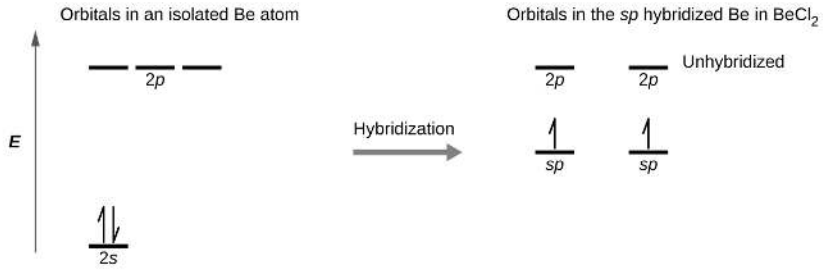


Figure 6.3.4: This orbital energy-level diagram shows the sp hybridized orbitals on Be in the linear $BeCl_2$ molecule. Each of the two sp hybrid orbitals holds one electron and is thus half filled and available for bonding via overlap with a Cl 3p orbital.

A diagram is shown in two parts, connected by a right facing arrow labeled, “Hybridization.” The left diagram shows an up-facing arrow labeled, “E.” To the lower right of the arrow is a short, horizontal line labeled, “2 s,” that has two vertical half-arrows facing up and down on it. To the upper right of the arrow are a series of three short, horizontal lines labeled, “2 p.” Above these two sets of lines is the phrase, “Orbitals in an isolated B e atom.” The right side of the diagram shows two short, horizontal lines placed halfway up the space and each labeled, “s p.” An upward-facing half arrow is drawn vertically on each line. Above these lines are two other short, horizontal lines, each labeled, “2 p.” Above these two sets of lines is the phrase, “Orbitals in the s p hybridized B e in B e C l subscript 2.”

When atomic orbitals hybridize, the valence electrons occupy the newly created orbitals. The Be atom had two valence electrons, so each of the *sp* orbitals gets one of these electrons. Each of these electrons pairs up with the unpaired electron on a chlorine atom when a hybrid orbital and a chlorine orbital overlap during the formation of the Be–Cl bonds. Any central atom surrounded by just two regions of valence electron density in a molecule will exhibit *sp* hybridization. Other examples include the mercury atom in the linear $HgCl_2$ molecule, the zinc atom in $Zn(CH_3)_2$, which contains a linear C–Zn–C arrangement, and the carbon atoms in HCCH and CO_2.

sp^2 Hybridization

The valence orbitals of a central atom surrounded by three regions of electron density consist of a set of three sp^2 hybrid orbitals and one unhybridized *p* orbital. This arrangement results from sp^2 hybridization, the mixing of one *s* orbital and two *p* orbitals to produce three identical hybrid orbitals oriented in a trigonal planar geometry (Figure 6.3.5).

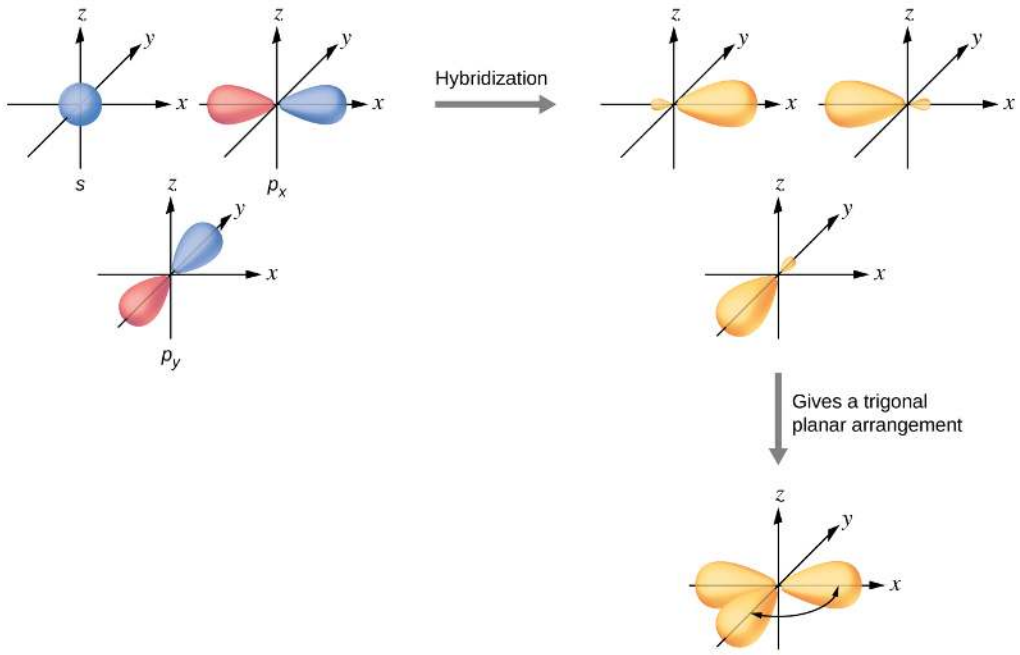


Figure 6.3.5: The hybridization of an s orbital (blue) and two p orbitals (red) produces three equivalent sp^2 hybridized orbitals (yellow) oriented at 120° with respect to each other. The remaining unhybridized p orbital is not shown here, but is located along the z axis.

A series of three diagrams connected by a right-facing arrow that is labeled, “Hybridization,” and a downward-facing arrow labeled, “Gives a trigonal planar arrangement,” are shown. The first diagram shows a blue spherical orbital and two red, peanut-shaped orbitals, each placed on an X, Y, Z axis system. The two red orbitals are located on the x and z axes, respectively. The second diagram shows the same three orbitals, but they are now purple and have one enlarged lobe and one smaller lobe. Each lies in a different axis in the drawing. The third diagram shows the same three orbitals, but their smaller lobes now overlap while their larger lobes are located at and labeled as “120 degrees” from one another.

Although quantum mechanics yields the “plump” orbital lobes as depicted in Figure 6.3.5, sometimes for clarity these orbitals are drawn thinner and without the minor lobes, as in Figure 6.3.6, to avoid obscuring other features of a given illustration. We will use these “thinner” representations whenever the true view is too crowded to easily visualize.

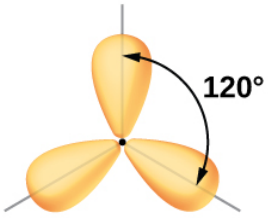


Figure 6.3.6: This alternate way of drawing the trigonal planar sp^2 hybrid orbitals is sometimes used in more crowded figures.

Three balloon-like orbitals are shown, and connect together near their narrower ends in one plane. The angle between a pair of lobes is labeled, “120 degrees.”

The observed structure of the borane molecule, BH_3, suggests sp^2 hybridization for boron in this compound. The molecule is trigonal planar, and the boron atom is involved in three bonds to hydrogen atoms (Figure 6.3.7).

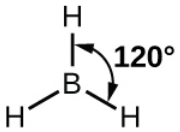


Figure 6.3.7: BH_3 is an electron-deficient molecule with a trigonal planar structure.

A boron atom is shown connected to three hydrogen atoms, which are arranged around it like a pyramid. The angle from one line connecting the boron atom to a hydrogen atom to another line connecting the boron atom to a hydrogen atom is labeled, “120 degrees.”

We can illustrate the comparison of orbitals and electron distribution in an isolated boron atom and in the bonded atom in BH_3 as shown in the orbital energy level diagram in Figure 6.3.8. We redistribute the three valence electrons of the boron atom in the three

sp^2 hybrid orbitals, and each boron electron pairs with a hydrogen electron when B–H bonds form.

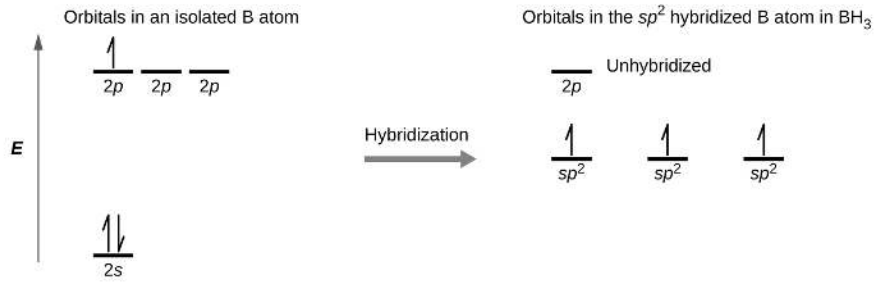


Figure 6.3.8: In an isolated B atom, there are one 2s and three 2p valence orbitals. When boron is in a molecule with three regions of electron density, three of the orbitals hybridize and create a set of three sp^2 orbitals and one unhybridized 2p orbital. The three half-filled hybrid orbitals each overlap with an orbital from a hydrogen atom to form three σ bonds in BH_3.

A diagram is shown in two parts, connected by a right facing arrow labeled, “Hybridization.” The left diagram shows an up-facing arrow labeled “E.” To the lower right of the arrow is a short, horizontal line labeled, “2 s,” that has two vertical half-arrows facing up and down on it. To the upper right of the arrow are a series of three short, horizontal lines labeled, “2 p.” Above both sets of these lines is the phrase, “Orbitals in an isolated B atom.” One of the lines has a vertical, up-facing arrow drawn on it. The right side of the diagram shows three short, horizontal lines placed halfway up the space and each labeled, “s p superscript 2.” An upward-facing half arrow is drawn vertically on each line. Above these lines is one other short, horizontal line, labeled, “2 p.” Above both sets of lines is the phrase, “Orbitals in the s p superscript 2 hybridized B atom in B H subscript 3.”

Any central atom surrounded by three regions of electron density will exhibit sp^2 hybridization. This includes molecules with a lone pair on the central atom, such as ClNO (Figure 6.3.9), or molecules with two single bonds and a double bond connected to the central atom, as in formaldehyde, CH_2O, and ethene, H_2CCH_2.

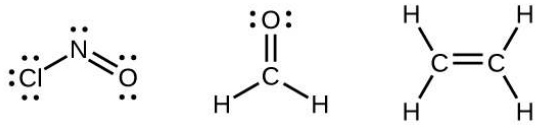


Figure 6.3.9: The central atom(s) in each of the structures shown contain three regions of electron density and are sp^2 hybridized. As we know from the discussion of VSEPR theory, a region of electron density contains all of the electrons that point in one direction. A lone pair, an unpaired electron, a single bond, or a multiple bond would each count as one region of electron density.

Three Lewis structures are shown. The left-hand structure shows a chlorine atom surrounded by three lone pairs of electrons single bonded to a nitrogen atom with one lone pair of electrons and double bonded to an oxygen atom with two lone pairs of electrons. The middle structure shows a carbon atom single bonded to two hydrogen atoms and double bonded to an oxygen atom that has two lone pairs of electrons. The right-hand structure shows two carbon atoms, double bonded to one another and each single bonded to two hydrogen atoms.

sp^3 Hybridization

The valence orbitals of an atom surrounded by a tetrahedral arrangement of bonding pairs and lone pairs consist of a set of four sp^3 hybrid orbitals. The hybrids result from the mixing of one *s* orbital and all three *p* orbitals that produces four identical sp^3 hybrid orbitals (Figure 6.3.10). Each of these hybrid orbitals points toward a different corner of a tetrahedron.

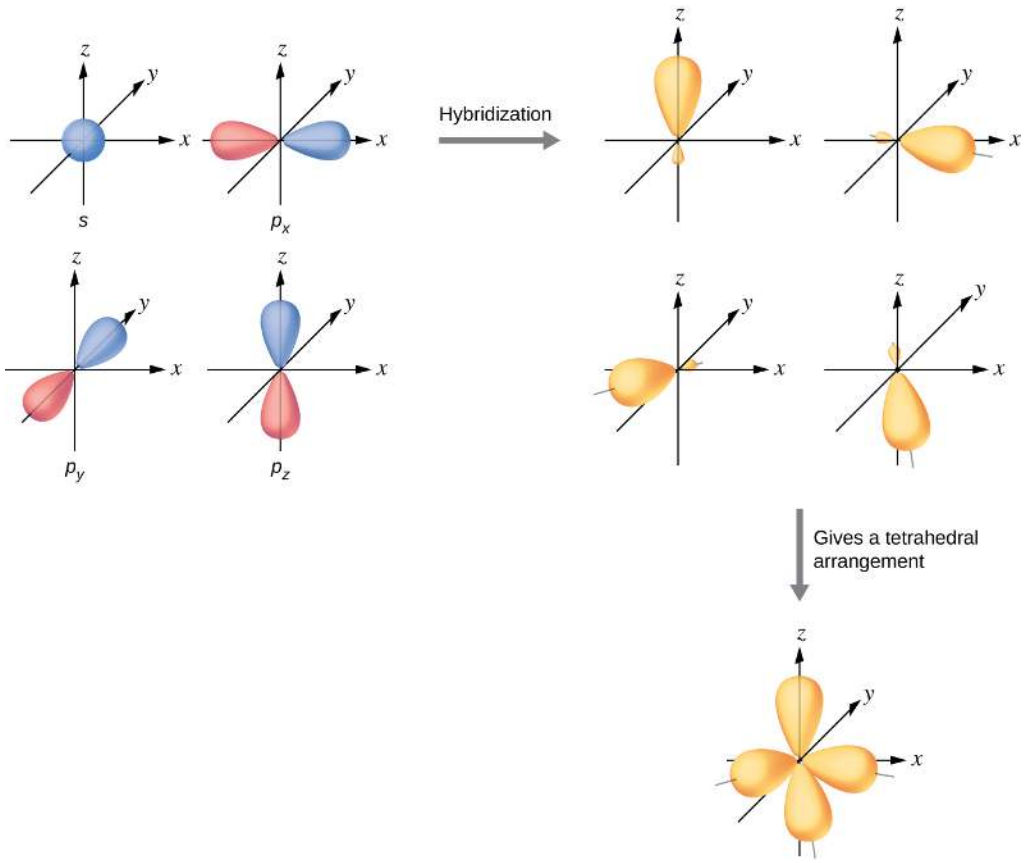


Figure 6.3.10: The hybridization of an s orbital (blue) and three p orbitals (red) produces four equivalent sp^3 hybridized orbitals (yellow) oriented at 109.5° with respect to each other.

A series of three diagrams connected by a right-facing arrow that is labeled, “Hybridization,” and a downward-facing arrow labeled, “Gives a tetrahedral arrangement,” are shown. The first diagram shows a blue spherical orbital and three red, peanut-shaped orbitals, each placed on an x, y, z axis system. The three red orbitals are located on the x , y and z axes, respectively. The second diagram shows the same four orbitals, but they are now purple and have one enlarged lobe and one smaller lobe. Each lies in a different axis in the drawing. The third diagram shows the same four orbitals, but their smaller lobes now overlap to form a tetrahedral structure.

A molecule of methane, CH_4, consists of a carbon atom surrounded by four hydrogen atoms at the corners of a tetrahedron. The carbon atom in methane exhibits sp^3 hybridization. We illustrate the orbitals and electron distribution in an isolated carbon atom and in the bonded atom in CH_4 in Figure 6.3.11. The four valence electrons of the carbon atom are distributed equally in the hybrid orbitals, and each carbon electron pairs with a hydrogen electron when the C–H bonds form.

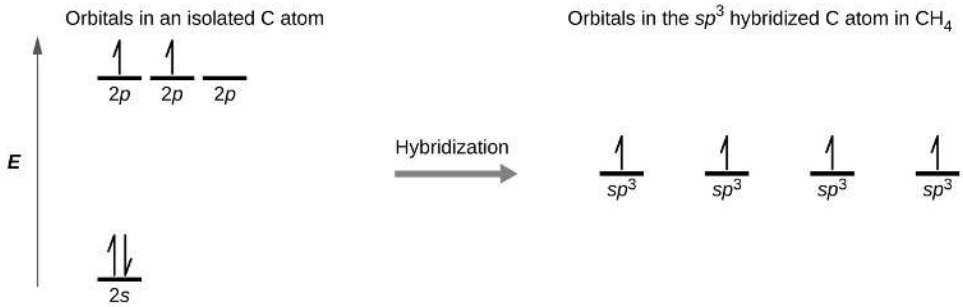


Figure 6.3.11: The four valence atomic orbitals from an isolated carbon atom all hybridize when the carbon bonds in a molecule like CH_4 with four regions of electron density. This creates four equivalent sp^3 hybridized orbitals. Overlap of each of the hybrid orbitals with a hydrogen orbital creates a C–H σ bond.

A diagram is shown in two parts, connected by a right facing arrow labeled, “Hybridization.” The left diagram shows an up-facing arrow labeled “E.” To the lower right of the arrow is a short, horizontal line labeled, “2 s,” that has two vertical half-arrows facing up and down on it. To the upper right of the arrow are a series of three short, horizontal lines labeled, “2 p.” Two of the lines have a vertical, up-facing arrow drawn on them. Above both sets of lines is the phrase, “Orbitals in an isolated C atom.” The right side of the diagram shows four short, horizontal lines placed halfway up the space and each labeled, “s p superscript 3.” An upward-facing half arrow is drawn vertically on each line. Above these lines is the phrase, “Orbitals in the s p superscript 3 hybridized C atom in C H subscript 4.”

In a methane molecule, the 1*s* orbital of each of the four hydrogen atoms overlaps with one of the four sp^3 orbitals of the carbon atom to form a sigma (σ) bond. This results in the formation of four strong, equivalent covalent bonds between the carbon atom and each of the hydrogen atoms to produce the methane molecule, CH_4.

The structure of ethane, C_2H_6, is similar to that of methane in that each carbon in ethane has four neighboring atoms arranged at the corners of a tetrahedron—three hydrogen atoms and one carbon atom (Figure 6.3.10). However, in ethane an sp^3 orbital of one carbon atom overlaps end to end with an sp^3 orbital of a second carbon atom to form a σ bond between the two carbon atoms. Each of the remaining sp^3 hybrid orbitals overlaps with an *s* orbital of a hydrogen atom to form carbon–hydrogen σ bonds. The structure and overall outline of the bonding orbitals of ethane are shown in Figure 6.3.12 The orientation of the two CH_3 groups is not fixed relative to each other. Experimental evidence shows that rotation around σ bonds occurs easily.

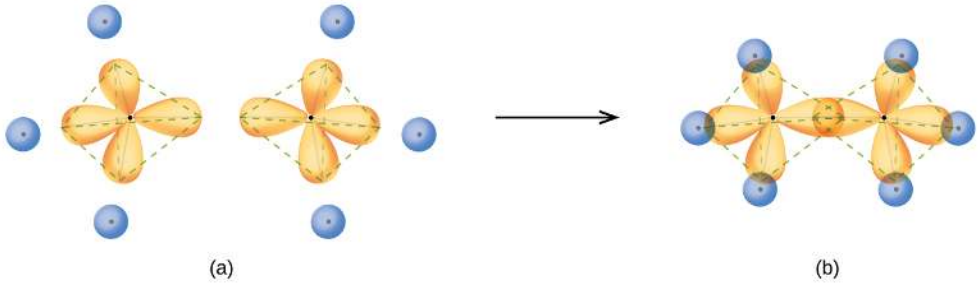


Figure 6.3.12: (a) In the ethane molecule, C_2H_6, each carbon has four sp^3 orbitals. (b) These four orbitals overlap to form seven σ bonds.

Two diagrams are shown and labeled “a” and “b.” Diagram a shows two carbon atoms, each surrounded by their four s p subscript three hybridized orbitals in a three dimensional arrangement. Each of the orbitals is shown overlapping with a spherical hydrogen atom. Diagram b shows the same general arrangement, but the hydrogen atoms are just represented by an, “H” and their spherical orbitals are not shown.

An sp^3 hybrid orbital can also hold a lone pair of electrons. For example, the nitrogen atom in ammonia is surrounded by three bonding pairs and a lone pair of electrons directed to the four corners of a tetrahedron. The nitrogen atom is sp^3 hybridized with one hybrid orbital occupied by the lone pair.

The molecular structure of water is consistent with a tetrahedral arrangement of two lone pairs and two bonding pairs of electrons. Thus we say that the oxygen atom is sp^3 hybridized, with two of the hybrid orbitals occupied by lone pairs and two by bonding pairs. Since lone pairs occupy more space than bonding pairs, structures that contain lone pairs have bond angles slightly distorted from the ideal. Perfect tetrahedra have angles of 109.5°, but the observed angles in ammonia (107.3°) and water (104.5°) are slightly smaller. Other examples of sp^3 hybridization include CCl_4, PCl_3, and NCl_3.

sp^3d and sp^3d^2 Hybridization

To describe the five bonding orbitals in a trigonal bipyramidal arrangement, we must use five of the valence shell atomic orbitals (the *s* orbital, the three *p* orbitals, and one of the *d* orbitals), which gives five sp^3d hybrid orbitals. With an octahedral arrangement of six hybrid orbitals, we must use six valence shell atomic orbitals (the *s* orbital, the three *p* orbitals, and two of the *d* orbitals in its valence shell), which gives six sp^3d^2 hybrid orbitals. These hybridizations are only possible for atoms that have *d* orbitals in their valence subshells (that is, not those in the first or second period).

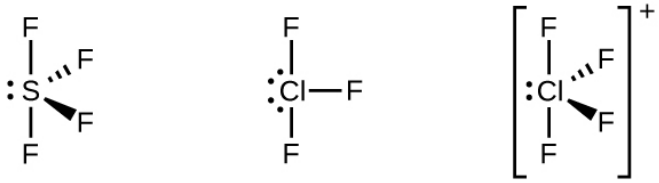


Figure 6.3.13: The three compounds pictured exhibit sp^3d hybridization in the central atom and a trigonal bipyramid form. SF_4 and ClF_4^+ *have one lone pair of electrons on the central atom, and* ClF_3 *has two lone pairs giving it the T-shape shown.*

Three Lewis structures are shown along with designations of molecular shape. The left image shows a sulfur atom singly bonded to four fluorine atoms. The sulfur atom has one lone pair of electrons while each fluorine has three. Two fluorine atoms are drawn vertically up and down from the sulfur while the other two are shown going into and out of the page. The second structure shows one chlorine atom singly bonded to three fluorine atoms. The chlorine has two lone pairs of electrons while each fluorine has three. Two fluorine atoms are drawn vertically up and down from the sulfur while the other is shown horizontally. The right structure shows a chlorine atom singly bonded to four fluorine atoms. The chlorine atom has one lone pair of electrons and a superscript plus sign, while each fluorine has three lone pairs of electrons. Two fluorine atoms are drawn vertically up and down from the sulfur while the other two are shown going into and out of the page.

In a molecule of phosphorus pentachloride, PCl_5, there are five P–Cl bonds (thus five pairs of valence electrons around the phosphorus atom) directed toward the corners of a trigonal bipyramid. We use the 3*s* orbital, the three 3*p* orbitals, and one of the 3*d* orbitals to form the set of five sp^3d hybrid orbitals (Figure 6.3.13) that are involved in the P–Cl bonds. Other atoms that exhibit sp^3d hybridization include the sulfur atom in SF_4 and the chlorine atoms in ClF_3 and in ClF_4^+. (The electrons on fluorine atoms are omitted for clarity.)

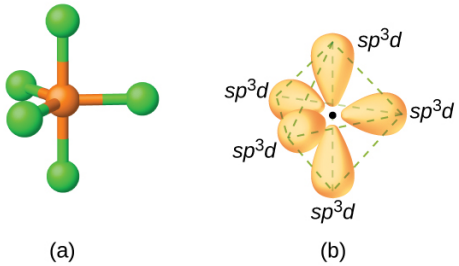


Figure 6.3.14: (a) The five regions of electron density around phosphorus in PCl_5 require five hybrid sp^3d orbitals. (b) These orbitals combine to form a trigonal bipyramidal structure with each large lobe of the hybrid orbital pointing at a vertex. As before, there are also small lobes pointing in the opposite direction for each orbital (not shown for clarity).

Two images are shown and labeled “a” and “b.” Image a depicts a ball-and-stick model in a trigonal bipyramidal arrangement. Image b depicts the hybrid orbitals in the same arrangement and each is labeled, “s p superscript three d.”

The sulfur atom in sulfur hexafluoride, SF_6, exhibits sp^3d^2 hybridization. A molecule of sulfur hexafluoride has six bonding pairs of electrons connecting six fluorine atoms to a single sulfur atom. There are no lone pairs of electrons on the central atom. To bond six fluorine atoms, the 3*s* orbital, the three 3*p* orbitals, and two of the 3*d* orbitals form six equivalent sp^3d^2 hybrid orbitals, each directed toward a different corner of an octahedron. Other atoms that exhibit sp^3d^2 hybridization include the phosphorus atom in PCl_6^-, the iodine atom in the interhalogens IF_6^+, IF_5, ICl_4^-, IF_4^- and the xenon atom in XeF_4.

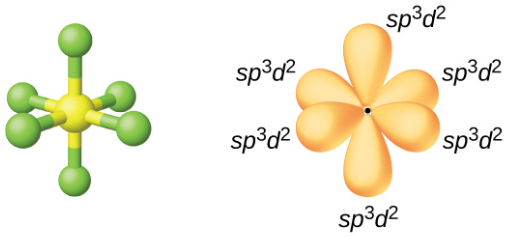


Figure 6.3.15: (a) Sulfur hexafluoride, SF_6, has an octahedral structure that requires sp^3d^2 hybridization. (b) The six sp^3d^2 orbitals form an octahedral structure around sulfur. Again, the minor lobe of each orbital is not shown for clarity.

Two images are shown and labeled “a” and “b.” Image a depicts a ball-and-stick model in an octahedral arrangement. Image b depicts the hybrid orbitals in the same arrangement and each is labeled, “s p superscript three d superscript two.”

Assignment of Hybrid Orbitals to Central Atoms

The hybridization of an atom is determined based on the number of regions of electron density that surround it. The geometrical arrangements characteristic of the various sets of hybrid orbitals are shown in Figure 6.3.16. These arrangements are identical to those of the electron-pair geometries predicted by VSEPR theory. VSEPR theory predicts the shapes of molecules, and hybrid orbital theory provides an explanation for how those shapes are formed. To find the hybridization of a central atom, we can use the following guidelines:

1. Determine the Lewis structure of the molecule.
2. Determine the number of regions of electron density around an atom using VSEPR theory, in which single bonds, multiple bonds, radicals, and lone pairs each count as one region.
3. Assign the set of hybridized orbitals from Figure 6.3.16 that corresponds to this geometry.

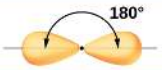
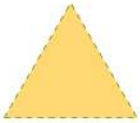
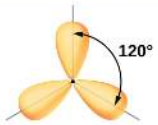
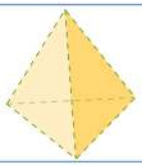
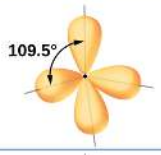
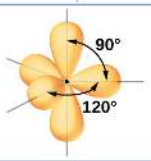
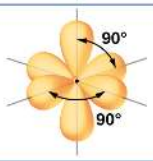
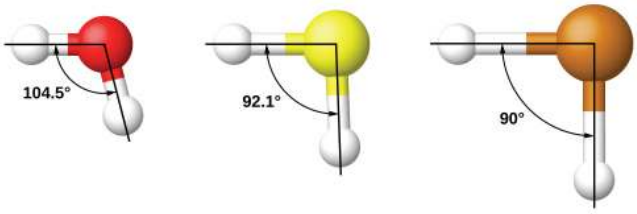
Regions of Electron Density	Arrangement		Hybridization	
2		linear	*sp*	
3		trigonal planar	sp^2	
4		tetrahedral	sp^3	
5		trigonal bipyramidal	sp^3d	
6		octahedral	sp^3d^2	

Figure 6.3.16: The shapes of hybridized orbital sets are consistent with the electron-pair geometries. For example, an atom surrounded by three regions of electron density is sp^2 hybridized, and the three sp^2 orbitals are arranged in a trigonal planar fashion.

A table is shown that is composed of five columns and six rows. The header row contains the phrases, “Regions of electron density,” “Arrangement,” (which has two columns below it), and “Hybridization,” (which has two columns below it). The first column contains the numbers “2,” “3,” “4,” “5,” and “6.” The second column contains images of a line, a triangle, a three sided pyramid, a trigonal bipyramid, and an eight-faced ocatahedron. The third column contains the terms, “Linear,” “Trigonal planar,” “Tetrahedral,” “Trigonal bipyramidal,” and “Octahedral.” The fourth column contains the terms “s p,” “s p superscript 2,” “s p superscript 3,” “s p superscript 3 d,” and “s p superscript 3 d superscript 2.” The last column contains drawings of the molecules beginning with a peanut-shaped structure marked with an angle of “180 degrees.” The second structure is made up of three equal-sized, rounded structures connected at one point with an angle of “120 degrees,” while the third structure is a three-dimensional arrangement of four equal-sized, rounded structures labeled as “109.5 degrees.” The fourth structure is made up of five equal-sized, rounded structures connected at “120 and 90 degrees,” while the fifth structure has six equal-sized, rounded structures connected at “90 degrees.”

> *It is important to remember that hybridization was devised to rationalize experimentally observed molecular geometries, not the other way around.*

The model works well for molecules containing small central atoms, in which the valence electron pairs are close together in space. However, for larger central atoms, the valence-shell electron pairs are farther from the nucleus, and there are fewer repulsions. Their compounds exhibit structures that are often not consistent with VSEPR theory, and hybridized orbitals are not necessary to explain the observed data.



Three Lewis structures are shown. The left structure shows an oxygen atom with two lone pairs of electrons single bonded to two hydrogen atoms. The middle structure is made up of a sulfur atom with two lone pairs of electrons single bonded to two hydrogen atoms. The right structure is made up of a tellurium atom with two lone pairs of electrons single bonded to two hydrogen atoms. From left to right, the bond angles of each molecule decrease.

For example, we have discussed the H–O–H bond angle in H_2O, 104.5°, which is more consistent with sp^3 hybrid orbitals (109.5°) on the central atom than with 2*p* orbitals (90°). Sulfur is in the same group as oxygen, and H_2S has a similar Lewis structure. However, it has a much smaller bond angle (92.1°), which indicates much less hybridization on sulfur than oxygen. Continuing down the group, tellurium is even larger than sulfur, and for H_2Te, the observed bond angle (90°) is consistent with overlap of the 5*p* orbitals, without invoking hybridization. We invoke hybridization where it is necessary to explain the observed structures.

Example 6.3.1: Assigning Hybridization

Ammonium sulfate is important as a fertilizer. What is the hybridization of the sulfur atom in the sulfate ion, SO_4^{2-}?

Solution

The Lewis structure of sulfate shows there are four regions of electron density.

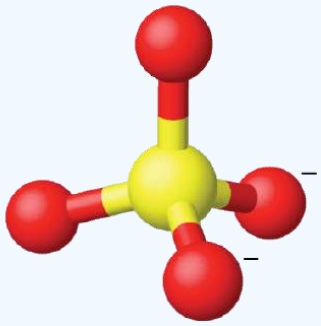


Figure 6.3.16).

A structure is shown in which a sulfur atom is bonded to four oxygen atoms in a tetrahedral arrangement. Two of the oxygen atoms have a negative charge.

Exercise 6.3.1

What is the hybridization of the selenium atom in SeF_4?



A Lewis structure is shown in which four fluorine atoms are each attached to one sulfur atom. Two of the attached fluorine atoms are vertically attached up and down, while two are attached into and out of the page to the right. The sulfur also has one lone pair of electrons attached to the left of the structure.

Answer

The selenium atom is sp^3d hybridized.

Example 6.3.2: Assigning Hybridization

Urea, $NH_2C(O)NH_2$, is sometimes used as a source of nitrogen in fertilizers. What is the hybridization of each nitrogen and carbon atom in urea?

Solution

The Lewis structure of urea is

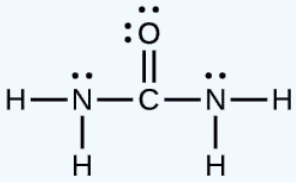


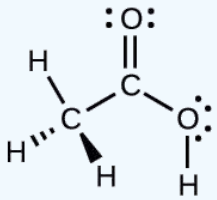
Figure 6.3.16). This is the hybridization of the nitrogen atoms in urea.

A Lewis structure is shown in which a carbon atom is double bonded to an oxygen atom that has two lone pairs of electrons. The carbon atom forms single bonds to two nitrogen atoms. Each nitrogen is single bonded to two hydrogen atoms, and each nitrogen atoms has one lone pair of electrons.

The carbon atom is surrounded by three regions of electron density, positioned in a trigonal planar arrangement. The hybridization in a trigonal planar electron pair geometry is sp^2 (Figure 6.3.16), which is the hybridization of the carbon atom in urea.

Exercise 6.3.1

Acetic acid, $H_3CC(O)OH$, is the molecule that gives vinegar its odor and sour taste. What is the hybridization of the two carbon atoms in acetic acid?



A Lewis structure is shown in which a carbon atom is double bonded to an oxygen atom that has two lone pairs of electrons and single bonded to another oxygen atom that is single boned to a hydrogen atom. This second oxygen atom has two lone pairs of electrons. The carbon is also single bonded to a carbon atom that is single bonded to three hydrogen atoms.

Answer

$H_3\underline{C}$, sp^3; $\underline{C}(O)OH$, sp^2

Summary

We can use hybrid orbitals, which are mathematical combinations of some or all of the valence atomic orbitals, to describe the electron density around covalently bonded atoms. These hybrid orbitals either form sigma (σ) bonds directed toward other atoms of the molecule or contain lone pairs of electrons. We can determine the type of hybridization around a central atom from the geometry of the regions of electron density about it. Two such regions imply *sp* hybridization; three, sp^2 hybridization; four, sp^3 hybridization; five, sp^3d hybridization; and six, sp^3d^2 hybridization. Pi (π) bonds are formed from unhybridized atomic orbitals (*p* or *d* orbitals).

Footnotes

1. Note that orbitals may sometimes be drawn in an elongated “balloon” shape rather than in a more realistic “plump” shape in order to make the geometry easier to visualize.

Glossary

hybrid orbital
orbital created by combining atomic orbitals on a central atom

hybridization
model that describes the changes in the atomic orbitals of an atom when it forms a covalent compound

***sp* hybrid orbital**
one of a set of two orbitals with a linear arrangement that results from combining one *s* and one *p* orbital

***sp*^{2} hybrid orbital**
one of a set of three orbitals with a trigonal planar arrangement that results from combining one *s* and two *p* orbitals

***sp*^{3} hybrid orbital**
one of a set of four orbitals with a tetrahedral arrangement that results from combining one *s* and three *p* orbitals

***sp*^{3}*d* hybrid orbital**
one of a set of five orbitals with a trigonal bipyramidal arrangement that results from combining one *s*, three *p*, and one *d* orbital

***sp*^{3}*d*^{2} hybrid orbital**
one of a set of six orbitals with an octahedral arrangement that results from combining one *s*, three *p*, and two *d* orbitals

---

This page titled 6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **8.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.4: Multiple Bonds

Learning Objectives

- Describe multiple covalent bonding in terms of atomic orbital overlap
- Relate the concept of resonance to π-bonding and electron delocalization

The hybrid orbital model appears to account well for the geometry of molecules involving single covalent bonds. Is it also capable of describing molecules containing double and triple bonds? We have already discussed that multiple bonds consist of σ and π bonds. Next we can consider how we visualize these components and how they relate to hybrid orbitals. The Lewis structure of ethene, C_2H_4, shows us that each carbon atom is surrounded by one other carbon atom and two hydrogen atoms.

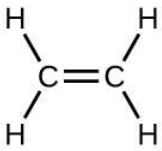


Figure 6.4.2).

A Lewis structure is shown in which two carbon atoms are bonded together by a double bond. Each carbon atom is bonded to two hydrogen atoms by a single bond.

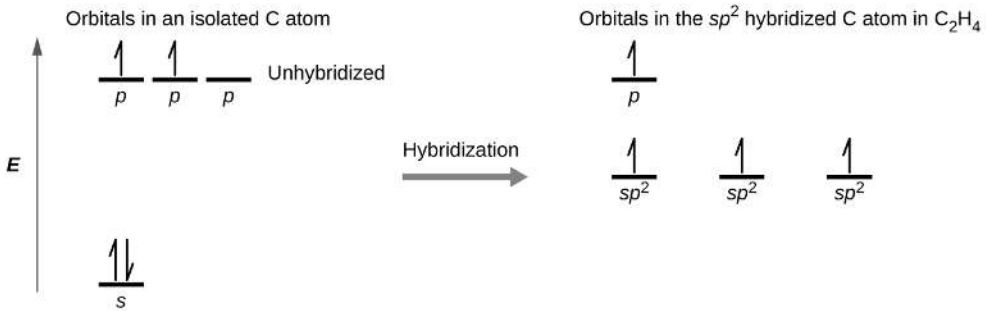


Figure 6.4.1: In ethene, each carbon atom is sp^2 hybridized, and the sp^2 orbitals and the p orbital are singly occupied. The hybrid orbitals overlap to form σ bonds, while the p orbitals on each carbon atom overlap to form a π bond.

A diagram is shown in two parts, connected by a right facing arrow labeled, “Hybridization.” The left diagram shows an up-facing arrow labeled, “E.” To the lower right of the arrow is a short, horizontal line labeled, “2 s,” that has two vertical half-arrows facing up and down on it. To the upper right of the arrow are a series of three short, horizontal lines labeled, “2 p.” Above both sets of lines is the phrase, “Orbitals in an isolated C atom.” Two of the lines have vertical, up-facing arrows drawn on them. The right side of the diagram shows three short, horizontal lines placed halfway up the space and each labeled, “s p superscript 2.” An upward-facing half arrow is drawn vertically on each line. Above these lines is one other short, horizontal line, labeled, “p.” Above both sets of lines is the phrase, “Orbitals in the s p superscript 2 hybridized C atom in C subscript 2 H subscript 4.”

The π bond in the C=C double bond results from the overlap of the third (remaining) 2p orbital on each carbon atom that is not involved in hybridization. This unhybridized p orbital (lobes shown in red and blue in Figure 6.4.2) is perpendicular to the plane of the sp^2 hybrid orbitals. Thus the unhybridized 2p orbitals overlap in a side-by-side fashion, above and below the internuclear axis and form a π bond.

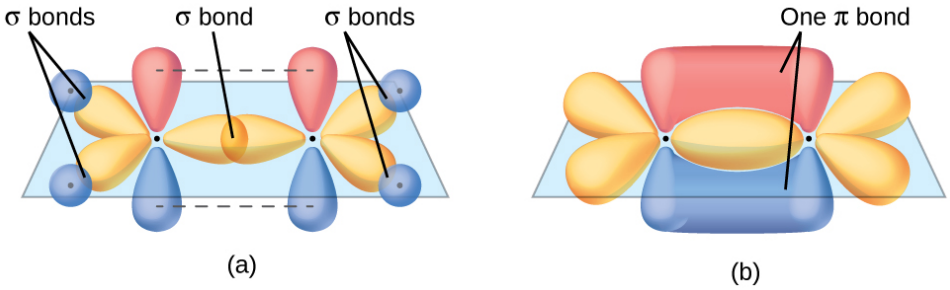
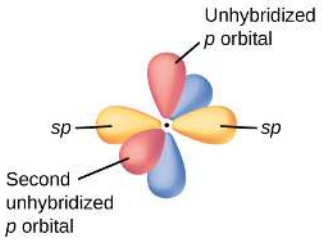


Figure 6.4.2: In the ethene molecule, C_2H_4, there are (a) five σ bonds. One C–C σ bond results from overlap of sp^2 hybrid orbitals on the carbon atom with one sp^2 hybrid orbital on the other carbon atom. Four C–H bonds result from the overlap between the C atoms' sp^2 orbitals with s orbitals on the hydrogen atoms. (b) The π bond is formed by the side-by-side overlap of the two unhybridized p orbitals in the two carbon atoms. The two lobes of the π bond are above and below the plane of the σ system.

Two diagrams are shown labeled, “a” and “b.” Diagram a shows two carbon atoms with three purple balloon-like orbitals arranged in a plane around them and two red balloon-like orbitals arranged vertically and perpendicularly to the plane. There is an overlap of two of the purple orbitals in between the two carbon atoms, and the other four purple orbitals that face the outside of the molecule are shown interacting with spherical blue orbitals from four hydrogen atoms. Diagram b depicts a similar image to diagram a, but the red, vertical orbitals are interacting above and below the plane of the molecule to form two areas labeled, “One pi bond.”

In an ethene molecule, the four hydrogen atoms and the two carbon atoms are all in the same plane. If the two planes of sp^2 hybrid orbitals tilted relative to each other, the *p* orbitals would not be oriented to overlap efficiently to create the π bond. The planar configuration for the ethene molecule occurs because it is the most stable bonding arrangement. This is a significant difference between σ and π bonds; rotation around single (σ) bonds occurs easily because the end-to-end orbital overlap does not depend on the relative orientation of the orbitals on each atom in the bond. In other words, rotation around the internuclear axis does not change the extent to which the σ bonding orbitals overlap because the bonding electron density is symmetric about the axis. Rotation about the internuclear axis is much more difficult for multiple bonds; however, this would drastically alter the off-axis overlap of the π bonding orbitals, essentially breaking the π bond.



A diagram of a carbon atom with two balloon-like purple orbitals labeled, “sp” arranged in a linear fashion around it is shown. Four red balloon-like orbitals are aligned in pairs in the y and z axes around the carbon and are labeled, “unhybridized p orbital,” and, “Second unhybridized p orbital.”

Figure 6.4.3: Diagram of the two linear sp hybrid orbitals of a carbon atom, which lie in a straight line, and the two unhybridized p orbitals at perpendicular angles.

In molecules with sp hybrid orbitals, two unhybridized p orbitals remain on the atom (Figure 6.4.3). We find this situation in acetylene, H−C≡C−H, which is a linear molecule. The sp hybrid orbitals of the two carbon atoms overlap end to end to form a σ bond between the carbon atoms (Figure 6.4.4). The remaining *sp* orbitals form σ bonds with hydrogen atoms. The two unhybridized *p* orbitals per carbon are positioned such that they overlap side by side and, hence, form two π bonds. The two carbon atoms of acetylene are thus bound together by one σ bond and two π bonds, giving a triple bond.

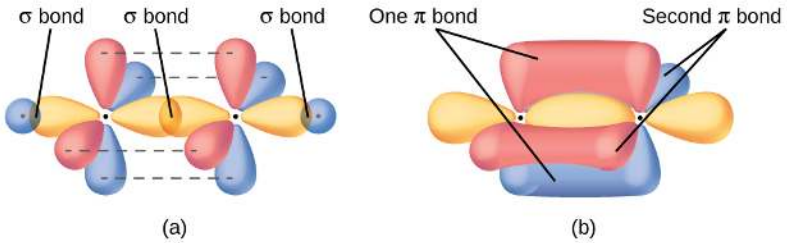
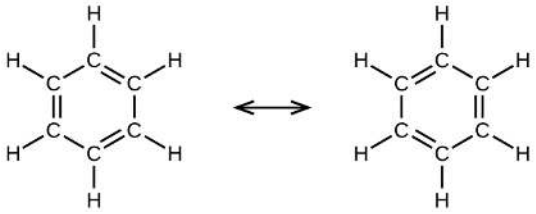


Figure 6.4.4: (a) In the acetylene molecule, C_2H_2, there are two C–H σ bonds and a C≡C triple bond involving one C–C σ bond and two C–C π bonds. The dashed lines, each connecting two lobes, indicate the side-by-side overlap of the four unhybridized p orbitals. (b) This shows the overall outline of the bonds in C_2H_2. The two lobes of each of the π bonds are positioned across from each other around the line of the C–C σ bond.

Two diagrams are shown and labeled, “a” and “b.” Diagram a shows two carbon atoms with two purple balloon-like orbitals arranged in a plane around each of them, and four red balloon-like orbitals arranged along the y and z axes perpendicular to the plane of the molecule. There is an overlap of two of the purple orbitals in between the two carbon atoms. The other two purple orbitals that face the outside of the molecule are shown interacting with spherical blue orbitals from two hydrogen atoms. Diagram b depicts a similar image to diagram a, but the red, vertical orbitals are interacting above and below and to the front and back of the plane of the molecule to form two areas labeled, “One pi bond,” and, “Second pi bond,” each respectively.

Hybridization involves only σ bonds, lone pairs of electrons, and single unpaired electrons (radicals). Structures that account for these features describe the correct hybridization of the atoms. However, many structures also include resonance forms. Remember that resonance forms occur when various arrangements of π bonds are possible. Since the arrangement of π bonds involves only the unhybridized orbitals, resonance does not influence the assignment of hybridization.

For example, molecule benzene has two resonance forms (Figure 6.4.5). We can use either of these forms to determine that each of the carbon atoms is bonded to three other atoms with no lone pairs, so the correct hybridization is sp^2. The electrons in the unhybridized *p* orbitals form π bonds. Neither resonance structure completely describes the electrons in the π bonds. They are not located in one position or the other, but in reality are delocalized throughout the ring. Valence bond theory does not easily address delocalization. Bonding in molecules with resonance forms is better described by molecular orbital theory.



A diagram is shown that is made up of two Lewis structures connected by a double ended arrow. The left image shows six carbon atoms bonded together with alternating double and single bonds to form a six-sided ring. Each carbon is also bonded to a hydrogen atom by a single bond. The right image shows the same structure, but the double and single bonds in between the carbon atoms have changed positions.

Figure 6.4.5: Each carbon atom in benzene, C_6H_6, is sp^2 hybridized, independently of which resonance form is considered. The electrons in the π bonds are not located in one set of p orbitals or the other, but rather delocalized throughout the molecule.

Example 6.4.1: Assignment of Hybridization Involving Resonance

Some acid rain results from the reaction of sulfur dioxide with atmospheric water vapor, followed by the formation of sulfuric acid. Sulfur dioxide, SO_2, is a major component of volcanic gases as well as a product of the combustion of sulfur-containing coal. What is the hybridization of the *S* atom in SO_2?

Solution

The resonance structures of SO_2 are

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122535



Two Lewis structures connected by a double-ended arrow are shown. The left structure shows a sulfur atom with one lone pair of electrons and a positive sign which is single bonded on one side to an oxygen atom with three lone pairs of electrons and a negative sign. The sulfur atom is double bonded on the other side to another oxygen atom with two lone pairs of electrons. The right-hand structure is the same as the left except that the position of the double bonded oxygen atom is switched. In both structures the attached oxygen atoms form an acute angle in terms of the sulfur atom.

The sulfur atom is surrounded by two bonds and one lone pair of electrons in either resonance structure. Therefore, the electron-pair geometry is trigonal planar, and the hybridization of the sulfur atom is sp^2.

? Exercise 6.4.1

Another acid in acid rain is nitric acid, HNO_3, which is produced by the reaction of nitrogen dioxide, NO_2, with atmospheric water vapor. What is the hybridization of the nitrogen atom in NO_2? (Note: the lone electron on nitrogen occupies a hybridized orbital just as a lone pair would.)

Answer

sp^2

Summary

Multiple bonds consist of a σ bond located along the axis between two atoms and one or two π bonds. The σ bonds are usually formed by the overlap of hybridized atomic orbitals, while the π bonds are formed by the side-by-side overlap of unhybridized orbitals. Resonance occurs when there are multiple unhybridized orbitals with the appropriate alignment to overlap, so the placement of π bonds can vary.

This page titled 6.4: Multiple Bonds is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

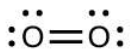
- **8.4: Multiple Bonds** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.5: Molecular Orbital Theory

Learning Objectives

- Outline the basic quantum-mechanical approach to deriving molecular orbitals from atomic orbitals
- Describe traits of bonding and antibonding molecular orbitals
- Calculate bond orders based on molecular electron configurations
- Write molecular electron configurations for first- and second-row diatomic molecules
- Relate these electron configurations to the molecules' stabilities and magnetic properties

For almost every covalent molecule that exists, we can now draw the Lewis structure, predict the electron-pair geometry, predict the molecular geometry, and come close to predicting bond angles. However, one of the most important molecules we know, the oxygen molecule O_2, presents a problem with respect to its Lewis structure. We would write the following Lewis structure for O_2:



A Lewis structure is shown. It is made up of two oxygen atoms, each with two lone pairs of electrons, bonded together with a double bond.

This electronic structure adheres to all the rules governing Lewis theory. There is an O=O double bond, and each oxygen atom has eight electrons around it. However, this picture is at odds with the magnetic behavior of oxygen. By itself, O_2 is not magnetic, but it is attracted to magnetic fields. Thus, when we pour liquid oxygen past a strong magnet, it collects between the poles of the magnet and defies gravity. Such attraction to a magnetic field is called paramagnetism, and it arises in molecules that have unpaired electrons. And yet, the Lewis structure of O_2 indicates that all electrons are paired. How do we account for this discrepancy?

Magnetic susceptibility measures the force experienced by a substance in a magnetic field. When we compare the weight of a sample to the weight measured in a magnetic field (Figure 6.5.1), paramagnetic samples that are attracted to the magnet will appear heavier because of the force exerted by the magnetic field. We can calculate the number of unpaired electrons based on the increase in weight.

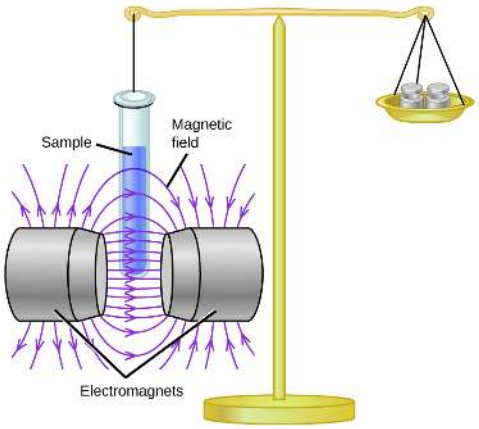


Figure 6.5.1: A Gouy balance compares the mass of a sample in the presence of a magnetic field with the mass with the electromagnet turned off to determine the number of unpaired electrons in a sample.

Experiments show that each O_2 molecule has two unpaired electrons. The Lewis-structure model does not predict the presence of these two unpaired electrons. Unlike oxygen, the apparent weight of most molecules decreases slightly in the presence of an inhomogeneous magnetic field. Materials in which all of the electrons are paired are diamagnetic and weakly repel a magnetic field. Paramagnetic and diamagnetic materials do not act as permanent magnets. Only in the presence of an applied magnetic field do they demonstrate attraction or repulsion.



Video 6.5.1: Water, like most molecules, contains all paired electrons. Living things contain a large percentage of water, so they demonstrate diamagnetic behavior. If you place a frog near a sufficiently large magnet, it will levitate. You can see videos of diamagnetic floating frogs, strawberries, and more (levitating frog [www.youtube.com])

Molecular orbital theory (MO theory) provides an explanation of chemical bonding that accounts for the paramagnetism of the oxygen molecule. It also explains the bonding in a number of other molecules, such as violations of the octet rule and more molecules with more complicated bonding (beyond the scope of this text) that are difficult to describe with Lewis structures. Additionally, it provides a model for describing the energies of electrons in a molecule and the probable location of these electrons. Unlike valence bond theory, which uses hybrid orbitals that are assigned to one specific atom, MO theory uses the combination of atomic orbitals to yield molecular orbitals that are delocalized over the entire molecule rather than being localized on its constituent atoms. MO theory also helps us understand why some substances are electrical conductors, others are semiconductors, and still others are insulators. Table 6.5.1 summarizes the main points of the two complementary bonding theories. Both theories provide different, useful ways of describing molecular structure.

Table \(\PageIndex{1}\): Comparison of Bonding Theories

Valence Bond Theory	Molecular Orbital Theory
considers bonds as localized between one pair of atoms	considers electrons delocalized throughout the entire molecule
creates bonds from overlap of atomic orbitals (*s*, *p*, *d*…) and hybrid orbitals (*sp*, sp^2, sp^3…)	combines atomic orbitals to form molecular orbitals (σ, σ*, π, π*)
forms σ or π bonds	creates bonding and antibonding interactions based on which orbitals are filled
predicts molecular shape based on the number of regions of electron density	predicts the arrangement of electrons in molecules
needs multiple structures to describe resonance	

Molecular orbital theory describes the distribution of electrons in molecules in much the same way that the distribution of electrons in atoms is described using atomic orbitals. Using quantum mechanics, the behavior of an electron in a molecule is still described by a wave function, Ψ, analogous to the behavior in an atom. Just like electrons around isolated atoms, electrons around atoms in molecules are limited to discrete (quantized) energies. The region of space in which a valence electron in a molecule is likely to be found is called a molecular orbital (Ψ^2). Like an atomic orbital, a molecular orbital is full when it contains two electrons with opposite spin.

We will consider the molecular orbitals in molecules composed of two identical atoms (H_2 or Cl_2, for example). Such molecules are called homonuclear diatomic molecules. In these diatomic molecules, several types of molecular orbitals occur.

The mathematical process of combining atomic orbitals to generate molecular orbitals is called the linear combination of atomic orbitals (LCAO). The wave function describes the wavelike properties of an electron. Molecular orbitals are combinations of atomic orbital wave functions. Combining waves can lead to constructive interference, in which peaks line up with peaks, or destructive interference, in which peaks line up with troughs (Figure 6.5.2). In orbitals, the waves are three dimensional, and they

combine with in-phase waves producing regions with a higher probability of electron density and out-of-phase waves producing nodes, or regions of no electron density.

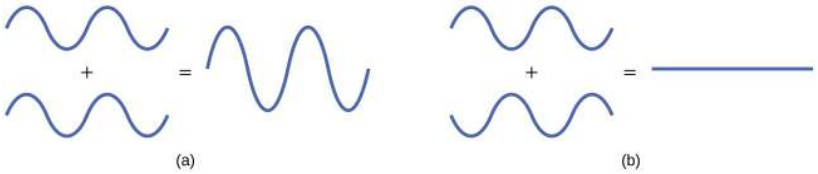


Figure 6.5.2: (a) When in-phase waves combine, constructive interference produces a wave with greater amplitude. (b) When out-of-phase waves combine, destructive interference produces a wave with less (or no) amplitude.

A pair of diagrams are shown and labeled, “a” and “b.” Diagram a shows two identical waves with two crests and two troughs. They are drawn one above the other with a plus sign in between and an equal sign to the right. To the right of the equal sign is a much taller wave with a same number of troughs and crests. Diagram b shows two waves with two crests and two troughs, but they are mirror images of one another rotated over a horizontal axis. They are drawn one above the other with a plus sign in between and an equal sign to the right. To the right of the equal sign is a flat line.

There are two types of molecular orbitals that can form from the overlap of two atomic *s* orbitals on adjacent atoms. The two types are illustrated in Figure 6.5.3. The in-phase combination produces a lower energy σ_s molecular orbital (read as "sigma-s") in which most of the electron density is directly between the nuclei. The out-of-phase addition (which can also be thought of as subtracting the wave functions) produces a higher energy σ_s^* molecular orbital (read as "sigma-s-star") molecular orbital in which there is a node between the nuclei. The asterisk signifies that the orbital is an antibonding orbital. Electrons in a σ_s orbital are attracted by both nuclei at the same time and are more stable (of lower energy) than they would be in the isolated atoms. Adding electrons to these orbitals creates a force that holds the two nuclei together, so we call these orbitals bonding orbitals. Electrons in the σ_s^* orbitals are located well away from the region between the two nuclei. The attractive force between the nuclei and these electrons pulls the two nuclei apart. Hence, these orbitals are called antibonding orbitals. Electrons fill the lower-energy bonding orbital before the higher-energy antibonding orbital, just as they fill lower-energy atomic orbitals before they fill higher-energy atomic orbitals.

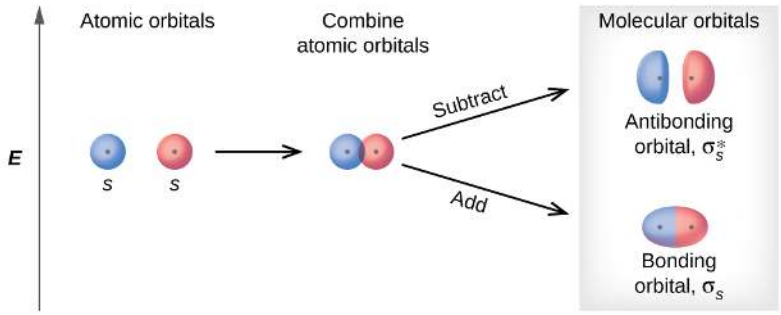
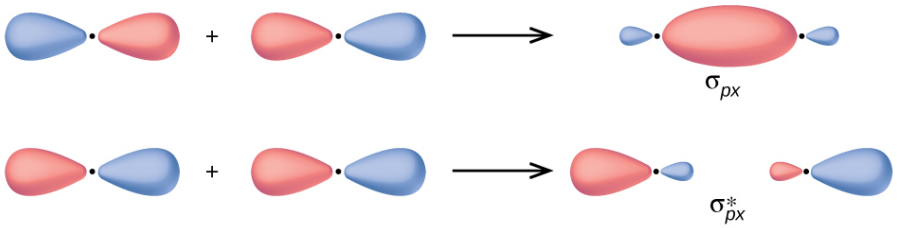


Figure 6.5.3: Sigma (σ) and sigma-star (σ*) molecular orbitals are formed by the combination of two s atomic orbitals. The plus (+) signs indicate the locations of nuclei.

A diagram is shown that depicts a vertical upward-facing arrow that lies to the left of all the other portions of the diagram and is labeled, “E.” To the immediate right of the midpoint of the arrow are two circles each labeled with a positive sign, the letter S, and the phrase, “Atomic orbitals.” These are followed by a right-facing horizontal arrow that points to the same two circles labeled with plus signs, but they are now touching and are labeled, “Combine atomic orbitals.” Two right-facing arrows lead to the last portion of the diagram, one facing upward and one facing downward. The upper arrow is labeled, “Subtract,” and points to two oblong ovals labeled with plus signs, and the phrase, “Antibonding orbitals sigma subscript s superscript asterisk.” The lower arrow is labeled, “Add,” and points to an elongated oval with two plus signs that is labeled, “Bonding orbital sigma subscript s.” The heading over the last section of the diagram are the words, “Molecular orbitals.”

In *p* orbitals, the wave function gives rise to two lobes with opposite phases, analogous to how a two-dimensional wave has both parts above and below the average. We indicate the phases by shading the orbital lobes different colors. When orbital lobes of the same phase overlap, constructive wave interference increases the electron density. When regions of opposite phase overlap, the destructive wave interference decreases electron density and creates nodes. When *p* orbitals overlap end to end, they create σ and σ* orbitals (Figure 6.5.4). If two atoms are located along the *x*-axis in a Cartesian coordinate system, the two p_x orbitals overlap end to end and form σ_{px} (bonding) and σ_{px}^* (antibonding) (read as "sigma-p-x" and "sigma-p-x star," respectively). Just as with *s*-orbital overlap, the asterisk indicates the orbital with a node between the nuclei, which is a higher-energy, antibonding orbital.



Two horizontal rows of diagrams are shown. The upper diagram shows two equally-sized peanut-shaped orbitals with a plus sign in between them connected to a merged orbital diagram by a right facing arrow. The merged diagram has a much larger oval at the center and much smaller ovular orbitals on the edge. It is labeled, “sigma subscript p x.” The lower diagram shows two equally-sized peanut-shaped orbitals with a plus sign in between them connected to a split orbital diagram by a right facing arrow. The split diagram has a much larger oval at the outer ends and much smaller ovular orbitals on the inner edges. It is labeled, “sigma subscript p x superscript asterisk”.

Figure 6.5.4: Combining wave functions of two p atomic orbitals along the internuclear axis creates two molecular orbitals, σp and σ_p^*.

The side-by-side overlap of two *p* orbitals gives rise to a pi (π) bonding molecular orbital and a \(π^*\) antibonding molecular orbital, as shown in Figure 6.5.5. In valence bond theory, we describe π bonds as containing a nodal plane containing the internuclear axis and perpendicular to the lobes of the *p* orbitals, with electron density on either side of the node. In molecular orbital theory, we describe the π orbital by this same shape, and a π bond exists when this orbital contains electrons. Electrons in this orbital interact with both nuclei and help hold the two atoms together, making it a bonding orbital. For the out-of-phase combination, there are two nodal planes created, one along the internuclear axis and a perpendicular one between the nuclei.

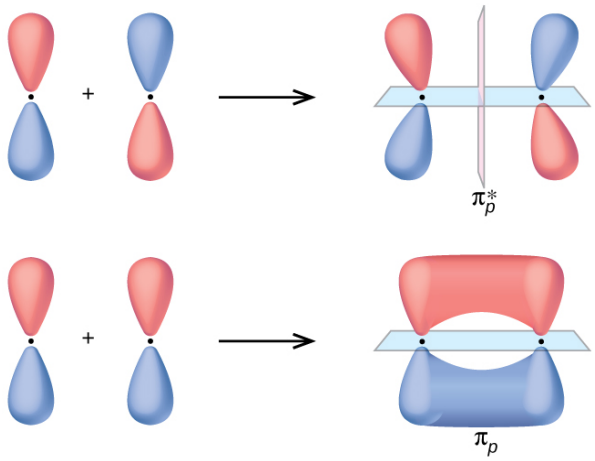


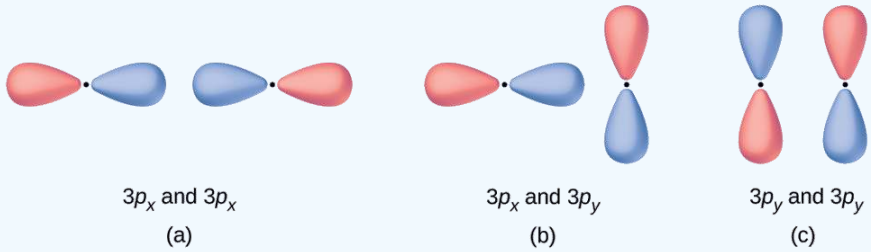
Figure 6.5.5: Side-by-side overlap of each two p orbitals results in the formation of two π molecular orbitals. Combining the out-of-phase orbitals results in an antibonding molecular orbital with two nodes. One contains the internuclear axis, and one is perpendicular to the axis. Combining the in-phase orbitals results in a bonding orbital. There is a node (blue plane) containing the internuclear axis with the two lobes of the orbital located above and below this node.

Two horizontal rows of diagrams are shown. The upper and lower diagrams both begin with two vertical peanut-shaped orbitals with a plus sign in between followed by a right-facing arrow. The upper diagram shows the same vertical peanut orbitals bending slightly away from one another and separated by a dotted line. It is labeled, “pi subscript p superscript asterisk.” The lower diagram shows the horizontal overlap of the two orbitals and is labeled, “pi subscript p.”

In the molecular orbitals of diatomic molecules, each atom also has two sets of *p* orbitals oriented side by side (p_y and p_z), so these four atomic orbitals combine pairwise to create two π orbitals and two π^* orbitals. The π_{py} and π_{py}^* orbitals are oriented at right angles to the π_{pz} and π_{pz}^* orbitals. Except for their orientation, the π_{py} and π_{pz} orbitals are identical and have the same energy; they are degenerate orbitals. The π_{py}^* and π_{pz}^* antibonding orbitals are also degenerate and identical except for their orientation. A total of six molecular orbitals results from the combination of the six atomic *p* orbitals in two atoms: σ_{px} and σ_{px}^*, π_{py} and π_{py}^*, π_{pz} and π_{pz}^*.

Example 6.5.1: Molecular Orbitals

Predict what type (if any) of molecular orbital would result from adding the wave functions so each pair of orbitals shown overlap. The orbitals are all similar in energy.



Three diagrams are shown and labeled “a,” “b,” and “c.” Diagram a shows two horizontal peanut-shaped orbitals laying side-by-side. They are labeled, “3 p subscript x and 3 p subscript x.” Diagram b shows one vertical and one horizontal peanut-shaped orbital which are at right angles to one another. They are labeled, “3 p subscript x and 3 p subscript y.” Diagram c shows two vertical peanut-shaped orbitals laying side-by-side and labeled, “3 p subscript y and 3 p subscript y.”

Solution

a. This is an in-phase combination, resulting in a σ_{3p} orbital
b. This will not result in a new orbital because the in-phase component (bottom) and out-of-phase component (top) cancel out. Only orbitals with the correct alignment can combine.
c. This is an out-of-phase combination, resulting in a π^*_{3p} orbital.

Exercise 6.5.1

Label the molecular orbital shown as σ or π, bonding or antibonding and indicate where the node occurs.



Two orbitals are shown lying end-to-end. Each has one enlarged and one small side. The small sides are facing one another

Answer

The orbital is located along the internuclear axis, so it is a σ orbital. There is a node bisecting the internuclear axis, so it is an antibonding orbital.



Two orbitals are shown lying end-to-end. Each has one enlarged and one small side. The small sides are facing one another and are separated by a vertical dotted line.

Application: Computational Chemistry in Drug Design

While the descriptions of bonding described in this chapter involve many theoretical concepts, they also have many practical, real-world applications. For example, drug design is an important field that uses our understanding of chemical bonding to develop pharmaceuticals. This interdisciplinary area of study uses biology (understanding diseases and how they operate) to identify specific targets, such as a binding site that is involved in a disease pathway. By modeling the structures of the binding site and potential drugs, computational chemists can predict which structures can fit together and how effectively they will bind (Figure 6.5.6). Thousands of potential candidates can be narrowed down to a few of the most promising candidates. These candidate molecules are then carefully tested to determine side effects, how effectively they can be transported through the

body, and other factors. Dozens of important new pharmaceuticals have been discovered with the aid of computational chemistry, and new research projects are underway.

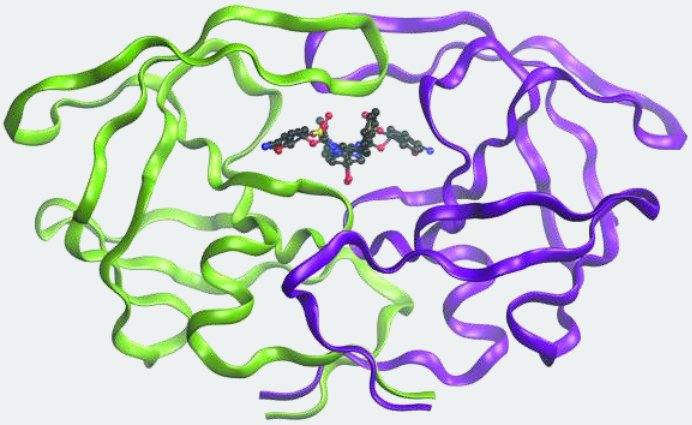


Figure 6.5.6: The molecule shown, HIV-1 protease, is an important target for pharmaceutical research. By designing molecules that bind to this protein, scientists are able to drastically inhibit the progress of the disease.

A diagram of a molecule is shown. The image shows a tangle of ribbon-like, intertwined, pink and green curling lines with a complex ball and stick model in the center.

Molecular Orbital Energy Diagrams

The relative energy levels of atomic and molecular orbitals are typically shown in a molecular orbital diagram (Figure 6.5.7). For a diatomic molecule, the atomic orbitals of one atom are shown on the left, and those of the other atom are shown on the right. Each horizontal line represents one orbital that can hold two electrons. The molecular orbitals formed by the combination of the atomic orbitals are shown in the center. Dashed lines show which of the atomic orbitals combine to form the molecular orbitals. For each pair of atomic orbitals that combine, one lower-energy (bonding) molecular orbital and one higher-energy (antibonding) orbital result. Thus we can see that combining the six 2*p* atomic orbitals results in three bonding orbitals (one σ and two π) and three antibonding orbitals (one σ* and two π*).

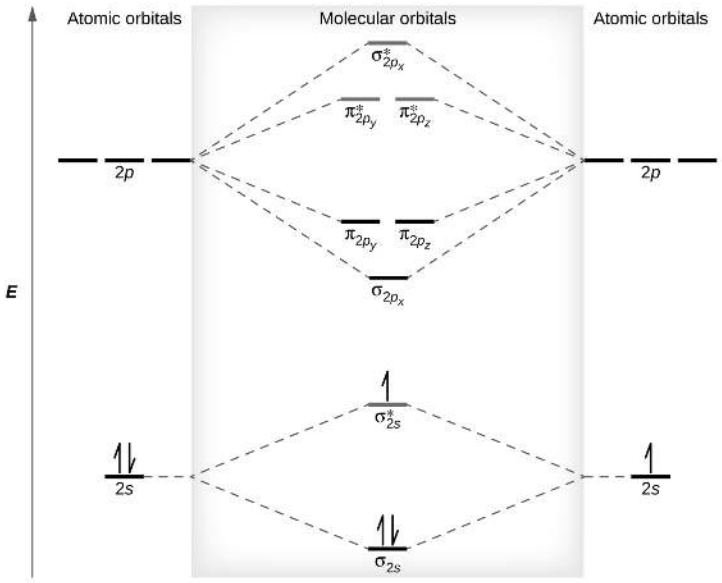


Figure 6.5.7: This is the molecular orbital diagram for the homonuclear diatomic Be_2^+, showing the molecular orbitals of the valence shell only. The molecular orbitals are filled in the same manner as atomic orbitals, using the Aufbau principle and Hund's rule.

A diagram is shown that has an upward-facing vertical arrow running along the left side labeled, "E." At the bottom center of the diagram is a horizontal line labeled, "sigma subscript 2 s," that has two vertical half arrows drawn on it, one facing up and one facing down. This line is connected to the right and left by upward-facing, dotted lines to two more horizontal lines, each labeled, "2 s." The line on the left has two vertical half arrows drawn on it, one facing up and one facing down while the line of the right has one half arrow facing up drawn on it. These two lines are connected by upward-facing dotted lines to another line in the center of the diagram, but further up from the first. It is labeled, "sigma subscript 2 s superscript asterisk." This horizontal line has one upward-facing vertical half-arrow drawn on it. Moving farther up the center of the diagram is a long horizontal line labeled, "sigma subscript 2 p subscript x," which lies below two horizontal lines. These two horizontal lines lie side-by-side, and labeled, "pi subscript 2 p subscript y," and, "pi subscript 2 p subscript z." Both the bottom and top lines are connected to the right and left by upward-facing, dotted lines to three more horizontal lines, each labeled, "2 p." These sets of lines are connected by upward-facing dotted lines to another single line and then pair of double lines in the center of the diagram, but farther up from the lower lines. They are labeled, "sigma subscript 2 p subscript x superscript asterisk," and, ""pi subscript 2 p subscript y superscript asterisk," and, "pi subscript 2 p subscript z superscript asterisk," respectively. The left and right sides of the diagram have headers that read, "Atomic orbitals," while the center is header reads "Molecular orbitals".

We predict the distribution of electrons in these molecular orbitals by filling the orbitals in the same way that we fill atomic orbitals, by the Aufbau principle. Lower-energy orbitals fill first, electrons spread out among degenerate orbitals before pairing, and each orbital can hold a maximum of two electrons with opposite spins (Figure 6.5.7). Just as we write electron configurations for atoms, we can write the molecular electronic configuration by listing the orbitals with superscripts indicating the number of electrons present. For clarity, we place parentheses around molecular orbitals with the same energy. In this case, each orbital is at a different energy, so parentheses separate each orbital. Thus we would expect a diatomic molecule or ion containing seven electrons (such as Be_2^+) would have the molecular electron configuration $(\sigma_{1s})^2(\sigma_{1s}^*)^2(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2s}^*)^1$. It is common to omit the core electrons from molecular orbital diagrams and configurations and include only the valence electrons.

Bond Order

The filled molecular orbital diagram shows the number of electrons in both bonding and antibonding molecular orbitals. The net contribution of the electrons to the bond strength of a molecule is identified by determining the bond order that results from the filling of the molecular orbitals by electrons.

When using Lewis structures to describe the distribution of electrons in molecules, we define bond order as the number of bonding pairs of electrons between two atoms. Thus a single bond has a bond order of 1, a double bond has a bond order of 2, and a triple bond has a bond order of 3. We define bond order differently when we use the molecular orbital description of the distribution of electrons, but the resulting bond order is usually the same. The MO technique is more accurate and can handle cases when the Lewis structure method fails, but both methods describe the same phenomenon.

In the molecular orbital model, an electron contributes to a bonding interaction if it occupies a bonding orbital and it contributes to an antibonding interaction if it occupies an antibonding orbital. The bond order is calculated by subtracting the destabilizing

(antibonding) electrons from the stabilizing (bonding) electrons. Since a bond consists of two electrons, we divide by two to get the bond order. We can determine bond order with the following equation:

$$\text{bond order} = \frac{(\text{number of bonding electrons}) - (\text{number of antibonding electrons})}{2}$$

The order of a covalent bond is a guide to its strength; a bond between two given atoms becomes stronger as the bond order increases. If the distribution of electrons in the molecular orbitals between two atoms is such that the resulting bond would have a bond order of zero, a stable bond does not form. We next look at some specific examples of MO diagrams and bond orders.

Bonding in Diatomic Molecules

A dihydrogen molecule (H_2) forms from two hydrogen atoms. When the atomic orbitals of the two atoms combine, the electrons occupy the molecular orbital of lowest energy, the σ_{1s} bonding orbital. A dihydrogen molecule, H_2, readily forms because the energy of a H_2 molecule is lower than that of two H atoms. The σ_{1s} orbital that contains both electrons is lower in energy than either of the two 1*s* atomic orbitals.

A molecular orbital can hold two electrons, so both electrons in the H_2 molecule are in the σ_{1s} bonding orbital; the electron configuration is $(\sigma_{1s})^2$. We represent this configuration by a molecular orbital energy diagram (Figure 6.5.8) in which a single upward arrow indicates one electron in an orbital, and two (upward and downward) arrows indicate two electrons of opposite spin.

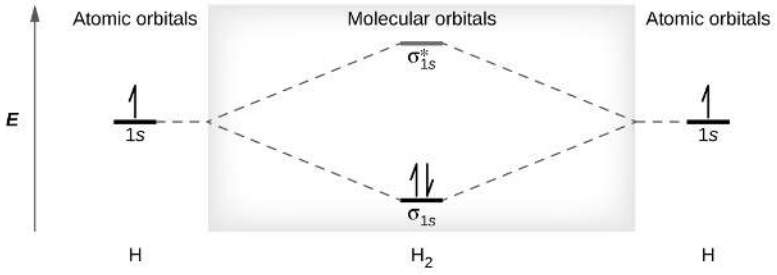


Figure 6.5.8: The molecular orbital energy diagram predicts that H_2 will be a stable molecule with lower energy than the separated atoms.

A diagram is shown that has an upward-facing vertical arrow running along the left side labeled “E.” At the bottom center of the diagram is a horizontal line labeled, “sigma subscript 1 s,” that has two vertical half arrows drawn on it, one facing up and one facing down. This line is connected to the right and left by upward-facing, dotted lines to two more horizontal lines, each labeled, “1 s,” and each with one vertical half-arrow facing up drawn on it. These two lines are connected by upward-facing dotted lines to another line in the center of the diagram, but farther up from the first, and labeled, “sigma subscript 1 s superscript asterisk.” The left and right sides of the diagram have headers that read, ”Atomic orbitals,” while the center header reads, “Molecular orbitals.” The bottom left and right are labeled “H” while the center is labeled “H subscript 2.”

A dihydrogen molecule contains two bonding electrons and no antibonding electrons so we have

$$\text{bond order in } H_2 = \frac{(2-0)}{2} = 1$$

Because the bond order for the H–H bond is equal to 1, the bond is a single bond.

A helium atom has two electrons, both of which are in its 1*s* orbital. Two helium atoms do not combine to form a dihelium molecule, He_2, with four electrons, because the stabilizing effect of the two electrons in the lower-energy bonding orbital would be offset by the destabilizing effect of the two electrons in the higher-energy antibonding molecular orbital. We would write the hypothetical electron configuration of He_2 as $(\sigma_{1s})^2(\sigma^*_{1s})^2$ as in Figure 6.5.9. The net energy change would be zero, so there is no driving force for helium atoms to form the diatomic molecule. In fact, helium exists as discrete atoms rather than as diatomic molecules. The bond order in a hypothetical dihelium molecule would be zero.

$$\text{bond order in } He_2 = \frac{(2-2)}{2} = 0$$

A bond order of zero indicates that no bond is formed between two atoms.

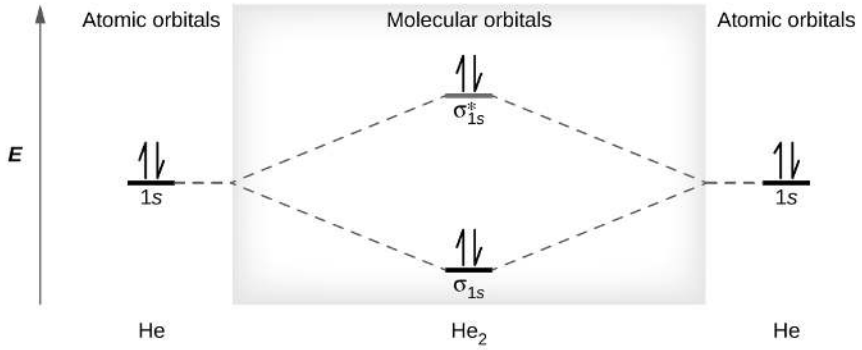


Figure 6.5.9: The molecular orbital energy diagram predicts that He_2 will not be a stable molecule, since it has equal numbers of bonding and antibonding electrons.

A diagram is shown that has an upward-facing vertical arrow running along the left side labeled, “E.” At the bottom center of the diagram is a horizontal line labeled, “sigma subscript 1 s,” that has two vertical half arrows drawn on it, one facing up and one facing down. This line is connected to the right and left by upward-facing, dotted lines to two more horizontal lines, each labeled, “1 s,” and each with one vertical half-arrow facing up and one facing down drawn on it. These two lines are connected by upward-facing dotted lines to another line in the center of the diagram, but farther up from the first, and labeled, “sigma subscript 1 s superscript asterisk.” This line has one upward-facing and one downward-facing vertical arrow drawn on it. The left and right sides of the diagram have headers that read, “Atomic orbitals,” while the center header reads, “Molecular orbitals.” The bottom left and right are labeled, “H e,” while the center is labeled, “H e subscript 2.”

The Diatomic Molecules of the Second Period

Eight possible homonuclear diatomic molecules might be formed by the atoms of the second period of the periodic table: Li_2, Be_2, B_2, C_2, N_2, O_2, F_2, and Ne_2. However, we can predict that the Be_2 molecule and the Ne_2 molecule would not be stable. We can see this by a consideration of the molecular electron configurations (Table 6.5.1).

Table 6.5.1: Electron Configuration and Bond Order for Molecular Orbitals in Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules of Period Two Elements

Molecule	Electron Configuration	Bond Order
Li_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2$	1
Be_2 (unstable)	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2$	0
B_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2(\pi_{2py},\ \pi_{2pz})^2$	1
C_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2(\pi_{2py},\ \pi_{2pz})^4$	2
N_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2(\pi_{2py},\ \pi_{2pz})^4(\sigma_{2px})^2$	3
O_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2px})^2(\pi_{2py},\ \pi_{2pz})^4(\pi^*_{2py}, \pi^*_{2pz})^2$	2
F_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2px})^2(\pi_{2py},\ \pi_{2pz})^4(\pi^*_{2py},\ \pi^*_{2pz})^4$	1
Ne_2 (unstable)	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2px})^2(\pi_{2py},\ \pi_{2pz})^4(\pi^*_{2py}, \pi^*_{2pz})^4(\sigma^*_{2px})^2$	0

We predict valence molecular orbital electron configurations just as we predict electron configurations of atoms. Valence electrons are assigned to valence molecular orbitals with the lowest possible energies. Consistent with Hund’s rule, whenever there are two or more degenerate molecular orbitals, electrons fill each orbital of that type singly before any pairing of electrons takes place.

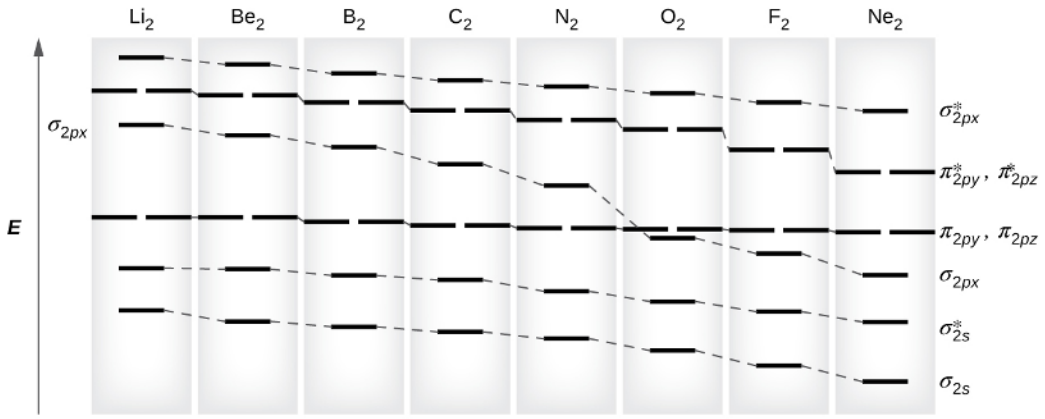


Figure 6.5.10: This shows the MO diagrams for each homonuclear diatomic molecule in the second period. The orbital energies decrease across the period as the effective nuclear charge increases and atomic radius decreases. Between N_2 and O_2, the order of the orbitals changes.

A graph is shown in which the y-axis is labeled, “E,” and appears as a vertical, upward-facing arrow. Across the top, the graph reads, “L i subscript 2,” “B e subscript 2,” “B subscript 2,” “C subscript 2,” “N subscript 2,” “O subscript 2,” “F subscript 2,” and “Ne subscript 2.” Directly below each of these element terms is a single pink line, and all lines are connected to one another by a dashed line, to create an overall line that decreases in height as it moves from left to right across the graph. This line is labeled, “sigma subscript 2 p x superscript asterisk”. Directly below each of these lines is a set of two pink lines, and all lines are connected to one another by a dashed line, to create an overall line that decreases in height as it moves from left to right across the graph. It is consistently lower than the first line. This line is labeled, “pi subscript 2 p y superscript asterisk,” and, “pi subscript 2 p z superscript asterisk.” Directly below each of these double lines is a single pink line, and all lines are connected to one another by a dashed line, to create an overall line that decreases in height as it moves from left to right across the graph. It has a distinctive drop at the label, “O subscript 2.” This line is labeled, “sigma subscript 2 p x.” Directly below each of these lines is a set of two pink lines, and all lines are connected to one another by a dashed line to create an overall line that decreases very slightly in height as it moves from left to right across the graph. It is consistently lower than the third line until it reaches the point labeled, “O subscript 2.” This line is labeled, “pi subscript 2 p y,” and, “pi subscript 2 p z.” Directly below each of these lines is a single blue line, and all lines are connected to one another by a dashed line to create an overall line that decreases in height as it moves from left to right across the graph. This line is labeled, “sigma subscript 2 s superscript asterisk.” Finally, directly below each of these lines is a single blue line, and all lines are connected to one another by a dashed line to create an overall line that decreases in height as it moves from left to right across the graph. This line is labeled. “sigma subscript 2 s.”

As we saw in valence bond theory, σ bonds are generally more stable than π bonds formed from degenerate atomic orbitals. Similarly, in molecular orbital theory, σ orbitals are usually more stable than π orbitals. However, this is not always the case. The MOs for the valence orbitals of the second period are shown in Figure 6.5.10. Looking at Ne_2 molecular orbitals, we see that the order is consistent with the generic diagram shown in the previous section. However, for atoms with three or fewer electrons in the *p* orbitals (Li through N) we observe a different pattern, in which the σ_p orbital is higher in energy than the π_p set. Obtain the molecular orbital diagram for a homonuclear diatomic ion by adding or subtracting electrons from the diagram for the neutral molecule.

This switch in orbital ordering occurs because of a phenomenon called s-p mixing. s-p mixing does not create new orbitals; it merely influences the energies of the existing molecular orbitals. The σ_s wavefunction mathematically combines with the σ_p wavefunction, with the result that the σ_s orbital becomes more stable, and the σ_p orbital becomes less stable (Figure 6.5.11). Similarly, the antibonding orbitals also undergo s-p mixing, with the σ_{s*} becoming more stable and the σ_{p*} becoming less stable.

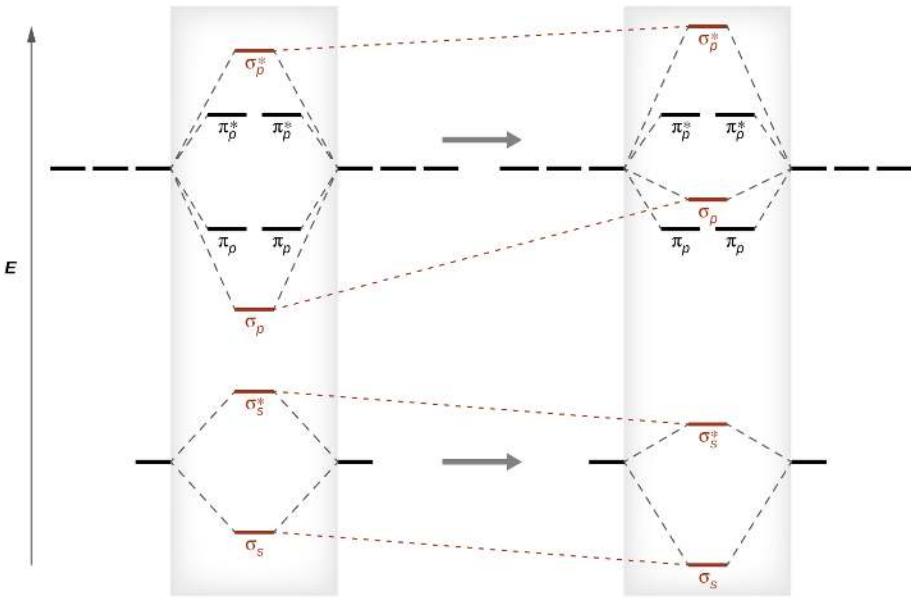


Figure 6.5.11: Without mixing, the MO pattern occurs as expected, with the σ_p orbital lower in energy than the σ_p orbitals. When s-p mixing occurs, the orbitals shift as shown, with the σ_p orbital higher in energy than the π_p orbitals.

A diagram is shown. At the bottom left of the diagram is a horizontal line that is connected to the right and left by upward-facing, dotted lines to two more horizontal lines. Those two lines are connected by upward-facing dotted lines to another line in the center of the diagram but farther up from the first. Each of the bottom two central lines has a vertical downward-facing arrow. Above this structure is a horizontal line that is connected to the right and left by upward-facing, dotted lines to two sets of three horizontal lines and those two lines are connected by upward-facing dotted lines to another line in the center of the diagram, but further up from the first. In between the horizontal lines of this structure are two pairs of horizontal lines that are above the first line but below the second and connected by dotted lines to the side horizontal lines. The bottom and top central lines each have an upward-facing vertical arrow. These two structures are redrawn on the right side of the diagram, but this time, the central lines of the bottom structure are moved downward in relation to the side lines. The upper portion of the structure has its central lines shifted upward in relation to the side lines. This structure also shows the bottom line appearing above the set of two lines.

s-p mixing occurs when the *s* and *p* orbitals have similar energies. The energy difference between 2*s* and 2*p* orbitals in O, F, and Ne is greater than that in Li, Be, B, C, and N. Because of this, O_2, F_2, and Ne exhibit negligible s-p mixing (not sufficient to change the energy ordering), and their MO diagrams follow the normal pattern, as shown in Figure 6.5.7. All of the other period 2 diatomic molecules do have s-p mixing, which leads to the pattern where the σ_p orbital is raised above the π_p set.

Using the MO diagrams shown in Figure 6.5.11, we can add in the electrons and determine the molecular electron configuration and bond order for each of the diatomic molecules. As shown in Table 6.5.1, Be_2 and Ne_2 molecules would have a bond order of 0, and these molecules do not exist.

The combination of two lithium atoms to form a lithium molecule, Li_2, is analogous to the formation of H_2, but the atomic orbitals involved are the valence 2*s* orbitals. Each of the two lithium atoms has one valence electron. Hence, we have two valence electrons available for the σ_{2s} bonding molecular orbital. Because both valence electrons would be in a bonding orbital, we would predict the Li_2 molecule to be stable. The molecule is, in fact, present in an appreciable concentration in lithium vapor at temperatures near the boiling point of the element. All of the other molecules in Table 6.5.1 with a bond order greater than zero are also known.

The O_2 molecule has enough electrons to half fill the $(\pi^*_{2py}, \pi^*_{2pz})$ level. We expect the two electrons that occupy these two degenerate orbitals to be unpaired, and this molecular electronic configuration for O_2 is in accord with the fact that the oxygen molecule has two unpaired electrons (Figure 6.5.10). The presence of two unpaired electrons has proved to be difficult to explain using Lewis structures, but the molecular orbital theory explains it quite well. In fact, the unpaired electrons of the oxygen molecule provide a strong piece of support for the molecular orbital theory.

Application: Band Theory in Extended Systems

When two identical atomic orbitals on different atoms combine, two molecular orbitals result (e.g., H_2 in Figure 6.5.8). The bonding orbital is lower in energy than the original atomic orbitals because the atomic orbitals are in-phase in the molecular orbital. The antibonding orbital is higher in energy than the original atomic orbitals because the atomic orbitals are out-of-phase.

In a solid, similar things happen, but on a much larger scale. Remember that even in a small sample there are a huge number of atoms (typically > 10^{23} atoms), and therefore a huge number of atomic orbitals that may be combined into molecular orbitals. When *N* valence atomic orbitals, all of the same energy and each containing one (1) electron, are combined, *N*/2 (filled) bonding orbitals and *N*/2 (empty) antibonding orbitals will result. Each bonding orbital will show an energy lowering as the atomic orbitals are *mostly* in-phase, but each of the bonding orbitals will be a little different and have slightly different energies. The antibonding orbitals will show an increase in energy as the atomic orbitals are *mostly* out-of-phase, but each of the antibonding orbitals will also be a little different and have slightly different energies. The allowed energy levels for all the bonding orbitals are so close together that they form a band, called the valence band. Likewise, all the antibonding orbitals are very close together and form a band, called the conduction band. Figure 6.5.12) shows the bands for three important classes of materials: insulators, semiconductors, and conductors.

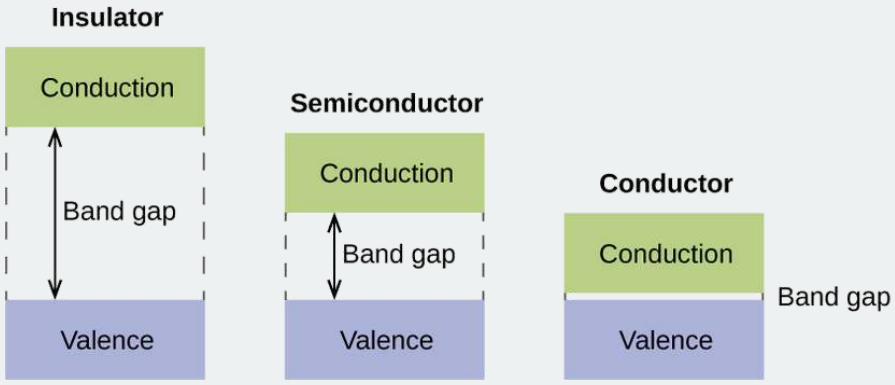


Figure 6.5.12: Molecular orbitals in solids are so closely spaced that they are described as bands. The valence band is lower in energy and the conduction band is higher in energy. The type of solid is determined by the size of the "band gap" between the valence and conduction bands. Only a very small amount of energy is required to move electrons from the valence band to the conduction band in a conductor, and so they conduct electricity well. In an insulator, the band gap is large, so that very few electrons move, and they are poor conductors of electricity. Semiconductors are in between: they conduct electricity better than insulators, but not as well as conductors.

This figure shows three diagrams. The first is labeled, "Insulator," and it consists of two boxes. The "conduction" box is above and the "valence" box is below. A large gap marked by 4 dashed lines contains a double-headed arrow. One head pointing towards the "conduction box" and the other towards the "valence" box. The arrow is labeled, "Band gap." The second diagram is similar to the first, but the band gap is about half as large. This diagram is labeled, "Semiconductor." The third diagram is similar to the other two, but the band gap is about a fifth that of the "Semiconductor" diagram. This diagram is labeled, "Conductor."

In order to conduct electricity, electrons must move from the filled valence band to the empty conduction band where they can move throughout the solid. The size of the band gap, or the energy difference between the top of the valence band and the bottom of the conduction band, determines how easy it is to move electrons between the bands. Only a small amount of energy is required in a conductor because the band gap is very small. This small energy difference is "easy" to overcome, so they are good conductors of electricity. In an insulator, the band gap is so "large" that very few electrons move into the conduction band; as a result, insulators are poor conductors of electricity. Semiconductors conduct electricity when "moderate" amounts of energy are provided to move electrons out of the valence band and into the conduction band. Semiconductors, such as silicon, are found in many electronics.

Semiconductors are used in devices such as computers, smartphones, and solar cells. Solar cells produce electricity when light provides the energy to move electrons out of the valence band. The electricity that is generated may then be used to power a light or tool, or it can be stored for later use by charging a battery. As of December 2014, up to 46% of the energy in sunlight could be converted into electricity using solar cells.

Example 6.5.2: Molecular Orbital Diagrams, Bond Order, and Number of Unpaired Electrons

Draw the molecular orbital diagram for the oxygen molecule, O_2. From this diagram, calculate the bond order for O_2. How does this diagram account for the paramagnetism of O_2?

Solution

We draw a molecular orbital energy diagram similar to that shown in Figure 6.5.7. Each oxygen atom contributes six electrons, so the diagram appears as shown in Figure 6.5.7.

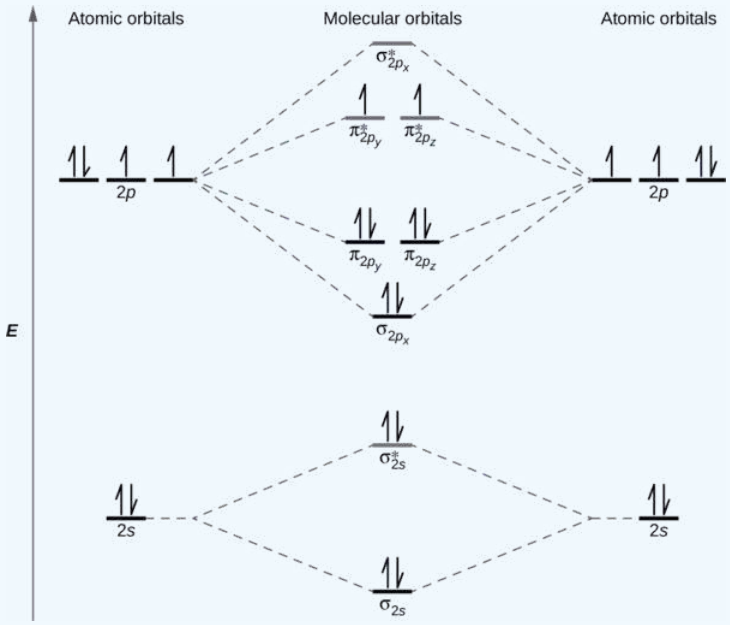


Figure 6.5.13: The molecular orbital energy diagram for O_2 predicts two unpaired electrons.

We calculate the bond order as

$$O_2 = \frac{(8-4)}{2} = 2$$

Oxygen's paramagnetism is explained by the presence of two unpaired electrons in the (π_{2py}, π_{2pz})* molecular orbitals.

Exercise 6.5.2

The main component of air is N_2. From the molecular orbital diagram of N_2, predict its bond order and whether it is diamagnetic or paramagnetic.

Answer

N_2 has a bond order of 3 and is diamagnetic.

Example 6.5.3: Ion Predictions with MO Diagrams

Give the molecular orbital configuration for the valence electrons in C_2^{2-}. Will this ion be stable?

Solution

Looking at the appropriate MO diagram, we see that the π orbitals are lower in energy than the σ_p orbital. The valence electron configuration for C_2 is

$$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2(\pi_{2py},\ \pi_{2pz})^4.$$

Adding two more electrons to generate the C_2^{2-} anion will give a valence electron configuration of

$$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2(\pi_{2py},\ \pi_{2pz})^4(\sigma_{2px})^2$$

Since this has six more bonding electrons than antibonding, the bond order will be 3, and the ion should be stable.

? Exercise 6.5.3

How many unpaired electrons would be present on a Be_2^{2-} ion? Would it be paramagnetic or diamagnetic?

Answer

two, paramagnetic

Key Concepts and Summary

Molecular orbital (MO) theory describes the behavior of electrons in a molecule in terms of combinations of the atomic wave functions. The resulting molecular orbitals may extend over all the atoms in the molecule. Bonding molecular orbitals are formed by in-phase combinations of atomic wave functions, and electrons in these orbitals stabilize a molecule. Antibonding molecular orbitals result from out-of-phase combinations of atomic wave functions and electrons in these orbitals make a molecule less stable. Molecular orbitals located along an internuclear axis are called σ MOs. They can be formed from *s* orbitals or from *p* orbitals oriented in an end-to-end fashion. Molecular orbitals formed from *p* orbitals oriented in a side-by-side fashion have electron density on opposite sides of the internuclear axis and are called π orbitals.

We can describe the electronic structure of diatomic molecules by applying molecular orbital theory to the valence electrons of the atoms. Electrons fill molecular orbitals following the same rules that apply to filling atomic orbitals; Hund's rule and the Aufbau principle tell us that lower-energy orbitals will fill first, electrons will spread out before they pair up, and each orbital can hold a maximum of two electrons with opposite spins. Materials with unpaired electrons are paramagnetic and attracted to a magnetic field, while those with all-paired electrons are diamagnetic and repelled by a magnetic field. Correctly predicting the magnetic properties of molecules is in advantage of molecular orbital theory over Lewis structures and valence bond theory.

This page titled 6.5: Molecular Orbital Theory is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **8.5: Molecular Orbital Theory** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.6: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding (Exercises)

8.1: Valence Bond Theory

Chapter Exercises

1. Explain how σ and π bonds are similar and how they are different.
2. Draw a curve that describes the energy of a system with H and Cl atoms at varying distances. Then, find the minimum energy of this curve two ways.
   a. Use the bond energy found in Table 8.2.1 to calculate the energy for one single HCl bond (Hint: How many bonds are in a mole?)
   b. Use the enthalpy of reaction and the bond energies for H_2 and Cl_2 to solve for the energy of one mole of HCl bonds.

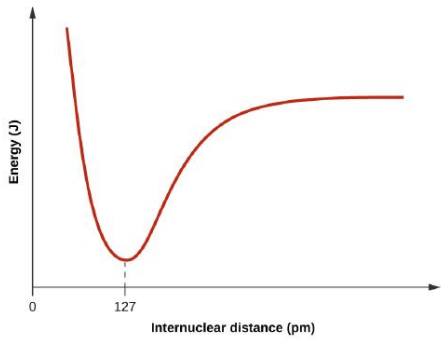
$$H_{2(g)} + Cl_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2HCl_{(g)} \quad \Delta H^{\circ}_{rxn} = -184.7\ kJ/mol \tag{6.6.1}$$

3. Explain why bonds occur at specific average bond distances instead of the atoms approaching each other infinitely close.
4. Use valence bond theory to explain the bonding in F_2, HF, and ClBr. Sketch the overlap of the atomic orbitals involved in the bonds.
5. Use valence bond theory to explain the bonding in O_2. Sketch the overlap of the atomic orbitals involved in the bonds in O_2.
6. How many σ and π bonds are present in the molecule HCN?
7. A friend tells you N_2 has three π bonds due to overlap of the three *p*-orbitals on each N atom. Do you agree?
8. Draw the Lewis structures for CO_2 and CO, and predict the number of σ and π bonds for each molecule.
   a. CO_2
   b. CO

Solutions

1. **Similarities**: Both types of bonds result from overlap of atomic orbitals on adjacent atoms and contain a maximum of two electrons. **Differences**: σ bonds are stronger and result from end-to-end overlap and all single bonds are σ bonds; π bonds between the same two atoms are weaker because they result from side-by-side overlap, and multiple bonds contain one or more π bonds (in addition to a σ bond).

2



When H and Cl are separate (the x axis) the energy is at a particular value. As they approach, it decreases to a minimum at 127 pm (the bond distance), and then it increases sharply as you get closer.

a. (a) H–Cl431 kJ/mol 427kJmol×mol6.022×1023bonds×1000 JkJ=7.09×10−19
b. (b) We know Hess's law related to bond energies: ΔH°=ΣΔH∘BDE(broken)−ΣΔH∘BDE(formed) We are given the enthalpy of reaction

$$-184.7kJ/mol = (\Delta H \circ BDE(H-H) + \Delta H \circ BDE(Cl-Cl)) - (2\Delta H \circ BDE(H-Cl)) \tag{6.6.2}$$

$$H-His436kJ/molandCl-Clis243 \tag{6.6.3}$$

$$-184.7kJ/mol = (436+243)-2x = 679-2x \tag{6.6.4}$$

$$2x = 863.7kJ/mol \tag{6.6.5}$$

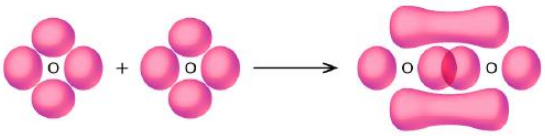
$$x = 432\ kJ/mol \tag{6.6.6}$$

This is very close to the value from part (a).

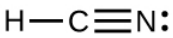
3. The specific average bond distance is the distance with the lowest energy. At distances less than the bond distance, the positive charges on the two nuclei repel each other, and the overall energy increases.

4. The single bond present in each molecule results from overlap of the relevant orbitals: F 2*p* orbitals in F_2, the H 1*s* and F 2*p* orbitals in HF, and the Cl 3*p* orbital and Br 4*p* orbital in ClBr.

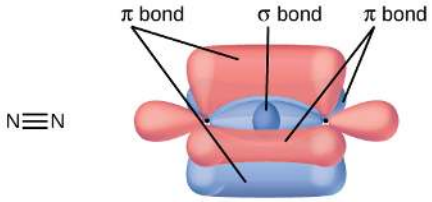
5. Bonding: One σ bond and one π bond. The *s* orbitals are filled and do not overlap. The *p* orbitals overlap along the axis to form a σ bond and side by side to form the π bond.



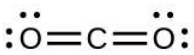
6. H– C ≡ N has two σ (H–C and C–N) and two π (making the CN triple bond).



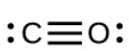
7. No, two of the *p* orbitals (one on each N) will be oriented end-to-end and will form a σ bond.



8. (a) 2 σ 2 π;



(b) 1 σ 2 π;



8.2: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals

Chemistry End of Chapter Exercises

Why is the concept of hybridization required in valence bond theory?

Hybridization is introduced to explain the geometry of bonding orbitals in valance bond theory.

Give the shape that describes each hybrid orbital set:

(a) sp^2

(b) sp^3d

(c) sp

(d) sp^3d^2

Explain why a carbon atom cannot form five bonds using sp^3d hybrid orbitals.

There are no *d* orbitals in the valence shell of carbon.

What is the hybridization of the central atom in each of the following?

(a) BeH_2

(b) SF_6

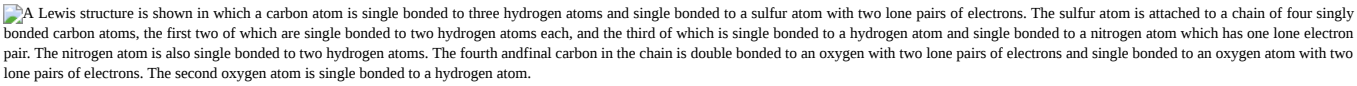
(c) PO_4^{3-}

(d) PCl_5

A molecule with the formula AB_3 could have one of four different shapes. Give the shape and the hybridization of the central A atom for each.

trigonal planar, sp^2; trigonal pyramidal (one lone pair on A) sp^3; T-shaped (two lone pairs on A sp^3d, or (three lone pairs on A) sp^3d^2

Methionine, $CH_3SCH_2CH_2CH(NH_2)CO_2H$, is an amino acid found in proteins. Draw a Lewis structure of this compound. What is the hybridization type of each carbon, oxygen, the nitrogen, and the sulfur?


A Lewis structure is shown in which a carbon atom is single bonded to three hydrogen atoms and single bonded to a sulfur atom with two lone pairs of electrons. The sulfur atom is attached to a chain of four singly bonded carbon atoms, the first two of which are single bonded to two hydrogen atoms each, and the third of which is single bonded to a hydrogen atom and single bonded to a nitrogen atom which has one lone electron pair. The nitrogen atom is also single bonded to two hydrogen atoms. The fourth andfinal carbon in the chain is double bonded to an oxygen with two lone pairs of electrons and single bonded to an oxygen atom with two lone pairs of electrons. The second oxygen atom is single bonded to a hydrogen atom.

Sulfuric acid is manufactured by a series of reactions represented by the following equations:

$$S_8(s) + 8\,O_2(g) \longrightarrow 8\,SO_2(g)$$

$$2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,SO_3(g)$$

$$SO_3(g) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow H_2SO_4(l)$$

Draw a Lewis structure, predict the molecular geometry by VSEPR, and determine the hybridization of sulfur for the following:

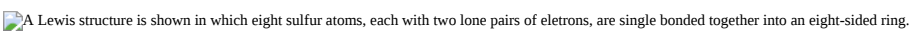
(a) circular S_8 molecule

(b) SO_2 molecule

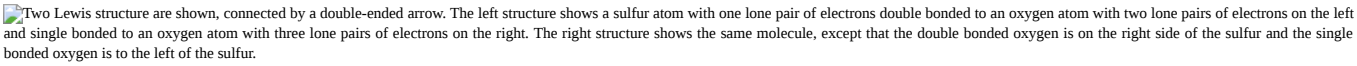
(c) SO_3 molecule

(d) H_2SO_4 molecule (the hydrogen atoms are bonded to oxygen atoms)

(a) Each S has a bent (109°) geometry, sp^3


A Lewis structure is shown in which eight sulfur atoms, each with two lone pairs of eletrons, are single bonded together into an eight-sided ring.

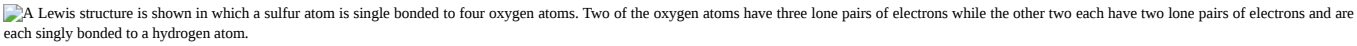
(b) Bent (120°), sp^2


Two Lewis structure are shown, connected by a double-ended arrow. The left structure shows a sulfur atom with one lone pair of electrons double bonded to an oxygen atom with two lone pairs of electrons on the left and single bonded to an oxygen atom with three lone pairs of electrons on the right. The right structure shows the same molecule, except that the double bonded oxygen is on the right side of the sulfur and the single bonded oxygen is to the left of the sulfur.

(c) Trigonal planar, sp^2


A Lewis structure of a sulfur atom singly bonded to two oxygen atoms, each with three lone pairs of electrons, and double bonded to a third oxygen atom with two lone pairs of electrons is shown.

(d) Tetrahedral, sp^3


A Lewis structure is shown in which a sulfur atom is single bonded to four oxygen atoms. Two of the oxygen atoms have three lone pairs of electrons while the other two each have two lone pairs of electrons and are each singly bonded to a hydrogen atom.

Two important industrial chemicals, ethene, C_2H_4, and propene, C_3H_6, are produced by the steam (or thermal) cracking process:

$$2\,C_3H_8(g) \longrightarrow C_2H_4(g) + C_3H_6(g) + CH_4(g) + H_2(g)$$

For each of the four carbon compounds, do the following:

(a) Draw a Lewis structure.

(b) Predict the geometry about the carbon atom.

(c) Determine the hybridization of each type of carbon atom.

For many years after they were discovered, it was believed that the noble gases could not form compounds. Now we know that belief to be incorrect. A mixture of xenon and fluorine gases, confined in a quartz bulb and placed on a windowsill, is found to slowly produce a white solid. Analysis of the compound indicates that it contains 77.55% Xe and 22.45% F by mass.

(a) What is the formula of the compound?

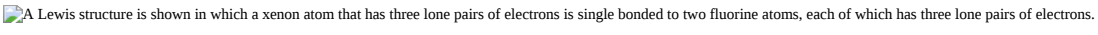
(b) Write a Lewis structure for the compound.

(c) Predict the shape of the molecules of the compound.

(d) What hybridization is consistent with the shape you predicted?

(a) XeF_2

(b)


A Lewis structure is shown in which a xenon atom that has three lone pairs of electrons is single bonded to two fluorine atoms, each of which has three lone pairs of electrons.

(c) linear (d) sp^3d

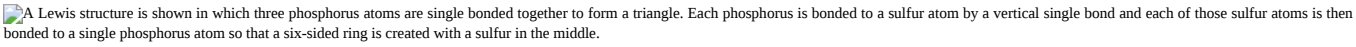
Consider nitrous acid, HNO_2 (HONO).

(a) Write a Lewis structure.

(b) What are the electron pair and molecular geometries of the internal oxygen and nitrogen atoms in the HNO_2 molecule?

(c) What is the hybridization on the internal oxygen and nitrogen atoms in HNO_2?

Strike-anywhere matches contain a layer of $KClO_3$ and a layer of P_4S_3. The heat produced by the friction of striking the match causes these two compounds to react vigorously, which sets fire to the wooden stem of the match. $KClO_3$ contains the ClO_3^- ion. P_4S_3 is an unusual molecule with the skeletal structure.


A Lewis structure is shown in which three phosphorus atoms are single bonded together to form a triangle. Each phosphorus is bonded to a sulfur atom by a vertical single bond and each of those sulfur atoms is then bonded to a single phosphorus atom so that a six-sided ring is created with a sulfur in the middle.

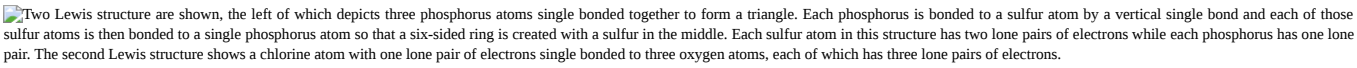
(a) Write Lewis structures for P_4S_3 and the ClO_3^- ion.

(b) Describe the geometry about the P atoms, the S atom, and the Cl atom in these species.

(c) Assign a hybridization to the P atoms, the S atom, and the Cl atom in these species.

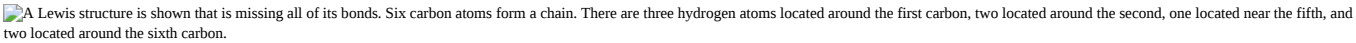
(d) Determine the oxidation states and formal charge of the atoms in P_4S_3 and the ClO_3^- ion.

(a)

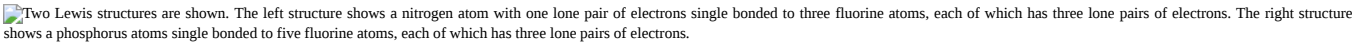

Two Lewis structure are shown, the left of which depicts three phosphorus atoms single bonded together to form a triangle. Each phosphorus is bonded to a sulfur atom by a vertical single bond and each of those sulfur atoms is then bonded to a single phosphorus atom so that a six-sided ring is created with a sulfur in the middle. Each sulfur atom in this structure has two lone pairs of electrons while each phosphorus has one lone pair. The second Lewis structure shows a chlorine atom with one lone pair of electrons single bonded to three oxygen atoms, each of which has three lone pairs of electrons.

(b) P atoms, trigonal pyramidal; S atoms, bent, with two lone pairs; Cl atoms, trigonal pyramidal; (c) Hybridization about P, S, and Cl is, in all cases, sp^3; (d) Oxidation states P +1, S $-1\frac{1}{3}$, Cl +5, O –2. Formal charges: P 0; S 0; Cl +2: O –1

Identify the hybridization of each carbon atom in the following molecule. (The arrangement of atoms is given; you need to determine how many bonds connect each pair of atoms.)


A Lewis structure is shown that is missing all of its bonds. Six carbon atoms form a chain. There are three hydrogen atoms located around the first carbon, two located around the second, one located near the fifth, and two located around the sixth carbon.

Write Lewis structures for NF_3 and PF_5. On the basis of hybrid orbitals, explain the fact that NF_3, PF_3, and PF_5 are stable molecules, but NF_5 does not exist.


Two Lewis structures are shown. The left structure shows a nitrogen atom with one lone pair of electrons single bonded to three fluorine atoms, each of which has three lone pairs of electrons. The right structure shows a phosphorus atoms single bonded to five fluorine atoms, each of which has three lone pairs of electrons.

Phosphorus and nitrogen can form sp^3 hybrids to form three bonds and hold one lone pair in PF_3 and NF_3, respectively. However, nitrogen has no valence *d* orbitals, so it cannot form a set of sp^3d hybrid orbitals to bind five fluorine atoms in NF_5. Phosphorus has *d* orbitals and can bind five fluorine atoms with sp^3d hybrid orbitals in PF_5.

In addition to NF_3, two other fluoro derivatives of nitrogen are known: N_2F_4 and N_2F_2. What shapes do you predict for these two molecules? What is the hybridization for the nitrogen in each molecule?

8.3: Multiple Bonds

Chemistry End of Chapter Exercises

The bond energy of a C–C single bond averages 347 kJ mol^{-1}; that of a C≡C triple bond averages 839 kJ mol^{-1}. Explain why the triple bond is not three times as strong as a single bond.

A triple bond consists of one σ bond and two π bonds. A σ bond is stronger than a π bond due to greater overlap.

For the carbonate ion, CO_3^{2-}, draw all of the resonance structures. Identify which orbitals overlap to create each bond.

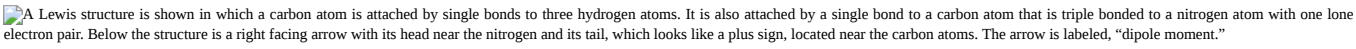
A useful solvent that will dissolve salts as well as organic compounds is the compound acetonitrile, H_3CCN. It is present in paint strippers.

(a) Write the Lewis structure for acetonitrile, and indicate the direction of the dipole moment in the molecule.

(b) Identify the hybrid orbitals used by the carbon atoms in the molecule to form σ bonds.

(c) Describe the atomic orbitals that form the π bonds in the molecule. Note that it is not necessary to hybridize the nitrogen atom.

(a)


A Lewis structure is shown in which a carbon atom is attached by single bonds to three hydrogen atoms. It is also attached by a single bond to a carbon atom that is triple bonded to a nitrogen atom with one lone electron pair. Below the structure is a right facing arrow with its head near the nitrogen and its tail, which looks like a plus sign, located near the carbon atoms. The arrow is labeled, “dipole moment.”

(b) The terminal carbon atom uses sp^3 hybrid orbitals, while the central carbon atom is *sp* hybridized. (c) Each of the two π bonds is formed by overlap of a 2*p* orbital on carbon and a nitrogen 2*p* orbital.

For the molecule allene, $H_2C=C=CH_2$, give the hybridization of each carbon atom. Will the hydrogen atoms be in the same plane or perpendicular planes?

Identify the hybridization of the central atom in each of the following molecules and ions that contain multiple bonds:

(a) ClNO (N is the central atom)

(b) CS_2

(c) Cl_2CO (C is the central atom)

(d) Cl_2SO (S is the central atom)

(e) SO_2F_2 (S is the central atom)

(f) XeO_2F_2 (Xe is the central atom)

(g) $ClOF_2^+$ (Cl is the central atom)

(a) sp^2; (b) *sp*; (c) sp^2; (d) sp^3; (e) sp^3; (f) sp^3d; (g) sp^3

Describe the molecular geometry and hybridization of the N, P, or S atoms in each of the following compounds.

(a) H_3PO_4, phosphoric acid, used in cola soft drinks

(b) NH_4NO_3, ammonium nitrate, a fertilizer and explosive

(c) S_2Cl_2, disulfur dichloride, used in vulcanizing rubber

(d) $K_4[O_3POPO_3]$, potassium pyrophosphate, an ingredient in some toothpastes

For each of the following molecules, indicate the hybridization requested and whether or not the electrons will be delocalized:

(a) ozone (O_3) central O hybridization

(b) carbon dioxide (CO_2) central C hybridization

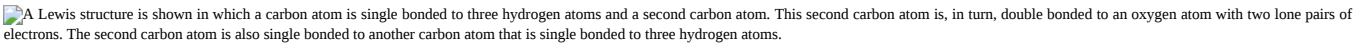
(c) nitrogen dioxide (NO_2) central N hybridization

(d) phosphate ion (PO_4^{3-}) central P hybridization

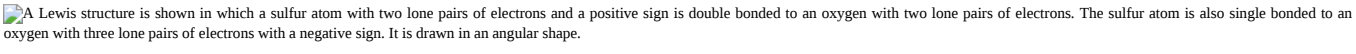
(a) sp^2, delocalized; (b) *sp*, localized; (c) sp^2, delocalized; (d) sp^3, delocalized

For each of the following structures, determine the hybridization requested and whether the electrons will be delocalized:

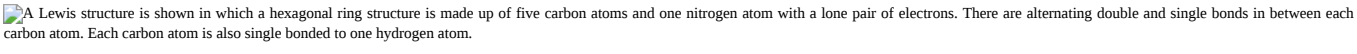
(a) Hybridization of each carbon


A Lewis structure is shown in which a carbon atom is single bonded to three hydrogen atoms and a second carbon atom. This second carbon atom is, in turn, double bonded to an oxygen atom with two lone pairs of electrons. The second carbon atom is also single bonded to another carbon atom that is single bonded to three hydrogen atoms.

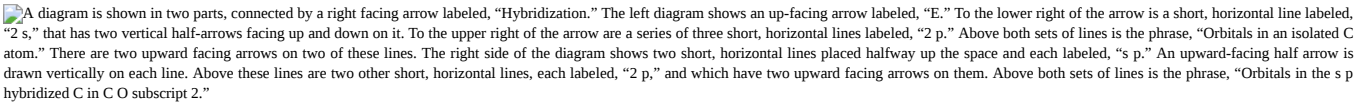
(b) Hybridization of sulfur


A Lewis structure is shown in which a sulfur atom with two lone pairs of electrons and a positive sign is double bonded to an oxygen with two lone pairs of electrons. The sulfur atom is also single bonded to an oxygen with three lone pairs of electrons with a negative sign. It is drawn in an angular shape.

(c) All atoms


A Lewis structure is shown in which a hexagonal ring structure is made up of five carbon atoms and one nitrogen atom with a lone pair of electrons. There are alternating double and single bonds in between each carbon atom. Each carbon atom is also single bonded to one hydrogen atom.

Draw the orbital diagram for carbon in CO_2 showing how many carbon atom electrons are in each orbital.



Each of the four electrons is in a separate orbital and overlaps with an electron on an oxygen atom.

8.4: Molecular Orbital Theory

Chemistry End of Chapter Exercises

Sketch the distribution of electron density in the bonding and antibonding molecular orbitals formed from two *s* orbitals and from two *p* orbitals.

How are the following similar, and how do they differ?

(a) σ molecular orbitals and π molecular orbitals

(b) ψ for an atomic orbital and ψ for a molecular orbital

(c) bonding orbitals and antibonding orbitals

(a) Similarities: Both are bonding orbitals that can contain a maximum of two electrons. Differences: σ orbitals are end-to-end combinations of atomic orbitals, whereas π orbitals are formed by side-by-side overlap of orbitals. (b) Similarities: Both are quantum-mechanical constructs that represent the probability of finding the electron about the atom or the molecule. Differences: ψ for an atomic orbital describes the behavior of only one electron at a time based on the atom. For a molecule, ψ represents a mathematical combination of atomic orbitals. (c) Similarities: Both are orbitals that can contain two electrons. Differences: Bonding orbitals result in holding two or more atoms together. Antibonding orbitals have the effect of destabilizing any bonding that has occurred.

If molecular orbitals are created by combining five atomic orbitals from atom A and five atomic orbitals from atom B combine, how many molecular orbitals will result?

Can a molecule with an odd number of electrons ever be diamagnetic? Explain why or why not.

An odd number of electrons can never be paired, regardless of the arrangement of the molecular orbitals. It will always be paramagnetic.

Can a molecule with an even number of electrons ever be paramagnetic? Explain why or why not.

Why are bonding molecular orbitals lower in energy than the parent atomic orbitals?

Bonding orbitals have electron density in close proximity to more than one nucleus. The interaction between the bonding positively charged nuclei and negatively charged electrons stabilizes the system.

Calculate the bond order for an ion with this configuration:

$$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2px})^2(\pi_{2py},\ \pi_{2pz})^4(\pi^*_{2py},\ \pi^*_{2pz})^3$$

Explain why an electron in the bonding molecular orbital in the H_2 molecule has a lower energy than an electron in the 1*s* atomic orbital of either of the separated hydrogen atoms.

The pairing of the two bonding electrons lowers the energy of the system relative to the energy of the nonbonded electrons.

Predict the valence electron molecular orbital configurations for the following, and state whether they will be stable or unstable ions.

(a) Na_2^{2+}

(b) Mg_2^{2+}

(c) Al_2^{2+}

(d) Si_2^{2+}

(e) P_2^{2+}

(f) S_2^{2+}

(g) F_2^{2+}

(h) Ar_2^{2+}

Determine the bond order of each member of the following groups, and determine which member of each group is predicted by the molecular orbital model to have the strongest bond.

(a) H_2, H_2^+, H_2^-

(b) O_2, O_2^{2+}, O_2^{2-}

(c) Li_2, Be_2^+, Be_2

(d) F_2, F_2^+, F_2^-

(e) N_2, N_2^+, N_2^-

(a) H_2 bond order = 1, H_2^+ bond order = 0.5, H_2^- bond order = 0.5, strongest bond is H_2; (b) O_2 bond order = 2, O_2^{2+} bond order = 3; O_2^{2-} bond order = 1, strongest bond is O_2^{2+}; (c) Li_2 bond order = 1, Be_2^+ bond order = 0.5, Be_2 bond order = 0, strongest bond is Li_2;(d) F_2 bond order = 1, F_2^+ bond order = 1.5, F_2^- bond order = 0.5, strongest bond is F_2^+; (e) N_2 bond order = 3, N_2^+ bond order = 2.5, N_2^- bond order = 2.5, strongest bond is N_2

For the first ionization energy for an N_2 molecule, what molecular orbital is the electron removed from?

Compare the atomic and molecular orbital diagrams to identify the member of each of the following pairs that has the highest first ionization energy (the most tightly bound electron) in the gas phase:

(a) H and H_2

(b) N and N_2

(c) O and O_2

(d) C and C_2

(e) B and B_2

(a) H_2; (b) N_2; (c) O; (d) C_2; (e) B_2

Which of the period 2 homonuclear diatomic molecules are predicted to be paramagnetic?

A friend tells you that the 2*s* orbital for fluorine starts off at a much lower energy than the 2*s* orbital for lithium, so the resulting σ_{2s} molecular orbital in F_2 is more stable than in Li_2. Do you agree?

Yes, fluorine is a smaller atom than Li, so atoms in the 2*s* orbital are closer to the nucleus and more stable.

True or false: Boron contains $2s^2 2p^1$ valence electrons, so only one *p* orbital is needed to form molecular orbitals.

What charge would be needed on F_2 to generate an ion with a bond order of 2?

2+

Predict whether the MO diagram for S_2 would show s-p mixing or not.

Explain why N_2^{2+} is diamagnetic, while O_2^{4+}, which has the same number of valence electrons, is paramagnetic.

N_2 has s-p mixing, so the π orbitals are the last filled in N_2^{2+}. O_2 does not have s-p mixing, so the σ_p orbital fills before the π orbitals.

Using the MO diagrams, predict the bond order for the stronger bond in each pair:

(a) B_2 or B_2^+

(b) F_2 or F_2^+

(c) O_2 or O_2^{2+}

(d) C_2^+ or C_2^-

This page titled 6.6: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry

A general chemistry Libretexts Textbook remixed and remastered from OpenStax's textbook:

General Chemistry

Transition metals are defined as those elements that have (or readily form) partially filled *d* orbitals. These include the *d*-block (groups 3–11) and f-block element elements. The variety of properties exhibited by transition metals is due to their complex valence shells. Unlike most main group metals where one oxidation state is normally observed, the valence shell structure of transition metals means that they usually occur in several different stable oxidation states. In addition, electron transitions in these elements can correspond with absorption of photons in the visible electromagnetic spectrum, leading to colored compounds. Because of these behaviors, transition metals exhibit a rich and fascinating chemistry.

7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds

7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals

7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds

7.4: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry (Exercises)

Contributors

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 7: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Outline the general approach for the isolation of transition metals from natural sources
- Describe typical physical and chemical properties of the transition metals
- Identify simple compound classes for transition metals and describe their chemical properties

We have daily contact with many transition metals. Iron occurs everywhere—from the rings in your spiral notebook and the cutlery in your kitchen to automobiles, ships, buildings, and in the hemoglobin in your blood. Titanium is useful in the manufacture of lightweight, durable products such as bicycle frames, artificial hips, and jewelry. Chromium is useful as a protective plating on plumbing fixtures and automotive detailing.

Transition metals are defined as those elements that have (or readily form) partially filled *d* orbitals. As shown in Figure 7.1.2, the *d*-block elements in groups 3–11 are transition elements. The *f*-block elements, also called *inner transition metals* (the lanthanides and actinides), also meet this criterion because the *d* orbital is partially occupied before the *f* orbitals. The *d* orbitals fill with the copper family (group 11); for this reason, the next family (group 12) are technically not transition elements. However, the group 12 elements do display some of the same chemical properties and are commonly included in discussions of transition metals. Some chemists do treat the group 12 elements as transition metals.



Figure 7.1.1: Transition metals often form vibrantly colored complexes. The minerals malachite (green), azurite (blue), and proustite (red) are some examples. (credit left: modification of work by James St. John; credit middle: modification of work by Stephanie Clifford; credit right: modification of work by Terry Wallace)

The first crystal is a jade green mineral chunk. The second is a crystalline chunk which is primarily bright royal blue. The third shows long red crystals.

The *d*-block elements are divided into the first transition series (the elements Sc through Cu), the second transition series (the elements Y through Ag), and the third transition series (the element La and the elements Hf through Au). Actinium, Ac, is the first member of the fourth transition series, which also includes Rf through Rg.

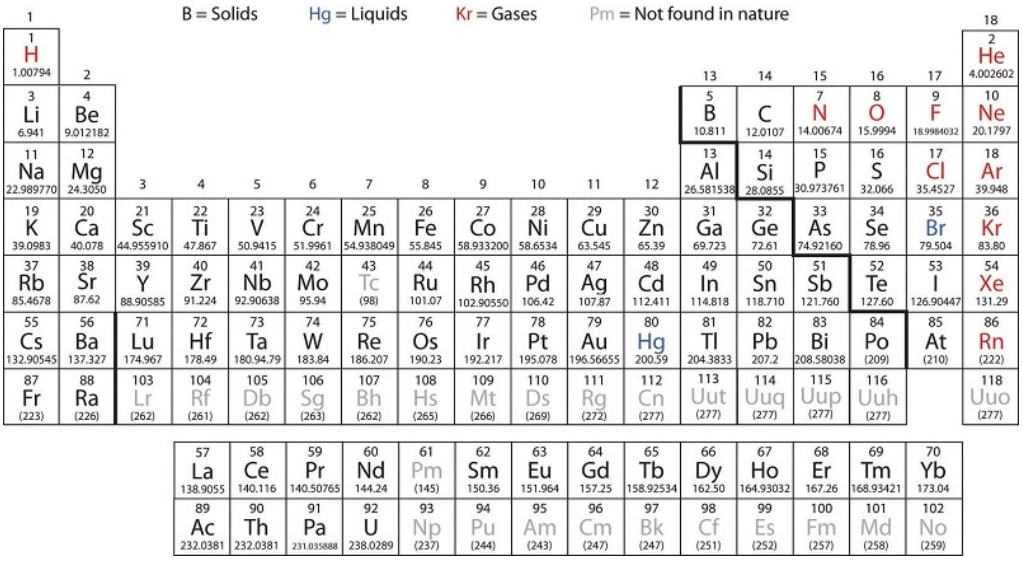


Figure 7.1.2: The transition metals are located in groups 3–11 of the periodic table. The inner transition metals are in the two rows below the body of the table.

The *f*-block elements are the elements Ce through Lu, which constitute the lanthanide series (or lanthanoid series), and the elements Th through Lr, which constitute the actinide series (or actinoid series). Because lanthanum behaves very much like the lanthanide

elements, it is considered a lanthanide element, even though its electron configuration makes it the first member of the third transition series. Similarly, the behavior of actinium means it is part of the actinide series, although its electron configuration makes it the first member of the fourth transition series.

Example 7.1.1: Valence Electrons in Transition Metals

Review how to write electron configurations, covered in the chapter on electronic structure and periodic properties of elements. Recall that for the transition and inner transition metals, it is necessary to remove the *s* electrons before the *d* or *f* electrons. Then, for each ion, give the electron configuration:

a. cerium(III)
b. lead(II)
c. Ti^{2+}
d. Am^{3+}
e. Pd^{2+}

For the examples that are transition metals, determine to which series they belong.

Solution

For ions, the *s*-valence electrons are lost prior to the *d* or *f* electrons.

a. $Ce^{3+}[Xe]4f^1$; Ce^{3+} is an inner transition element in the lanthanide series.
b. $Pb^{2+}[Xe]6s^25d^{10}4f^{14}$; the electrons are lost from the *p* orbital. This is a main group element.
c. titanium(II) $[Ar]3d^2$; first transition series
d. americium(III) $[Rn]5f^6$; actinide
e. palladium(II) $[Kr]4d^8$; second transition series

Exercise 7.1.1

Check Your Learning Give an example of an ion from the first transition series with no *d* electrons.

Answer

V^{5+} is one possibility. Other examples include Sc^{3+}, Ti^{4+}, Cr^{6+}, and Mn^{7+}.

Uses of Lanthanides in Devices

Lanthanides (elements 57–71) are fairly abundant in the earth's crust, despite their historic characterization as rare earth elements. Thulium, the rarest naturally occurring lanthanoid, is more common in the earth's crust than silver (4.5×10^{-5}% versus 0.79×10^{-5}% by mass). There are 17 rare earth elements, consisting of the 15 lanthanoids plus scandium and yttrium. They are called rare because they were once difficult to extract economically, so it was rare to have a pure sample; due to similar chemical properties, it is difficult to separate any one lanthanide from the others. However, newer separation methods, such as ion exchange resins similar to those found in home water softeners, make the separation of these elements easier and more economical. Most ores that contain these elements have low concentrations of all the rare earth elements mixed together.

The commercial applications of lanthanides are growing rapidly. For example, europium is important in flat screen displays found in computer monitors, cell phones, and televisions. Neodymium is useful in laptop hard drives and in the processes that convert crude oil into gasoline (Figure 7.1.3). Holmium is found in dental and medical equipment. In addition, many alternative energy technologies rely heavily on lanthanoids. Neodymium and dysprosium are key components of hybrid vehicle engines and the magnets used in wind turbines.

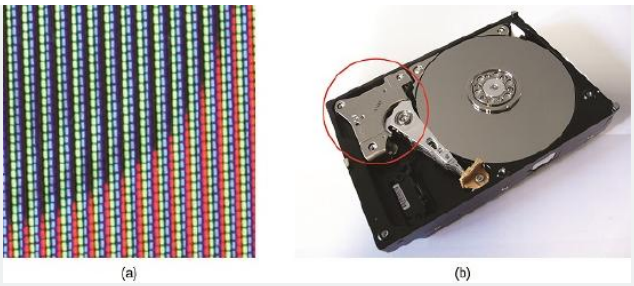


Figure 7.1.3: (a) Europium is used in display screens for televisions, computer monitors, and cell phones. (b) Neodymium magnets are commonly found in computer hard drives. (credit b: modification of work by “KUERT Datenrettung”/Flickr)

A. Closeup of a flat screen shows the many individual pixels which are red green and blue in color. B. A computer hard drive is shown with a metallic component highlighted in a red circle.

As the demand for lanthanide materials has increased faster than supply, prices have also increased. In 2008, dysprosium cost $110/kg; by 2014, the price had increased to $470/kg. Increasing the supply of lanthanoid elements is one of the most significant challenges facing the industries that rely on the optical and magnetic properties of these materials.

The transition elements have many properties in common with other metals. They are almost all hard, high-melting solids that conduct heat and electricity well. They readily form alloys and lose electrons to form stable cations. In addition, transition metals form a wide variety of stable coordination compounds, in which the central metal atom or ion acts as a Lewis acid and accepts one or more pairs of electrons. Many different molecules and ions can donate lone pairs to the metal center, serving as Lewis bases. In this chapter, we shall focus primarily on the chemical behavior of the elements of the first transition series.

Properties of the Transition Elements

Transition metals demonstrate a wide range of chemical behaviors. As can be seen from their reduction potentials (Table P1), some transition metals are strong reducing agents, whereas others have very low reactivity. For example, the lanthanides all form stable 3+ aqueous cations. The driving force for such oxidations is similar to that of alkaline earth metals such as Be or Mg, forming Be^{2+} and Mg^{2+}. On the other hand, materials like platinum and gold have much higher reduction potentials. Their ability to resist oxidation makes them useful materials for constructing circuits and jewelry.

Ions of the lighter *d*-block elements, such as Cr^{3+}, Fe^{3+}, and Co^{2+}, form colorful hydrated ions that are stable in water. However, ions in the period just below these (Mo^{3+}, Ru^{3+}, and Ir^{2+}) are unstable and react readily with oxygen from the air. The majority of simple, water-stable ions formed by the heavier *d*-block elements are oxyanions such as MoO_4^{2-} and ReO_4^-.

Ruthenium, osmium, rhodium, iridium, palladium, and platinum are the platinum metals. With difficulty, they form simple cations that are stable in water, and, unlike the earlier elements in the second and third transition series, they do not form stable oxyanions.

Both the *d*- and *f*-block elements react with nonmetals to form binary compounds; heating is often required. These elements react with halogens to form a variety of halides ranging in oxidation state from 1+ to 6+. On heating, oxygen reacts with all of the transition elements except palladium, platinum, silver, and gold. The oxides of these latter metals can be formed using other reactants, but they decompose upon heating. The *f*-block elements, the elements of group 3, and the elements of the first transition series except copper react with aqueous solutions of acids, forming hydrogen gas and solutions of the corresponding salts.

Transition metals can form compounds with a wide range of oxidation states. Some of the observed oxidation states of the elements of the first transition series are shown in Figure 7.1.4. As we move from left to right across the first transition series, we see that the number of common oxidation states increases at first to a maximum towards the middle of the table, then decreases. The values in the table are typical values; there are other known values, and it is possible to synthesize new additions. For example, in 2014, researchers were successful in synthesizing a new oxidation state of iridium (9+).

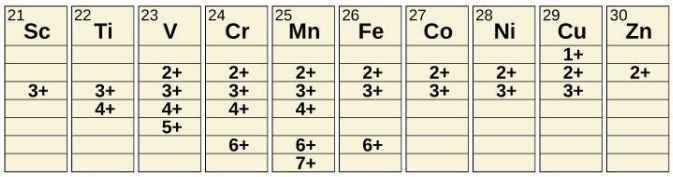


Figure 7.1.4:Transition metals of the first transition series can form compounds with varying oxidation states.
Scandium has oxidation state of positive 3. Titanium has values of positive 3 and 4. Vanadium has values of positive 2 to 5. Chromium has values of positive 2,3,4, and 6. Manganese has positive 2,3,4,6, and 7. Iron has positive 2,3, and 6. Cobalt and Nickel has positive 2 and 3. Copper has positive 1,2, and 3. Zinc only has positive 2.

For the elements scandium through manganese (the first half of the first transition series), the highest oxidation state corresponds to the loss of all of the electrons in both the *s* and *d* orbitals of their valence shells. The titanium(IV) ion, for example, is formed when the titanium atom loses its two 3*d* and two 4*s* electrons. These highest oxidation states are the most stable forms of scandium, titanium, and vanadium. However, it is not possible to continue to remove all of the valence electrons from metals as we continue through the series. Iron is known to form oxidation states from 2+ to 6+, with iron(II) and iron(III) being the most common. Most of the elements of the first transition series form ions with a charge of 2+ or 3+ that are stable in water, although those of the early members of the series can be readily oxidized by air.

The elements of the second and third transition series generally are more stable in higher oxidation states than are the elements of the first series. In general, the atomic radius increases down a group, which leads to the ions of the second and third series being larger than are those in the first series. Removing electrons from orbitals that are located farther from the nucleus is easier than removing electrons close to the nucleus. For example, molybdenum and tungsten, members of group 6, are limited mostly to an oxidation state of 6+ in aqueous solution. Chromium, the lightest member of the group, forms stable Cr^{3+} ions in water and, in the absence of air, less stable Cr^{2+} ions. The sulfide with the highest oxidation state for chromium is Cr_2S_3, which contains the Cr^{3+} ion. Molybdenum and tungsten form sulfides in which the metals exhibit oxidation states of 4+ and 6+.

✔ Example 7.1.2: Activity of the Transition Metals

Which is the strongest oxidizing agent in acidic solution: dichromate ion, which contains chromium(VI), permanganate ion, which contains manganese(VII), or titanium dioxide, which contains titanium(IV)?

Solution

First, we need to look up the reduction half reactions (Table P1) for each oxide in the specified oxidation state:

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 14\,H^+ + 6\,e^- \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+} + 7\,H_2O} \quad +1.33\ \mathrm{V}$$

$$\mathrm{MnO_4^- + 8\,H^+ + 5\,e^- \longrightarrow Mn^{2+} + H_2O} \quad +1.51\ \mathrm{V}$$

$$\mathrm{TiO_2 + 4\,H^+ + 2\,e^- \longrightarrow Ti^{2+} + 2\,H_2O} \quad -0.50\ \mathrm{V}$$

A larger reduction potential means that it is easier to reduce the reactant. Permanganate, with the largest reduction potential, is the strongest oxidizer under these conditions. Dichromate is next, followed by titanium dioxide as the weakest oxidizing agent (the hardest to reduce) of this set.

? Exercise 7.1.2

Predict what reaction (if any) will occur between HCl and Co(*s*), and between HBr and Pt(*s*). You will need to use the standard reduction potentials from (Table P1).

Answer

$\mathrm{Co}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{HCl} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2} + \mathrm{CoCl_2}(aq)$; no reaction because Pt(*s*) will not be oxidized by H^+

Preparation of the Transition Elements

Ancient civilizations knew about iron, copper, silver, and gold. The time periods in human history known as the Bronze Age and Iron Age mark the advancements in which societies learned to isolate certain metals and use them to make tools and goods.

Naturally occurring ores of copper, silver, and gold can contain high concentrations of these metals in elemental form (Figure 7.1.5). Iron, on the other hand, occurs on earth almost exclusively in oxidized forms, such as rust (Fe_2O_3). The earliest known iron implements were made from iron meteorites. Surviving iron artifacts dating from approximately 4000 to 2500 BC are rare, but all known examples contain specific alloys of iron and nickel that occur only in extraterrestrial objects, not on earth. It took thousands of years of technological advances before civilizations developed iron smelting, the ability to extract a pure element from its naturally occurring ores and for iron tools to become common.

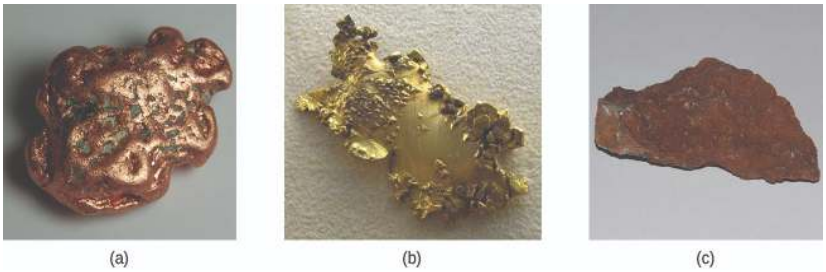


Figure 7.1.5: Transition metals occur in nature in various forms. Examples include (a) a nugget of copper, (b) a deposit of gold, and (c) an ore containing oxidized iron. (credit a: modification of work by Copper [images-of-elements.com]; credit c: modification of work by Iron ore [images-of-elements.com])

Generally, the transition elements are extracted from minerals found in a variety of ores. However, the ease of their recovery varies widely, depending on the concentration of the element in the ore, the identity of the other elements present, and the difficulty of reducing the element to the free metal.

In general, it is not difficult to reduce ions of the *d*-block elements to the free element. Carbon is a sufficiently strong reducing agent in most cases. However, like the ions of the more active main group metals, ions of the *f*-block elements must be isolated by electrolysis or by reduction with an active metal such as calcium.

We shall discuss the processes used for the isolation of iron, copper, and silver because these three processes illustrate the principal means of isolating most of the *d*-block metals. In general, each of these processes involves three principal steps: preliminary treatment, smelting, and refining.

1. Preliminary treatment. In general, there is an initial treatment of the ores to make them suitable for the extraction of the metals. This usually involves crushing or grinding the ore, concentrating the metal-bearing components, and sometimes treating these substances chemically to convert them into compounds that are easier to reduce to the metal.
2. Smelting. The next step is the extraction of the metal in the molten state, a process called smelting, which includes reduction of the metallic compound to the metal. Impurities may be removed by the addition of a compound that forms a slag—a substance with a low melting point that can be readily separated from the molten metal.
3. Refining. The final step in the recovery of a metal is refining the metal. Low boiling metals such as zinc and mercury can be refined by distillation. When fused on an inclined table, low melting metals like tin flow away from higher-melting impurities. Electrolysis is another common method for refining metals.

Isolation of Iron

The early application of iron to the manufacture of tools and weapons was possible because of the wide distribution of iron ores and the ease with which iron compounds in the ores could be reduced by carbon. For a long time, charcoal was the form of carbon used in the reduction process. The production and use of iron became much more widespread about 1620, when coke was introduced as the reducing agent. Coke is a form of carbon formed by heating coal in the absence of air to remove impurities.

The first step in the metallurgy of iron is usually roasting the ore (heating the ore in air) to remove water, decomposing carbonates into oxides, and converting sulfides into oxides. The oxides are then reduced in a blast furnace that is 80–100 feet high and about 25 feet in diameter (Figure 7.1.6) in which the roasted ore, coke, and limestone (impure $CaCO_3$) are introduced continuously into the top. Molten iron and slag are withdrawn at the bottom. The entire stock in a furnace may weigh several hundred tons.

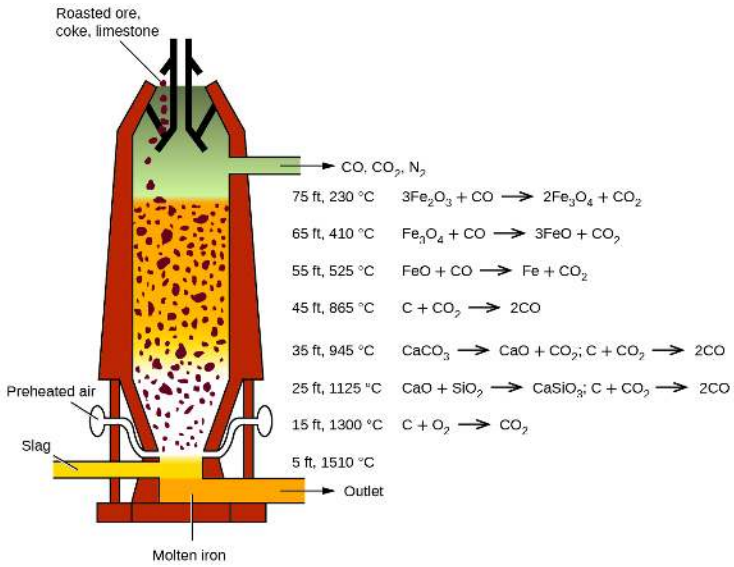


Figure 7.1.6:Within a blast furnace, different reactions occur in different temperature zones. Carbon monoxide is generated in the hotter bottom regions and rises upward to reduce the iron oxides to pure iron through a series of reactions that take place in the upper regions.

At the right side of the figure, furnace heights are labeled in order of increasing height between the outlet pipes, followed by temperatures and associated chemical reactions. Just above the pipe labeled, “Outlet,” no chemical equation at 5 f t, 1510 degrees C. At 15 f t, 1300 degrees C is the eC plus O subscript 2 right pointing arrow C O subscript 2. At 25 f t, 1125 degrees C are the two reactions, C a O plus S i O subscript 2 right pointing arrow C a S i O subscript 3 and C plus C O subscript 2 right pointing arrow 2 C O. At 35 f t, 945 degrees C, are the two reactions C a C O subscript 3 right pointing arrow C a O plus C O subscript 2, and C plus C O subscript 2 right pointing arrow 2 C O. At 45 f t, 865 degrees C is C plus C O subscript 2 right pointing arrow 2 C O. At 55 f t, 525 degrees C is the equation F e O plus C O right pointing arrow F e plus C O subscript 2. At 65 f t, 410 degrees C, is F e subscript 3 O subscript 4 plus C O right pointing arrow 3 F e O plus C O subscript 2. At 75 f t, 230 degrees C, is the equation, 3 F e subscript 2 O subscript 3 plus C O right pointing arrow 2 F e subscript 3 O subscript 4 plus C O subscript 2.

Near the bottom of a furnace are nozzles through which preheated air is blown into the furnace. As soon as the air enters, the coke in the region of the nozzles is oxidized to carbon dioxide with the liberation of a great deal of heat. The hot carbon dioxide passes upward through the overlying layer of white-hot coke, where it is reduced to carbon monoxide:

$$\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{C}(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{CO}(g)$$

The carbon monoxide serves as the reducing agent in the upper regions of the furnace. The individual reactions are indicated in Figure 7.1.6.

The iron oxides are reduced in the upper region of the furnace. In the middle region, limestone (calcium carbonate) decomposes, and the resulting calcium oxide combines with silica and silicates in the ore to form slag. The slag is mostly calcium silicate and contains most of the commercially unimportant components of the ore:

$$\mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{SiO_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CaSiO_3}(l)$$

Just below the middle of the furnace, the temperature is high enough to melt both the iron and the slag. They collect in layers at the bottom of the furnace; the less dense slag floats on the iron and protects it from oxidation. Several times a day, the slag and molten iron are withdrawn from the furnace. The iron is transferred to casting machines or to a steelmaking plant (Figure 7.1.7).



Figure 7.1.7:Molten iron is shown being cast as steel. (credit: Clint Budd)

Much of the iron produced is refined and converted into steel. Steel is made from iron by removing impurities and adding substances such as manganese, chromium, nickel, tungsten, molybdenum, and vanadium to produce alloys with properties that make the material suitable for specific uses. Most steels also contain small but definite percentages of carbon (0.04%–2.5%). However, a large part of the carbon contained in iron must be removed in the manufacture of steel; otherwise, the excess carbon would make the iron brittle.

Isolation of Copper

The most important ores of copper contain copper sulfides (such as covellite, CuS), although copper oxides (such as tenorite, CuO) and copper hydroxycarbonates [such as malachite, $Cu_2(OH)_2CO_3$] are sometimes found. In the production of copper metal, the concentrated sulfide ore is roasted to remove part of the sulfur as sulfur dioxide. The remaining mixture, which consists of Cu_2S, FeS, FeO, and SiO_2, is mixed with limestone, which serves as a flux (a material that aids in the removal of impurities), and heated. Molten slag forms as the iron and silica are removed by Lewis acid-base reactions:

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) + \mathrm{SiO_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CaSiO_3}(l) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$$

$$\mathrm{FeO}(s) + \mathrm{SiO_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{FeSiO_3}(l)$$

In these reactions, the silicon dioxide behaves as a Lewis acid, which accepts a pair of electrons from the Lewis base (the oxide ion).

Reduction of the Cu_2S that remains after smelting is accomplished by blowing air through the molten material. The air converts part of the Cu_2S into Cu_2O. As soon as copper(I) oxide is formed, it is reduced by the remaining copper(I) sulfide to metallic copper:

$$2\,\mathrm{Cu_2S}(l) + 3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Cu_2O}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g)$$

$$2\,\mathrm{Cu_2O}(l) + \mathrm{Cu_2S}(l) \longrightarrow 6\,\mathrm{Cu}(l) + \mathrm{SO_2}(g)$$

The copper obtained in this way is called blister copper because of its characteristic appearance, which is due to the air blisters it contains (Figure 7.1.8). This impure copper is cast into large plates, which are used as anodes in the electrolytic refining of the metal (which is described in the chapter on electrochemistry).

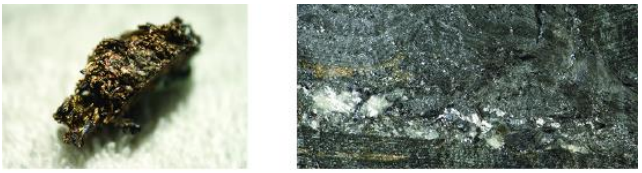


Figure 7.1.8: Blister copper is obtained during the conversion of copper-containing ore into pure copper. (credit: “Tortie tude”/Wikimedia Commons)

This figure shows a dull, black, lumpy mass with small, metallic flecks displayed on a clear, colorless rectangular solid base.

Isolation of Silver

Silver sometimes occurs in large nuggets (Figure 7.1.9) but more frequently in veins and related deposits. At one time, panning was an effective method of isolating both silver and gold nuggets. Due to their low reactivity, these metals, and a few others, occur in deposits as nuggets. The discovery of platinum was due to Spanish explorers in Central America mistaking platinum nuggets for silver. When the metal is not in the form of nuggets, it often useful to employ a process called hydrometallurgy to separate silver from its ores.



(a) (b)

Figure 7.1.9: Naturally occurring free silver may be found as nuggets (a) or in veins (b). (credit a: modification of work by “Teravolt”/Wikimedia Commons; credit b: modification of work by James St. John)

A. A small clump of bronze-colored metal with a very rough, irregular surface. B. A layer-like region of silver metal embedded in rock.

Hydrology involves the separation of a metal from a mixture by first converting it into soluble ions and then extracting and reducing them to precipitate the pure metal. In the presence of air, alkali metal cyanides readily form the soluble dicyanoargentate(I) ion, $[\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-$, from silver metal or silver-containing compounds such as $\mathrm{Ag_2S}$ and AgCl. Representative equations are:

$$4\,\mathrm{Ag}(s) + 8\,\mathrm{CN^-}(aq) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow 4\,[\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

$$2\,\mathrm{Ag_2S}(s) + 8\,\mathrm{CN^-}(aq) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow 4\,[\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{S}(s) + 4\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{AgCl}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{CN^-}(aq) \longrightarrow [\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

The silver is precipitated from the cyanide solution by the addition of either zinc or iron(II) ions, which serves as the reducing agent:

$$2\,[\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) + \mathrm{Zn}(s) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Ag}(s) + [\mathrm{Zn(CN)_4}]^{2-}(aq)$$

Example 7.1.3: Refining Redox

One of the steps for refining silver involves converting silver into dicyanoargenate(I) ions:

$$4\,\mathrm{Ag}(s) + 8\,\mathrm{CN^-}(aq) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow 4\,[\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

Explain why oxygen must be present to carry out the reaction. Why does the reaction not occur as:

$$4\,\mathrm{Ag}(s) + 8\,\mathrm{CN}^-(aq) \longrightarrow 4\,[\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq)?$$

Solution

The charges, as well as the atoms, must balance in reactions. The silver atom is being oxidized from the 0 oxidation state to the 1+ state. Whenever something loses electrons, something must also gain electrons (be reduced) to balance the equation. Oxygen is a good oxidizing agent for these reactions because it can gain electrons to go from the 0 oxidation state to the 2− state.

? Exercise 7.1.3

During the refining of iron, carbon must be present in the blast furnace. Why is carbon necessary to convert iron oxide into iron?

Answer

The carbon is converted into CO, which is the reducing agent that accepts electrons so that iron(III) can be reduced to iron(0).

Transition Metal Compounds

The bonding in the simple compounds of the transition elements ranges from ionic to covalent. In their lower oxidation states, the transition elements form ionic compounds; in their higher oxidation states, they form covalent compounds or polyatomic ions. The variation in oxidation states exhibited by the transition elements gives these compounds a metal-based, oxidation-reduction chemistry. The chemistry of several classes of compounds containing elements of the transition series follows.

Halides

Anhydrous halides of each of the transition elements can be prepared by the direct reaction of the metal with halogens. For example:

$$2\,\mathrm{Fe}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{FeCl_3}(s)$$

Heating a metal halide with additional metal can be used to form a halide of the metal with a lower oxidation state:

$$\mathrm{Fe}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{FeCl_3}(s) \longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{FeCl_2}(s)$$

The stoichiometry of the metal halide that results from the reaction of the metal with a halogen is determined by the relative amounts of metal and halogen and by the strength of the halogen as an oxidizing agent. Generally, fluorine forms fluoride-containing metals in their highest oxidation states. The other halogens may not form analogous compounds.

In general, the preparation of stable water solutions of the halides of the metals of the first transition series is by the addition of a hydrohalic acid to carbonates, hydroxides, oxides, or other compounds that contain basic anions. Sample reactions are:

$$\mathrm{NiCO_3}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{HF}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NiF_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$$

$$\mathrm{Co(OH)_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{HBr}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CoBr_2}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

Most of the first transition series metals also dissolve in acids, forming a solution of the salt and hydrogen gas. For example:

$$\mathrm{Cr}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{HCl}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CrCl_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$$

The polarity of bonds with transition metals varies based not only upon the electronegativities of the atoms involved but also upon the oxidation state of the transition metal. Remember that bond polarity is a continuous spectrum with electrons being shared evenly (covalent bonds) at one extreme and electrons being transferred completely (ionic bonds) at the other. No bond is ever 100% ionic, and the degree to which the electrons are evenly distributed determines many properties of the compound. Transition metal halides with low oxidation numbers form more ionic bonds. For example, titanium(II) chloride and titanium(III) chloride ($TiCl_2$ and $TiCl_3$) have high melting points that are characteristic of ionic compounds, but titanium(IV) chloride ($TiCl_4$) is a volatile liquid, consistent with having covalent titanium-chlorine bonds. All halides of the heavier *d*-block elements have significant covalent characteristics.

The covalent behavior of the transition metals with higher oxidation states is exemplified by the reaction of the metal tetrahalides with water. Like covalent silicon tetrachloride, both the titanium and vanadium tetrahalides react with water to give solutions containing the corresponding hydrohalic acids and the metal oxides:

$$\mathrm{SiCl_4}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{SiO_2}(s) + 4\,\mathrm{HCl}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{TiCl_4}(l) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{TiO_2}(s) + 4\,\mathrm{HCl}(aq)$$

Oxides

As with the halides, the nature of bonding in oxides of the transition elements is determined by the oxidation state of the metal. Oxides with low oxidation states tend to be more ionic, whereas those with higher oxidation states are more covalent. These variations in bonding are because the electronegativities of the elements are not fixed values. The electronegativity of an element increases with increasing oxidation state. Transition metals in low oxidation states have lower electronegativity values than oxygen; therefore, these metal oxides are ionic. Transition metals in very high oxidation states have electronegativity values close to that of oxygen, which leads to these oxides being covalent.

The oxides of the first transition series can be prepared by heating the metals in air. These oxides are Sc_2O_3, TiO_2, V_2O_5, Cr_2O_3, Mn_3O_4, Fe_3O_4, Co_3O_4, NiO, and CuO.

Alternatively, these oxides and other oxides (with the metals in different oxidation states) can be produced by heating the corresponding hydroxides, carbonates, or oxalates in an inert atmosphere. Iron(II) oxide can be prepared by heating iron(II) oxalate, and cobalt(II) oxide is produced by heating cobalt(II) hydroxide:

$$\mathrm{FeC_2O_4}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{FeO}(s) + \mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g)$$

$$\mathrm{Co(OH)_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CoO}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g)$$

With the exception of CrO_3 and Mn_2O_7, transition metal oxides are not soluble in water. They can react with acids and, in a few cases, with bases. Overall, oxides of transition metals with the lowest oxidation states are basic (and react with acids), the intermediate ones are amphoteric, and the highest oxidation states are primarily acidic. Basic metal oxides at a low oxidation state react with aqueous acids to form solutions of salts and water. Examples include the reaction of cobalt(II) oxide accepting protons from nitric acid, and scandium(III) oxide accepting protons from hydrochloric acid:

$$\mathrm{CoO}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{HNO_3}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Co(NO_3)_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

$$\mathrm{Sc_2O_3}(s) + 6\,\mathrm{HCl}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{ScCl_3}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

The oxides of metals with oxidation states of 4+ are amphoteric, and most are not soluble in either acids or bases. Vanadium(V) oxide, chromium(VI) oxide, and manganese(VII) oxide are acidic. They react with solutions of hydroxides to form salts of the oxyanions VO_4^{3-}, CrO_4^{2-}, and MnO_4^-. For example, the complete ionic equation for the reaction of chromium(VI) oxide with a strong base is given by:

$$\mathrm{CrO_3}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

Chromium(VI) oxide and manganese(VII) oxide react with water to form the acids H_2CrO_4 and $HMnO_4$, respectively.

Hydroxides

When a soluble hydroxide is added to an aqueous solution of a salt of a transition metal of the first transition series, a gelatinous precipitate forms. For example, adding a solution of sodium hydroxide to a solution of cobalt sulfate produces a gelatinous pink or blue precipitate of cobalt(II) hydroxide. The net ionic equation is:

$$\mathrm{Co^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Co(OH)_2}(s)$$

In this and many other cases, these precipitates are hydroxides containing the transition metal ion, hydroxide ions, and water coordinated to the transition metal. In other cases, the precipitates are hydrated oxides composed of the metal ion, oxide ions, and water of hydration:

$$4\,\mathrm{Fe^{3+}}(aq) + 6\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) + \mathrm{nH_2O}(l) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Fe_2O_3 \cdot (n+3)H_2O}(s)$$

These substances do not contain hydroxide ions. However, both the hydroxides and the hydrated oxides react with acids to form salts and water. When precipitating a metal from solution, it is necessary to avoid an excess of hydroxide ion, as this may lead to complex ion formation as discussed later in this chapter. The precipitated metal hydroxides can be separated for further processing or for waste disposal.

Carbonates

Many of the elements of the first transition series form insoluble carbonates. It is possible to prepare these carbonates by the addition of a soluble carbonate salt to a solution of a transition metal salt. For example, nickel carbonate can be prepared from solutions of nickel nitrate and sodium carbonate according to the following net ionic equation:

$$\mathrm{Ni^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{NiCO_3}(s)$$

The reactions of the transition metal carbonates are similar to those of the active metal carbonates. They react with acids to form metals salts, carbon dioxide, and water. Upon heating, they decompose, forming the transition metal oxides.

Other Salts

In many respects, the chemical behavior of the elements of the first transition series is very similar to that of the main group metals. In particular, the same types of reactions that are used to prepare salts of the main group metals can be used to prepare simple ionic salts of these elements.

A variety of salts can be prepared from metals that are more active than hydrogen by reaction with the corresponding acids: Scandium metal reacts with hydrobromic acid to form a solution of scandium bromide:

$$2\,\mathrm{Sc}(s) + 6\,\mathrm{HBr}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{ScBr_3}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$$

The common compounds that we have just discussed can also be used to prepare salts. The reactions involved include the reactions of oxides, hydroxides, or carbonates with acids. For example:

$$\mathrm{Ni(OH)_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{ClO_4^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ni^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{ClO_4^-}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

Substitution reactions involving soluble salts may be used to prepare insoluble salts. For example:

$$\mathrm{Ba^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{K^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{BaCrO_4}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{K^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

In our discussion of oxides in this section, we have seen that reactions of the covalent oxides of the transition elements with hydroxides form salts that contain oxyanions of the transition elements.

High Temperature Superconductors

A superconductor is a substance that conducts electricity with no resistance. This lack of resistance means that there is no energy loss during the transmission of electricity. This would lead to a significant reduction in the cost of electricity.

Most currently used, commercial superconducting materials, such as NbTi and Nb_3Sn, do not become superconducting until they are cooled below 23 K (−250 °C). This requires the use of liquid helium, which has a boiling temperature of 4 K and is expensive and difficult to handle. The cost of liquid helium has deterred the widespread application of superconductors.

One of the most exciting scientific discoveries of the 1980s was the characterization of compounds that exhibit superconductivity at temperatures above 90 K. (Compared to liquid helium, 90 K is a high temperature.) Typical among the high-temperature superconducting materials are oxides containing yttrium (or one of several rare earth elements), barium, and copper in a 1:2:3 ratio. The formula of the ionic yttrium compound is $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$.

The new materials become superconducting at temperatures close to 90 K (Figure 7.1.10), temperatures that can be reached by cooling with liquid nitrogen (boiling temperature of 77 K). Not only are liquid nitrogen-cooled materials easier to handle, but the cooling costs are also about 1000 times lower than for liquid helium.

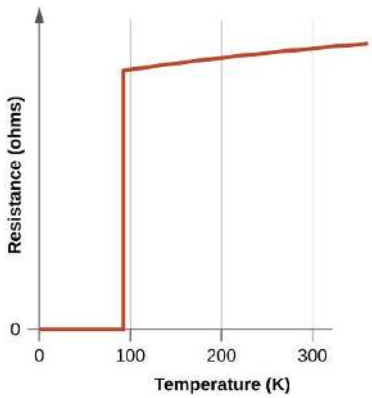


Figure 7.1.10: The resistance of the high-temperature superconductor $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$ varies with temperature. Note how the resistance falls to zero below 92 K, when the substance becomes superconducting.

A graph of resistance (ohms) against temperature (Kelvin) is shown. The line remains constant at 0 ohms up until 92 Kelvin in which there is a sharp increase in resistance which continues increasing with a low slope.

Although the brittle, fragile nature of these materials presently hampers their commercial applications, they have tremendous potential that researchers are hard at work improving their processes to help realize. Superconducting transmission lines would carry current for hundreds of miles with no loss of power due to resistance in the wires. This could allow generating stations to be located in areas remote from population centers and near the natural resources necessary for power production. The first project demonstrating the viability of high-temperature superconductor power transmission was established in New York in 2008.



Figure 7.1.11: (a) This magnetic levitation train (or maglev) uses superconductor technology to move along its tracks. (b) A magnet can be levitated using a dish like this as a superconductor. (credit a: modification of work by Alex Needham; credit b: modification of work by Kevin Jarrett)

A. a white train is on a track with a building standing on a bed of water in the background. B. A magnet is floating in a dish with frost emerging from the dish.

Researchers are also working on using this technology to develop other applications, such as smaller and more powerful microchips. In addition, high-temperature superconductors can be used to generate magnetic fields for applications such as medical devices, magnetic levitation trains, and containment fields for nuclear fusion reactors (Figure 7.1.11).



Video 7.1.1: Watch how a high-temperature superconductor levitates around a magnetic racetrack in the video.

Summary

The transition metals are elements with partially filled *d* orbitals, located in the *d*-block of the periodic table. The reactivity of the transition elements varies widely from very active metals such as scandium and iron to almost inert elements, such as the platinum metals. The type of chemistry used in the isolation of the elements from their ores depends upon the concentration of the element in its ore and the difficulty of reducing ions of the elements to the metals. Metals that are more active are more difficult to reduce.

Transition metals exhibit chemical behavior typical of metals. For example, they oxidize in air upon heating and react with elemental halogens to form halides. Those elements that lie above hydrogen in the activity series react with acids, producing salts and hydrogen gas. Oxides, hydroxides, and carbonates of transition metal compounds in low oxidation states are basic. Halides and other salts are generally stable in water, although oxygen must be excluded in some cases. Most transition metals form a variety of stable oxidation states, allowing them to demonstrate a wide range of chemical reactivity.

Glossary

actinide series
(also, actinoid series) actinium and the elements in the second row or the *f*-block, atomic numbers 89–103

coordination compound
stable compound in which the central metal atom or ion acts as a Lewis acid and accepts one or more pairs of electrons

***d*-block element**
one of the elements in groups 3–11 with valence electrons in *d* orbitals

***f*-block element**
(also, inner transition element) one of the elements with atomic numbers 58–71 or 90–103 that have valence electrons in *f* orbitals; they are frequently shown offset below the periodic table

first transition series
transition elements in the fourth period of the periodic table (first row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 21–29

fourth transition series
transition elements in the seventh period of the periodic table (fourth row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 89 and 104–111

hydrometallurgy
process in which a metal is separated from a mixture by first converting it into soluble ions, extracting the ions, and then reducing the ions to precipitate the pure metal

lanthanide series
(also, lanthanoid series) lanthanum and the elements in the first row or the *f*-block, atomic numbers 57–71

platinum metals
group of six transition metals consisting of ruthenium, osmium, rhodium, iridium, palladium, and platinum that tend to occur in the same minerals and demonstrate similar chemical properties

rare earth element
collection of 17 elements including the lanthanides, scandium, and yttrium that often occur together and have similar chemical properties, making separation difficult

second transition series
transition elements in the fifth period of the periodic table (second row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 39–47

smelting
process of extracting a pure metal from a molten ore

steel

material made from iron by removing impurities in the iron and adding substances that produce alloys with properties suitable for specific uses

superconductor

material that conducts electricity with no resistance

third transition series

transition elements in the sixth period of the periodic table (third row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 57 and 72–79

This page titled 7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **19.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals

Learning Objectives

- List the defining traits of coordination compounds
- Describe the structures of complexes containing monodentate and polydentate ligands
- Use standard nomenclature rules to name coordination compounds
- Explain and provide examples of geometric and optical isomerism
- Identify several natural and technological occurrences of coordination compounds

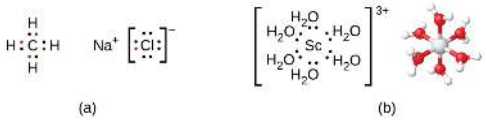
The hemoglobin in your blood, the chlorophyll in green plants, vitamin B_{12}, and the catalyst used in the manufacture of polyethylene all contain coordination compounds. Ions of the metals, especially the transition metals, are likely to form complexes. Many of these compounds are highly colored (Figure 7.2.1). In the remainder of this chapter, we will consider the structure and bonding of these remarkable compounds.



Figure 7.2.1: Metal ions that contain partially filled d subshell usually form colored complex ions; ions with empty d subshell (d^0) or with filled d subshells (d^{10}) usually form colorless complexes. This figure shows, from left to right, solutions containing $[M(H_2O)_6]^{n+}$ ions with M = Sc^{3+}(d^0), Cr^{3+}(d^3), Co^{2+}(d^7), Ni^{2+}(d^8), Cu^{2+}(d^9), and Zn^{2+}(d^{10}). (credit: Sahar Atwa)

There are six containers that are each filled with a different color liquid. The first is clear, followed by purple, red, teal, blue, and the last one is also clear.

Remember that in most main group element compounds, the valence electrons of the isolated atoms combine to form chemical bonds that satisfy the octet rule. For instance, the four valence electrons of carbon overlap with electrons from four hydrogen atoms to form CH_4. The one valence electron leaves sodium and adds to the seven valence electrons of chlorine to form the ionic formula unit NaCl (Figure 7.2.2). Transition metals do not normally bond in this fashion. They primarily form coordinate covalent bonds, a form of the Lewis acid-base interaction in which both of the electrons in the bond are contributed by a donor (Lewis base) to an electron acceptor (Lewis acid). The Lewis acid in coordination complexes, often called a central metal ion (or atom), is often a transition metal or inner transition metal, although main group elements can also form coordination compounds. The Lewis base donors, called ligands, can be a wide variety of chemicals—atoms, molecules, or ions. The only requirement is that they have one or more electron pairs, which can be donated to the central metal. Most often, this involves a donor atom with a lone pair of electrons that can form a coordinate bond to the metal.



(a) (b)

Figure 7.2.2: (a) Covalent bonds involve the sharing of electrons, and ionic bonds involve the transferring of electrons associated with each bonding atom, as indicated by the colored electrons. (b) However, coordinate covalent bonds involve electrons from a Lewis base being donated to a metal center. The lone pairs from six water molecules form bonds to the scandium ion to form an octahedral complex. (Only the donated pairs are shown.)

The coordination sphere consists of the central metal ion or atom plus its attached ligands. Brackets in a formula enclose the coordination sphere; species outside the brackets are not part of the coordination sphere. The coordination number of the central metal ion or atom is the number of donor atoms bonded to it. The coordination number for the silver ion in $[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$ is two (Figure 7.2.3). For the copper(II) ion in $[CuCl_4]^{2-}$, the coordination number is four, whereas for the cobalt(II) ion in $[Co(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ the coordination number is six. Each of these ligands is monodentate, from the Greek for "one toothed," meaning that they connect with the central metal through only one atom. In this case, the number of ligands and the coordination number are equal.

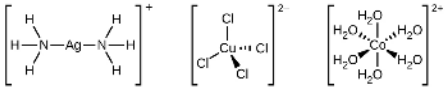
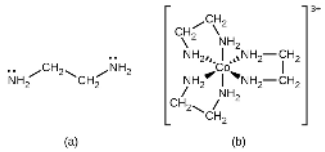


Figure 7.2.3: The complexes (a) $[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$, (b) $[Cu(Cl)_4]^{2-}$, and (c) $[Co(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ have coordination numbers of two, four, and six, respectively. The geometries of these complexes are the same as we have seen with VSEPR theory for main group elements: linear, tetrahedral, and octahedral.

The structural formulas for Ag N H 3 subscript 2, C u C l subscript 4, and C o H 2 O subscript 6 is shown in enclosing brackets showing their individual charges on the top right of positive 1, negative 2 and positive 2 respectively.

Many other ligands coordinate to the metal in more complex fashions. Bidentate ligands are those in which two atoms coordinate to the metal center. For example, ethylenediamine (en, $H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2$) contains two nitrogen atoms, each of which has a lone pair and can serve as a Lewis base (Figure 7.2.4). Both of the atoms can coordinate to a single metal center. In the complex $[Co(en)_3]^{3+}$, there are three bidentate en ligands, and the coordination number of the cobalt(III) ion is six. The most common coordination numbers are two, four, and six, but examples of all coordination numbers from 1 to 15 are known.



(a) (b)

Figure 7.2.4: (a) The ethylenediamine (en) ligand contains two atoms with lone pairs that can coordinate to the metal center. (b) The cobalt(III) complex $[Co(en)_3]^{3+}$ *contains three of these ligands, each forming two bonds to the cobalt ion.*

Any ligand that bonds to a central metal ion by more than one donor atom is a polydentate ligand (or "many teeth") because it can bite into the metal center with more than one bond. The term chelate (pronounced "KEY-late") from the Greek for "claw" is also used to describe this type of interaction. Many polydentate ligands are chelating ligands, and a complex consisting of one or more of these ligands and a central metal is a chelate. A chelating ligand is also known as a chelating agent. A chelating ligand holds the metal ion rather like a crab's claw would hold a marble. Figure 7.2.4 showed one example of a chelate and the heme complex in hemoglobin is another important example (Figure 7.2.5). It contains a polydentate ligand with four donor atoms that coordinate to iron.

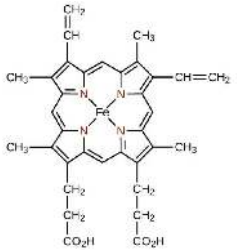


Figure 7.2.5: The single ligand heme contains four nitrogen atoms that coordinate to iron in hemoglobin to form a chelate.

Polydentate ligands are sometimes identified with prefixes that indicate the number of donor atoms in the ligand. As we have seen, ligands with one donor atom, such as NH_3, Cl^-, and H_2O, are monodentate ligands. Ligands with two donor groups are bidentate ligands. Ethylenediamine, $H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2$, and the anion of the acid glycine, $NH_2CH_2CO_2^-$ (Figure 7.2.6) are examples of bidentate ligands. Tridentate ligands, tetradentate ligands, pentadentate ligands, and hexadentate ligands contain three, four, five, and six donor atoms, respectively. The heme ligand (Figure 7.2.5) is a tetradentate ligand.

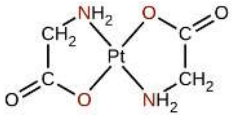


Figure 7.2.6: Each of the anionic ligands shown attaches in a bidentate fashion to platinum(II), with both a nitrogen and oxygen atom coordinating to the metal.

The Naming of Complexes

The nomenclature of the complexes is patterned after a system suggested by Alfred Werner, a Swiss chemist and Nobel laureate, whose outstanding work more than 100 years ago laid the foundation for a clearer understanding of these compounds. The following five rules are used for naming complexes:

1. If a coordination compound is ionic, name the cation first and the anion second, in accordance with the usual nomenclature.
2. Name the ligands first, followed by the central metal. Name the ligands alphabetically. Negative ligands (anions) have names formed by adding *-o* to the stem name of the group (e.g., Table 7.2.1. For most neutral ligands, the name of the molecule is used. The four common exceptions are *aqua* (H_2O), *amine* (NH_3), *carbonyl* (CO), and *nitrosyl* (NO). For example, name $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$ as diaminetetrachloroplatinum(IV).
3. If more than one ligand of a given type is present, the number is indicated by the prefixes *di-* (for two), *tri-* (for three), *tetra-* (for four), *penta-* (for five), and *hexa-* (for six). Sometimes, the prefixes *bis-* (for two), *tris-* (for three), and *tetrakis-* (for four) are used when the name of the ligand already includes *di-*, *tri-*, or *tetra-*, or when the ligand name begins with a vowel. For example, the ion bis(bipyridyl)osmium(II) uses bis- to signify that there are two ligands attached to Os, and each bipyridyl ligand contains two pyridine groups (C_5H_4N).

Table 7.2.1: Examples of Anionic Ligands

Anionic Ligand	Name
F^-	fluoro
Cl^-	chloro
Br^-	bromo
I^-	iodo
CN^-	cyano
NO_3^-	nitrato
OH^-	hydroxo
O^{2-}	oxo
$C_2O_4^{2-}$	oxalato
CO_2^{2-}	carbonato

When the complex is either a cation or a neutral molecule, the name of the central metal atom is spelled exactly like the name of the element and is followed by a Roman numeral in parentheses to indicate its oxidation state (Tables 7.2.2, 7.2.3, and 7.2.3). When the complex is an anion, the suffix -ate is added to the stem of the name of the metal, followed by the Roman numeral designation of its oxidation state.

Table 7.2.2: Select Coordination Complexes based on total Charge

Examples in Which the Complex Is Cation	
$[Co(NH_3)_6]Cl_3$	hexaaminecobalt(III) chloride
$[Pt(NH_3)_4Cl_2]^{2+}$	tetraaminedichloroplatinum(IV) ion
$[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$	diaminesilver(I) ion
$[Cr(H_2O)_4Cl_2]Cl$	tetraaquadichlorochromium(III) chloride
$[Co(H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2)_3]_2(SO_4)_3$	tris(ethylenediamine)cobalt(III) sulfate
Examples in Which the Complex Is Neutral	
$[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$	diaminetetrachloroplatinum(IV)
$[Ni(H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2)_2Cl_2]$	dichlorobis(ethylenediamine)nickel(II)
Examples in Which the Complex Is an Anion	
$[PtCl_6]^{2-}$	hexachloroplatinate(IV) ion
$Na_2[SnCl_6]$	sodium hexachlorostannate(IV)

Sometimes, the Latin name of the metal is used when the English name is clumsy. For example, *ferrate* is used instead of *ironate*, *plumbate* instead *leadate*, and *stannate* instead of *tinate*. The oxidation state of the metal is determined based on the charges of each ligand and the overall charge of the coordination compound. For example, in $[Cr(H_2O)_4Cl_2]Br$, the coordination sphere (in

brackets) has a charge of 1+ to balance the bromide ion. The water ligands are neutral, and the chloride ligands are anionic with a charge of 1− each. To determine the oxidation state of the metal, we set the overall charge equal to the sum of the ligands and the metal: +1 = −2 + *x*, so the oxidation state (*x*) is equal to 3+.

Example 7.2.1: Coordination Numbers and Oxidation States

Determine the name of the following complexes and give the coordination number of the central metal atom.

a. $Na_2[PtCl_6]$
b. $K_3[Fe(C_2O_4)_3]$
c. $[Co(NH_3)_5Cl]Cl_2$

Solution

a. There are two Na^+ ions, so the coordination sphere has a negative two charge: $[PtCl_6]^{2-}$. There are six anionic chloride ligands, so −2 = −6 + *x*, and the oxidation state of the platinum is 4+. The name of the complex is sodium hexachloroplatinate(IV), and the coordination number is six.
b. The coordination sphere has a charge of 3− (based on the potassium) and the oxalate ligands each have a charge of 2−, so the metal oxidation state is given by −3 = −6 + *x*, and this is an iron(III) complex. The name is potassium trisoxalatoferrate(III) (note that tris is used instead of tri because the ligand name starts with a vowel). Because oxalate is a bidentate ligand, this complex has a coordination number of six.
c. In this example, the coordination sphere has a cationic charge of 2+. The NH_3 ligand is neutral, but the chloro ligand has a charge of 1−. The oxidation state is found by +2 = −1 + *x* and is 3+, so the complex is pentaaminechlorocobalt(III) chloride and the coordination number is six.

Exercise 7.2.1

The complex potassium dicyanoargenate(I) is used to make antiseptic compounds. Give the formula and coordination number.

Answer

$K[Ag(CN)_2]$; coordination number two

The Structures of Complexes

The most common structures of the complexes in coordination compounds are octahedral, tetrahedral, and square planar (Figure 7.2.7). For transition metal complexes, the coordination number determines the geometry around the central metal ion. Table 7.2.3 compares coordination numbers to the molecular geometry:

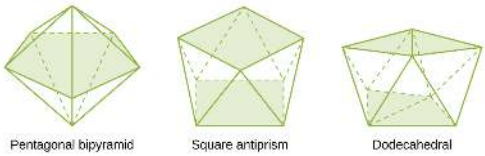


Figure 7.2.7: These are geometries of some complexes with coordination numbers of seven and eight.

Table 7.2.3: Coordination Numbers and Molecular Geometry

Coordination Number	Molecular Geometry	Example
2	linear	$[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$
3	trigonal planar	$[Cu(CN)_3]^{2-}$
4	tetrahedral(d^0 or d^{10}), low oxidation states for M	$[Ni(CO)_4]$
4	square planar (d^8)	$[NiCl_4]^{2-}$
5	trigonal bipyramidal	$[CoCl_5]^{2-}$
5	square pyramidal	$[VO(CN)_4]^{2-}$
6	octahedral	$[CoCl_6]^{3-}$
7	pentagonal bipyramid	$[ZrF_7]^{3-}$
8	square antiprism	$[ReF_8]^{2-}$
8	dodecahedron	$[Mo(CN)_8]^{4-}$
9 and above	more complicated structures	$[ReH_9]^{2-}$

Unlike main group atoms in which both the bonding and nonbonding electrons determine the molecular shape, the nonbonding *d*-electrons do not change the arrangement of the ligands. Octahedral complexes have a coordination number of six, and the six donor atoms are arranged at the corners of an octahedron around the central metal ion. Examples are shown in Figure 7.2.8. The chloride and nitrate anions in $[Co(H_2O)_6]Cl_2$ and $[Cr(en)_3](NO_3)_3$, and the potassium cations in $K_2[PtCl_6]$, are outside the brackets and are not bonded to the metal ion.

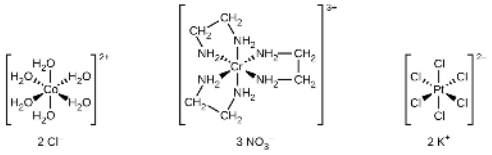


Figure 7.2.8: Many transition metal complexes adopt octahedral geometries, with six donor atoms forming bond angles of 90° about the central atom with adjacent ligands. Note that only ligands within the coordination sphere affect the geometry around the metal center.

The structural formulas for C o H 2 O subscript 6, C r e n subscript 3, and P t c l subscript 6 is shown in enclosing brackets showing their individual charges on the top right. These charges are positive 2, positive 3 and negative 2 respectively. 2 chloride ions, 3 nitrate ions, and 2 potassium ions are shown outside of the three brackets respectively.

For transition metals with a coordination number of four, two different geometries are possible: tetrahedral or square planar. Unlike main group elements, where these geometries can be predicted from VSEPR theory, a more detailed discussion of transition metal orbitals (discussed in the section on Crystal Field Theory) is required to predict which complexes will be tetrahedral and which will be square planar. In tetrahedral complexes such as $[Zn(CN)_4]^{2-}$ (Figure 7.2.9), each of the ligand pairs forms an angle of 109.5°. In square planar complexes, such as $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$, each ligand has two other ligands at 90° angles (called the *cis* positions) and one additional ligand at an 180° angle, in the *trans* position.

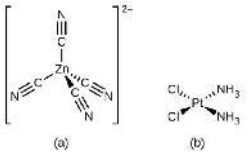


Figure 7.2.9: Transition metals with a coordination number of four can adopt a tetrahedral geometry (a) as in $K_2[Zn(CN)_4]$ or a square planar geometry (b) as shown in $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$.
Structural formulas of K subscript 2 Z n C N subscript 4 and P t N H subscript 3 subscript 2 C l subscript 2 are shown with wedge and dashed lines to show a more three dimensional structure.

Isomerism in Complexes

Isomers are different chemical species that have the same chemical formula. Transition metals often form **geometric isomers**, in which the same atoms are connected through the same types of bonds but with differences in their orientation in space. Coordination complexes with two different ligands in the *cis* and *trans* positions from a ligand of interest form isomers. For example, the octahedral $[Co(NH_3)_4Cl_2]^+$ ion has two isomers. In the *cis* configuration, the two chloride ligands are adjacent to each other (Figure 7.2.1). The other isomer, the *trans* configuration, has the two chloride ligands directly across from one another.

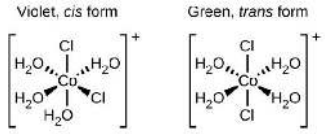


Figure 7.2.10: The cis and trans isomers of $[Co(H_2O)_4Cl_2]^+$ contain the same ligands attached to the same metal ion, but the spatial arrangement causes these two compounds to have very different properties.
For the Violet, cis form the two chlorine is adjacent to one another. For the green, trans form, the two chlorine is opposite from one another.

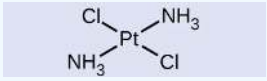
Different geometric isomers of a substance are different chemical compounds. They exhibit different properties, even though they have the same formula. For example, the two isomers of $[Co(NH_3)_4Cl_2]NO_3$ differ in color; the *cis* form is violet, and the *trans* form is green. Furthermore, these isomers have different dipole moments, solubilities, and reactivities. As an example of how the arrangement in space can influence the molecular properties, consider the polarity of the two $[Co(NH_3)_4Cl_2]NO_3$ isomers. Remember that the polarity of a molecule or ion is determined by the bond dipoles (which are due to the difference in electronegativity of the bonding atoms) and their arrangement in space. In one isomer, *cis* chloride ligands cause more electron density on one side of the molecule than on the other, making it polar. For the *trans* isomer, each ligand is directly across from an identical ligand, so the bond dipoles cancel out, and the molecule is nonpolar.

Example 7.2.2: Geometric Isomers

Identify which geometric isomer of $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$ is shown in Figure 7.2.9b. Draw the other geometric isomer and give its full name.

Solution

In the Figure 7.2.9b, the two chlorine ligands occupy *cis* positions. The other form is shown in below. When naming specific isomers, the descriptor is listed in front of the name. Therefore, this complex is *trans*-diaminedichloroplatinum(II).



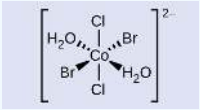
Structural formula of trans-diaminedichloroplatinum(II). The chlorine atoms are opposite each other in the same plane. This is also the case for the two amines.

The *trans* isomer of $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$ has each ligand directly across from an adjacent ligand.

Exercise 7.2.2

Draw the ion *trans*-diaqua-*trans*-dibromo-*trans*-dichlorocobalt(II).

Answer



Cobalt is located at the center with the left and right wedges connected to bromine and H 2 O respectively. The left and right dash lines are connected to H 2 O and bromine respectively. Pointing directly upwards and downwards opposite from one another are the chlorine. The entire structural formula is enclosed in square bracket with a superscript of 2 negative.

Another important type of isomers are optical isomers, or enantiomers, in which two objects are exact mirror images of each other but cannot be lined up so that all parts match. This means that optical isomers are nonsuperimposable mirror images. A classic example of this is a pair of hands, in which the right and left hand are mirror images of one another but cannot be superimposed. Optical isomers are very important in organic and biochemistry because living systems often incorporate one specific optical isomer and not the other. Unlike geometric isomers, pairs of optical isomers have identical properties (boiling point, polarity, solubility, etc.). Optical isomers differ only in the way they affect polarized light and how they react with other optical isomers. For coordination complexes, many coordination compounds such as $[M(en)_3]^{n+}$ [in which M^{n+} is a central metal ion such as iron(III) or cobalt(II)] form enantiomers, as shown in Figure 7.2.11. These two isomers will react differently with other optical isomers. For example, DNA helices are optical isomers, and the form that occurs in nature (right-handed DNA) will bind to only one isomer of $[M(en)_3]^{n+}$ and not the other.

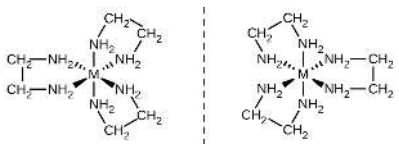


Figure 7.2.11: The complex $[M(en)_3]^{n+}$ (M^{n+} = a metal ion, en = ethylenediamine) has a nonsuperimposable mirror image.
Two structural formulas of open bracket M e n subscript 3 close bracket superscript n positive are shown as mirror images with the dashed vertical line in the center as the mirror plane.

The $[Co(en)_2Cl_2]^+$ ion exhibits geometric isomerism (*cis*/*trans*), and its *cis* isomer exists as a pair of optical isomers (Figure 7.2.12).

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122540

Figure 7.2.12: Three isomeric forms of $[Co(en)_2Cl_2]^+$ exist. The trans isomer, formed when the chlorines are positioned at a 180° angle, has very different properties from the cis isomers. The mirror images of the cis isomer form a pair of optical isomers, which have identical behavior except when reacting with other enantiomers.

For the cis isomers, the structural formula shown are mirror images of one another. The two chlorine atoms are adjacent to one another in each cis structure. The trans form is also shown with the chlorine directly opposite from one another.

Linkage isomers occur when the coordination compound contains a ligand that can bind to the transition metal center through two different atoms. For example, the CN ligand can bind through the carbon atom (cyano) or through the nitrogen atom (isocyano). Similarly, SCN− can be bound through the sulfur or nitrogen atom, affording two distinct compounds ($[Co(NH_3)_5SCN]^{2+}$ or $[Co(NH_3)_5NCS]^{2+}$).

Ionization isomers (or coordination isomers) occur when one anionic ligand in the inner coordination sphere is replaced with the counter ion from the outer coordination sphere. A simple example of two ionization isomers are $[CoCl_6][Br]$ and $[CoCl_5Br][Cl]$.

Coordination Complexes in Nature and Technology

Chlorophyll, the green pigment in plants, is a complex that contains magnesium (Figure 7.2.13). This is an example of a main group element in a coordination complex. Plants appear green because chlorophyll absorbs red and purple light; the reflected light consequently appears green. The energy resulting from the absorption of light is used in photosynthesis.

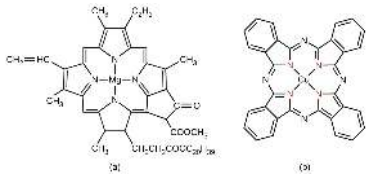


Figure 7.2.13: (a) Chlorophyll comes in several different forms, which all have the same basic structure around the magnesium center. (b) Copper phthalocyanine blue, a square planar copper complex, is present in some blue dyes.

Transition Metal Catalysts

One of the most important applications of transition metals is as industrial catalysts. As you recall from the chapter on kinetics, a catalyst increases the rate of reaction by lowering the activation energy and is regenerated in the catalytic cycle. Over 90% of all manufactured products are made with the aid of one or more catalysts. The ability to bind ligands and change oxidation states makes transition metal catalysts well suited for catalytic applications. Vanadium oxide is used to produce 230,000,000 tons of sulfuric acid worldwide each year, which in turn is used to make everything from fertilizers to cans for food. Plastics are made with the aid of transition metal catalysts, along with detergents, fertilizers, paints, and more (Figure 7.2.14). Very complicated pharmaceuticals are manufactured with catalysts that are selective, reacting with one specific bond out of a large number of possibilities. Catalysts allow processes to be more economical and more environmentally friendly. Developing new catalysts and better understanding of existing systems are important areas of current research.



(a) (b) (c)

Figure 7.2.14: (a) Detergents, (b) paints, and (c) fertilizers are all made using transition metal catalysts. (credit a: modification of work by “Mr. Brian”/Flickr; credit b: modification of work by Ewen Roberts; credit c: modification of work by “osseous”/Flickr)

Many other coordination complexes are also brightly colored. The square planar copper(II) complex phthalocyanine blue (from Figure 7.2.13) is one of many complexes used as pigments or dyes. This complex is used in blue ink, blue jeans, and certain blue paints.

The structure of heme (Figure 7.2.15), the iron-containing complex in hemoglobin, is very similar to that in chlorophyll. In hemoglobin, the red heme complex is bonded to a large protein molecule (globin) by the attachment of the protein to the heme ligand. Oxygen molecules are transported by hemoglobin in the blood by being bound to the iron center. When the hemoglobin loses its oxygen, the color changes to a bluish red. Hemoglobin will only transport oxygen if the iron is Fe^{2+}; oxidation of the iron to Fe^{3+} prevents oxygen transport.

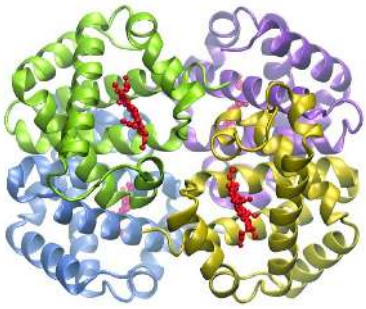


Figure 7.2.15: Hemoglobin contains four protein subunits, each of which has an iron center attached to a heme ligand (shown in red), which is coordinated to a globin protein. Each subunit is shown in a different color.

Three dimensional structure of hemoglobin has many ribbon like structures forming helices and are entangled with one another in a disordered manner. The four subunits are colored differently. Around the center of hemoglobin are multiple linear structures composed of red globules.

Complexing agents often are used for water softening because they tie up such ions as Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, and Fe^{2+}, which make water hard. Many metal ions are also undesirable in food products because these ions can catalyze reactions that change the color of food. Coordination complexes are useful as preservatives. For example, the ligand EDTA, $(HO_2CCH_2)_2NCH_2CH_2N(CH_2CO_2H)_2$, coordinates to metal ions through six donor atoms and prevents the metals from reacting (Figure 7.2.16). This ligand also is used to sequester metal ions in paper production, textiles, and detergents, and has pharmaceutical uses.



Figure 7.2.16: The ligand EDTA binds tightly to a variety of metal ions by forming hexadentate complexes.

Complexing agents that tie up metal ions are also used as drugs. British Anti-Lewisite (BAL), $HSCH_2CH(SH)CH_2OH$, is a drug developed during World War I as an antidote for the arsenic-based war gas Lewisite. BAL is now used to treat poisoning by heavy metals, such as arsenic, mercury, thallium, and chromium. The drug is a ligand and functions by making a water-soluble chelate of the metal; the kidneys eliminate this metal chelate (Figure 7.2.17). Another polydentate ligand, enterobactin, which is isolated from certain bacteria, is used to form complexes of iron and thereby to control the severe iron buildup found in patients suffering from blood diseases such as Cooley's anemia, who require frequent transfusions. As the transfused blood breaks down, the usual metabolic processes that remove iron are overloaded, and excess iron can build up to fatal levels. Enterobactin forms a water-soluble complex with excess iron, and the body can safely eliminate this complex.

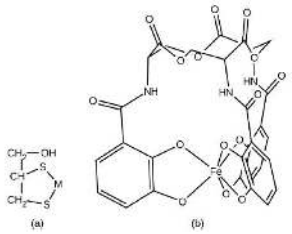


Figure 7.2.17: Coordination complexes are used as drugs. (a) British Anti-Lewisite is used to treat heavy metal poisoning by coordinating metals (M), and enterobactin (b) allows excess iron in the blood to be removed.

Example 7.2.3: Chelation Therapy

Ligands like BAL and enterobactin are important in medical treatments for heavy metal poisoning. However, chelation therapies can disrupt the normal concentration of ions in the body, leading to serious side effects, so researchers are searching for new chelation drugs. One drug that has been developed is dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA), shown in Figure 7.2.18. Identify which atoms in this molecule could act as donor atoms.



DMSA

is shown with all of the lone pairs on O and S drawn out. " style="width: 650px; height: 191px;" width="650px" height="191px" data-cke-saved-src="/@api/deki/files/65922/CNX

_Chem_19_02_DMSA.jpg" src="/@api/deki/files/65922/CNX_Chem_19_02_DMSA.jpg" data-quail-id="607">

Figure 7.2.18: Dimercaptosuccinic acid is used to treat heavy metal poisoning.

Solution

All of the oxygen and sulfur atoms have lone pairs of electrons that can be used to coordinate to a metal center, so there are six possible donor atoms. Geometrically, only two of these atoms can be coordinated to a metal at once. The most common binding mode involves the coordination of one sulfur atom and one oxygen atom, forming a five-member ring with the metal.

Exercise 7.2.3

Some alternative medicine practitioners recommend chelation treatments for ailments that are not clearly related to heavy metals, such as cancer and autism, although the practice is discouraged by many scientific organizations.[1] Identify at least two biologically important metals that could be disrupted by chelation therapy.

Answer

Ca, Fe, Zn, and Cu

Ligands are also used in the electroplating industry. When metal ions are reduced to produce thin metal coatings, metals can clump together to form clusters and nanoparticles. When metal coordination complexes are used, the ligands keep the metal atoms isolated from each other. It has been found that many metals plate out as a smoother, more uniform, better-looking, and more adherent surface when plated from a bath containing the metal as a complex ion. Thus, complexes such as $[Ag(CN)_2]^-$ and $[Au(CN)_2]^-$ are used extensively in the electroplating industry.

In 1965, scientists at Michigan State University discovered that there was a platinum complex that inhibited cell division in certain microorganisms. Later work showed that the complex was *cis*-diaminedichloroplatinum(II), $[Pt(NH_3)_2(Cl)_2]$, and that the *trans* isomer was not effective. The inhibition of cell division indicated that this square planar compound could be an anticancer agent. In 1978, the US Food and Drug Administration approved this compound, known as cisplatin, for use in the treatment of certain forms of cancer. Since that time, many similar platinum compounds have been developed for the treatment of cancer. In all cases, these are the *cis* isomers and never the *trans* isomers. The diamine $(NH_3)_2$ portion is retained with other groups, replacing the dichloro $[(Cl)_2]$ portion. The newer drugs include carboplatin, oxaliplatin, and satraplatin.

Summary

The transition elements and main group elements can form coordination compounds, or complexes, in which a central metal atom or ion is bonded to one or more ligands by coordinate covalent bonds. Ligands with more than one donor atom are called polydentate ligands and form chelates. The common geometries found in complexes are tetrahedral and square planar (both with a coordination number of four) and octahedral (with a coordination number of six). *Cis* and *trans* configurations are possible in some octahedral and square planar complexes. In addition to these geometrical isomers, optical isomers (molecules or ions that are mirror images but not superimposable) are possible in certain octahedral complexes. Coordination complexes have a wide variety of uses including oxygen transport in blood, water purification, and pharmaceutical use.

Footnotes

1. National Council against Health Fraud, *NCAHF Policy Statement on Chelation Therapy*, (Peabody, MA, 2002).

Glossary

bidentate ligand

ligand that coordinates to one central metal through coordinate bonds from two different atoms

central metal
ion or atom to which one or more ligands is attached through coordinate covalent bonds

chelate
complex formed from a polydentate ligand attached to a central metal

chelating ligand
ligand that attaches to a central metal ion by bonds from two or more donor atoms

***cis* configuration**
configuration of a geometrical isomer in which two similar groups are on the same side of an imaginary reference line on the molecule

coordination compound
substance consisting of atoms, molecules, or ions attached to a central atom through Lewis acid-base interactions

coordination number
number of coordinate covalent bonds to the central metal atom in a complex or the number of closest contacts to an atom in a crystalline form

coordination sphere
central metal atom or ion plus the attached ligands of a complex

donor atom
atom in a ligand with a lone pair of electrons that forms a coordinate covalent bond to a central metal

ionization isomer
(or coordination isomer) isomer in which an anionic ligand is replaced by the counter ion in the inner coordination sphere

ligand
ion or neutral molecule attached to the central metal ion in a coordination compound

linkage isomer
coordination compound that possesses a ligand that can bind to the transition metal in two different ways (CN^- vs. NC^-)

monodentate
ligand that attaches to a central metal through just one coordinate covalent bond

optical isomer
(also, enantiomer) molecule that is a nonsuperimposable mirror image with identical chemical and physical properties, except when it reacts with other optical isomers

polydentate ligand
ligand that is attached to a central metal ion by bonds from two or more donor atoms, named with prefixes specifying how many donors are present (e.g., hexadentate = six coordinate bonds formed)

***trans* configuration**
configuration of a geometrical isomer in which two similar groups are on opposite sides of an imaginary reference line on the molecule

---

This page titled 7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **19.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122540

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122540

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122540

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122540

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/122540

7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Outline the basic premise of crystal field theory (CFT)
- Identify molecular geometries associated with various d-orbital splitting patterns
- Predict electron configurations of split d orbitals for selected transition metal atoms or ions
- Explain spectral and magnetic properties in terms of CFT concepts

The behavior of coordination compounds cannot be adequately explained by the same theories used for main group element chemistry. The observed geometries of coordination complexes are not consistent with hybridized orbitals on the central metal overlapping with ligand orbitals, as would be predicted by valence bond theory. The observed colors indicate that the *d* orbitals often occur at different energy levels rather than all being degenerate, that is, of equal energy, as are the three *p* orbitals. To explain the stabilities, structures, colors, and magnetic properties of transition metal complexes, a different bonding model has been developed. Just as valence bond theory explains many aspects of bonding in main group chemistry, crystal field theory is useful in understanding and predicting the behavior of transition metal complexes.

Crystal Field Theory

To explain the observed behavior of transition metal complexes (such as how colors arise), a model involving electrostatic interactions between the electrons from the ligands and the electrons in the unhybridized *d* orbitals of the central metal atom has been developed. This electrostatic model is crystal field theory (CFT). It allows us to understand, interpret, and predict the colors, magnetic behavior, and some structures of coordination compounds of transition metals.

CFT focuses on the nonbonding electrons on the central metal ion in coordination complexes not on the metal-ligand bonds. Like valence bond theory, CFT tells only part of the story of the behavior of complexes. However, it tells the part that valence bond theory does not. In its pure form, CFT ignores any covalent bonding between ligands and metal ions. Both the ligand and the metal are treated as infinitesimally small point charges.

All electrons are negative, so the electrons donated from the ligands will repel the electrons of the central metal. Let us consider the behavior of the electrons in the unhybridized *d* orbitals in an octahedral complex. The five *d* orbitals consist of lobe-shaped regions and are arranged in space, as shown in Figure 7.3.1. In an octahedral complex, the six ligands coordinate along the axes.

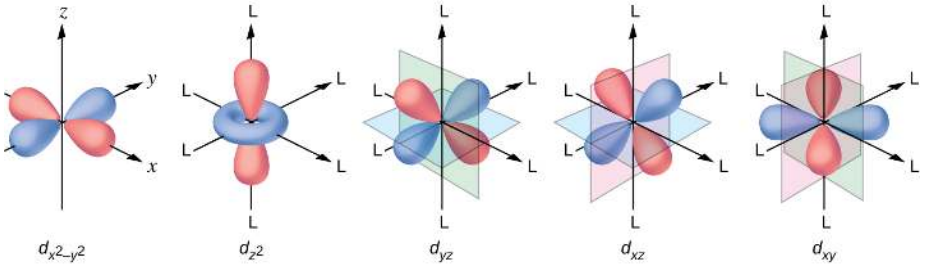


Figure 7.3.1: The directional characteristics of the five d orbitals are shown here. The shaded portions indicate the phase of the orbitals. The ligands (L) coordinate along the axes. For clarity, the ligands have been omitted from the $d_{x^2-y^2}$ *orbital so that the axis labels could be shown.*

This figure includes diagrams of five d orbitals. Each diagram includes three axes. The z-axis is vertical and is denoted with an upward pointing arrow. It is labeled “z” in the first diagram. Arrows similarly identify the x-axis with an arrow pointing from the rear left to the right front, diagonally across the figure and the y-axis with an arrow pointing from the left front diagonally across the figure to the right rear of the diagram. These axes are similarly labeled as “x” and “y.” In this first diagram, four orange balloon-like shapes extend from a point at the origin out along the x- and y- axes in positive and negative directions covering just over half the length of the positive and negative x- and y- axes. Beneath the diagram is the label, “d subscript (x superscript 2 minus y superscript 2).” The second diagram just right of the first is similar except the x, y, and z labels have been replaced in each instance with the letter L. Only a pair of the orange balloon-like shapes are present and extend from the origin above and below along the vertical axis. An orange toroidal or donut shape is positioned around the origin, oriented through the x- and y- axes. This shape extends out to about a third of the length of the positive and negative regions of the x- and y- axes. This diagram is labeled, “d subscript (z superscript 2).” The third through fifth diagrams, similar to the first, show four orange balloon-like shapes. These diagrams differ however in the orientation of the shapes along the axes and the x-, y-, and z-axis labels have each been replaced with the letter L. Planes are added to the figures to help show the orientation differences with these diagrams. In the third diagram, a green plane is oriented vertically through the length of the x-axis and a blue plane is oriented horizontally through the length of the y-axis. The balloon shapes extend from the origin to the spaces between the positive z- and negative y- axes, positive z- and positive y- axes, negative z- and negative y- axes, and negative z- and positive y- axes. This diagram is labeled, “d subscript (y z).” In the fourth diagram, a green plane is oriented vertically through the x- and y- axes and a blue plane is oriented horizontally through the length of the x-axis. The balloon shapes extend from the origin to the spaces between the positive z- and negative x- axes, positive z- and positive x- axes, negative z- and negative x- axes, and negative z- and positive x- axes. This diagram is labeled “d subscript (x z).” In the fifth diagram, a pink plane is oriented vertically through the length of the y-axis and a green plane is oriented vertically through the length of the x-axis. The balloon shapes extend from the origin to the spaces between the positive x- and negative y- axes, positive x- and positive y- axes, negative x- and negative y- axes, and negative x- and positive y- axes. This diagram is labeled, “d subscript (x y).”

In an uncomplexed metal ion in the gas phase, the electrons are distributed among the five *d* orbitals in accord with Hund's rule because the orbitals all have the same energy. However, when ligands coordinate to a metal ion, the energies of the *d* orbitals are no longer the same.

In octahedral complexes, the lobes in two of the five *d* orbitals, the d_{z^2} and $d_{x^2-y^2}$ orbitals, point toward the ligands (Figure 7.3.1). These two orbitals are called the e_g orbitals (the symbol actually refers to the symmetry of the orbitals, but we will use it as a convenient name for these two orbitals in an octahedral complex). The other three orbitals, the d_{xy}, d_{xz}, and d_{yz} orbitals, have lobes that point between the ligands and are called the t_{2g} orbitals (again, the symbol really refers to the symmetry of the orbitals). As six ligands approach the metal ion along the axes of the octahedron, their point charges repel the electrons in the *d* orbitals of the metal ion. However, the repulsions between the electrons in the e_g orbitals (the d_{z^2} and $d_{x^2-y^2}$ orbitals) and the ligands are greater than the repulsions between the electrons in the t_{2g} orbitals (the d_{zy}, d_{xz}, and d_{yz} orbitals) and the ligands. This is because the lobes of the e_g orbitals point directly at the ligands, whereas the lobes of the t_{2g} orbitals point between them. Thus, electrons in the e_g orbitals of the metal ion in an octahedral complex have higher potential energies than those of electrons in the t_{2g} orbitals. The difference in energy may be represented as shown in Figure 7.3.2.

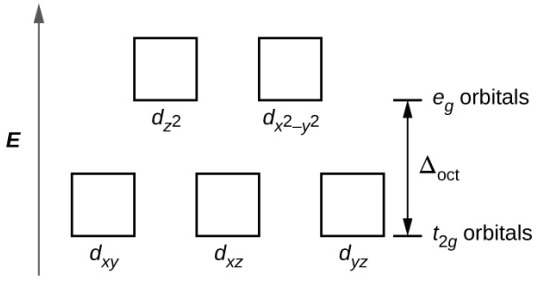


Figure 7.3.2: In octahedral complexes, the e_g orbitals are destabilized (higher in energy) compared to the t_{2g} orbitals because the ligands interact more strongly with the d orbitals at which they are pointed directly.

The difference in energy between the e_g and the t_{2g} orbitals is called the crystal field splitting and is symbolized by Δoct, where oct stands for octahedral.

The magnitude of Δ_{oct} depends on many factors, including the nature of the six ligands located around the central metal ion, the charge on the metal, and whether the metal is using 3*d*, 4*d*, or 5*d* orbitals. Different ligands produce different crystal field splittings. The increasing crystal field splitting produced by ligands is expressed in the spectrochemical series, a short version of which is given here:

$$I^- < Br^- < Cl^- < F^- < H_2O < C_2O_4^{2-} < NH_3 < en < NO_2^- < CN^-$$

a few ligands of the spectrochemical series, in order of increasing field strength of the ligand

In this series, ligands on the left cause small crystal field splittings and are weak-field ligands, whereas those on the right cause larger splittings and are strong-field ligands. Thus, the Δ_{oct} value for an octahedral complex with iodide ligands (I^-) is much smaller than the Δ_{oct} value for the same metal with cyanide ligands (CN^-).

Electrons in the *d* orbitals follow the aufbau ("filling up") principle, which says that the orbitals will be filled to give the lowest total energy, just as in main group chemistry. When two electrons occupy the same orbital, the like charges repel each other. The energy needed to pair up two electrons in a single orbital is called the pairing energy (P). Electrons will always singly occupy each orbital in a degenerate set before pairing. P is similar in magnitude to Δ_{oct}. When electrons fill the *d* orbitals, the relative magnitudes of Δ_{oct} and P determine which orbitals will be occupied.

In $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$, the strong field of six cyanide ligands produces a large Δ_{oct}. Under these conditions, the electrons require less energy to pair than they require to be excited to the e_g orbitals (Δ_{oct} > P). The six 3*d* electrons of the Fe^{2+} ion pair in the three t_{2g} orbitals (Figure 7.3.3). Complexes in which the electrons are paired because of the large crystal field splitting are called low-spin complexes because the number of unpaired electrons (spins) is minimized.

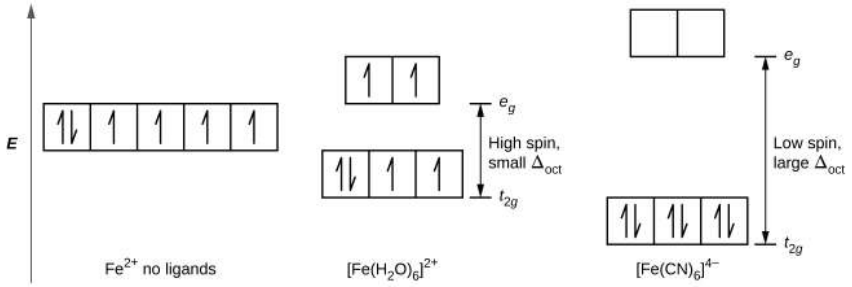


Figure 7.3.3: Iron(II) complexes have six electrons in the 5d orbitals. In the absence of a crystal field, the orbitals are degenerate. For coordination complexes with strong-field ligands such as $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$, Δ_{oct} is greater than P, and the electrons pair in the lower energy t_{2g} orbitals before occupying the eg orbitals. With weak-field ligands such as H_2O, the ligand field splitting is less than the pairing energy, Δ_{oct} less than P, so the electrons occupy all d orbitals singly before any pairing occurs.

In $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$, on the other hand, the weak field of the water molecules produces only a small crystal field splitting (Δ_{oct} < P). Because it requires less energy for the electrons to occupy the e_g orbitals than to pair together, there will be an electron in each of the five 3*d* orbitals before pairing occurs. For the six *d* electrons on the iron(II) center in $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$, there will be one pair of electrons and four unpaired electrons (Figure 7.3.3). Complexes such as the $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ ion, in which the electrons are unpaired because the crystal field splitting is not large enough to cause them to pair, are called high-spin complexes because the number of unpaired electrons (spins) is maximized.

A similar line of reasoning shows why the $[Fe(CN)_6]^{3-}$ ion is a low-spin complex with only one unpaired electron, whereas both the $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ and $[FeF_6]^{3-}$ ions are high-spin complexes with five unpaired electrons.

Example 7.3.1: High- and Low-Spin Complexes

Predict the number of unpaired electrons.

a. $K_3[CrI_6]$
b. $[Cu(en)_2(H_2O)_2]Cl_2$
c. $Na_3[Co(NO_2)_6]$

Solution

The complexes are octahedral.

a. Cr^{3+} has a d^3 configuration. These electrons will all be unpaired.
b. Cu^{2+} is d^9, so there will be one unpaired electron.
c. Co^{3+} has d^6 valence electrons, so the crystal field splitting will determine how many are paired. Nitrite is a strong-field ligand, so the complex will be low spin. Six electrons will go in the t_{2g} orbitals, leaving 0 unpaired.

Exercise 7.3.1

The size of the crystal field splitting only influences the arrangement of electrons when there is a choice between pairing electrons and filling the higher-energy orbitals. For which *d*-electron configurations will there be a difference between high- and low-spin configurations in octahedral complexes?

Answer

d^4, d^5, d^6, and d^7

Example 7.3.2: CFT for Other Geometries

CFT is applicable to molecules in geometries other than octahedral. In octahedral complexes, remember that the lobes of the e_g set point directly at the ligands. For tetrahedral complexes, the *d* orbitals remain in place, but now we have only four ligands located between the axes (Figure 7.3.4). None of the orbitals points directly at the tetrahedral ligands. However, the e_g set (along the Cartesian axes) overlaps with the ligands less than does the t_{2g} set. By analogy with the octahedral case, predict the energy diagram for the *d* orbitals in a tetrahedral crystal field. To avoid confusion, the octahedral e_g set becomes a tetrahedral *e* set, and the octahedral t_{2g} set becomes a t_2 set.

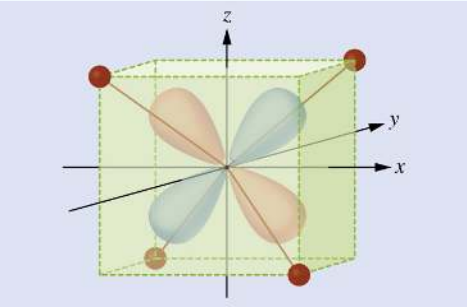
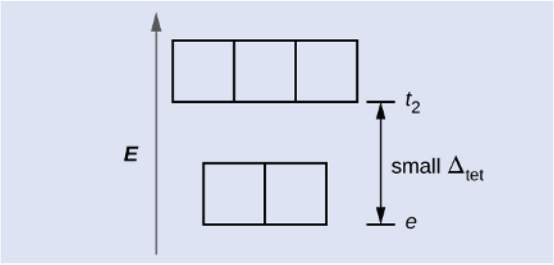


Figure 7.3.4: This diagram shows the orientation of the tetrahedral ligands with respect to the axis system for the orbitals.

Solution

Since CFT is based on electrostatic repulsion, the orbitals closer to the ligands will be destabilized and raised in energy relative to the other set of orbitals. The splitting is less than for octahedral complexes because the overlap is less, so Δ_{tet} is usually small $\left(\Delta_{tet} = \frac{4}{9}\Delta_{oct}\right)$:



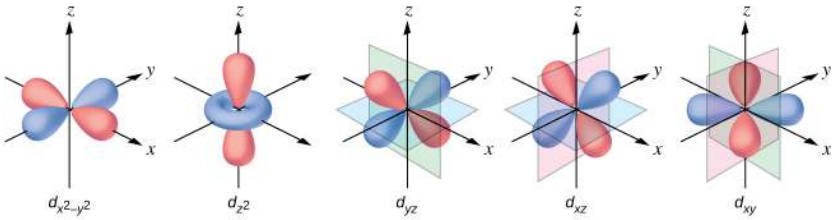
? Exercise 7.3.2

Explain how many unpaired electrons a tetrahedral d^4 ion will have.

Answer

4; because Δ_{tet} is small, all tetrahedral complexes are high spin and the electrons go into the t_2 orbitals before pairing

The other common geometry is square planar. It is possible to consider a square planar geometry as an octahedral structure with a pair of *trans* ligands removed. The removed ligands are assumed to be on the *z*-axis. This changes the distribution of the *d* orbitals, as orbitals on or near the *z*-axis become more stable, and those on or near the *x*- or *y*-axes become less stable. This results in the octahedral t_{2g} and the e_g sets splitting and gives a more complicated pattern with no simple Δ_{oct}. The basic pattern is:



Magnetic Moments of Molecules and Ions

Experimental evidence of magnetic measurements supports the theory of high- and low-spin complexes. Remember that molecules such as O_2 that contain unpaired electrons are paramagnetic. Paramagnetic substances are attracted to magnetic fields. Many transition metal complexes have unpaired electrons and hence are paramagnetic. Molecules such as N_2 and ions such as Na^+ and $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$ that contain no unpaired electrons are diamagnetic. Diamagnetic substances have a slight tendency to be repelled by magnetic fields.

When an electron in an atom or ion is unpaired, the magnetic moment due to its spin makes the entire atom or ion paramagnetic. The size of the magnetic moment of a system containing unpaired electrons is related directly to the number of such electrons: the greater the number of unpaired electrons, the larger the magnetic moment. Therefore, the observed magnetic moment is used to determine the number of unpaired electrons present. The measured magnetic moment of low-spin d^6 $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$ confirms that iron is diamagnetic, whereas high-spin d^6 $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ has four unpaired electrons with a magnetic moment that confirms this arrangement.

Colors of Transition Metal Complexes

When atoms or molecules absorb light at the proper frequency, their electrons are excited to higher-energy orbitals. For many main group atoms and molecules, the absorbed photons are in the ultraviolet range of the electromagnetic spectrum, which cannot be detected by the human eye. For coordination compounds, the energy difference between the *d* orbitals often allows photons in the visible range to be absorbed.

The human eye perceives a mixture of all the colors, in the proportions present in sunlight, as white light. Complementary colors, those located across from each other on a color wheel, are also used in color vision. The eye perceives a mixture of two complementary colors, in the proper proportions, as white light. Likewise, when a color is missing from white light, the eye sees its complement. For example, when red photons are absorbed from white light, the eyes see the color green. When violet photons are

removed from white light, the eyes see lemon yellow. The blue color of the $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$ ion results because this ion absorbs orange and red light, leaving the complementary colors of blue and green (Figure 7.3.5).

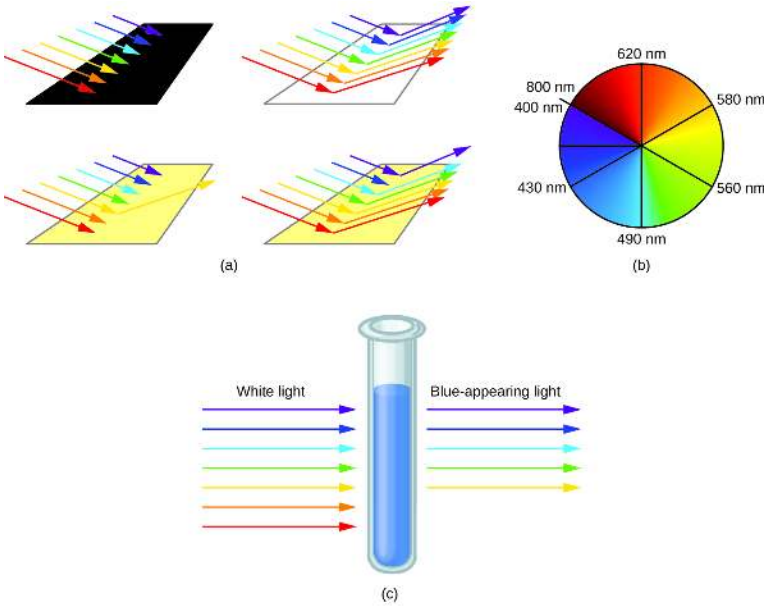


Figure 7.3.5: (a) An object is black if it absorbs all colors of light. If it reflects all colors of light, it is white. An object has a color if it absorbs all colors except one, such as this yellow strip. The strip also appears yellow if it absorbs the complementary color from white light (in this case, indigo). (b) Complementary colors are located directly across from one another on the color wheel. (c) A solution of $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$ ions absorbs red and orange light, so the transmitted light appears as the complementary color, blue.

Example 7.3.3: Colors of Complexes

The octahedral complex $[Ti(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ has a single *d* electron. To excite this electron from the ground state t_{2g} orbital to the e_g orbital, this complex absorbs light from 450 to 600 nm. The maximum absorbance corresponds to Δ_{oct} and occurs at 499 nm. Calculate the value of Δ_{oct} in Joules and predict what color the solution will appear.

Solution

Using Planck's equation (refer to the section on electromagnetic energy), we calculate:

$$v = \frac{c}{\lambda} \text{ so } \frac{3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}{\frac{499 \text{ nm} \times 1 \text{ m}}{10^9 \text{ nm}}} = 6.01 \times 10^{14} \text{ Hz}$$

$$E = hnu \text{ so } 6.63 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J·s} \times 6.01 \times 10^{14} \text{ Hz} = 3.99 \times 10^{-19} \text{ Joules/ion}$$

Because the complex absorbs 600 nm (orange) through 450 (blue), the indigo, violet, and red wavelengths will be transmitted, and the complex will appear purple.

Exercise 7.3.3

A complex that appears green, absorbs photons of what wavelengths?

Answer

red, 620–800 nm

Small changes in the relative energies of the orbitals that electrons are transitioning between can lead to drastic shifts in the color of light absorbed. Therefore, the colors of coordination compounds depend on many factors. As shown in Figure 7.3.6, different aqueous metal ions can have different colors. In addition, different oxidation states of one metal can produce different colors, as shown for the vanadium complexes in the link below.



Figure 7.3.6: The partially filled d orbitals of the stable ions $Cr^{3+}(aq)$, $Fe^{3+}(aq)$, and $Co^{2+}(aq)$ (left, center and right, respectively) give rise to various colors. (credit: Sahar Atwa)

The specific ligands coordinated to the metal center also influence the color of coordination complexes. For example, the iron(II) complex $[Fe(H_2O)_6]SO_4$ appears blue-green because the high-spin complex absorbs photons in the red wavelengths (Figure 7.3.7). In contrast, the low-spin iron(II) complex $K_4[Fe(CN)_6]$ appears pale yellow because it absorbs higher-energy violet photons.



Figure 7.3.7: Both (a) hexaaquairon(II) sulfate and (b) potassium hexacyanoferrate(II) contain d^6 iron(II) octahedral metal centers, but they absorb photons in different ranges of the visible spectrum.

In general, strong-field ligands cause a large split in the energies of *d* orbitals of the central metal atom (large Δ_{oct}). Transition metal coordination compounds with these ligands are yellow, orange, or red because they absorb higher-energy violet or blue light. On the other hand, coordination compounds of transition metals with weak-field ligands are often blue-green, blue, or indigo because they absorb lower-energy yellow, orange, or red light.



Video 7.3.8: Watch this video of the reduction of vanadium complexes to observe the colorful effect of changing oxidation states.

A coordination compound of the Cu^+ ion has a d^{10} configuration, and all the e_g orbitals are filled. To excite an electron to a higher level, such as the 4*p* orbital, photons of very high energy are necessary. This energy corresponds to very short wavelengths in the ultraviolet region of the spectrum. No visible light is absorbed, so the eye sees no change, and the compound appears white or colorless. A solution containing $[Cu(CN)_2]^-$, for example, is colorless. On the other hand, octahedral Cu^{2+} complexes have a vacancy in the e_g orbitals, and electrons can be excited to this level. The wavelength (energy) of the light absorbed corresponds to the visible part of the spectrum, and Cu^{2+} complexes are almost always colored—blue, blue-green violet, or yellow (Figure 7.3.8).

Although CFT successfully describes many properties of coordination complexes, molecular orbital explanations (beyond the introductory scope provided here) are required to understand fully the behavior of coordination complexes.

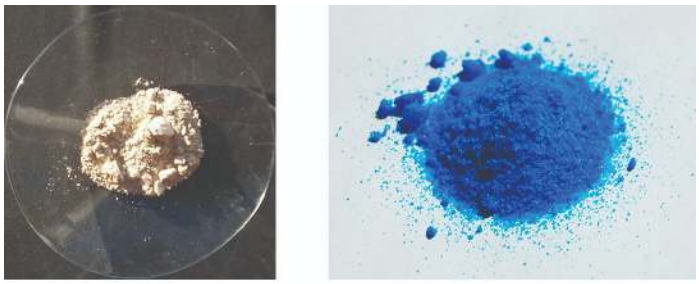


Figure 7.3.8: (a) Copper(I) complexes with d^{10} configurations such as CuI tend to be colorless, whereas (b) d^9 copper(II) complexes such as $Cu(NO_3)_2 \cdot 5H_2O$ are brightly colored.

Summary

Crystal field theory treats interactions between the electrons on the metal and the ligands as a simple electrostatic effect. The presence of the ligands near the metal ion changes the energies of the metal *d* orbitals relative to their energies in the free ion. Both the color and the magnetic properties of a complex can be attributed to this crystal field splitting. The magnitude of the splitting (Δ_{oct}) depends on the nature of the ligands bonded to the metal. Strong-field ligands produce large splitting and favor low-spin complexes, in which the t_{2g} orbitals are completely filled before any electrons occupy the e_g orbitals. Weak-field ligands favor formation of high-spin complexes. The t_{2g} and the e_g orbitals are singly occupied before any are doubly occupied.

Glossary

crystal field splitting (Δ_{oct})
: difference in energy between the t_{2g} and e_g sets or *t* and *e* sets of orbitals

crystal field theory
: model that explains the energies of the orbitals in transition metals in terms of electrostatic interactions with the ligands but does not include metal ligand bonding

e_g orbitals
: set of two *d* orbitals that are oriented on the Cartesian axes for coordination complexes; in octahedral complexes, they are higher in energy than the t_{2g} orbitals

geometric isomers
: isomers that differ in the way in which atoms are oriented in space relative to each other, leading to different physical and chemical properties

high-spin complex
: complex in which the electrons maximize the total electron spin by singly populating all of the orbitals before pairing two electrons into the lower-energy orbitals

low-spin complex
: complex in which the electrons minimize the total electron spin by pairing in the lower-energy orbitals before populating the higher-energy orbitals

pairing energy (P)
: energy required to place two electrons with opposite spins into a single orbital

spectrochemical series
: ranking of ligands according to the magnitude of the crystal field splitting they induce

strong-field ligand

ligand that causes larger crystal field splittings

t_{2g} orbitals

set of three *d* orbitals aligned between the Cartesian axes for coordination complexes; in octahedral complexes, they are lowered in energy compared to the e_g orbitals according to CFT

weak-field ligand

ligand that causes small crystal field splittings

This page titled 7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **19.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

7.4: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry (Exercises)

19.1: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds

Q19.1.1

Write the electron configurations for each of the following elements:

a. Sc
b. Ti
c. Cr
d. Fe
e. Ru

S19.1.1

The electron configuration of an atom is the representation of the arrangement of electrons distributed among the orbital shells and sub-shells. The electron configuration of each element is unique to its position on the periodic table where the energy level is determined by the period and the number of electrons is given by the atomic number of the element. There are four different types of orbitals (s, p, d, and f) which have different shapes and each orbital can hold a maximum of 2 electrons, but the p, d and f orbitals have different sub-levels, meaning that they are able to hold more electrons.

The periodic table is broken up into groups which we can use to determine orbitals and thus, write electron configurations:

Group 1 & 2: S orbital

Group 13 - 18: P orbital

Group 3 - 12: D orbital

Lanthanide & Actinides: F orbital

Each orbital (s, p, d, f) has a maximum number of electrons it can hold. An easy way to remember the electron maximum of each is to look at the periodic table and count the number of periods in each collection of groups.

Group 1 & 2: 2 (2 electrons total = 1 orbital x max of 2 electrons = 2 electrons)

Group 13 - 18: 6 (6 electrons total = 3 orbitals x 2 electrons max = 6 electrons)

Group 3 - 12: 10 (10 electrons total = 5 orbitals x 2 electrons max = 10 electrons)

Lanthanide & Actinides: 14 (14 electrons total = 7 orbitals x 2 electrons max = 14 electrons)

Electron fills the orbitals in a specific pattern that affects the order in which the long-hand versions are written:

Electron filling pattern: 1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, 3p, 4s, 3d, 4p, 5s, 4d, 5p, 6s, 4f, 5d, 6p, 7s, 5f

An easier and faster way to write electron configurations is to use noble gas configurations as short-cuts. We are able to do this because the electron configurations of the noble gases always have all filled orbitals.

$$\text{He: } 1s^2 2s^2$$

$$\text{Ne: } 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$$

$$\text{Ar: } 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6$$

$$\text{Kr: } 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6$$

$$\text{Xe: } 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6$$

$$\text{Rn: } 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6 6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10} 6p^6$$

The most common noble gas configuration used is Ar. When you want to use the noble gas configuration short-cut, you place the noble gas's symbol inside of brackets:

$$[Ar]$$

and then write it preceding the rest of the configuration, which is solely the orbitals the proceed after that of the noble gas.

a. Sc

Let's start off by identifying where Scandium sits on the periodic table: row 4, group 3. This identification is the critical basis we need to write its electron configuration.

By looking at Scandium's atomic number, 21, it gives us both the number of protons and the number of electrons. At the end of writing its electron configuration, the electrons should add up to 21.

At row 4, group 3 Sc, is a transition metal; meaning that its electron configuration will include the D orbital.

Now, we can begin to assign the 21 electrons of Sc to orbitals. As you assign electrons to their orbitals, you move right across the periodic table.

Its first 2 electrons are in the 1s orbital which is denoted as

$$1s^2$$

where the "1" preceding the s denotes the fact that it is of row one, and it has an exponent of 2 because it fulfills the s orbital's maximum electron number. Now we have 21-2=19 more electrons to assign.

Its next 2 electrons are in the 2s orbital which is denoted as

$$2s^2$$

where the "2" preceding the s indicates that it is of row two, and it has an exponent of 2 because it fulfills the s orbital's maximum electron number. Now we have 19-2=17 more electrons to assign.

Its next 6 electrons are in the 2p orbital which is denoted as

$$2p^6$$

where the "2" preceding the p indicates that it is of row two, and it has an exponent of 6 because it fulfills the p orbital's maximum electron number. Now we have 17-6=11 more electrons to assign.

Its next 2 electrons are in the 3s orbital which is denoted as

$$3s^2$$

where the "3" preceding the s indicates that it is of row three, and it has an exponent of 2 because it fulfills the s orbital's maximum electron number. Now we have 11-2=9 more electrons to assign.

Its next 6 electrons are in the 3p orbital which is denoted as

$$3p^6$$

where the "3" preceding the p indicates that it is of row three, and it has an exponent of 6 because it fulfills the p orbital's maximum electron number. Now we have 9-6=3 more electrons to assign.

Its next 2 electrons are in the 4s orbital which is denoted as

$$4s^2$$

where the "4" preceding the s indicates that it is of row four, and it has an exponent of 2 because it fulfills the s orbital's maximum electron number. Now we have 3-2=1 more electron to assign.

Its last electron would be alone in the 3 d orbital which is denoted as

$$3d^1$$

where the "3" preceding the d indicates that, even though it is technically of row 4, by disregarding the first row of H and He, this is the third row and it has an exponent of 1 because there is only 1 electron to be placed in the d orbital. Now we have assigned all of the electrons to the appropriate orbitals and sub-orbitals, so that the final, entire electron configuration is written as:

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^1$$

This is the long-hand version of its electron configuration.

So for Sc, its short-hand version of its electron configuration would therefore be:

$$[Ar]\ 4s^2 3d^1$$

b. Ti

Start off by identifying where Titanium sits on the periodic table: row 4, group 4, meaning it has 22 electrons total. Titanium is one element to the right of the previous problem's Sc, so we will basically use the same method except, in the end, there will be 2

electrons remaining, so therefore the final orbital will be denoted as:

$$3d^2$$

If needed, look above to the exact steps for how to do it in detail again; the long-hand electron configuration for Titanium will be:

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^2$$

So for Ti, its short-hand version of its electron configuration would therefore be:

$$[Ar]\ 4s^2 3d^2$$

c. Cr

Start off by identifying where Chromium sits on the periodic table: row 4, group 6, that means it has a total of 24 electrons. But first, Cr, along with Mo, Nb, Ru, Rh, Pd, Cu, Sg, Pt and Au, is a special case. You would think that since it has 24 electrons that its configuration would look like:

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^4$$

which is how we learned it earlier. However, this electron configuration is very unstable because of the fact that there are 4 electrons in its 3 d orbital. The most stable configurations are half-filled (d^5) and full orbitals (d^{10}), so the elements with electrons resulting in ending with the d^4 or d^9 are so unstable that we write its stable form instead, where an electron from the preceding s orbital will be moved to fill the d orbital, resulting in a stable orbital.

If needed, look above to the exact steps for how to do the beginning of the configuration in detail again. However we have to apple the new rule to attain stability so that the long-hand electron configuration for Chromium will be:

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 \mathbf{4s^1 3d^5}$$

So for Cr, its short-hand version of its electron configuration would therefore be:

$$[Ar]\ 4s^1 3d^5$$

d. Fe

Start off by identifying where Iron sits on the periodic table: row 4, group 8, meaning it has 26 electrons total. This is 5 elements to the right of the previous problem's Sc, so we will basically use the same method except, in the end, there will be 6 electrons remaining, so therefore the final orbital will be denoted as:

$$3d^6$$

If needed, look above to the exact steps for how to do it in detail again; the long-hand electron configuration for Iron will be:

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^6$$

So for Fe, its short-hand version of its electron configuration would therefore be:

$$[Ar]\ 4s^2 3d^6$$

e. Ru

Start off by identifying where Ruthenium sits on the periodic table: row 5, group 8, that means it has a total of 44 electrons. But first, as stated earlier, Ru, along with Cr, Mo, Nb, Rh, Pd, Cu, Sg, Pt and Au, is a special case. You would think that since it has 44 electrons that its configuration would look like:

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 \mathbf{5s^2\ 4d^6}$$

which is how we learned it earlier. However, this electron configuration is very unstable because of the fact that, even though there are 4 paired electrons, there are also 4 electrons unpaired. This results in a very unstable configuration, so to restore stability, we have to use a configuration that has the most paired electrons, which would be to take an electron from the s orbital and place it in the d orbital to create:

$$5s^1 4d^7$$

If needed, look above to the exact steps for how to do the beginning of the configuration in detail again. However we have to apple the new rule to attain stability so that the long-hand electron configuration for Ru will be:

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 \mathbf{5s^1 4d^7}$$

So for Cr, its short-hand version of its electron configuration would therefore be:

$$[Kr]\ 5s^1 4d^7$$

A19.1.1

a. Sc: [Ar]$4s^2 3d^1$
b. Ti: [Ar]$4s^2 3d^2$
c. Cr: [Ar]$4s^1 3d^5$
d. Fe: [Ar]$4s^2 3d^6$
e. Ru: [Kr]$5s^1 4d^7$ (anomalous configuration)

Q19.1.2

Write the electron configurations for each of the following elements and its ions:

a. Ti
b. Ti^{2+}
c. Ti^{3+}
d. Ti^{4+}

S19.1.2

Electrons are distributed into molecular orbitals, the $s, p, d, and f$ blocks. An orbital will have a number in front of it and a letter that corresponds to the block. The s block holds two electrons, the p block holds six, the d block holds ten, and the f block holds fourteen. So, based on the number of electrons an atom has, the molecular orbitals are filled up in a certain way. The order of the orbitals is $1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, 3p, 4s, 3d, 4p, 5s, 4d, 5p, 6s, 4f, 5d, 6p, 7s, 5f, 6d, 7p$An exponent will be put after the letter for each orbital to signify how many electrons are in that orbital. Noble gas notation can also be used by putting the noble gas prior to the element you are writing the configuration for, and then proceed by writing the orbitals filled after the noble gas. Metal ions of the d-block will have the two electrons removed from the s block prior to any electrons being removed from the proceeding d-block.

Solutions:

1. Ti

Titanium has an atomic number of 22, meaning it has 22 electrons. The noble gas prior to Titanium is Argon. Looking at row 4 of the periodic table, Titanium still has 4 electrons to be placed in orbitals since Argon has 18 electrons that are already placed. The remaining electrons will fill the $4s$ orbital and the remaining two electrons will go into the $3d$ orbital. [Ar]$4s^2 3d^2$

2. Ti^{+2}

This is an ion with a plus 2 charge, meaning 2 electrons have been removed. The electrons will be removed from the $4s$ orbital and the 2 remaining electrons will be placed in the $3d$ orbital. Like number 1, the prior noble gas is Argon. [Ar]$3d^2$

3. Ti^{+3}

This is an ion with a plus 3 charge, meaning 3 electrons have been removed. The first 2 electrons will be removed from the $4s$ orbital, and the third will be taken from the $3d$ orbital, and the 1 remaining electron will be placed in the 3d orbital. Like number 1, the prior noble gas is Argon. [Ar]$3d^1$

4. Ti^{+4}

This is an ion with a plus 4 charge, meaning 4 electrons have been removed. The first 2 electrons will be removed from the $4s$ orbital and the second 2 will be removed from the $3d$ orbital. This results in the ion having the same electron configuration as Argon. [Ar]

Answers:

1. $[Ar]4s^2 3d^2$
2. $[Ar]3d^2$
3. $[Ar]3d^1$
4. $[Ar]$

A19.1.2

a. $[Ar]4s^2 3d^2$
b. $[Ar]3d^2$
c. $[Ar]3d^1$
d. $[Ar]$

Q19.1.3

Write the electron configurations for each of the following elements and its 3+ ions:

a. La
b. Sm
c. Lu

S19.1.3

In order to write the electron configuration, we begin by finding the element on the periodic table. Since La, Sm, and Lu are all a period below the noble gas Xenon, we can abbreviate $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 3d^{10} 4s^2 4p^6 4d^{10} 5s^2 5p^6$as [Xe] when writing the orbital configurations. We then find the remaining of the orbital configurations using the Aufbau Principle. For other elements not just those in period 6, the shorthand notation using noble gases would be the noble gas in the period above the given element.

1. La has three additional electrons. Two of them fill the 6s shell and the other single electron is placed on the 5d shell.

La : [Xe] $6s^2 5d^1$

2. Sm has eight more electrons. The 6s orbital is filled as previously and the 4f orbital receives 6 electrons because pairing electrons requires lower energy on the 4f shell than on the 5d shell.

Sm : [Xe] $6s^2 4f^6$

3. Lu has seventeen more electrons. Two electrons fill the 6s orbital, 14 electrons fill the 4f orbital, and extra single electron goes to the 5d orbital .

Lu : [Xe] $6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^1$

To find the 3+ ion electron configuration, we remove 3 electrons from the neutral configuration, starting with the 6s orbital.

1. The ionization of La^{3+} removes the three extra electrons. So it reverts back to the stable Xenon configuration.

La^{3+} : [Xe]

2. The ionization of Sm^{3+} removes two electrons from the 6s shell and one from the outermost (4f) shell

Sm^{3+} : [Xe] $4f^5$

3. The ionization of Lu^{3+} removes its two 6s shell and one from the outermost (5d) shell, leaving only a full 4f shell

Lu^{3+} : [Xe] $4f^{14}$

A19.1.3

La: [Xe]6s $^2 5d^1$, La^{3+}: [Xe]; Sm: [Xe]6s $^2 4f^6$, Sm^{3+}: [Xe]$4f^5$; Lu: [Xe]6s $^2 4f^{14} 5d^1$, Lu^{3+}: [Xe]$4f^{14}$

Q19.1.4

Why are the lanthanoid elements not found in nature in their elemental forms?

A19.1.4

Lanthanides are rarely found in their elemental forms because they readily give their electrons to other more electronegative elements, forming compounds instead of staying in a pure elemental form. They have very similar chemical properties with one another, are often found deep within the earth, and difficult to extract. They are the inner transition elements and have partially filled d orbitals that can donate electrons. Because of this, they are very reactive and electropositive.

Q19.1.5

Which of the following elements is most likely to be used to prepare La by the reduction of La_2O_3: Al, C, or Fe? Why?

S19.1.5

An **activity series** is a list of elements in decreasing order of their reactivity. Elements on the top of the list are good **reducing agents** because they easily give up an electron, and elements on the bottom of the series are good **oxidizing agents** because they are highly electronegative would really want to accept an electron.

Step 1: Compare Aluminum, Carbon, and Iron on an activity series. Many activity series include carbon and hydrogen as references. An activity series can be found here

The activity series goes in the order (from top to bottom): Aluminum, Carbon, and Iron.

Step 2: Identify which element is the best reducing agent.

Elements on the top of the list are the best reducing agents, because they give up electrons the best.

Aluminum is the best reducing agent of the options available.

Therefore aluminum will be the best reducing agent to prepare La by the reduction of La_2O_3 because it is the most reactive in the series amongst the three elements.

A19.1.5

Al is used because it is the strongest reducing agent and the only option listed that can provide sufficient driving force to convert La(III) into La.

Q19.1.6

Which of the following is the strongest oxidizing agent: VO_4^{3-}, CrO_4^{2-}, or MnO_4^-?

S19.1.6

Oxidizing agents oxidize other substances. In other words, they gain electrons or become reduced. These agents should be in their highest oxidation state. In order to determine, the strength of the compounds above as oxidizing agents, determine the oxidation numbers of each constituent elements.

VO_4^{3-}

We know that O has a -2 oxidation state and the overall charge of the ion is -3. We just need to determine Vanadate's oxidation number in this compound.

$V + -2(4) = -3$

$V = +5$

Vanadate has an oxidation number of +5, which is its highest possible oxidation state.

CrO_4^{2-}

Like in the previous calculation, O has a -2 oxidation state. The overall charge is -2. So calculate for chromium.

$Cr + -2(4) = -2$

$Cr = +6$

Chromium is in its highest possible oxidation state of +6 in this compound.

MnO_4^-

O has a -2 oxidation state and the overall charge is -1.

$Mn + -2(4) = -1$

$Mn = +7$

Manganese is also in its highest oxidation state, +7.

An oxidizing agent has to be able to gain electrons which, in turn, reduces its oxidation state. Here manganese has the greatest oxidation state which allows it to experience a greater decrease in its oxidation state if needed, meaning it can gain the most electrons. So among the three compounds, MnO_4^- is the strongest oxidizing agent. This method assumes the metals have similar electronegativities.

Alternatively, check a redox table.

A19.1.6

MnO_4^-

Q19.1.7

Which of the following elements is most likely to form an oxide with the formula MO_3: Zr, Nb, or Mo?

S19.1.7

Mo because Zr has an oxidation state of +4 and Nb has a oxidation state of +5 and those would not balance out the charge of 3 oxygens in the state of -2 which creates a charge of -6. Mo however has multiple oxidation states, the most common being +6 which balances out the -6 charge created by 3 oxygen ions. This is why its most likely to form an oxide with the formula MO_3 or MoO_3.

A19.1.7

Mo

Q19.1.8

The following reactions all occur in a blast furnace. Which of these are redox reactions?

a. $3\,Fe_2O_3(s) + CO(g) \longrightarrow 2\,Fe_3O_4(s) + CO_2(g)$
b. $Fe_3O_4(s) + CO(g) \longrightarrow 3\,FeO(s) + CO_2(g)$
c. $FeO(s) + CO(g) \longrightarrow Fe(l) + CO_2(g)$
d. $C(s) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow CO_2(g)$
e. $C(s) + CO_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,CO(g)$
f. $CaCO_3(s) \longrightarrow CaO(s) + CO_2(g)$
g. $CaO(s) + SiO_2(s) \longrightarrow CaSiO_3(l)$

S19.1.8

o identify redox reaction, we have to determine if have to see if the equation is an oxidation-reduction reaction-meaning that the species are changing oxidation states during the reaction, which involves the transfer of electrons between two species. If a species is losing electrons, then that species is being oxidized. If a species is gaining electrons, then that species is being reduced. A way to remember this is using the acronyms OIL RIG. **O**xidation **I**s **L**oss, and **R**eduction **I**s **G**ain, referring to electrons. Both of these must occur for an equation to be a redox reaction. Let's see if these equations are redox reactions or not:

a. In the reactants side Fe_2O_3, Fe is has an oxidation number of +3. In the product Fe_3O_4, Fe has an oxidation number of +2.67. Since Fe changed from +3 to +2.67, we can say that Fe had gained electrons and therefore reduced. In the reactant, CO, carbon has an oxidation number of +2, and in CO_2 (product) carbon has an oxidation number of +4. Therefore, carbon has lost electrons and it has been oxidized. Since there is oxidation and reduction of species- we can conclude that this **is a redox reaction**.

b. In the reactant, Fe_3O_4, Fe has an oxidation number of +2.67. In the product, FeO, Fe has an oxidation number of +2. Since the oxidation of Fe has changed from +2.67 to +2, electrons have been added therefore Fe has been reduced. In the reactant, CO, carbon has an oxidation number of +2, and in CO_2 (product) carbon has an oxidation number of +4. Therefore, carbon has lost electrons and it has been oxidized. Since there is oxidation and reduction of species- we can conclude that this **is a redox reaction**.

c. In the reactant side, in FeO, Fe has an oxidation number of +2 and in the products side Fe has an oxidation number of 0. Since the oxidation number of Fe changed from +2 to 0, electrons have been gained and therefore Fe has been reduced. In the reactant, CO, carbon has an oxidation number of +2, and in CO_2 (product) carbon has an oxidation number of +4. Therefore, carbon has lost electrons and it has been oxidized. Since there is oxidation and reduction of species- we can conclude that this **is a redox reaction**.

d. In the reactants C has an oxidation number of 0, and in the products side in CO_2, C has an oxidation number of +4. Since the oxidation number of C has changed from 0 to +4, we can say that C has been oxidized. In the reactants, in O_2 oxygen has an oxidation number of 0, and in the products CO2, oxygen has an oxidation number of -2. Since the oxidation number of oxygen has changed from 0 to -2, oxygen has been reduced. Since there is oxidation and reduction of species- we can conclude that this **is a redox reaction**.

e. In the reactants CO_2 has an oxidation number of +4, and in the products side in CO, C has an oxidation number of +2. Since carbon went from +4 to +2, carbon has been reduced. In the reactants, in CO_2 oxygen has an oxidation number of -4 and in the products CO carbon has an oxidation number of -2. Since oxygen went from -4 to -2, it has been oxidized. Since there is oxidation and reduction of species- we can conclude that this **is a redox reaction**.

f. In the reactants, $CaCO_3$ Ca has an oxidation number of +2, and in products CaO Ca has an oxidation number of +2. Since the oxidization number doesn't change- we can conclude that this equation **is not a redox reaction.**

g. In the products CaO Ca has an oxidation number of +2, and in the products $CaSiO_3$ Ca has an oxidation number of +2. Since the oxidization number doesn't change- we can conclude that this equation **is not a redox reaction.**

A19.1.8

a, b, c, d, e

Q19.1.9

Why is the formation of slag useful during the smelting of iron?

S19.1.9

Slag is a substance formed as a byproduct of iron ore or iron pellets melting together in a blast furnace. Slag is also the byproduct that is formed when a desired metal has been separated from its raw ore. It is important to note that slag from steel mills is created in a manner that reduces the loss of the desired iron ore. The $CaSiO_3$ slag is less dense than the molten iron, so it can easily be separated. Also, the floating slag layer creates a barrier that prevents the molten iron from exposure to O_2, which would oxidize the Fe back to Fe_2O_3. Since Fe has a

low reduction potential of -0.440 this means it has a high oxidation potential so it would easily oxidize in the presence of O2. Creating a barrier between iron and oxygen allows the maximum product of iron to be obtained in the end of smelting.

A19.1.9

The $CaSiO_3$ slag is less dense than the molten iron, so it can easily be separated. Also, the floating slag layer creates a barrier that prevents the molten iron from exposure to O_2, which would oxidize the Fe back to Fe_2O_3.

Q19.1.10

Would you expect an aqueous manganese(VII) oxide solution to have a pH greater or less than 7.0? Justify your answer.

S19.1.10

Manganese(VII) oxide, can be written as Mn_2O_7.

In relation to the Lewis acid-base theory, a Lewis acid accepts lone pair electrons, and is also known as the electron pair acceptor. Based on this theory, acidity can be measured by the element's ability to accept electron pairs. By doing the math, we find that Manganese has an oxidation state of +7 (Oxygen has an oxidation state of -2, and 2x-7=-14 **or this can be shown as $-7(2)+2(x)=0$ and $x=7$ since the whole compound has a charge of zero**, in order to balance the ion's charge, Mn must be +7). Therefore Mn has high capability of accepting electrons due to its high positive charge. For most metals, as the oxidation number increases, so does its acidity, because of its increased ability to accept electrons.

A19.1.10

In relation to the Lewis acid-base theory, the Lewis acid accepts lone pair electrons; thus, it is also known as the electron pair acceptor. This may be any chemical species. Acids are substances that must be lower than 7. Therefore, oxides of manganese is most likely going to become more acidic in (aq) solutions if the oxidation number increases.

Q19.1.11

Iron(II) can be oxidized to iron(III) by dichromate ion, which is reduced to chromium(III) in acid solution. A 2.5000-g sample of iron ore is dissolved and the iron converted into iron(II). Exactly 19.17 mL of 0.0100 *M* $Na_2Cr_2O_7$ is required in the titration. What percentage of the ore sample was iron?

S19.1.11

To answer this question, we must first identify the net ionic equation from the given half-reactions. We can write the oxidation and reduction half-reactions:

$$\text{oxidation: } \mathrm{Fe}^{2+} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe}^{3+} \tag{7.4.1}$$

$$\text{reduction: } \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}} \rightarrow \mathrm{Cr}^{3+} \tag{7.4.2}$$

We can quickly balance the oxidation half-reaction by adding the appropriate number of electrons to get

$$\mathrm{Fe}^{2+} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe}^{3+} + \mathrm{e}^- \tag{7.4.3}$$

The first step in balancing the reduction half-reaction is to balance elements in the equation other than O and H. In doing so, we get

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}} \rightarrow 2\ \mathrm{Cr}^{3+} \tag{7.4.4}$$

The second step would be to add enough water molecules to balance the oxygen.

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}} \rightarrow 2\ \mathrm{Cr}^{3+} + 7\ \mathrm{H_2O} \tag{7.4.5}$$

Next, we add the correct amount of H^+ to balance the hydrogen atoms.

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}} + 14\ \mathrm{H}^+ \rightarrow 2\ \mathrm{Cr}^{3+} + 7\ \mathrm{H_2O} \tag{7.4.6}$$

Finally, we add enough electrons to balance charge.

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}} + 14\ \mathrm{H}^+ + 6\ \mathrm{e}^- \rightarrow 2\ \mathrm{Cr}^{3+} + 7\ \mathrm{H_2O} \tag{7.4.7}$$

The electrons involved in both half-reactions must be equal in order for us to combine the two to get the net ionic equation. This can be done by multiplying each equation by the appropriate coefficient. Scaling the oxidation half-reaction by 6, we get

$$6\ \mathrm{Fe}^{2+} \rightarrow 6\ \mathrm{Fe}^{3+} + 6\ \mathrm{e}^- \tag{7.4.8}$$

Now we can combine both half-reactions to get

$$6\ Fe^{2+} + Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 14\ H^+ + 6\ e^- \rightarrow 6\ Fe^{3+} + 6\ e^- + 2\ Cr^{3+} + 7\ H_2O \tag{7.4.9}$$

The electrons cancel out, so you get:

$$6\ Fe^{2+} + Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 14\ H^+ \rightarrow 6\ Fe^{3+} + 2\ Cr^{3+} + 7\ H_2O \tag{7.4.10}$$

From this we can see that the mole ratio of $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ to Fe^{2+} is 1:6. Given that 19.17 mL (or 0.01917 L) of 0.01 M $Na_2Cr_2O_7$ was needed for titration we know that

$$0.01917\ L \times 0.01\ M = 1.917 \times 10^{-4}\ mol \tag{7.4.11}$$

of $Na_2Cr_2O_7$ reacted. Also, since any number of moles of $Na_2Cr_2O_7$ produces the same number of moles of $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ in solution

$$1.917 \times 10^{-4}\ mol\ of\ Na_2Cr_2O_7 = 1.917 \times 10^{-4}\ mol\ of\ Cr_2O_7^{2-} \tag{7.4.12}$$

We can use the mole ratio of $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ to Fe^{2+} to determine how many moles of iron (ii) was in the solution. The number of moles of iron (ii) is the same as the number of moles of pure iron in the sample since all of the iron was converted into iron (ii).

$$1.917 \times 10^{-4}\ mol\ of\ Cr_2O_7^{2-} \times \frac{6\ mol\ of\ Fe^{2+}}{1\ mol\ of\ Cr_2O_7^{2-}} = 0.0011502\ mol\ of\ Fe^{2+} \tag{7.4.13}$$

$$0.0011502\ mol\ of\ Fe^{2+} = 0.0011502\ mol\ of\ Fe \tag{7.4.14}$$

Now we can find the number of grams of iron that were present in the 2.5 g iron ore sample.

$$0.0011502\ mol\ of\ Fe \times \frac{55.847\ g}{1\ mol} = 0.0642352194\ g\ of\ Fe \tag{7.4.15}$$

Finally, we can answer the question and find what percentage of the ore sample was iron.

$$\frac{0.0642352194\ g}{2.5\ g} \times 100 \approx 2.57\% \tag{7.4.16}$$

So 2.57% of the ore sample was iron.

A19.1.11

2.57%

Q19.1.12

How many cubic feet of air at a pressure of 760 torr and 0 °C is required per ton of Fe_2O_3 to convert that Fe_2O_3 into iron in a blast furnace? For this exercise, assume air is 19% oxygen by volume.

S19.1.12

This question uses a series of unit conversions and the $PV = nRT$ equation.

The first step is to write out the balanced chemical equation for the conversion of Fe_2O_3 to pure iron.

$$2\ Fe_2O_3(s) \rightarrow 4\ Fe(s) + 3\ O_2(g) \tag{7.4.17}$$

Next, we need to analyze the original question to determine the value that we need to solve for. Because the question asks for a value of cubic feet, we know we need to solve for volume. We can manipulate $PV = nRT$ to solve for volume.

$$V = nRT/P \tag{7.4.18}$$

Now determine the known variables and convert into units that will be easy to deal with.

$$n = 2000\ lbs\ Fe_2O_3 \frac{453.592\ grams\ Fe_2O_3}{1\ lb\ Fe_2O_3} \frac{1\ mole\ Fe_2O_3}{159.69\ grams\ Fe_2O_3} \frac{3\ moles\ O_2}{2\ moles\ Fe_2O_3} \tag{7.4.19}$$

$$n = 8521\ moles\ of\ O_2 \tag{7.4.20}$$

Convert to atm for easier calculations

$$R = \frac{.0821\ L\ atm}{mol\ K} \tag{7.4.21}$$

$$T = 0^\circ C = 273\ K \tag{7.4.22}$$

$$P = 760\ torr = 1\ atm \tag{7.4.23}$$

Now plug the numbers into the manipulated gas law to get to an answer for V.

$$V = 190991.8\ liters\ of\ O_2 \tag{7.4.24}$$

From here we convert liters to cubic feet.

use the conversion

$$1\ L = .0353 ft^3 \tag{7.4.25}$$

thus we have 6744.811 ft^3 of O_2

We then refer back to the initial question and remember that this value is only 19% of the volume of the total air. So use a simple equation to determine the total volume of air in cubic feet.

$$6744.811 ft^3 = .19x \tag{7.4.26}$$

x=35499 ft^3 of air

A19.1.12

35499 ft^3 of air

Q19.1.13

Find the potentials of the following electrochemical cell:

Cd | Cd^{2+} (M = 0.10) ‖ Ni^{2+} (M = 0.50) | Ni

S19.1.13

Step 1 Write out your two half reactions and identify which is oxidation and which is reduction using the acronym OIL RIG to remember that oxidation is loss of electrons and reduction is gain of electrons

$Cd(s) \longrightarrow Cd^{2+}(aq) + 2e^-$ (oxidation)

$Ni^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \longrightarrow Ni(s)$ (reduction)

Step 2 Write out complete balanced equation

$Cd(s) + Ni^{2+}(aq) \longrightarrow Cd^{2+}(aq) + Ni(s)$

Step 3 Find E^o_{cell}

$E^o_{cell} = E_{cathode} - E_{anode}$

oxidation: $Cd(s) \longrightarrow Cd^{2+}(aq) + 2e^-$ E^o=-0.40V

reduction: $Ni^{2+}(aq) + 2e^- \longrightarrow Ni(s)$ E^o=-0.26V

* E values come from standard reduction potentials table given above. Also, remember anode is where oxidation happens, and cathode is where reduction happens.

E^ocell=-0.26-(-.40)

E^o_{cell}=0.14V

Step 4 Find Q

Q=[products]/[reactants] (look at complete balanced equation) (remember that [x] means the concentration of x typically given in molarity and that we ignore solids or liquids)

Q=$[Cd^{2+}]/[Ni^{2+}]$

Q=0.10/0.50

Q=0.2

Step 5 Calculate E using $E= E^{o}_{cell}-(.0592/n)\log Q$ (n is number of moles of electrons transferred and in our case the balanced reaction transfers 2 electrons)

$E= 0.14-(.0592/2)\log(0.2)$

E= 0.14-(-.207)

E=0.16 V

A19.1.13

0.16 V

Q19.1.14

A 2.5624-g sample of a pure solid alkali metal chloride is dissolved in water and treated with excess silver nitrate. The resulting precipitate, filtered and dried, weighs 3.03707 g. What was the percent by mass of chloride ion in the original compound? What is the identity of the salt?

S19.1.14

A 2.5624-g sample of a pure solid alkali metal chloride is dissolved in water and treated with excess silver nitrate. The resulting precipitate, filtered and dried, weighs 3.03707 g. What was the percent by mass of chloride ion in the original compound? What is the identity of the salt?

Assuming that metal chloride is XCl

The balance equation for the reaction would be:

$$XCl(aq) + AgNO_3(aq) \rightarrow XNO_3(aq) + AgCl(s) \tag{7.4.27}$$

The mass of AgCl = 3.03707g

To find the moles of AgCl present:

Next, we can determine the moles of AgCl present in the reaction since 1) the mass of the precipitate is given to us and 2) this value can help us determine the moles of alkali metal chloride compound present. Given the mass of AgCl is 3.03707g in the problem and the molecular mass of AgCl per mole is 143.32g, we can solve for how many moles of AgCl is in the reaction:

$$molesof Agcl = \frac{3.03707g}{143.32g/mol} = 0.0211mol \tag{7.4.28}$$

Since the molar ratio of the compounds are 1:1 so the number of moles of XCl used = 0.0211 mol

We can calculate the weight of Cl^- with the equation:

$$0.0211mol \times 35.5g/mol = 0.7490g \tag{7.4.29}$$

the amount of metal present in the original compound is the weight of the compound subtracted by weight of the Cl ion:

$$(2.5624 - 0.7490)g = 1.8134g \tag{7.4.30}$$

And the percentage can be calculate by

$$\frac{0.7490}{2.5624} \times 100 = 29.23\% \tag{7.4.31}$$

the molar ratio of XCl is 1:1 so then

Atomic mass of metal = $= \frac{1.8134\ g\ metal}{0.0211\ mol\ RbCl} = 85.943g/mol$

So the atomic mass is 85.943 g/mol which is of Rb hence the identity of the salt is RbCl

Q19.1.15

The standard reduction potential for the reaction $[\mathrm{Co(H_2O)_6}]^{3+}(aq) + \mathrm{e}^- \longrightarrow [\mathrm{Co(H_2O)_6}]^{2+}(aq)$ is about 1.8 V. The reduction potential for the reaction $[\mathrm{Co(NH_3)_6}]^{3+}(aq) + \mathrm{e}^- \longrightarrow [\mathrm{Co(NH_3)_6}]^{2+}(aq)$ is +0.1 V. Calculate the cell potentials to show whether the complex ions, $[Co(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ and/or $[Co(NH_3)_6]^{2+}$, can be oxidized to the corresponding cobalt(III) complex by oxygen.

S19.1.15

To calculate the cell potential, we need to know the potentials for each half reaction. After doing so, we need to determine which one is being oxidized and which one is being reduced. The one that is oxidized is the anode and the one that is reduced is the cathode. To find the cell potential, you use this formula and the reduction potential values found in a reduction potential table. If $E°_{cell}$ is positive, ΔG is negative and the reaction is spontaneous.

$E°_{cell}$= E°cathode - E°anode

Because it states that $[Co(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ will be oxidized, this means it is the anode.

$O_2(g) + 4H^+(aq) + 4e^- \rightarrow 2H_2O$ +1.229 V

O_2 is being reduced, so it is the cathode.

1.229V - 1.8V= -.571 V, or -0.6 V using significant figures. This cannot happen spontaneously because $E°_{cell}$ is negative.

For $[Co(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$, it is again being oxidized, meaning it's the anode.

1.229-.1= 1.129 V or 1.1 V using significant figures. This reaction is spontaneous because $E°_{cell}$ is positive.

A19.1.15

a) $E°$ = −0.6 V, $E°$ is negative so this reduction is not spontaneous.

b) $E°$ = +1.1 V, $E°$ is positive so this reduction is spontaneous.

Q19.1.16

Predict the products of each of the following reactions. (Note: In addition to using the information in this chapter, also use the knowledge you have accumulated at this stage of your study, including information on the prediction of reaction products.)

a. $\mathrm{MnCO_3}(s) + \mathrm{HI}(aq) \longrightarrow$
b. $\mathrm{CoO}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow$
c. $\mathrm{La}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow$
d. $\mathrm{V}(s) + \mathrm{VCl_4}(s) \longrightarrow$
e. $\mathrm{Co}(s) + xs\mathrm{F_2}(g) \longrightarrow$
f. $\mathrm{CrO_3}(s) + \mathrm{CsOH}(aq) \longrightarrow$

S19.1.16

There is a myriad of reactions that can occur, which include: single replacement, double replacement, combustion, acid-base/neutralization, decomposition or synthesis. The first step to determine the products of a reaction is to identify the type of reaction. From then on, the next steps you take to predict the products will vary based on the reaction type.

1. This reaction is a **double displacement reaction**, in which the cations and anions of the reactants switch places to form new compounds. Writing out the equation in terms of it's aqueous ions will help you visualize what exactly is getting moved around:

$$2H^+(aq) + 2I^-(aq) \rightarrow 2H^+(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq) + Mn^{2+}(aq) + 2I^-(aq) \tag{7.4.32}$$

   In this case, the hydrogen cations will recombine with carbonate anions whilst manganese cations will recombine with iodide anions giving us the following equation:

$$\mathrm{MnCO_3}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{HI}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{MnI_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) \tag{7.4.33}$$

   This is still not the final answer however, as carbonic acid is unstable and decomposes to carbon dioxide and water under standard conditions. Taking this into account, our final equation is:

$$\mathrm{MnCO_3}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{HI}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{MnI_2}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \tag{7.4.34}$$

2. This reaction is a **synthesis reaction**, in which two or more reactants combine to form a more complex compound. In this case we are also reacting a metal oxide with oxygen which would result in another metal oxide as the product. The resulting product would be the

mixed valence oxide Co_3O_4 in which one cobalt atom has a +2 oxidation state whilst the other two have a +3 oxidation state. Now all is left is to balance the equation:

$$6\,CoO(s) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,Co_3O_4(s) \tag{7.4.35}$$

3. Like equation 2, this reaction is also a **synthesis reaction** involving a metal and oxygen which should result in the formation of a metal oxide. It is a matter now of balancing the oxidation states to attain a neutral compound. Oxygen will always hold a -2 oxidation state in compounds whilst lanthanum will always exhibit a +3 oxidation state. As such, a combination of 2 lanthanum atoms with a +3 oxidation state and 3 oxygen atoms with a -2 oxidation state will give us a molecule with an overall charge of 0 (3(-2)+2(+3)=0). We know our product now, La_2O_3, and now just need to balance the overall equation, giving us:

$$4\,La(s) + 3\,O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,La_2O_3(s) \tag{7.4.36}$$

4. This reaction is slightly harder to define as it encapsulates both the properties of synthesis and decomposition reactions, wherein vanadium reacts with vanadium tetrachloride to produce vanadium trichloride. This reaction however is primarily a **synthesis reaction** since we are combining two reactants to produce one complex compound. With vanadium trichloride as our product, we can balance the equation:

$$V(s) + 3\,VCl_4(s) \longrightarrow 4\,VCl_3(s) \tag{7.4.37}$$

5. This is another **synthesis reaction** combining cobalt and fluorine. This equation includes the "xs" notation in front of fluorine which is short for 'excess', meaning more fluorine than actually required is present in the reactants, ensuring the reaction goes to completion. Finding the products if a simple matter of combining the cobalt and fluorine into one molecule, which already leaves us with a balanced equation:

$$Co(s) + xsF_2(g) \longrightarrow CoF_2(s) \tag{7.4.38}$$

6. It may not be obvious here, but the reaction we've been given here is actually an **acid-base/neutralization reaction**, with chromium trioxide acting as the acid and cesium hydroxide as the base. Chromium trioxide is referred to as an acidic oxide which means that it will react with water to form an acid. Note that this reaction can still proceed even if the reactants aren't in the same phases. The basic rule for acid-base/neutralization reactions is they form a salt (salt being the general term for any ionic compound formed from acid-base reactions) and water. Since we know water is one of our products, our other product must be a salt composed of cesium, chromium and oxygen. Thus, our other product should be cesium chromate, and you can now balance the equation accordingly:

$$CrO_3(s) + 2\,CsOH(aq) \longrightarrow Cs_2CrO_4(aq) + H_2O \tag{7.4.39}$$

A19.1.16

1. $MnCO_3(s) + 2\,HI(aq) \longrightarrow MnI_2(aq) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$
2. $6\,CoO(s) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,Co_3O_4(s)$
3. $4\,La(s) + 3\,O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,La_2O_3(s)$
4. $V(s) + 3\,VCl_4(s) \longrightarrow 4\,VCl_3(s)$
5. $Co(s) + xsF_2(g) \longrightarrow CoF_2(s)$
6. $CrO_3(s) + 2\,CsOH(aq) \longrightarrow Cs_2CrO_4(aq) + H_2O$

Q19.1.17

Predict the products of each of the following reactions. (Note: In addition to using the information in this chapter, also use the knowledge you have accumulated at this stage of your study, including information on the prediction of reaction products.)

a. $Fe(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \longrightarrow$
b. $FeCl_3(aq) + NaOH(aq) \longrightarrow$
c. $Mn(OH)_2(s) + HBr(aq) \longrightarrow$
d. $Cr(s) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow$
e. $Mn_2O_3(s) + HCl(aq) \longrightarrow$
f. $Ti(s) + xsF_2(g) \longrightarrow$

S19.1.17

Predict the products of each of the following reactions.

- Fe(s)+H_2SO_4(aq)⟶ ?

  Whenever a metal reacts with an acid, the products are salt and hydrogen. Because Fe is lower on the activity series, we know that when it reacts with an acid it will result in the formation of Hydrogen gas. To simplify the equation is:

$$Metal + Acid \longrightarrow Salt + Hydrogen \tag{7.4.40}$$

The salt produced will depend on the metal and in this case, the metal is iron (Fe) so the resulting equation would be:

$$\mathrm{Fe}(s) + \mathrm{H_2SO_4}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{FeSO_4}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \tag{7.4.41}$$

This equation works out as the H2 is removed from H_2SO_2, resulting in a SO_4^{2-} ion where Fe will take on an oxidation state of Fe^{+2} to form $FeSO_4$ which will be the salt in this example.

But since $FeSO_4$ and $H2SO_4$ are aqueous, the reactants and products can also be written as its ions where the overall equation can be:

$$\mathrm{Fe}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{SO_2^{-4}}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe_2^+}(aq) + \mathrm{SO_2^{-4}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \tag{7.4.42}$$

- $FeCl_3$(aq)+NaOH(aq)⟶ ?

  In this case, adding a metal hydroxide (NaOH) to a solution with a transition metal ion (Fe) will form a transition metal hydroxide (XOH). As iron is bonded to three chlorine atoms in the reactants side, it has the oxidation state of +3 where three hydroxide ions (OH^-) are needed to balance out the charges when they are bonded in the products. The remaining ions are Na^+ and Cl^- where they bond together in a 1:1 ratio where there are 3 molecules of NaCl once the reaction is balanced.

  The overall reaction will be:

$$\mathrm{FeCl_3}(aq) + \mathrm{NaOH}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe(OH)_3}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{NaCl}(aq) \tag{7.4.43}$$

  NOTE: $Fe(OH)_3$(s) is a solid as it is a rule that all all transition metal hydroxides are insoluble and a precipitate is formed.

  Since NaOH(aq) and NaCl(aq) are aqueous, we can write them out in their ion forms:

$$\mathrm{FeCl_3}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) + \mathrm{Fe(OH)_3}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{Cl^+}(aq) \tag{7.4.44}$$

- Mn(OH)2(s)+HBr(aq)⟶ ?

  This is an example of a metal hydroxide reacting with an acid where a metal salt and water will always be formed:

$$Metal Hydroxide + Acid \longrightarrow Metal Salt + Water \tag{7.4.45}$$

  When this rule is applied to this equation, we will get the following:

$$\mathrm{Mn(OH)_2}(s) + \mathrm{HBr}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{MnBr_2}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \tag{7.4.46}$$

  But to follow through with this question, the aqueous solutions such as HBr(aq) and $MnBr_2$(aq) can be re-written as:

$$\mathrm{Mn(OH)_2}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Br^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn_2^+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Br^-}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \tag{7.4.47}$$

- Cr(s)+O_2(g)⟶ ?

  This is the general reaction of a metal reacting with oxygen which will always result in a metal oxide. However, the metal oxide is determined by the oxidation state of the metal so there may be several outcomes of this reaction such as:

$$4\,\mathrm{Cr}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Cr_2O_3}(s) \tag{7.4.48}$$

$$\mathrm{Cr}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{CrO}(s) \tag{7.4.49}$$

$$\mathrm{Cr}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CrO_2}(s) \tag{7.4.50}$$

$$2\,\mathrm{Cr}(s) + 3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CrO_3}(s) \tag{7.4.51}$$

  However, Cr_2O_3 is the main oxide of chromium so it can be assumed that this is the general product of this reaction.

- Mn_2O_3(s)+HCl(aq)⟶?

  This follows the general reaction of a metal oxide and an acid will always result in a salt and water

$$Metal Oxide + Acid \longrightarrow Salt + Water \tag{7.4.52}$$

  Using this general reaction, similar to the general reactions above, the reaction will result in:

$$\mathrm{Mn_2O_3}(s) + \mathrm{HCl}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{MnCl_3}(s) + 9\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \tag{7.4.53}$$

  However, since HCl is an aqueous solution, the overall equation can also be re-written as:

$$\mathrm{Mn_2O_3}(s) + 6\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + 6\,\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{MnCl_3}(s) + 9\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \tag{7.4.54}$$

- Ti(s)+xsF_2(g)⟶?

Titanium is able to react with the halogens where there are two oxidation state that titanium can be: +3 and +4. The following reactions follow each oxidation state accordingly:

$$2\,\mathrm{Ti}(s)+3\,\mathrm{F_2}(g)\longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{TiF_3}(s) \tag{7.4.55}$$

$$\mathrm{Ti}(s)+2\,\mathrm{F_2}(g)\longrightarrow \mathrm{TiF_4}(s) \tag{7.4.56}$$

However, since there is the symbol "xs", this indicates that F_2 is added in excess so the second reaction is favored more as it drives the reaction to completion.

OVERALL:

\[\ce{Ti}(s)+\ce{xsF2}(g)⟶\ce{TiF4}(g)\]

A19.1.17

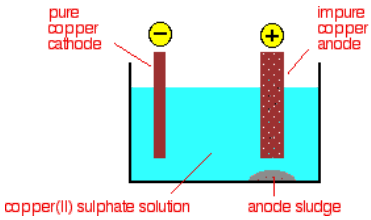
a. $\mathrm{Fe}(s)+2\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq)+\mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}(aq)\longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe^{2+}}(aq)+\mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}(aq)+\mathrm{H_2}(g)+2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$;
b. $\mathrm{FeCl_3}(aq)+3\,\mathrm{Na^+}(aq)+3\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)+\mathrm{Fe(OH)_3}(s)+3\,\mathrm{Na^+}(aq)+3\,\mathrm{Cl^+}(aq)$;
c. $\mathrm{Mn(OH)_2}(s)+2\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq)+2\,\mathrm{Br^-}(aq)\longrightarrow \mathrm{Mn^{2+}}(aq)+2\,\mathrm{Br^-}(aq)+4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$;
d. $4\,\mathrm{Cr}(s)+3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g)\longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Cr_2O_3}(s)$;
e. $\mathrm{Mn_2O_3}(s)+6\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq)+6\,\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)\longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{MnCl_3}(s)+9\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$;
f. $\mathrm{Ti}(s)+xs\mathrm{F_2}(g)\longrightarrow \mathrm{TiF_4}(g)$

Q19.1.18

Describe the electrolytic process for refining copper.

S19.1.18

By electrolysis, copper can be refined and purely made. The reason why copper needs to remove the impurities is because it helps increase the electrical conductivity in electrical wire. You can refine copper and remove the impurities through electrolysis. Pure copper is important in making electrical wire, because it creates better electrical conductivity when transferring electricity. In order for better electrical conductivity, the impurities needs to be removed and this can be done by firing the impure copper to remove the impurities, such as sulfur, oxygen, etc. and shaping them into electrical anodes that can be used in electrolysis. Then the copper electrodes are placed into an electrical cell (into separate beakers) where electrical current can pass through the beakers and onto the electrodes. Through this process, the copper is stripped off of the anode and deposited onto the cathode. This process helps remove the impurities and refine copper because all the copper has been deposited onto the cathode all in one electrode. This process increases the weight of the cathode due to copper being deposited onto the cathode. This is a prime example of how to tell if an electrode is a cathode or an anode, as stated in Q17.2.9 above.



Q19.1.19

Predict the products of the following reactions and balance the equations.

a. Zn is added to a solution of $Cr_2(SO_4)_3$ in acid.
b. $FeCl_2$ is added to a solution containing an excess of $\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}$ in hydrochloric acid.
c. Cr^{2+} is added to $\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}$ in acid solution.
d. Mn is heated with CrO_3.
e. CrO is added to $2HNO_3$ in water.
f. $FeCl_3$ is added to an aqueous solution of NaOH.

S19.1.19

1. Zn is added to a solution of $Cr_2(SO_4)_3$ in acid.
   - Oxidized half-reaction: $3Zn(s) \rightarrow 3Zn^{2+}(aq) + 6e^-$
   - Reduction half reaction:
   - Overall reaction:

- Chromium will precipitate out of the solution because it has a higher reduction potential than Zinc; the reaction is a single replacement.

2. $FeCl_2$ is added to a solution containing an excess of $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ in hydrochloric acid.
   - Dissociation reaction: $6FeCl_2(s) \rightarrow 6Fe^{2+}(aq) + 12Cl^-(aq)$
   - Oxidation half-reaction: $6Fe^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow 6Fe^{3+}(aq) + 6e^-$
   - Reduction half-reaction: $Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14H^+(aq) + 6e^- \rightarrow 2Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7H_2O(l)$
   - Overall reaction: 
   - The reduction potential for permanganate is larger so the reaction is still favorable even when the oxidation of Fe^{2+} is negative.
3. Cr^{2+} is added to $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ in acid solution.
   - Reduction half-reaction: 
   - Oxidation half-reaction: 
   - Overall reaction: $6Cr^{2+}(aq) + Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq) + 14H^+(aq) \rightarrow 8Cr^{3+}(aq) + 7H_2O(l)$
   - The reaction is favorable with a high positive E°
4. Mn is heated with CrO_3.
   - Reduction half-reaction: $8CrO_3(aq) + 24H^+ + 24e^- \rightarrow 4Cr_2O_3(aq) + 12H_2O(l)$
   - Oxidation half-reaction: $9Mn(s) + 12H_2O(l) \rightarrow 3Mn_3O_4(aq) + 24H^+(aq) + 24e^-$
   - Overall reaction: $8CrO_3(aq) + 9Mn(s) \rightarrow^{\Delta} 4Cr_2O_3(aq) + 3Mn_3O_4(aq)$
   - Heat creates a product with higher energy than both previous reactants.
5. CrO is added to HNO_3 in water.
   - Strong acid dissociation: $2HNO_3(aq) + 2H_2O(l) \rightarrow 2H_3O^+(aq) + 2NO_3^-(aq)$
   - Overall reaction: $2HNO_3(aq) + CrO(aq) \rightarrow Cr^{2+}(aq) + 2NO_3^-(aq) + H_2O(l)$
   - This reaction works by exchange of electrons to yield Chromium ions.
6. $FeCl_3$ is added to an aqueous solution of $NaOH$.
   - Overall reaction: $3NaOH(aq) + FeCl_3(s) \rightarrow 3Na^+(aq) + FeOH_3^-(s) + 3Cl^-(aq)$
   - Iron hydroxide will precipitate because the two metals will exchange anions.

A19.1.19

a. $\mathrm{Cr_2(SO_4)_3}(aq) + 2\ \mathrm{Zn}(s) + 2\ \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\ \mathrm{Zn^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) + 2\ \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 2\ \mathrm{Cr^{2+}}(aq) + 3\ \mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}(aq)$;
b. $4\ \mathrm{TiCl_3}(s) + \mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}(aq) + 8\ \mathrm{H^+}(aq) \longrightarrow 4\ \mathrm{Ti^{4+}}(aq) + \mathrm{Cr}(s) + 4\ \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + 12\ \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$;
c. In acid solution between pH 2 and pH 6, $\mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}$ forms $\mathrm{HrCO_4^-}$, which is in equilibrium with dichromate ion. The reaction is $2\ \mathrm{HCrO_4^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$. At other acidic pHs, the reaction is $3\ \mathrm{Cr^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{CrO_4^{2-}}(aq) + 8\ \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) \longrightarrow 4\ \mathrm{Cr^{3+}}(aq) + 12\ \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$;
d. $8\ \mathrm{CrO_3}(s) + 9\ \mathrm{Mn}(s) \xrightarrow{\Delta} 4\ \mathrm{Cr_2O_3}(s) + 3\ \mathrm{Mn_3O_4}(s)$;
e. $\mathrm{CrO}(s) + 2\ \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + 2\ \mathrm{NO_3^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cr^{2+}}(aq) + 2\ \mathrm{NO_3^-}(aq) + 3\ \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$;
f. $\mathrm{CrCl_3}(s) + 3\ \mathrm{NaOH}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cr(OH)_3}(s) + 3\ \mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + 3\ \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$

Q19.1.20

What is the gas produced when iron(II) sulfide is treated with a nonoxidizing acid?

S19.1.20

Formula for iron(II) sulfide:

$$FeS \tag{7.4.57}$$

Definition of non-oxidizing acid: A non-oxidizing acid is an acid that doesn't act the oxidizing agent. Its anion is a weaker oxidizing agent than H+, thus it can't be reduced. Examples of non-oxidizing acids:

$$HCl, HI, HBr, H_3PO_4, H_2SO_4 \tag{7.4.58}$$

Step 2: Choose one of the non-oxidizing acid, in this case HCl, and write the chemical reaction:

$$FeS(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightarrow FeCl_2(s) + H_2S(g) \tag{7.4.59}$$

The gas produced when iron (II) sulfide treated with a non-oxidizing acid, HCl, is H_2S (dihydrogen sulfide) gas.

Q19.1.21

Predict the products of each of the following reactions and then balance the chemical equations.

a. Fe is heated in an atmosphere of steam.
b. NaOH is added to a solution of $Fe(NO_3)_3$.
c. $FeSO_4$ is added to an acidic solution of $KMnO_4$.
d. Fe is added to a dilute solution of H_2SO_4.
e. A solution of $Fe(NO_3)_2$ and HNO_3 is allowed to stand in air.
f. $FeCO_3$ is added to a solution of $HClO_4$.
g. Fe is heated in air.

S19.1.21

a. Steam is water (H_2O)

We can write out the reaction as:

$$Fe + H_2O \rightarrow ?$$

This is a single replacement reaction, so Fe replaces H_2. So, one of the products is Fe_3O_4 since it is a combination of iron(II) oxide, FeO, and iron(III) oxide, Fe_2O_3.

The Fe is heated in an atmosphere of steam. H_2 becomes neutrally charged and becomes another product.

After balancing the coefficients, the final reaction is:

$$3\,Fe(s) + 4\,H_2O(g) \rightarrow Fe_3O_4(s) + 4\,H_2(g)$$

b. $NaOH$ added to a solution of $Fe(NO_3)_3$ is a double replacement and precipitation reaction.

We can write out the reaction as:

$$NaOH + Fe(NO_3)_3 \rightarrow ?$$

The Na and Fe switch to form $Fe(OH)_3(s)$ and $NaNO_3(aq)$.

$Fe(OH)_3$ is solid because it is insoluble according to solubility rules.

After balancing the coefficients in the reaction, the final reaction is:

$$Fe(NO_3)_3(aq) + 3\,NaOH(aq) \rightarrow Fe(OH)_3(s) + NaNO_3(aq)$$

c. For instance, the acid used to make the acidic solution is H_2SO_4, then the reaction is:

$$FeSO_4 + KMnO_4 + H_2SO_4 \rightarrow Fe_2(SO_4)_3 + MnSO_4 + H_2O + K_2SO_4$$

Next, the net ionic reaction has to be written to get rid of the spectator ions in the reaction, this is written as:

$$Fe^{2+} + MnO_4^- + H^+ \rightarrow Fe^{3+} + Mn^{2+} + H_2O$$

As seen in the net ionic equation above, Fe^{2+} is oxidized to Fe^{3+} and MnO_4^- is reduced to Mn^{2+}. These can be written as two half reactions:

$$Fe^{2+} \rightarrow Fe^{3+}$$

$$MnO_4^- \rightarrow Mn^{2+}$$

To balance the oxidation half reaction, one electron as to be added to the Fe^{3+}, this is shown as:

$$Fe^{2+} \rightarrow Fe^{3+} + e^-$$

The reduction half reaction also has to be balanced, but with H^+ ions and H_2O, this is shown as:

$$MnO_4^- + 8\,H^+ \rightarrow Mn^{2+} + 4\,H_2O$$

After the charge of the Mn atoms are balanced, the overall charge has to be balanced on both sides because on the reactants side, the charge is $7+$, and the charge on the products side is $2+$. The overall charge can be balanced by adding electrons, this is shown as:

$$MnO_4^- + 8\,H^+ + 5\,e^- \rightarrow Mn^{2+} + 4\,H_2O$$

Now since both half reactions are balanced, the electrons in both half reactions have to be equal, and then the half reactions are added together. After this is done, the reaction looks like this:

$$MnO_4^- + 8\,H^+ + 5\,Fe^{2+} + 5\,e^- \rightarrow Mn^{2+} + 4\,H_2O + 5\,Fe^{3+} + 5\,e^-$$

The $5\,e^-$ on both sides cancel out and the final balanced reaction is:

$$MnO_4^- + 8\,H^+ + 5\,Fe^{2+} \rightarrow Mn^{2+} + 4\,H_2O + 5\,Fe^{3+}$$

d. Fe added to a dilute solution of H_2SO_4 is a single replacement reaction.

The Fe is added to a dilute solution so the H_2SO_4 is written as separate ions.

We can write out the reaction as:

$$Fe(s) + 2\,H^+(aq) + (SO_4)^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow\ ?$$

The Fe replaces the H^+ ion, and becomes an Fe^{2+} ion.

H_2O is also a product because the solution is dilute.

Furthermore, the $FeSO_4$ also has to be separated into ions as a result of the Fe being added to a dilute solution.

After balancing all of the coefficients, the final reaction is:

$$Fe(s) + (2\,H_3O)^+(aq) + (SO_4)^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow Fe^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2(g) + 2\,H_2O(l)$$

Note: H^+ can also be written as the the hydronium ion, $(H_3O)^+$.

e. We initially can initially write out:

$$4\,Fe(NO_3)_2 + 4\,HNO_3 + O_2 \rightarrow\ ?$$

We write the oxygen term in the reactants because it is stated that the solution is allowed to stand in air.

We just have to analyze the possible products that can be formed and we can see that the hydrogen from nitric acid can combine with oxygen gas to form water and then combining everything together, we get the final reaction to be:

$$4\,Fe(NO_3)_2(aq) + 4\,HNO_3(aq) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(l) + 4\,Fe(NO_3)_3(aq)$$

f. When $FeCO_3$ is added to $HClO_4$, a double replacement reaction occurs.

The Fe^{2+} ion switches spots with the H^+ ion to form $Fe(ClO_4)_2$ as a product.

When the H^+ ion is added to the $(CO_3)^{2-}$ ion, H_2CO_3 is formed.

After balancing the coefficients, the final reaction is:

$$FeCO_3(s) + HClO_4(aq) \rightarrow Fe(ClO_4)_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$$

g. Air is composed of oxygen gas, which is a diatomic molecule, so it is O_2.

Adding Fe to O_2 will cause a synthesis reaction to occur forming Fe_2O_3.

After balancing coefficients, the final reaction is:

$$3\,Fe(s) + 2\,O_2(g) \rightarrow Fe_2O_3(s)$$

A19.1.21

a. $3\,Fe(s) + 4\,H_2O(g) \longrightarrow Fe_3O_4(s) + 4\,H_2(g)$;
b. $3\,NaOH(aq) + Fe(NO_3)_3(aq) \xrightarrow[H_2O]{} Fe(OH)_3(s) + 3\,Na^+(aq) + 3\,NO_3^-(aq)$;
c. $MnO_4^- + 8\,H^+ + 5\,Fe^{2+} \rightarrow Mn^{2+} + 4\,H_2O + 5\,Fe^{3+}$
d. $Fe(s) + (2\,H_3O)^+(aq) + (SO_4)^{2-}(aq) \rightarrow Fe^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2(g) + 2\,H_2O(l)$
e. $4\,Fe(NO_3)_2(aq) + 4\,HNO_3(aq) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(l) + 4\,Fe(NO_3)_3(aq)$
f. $FeCO_3(s) + HClO_4(aq) \rightarrow Fe(ClO_4)_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$
g. $3\,Fe(s) + 2\,O_2(g) \rightarrow Fe_2O_3(s)$

Q19.1.22

Balance the following equations by oxidation-reduction methods; note that *three* elements change oxidation state.

$$Co(NO_3)_2(s) \longrightarrow Co_2O_3(s) + NO_2(g) + O_2(g) \tag{7.4.60}$$

S19.1.22

Balance the following equations by oxidation-reduction methods; note that three elements change oxidation state.

$$Co(NO_3)_2(s) \longrightarrow Co_2O_3(s) + NO_2(g) + O_2(g) \tag{7.4.61}$$

In this reaction, N changes oxidation states from +5 to +4 (reduced), Co changes oxidation states from +2 to +3 (oxidized), and O changes oxidation states from -2 to 0 (also oxidized).

First, split this reaction into an oxidation and reduction half reaction set, and balance all of the elements that are not hydrogen or oxygen (we will deal with these later):

$$Reduction: 2Co(NO_3)_2 \rightarrow Co_2O_3 + 4NO_2 \tag{7.4.62}$$

Now, for the oxidation reaction, we are only dealing with O_2 on the products side. In order to balance this, we will need to add water and hydrogen to both sides:

$$Oxidation: 2H_2O \rightarrow O_2 + 4H^+ \tag{7.4.63}$$

Balance the amount of oxygens on each side by adding the correct number of water molecules (H_2O), and balance the amount of hydrogen by adding the correct number of H^+ atoms:

$$Reduction: 2H^+ + 2Co(NO_3)_2 \rightarrow Co_2O_3 + 4NO_2 + H_2O \tag{7.4.64}$$

$$Oxidation: 2H_2O \rightarrow O_2 + 4H^+ \tag{7.4.65}$$

Finally, balance the charges by adding electrons to each side of the equation. For the reduction reaction, we will add 2 electrons to balance out the $2H^+$, and to the oxidation reaction, we will add 4 electrons to balance out the $4H^+$. Remember, the goal of this step is to make sure that the charges are balanced, so we can cancel them out in the end.

$$Reduction: 2e^- + 2H^+ + 2Co(NO_3)_2 \rightarrow Co_2O_3 + 4NO_2 + H_2O \tag{7.4.66}$$

$$Oxidation: 2H_2O \rightarrow O_2 + 4H^+ + 4e^- \tag{7.4.67}$$

Multiply the reduction reaction by two, in order to balance the charges so there are 4 electrons on each side of the reaction.

$$Reduction: 2(2e^- + 2H^+ + 2Co(NO_3)_2 \rightarrow Co_2O_3 + 4NO_2 + H_2O) \tag{7.4.68}$$

and combine both reactions which comes out to:

$$2H_2O + 4Co(NO_3)_2 + 4H^+ \rightarrow 2CO_2O_3 + 8NO_2 + 2H_2O + O_2 + 4H^+ \tag{7.4.69}$$

Cancel out like terms:

$$4Co(NO_3)_2(s) \rightarrow 2CO_2O_3(s) + 8NO_2(g) + O_2(g) \tag{7.4.70}$$

Both sides have overall charges of 0 and can be checked to see if they are balanced.

A19.1.22

$$4Co(NO_3)_2(s) \rightarrow 2CO_2O_3(s) + 8NO_2(g) + O_2(g) \tag{7.4.71}$$

Q19.1.23

Dilute sodium cyanide solution is slowly dripped into a slowly stirred silver nitrate solution. A white precipitate forms temporarily but dissolves as the addition of sodium cyanide continues. Use chemical equations to explain this observation. Silver cyanide is similar to silver chloride in its solubility.

S19.1.23

Dilute sodium cyanide solution is slowly dripped into a slowly stirred silver nitrate solution. A white precipitate forms temporarily but dissolves as the addition of sodium cyanide continues. Use chemical equations to explain this observation. Silver cyanide is similar to silver chloride in its solubility.

A: Step 1: look at the question and begin to write out a general product to reactant formula for this reaction.

Step 2: try to reason out why a precipitate will form but only for a finite period of time before reforming in an aqueous substance.

Step 3: With step 2 you should have noticed that the reaction is a multiple step reaction and using the rough formula that you derived in step 1, you should try and see what the series of steps are that lead to the overall product of liquid $AgCN_2$

In this reaction we see how NaCN is added to $AgNO_3$ .A precipitate forms but then disappears with the addition of even more NaCN, this must mean that its an intermediate reaction which will not appear as the final product. The silver and the cyanide temporarily bond, but the bond is too weak to hold them together so they are pulled apart again when NaCN is added because a new, more stronger and stable compound is formed: $[Ag(CN)_2]^-$ (aq).

The actual reaction equation when it is first taking place is

$$AgCl(aq) + NaCN(aq) \rightarrow AgCN(s) + NaCl(aq) \tag{7.4.72}$$

This can be written out in the following way: as CN^- is added, the silver and the cyanide combine : $Ag^+(aq)+CN^-(aq) \rightarrow AgCN\ (s)$

As more CN^- is added the silver and two cyanide combine to create a more stable compound: $Ag^+(aq)+2CN^-(aq) \rightarrow [Ag(CN)_2]^-\ (aq)$

$AgCN(s) + CN^-\ (aq) \rightarrow [Ag(CN)_2]^-\ (aq)$

A19.1.23

As CN^- is added,

$$\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CN^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{AgCN}(s) \tag{7.4.73}$$

As more CN^- is added,

$$\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + 2\ \mathrm{CN^-}(aq) \longrightarrow [\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) \tag{7.4.74}$$

$$\mathrm{AgCN}(s) + \mathrm{CN^-}(aq) \longrightarrow [\mathrm{Ag(CN)_2}]^-(aq) \tag{7.4.75}$$

Q19.1.24

Predict which will be more stable, $[CrO_4]^{2-}$ or $[WO_4]^{2-}$, and explain.

S19.1.24

According to the rules associated with Crystal Field Stabilizing Energies, stable molecules contain more electrons in the lower-energy molecular orbitals than in the high-energy molecular orbitals. In this case, both complexes have O_4 as ligands, and both have a -2 charge. Therefore, you determine stability by comparing the metals. Chromium is in the 3d orbital, according to the periodic table. Tungsten (W) is in the 5d orbital. 3d is a lower energy level than 5d.Higher-level orbitals are more easily ionized, and make their base elemental form more stable. If the elemental form is more stable the oxidized form is less stable. Therefore, $[CrO_4]^{2-}$ is more stable than $[WO_4]^{2-}$.

A19.1.24

$[CrO_4]^{2-}$ is more stable because Chromium is in the 3d orbital while Tungsten is in the 4d orbital, which has a higher energy level and makes it less stable.

Q19.1.25

Give the oxidation state of the metal for each of the following oxides of the first transition series. (Hint: Oxides of formula M_3O_4 are examples of *mixed valence compounds* in which the metal ion is present in more than one oxidation state. It is possible to write these compound formulas in the equivalent format $MO{\cdot}M_2O_3$, to permit estimation of the metal's two oxidation states.)

a. Sc_2O_3
b. TiO_2
c. V_2O_5
d. CrO_3
e. MnO_2
f. Fe_3O_4
g. Co_3O_4
h. NiO
i. Cu_2O

S19.1.25

The first step to solving this problem is looking at the rules of Oxidizing states for various elements:

chem.libretexts.org/Core/Analytical_Chemistry/Electrochemistry/Redox_Chemistry/Oxidation_State

The main rules that will be used in these problems will be the oxidation state rule 6 which states that oxidation state for Oxygen is (-2) and rule 2 which is that the total sum of the oxidation state of all atoms in any given species is equal to the net charge on that species. Solving these problems requires simple algebra. The oxidation states of both elements in the compound is equal to zero, so set the unknown oxidation of the element that is not oxygen to a variable x, and the oxidation state of Oxygen equal to -2. Then multiply both oxygen states by the number of atoms of the element present. Add the values together, set the equation equal to zero and solve for x.

1. $\mathrm{Sc_2O_3} = 3(-2) + 2x = 0 \longrightarrow -6 + 2x = 0 \longrightarrow x = Sc = +3 \quad Sc^{3+}$
2. $\mathrm{TiO_2} = 2(-2) + x = 0 \longrightarrow -4 + x = 0 \longrightarrow x = Ti = +4 \quad Ti^{4+}$
3. $\mathrm{V_2O_5} = 5(-2) + 2x = 0 \longrightarrow -10 + 2x = 0 \longrightarrow x = V = +5 \quad V^{5+}$
4. $\mathrm{CrO_3} = 3(-2) + x = 0 \longrightarrow -6 + x = 0 \longrightarrow x = Cr = +6 \quad Cr^{6+}$

5. $MnO_2 = 2(-2) + x = 0 \longrightarrow -4 + x = 0 \longrightarrow x = Mn = +4 \quad Mn^{4+}$
6. $Fe_3O_4 = FeO \cdot Fe_2O_3 =$

$FeO = -2 + x = 0 \longrightarrow x = Fe = +2 \quad Fe^{2+}$

$Fe_2O_3 = 3(-2) + 2x = 0 \longrightarrow -6 + 2x = 0 \longrightarrow x = Fe = +3 \quad Fe^{3=}$

(One Fe Atom has an oxidation state of +2 and the other 2 Fe atoms have an oxidation state of +3)

7. $Co_3O_4 = CoO \cdot Co_2O_3 =$

$CoO = -2 + x = 0 \longrightarrow x = Co = +2 \quad Co^{2+}$

$Co_2O_3 = 3(-2) + 2x = 0 \longrightarrow -6 + 2x = 0 \longrightarrow x = Co = +3 \quad Co^{3+}$

(One Co Atom has an oxidation state of +2 and the other 2 Co atoms have an oxidation state of +3)

8. $NiO = -2 + x = 0 \longrightarrow x = Ni = +2 \quad Ni^{2+}$

9. $Cu_2O = -2 + 2x = 0 \longrightarrow -2 + 2x = 0 \longrightarrow x = Cu = +1 \quad Cu^{1+}$

A19.1.25

Sc^{3+}; Ti^{4+}; V^{5+}; Cr^{6+}; Mn^{4+}; Fe^{2+} and Fe^{3+}; Co^{2+} and Co^{3+}; Ni^{2+}; Cu^{+}

19.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals

Q19.2.1

Indicate the coordination number for the central metal atom in each of the following coordination compounds:

a. $[Pt(H_2O)_2Br_2]$
b. $[Pt(NH_3)(py)(Cl)(Br)]$ (py = pyridine, C_5H_5N)
c. $[Zn(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$
d. $[Zn(NH_3)(py)(Cl)(Br)]$
e. $[Ni(H_2O)_4Cl_2]$
f. $[Fe(en)_2(CN)_2]^+$ (en = ethylenediamine, $C_2H_8N_2$)

S19.2.1

First we must identify whether or not the ligand has more than one bonded atom (bidentate/polydentate). Using the table below we are able to do this.

Ligand	Number of bonded atoms
Ammine (NH_3)	monodentate
Aqua (H_2O)	monodentate
Bromo (Br)	monodentate
Chloro (Cl)	monodentate
Cyano (CN)	monodentate
Pyridine (C_5H_5N)	monodentate
Ethylenediamine ($C_2H_8N_2$)	bidentate

Now that we have identified the number of bonded atoms from each ligand, we can find the total number of atoms bonded to the central metal ion, giving us the coordination number.

a. $[Pt(H_2O)_2Br_2]$: We can identify the metal ion in the complex as Pt, platinum, as the other two are listed as ligands above and are nonmetallic. We can now use the number of ligands and their bonding atoms to find its coordination number. From the table above we see that H_2O has only one bonding atom and Br as well. So for each Br atom we have one bonding atom, and we have two of these, yielding 2 bonding atoms; this is the same for H_2O, giving us a total number of 4 bonding atoms, and therefore a coordination number of 4.
b. $[Pt(NH_3)(py)(Cl)(Br)]$ (py = pyridine, C_5H_5N): The metal ion in this complex, similarly to the first one, can be identified as Pt, platinum. The ligands can be identified as NH_3, pyridine, Cl, and Br, which are all monodentate ligands and have one bonding atom

each. Since we have four ligands, each with one bonding atom, the total number of bonding atoms on the metal ion is 4, therefore the complex has a coordination number of 4.

c. $[Zn(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$: The metal ion in this complex can be identified as Zn, zinc, and the ligands can be identified as NH_3 and Cl. Since these two are both monodentate ligands they have one bonding atom each. Since we have a total of two NH_3 and two Cl ligands, we get a total of four monodentate ligands, giving us 4 bonding atoms and a coordination number of 4.

d. $[Zn(NH_3)(py)(Cl)(Br)]$: The metal ion in this complex can be identified as Zn, zinc, and the ligands can be identified as NH_3, pyridine, Cl, and Br, which are all monodentate ligands and have one bonding atom each. Since we have four ligands, each with one bonding atom, the total number of bonding atoms on the metal ion is 4, therefore the complex has a coordination number of 4.

e. $[Ni(H_2O)_4Cl_2]$: The metal ion in this complex can be identified as Ni, nickel, and we can now use the number of ligands and their bonding atoms to find its coordination number. From the table above we see that H_2O has only one bonding atom and Cl as well. So for each Cl atom we have one bonding atom, and we have two of these, yielding 2 bonding atoms. H_2O is the same, having only one bonding atom, but there are four of these. So this gives us a total number of 6 bonding atoms, and therefore a coordination number of 6.

f. $[Fe(en)_2(CN)_2]^+$ (en = ethylenediamine, $C_2H_8N_2$): The metal ion in this complex can be identified as Fe, iron, and the ligands can be identified as (en) and CN. Since (en) is bidentate, meaning it has 2 bonding atoms, and there are two of these, the total number of bonding atoms from (en) is four. Since CN is monodentate, meaning it has one bonding atom, and there are two of these, the total number of bonding atoms from CN ligand is two. So, the total number of bonding atoms is 6, therefore the complex has a coordination number of 6.

A19.2.1

a. The 2 aqua and the 2 bromo ligands form a total of 4 coordinate covalent bonds and as a result the coordination number is 4.
b. The ammine, pyridine, chloro and bromo each form one coordinate covalent bond that gives a total of 4 and hence CN=4.
c. Two ammine and two chloro ligands give a total of 4 coordinate covalent bonds and a CN = 4.
d. One ammine, a pyrimidine, a chloro and a bromo ligand give a total of 4 covalent bonds, resulting in CN = 4.
e. Four aqua ligands and two chloro ligands form a total of 6 coordinate covalent bonds and a CN =6.
f. Ethylenediamine is a bidentate ligand that forms two coordinate covalent bonds; along with two cyano ligands, it forms a total of 6 bonds, and hence has a CN=6.

Q19.2.2

Give the coordination numbers and write the formulas for each of the following, including all isomers where appropriate:

a. tetrahydroxozincate(II) ion (tetrahedral)
b. hexacyanopalladate(IV) ion
c. dichloroaurate ion (note that *aurum* is Latin for "gold")
d. diamminedichloroplatinum(II)
e. potassium diamminetetrachlorochromate(III)
f. hexaamminecobalt(III) hexacyanochromate(III)
g. dibromobis(ethylenediamine) cobalt(III) nitrate

S19.2.2

To determine coordination numbers we must count the total number of ligands bonded to the central metal and distinguish monodentate and polydentate ligands. To determine the formulas, we use the nomenclature rules and work backwards.

1. "tetrahydroxo" = 4 hydroxide ligands; since hydroxide is a monodentate ligand, we have a total of 4 bonds to the central metal.
   Coordination Number: 4
   We review the basics of nomenclature and see that "tetra" = 4 and "hydroxo" = OH^-. Since the charge on zinc is 2+, which is given in the nomenclature by the Roman numerals, we can calculate the total charge on the complex to be 2-.
   Formula: $[Zn(OH)_4]^{2-}$
2. "hexacyano" = 6 cyanide ligands; since cyanide is a monodentate ligand, we have a total of 6 bonds to the central metal.
   Coordination Number: 6
   We review the basics of nomenclature and see that "hexa" = 6 and "cyano" = CN^-. Since the charge on Pd is 4+, which is given in the nomenclature by the Roman numerals, we can calculate the total charge on the complex to be 2-.
   Formula: $[Pd(CN)_6]^{2-}$
3. "dichloro" = 2 chloride ligands; since chloride is a monodentate ligand, we have a total of 2 bonds to the central metal.
   Coordination Number: 2
   We review the basics of nomenclature and see that "di" = 2 and "chloro" = Cl^-. Since the charge on Au is always 1+, we can calculate the total charge on the complex to be 1-.
   Formula: $[AuCl_2]^-$

4. "diammine" = 2 ammonia ligands and "dichloro" = 2 chloride ligands; since both ammonia and chloride ligands are monodentate, we have a total of 4 bonds to the central metal.
   Coordination Number: 4
   We review the basics of nomenclature and see that "di" = 2, "chloro" = Cl^- and "ammine" = NH_3. Since the charge on Pt is 2+, which is given in the nomenclature by the Roman numerals, we can calculate that the total charge is 0, so the complex is neutral.
   Formula: $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$
5. "diammine" = 2 ammonia ligands and "tetrachloro" = 4 chloride ligands; since both ammonia and chloride ligands are monodentate, we have a total of 6 bonds to the central metal.
   Coordination Number: 6
   We review the basics of nomenclature and see that "di" = 2, "ammine" = NH_3, "tetra" = 4 and "chloro" = Cl^-. Since the charge on the central metal, Cr, is 3+, which is given in the nomenclature by the Roman numerals, we can calculate that the total charge of the complex is 1-. The "potassium" at the front of the nomenclature indicates that it is the corresponding cation to this anionic complex.
   Formula: $K[Cr(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$
6. Both of the metal complexes have "hexa" monodentate ligands, which means both have coordination numbers of 6.
   Coordination Number: 6
   We review the basics of nomenclature and see that "hexa" = 6, "ammine" = NH_3, and "cyano" = CN^-. Since the charge on Cr is 3+ and Co is 3+, which is given in the nomenclature by the Roman numerals, we find that these complexes' charges balance out.
   Formula: $[Co(NH_3)_6][Cr(CN)_6]$
7. "dibromo" = 2 bromide ligands "bis(ethylenediamine)" = 2 (en) ligands; bromide is a monodentate ligand while (en) is a bidentate ligand. Therefore, we have a coordination number of 6.
   Coordination Number: 6
   We review the basics of nomenclature and see that "di" = 2, "bromo" = Br^-, "bis" = 2, and "ethylenediamine" = en. Since the charge on Co is 3+, which is given in the nomenclature by the Roman numerals, we find that the total charge of the complex is 1+. Nitrate is the corresponding anion to this cationic complex.
   Formula: $[Co(en)_2Br_2]NO_3$

A19.2.2

a. 4, $[Zn(OH)_4]^{2-}$;
b. 6, $[Pd(CN)_6]^{2-}$;
c. 2, $[AuCl_2]^-$;
d. 4, $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$;
e. 6, $K[Cr(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$;
f. 6, $[Co(NH_3)_6][Cr(CN)_6]$;
g. 6, $[Co(en)_2Br_2]NO_3$

Q19.2.3

Give the coordination number for each metal ion in the following compounds:

a. $[Co(CO_3)_3]^{3-}$ (note that CO_3^{2-} is bidentate in this complex)
b. $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$
c. $[Co(NH_3)_4Br_2]_2(SO_4)_3$
d. $[Pt(NH_3)_4][PtCl_4]$
e. $[Cr(en)_3](NO_3)_3$
f. $[Pd(NH_3)_2Br_2]$ (square planar)
g. $K_3[Cu(Cl)_5]$
h. $[Zn(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$

S19.2.3

You can determine a compound's coordination number based on how many ligands are bound to the central atom.

1) In this compound, Cobalt is the central atom, and it has 3 CO_3^{2-} molecules attached to it. However, CO_3^{2-} is a bidentate ligand, which means it binds to the central atom in two places rather than one. This means that the coordination number of $[Co(CO_3)_3]^{3-}$ is 6. A coordination number of 6 means that the structure is most likely octahedral.

2) In this compound, Copper is the central atom. 4 ammonia molecules are attached to it. This means the coordination number is 4, and the structure is likely tetrahedral.

3) For this compound, we can ignore the $(SO_4)_3$ because it is not bound to the central atom. The central atom is cobalt, and it has 4 ammonia molecules and 2 bromine molecules bound to it. The coordination number is 6.

4) There are two compounds here, indicated by the brackets. The central atom for both is platinum. One of them has 4 ammonia molecules attached, and the other has 4 chlorine atoms attached. Both complexes have a coordination number of 4.

5) We can ignore $(NO_3)_3$ for this compound. The central atom is Chromium. There are 3 ethylenediamine molecules attached to the chromium. Ethylenediamine is a bidentate ligand, so the coordination number is 6.

6) Palladium is the central atom. 2 ammonia molecules and 2 bromine atoms are bound to the palladium atom. The coordination number is 4.

7) We can ignore the K_3 structure. Copper is the central atom, and there are 5 chlorine molecules attached to it. The coordination number is 5, so the structure is either trigonal bipyramidal or square pyramidal.

8) In this compound, zinc is the central atom. There are 2 ammonia molecules and 2 chlorine atoms attached. This means that the coordination number is 4.

Q19.2.4

Sketch the structures of the following complexes. Indicate any *cis*, *trans*, and optical isomers.

a. $[Pt(H_2O)_2Br_2]$ (square planar)
b. $[Pt(NH_3)(py)(Cl)(Br)]$ (square planar, py = pyridine, C_5H_5N)
c. $[Zn(NH_3)_3Cl]^+$ (tetrahedral)
d. $[Pt(NH_3)_3Cl]^+$ (square planar)
e. $[Ni(H_2O)_4Cl_2]$
f. $[Co(C_2O_4)_2Cl_2]^{3-}$ (note that $C_2O_4^{2-}$ is the bidentate oxalate ion, $-O_2CCO_2^-$)

S19.2.4

Cis and trans are a type of geometric isomer, meaning there is a difference in the orientation in which the ligands are attached to the central metal. In cis, two of the same ligands are adjacent to one another and in trans, two of the same ligands are directly across from one another.

Optical isomers → have the ability to rotate light, optical isomers are also chiral. Only chiral complexes have optical isomers

Chiral → asymmetric, structure of its mirror image is not superimposable

Enantiomers: chiral optical isomers (compound can have multiple enantiomers)

Tetrahedral complex with 4 distinct ligands → always chiral

- For tetrahedral, if 2 ligands are the same, then it cannot be chiral, has a plane of symmetry

Solutions:

a. $[Pt(H_2O)_2Br_2]$ (square planar)

This complex has 2 kinds of ligands. The matching ligands can either be adjacent to each other and be cis, or they can be across from each other and be trans.

b. $[Pt(NH_3)(py)(Cl)(Br)]$ (square planar, py = pyridine, C_5H_5N)

This complex has 4 different ligands. There is no plane of symmetry in any of the enantiomers, making the structures chiral and therefore has optical isomers.

c. $[Zn(NH_3)_3Cl]^+$ (tetrahedral)

There is a plane of symmetry from NH_3 through Zn to the other NH_3, therefore it is not chiral.

d. $[Pt(NH_3)_3Cl]^+$ (square planar)

There is a plane of symmetry from NH_3 through Pt to the other NH_3, therefore it is not chiral.

e. $[Ni(H_2O)_2Cl_2]$

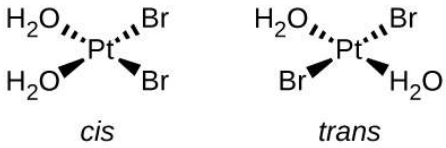
The Cl ligands can either be right next to each other, or directly across from one another allowing for both cis and trans geometries.

f. $[Co(C_2O_4)_2Cl_2]^-3$ (note that $C_2O_4^-2$ is the bidentate oxalate ion, $^-O_2CCO_2^-$

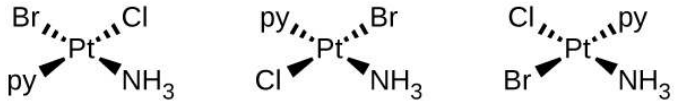
There is a plane of symmetry from Cl through Co to the other Cl in a "trans" chlorine configuration, therefore it is not chiral in a chlorine "trans" configuration. However, there is no symmetry in the chlorine "cis" configuration, indicating multiple "cis" isomers.

A19.2.4

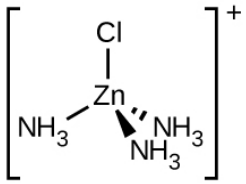
a. $[Pt(H_2O)_2Br_2]$:



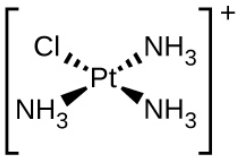
b. $[Pt(NH_3)(py)(Cl)(Br)]$:



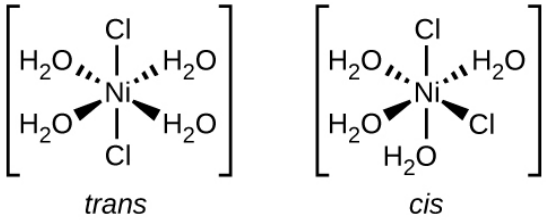
c. $[Zn(NH_3)_3Cl]^+$:



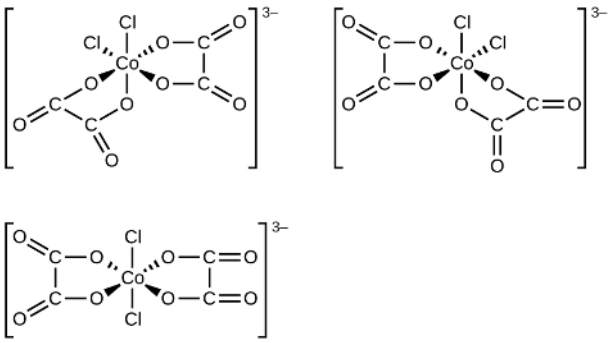
d. $[Pt(NH_3)_3Cl]^+$:



e. $[Ni(H_2O)_4Cl_2]$:



f. $[Co(C_2O_4)_2Cl_2]^{3-}$:



Q19.2.5

Draw diagrams for any *cis*, *trans*, and optical isomers that could exist for the following (en is ethylenediamine):

a. $[Co(en)_2(NO_2)Cl]^+$
b. $[Co(en)_2Cl_2]^+$

c. $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$
d. $[Cr(en)_3]^{3+}$
e. $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$

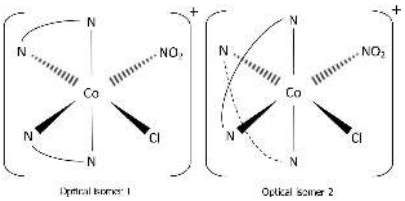
S19.2.5

We are instructed to draw all geometric isomers and optical isomers for the specified compound. Optical isomers exist when an isomer configuration is not superimposable on its mirror image. This means there are two distinct molecular shapes. Often a left and right hand are cited as an example; if you were to take your right hand and place it upon your left, you cannot make the major parts of your hand align on top of one another. The basic idea when deciding whether something is optically active is to look for a plane of symmetry--if you are able to bisect a compound in a manner that establishes symmetry, then the compound does not have an optical isomer.

Cis isomers exist when there are 2 ligands of the same species placed at 90 degree angles from each other. Trans isomers exist when there are 2 ligands of the same species placed at 180 degree angles from each other.

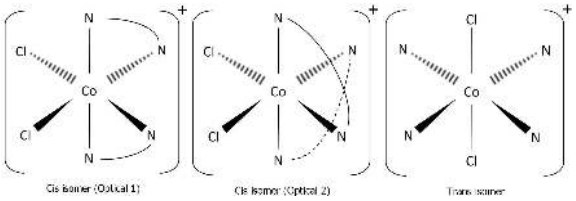
Problem 1

This compound is an octahedral molecule, so the six ligands (atoms in the complex that are not the central transition metal) are placed around the central atom at 90 degree angles. Two optical isomers exist for $[Co(en)_2(NO_2)Cl]^+$. The second isomer is drawn by taking the mirror image of the first.



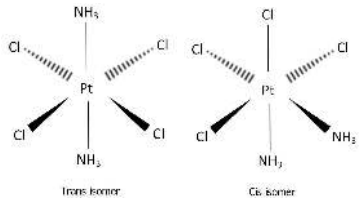
Problem 2

This compound is also an octahedral molecule. Two cis (optical) isomers and one trans isomer exist for $[Co(en)_2Cl_2]^+$. The trans isomer can be drawn by placing the chlorine ligands in positions where they form a 180 degree angle with the central atom. The first cis isomer can be drawn by placing the chlorine ligands in positions where they form a 90 degree angle with the central atom. The second cis isomer can be found by mirroring the first cis isomer, like we did in problem 1.



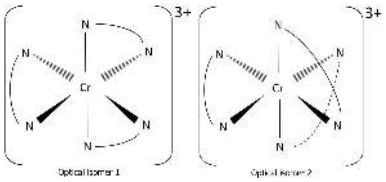
Problem 3

This compound is also an octahedral molecule. One trans isomer and one cis isomer of $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$ exist. The trans isomer can be drawn by placing the ammonia ligands in positions where they form a 180 degree angle with the central atom. The cis isomer can be drawn by placing the ammonia ligands in positions where they form a 90 degree angle with the central atom.



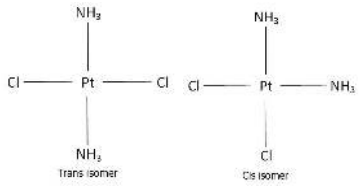
Problem 4

This compound is also an octahedral molecule. Two optical isomers for $[Cr(en)_3]^{3+}$ exist. The second optical isomer can be drawn by taking the mirror image of the first optical isomer.



Problem 5

This compound is a square planar complex, so the ligands are placed around the central atom in a plane, at 90 angles. A trans isomer and a cis isomer exist for the complex $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$. The trans isomer can be drawn by placing the ammonia ligands in positions where they form a 180 degree angle in the plane with the central atom. The cis isomer can be drawn by placing the ammonia ligands in positions where they form a 90 degree angle in the plane with the central atom.



Q19.2.6

Name each of the compounds or ions given in Exercise Q19.2.3, including the oxidation state of the metal.

S19.2.6

Rules to follow for coordination complexes

1. Cations are always named before the anions.

2. Ligands are named before the metal atom or ion.

3. Ligand names are modified with an -o added to the root name of an anion. For neutral ligands the name of the molecule is used, with the exception of OH2, NH3, CO and NO.

4. The prefixes mono-, di-, tri-, tetra-, penta-, and hexa- are used to denote the number of simple ligands.

5. The prefixes bis-, tris-, tetrakis-, etc., are used for more complicated ligands or ones that already contain di-, tri-, etc.

6. The oxidation state of the central metal ion is designated by a Roman numeral in parentheses.

7. When more than one type of ligand is present, they are named alphabetically. Prefixes do not affect the order.

8. If the complex ion has a negative charge, the suffix –ate is added to the name of the metal.

9. In the case of complex-ion isomerism the names cis, trans, fac, or mer may precede the formula of the complex-ion name to indicate the spatial arrangement of the ligands. Cis means the ligands occupy adjacent coordination positions, and trans means opposite positions just as they do for organic compounds. The complexity of octahedral complexes allows for two additional geometric isomers that are peculiar to coordination complexes. Fac means facial, or that the three like ligands occupy the vertices of one face of the octahedron. Mer means meridional, or that the three like ligands occupy the vertices of a triangle one side of which includes the central metal atom or ion.

A19.2.6

a. tricarbonatocobaltate(III) ion;
b. tetraaminecopper(II) ion;
c. tetraaminedibromocobalt(III) sulfate;
d. tetraamineplatinum(II) tetrachloroplatinate(II);
e. *tris*-(ethylenediamine)chromium(III) nitrate;
f. diaminedibromopalladium(II);
g. potassium pentachlorocuprate(II);
h. diaminedichlorozinc(II)

Q19.2.7

Name each of the compounds or ions given in Exercise Q19.2.5.

S19.2.7

Given:

1. $[Co(en)_2(NO_2)Cl]^+$
2. $[Co(en)_2Cl_2]^+$
3. $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$
4. $[Cr(en)_3]^{3+}$
5. $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$

Wanted:

Names of the above compounds.

1. $[Co(en)_2(NO_2)Cl]^+$

Step 1: Attain the names of the ligands and metal cation. Names can be found here.

Co: Cobalt

en: Ethylenediamine

NO_2: Nitro

Cl: Chloro

Step 2: Add the appropriate pre-fixes to each ligand depending on the number. Pre-fixes can be found here.

$(en)_2$: bis(Ethylenediamine)

Step 3: Find the charges of the ligands. Charges can be found here.

en: 0

NO_2: -1

Cl: -1

Step 4: Algebraically attain the charge of the metal cation using the overall charge of the complex ion and the individual ligand charges.

$Co + 2(en) + (NO_2) + Cl = 1$

$Co +2(0) + (-1) + (-1) = 1$

$Co = 3$

Step 5: For the name alphabetically place the ligands, pre-fixes should not be accounted, and use roman numerals for the metal cation which should be placed last.

Chlorobis(ethylenediamine)nitrocobalt(III)

2. $[Co(en)_2Cl_2]^+$

Step 1: Attain the names of the ligands and metal cation. Names can be found here.

Co: Cobalt

en: Ethylenediamine

Cl: Chloro

Step 2: Add the appropriate pre-fixes to each ligand depending on the number. Pre-fixes can be found here.

$(en)_2$: bis(Ethylenediamine)

Cl_2: dichloro

Step 3: Find the charges of the ligands. Charges can be found here.

en: 0

Cl: -1

Step 4: Algebraically attain the charge of the metal cation using the overall charge of the complex ion and the individual ligand charges.

$Co + 2(en) +2(Cl) = 1$

$Co + 2(0) + 2(-1) = 1$

$Co = 3$

Step 5: For the name alphabetically place the ligands, pre-fixes should not be accounted, and use roman numerals for the metal cation which should be placed last.

Dichlorobis(Ethylenediamine)cobalt(III)

3. $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$

Step 1: Attain the names of the ligands and metal cation. Names can be found here.

Pt: Platinum

NH_3: Ammine

Cl: Chloro

Step 2: Add the appropriate pre-fixes to each ligand depending on the number. Pre-fixes can be found here.

$(NH_3)_2$: diammine

Cl_4: tetrachloro

Step 3: Find the charges of the ligands. Charges can be found here.

NH_3: 0

Cl: -1

Step 4: Algebraically attain the charge of the metal cation using the overall charge of the complex ion and the individual ligand charges.

$Pt + 2(NH_3) + 4(Cl) = 0$

$Pt + 2(0) + 4(-1) = 0$

$Pt = 4$

Step 5: For the name alphabetically place the ligands, pre-fixes should not be accounted, and use roman numerals for the metal cation which should be placed last.

Diamminetetrachloroplatinum(IV)

4. $[Cr(en)_3]^{3+}$

Step 1: Attain the names of the ligands and metal cation. Names can be found here.

Cr: Cromium

en: ethylenediamine

Step 2: Add the appropriate pre-fixes to each ligand depending on the number. Pre-fixes can be found here.

$(en)_3$: tris(ethylenediamine)

Step 3: Find the charges of the ligands. Charges can be found here.

en: 0

Step 4: Algebraically attain the charge of the metal cation using the overall charge of the complex ion and the individual ligand charges.

$Cr + 3(en) = 3$

$Cr + 3(0) = 3$

$Cr = 3$

Step 5: For the name alphabetically place the ligands, pre-fixes should not be accounted, and use roman numerals for the metal cation which should be placed last.

Tris(ethylenediamine)cromium(III)

5. $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$

Step 1: Attain the names of the ligands and metal cation. Names can be found here.

NH_3: Ammine

Cl: Chloro

Pt: Platinum

Step 2: Add the appropriate pre-fixes to each ligand depending on the number.

$(NH_3)_2$: diammine

Cl_2: dichloro

Step 3: Find the charges of the ligands. Charges can be found here.

NH_3: 0

Cl: -1

Step 4: Algebraically attain the charge of the metal cation using the overall charge of the complex ion and the individual ligand charges.

$Pt + 2(NH_3) + 2(Cl) = 0$

$Pt + 2(0) + 2(-1) = 0$

$Pt = 2$

Step 5: For the name alphabetically place the ligands, pre-fixes should not be accounted, and use roman numerals for the metal cation which should be placed last.

Diamminedichloroplatinum(II)

A19.2.7

1. Chlorobis(ethylenediamine)nitrocobalt(III)
2. Dichlorobis(Ethylenediamine)cobalt(III)
3. Diamminetetrachloroplatinum(IV)
4. Tris(ethylenediamine)cromium(III)
5. Diamminedichloroplatinum(II)

Q19.2.8

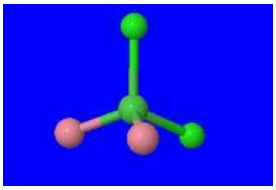
Specify whether the following complexes have isomers.

a. tetrahedral $[Ni(CO)_2(Cl)_2]$
b. trigonal bipyramidal $[Mn(CO)_4NO]$
c. $[Pt(en)_2Cl_2]Cl_2$

S19.2.8

Isomers are compounds that have the same number of atoms, but have different structures. Structural isomers (linkage, ionization, coordination) and stereoisomers (geometric and optical) can occur with several compounds.

1. tetrahedral $[Ni(CO)_2(Cl)_2]$

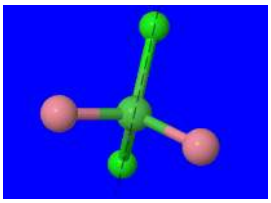


(Fig 1.) *In this model, nickel is the dark green central atom, carbonyl ligands are the pink atom, and chloro ligands are the light green atoms.*

Immediately, we can cancel out the possibility of linkage, ionization, and coordination isomers. There are no other coordination complexes for coordination isomerism, there is no ligand that can bond to the atom in more than one way for it to exhibit linkage isomerism, and there are no ions outside the coordination sphere for ionization isomerism.

This is a tetrahedral structure which immediately rules out any geometric isomers since they require 90° and/or 180° bond angles. Tetrahedral structures have 109.5° angles.

To confirm that the structure has no optical isomer, we must determine if there is a plane of symmetry. Structures that have no plane of symmetry are considered chiral and would have optical isomers.



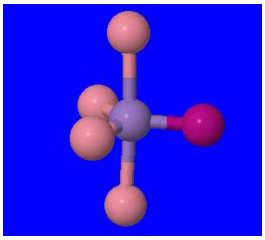
(Fig 2.) *We can rotate the structure and find that there is indeed a plane of symmetry through the two chloro ligands and central atom and between the carbonyl ligands.*

Since there is a plane of symmetry, we can conclude that there are no optical isomers.

Overall, there are no isomers that exist for this compound.

---

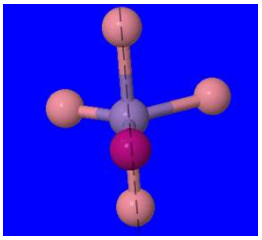
2. trigonal byprimidal $[\mathrm{Mn(CO)_4(NO)}]$



(Fig 3.) *The central purple atom is manganese, the carbonyl ligands are the pink atoms, and the nitrosyl ligand is the fuschia atom.*

There are no ions, other coordination complex, and ambidentate ligands. Therefore, no structural isomers exist for this structure.

Geometric isomers do not exist for this compound because there is only one nitrosyl ligand.



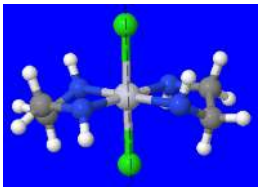
(Fig 4.) *Dashed line bisects molecule and shows plane of symmetry. The molecule is rotated in this image.*

In the image above, after the structure has been rotated, we can see that there is a plane of symmetry. Thus, there are no optical isomers.

No isomers (the ones mentioned above) exist for this compound.

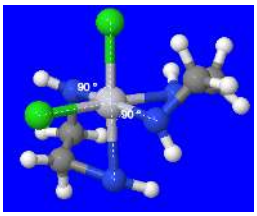
---

3. $[\mathrm{Pt(en)_2Cl_2}]\mathrm{Cl_2}$



(Fig 5.) *The green atoms are the chloro ligands, the the central atom is platinum, and the grey/blue atoms are ethyldiamine ligands.*

Coordination isomerism cannot exist for this complex because there are no other complexes. There are no linkage isomers because there are no ambidentate ligands. Ionization isomers cannot exist in this complex either, even though there is a neutral molecule outside the coordination sphere. If we exchange $\mathrm{Cl_2}$ with one ethyldiamine molecule, There would be 5 ligands in the coordination sphere instead of 4. This difference in the ratio of metal atom to ligands means that an ionization isomer cannot exist.



(Fig 6.) *Here, one chloro ligand exchanged places with the ethyldiamine so that it can be at a 90° angle with the other chloro ligand.*

The image above, shows the chloro and ethyldiamine ligands at a 90° angle with its other identical ligand. This is the *cis* isomer, while Fig. 5 shows the *trans* isomer.

Fig 5. shows that there is a plane of symmetry in the *trans* isomer. Therefore, that structure does not have an optical isomer. On the other hand, the *cis* isomer does not have a plane of symmetry and therefore has an optical isomer.

A19.2.8

none; none; The two Cl ligands can be *cis* or *trans*. When they are *cis*, there will also be an optical isomer.

Q19.2.9

Predict whether the carbonate ligand CO_3^{2-} will coordinate to a metal center as a monodentate, bidentate, or tridentate ligand.

S19.2.9

CO_3^{2-} can be either monodentate or bidentate, since two of its oxygen atoms have lone pairs as shown above and can form covalent bonds with a transition metal ion. In most cases carbonate is monodentate because of its trigonal planar geometry (there is 120 degrees between the oxygens so it's hard for both to bind to the same metal). However, in some cases it will bind to two different metals, making it bidentate.

A19.2.9

CO_3^{-2} will coordinate to a metal center as a monodentate ligand.

Q19.2.10

Draw the geometric, linkage, and ionization isomers for [$CoCl_5CN$][CN].

S19.2.10

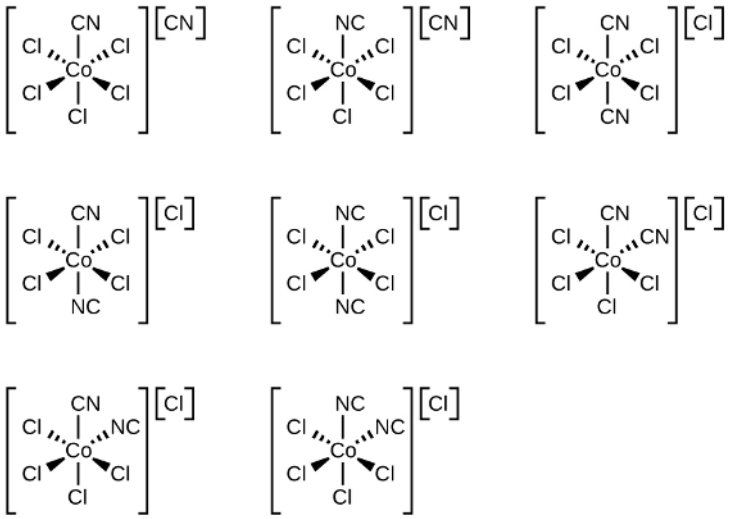
Isomers are compounds with same formula but different atom arrangement. There are two subcategories: **structural isomers**, which are isomers that contain the same number of atoms of each kind but differ in which atoms are bonded to one another, and **stereoisomers**, isomers that have the same molecular formula and ligands, but differ in the arrangement of those ligands in 3D space.

There are three subcategories under structural isomers: **ionization isomers**, which are isomers that are identical except for a ligand has exchanging places with an anion or neutral molecule that was originally outside the coordination complex; **coordination isomers**, isomers that have an interchange of some ligands from the cationic part to the anionic part; and **linkage isomers**, in two or more coordination compounds in which the donor atom of at least one of the ligands is different.

There are also two main kinds of stereoisomers: **geometric isomers**, metal complexes that differ only in which ligands are adjacent to one another (cis) or directly across from one another (trans) in the coordination sphere of the metal, and **optical isomers**, which occurs when the mirror image of an object is non-superimposable on the original object.

Some of the isomers look almost identical, but that is because the CN ligand can be attached by both (but not at the same time) the C or N.

A19.2.10



19.3: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds

Q19.3.1

Determine the number of unpaired electrons expected for $[Fe(NO_2)_6]^{3-}$and for $[FeF_6]^{3-}$ in terms of crystal field theory.

S19.3.1

- The crystal field theory is is a model that describes the breaking of degeneracies of electron orbital states, usually d or f orbitals, due to a static electric field produced by a surrounding charge distribution.
- The degenerate d-orbitals split into two levels, e_g and t_{2g}, in the presence of ligands.
- The energy difference between the two levels is called the crystal-field splitting energy, $\Delta_\circ$.
- After 1 electron each has been filled in the three t_{2g} orbitals, the filling of the fourth electron takes place either in the e_g orbital or in the t_{2g}, where the electrons pair up. depending on whether the complex is high spin or low spin.
- If the $\Delta_\circ$ value of a ligand is less than the pairing energy (P), then the electrons enter the e_g orbital, but if the $\Delta_\circ$ value of a ligand is more than the pairing energy (P), then the electrons enter the t_{2g} orbital.
- when the Δ_o is less than the pairing energy, the electrons prefer then e_g orbitals because there is not enough energy to pair the electrons together. It will be **high** spin
- when the Δ_o is more then the pairing energy, the electrons prefer the t_{2g} because there is enough energy to pair the electrons. It will be **low** spin.

Step 1: Determine the oxidation state of the Fe

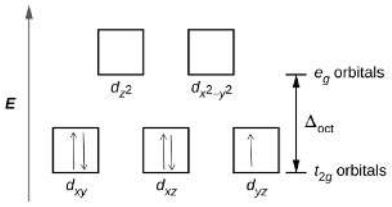
For $[Fe(NO_2)_6]^{3-}$ and $[FeF_6]^{3-}$, both NO_2 and F_6 have a charge of -1. Since there is 6 of them then that means the charge is -6 and in order for there to be an overall charge of -3, Fe has to have a +3 charge.

Step 2: Determine type of ligand

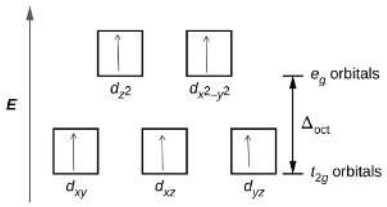
Based on the spectrochemical series we can see that NO_2^- is a stronger field ligand than F^-, and therefore is a low spin complex because it has a high $\Delta_\circ$ unlike F^- which is a high spin.

Step 3: Draw the crystal field

$[Fe(NO_2)_6]^{3-}$



$[FeF_6]^{3-}$



There is 1 unpaired electron for $[Fe(NO_2)_6]^{3-}$, and 5 for $[FeF_6]^{3-}$ based on the crystal field theory.

A19.3.1

$[Fe(NO_2)_6]^{3-}$:1 electron

$[FeF_6]^{3-}$:5 electrons

Q19.3.2

Draw the crystal field diagrams for $[Fe(NO_2)_6]^{4-}$ and $[FeF_6]^{2-}$. State whether each complex is high spin or low spin, paramagnetic or diamagnetic, and compare Δ_{oct} to P for each complex.

S19.3.2

a)

$$[Fe(NO_2)_6]^{-4} \tag{7.4.76}$$

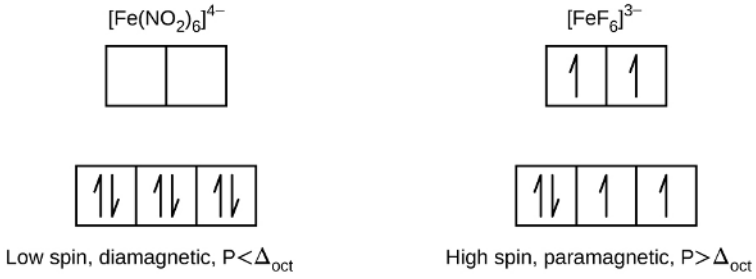
- NO_2^- has a -1 charge. The overall ion has a -4 charge, therefore Fe must be +2 charge. (The math: $\boldsymbol{x+(6)(-1)=-4, x+-6=-4, x=+2}$ **or** 2+(6*-1)=-4)
- Fe^{2+} has 6 valence electrons.
- Next we look at the ligand bonded to Fe, which is NO_2^- . Based on the spectrochemical Series, NO_2^- is a strong field ligand meaning that it has a large **DELTA$_o$** large splitting energy in comparison to the pairing energy, P. So the electrons would rather pair up, as it takes the least amount of energy.
- So $[Fe(NO_2)_6]^{4-}$ is low spin.
- All 6 electrons are paired up, so it is diamagnetic.

b)

$$[FeF_6]^{-3} \tag{7.4.77}$$

- F^- has a -1 charge. The overall ion has a -3 charge, therefore Fe must be +3 charge. (The math: $\boldsymbol{x+(-1)(6)=-3, x+-6=-3, x=+3}$ **or** 3+(6*-1)=-3)
- F^{3+} has 5 valence electrons.
- Next we look at the ligand bonded to Fe, which is F^- . Based on the Spectrochemical Series, F^- is a weak field ligand, meaning that it has a small DELTA$_o$ or small splitting energy in comparison to the pairing energy, P. So the electrons would rather split up and move up to the higher energy level, rather than pairing up, as it takes the least amount of energy.
- So $[Fe(NO_2)_6]^{4-}$ is high spin.
- $[FeF_6]^{3-}$ is paramagnetic because it has unpaired electrons.

A19.3.2



Q19.3.3

Give the oxidation state of the metal, number of *d* electrons, and the number of unpaired electrons predicted for $[Co(NH_3)_6]Cl_3$.

S19.3.3

The oxidation state of the metal can be found by identifying the charge of one of each molecule in the coordinate compound, multiplying each molecule's charge by the respective number of molecules present, and adding the products. This final sum represents the charge of the overall coordination compound. You can then solve for the oxidation state of the metal algebraically. In this case, one chloride anion Cl^- has a charge of -1. So three chloride anions have a total charge of -3. One ammine ligand NH_3 has no charge so six ammine ligands have a total charge of zero. Finally, we are trying to solve for the oxidation state of a cobalt ion. Now we can write the equation that adds the total charges of each molecule or ion and is equal to the total charge of the overall coordinate compound.

$$(\text{oxidation state of Co}) + (-3) + 0 = 0 \tag{7.4.78}$$

$$\text{oxidation state of Co} = +3 \tag{7.4.79}$$

So the oxidation state of Co is +3. Now we need to identify the number of d-electrons in the Co^{3+} ion. The electron configuration for cobalt that has no charge is

$$[\text{Ar}]4\text{s}^2 3\text{d}^7 \tag{7.4.80}$$

However, a Co^{3+} ion has 3 less electrons than its neutral counterpart and has an electron configuration of

$$[\text{Ar}]3\text{d}^6 \tag{7.4.81}$$

For transition metals, the s electrons are lost first. So cobalt loses its two 4s electrons first and then loses a single 3d electron meaning **Co^{3+} ion has 6 d electrons.** To predict the number of unpaired electrons, we must first determine if the complex is high spin or low spin. Whether the complex is high spin or low spin is determined by the ligand in the coordinate complex. Specifically, the ligand must be identified as either a weak-field ligand or a strong-field ligand based on the spectrochemical series. Weak-field ligands induce high spin while strong-field ligands induce low spin. We can then construct the energy diagram or crystal field diagram of the designated spin that has the proper electron placings. The geometric shape of the compound must also be identified to construct the correct diagram. Finally, from this crystal field diagram we can determine the number of unpaired electrons. The number of electrons in the diagram is equal to the number of d electrons of the metal. The ligand in this case is NH_3, which is a strong field ligand according to the spectrochemical series. This means that the complex is low spin. Additionally, six monodentate ligands means the ligand field is octahedral. The number of electrons that will be in the diagram is 6 since the metal ion Co^{3+} has 6 d electrons. Now the proper crystal field diagram can be constructed.



From the crystal field diagram, we can tell that **the complex has no unpaired electrons**.

A19.3.3

a) 3+

b) 6 d electrons

c) No unpaired electrons

Q19.3.4

The solid anhydrous solid $CoCl_2$ is blue in color. Because it readily absorbs water from the air, it is used as a humidity indicator to monitor if equipment (such as a cell phone) has been exposed to excessive levels of moisture. Predict what product is formed by this reaction, and how many unpaired electrons this complex will have.

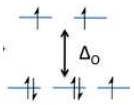
S19.3.4

From our knowledge of ligands and coordination compounds (or if you need a refresher Coordination Compounds), we can assume the product of $CoCl_2$ in water. H_2O is a common weak field ligand that forms six ligand bonds around the central Cobalt atom while the Chloride stays on the outer sphere. We can use this to determine the complex:

$[Co(H_2O)_6]Cl_2$

From this formation, we can use the Crystal Field Theory (CFT)(Crystal Field Theory) to determine the number of unpaired electrons. This coordination compound has six ligand bonds attached to the central atom which means the CFT model will follow the octahedral splitting. Keep in mind that we know H_2O is a weak field ligand and will produce a high spin. High spin is when the electrons pairing energy (P) is greater than the octahedral splitting energy. Thus, the electrons spread out and maximize spin.

In order to fill out our crystal field diagram, we need to determine the charge of cobalt. Because the H_2O ligand is neutral, and there are two chlorine ions, we can deduce the charge of cobalt is plus two in order to make the coordination complex neutral. From here, we can use the electron configuration of Co^{2+} is $[Ar]4s^23d^7$. The electrons that are taken away from the cobalt atom in order to form the plus two charge will from the 4s orbital and leave the 3d orbital untouched. Thus, there will be 7 electrons in the crystal field diagram and appear as:



We can see here that there are 3 unpaired electrons.

A19.3.4

$[Co(H_2O)_6]Cl_2$ with three unpaired electrons.

Q19.3.5

Is it possible for a complex of a metal in the transition series to have six unpaired electrons? Explain.

A19.3.5

Is it possible for a complex of a metal in the transition series to have six unpaired electrons? Explain.

It is not possible for a metal in the transition series to have six unpaired electrons. This is because transition metals have a general electron configuration of $(n-1)d^{1-10}$ ns^{1-2} where n is the quantum number. The last electron will go into the d orbital which has 5 orbitals that can each contain 2 electrons, yielding 10 electrons total. According to Hund's Rule, electrons prefer to fill each orbital singly before they pair up. This is more energetically favorable. Since there are only 5 orbitals and due to Hund's Rule, the maximum number of unpaired electrons a transition metal can have is 5. Therefore, there cannot be a complex of a transition metal that has 6 unpaired electrons.

For example, lets look at iron's electron configuration. Iron has an electron configuration of $1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^64s^23d^6$. Now the most important orbital to look at is the d orbital which has 6 electrons in it, but there are only 4 unpaired electrons as you can see by this diagram:

3d: [↑↓] [↑] [↑] [↑] [↑]

Each [ ] represents an orbital within the d orbital. This diagram follows Hund's rule and shows why no transition metal can have 6 unpaired electrons.

Q19.3.6

How many unpaired electrons are present in each of the following?

a. $[CoF_6]^{3-}$ (high spin)
b. $[Mn(CN)_6]^{3-}$ (low spin)
c. $[Mn(CN)_6]^{4-}$ (low spin)
d. $[MnCl_6]^{4-}$ (high spin)
e. $[RhCl_6]^{3-}$ (low spin)

S19.3.6

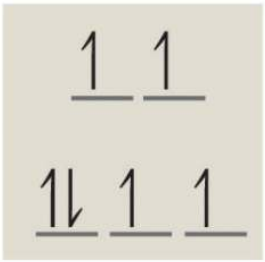
1. For $[CoF_6]^{3-}$, we first found the oxidation state of Co, which is 3+ since F has a 1- charge and since there is 6 F, Co's charge has to be 3+ for the overall charge to be 3-.

$$\text{charge of Co} + \text{-6} = \text{-6} \tag{7.4.82}$$

$$\text{charge of Co} = +3 \tag{7.4.83}$$

After finding the oxidation state, I then go to the periodic table to find its electron configuration: $[Ar]3d^6$

We distribute the 6 d-orbital electrons along the complex and since it is high spin, the electrons is distributed once in each energy level before it is paired. There is only one pair and the other 4 electrons are unpaired, making the answer 4.



2. The same process is repeated. We find the charge of Mn, which is 3+, making the electron configuration: [Ar]$3d^4$

$$\text{charge of Mn} + \text{-6} = \text{-3} \tag{7.4.84}$$

$$\text{charge of Mn} = +3 \tag{7.4.85}$$

There is a difference between this and number 1. This is low spin so instead of distributing one electron in each level before pairing it, I must distribute one electron on the bottom and then pair them all up before I'm able to move to the top portion. So since there is 4, there is only a pair at d_{yz} and the other two electrons are unpaired. Making the number of unpaired electrons 2.

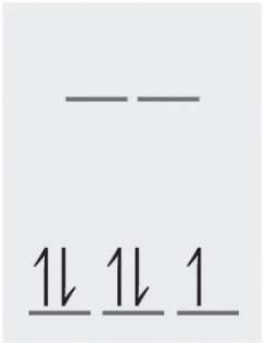


3.The same process as number 2 is applied. The only difference is that the charge of Mn is now 2+ so the electron configuration: [Ar]$3d^5$.

$$\text{charge of Mn} + \text{-6} = \text{-4} \tag{7.4.86}$$

$$\text{charge of Mn} = +2 \tag{7.4.87}$$

Since is it low spin like number 2, I only need to add an extra electron to the next level, making that 2 pairs of electron and only 1 electron unpaired.

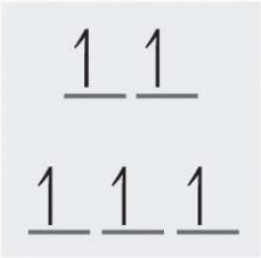


4. Since Cl has a -1 charge like CN, Mn's charge is also 2+ with the same electron configuration as number 3, which is 5.

$$\text{charge of Mn} + \text{-6} = \text{-4} \tag{7.4.88}$$

$$\text{charge of Mn} = +2 \tag{7.4.89}$$

With 5 electrons, this is high spin instead of low. So as stated in number 1, we pair distribute the electrons on all levels first. Since there are 5 electrons and 5 levels and they are al distributed, there are zero pairs, making that 5 unpaired electrons.



5. Using the same process as the problems above, Rh's charge is 3+, with the electron configuration: [Kr]4d^6.

$$\text{charge of Rh} + \text{-6} = \text{-3} \tag{7.4.90}$$

$$\text{charge of Mn} = +3 \tag{7.4.91}$$

With a low spin and 6 electrons, all electrons are paired up, making it 0 electrons that are unpaired.



A19.3.6

4; 2; 1; 5; 0

Q19.3.7

Explain how the diphosphate ion, $[O_3P{-}O{-}PO_3]^{4-}$, can function as a water softener that prevents the precipitation of Fe^{2+} as an insoluble iron salt.

S19.3.7

The diphosphate ion, $[O_3P{-}O{-}PO_3]^{4-}$ can function as a water softener keeping the iron in a water soluble form because of its more negative electrochemical potential than water's. This is similar to the way plating prevents metals from reacting with oxygen to corrode.

Mineral deposits are formed by ionic reactions. The Fe^{2+} will form an insoluble iron salt of iron(III) oxide-hydroxide when a salt of ferric iron hydrolyzes water. However, with the addition of $[O_3P{-}O{-}PO_3]^{4-}$, the Fe^{2+} cations are more attracted to the PO_3 group, forming a $Fe(PO_3)$ complex.

The excess minerals in this type of water is considered hard thus its name hard water.

Q19.3.8

For complexes of the same metal ion with no change in oxidation number, the stability increases as the number of electrons in the t_{2g} orbitals increases. Which complex in each of the following pairs of complexes is more stable?

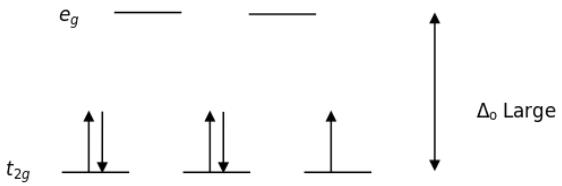
a. $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ or $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$
b. $[Co(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$ or $[CoF_6]^{3-}$
c. $[Mn(CN)_6]^{4-}$ or $[MnCl_6]^{4-}$

S19.3.8

The Spectrochemical Series is as follows

$$I^- < Br^- < SCN^- \approx Cl^- < F^- < OH^- < ONO^- < ox < H_2O < SCN^- < EDTA < NH_3 < en < NO_2^- < CN \tag{7.4.92}$$

The strong field ligands (on the right) are low spin which fills in more electrons in the t_{2g} orbitals. The weak field ligands (on the left) are high spin so it can fill electrons in the t_{2g} orbitals and e_g orbitals. In conclusion, more electrons are filled up from the strong field ligands because the electrons don't move up to the e_g orbitals.



a. $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$

CN is a stronger ligand than H_2O so it is low spin, which fills up the t_{2g} orbitals.

b. $[Co(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$

NH_3 is a stronger ligand than F.

c. $[Mn(CN)_6]^{4-}$

CN is a stronger ligand than Cl^-.

For more information regarding the shape of the complex and d-electron configuration, libretext provides more information on how to classify high and low spin complexes.

A19.3.8

$[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$; $[Co(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$; $[Mn(CN)_6]^{4-}$

Q19.3.9

Trimethylphosphine, $P(CH_3)_3$, can act as a ligand by donating the lone pair of electrons on the phosphorus atom. If trimethylphosphine is added to a solution of nickel(II) chloride in acetone, a blue compound that has a molecular mass of approximately 270 g and contains 21.5% Ni, 26.0% Cl, and 52.5% $P(CH_3)_3$ can be isolated. This blue compound does not have any isomeric forms. What are the geometry and molecular formula of the blue compound?

S19.3.9

1)Find the empirical formula. There is a total of 270 grams. To find out how many grams of each element/compound there are, multiply the percentage by the mass (270).

$$(270g)(0.215) = 58.05gNi \tag{7.4.93}$$

$$(270g)(0.26) = 70.2gCl \tag{7.4.94}$$

$$(270g)(0.525) = 141.75gP(CH_3)_3 \tag{7.4.95}$$

Now that we have the grams of each element/compound, we can convert them to moles by using their molar mass.

$$(58.055gNi)(\frac{1mol.}{58.69gNi}) = 0.989mol.\,Ni \tag{7.4.96}$$

$$(70.2gCl)(\frac{1mol.}{35.45gCl}) = 1.98mol.\,Cl \tag{7.4.97}$$

$$(141.75gP(CH_3)_3)(\frac{1mol.}{76.07gP(CH_3)_3}) = 1.86mol.\,P(CH_3)_3 \tag{7.4.98}$$

Now that we have the moles of all elements/compounds, we can find the ratio of all them to each other. To do this, we take the element/compound with the least amount of moles and divide all element/compound moles by this amount. In this case, Ni has the least number of moles.

$$\frac{0.989mol.\,Ni}{0.989mol.\,Ni} = 1 \tag{7.4.99}$$

$$\frac{1.98mol.\,Cl}{0.989mol.\,Ni} = approx.2 \tag{7.4.100}$$

$$\frac{1.86mol.\ P(CH_3)_3}{0.989mol.\ Ni} = approx.2 \tag{7.4.101}$$

We now know the ratio of all element/compounds in the blue compound.

The empirical formula is: $NiCl(P(CH_3)_3)_2$

This formula shows us there are 4 ligands. There are 2 chlorine ligands and 2 trimethylphosphine ligands. This means that the blue compound has either a tetrahedral or square planar shape, where tetrahedral shapes are capable of different isomeric forms when all ligands are different (because if not, there is only 1 way for them to be arranged), and square planar shapes are capable of cis/trans forms. In the problem, it states this compound does not have any isomeric forms, therefore this has a tetrahedral shape.

A19.3.9

a) $NiCl(P(CH_3)_3)_2$

b) Tetrahedral

Q19.3.10

Would you expect the complex $[Co(en)_3]Cl_3$ to have any unpaired electrons? Any isomers?

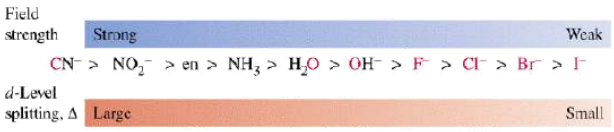
S19.3.10

Assign oxidation states to each element. Cl- has a -1 oxidation state. En is neutral, so 0. The entire complex is also neutral, so in order to balance the charges out, Co must be +3 because there are 3 chlorides, which gives a -3 charge.

STEP 2:

Write the electron configuration for Co^{3+}. $[Ar]3d^6$. There are 6 electrons.

STEP 3:



Check where en lies on the spectrochemical series. Does it have a strong field strength? It does, so these electrons will exist at the d-level with high splitting energy because the magnitude of the pairing energy is less than the crystal field splitting energy in the octahedral field.

You will the notice that there aren't any unpaired electrons when you draw the Crystal Field Theory (CFT) diagram.



This complex does not have any geometric isomers because cis-trans structures cannot be formed. The mirror image is nonsuperimpoasable, which means the enantiomers are chiral molecules; if the mirror image is placed on top on the original molecule, then they will never be perfectly aligned to give the same molecule.

A19.3.10

The complex does not have any unpaired electrons. The complex does not have any geometric isomers, but the mirror image is nonsuperimposable, so it has an optical isomer.

Q19.3.11

Would you expect the $Mg_3[Cr(CN)_6]_2$ to be diamagnetic or paramagnetic? Explain your reasoning.

S19.3.11

The first step to determine the magnetism of the complex is to calculate the oxidation state of the transition metal. In this case, the transition metal is Cr.

Before doing so, we need to find charge of the of the complex ion $[Cr(CN)_6]_2$ given that the oxidation state of Mg_3 is 2+. Using the subscripts of the Mg^{2+} ion and the $[Cr(CN)_6]_2$ complex, we find that the oxidation state of $[Cr(CN)_6]_2$, x, to be:

$3(+2) + 2(x) = 0$

$x = 3$

Now that we found the charge of the coordination complex, we are able to find the charge of the transition metal Cr given that the charge of CN is -1. Again, using the subscripts we find the oxidation state of Cr, y, to be:

$y + 6(-1) = -3$

$y = 3$

Therefore, the oxidation state of the transition metal Cr is Cr^{3+}

Next, using the transition metal Cr^{3+} and the periodic table as reference, we can determine the electron configuration of Cr^{3+} to be $[Ar]d^3$. This means that Cr^{3+} has 3 unpaired electrons in the 3d sublevel. Therefore, we find that since at least one electron is unpaired(in this case all 3 electrons are unpaired), $Mg_3[Cr(CN)_6]_2$ is paramagnetic.

A19.3.11

a) Paramagnetic

Q19.3.12

Would you expect salts of the gold ion, Au^+, to be colored? Explain.

S19.3.12

No. **Colored ions have unpaired electrons in their outmost orbital**. A partially filled d orbital, for example, can yield various colors. After completing the noble gas configuration, we see that Au^+ has a configuration of [Xe] $4f^{14}\mathbf{5d^{10}}$. Since Au^+ has a **completely filled d sublevel**, we are certain that any salts of the gold ion, Au^+ will be **colorless.**

*An example of a colored ion would be copper(II). Cu^{2+} has an electron configuration of [Ar]$3d^9$. It has one unpaired electron. Copper(II) appears blue.

A19.3.12

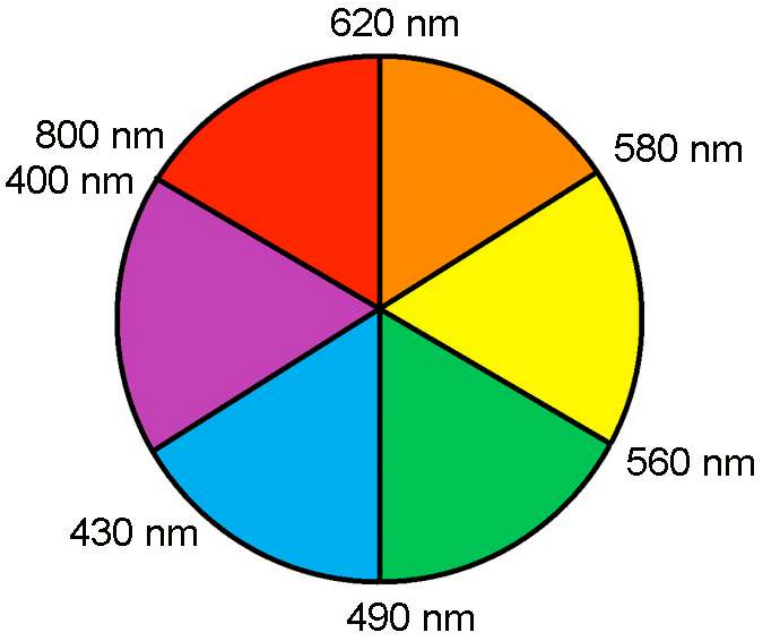
No. Au^+ has a complete 5*d* sublevel.

Q19.3.13

$[CuCl_4]^{2-}$ is green. $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$is blue. Which absorbs higher-energy photons? Which is predicted to have a larger crystal field splitting?

S19.3.13

Although a color might appear a certain way, it actual absorbs a different color, opposite of it on the color wheel.



In this case;

$[CuCl_4]^{2-}$ appears green but is opposite of red on the color wheel which is absorbed and is characterized by wavelengths 620-800 nanometers.

$[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ appears blue but is opposite of orange on the color wheel which is absorbed and is characterized by wavelengths 580-620 nanometers.

When determining which absorbs the higher energy photons, one must look at the complex itself. A higher energy indicates a high energy photon absorbed and a lower energy indicates a lower energy photon absorbed. How can we determine this? By looking at the complex and more specifically the ligand attached and its location in the spectrochemical series.

Merging to get spectrochemical series

$CO, CN^- > phen > en > NH_3 > NCS^- > H_2O > F^- > RCO_2^- > OH^- > Cl^- > Br^- > I^-$

Strong field,
π acceptors
large Δ
low spin

σ only

Weak field,
π donors
small Δ
high spin

$$E = \frac{hc}{\lambda}$$

The ligands attached are Water and Chlorine and since Water is a stronger ligand than Chlorine according to the series, it also has larger energy, indicating a higher energy. This means that the complex $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ absorbs a higher energy photon because of its a stronger ligand than chlorine.

Part 2 of this question also asks which complex is predicted to have a larger crystal field splitting. To determine this you also use the spectrochemical series and see which ligand is stronger. Since H_2O is stronger than Cl^- on the spectrochemical series, we can say $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ has a higher crystal field splitting.

A19.3.13

a) $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$

b) $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ has a higher crystal field splitting

This page titled 7.4: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

Index

A

acid ionization
2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
acid ionization constant
2.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
acidic
2.2: pH and pOH
Actinide series
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
activated complex
3.6: Collision Theory
activation energy
3.6: Collision Theory
active electrode
5.2: Galvanic Cells
alkaline battery
5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells
alloy
1.8.2 The Dissolution Process
alpha decay
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
alpha particle
3.9.2 Nuclear Equations
amphiprotic
2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
amphoteric
2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
anode
5.2: Galvanic Cells
antimatter
3.9.2 Nuclear Equations
aqueous solution
1.7: Molarity
Arrhenius equation
3.6: Collision Theory
autoionization
2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
average rate
3.2: Chemical Reaction Rates
Avogadro's number
1.6: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept

B

band of stability
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
base ionization
2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
base ionization constant
2.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
basic
2.2: pH and pOH
battery
5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells
Becquerel
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
beta decay
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
beta particle
3.9.2 Nuclear Equations
bidentate ligand
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
bimolecular reaction
3.7: Reaction Mechanisms
binary acid
1.5: Chemical Nomenclature
binary compound
1.5: Chemical Nomenclature
binding energy per nucleon
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
bomb calorimeter
4.2: Calorimetry
buffer
2.6: Buffers
buffer capacity
2.6: Buffers

C

calorie
4.1: Energy Basics
calorimeter
4.2: Calorimetry
calorimetry
4.2: Calorimetry
catalyst
3.3: Factors Affecting Reaction Rates
cathode
5.2: Galvanic Cells
cathodic protection
5.6: Corrosion
Cell Notation
5.2: Galvanic Cells
cell potential
5.2: Galvanic Cells
Celsius
1.2: Measurements
central metal
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
chain reaction
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
chelate
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
chelating ligand
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
chemical thermodynamics
4.3: Enthalpy
chemistry
1.1: Chemistry in Context
Chemotherapy
3.9.5 Uses of Radioisotopes
circuit
5.1: Balancing Oxidation-Reduction Reactions
cis configuration
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
collision theory
3.6: Collision Theory
common ion effect
2.9.1 Precipitation and Dissolution
complex ion
2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases
concentrated
1.7: Molarity
concentration
1.7: Molarity
concentration cell
5.4: The Nernst Equation
conjugate acid
2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
conjugate base
2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
containment system
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
control rod
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
conversion factors
1.3: Mathematical Treatment of Measurement Results
coordinate covalent bond
2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases
coordination compound
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
coordination number
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
coordination sphere
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
corrosion
5.6: Corrosion
critical mass
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
crystal field splitting
7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
crystal field theory
7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
cubic centimeter
1.2: Measurements
cubic meter
1.2: Measurements
curie
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
current
5.1: Balancing Oxidation-Reduction Reactions

D

daughter nuclide
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
density
1.2: Measurements
diluted
1.7: Molarity
dilution
1.7: Molarity
dimensional analysis
1.3: Mathematical Treatment of Measurement Results
diprotic acid
2.5: Polyprotic Acids
diprotic base
2.5: Polyprotic Acids

dissociation
1.8.3 Electrolytes
dissociation constant
2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases
dissolved
1.7: Molarity
donor atom
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
dry cell
5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells

E

eg orbitals
7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
electrical potential
5.1: Balancing Oxidation-Reduction Reactions
electrical work
5.4: The Nernst Equation
electrolysis
5.7: Electrolysis
electrolyte
1.8.3 Electrolytes
electrolytic cell
5.7: Electrolysis
electron capture
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
electron volt
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
electroplating
5.7: Electrolysis
elementary reaction
3.7: Reaction Mechanisms
empirical formula
1.4: Chemical Formulas
endothermic process
4.1: Energy Basics
energy
4.1: Energy Basics
enthalpy
4.3: Enthalpy
enthalpy change
4.3: Enthalpy
entropy
4.6: Entropy
equilibrium
1.9.2 Chemical Equilibria
equilibrium constant
1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants
exothermic process
4.1: Energy Basics
expansion work
4.3: Enthalpy
external beam radiation therapy
3.9.5 Uses of Radioisotopes

F

Fahrenheit
1.3: Mathematical Treatment of Measurement Results
Faraday's constant
5.4: The Nernst Equation
first law of thermodynamics
4.3: Enthalpy
first transition series
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
fissile
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
fission
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
fissionable
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
formation constant
2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases
Formula Mass
1.6: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept
fourth transition series
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
frequency factor
3.6: Collision Theory
fuel cell
5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells
fusion
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
fusion reactor
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy

G

galvanic cell
5.2: Galvanic Cells
galvanized iron
5.6: Corrosion
gamma emission
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
gamma ray
3.9.2 Nuclear Equations
Geiger counter
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
geometric isomers
7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
Gibbs free energy
4.8: Gibbs Energy
gray (unit)
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation

H

heat
4.1: Energy Basics
heat capacity
4.1: Energy Basics
Henry's Law
1.8.4 Solubility
Hess's law
4.3: Enthalpy
heterogeneous catalyst
3.8: Catalysis
heterogeneous equilibria
1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants
homogeneous catalyst
3.8: Catalysis
homogeneous equilibria
1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants
hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
hybridization
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
hydrocarbon
4.3: Enthalpy
hydrometallurgy
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
hypothesis
1.1: Chemistry in Context

I

ideal solution
1.8.2 The Dissolution Process
immiscible
1.8.4 Solubility
inert electrode
5.2: Galvanic Cells
initial rate
3.2: Chemical Reaction Rates
instantaneous rate
3.2: Chemical Reaction Rates
integrated rate law
3.5: Integrated Rate Laws
intermediate
3.7: Reaction Mechanisms
internal energy
4.3: Enthalpy
internal radiation therapy
3.9.5 Uses of Radioisotopes
International System of Units
1.2: Measurements
ionic solvent
5.7: Electrolysis
ionization isomer
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
ionizing radiation
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
isomers
1.4: Chemical Formulas

J

joule
4.1: Energy Basics

K

Kc
1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants
Kelvin
1.2: Measurements
kilogram
1.2: Measurements
kinetic energy
4.1: Energy Basics
Kp
1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants

L

lanthanide series
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
law
1.1: Chemistry in Context
Law of Mass Action
1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants

Le Chatelier's principle
1.9.4 Shifting Equilibria - Le Châtelier's Principle
lead acid battery
5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells
length
1.2: Measurements
leveling effect of water
2.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
Lewis acid
2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases
Lewis base
2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases
ligand
2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
linkage isomer
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
liter
1.2: Measurements
lithium ion battery
5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells

M

macroscopic domain
1.1: Chemistry in Context
magic number
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
mass defect
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
meter
1.2: Measurements
Method of Initial Rates
3.4: Rate Laws
microscopic domain
1.1: Chemistry in Context
microstates
4.6: Entropy
millicurie
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
milliliter
1.2: Measurements
miscible
1.8.4 Solubility
molar mass
1.6: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept
molar solubility
2.9.1 Precipitation and Dissolution
molarity
1.7: Molarity
mole
1.6: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept
molecular formula
1.4: Chemical Formulas
molecularity
3.7: Reaction Mechanisms
monodentate
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
monoprotic acid
2.5: Polyprotic Acids
multiple equilibrium
2.9.3 Coupled Equilibria

N

Nernst equation
5.4: The Nernst Equation
neutral
2.2: pH and pOH
node
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
nomenclature
1.5: Chemical Nomenclature
nonelectrolyte
1.8.3 Electrolytes
Nonionizing radiation
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
nonspontaneous process
4.5: Spontaneity
nuclear binding energy
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
nuclear chemistry
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
nuclear fuel
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
nuclear moderator
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
nuclear reaction
3.9.2 Nuclear Equations
Nuclear Reactor
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
nuclear transmutation
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
nucleon
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
nutritional calorie
4.2: Calorimetry

O

optical isomer
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
overall reaction order
3.4: Rate Laws
overlap
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
overpotential
5.7: Electrolysis
oxyacid
1.5: Chemical Nomenclature
2.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases

P

pairing energy
7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
parent nuclide
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
partially miscible
1.8.4 Solubility
particle accelerator
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
percent of ionization
2.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
pH
2.2: pH and pOH
pi bond
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
platinum metals
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
pOH
2.2: pH and pOH
polydentate ligand
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
position of equilibrium
1.9.4 Shifting Equilibria - Le Châtelier's Principle
Positron
3.9.2 Nuclear Equations
positron emission
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
potential energy
4.1: Energy Basics
primary battery
5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells

R

radiation absorbed dose
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
radiation dosimeter
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
radiation therapy
3.9.5 Uses of Radioisotopes
radioactive decay
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
radioactive decay series
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
radioactive tracer
3.9.5 Uses of Radioisotopes
radioactivity
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
radiocarbon dating
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
radioisotope
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
radiometric dating
3.9.3 Radioactive Decay
rare earth element
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
rate constant
3.4: Rate Laws
rate expression
3.2: Chemical Reaction Rates
rate law
3.4: Rate Laws
rate of reaction
3.2: Chemical Reaction Rates
reaction mechanism
3.7: Reaction Mechanisms
reaction order
3.4: Rate Laws
reaction quotient
1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants
reactor coolant
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
relative biological effectiveness
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
reversible process
4.6: Entropy
reversible reaction
1.9.2 Chemical Equilibria

roentgen equivalent man
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation

S

sacrificial anode
5.6: Corrosion
saturated
1.8.4 Solubility
scientific method
1.1: Chemistry in Context
scintillation counter
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
second
1.2: Measurements
Second Law of Thermodynamics
4.7: The Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics
second transition series
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
secondary battery
5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells
selective precipitation
2.9.1 Precipitation and Dissolution
SI units
1.2: Measurements
sievert
3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation
sigma bond
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
smelting
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
solubility
1.8.4 Solubility
solubility product
2.9.1 Precipitation and Dissolution
solute
1.7: Molarity
solvation
1.8.2 The Dissolution Process
solvent
1.7: Molarity
sp hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
sp2 hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
sp3 hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
sp3d hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
sp3d2 hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
spatial isomers
1.4: Chemical Formulas
specific heat capacity
4.1: Energy Basics
spectrochemical series
7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
spontaneous change
4.5: Spontaneity
spontaneous process
1.8.2 The Dissolution Process
standard cell potential
5.3: Standard Reduction Potentials
standard enthalpy of combustion
4.3: Enthalpy
standard enthalpy of formation
4.3: Enthalpy
standard entropy
4.7: The Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics
standard entropy change
4.7: The Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics
standard free energy change
4.8: Gibbs Energy
standard free energy of formation
4.8: Gibbs Energy
standard hydrogen electrode
5.3: Standard Reduction Potentials
standard reduction potential
5.3: Standard Reduction Potentials
standard state
4.3: Enthalpy
state function
4.3: Enthalpy
steel
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
stepwise ionization
2.5: Polyprotic Acids
stress
1.9.4 Shifting Equilibria - Le Châtelier's Principle
strong electrolyte
1.8.3 Electrolytes
strong nuclear force
3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability
structural formula
1.4: Chemical Formulas
structural isomers
1.4: Chemical Formulas
subcritical mass
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
superconductor
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
supercritical mass
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
supersaturated
1.8.4 Solubility
surroundings
4.2: Calorimetry
symbolic domain
1.1: Chemistry in Context
system
4.2: Calorimetry

T

t2g orbitals
7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
temperature
4.1: Energy Basics
termolecular reaction
3.7: Reaction Mechanisms
theory
1.1: Chemistry in Context
thermal energy
4.1: Energy Basics
thermochemistry
4.1: Energy Basics
Third Law of Thermodynamics
4.7: The Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics
third transition series
7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
titration curve
2.7: Acid-Base Titrations
trans configuration
7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
transmutation reaction
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
transuranium element
3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy
triprotic acid
2.5: Polyprotic Acids

U

unimolecular reaction
3.7: Reaction Mechanisms
unit
1.2: Measurements
unsaturated
1.8.4 Solubility

V

valence bond theory
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
voltaic cell
5.2: Galvanic Cells
volume
1.2: Measurements

W

water gas shift reaction
1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants
weak electrolyte
1.8.3 Electrolytes
work
4.1: Energy Basics

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: CHEM2333: General Chemistry 2

Webpages: 93

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY 4.0: 88.2% (82 pages)
- Undeclared: 7.5% (7 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 4.3% (4 pages)

By Page

- CHEM2333: General Chemistry 2 - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Tools for quantitative chemistry - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.1: Chemistry in Context - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.2: Measurements - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.3: Mathematical Treatment of Measurement Results - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.4: Chemical Formulas - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.5: Chemical Nomenclature - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.6: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.7: Molarity - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.8.0: Solutions and Colloids - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.8.1 Prelude to Solutions and Colloids - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.8.2 The Dissolution Process - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.8.3 Electrolytes - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.8.4 Solubility - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.9.0 : Fundamental Equilibrium Concepts - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.9.1 Prelude to Equilibrium - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.9.2 Chemical Equilibria - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.9.3 Equilibrium Constants - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.9.4 Shifting Equilibria - Le Châtelier's Principle - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.9.5. Equilibrium Calculations - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.9.6 Fundamental Equilibrium Concepts (Exercises) - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 2: Acid-Base Equilibria - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.2: pH and pOH - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.5: Polyprotic Acids - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.6: Buffers - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.7: Acid-Base Titrations - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.8: Acid-Base Equilibria (Exercises) - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.9.0: Equilibria of Other Reaction Classes - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.9.1 Precipitation and Dissolution - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.9.2 Lewis Acids and Bases - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.9.3 Coupled Equilibria - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.9.4 Equilibria of Other Reaction Classes (Exercises) - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 3: Kinetics - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.1: Prelude to Kinetics - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.2: Chemical Reaction Rates - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.3: Factors Affecting Reaction Rates - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.4: Rate Laws - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.5: Integrated Rate Laws - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.6: Collision Theory - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.7: Reaction Mechanisms - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.8: Catalysis - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.9.0: Nuclear Chemistry - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.9.1 Nuclear Structure and Stability - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.9.2 Nuclear Equations - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.9.3 Radioactive Decay - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.9.4 Transmutation and Nuclear Energy - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.9.5 Uses of Radioisotopes - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.9.6 Biological Effects of Radiation - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 3.9.7 Nuclear Chemistry (Exercises) - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.9.a: Kinetics (Exercises) - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 4: Thermodynamics - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.1: Energy Basics - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.2: Calorimetry - *CC BY 4.0*

- 4.3: Enthalpy - *CC BY 4.0*
- 4.4: Thermochemistry (Exercises) - *CC BY 4.0*
- 4.5: Spontaneity - *CC BY 4.0*
- 4.6: Entropy - *CC BY 4.0*
- 4.7: The Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics - *CC BY 4.0*
- 4.8: Gibbs Energy - *CC BY 4.0*
- 4.9: Thermodynamics (Exercises) - *CC BY 4.0*

5: Electrochemistry - *CC BY 4.0*

- 5.1: Balancing Oxidation-Reduction Reactions - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.2: Galvanic Cells - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.3: Standard Reduction Potentials - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.4: The Nernst Equation - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.5: Batteries and Fuel Cells - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.6: Corrosion - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.7: Electrolysis - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.8: Electrochemistry (Exercises) - *CC BY 4.0*

6: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding - *CC BY 4.0*

- 6.1: Prelude to Covalent Bonding - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.2: Valence Bond Theory - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.4: Multiple Bonds - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.5: Molecular Orbital Theory - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.6: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding (Exercises) - *CC BY 4.0*

7: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry - *CC BY 4.0*

- 7.1: Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds - *CC BY 4.0*
- 7.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals - *CC BY 4.0*
- 7.3: Optical and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds - *CC BY 4.0*
- 7.4: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry (Exercises) - *CC BY 4.0*

Back Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- Index - *Undeclared*
- Glossary - *Undeclared*
- Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*